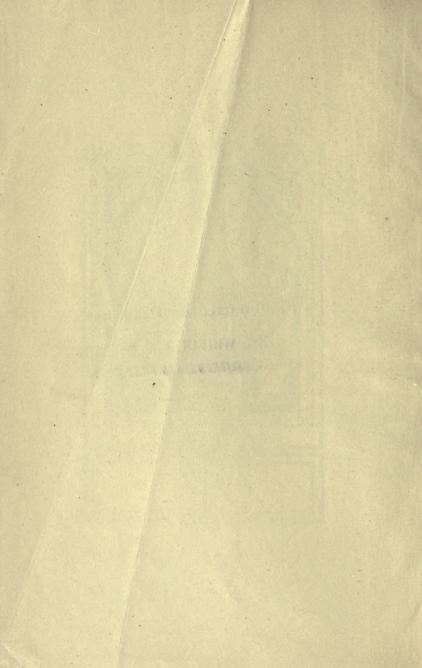
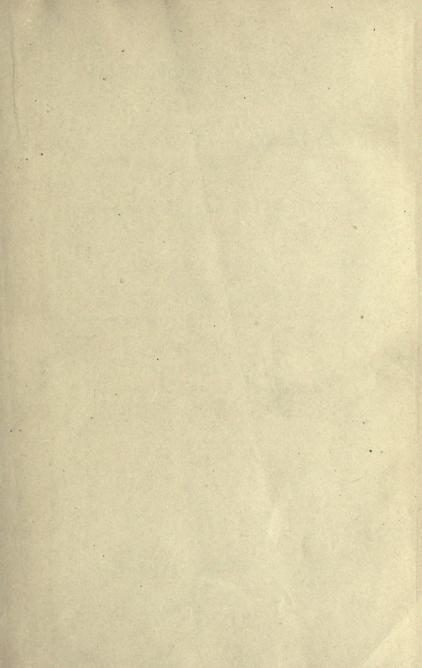


Submitted for Examination
THE WHITAKER & RAY CO.
PUBLISHERS, SAN FRANCISCO.





Digitized by the Internet Archive in 2008 with funding from Microsoft Corporation

# GILDERSLEEVE'S

# LATIN GRAMMAR

THIRD EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED

BY

# B. L. GILDERSLEEVE

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE JOHNS HOPKINS UNIVERSITY

AND

#### GONZALEZ LODGE

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN BRYN MAWR COLLEGE

UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

NEW YORK

BOSTON

NEW ORLEANS

AND LONDON

1900

Education By Copyright, 1894, BY UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING CO.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL

\*\* 2204

# PREFACE.

In the preparation of this third edition of GILDER-SLEEVE'S LATIN GRAMMAR, the office of the senior collaborator has been chiefly advisory, except in the Syntax. In the Syntax, Professor Lodge is responsible for nearly everything that pertains to the history of usage, but for all deviations from the theory of the old grammar we bear a joint responsibility. During the progress of the work we have been cheered and aided by the encouragement and advice of distinguished scholars and experienced teachers, and whereas the Preface of the old grammar mentioned but two faithful helpers, Professor Thomas R. Price and Professor William E. Peters, the present work has had the advantage of liberal coöperation.

Especial acknowledgment must be made of the attention paid to every detail by W. Gordon McCabe, Esq., Headmaster of the University School, Richmond, Va., himself a Latinist of exact and penetrating scholarship, and by his accomplished assistant, Mr. C. W. Bain. Professor Minton Warren, of the Johns Hopkins University, has lent us the aid of his wide and accurate knowledge of the history of the Latin language, and Professor Chapman Maupin, one of the revisers of Gildersleeve's Latin Primer, has given us the benefit of his practical experience and his acute observation. Professor E. M. Pease, of Leland Stanford Junior University, whose removal to the distant West interrupted a collaboration which promised valuable results, has, in spite of his arduous labors as teacher and editor, put at our service his notes on the Grammar of 1872.

Among the scholars who have read the book in proof or advance sheets, and who have suggested improvements here and corrections there, we would gratefully mention Principal Bancroft, of Phillips Andover Academy, President Jesse, of the University of Missouri, Professor M. W. Humphreys, of the University of Virginia, R. W. Tunstall, M.A., of Norfolk, Va., Professor Wm. C. Lawton, of Philadelphia, Professor W. P. Mustard, of Haverford College, Professor J. E. Goodrich, of the University of Vermont, Professor Jas. H. Dillard, of Tulane University, and Professor J. W. Redway, of New York. Finally we desire to express our joint thanks to Dr. C. W. E. Miller, Associate of the Johns Hopkins University, who has laid us both under especial obligations by his careful studies in the difficult chapter of Versification.

As in the Preface to the old grammar, so in the Preface to the new, it is considered out of place to enlarge on the excellence of the methods followed; but as the new grammar embraces a multitude of details that were not taken up in the old grammar, it has been thought fit that Professor Lodge should indicate the sources of the notes with which he has enriched a manual that has held its modest place for more than a quarter of a century.

B. L. GILDERSLEEVE, GONZALEZ LODGE.

August 1, 1894.

The following supplementary note may serve to embody a partial bibliography of the more important works used in this revision, and some necessary explanations of the method:

Fairly complete bibliographies of works on Latin Etymology and Syntax may be found in Reisic's Vorlesungen über lateinische Sprachwissenschaft (new edition, by Hagen, Schmalz, and Landgraf, 1881–1888), and in the Lateinische Grammatik of Stolz and Schmalz (in Müller's Handbuch der klassischen Altertumswissenschaft; 2d edition, 1890). Important also are the Grammars of Kühner (1877, 1878) \* and Roby (1881, 1882); though many statements in both, but especially in the former, must be corrected in the light of more recent study. Some indications of more modern theories may be found in

<sup>\*</sup>A new Historical Grammar, by Stolz, Schmalz, Landgraf, and Wagener, was announced by Teubner in 1891.

the Erläuterungen zur lateinischen Grammatik of Deecke (1893). Many matters of importance both in Etymology and Syntax are treated in the Archiv für lateinische Lexikographie, and the constructions with individual words are often well discussed in Krebs' Antibarbarus der lateinischen Sprache (6th edition, by Schmalz, 1886).

For the accentuation and pronunciation of Latin we have also Corssen's Aussprache, Vocalismus und Betonung der lateinischen Sprache (1868, 1870), and Seelmann's Die Aussprache des Latein (1885).

For the Etymology we must refer to Bücheler's Grundriss der lateinischen Declination (2d edition, by Windekilde, 1879) and to Schweizer-Sidler's Lateinische Grammatik (1888); also to many articles in various journals, most of which are given by Stolz. Indispensable is Neue's Formenlehre der lateinischen Sprache, of which the second volume of the third edition has already appeared (1892) and the first parts of the third volume (1894), under the careful revision of Wagener; also Georges' Lexikon der lateinischen Wortformen (1890).

For the Formation of Words and the relation of Latin forms to those of the related languages we have Henry's *Précis de Grammaire Comparée* and Brugmann's *Grundriss der vergleichenden Grammatik*, both now accessible in translations. On these, in connection with Schweizer-Sidler, the chapter on the Formation of Words has been based.

In the historical treatment of the Syntax we must still rely in large measure on Draeger's Historische Syntax der lateinischen Sprache (2d edition, 1878, 1881), faulty and inaccurate though it often is: many of the false statements have been corrected on the basis of more recent individual studies by SCHMALZ; but even SCHMALZ is not always correct, and many statements of his treatise have been silently emended in the present book. For the theoretical study of some problems of Latin Syntax Haase's Vorlesungen über lateinische Sprachwissenschaft (1880) should not be overlooked. Since the appearance of the second edition of SCHMALZ, in 1890, considerable progress has been made in the various journals and other publications, as may be seen from Deecke's summary in Bursian's Jahresbericht for 1893, Every effort has been made to incorporate in this grammar the main results of these studies as far as practicable. We may also draw attention to the following important articles, among others, some of which are mentioned in the books above referred to:

Wölffelin's numerous articles in the Archiv; Thielmann's articles in the Archiv on habere with Perfect Participle Passive, and on the Reciprocal Relation; Handgraf's articles on the Figura Etymologica, in the second volume of the Acta Seminarii Erlangensis, and on the Future Participle and the Final Dative, in the Archiv; Hale's treatise on The Cum Constructions, attacking the theories of Hoffmann (Lateinische Zeitpartikeln, 1874) and Lübbert (Die Syntax von Quom, 1869);

HOFFMANN'S reply to Hale (1891), and Wetzel's Der Streit zwischen Hoffmann und Hale (1892); Dahl's Die lateinische Partikel ut (1882), with Gutjahr-Probst's Der Gebrauch von ut bei Terenz (1888); Zimmermann's article on quod und quia im älleren Latein (1880); Scherer's article on quando, in Studemund's Studien; Morris's articles on the Sentence Questron in Plautus and Terence in the A.J.P. (vols. x. and xi.); Hale's articles on the Sequence of Tenses in the A.J.P. (vols. viii. and ix.), containing a discussion of the earlier Literature; Elmer's articles on the Latin Prohibitive in A.J.P. (vol. xv.)

A bibliography of the treatises on Prosody and Versification may be found in Gleditsch's treatise in the second volume of Müller's Handbuch; this, with Plessis' Métrique Grecque et Latine (1889), has been made the basis of the chapter on Prosody; but in the treatment of early metres, regard has been had to Klotz (Allrömische Metrik, 1890), and to Lindsay's recent papers on the Saturnian in the A.J.P. (vol. xiv.). In the matter of the order of words we have followed Weil's treatise on the Order of Words, translated by Super (1887).

The question of the correct measurement of hidden quantities is still an unsettled one in Latin; for the sake of consistency the usage of Marx, Hülfsbüchlein für die Aussprache der lateinischen Vokale in positionslangen Silben (2d edition, 1889) has been followed.

The quotations have been made throughout from the Teubner Text editions except as follows: Plautus is cited from the Triumvirate edition of Ritschl; Vergil from the Editio Maior of Ribbeck; Ovid and Terence from the Tauchnitz Texts; Horace from the Editio Minor of Keller and Holder; Lucretius from the edition of Munro; Ennius and Lucilius from the editions of L. Müller; fragmentary Scenic Poets from the edition of Ribbeck. Special care has been taken to make the quotations exact both in spelling and wording; and any variation in the spelling of individual words is therefore due to the texts from which the examples are drawn.

Where it has been necessary to modify the quotations in order to make them suitable for citation, we have enclosed within square brackets words occurring in different form in the text, and in parentheses words that have been inserted; where the passage would not yield to such treatment, Cf. has been inserted before the reference. We have not thought it necessary to add the references in the Prosody except in the case of some of the citations from early Latin.

In the spelling of Latin words used out of quotation, as a rule  ${\bf u}$  and  ${\bf v}$  have been followed by  ${\bf o}$  rather than by  ${\bf u}$ ; but here the requirements of clearness and the period of the language have often been allowed to weigh. Otherwise we have followed in the main Brambach's Hülfsbüchlein für lateinische Rechtschreibung (translation by McCabe, 1877).

# CONTENTS.

ETYMOLOGY.	
	SECTION
Letters and Syllables	1-15
Alphabet, 1; Vowels, 2, 3; Diphthongs, 4; Conso-	
nants, 6, 7; Phonetic Variations, 8, 9; Syllables, 10,	
11; Quantity, 12-14; Accentuation, 15.	
Parts of Speech	16
Inflection of the Substantive	17-71
Definitions, 18; Gender, 19-21; Number, 22;	
Cases, 23-25; Declensions, 26; Endings, 27; First	
Declension, 29, 30; Second Declension, 31-34; Third	
Declension, 35-60; Fourth Declension, 61, 62; Fifth	
Declension, 63, 64; Greek Substantives, 65, 66; Ir-	
regular Substantives, 67–71.	
regular Substantives, 01-11.	
Inflection of the Adjective	72-90
Definition, 72; First and Second Declension, 73-	
76; Pronominal Adjectives, 76; Third Declension,	
77-83; Irregular Adjectives, 84, 85; Comparison of	
Adjectives, 86-90.	
Adverbs	91-93
Formation of Adverbs, 91, 92; Comparison, 93.	91-90
Formation of Adveros, 91, 92; Comparison, 93.	
Numerals	94-98
Cardinals, 94; Ordinals, 94; Distributives, 97;	
Adverbs, 98.	
Pronouns	99-111
Personal, 100-102; Determinative, 103; Demon-	00-111
strative, 104; Relative, 105; Interrogative, 106; In-	
definites, 107; Adjectives, 108; Correlative, 109-111.	
Inflection of the Verb ,	112-175
Definitions, 112, 113; Endings, 114, 115; Inflection	
of esse, 116, 117; of prodesse, 118; of posse, 119. Reg-	
ular Verbs, 120-167; Division, 120; Rules for forming	
Tenses, 121. First Conjugation, 122; Second Conju-	
gation, 123, 124; Third Conjugation, 125, 126; Fourth	

Conjugation, 127; Deponents, 128; Periphrastic,	SECTION
129; Notes, 130, 131. Formation of the Stems, 132-	
135; Change in Conjugation, 136; List of Verbs,	
137-167. Irregular Verbs, 168-174; ire, 169, 2; quire,	
nequire, 170; ferre, 171; edere, 172; fieri, 173; velle,	
nölle, mälle, 174; Defective Verbs, 175.	
	176-200
Simple Words, 179-192; Substantives, 180, 181;	
Adjectives, 182; Substantives without Suffixes, 183;	
Suffixes, 184–189; Verbs, 190–192; Compound Words,	
193-200; Substantives, 194-198; Verbs, 199, 200.	
CVN/DAV	
SYNTAX.	
	202-471
Subject, 203, 204; Predicate, 205-209; Concord,	
210, 211; Voices, 212-221. Tenses, 222-252; Present,	
227-230; Imperfect, 231-234; Perfect, 235-240; Plu-	
perfect, 241; Future, 242, 243; Future Perfect, 244,	
245; Periphrastic, 246-251; Tenses in Letters, 252. Moods, 253-283; Indicative, 254; Subjunctive, 255-	
265; Imperative, 266–275; Tenses in Moods and Verbal	
Substantives, 276–283.	
	004 484
	284-471
	285–287
	288-325
Adjectives, 289-303; Numerals, 292-295; Compara-	
tives and Superlatives, 296-303; Pronouns, 304-319;	
Personal, 304; Demonstrative, 305–307; Determinative and Reflexive, 308–311; Possessive, 312: Indefi-	
nite, 313–319; Apposition, 320–325; Predicative Attri-	
bution and Apposition, 325.	
Multiplication of Predicate	326
A	327-449
•	
	328-418
Accusative, 328–343; Dative, 344–359; Genitive, 360–383; Ablative, 384–410; Locative, 411; Preposi-	
tions, 412–418; with Accusative, 416; with Ablative,	
417; with Accusative and Ablative, 418.	
	419-424
Subject, 422; Object, 423; Predicate, 424.	110-104
Dudlett, and, Object, and, I retited to the	

#### CONTENTS.

	SECTION
Gerund and Gerundive	425-433
Genitive, 428; Dative, 429; Accusative, 430; Abla-	
tive, 431; with Prepositions, 432, 433.	
Supine	434-436
Accusative, 435; Ablative, 436.	
Participles	437, 438
Adverbs	439-449
Negatives, 441-449.	
Incomplete (Interrogative) Sentence	450-471
Direct Simple Questions, 453-457; Direct Disjunc-	
tive Questions, 458, 459; Indirect Questions, 460;	
Moods in Direct, 462-466; Moods in Indirect, 467.	
Compound Sentence	472-670
Coördinate Sentence	
Copulative, 474–482; Adversative, 483–491; Dis-	110 000
junctive, 492-497; Causal and Illative, 498-503.	
	504-670
Moods in, 508; Sequence of Tenses, 509-519; Re-	004-010
flexive in, 520-522.	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	523-537
Introduced by quod, 524, 525; in Accusative and	0.0 00.
Infinitive, 526, 527, 532-535; in Nominative and	
Infinitive, 528; in Participle, 536, 537.	
Causal Sentences	538-542
Introduced by quod, quia, etc., 539-541; by quod,	
with verbs of Emotion, 542.	
Sentences of Design and Tendency	543-558
Final, 544-550; Pure Final, 545; Complementary	
Final, 546-549; After verbs of Fear, 550.	
Consecutive, 551; Pure Consecutive, 552; Comple-	
mentary Consecutive, 553-557; Exclamatory Ques-	
tions, 558.	
	559-588
Antecedent Action, 561-567; Iterative Action, 566,	
567; Contemporaneous Action, 568-573; Subsequent	
Action, 574-577; Sentences with cum, 578-588.	
	589-602
Logical, 595; Ideal, 596; Unreal, 597; Incomplete,	
<b>598–601</b> ; Of Comparison, <b>602</b> .	
Concessive Sentences	603-609

Relative Sentences	section 610-637
Comparative Sentences	638-644
Historical Infinitive, 647; <b>Ōrātiō Obliqua</b> , 648; Moods in, 650-652; Tenses in, 653-655; Conditional Sentences in, 656-659; Pronouns, 660; Partial Obliquity, 662, 663.	
Participial Sentences	664-670
Arrangement of Words and Clauses	671-687
	688-700
Principal Rules of Syntax Pp. 437-444	
PROSODY.	
Quantity	702-717
Figures of Prosody	718-728
Definition, 729-754; Versus Italicus, 755; Saturnian Verse, 756; Iambic Rhythms, 757-767; Trochaic Rhythms, 768-776; Anapaestic Rhythms, 777-782; Dactylic Rhythms, 783-789; Logaædic Rhythms, 790-805; Cretic and Bacchic Rhythms, 806-814; Ionic Rhythms, 815-819; Compound Verses, 820-823; Cantica, 824, 825; Metres of Horace, 826, 827.	729-827
Appendix	PAGES 491-493
Index of Verbs	494-502
General Index	503-546

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

# ETYMOLOGY.

# Alphabet.

1. The Latin alphabet has twenty-three letters:

# ABCDEFGHIKLM NOPQRSTVXYZ

REMARKS.—I. The sounds represented by C and K were originally distinct, C having the sound of G, but they gradually approximated each other, until C supplanted K except in a few words, such as Kalendae, Kaesō, which were usually abbreviated, Kal., K. The original force of C is retained only in C. (for Gāius) and Cn. (for Gnaeus).

- 2. J, the consonantal form of I, dates from the middle ages. V represented also the vowel  ${\bf u}$  in the Latin alphabet; and its resolution into two letters—V for the consonant, and U for the vowel—also dates from the middle ages. For convenience, V and U are still distinguished in this grammar.
- 3. Y and Z were introduced in the time of Cicero to transliterate Greek  $\nu$  and  $\zeta$ . In early Latin  $\nu$  was represented by u (occasionally by i or oi), and  $\zeta$  by ss or s. Z had occurred in the earliest times, but had been lost, and its place in the alphabet taken by G, which was introduced after C acquired the sound of K.

Note.—The Latin names for the letters were: a, be, ce, de, e, ef, ge, ha, i, ka, el, em, en, o, pe, qu (= cu), er, es, te, u, ex (ix), to be pronounced according to the rules given in 3, 7. For Y the sound was used, for Z the Greek name (zēta).

# Vowels.

- 2. The vowels are a, e, i, o, u, (y); and are divided:
- 1. According to their quality (i. e., the position of the organs used in pronunciation), into

guttural (or back), a, o, u; palatal (or front), e, i, (y).

2. According to their quantity or prolongation (i. e., the time required for pronunciation), into

long, (-);

short, ( -).

REMARK.—Vowels whose quantity shifts in poetry are called common (see 13), and are distinguished thus:

is, by preference short; ... =, by preference long.

### 3. Sounds of the Vowels.

 $\bar{a} = a$  in father.  $\bar{o} = o$  in bone.

e i in caprice.
 u = oo in moon.
 u in sûr (French), German ü.

REMARK.—The short sounds are only less prolonged in pronunciation than the long sounds, and have no exact English equivalents.

# Diphthongs.

4. There are but few diphthongs or double sounds in Latin. The theory of the diphthong requires that both elements be heard in a slur. The tendency in Latin was to reduce diphthongs to simple sounds; for example, in the last century of the republic ae was gliding into ē, which took its place completely in the third century A. D. Hence arose frequent variations in spelling: as glaeba and glēba, sod; so oboedīre and obēdīre, obey; faenum (foenum) and fēnum, hay.

ae = aye (ăh-eh). ei = ei in feint (drawled).

oe = oy in boy. eu = eu in Spanish deuda (Eh-oo).

au = ou in our. (ui = we, almost).

Note.—Before the time of the Gracchi we find ai and oi instead of ae and oe.

5. The sign ·· (Diærėsis—Greek=separation) over the second vowel shows that each sound is to be pronounced separately: āër, air; Oenomatis, aloë.

# Consonants.

# 6. Consonants are divided:

 According to the principal organs by which they are pronounced, into

Labials (lip-sounds): b, p, (ph), f, v, m.

Dentals (tooth-sounds): d, t, (th), l, n, r, s.

Gutturals (throat-sounds): g, c, k, qu, (ch), h, n (see 7).

Note.-Instead of dental and guttural, the terms lingual and palatal are often used.

2. According to their prolongation, into

A. Semi-vowels: of which

1, m, n, r, are liquids (m and n being nasals).

h is a breathing.

is a sibilant.

B. Mutes: to which belong

P-mutes, p, b, (ph), f, labials. T-mutes, t, d, (th), dentals. K-mutes, k, c, qu, g, (ch), gutturals.

Those on the same line are said to be of the same organ.

Mutes are further divided into

Tenuës (thin, smooth): p, t, k, c, qu, hard (surd).

Mediae (middle): b, d, g, soft (sonant).

[Aspiratae (aspirate, rough): ph, th, ch,] aspirate.

Those on the same line are said to be of the same order.

The aspirates were introduced in the latter part of the second century B. C. in the transliteration of Greek words, and thence extended to some pure Latin words; as, pulcher, Gracchus.

3. Double consonants are :  $\mathbf{z} = d\mathbf{z}$  in adze ;  $\mathbf{x} = cs$  (ks), gs ; i and u between two vowels are double sounds, half vowel, half consonant.

#### Sounds of the Consonants.

7. The consonants are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions:

C is hard throughout = k.

Ch is not a genuine Latin combination (6, 2). In Latin words it is a k; in Greek words a kh, commonly pronounced as ch in German.

G is hard throughout, as in get, give.

**H** at the beginning of a word is but slightly pronounced; in the middle of a word it is almost imperceptible.

I consonant (J) has the sound of a broad y; nearly like y in yule.

N has a guttural nasal sound before c, g, q, as in anchor, anguish.

 $\mathbf{Qu} = \mathbf{kw}$  (nearly); before  $\mathbf{o}$ ,  $\mathbf{qu} = \mathbf{c}$ . In early Latin  $\mathbf{qu}$  was not followed by  $\mathbf{u}$ . Later, when  $\mathbf{o}$  was weakened to  $\mathbf{u}$ ,  $\mathbf{qu}$  was replaced by  $\mathbf{c}$ ; thus  $\mathbf{quom}$  became  $\mathbf{cum}$ . Still later  $\mathbf{qu}$  replaced  $\mathbf{c}$ , yielding  $\mathbf{quum}$ .

R is trilled.

S and X are always hard, as in hiss, axe.

T is hard throughout; never like t in nation.

U consonant (V) is pronounced like the vowel, but with a slur. In the third century A. D. it had nearly the sound of our w. In Greek it was frequently transliterated by Oû; so Οὐαλέριος = Valerius.

#### Phonetic Variations in Vowels and Consonants.

8. Vowels.

I. Weakening.—In the formation of words from roots or stems short vowels show a tendency to weaken; that is, a tends to become e

and then i, or o and then u, while o tends towards e or i, and u towards i. This occurs most frequently in compound words, to a less degree in words formed by suffixes. Diphthongs are less frequently weakened and long vowels very rarely. The principal rules for these changes are as follows, but it must be remembered that to all there are more or less frequent exceptions:

A.—I. In the second part of compound words, and in reduplicated words, the root-vowel ă is weakened to ĕ, which usually passes over into ĭ in open syllables (11, R.), and often to ŭ before I and labial mutes: cōn-scendō (scandō); con-cidō (cadō); dē-sultō (saltō); fefelli (fallō).

2. As final vowel of the stem ă is weakened in the first part of a compound word, usually to ĭ, rarely to ŏ or ŭ: aquili-fer (aquila-); causi-dicus (causa-).

3. In or before suffixes, ă becomes ĭ: domi-tus (doma-).

Note.—A frequently resists change, especially in verbs of the First and Second Conjugations: as, sē-parāre (parāre); circum-iacēre (iacēre); so satis-facere (facere) and others.

E.—I. In the second part of compound words, root vowel & is usually retained in a close (11, R.) syllable, and weakened to I in an open syllable; but it is invariably retained before r: In-flecto (flecto); obtineo (teneo); ad-verto (verto). 2. In or before suffixes, and in the final syllable of a word, it also becomes I: geni-tor (gene-); un-decim (decem).

I.—At the end of a word i is changed to ě: mare (mari).

0.—1. In composition final stem-vowel o is usually weakened to i; before labials sometimes to u; agri-cola (agro-); auru-fex (usually auri-fex).

2. In suffixes, and in final syllables, it is weakened to i: amici-tia (amico-); gracili-s (also gracilu-s).

U.—In composition final stem-vowel ŭ is usually weakened to ĭ; the same weakening occurs sometimes within a word or before a suffix: mani-fēstus (also manu-fēstus); lacrima (early lacruma).

AE, AU.—In the second part of a compound word root-diphthong ae is usually weakened to i, but often there is no change; au is occasionally changed to i: ex-quirō (quaerō); con-clūdō (claudō).

2. Omission.—Vowels are frequently omitted both in simple and compound words, either within the word (syncope) or at the end (apocope): dextera and dextra; princeps (for princeps, from princeps); pergo (for perrego); ut (uti); neu (neve).

3. Epenthesis.—Vowels are sometimes inserted to ease the pronuciation, but usually before liquids or in foreign words: ager (agro-) see 31; Daphinē (= Daphnē); drachuma (= drachma).

4. Assimilation.—Two vowels in adjoining syllables tend to become like each other; this assimilation is usually regressive (i. e., of the first to the second), especially when I separates them; it is rarely progressive. Compare facilis with facul, familia with famulus, bene with bonus.

- 5. A vowel before a liquid tends to become ŭ, less often o or e: adulēscēns and adolēscēns; vulgus and volgus; decumus (decem); compare tempus with temporis; peperī (from pariō), etc.
  - 9. Consonants.
- I. Assimilation.—When two consonants come together in Latin, they tend to assimilate one to the other. This assimilation is usually regressive; sometimes it is progressive. It is either complete, that is, the two consonants become the same; or partial, that is, the one is made of the same order or same organ as the other. These changes occur both in inflection and in composition, but they are especially noteworthy in the last consonant of prepositions in composition.

Scrip-tum for scrib-tum (regressive partial); ac-cēdere for ad-cēdere (regressive complete); cur-sum for cur-tum (progressive partial); celer-rimus for celer-simus (progressive complete).

2. Partial Assimilation.—(a) The sonants g and b, before the surd t, or the sibilant s, often become surds (c, p); the surds p, c, t before liquids sometimes become sonants (b, g, d); the labials p, b before n become m; the labial m before the gutturals c, q, g, h, i (j), the dentals t, d, s, and the labials f, v, becomes n; the dental n before labials p, b, m, becomes m; rēc-tum (for rēg-tum); scrīp-sī (for scrīb-sī); seg-mentum (for sec-mentum); som-nus (for sop-nus); prīn-ceps (for prīm-ceps).

Note.—Similar is the change of q (qu) to c before tors: coc-tum (for coqu-tum).

- (b) After 1 and r, t of the suffixes tor, tus, tum, becomes s by progressive assimilation: cur-sum (for cur-tum).
- 3. Complete Assimilation.—There are many varieties, but the most important principle is that a mute or a liquid tends to assimilate to a liquid and to a sibilant: puella (puer); cur-rere (for cur-sere); cēs-sī (for cēd-sī); corōlla (corōna), etc.
- 4. Prepositions.—Ab takes the form ā before m or v, and in ā-fuī; appears as au in au-ferō, au-fugiō; as abs before c, t; as as before p. Ad is assimilated before c, g, l, p, r, s, t, with more or less regularity; before gn, sp, sc, st, it often appears as ā. Ante appears rarely as anti. Cum appears as com before b, m, p; con before c, d, f, g, i, q, s, v; cō before gn, n; assimilated sometimes before 1 and r. Ex becomes ē before b, d, g, i (j), l, m, n, r, v; ef or ec, before f. In usually becomes im before b, m, p; before l, r it is occasionally assimilated; the same holds good of the negative prefix in. Ob is usually assimilated before c, f, g, p; appears as o in o-mittō, o-periō, obs in obs-olēscō, and os in ostendō. Sub is assimilated before c, f, g, p, r; appears as sus in a few words, as sus-cipiō; occasionally sū before s, as sū-spiciō. Trāns sometimes becomes trā before d, i (j), n; trān before s. Amb- (inseparable) loses b before a consonant, and am is sometimes assimilated. Circum sometimes drops m before i. Dis becomes dif before f; dir before a

vowel; di before consonants, except c, p, q, t, s, followed by a vowel, when it is usually unchanged. The d of red and sed is usually dropped before consonants.

 ${f Note}$ .—In early Latin assimilation is much less common than in the classical period,

5. Dissimilation.—To avoid the harshness of sound when two syllables begin with the same letter, the initial letter of the one is often changed; this is true especially of liquids, but occasionally of other letters: singu-lā-ris (for singu-lā-lis); merī-diē (for medī-diē).

Note.—This principle often regulates the use of -brum or -bulum, and of -crum or -culum in word formation (181, 6): compare periculum with simulacrum.

6. Omission.—(a) When a word closes with a doubled consonant or a group of consonants, the final consonant is regularly dropped in Latin; sometimes after the preceding consonant has been assimilated to it. In the middle of a word, after a long syllable, ss and II are simplified; II is sometimes simplified after a short vowel, which is then lengthened if the syllable is accented (compensatory lengthening); but if the syllable is unaccented, such lengthening need not take place. In this case other doubled consonants may also be simplified.

fel (for fell); lac (for lact); vigil (for vigils); lapis (for lapid-s, lapiss); mīsī (for mīs-sī); vīlla and vīlicus; but currus and cărūlis.

Note.—X is retained, even after l and r, as in calx, arx; also ps, bs, as in stirps, urbs; ms is found in hiems only.

- (b) In the tendency to easier pronunciation consonants are often dropped both at the beginning and in the middle of a word: stimulus (for stigmulus); pāstor (for pāsctor); āiō (for āhiō); nātus (for gnātus, retained in early Latin, rarely later); lātus (for tlātus), etc.
- 7. Epenthesis.—Between m and l, m and s, m and t, a p is generated: ex-em-p-lum (ex-imō); cōm-p-sī (cōmō); ēm-p-tus (emō).
- 8. Metathesis or transposition of consonants occurs sometimes in Latin, especially in Perfect and Supine forms: cerno; Pf. crō-vī, etc.

# Syllables.

10. The syllable is the unit of pronunciation; it consists of a vowel, or a vowel and one or more consonants.

A word has as many syllables as it contains separate vowels and diphthongs.

In dividing a word into syllables, a consonant, between two vowels, belongs to the second: a-mō, I love; li-xa, a sutler.

Any combination of consonants that can begin a word (including mn, under Greek influence) belongs to the following vowel; in other combinations the first consonant belongs to the preceding vowel: a-sper, rough; fau-stus, lucky; li-brī, books; a-mnis, river.

REMARKS.—I. The combinations incapable of beginning a word are (a) goubled consonants: sic-cus, dry; (b) a liquid and a consonant: al-mus, fostering; am-bō, both; an-guis, snake; ar-bor, tree.

- 2. Compounds are treated by the best grammarians as if their parts were separate words: ab-igō, I drive off; rēs-pūblica, commonwealth.
- 11. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate* (ultima, *last*); the next to the last the *penult* (paene, *almost*, and ultima); the one before the penult, the *antepenult* (ante, *before*, and paenultima).

REMARK.—A syllable is said to be open when it ends with a vowel; close, when it ends with a consonant.

# Quantity.

12. r. A syllable is said to be long by nature, when it contains a long vowel or diphthong: mos, custom; caelum, heaven.

Remarks.—I. A vowel before nf, ns, gm, gn, is long by nature: infelix, unlucky; mēnsa, table; āgmen, train; āgnus, lamb. In many cases, however, the n has disappeared from the written word; so in some substantival terminations: ōs (Acc. Pl., 2d decl.), ūs (Acc. Pl., 4th decl.); in adjectives in ōsus (formōsus, shapely, for formōnsus); in the numerical termination ēsimus (= ēnsimus). See 95, N. 5.

2. Before i consonant (j) a vowel is long by nature: Pompeius, Pompey; except in compounds of iugum, yoke (bi-iugus, two-horse), and in a few other words.

Note.—From about 134 to about 74 B. C.  $\bar{a}$ ,  $\bar{b}$ ,  $\bar{u}$ , were often represented by aa, ee, uu;  $\bar{i}$  by ei. From the time of Augustus to the second century  $\bar{i}$  was indicated by a lengthened I. From Sulla's time until the third century long vowels (rarely, however,  $\bar{i}$ ) were indicated by an Apex (').

2. A syllable is said to be long by position, when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant: ars, art; collum, neck; abrumpo, I break off; per mare, through the sea; nex, murder.

3. A syllable is said to be *short* when it contains a short vowel, which is not followed by two or more consonants: lŏcus, place; tǎbǔla, picture.

REMARK.—A vowel is short by nature when followed by another vowel, or by nt, nd: deus, God; innocentia, innocence; amandus, to be loved.

13. A syllable ending in a short vowel, followed by a mute with 1 or r, is said to be common (anceps, doubtful): tenēbrae, darkness.

Remark.—In prose such syllables are always short. In poetry they were short in early times, common in the Augustan period.

14. Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is *long:* saevus, cruel; conclūdō, I shut up (from claudō, I shut); cōgō (from co-agō), I drive together.

#### Accentuation.

- 15. 1. Dissyllabic words have the accent or stress on the penult: equus, horse.
- 2. Polysyllabic words have the accent on the penult, when the penult is long; on the antepenult, when the penult is short or common: mandare, to commit; mandere, to chew; integrum, entire; circumdare, to surround; superstites, survivors.

REMARKS.—1. The little appendages (enclitics), que, ve, ne, add an accent to the ultimate of words accented on the antepenult: lúmináque, and lights; flúmináve, or rivers; vómeréne? from a plowshare? Dissyllables and words accented on the penult are said to shift their accent to the final syllable before an enclitic: egómet, I indeed; amāréve, or to love; but it is more likely that the ordinary rule of accentuation was followed.

- 2. Compounds (not prepositional) of facere and dare retain the accent on the verbal form: calefácit, vēnumdáre.
- 3. Vocatives and genitives of substantives in ius of the second declension, as well as genitives of substantives in ium, retain the accent on the same syllable as the nominative: Vergîli.

Note.—Other exceptions will be noted as they occur. In the older language the accent was not bounded by the antepenult: accipio (accipio), concutio (concutio).

# Parts of Speech.

- 16. The Parts of Speech are the Noun (Substantive and Adjective), the Pronoun, the Verb, and the Particles (Adverb, Preposition, and Conjunction), defined as follows:
- I. The Substantive gives a name: vir, a man; Cocles, Cocles; donum, a gift.
- 2. The Adjective adds a quality to the Substantive: bonus vir, a good man.
- 3. The Pronoun points out without describing: hic, this; ille, that; ego, I.
- 4. The Verb expresses a complete thought, whether assertion, wish, or command; amat, he loves; amet, may he love; amā, love thou!
  - 5. The Adverb shows circumstances.
  - 6. The Preposition shows local relation.
  - 7. The Conjunction shows connection.

Remarks.—1. Substantive is short for noun-substantive, and adjective for noun-adjective. Substantives are often loosely called nouns.

- 2. The Interjection is either a mere cry of feeling: āh! ah! and does not belong to language, or falls under one of the above-mentioned classes.
- 3. The Particles are mainly mutilated forms of the noun and pronoun.

Notes.—1. The difference between substantive and adjective is largely a difference of mobility; that is, the substantive is fixed in its application and the adjective is general.

Noun and pronoun have essentially the same inflection; but they are commonly separated, partly on account of the difference in signification, partly on account of certain peculiarities of the pronominal forms.

# Inflection.

17. Inflection (inflexio, bending) is that change in the form of a word (chiefly in the end) which shows a change in the relations of that word. The noun, pronoun, and verb are inflected; the particles are not capable of further inflection.

The inflection of nouns and pronouns is called *declension*, and nouns and pronouns are said to be *declined*.

The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and verbs are said to be *conjugated*.

#### The Substantive.

18. A Substantive is either concrete or abstract; concrete when it gives the name of a person or thing; abstract when it gives the name of a quality; as amicitia, friendship.

Concrete substantives are either proper or common:

Proper when they are proper, or peculiar, to certain persons, places, or things: **Horātius**, *Horace*; **Neāpolis**, *Naples*; **Padus**, *Po*.

Common when they are common to a whole class: dominus, a lord; urbs, a city; amuis, a river.

### Gender of Substantives.

19. For the names of animate beings, the gender is determined by the signification; for things and qualities, by the termination.

Names of males are masculine; names of females, feminine. Masculine: Rōmulus; Iūppiter; vir, man; equus, horse. Feminine: Cornēlia; Iūnō; fēmina, woman; equa, mare.

- 20. Some classes of words, without natural gender, have their gender determined by the signification:
- I. All names of months and winds, most names of rivers, and many names of mountains are masculine; as: Aprilis, April, the opening month; Aquilo, the north wind; Albis, the River Elbe; Athos.

Remarks.—I. Names of months, winds, and rivers were looked upon as adjectives in agreement with masculine substantives understood (mēnsis, month; ventus, wind; fluvius, amnis, river).

- Of the rivers, Allia, Lethe, Matrona, Sagra, Styx are feminine;
   Albula, Acheron, Garumna vary, being sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine.
- 3. Of the mountains, Alpës, the Alps, is feminine; so, too, sundry (Greek) names in a (G. ae), ē (G. ēs): Aetna (usually), Calpē, Cyllēnē, Hybla, Īda, Ossa (usually), Oeta (usually), Rhodopē, Pholoē, Pyrēnē, and Carambis, Pelōris. Pēlion and Sōracte (usually), and names of mountains in a (G. ōrum), as Maenala (G. Maenalōrum), are neuter.
- II. Names of countries (terrae, fem.), islands (insulae, fem.), cities (urbes, fem.), plants (plantae, fem.), and trees

(arborës, fem.), are feminine: Aegyptus, Egypt; Rhodus, Rhodes; pirus, a pear-tree; abiës, a fir-tree.

REMARKS.—I. Names of countries and islands in us (os) (G. i) are masculine, except Aegyptus, Chius, Chersonesus, Cyprus, Delos, Epīrus, Lemnos, Lesbos, Peloponnesus, Rhodus, Samos, Bosporus (the country).

- 2. Many Greek names of cities follow the termination. Towards the end of the republic many feminine names change the ending -us to -um and become neuter: Abydus and Abydum, Saguntus and Saguntum.
- 3. Most names of trees with stems in -tro (N. -ter) are masculine: oleaster, wild olive; pinaster, wild pine. So also most shrubs: dümus, bramble-bush; rhüs, sumach. Neuter are acer, maple; läser, a plant; papäver, poppy (also mase in early Latin); röbur, oak; siler, willow; siser, skirret (occasionally masc.); süber, cork-tree; tüber, mushroom.
- III. All indeclinable substantives, and all words and phrases treated as indeclinable substantives, are neuter: fas, right; a longum, a long; scire tuum, thy knowing; triste vale, a sad "farewell."
- 21. I. Substantives which have but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of common gender: civis, citizen (male or female); comes, companion; iudex, fudge.
- 2. Substantīva mobilia are words of the same origin, whose different terminations designate difference of gender: magister, master, teacher; magistra, mistress; servus, serva, slave (masc. and fem.); victor, victrīx, conqueror (masc. and fem.).
- 3. If the male and female of animals have but one designation, mās, male, and fēmina, female, are added, when it is necessary to be exact: pāvŏ mās (masculus), peacock; pāvŏ fēmina, peahen. These substantives are called epicene (ἐπίκοινα, utrīque generī commūnia, common to each gender).

### Number.

22. In Latin there are two numbers: the Singular, denoting one; the Plural, denoting more than one.

REMARK.—The *Dual*, denoting *two*, occurs in Latin only in two words (duo, *two*; ambō, *both*), in the nominative and vocative of the masculine and neuter. A similar formation is octō, *eight* (two fours).

#### Cases.

- 23. In Latin there are six cases:
- 1. Nominative (Case of the Subject).

  Answers: who? what?
- 2. Genitive (Case of the Complement).

  Answers: whose ? whereof?
- 3. Dative (Case of Indirect Object or Personal Interest).
- Answers: to whom? for whom?

  4. Accusative (Case of Direct Object).
  - Answers: whom? what?
- 5. Vocative (Case of Direct Address).
- 6. Ablative (Case of Adverbial Relation).

  Answers: where? whence? wherewith?

Note.—These six cases are the remains of a larger number. The Locative (answers: where?), is akin to the Dative, and coincident with it in the 1st and 3d Declensions; in the 2d Declension it is lost in the Genitive; it is often blended with the Ablative in form, regularly in syntax. The Instrumental (answers: wherewith?), which is found in other members of the family, is likewise merged in the Ablative

- 24. i. According to their form, the cases are divided into strong and weak: The strong cases are Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative. The weak cases are Genitive, Dative, and Ablative.
- 2. According to their syntactical use, the cases are divided into Cāsūs Rēctī, or Independent Cases, and Cāsūs Oblīquī, or Dependent Cases. Nominative and Vocative are Cāsūs Rēctī, the rest Cāsūs Oblīquī.
- 25. The case-forms arise from the combination of the case-endings with the stem.
- 1. The stem is that which is common to a class of forma-

Notes.—1. The stem is often so much altered by contact with the case-ending, and the case-ending so much altered by the wearing away of vowels and consonants, that they can be determined only by scientific analysis. So in the paradigm mēnsa, the stem is not mēns, but mēnsā, the final ā having been absorbed by the ending in the Dative and Ablative Plural mēnsās. So d, the ending of the Ablative Singular, has nearly disappeared, and the locative ending has undergone many changes (5, 51, 1, 5). The "crude form" it is often impossible to ascertain.

2. The root is an ultimate stem, and the determination of the root belongs to com-

parative etymology. The stem may be of any length, the root was probably a monosyllable. In penna the stem is pennā-; in pennula, pennulā-; in pennātulus, pennātulo-; the root is PET (petna, pesna, penna), and is found in pet-ere, to fak upon, to fly at; Greek, πέτ-ομαι, πτερόν; English, feather.

2. The case-endings are as follows, early forms being printed in parenthesis:

Sc.-N.V. Wanting or m. f. -s; n. -m. PL.-N.V. -es (eis, īs); -i; n. -a. G. -um (om); -rum (som). -is (-os, -us, -es); -i. D. D. -ī (-ē, -ei). -bus: -is. Ac. -m, -em, Ac. -s (for -ns): n. -a. Wanting (or -d): -e. Ab. -bus : -is. Ab.

#### Declensions.

26. There are five declensions in Latin, which are characterized by the final letter of their respective stems (stem-characteristic).

For practical purposes and regularly in lexicons they are also improperly distinguished by the ending of the Genitive Singular.

	STEM	CHARACTERISTIC.	GENITIVE SINGULAR.
I.		ă (ā).	80.
II.		ŏ.	ī.
III.		ĭ, ū, a consonant.	ĭs.
IV.		ŭ.	ūs.

Ăī.

REMARK.—The First, Second, and Fifth Declensions are called Vowel Declensions; the Third and Fourth, which really form but one, the Consonant Declension, i and u being semi-consonants.

 $\mathbf{v}$ .

27. The case-endings in combination with the stem-characteristics give rise to the following systems of terminations:

SINGULAR.			
	I.	II.	III.
N.	B.	us (os); wanting; um (om).	s; wanting.
G.	ae (ās, āī, ai).	ī (ē1).	is (us, es).
D.	ae (āī).	ō (oi).	1 (ēī, i).
Ac.	am.	um (om).	em, im.
V.	a.	e; wanting; um (om).	S.
AO.	ā (ād).	ō (ōd).	e, I (ēd, īd).

V.

IV.

ns : n.

		,	
	G.	ūs (uos, uis).	ěī, ē (es).
-	D.	ui, ū (uēi).	ĕī, ē.
	Ac.	um; ū,	em.
	Ab.	ū.	ē.
		PLURAL.	
	I.	II.	III.
N. V.	ae.	ī (oe, ē, ēi); ă.	ēs (ēis, īs); a, ia,
G.	ārum.	um (om), ōrum.	um, ium,
D. A.	īs (ēis); ābus.	īs (ēis), ibus,	ibus.
Ac.	ās.	ōs; ă.	īs, ēs; a, ia.
		IV.	v.
	N. V.	ūs (ues, uus); ua.	ēs.
	G.	uum.	ērum.
	D. A.	ubus, ibus.	ēbus.
	Ac.	ūs; ua.	ēs.

Note.—Final -s and -m are frequently omitted in early inscriptions.

# 28. General Rules of Declension.

# I. For the strong cases.

N. V.

Neuter substantives have the Nominative and the Vocative like the Accusative; in the Plural the strong cases always end in ă.

In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions the strong cases are alike in the Plural.

The Vocative is like the Nominative, except in the Singular of the Second Declension when the Nominative ends in -us.

# II. For the weak cases:

The Dative and the Ablative Plural have a common form.

#### FIRST DECLENSION.

29. The stem ends in a, which is weakened from an original a. The Nominative has no ending.

Sg.—N.	mēnsa (f.),	the table,	a table.
G.	mēnsae,	of the table,	of a table.
D.	mēnsae,	to, for the table,	to, for a table.
Ac.	mēnsam,	the table,	a table.
V.	mēnsa,	O table!	table!
Ab.	mēnsā,	from, with, by, the table,	from, with, by, a table.

PLN.	mēnsae,	the tables,	tables.
G.	mēnsārum,	of the tables,	of tables.
D.	mēnsīs,	to, for the tables,	to, for tables
Ac.	mēnsās,	the tables,	tables.
v.	mēnsae,	O tables!	tables!

Ab. mensis, from, with, by, the tables, from, with, by, tables.

REMARKS.—I. The early ending of the Gen., ās, found in a few cases in early poets, is retained in the classical period (but not in CAESAR or Livy) only in the form familiās, of a family, in combination with pater, father, mater, mother, filius, son, filia, daughter, viz.: paterfamiliās, māterfamiliās, filius familiās, filia familiās.

- The Loc. Sing. is like the Genitive: Romae, at Rome; militiae, abroad.
- 3. The Gen. Pl. sometimes takes the form -um instead of -ārum; this occurs chiefly in the Greek words amphora (amphora, measure of tonnage), and drachma, franc—(Greek coin). The poets make frequent use of this form in Greek patronymics in -da, -dās, and compounds of -cola (from colō, I inhabit) and -gena (from root gen, beget).
- 4. The ending -abus is found (along with the regular ending) in the Dat. and Abl. Pl. of dea, goddess, and filia, daughter. In late Latin the use of this termination becomes more extended.

Notes .-- 1. A very few masc. substantives show Nom. Sing. in as in early Latin.

- 2. A form of the Gen. Sing. in **āī**, subsequent to that in **ās**, is found in early inscriptions, and not unfrequently in early poets, but only here and there in classical poetry (Verg., A., 3, 354, etc.) and never in classical prose.
- 3. The early ending of the Dat. \$\overline{a}\$ (sometimes contracted into \$\overline{a}\$), is found occasionally in inscriptions throughout the whole period of the language.
- 4. The older ending of the Abl., ād, belongs exclusively to early Latin. Inscriptions show \$\vec{e}\$ is for \$\vec{i}\$s in Dat. and Abl. Pl., and once \$\vec{e}\$s in the Dat. Plural.
- 30. Rule of Gender.—Substantives of the First Declension are feminine, except when males are meant.

Hadria, the Adriatic, is masculine.

#### SECOND DECLENSION.

31. The stem ends in  $\check{o}$ , which in the classical period is weakened to  $\check{\mathbf{u}}$ , except after  $\check{\mathbf{u}}$  (vowel or consonant), where  $\check{o}$  is retained until the first century A.D. In combination with the case-endings it merges into  $\bar{o}$  or disappears altogether. In the Vocative (except in neuters) it is weakened to  $\check{e}$ .

The Nominative ends in s (m. and f.) and m (n.). But many masculine stems in which the final vowel, ŏ, is preceded by r, drop the (os) us and e of the Nominative and Vocative, and insert ĕ before the r if it was preceded by a consonant.

32. I. Stems in -ro. The following stems in -ro do not drop the (os) us and e of the Nom. and Voc.: erus, master; hesperus, evening star; icterus, jaundice; iüniperus, juniper; mörus, mulberry; numerus, number; taurus, bull; vīrus, venom; umerus, shoulder; uterus, womb.

Note. - Socerus is found in early Latin. Plautus uses uterum (n.) once.

2. In the following words the stem ends in -ero and the e is therefore retained throughout: adulter, adulterer; gener, son-in-law; Liber, jod of wine; puer, boy; socer, father-in-law; vesper, evening; and in words ending in -fer and -ger, from fero, I bear, and gero, I carry, as, signifer, standard-bearer, armiger, armor-bearer.

Also Iber and Celtiber (names of nations) have in the Plural Iberi and Celtiberi.

33. Hortus (m.), garden; puer (m.), boy; ager (m.), field; bellum (n.), war; are thus declined:

Sa.—N.	hortus,	puer,	ager,	bellum,
G.	hortī,	pueri,	agrī,	bellī,
D.	hortō,	puerō,	agrō,	bellō,
Ac.	hortum,	puerum,	agrum,	bellum,
V.	horte,	puer,	ager,	bellum,
Ab.	hortō.	puerō.	agrō.	bellō.
FLN.	hortī,	puerī,	agrī,	bella,
FL.—N. G.	hortī, hortōrum,	puerī, puerōrum,	agrī, agrōrum,	bella, bellörum,
	,	- /	0 ,	,
G.	hortōrum,	puerōrum,	agrörum,	bellörum,
G. D.	hortōrum, hortīs,	puerōrum, puerīs,	agrīrum, agrīs,	bellīs,
G. D. Ac.	hortōrum, hortīs, hortōs,	puerōrum, puerīs, puerōs,	agrīrum, agrīs, agrīs,	bellīs, bellīs, bella,

REMARKS.—I. Stems in io have Gen. Sing. for the most part in I until the first century A. D., without change of accent: ingénI (N. ingenium), of genius, Vergill, of Vergil. See 15, R. 3.

- 2. Proper names in -ius (stems in -io) have Voc. in I, without change of accent: Antōni, Tulli, Gāi, Vergíli. Filius, son, and genius, genius, form their Voc. in like manner: fili, geni. In solemn discourse -us of the Nom. is employed also for the Vocative. (See Liv. 1. 24, 7.) So regularly deus, God!
- 3. The Loc. Sing. ends in I (apparent Genitive), as RhodI, at Rhodes, TarentI, at Tarentum.
- 4. In the Gen. Pl. -um instead of -ōrum is found in words denoting coins and measures; as, nummum, of moneys (also -ōrum) = sōstertium, of sesterces; dōnārium (occasionally -ōrum); talentum (occasionally -ōrum); tetrachmum; modium (also -ōrum), of measures; iūgerum; medimnum; stadium (also -ōrum). Likewise in some names of persons: deum (also

-orum): fabrum (in technical expressions; as praefectus fabrum, otherwise -orum): liberum (also -orum): virum (poetical, except in technical expressions, as triumvirum); socium (also -orum). Some other examples are poetical, rare or late ..

5. The Loc. Pl. is identical with the Dative: Delphis, at Delphi.

6. Deus, God, is irregular. In addition to the forms already mentioned, it has in Nom. Pl. dei. dii. di: in Dat. and Abl. Pl. deis. diīs, dīs,

Notes.-1. The ending -el for -I in the Gen. Sing. is found only in inscriptions subsequent to the third Punic War.

2. Puer, boy, forms Voc. puere in early Latin.

3. The original Abl. ending -d belongs to early inscriptions.

4. In early inscriptions the Nom. Pl. ends occasionally in es. eis. is: magistres (for magistri) vireis (for viri). The rare endings oe and e (ploirume for plurimi) and the not uncommon ending ei belong to the same period.

5. Inscriptions often show eis for is in Dat, and Abl. Plural.

34. Rule of Gender.—Substantives in -us are masculine; in -um neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Feminine are: 1st. Cities and islands, as, Corinthus, Samus, 2d. Most trees, as, fagus, beech; pirus, pear-tree, 3d. Many Greek nouns, as, atomus, atom: dialectus, dialect: methodus, method: paragraphus, paragraph; periodus, period. 4th. Alvus, belly (m. in PLAUT.); colus (61, N. 5), distaff (also m.); humus, ground; vannus, wheat-fan.

Neuters are: pelagus, sea; virus, venom; vulgus, the rabble (sometimes masculine).

#### THIRD DECLENSION.

- 35. 1. The stem ends in a consonant, or in the close vowels i and u.
- 2. The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the stem-characteristic, following the subdivisions of the letters of the alphabet:

I.—Consonant Stems.

A. Liquid stems, ending in 1, m, n, r.

B. Sibilant stems, ending in s.

C. Mute stems, {
1. Ending in a P-mute, b, p.
2. Ending in a K-mute, g, c.
3. Ending in a T-mute, d, t.

II. - Vowel Stems.

1. Ending in i.

2. Ending in u, (Compare the Fourth

Declension.)

36. 1. The Nominative Singular, masculine and feminine, ends in s, which, however, is dropped after l, n, r, s, and combines with a K-mute to form x. The final vowel of the stem undergoes various changes.

The Vocative is like the Nominative.

In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem.

2. Neuters always form:

The Nominative without the case-ending s.

The Accusative and Vocative cases in both numbers like the Nominative.

The Nominative Plural in a.

#### Notes on the Cases.

37. Singular.

- Genitive.—In old Latin we find on inscriptions the endings -us (Gr. -os) and
   -es.
- 2. Dative.—The early endings of the Dat. are -61 and -6. These were succeeded by 1 after the second century B. C., 5 being retained in formulas like iūrē dicundō (Liv., 42, 28, 6), in addition to the usual form.
- 3. Accusative.—The original termination -im, in stems of the vowel declension, loses ground, and stems of this class form their Acc. more and more in -em, after the analogy of consonant stems. For the classical usage see 57, R. r.
- 4. ABLATIVE.—In inscriptions of the second and first centuries B. C. we find -eī, -I, and -e. But -eī soon disappears, leaving e and ī. In general e is the ending for the consonant stems and ī for the vowel. But as in the Acc., so in the Abl., the e makes inroads on the i, though never to the same extent. (See 57, R. 2.) On the other hand, some apparently consonant stems assume the ending ī. Thus some in -ās, -ātis: hērēditātī (200 B. C.), aetātī (rare); lītī (rare), supellēctilī (classical; early e); also the liquid stems which syncopate in the Gen., as imber. The ending -d is rare and confined to early inscriptions.
- 5. LOCATIVE.—Originally coincident in form with the Dat., the Loc. of the Third Declension was finally blended with Abl., both in form and in syntax. In the following proper names the old form is frequently retained: Karthāginī, at Carthage, Sulmönī, at Sulmo, Lacedaemonī, at Lacedaemon, Sicyōnī, Troezēnī, Anxurī, Tīburī. Also Acheruntī. In the case of all except Anxur, Tībur, Acherūns, the regular form is more common.

The following Loc. forms of common nouns are found: heri, lüci, noctū (principally in early Latin), orbī (Crc.), peregrī (early Latin), praefiscinī (early Latin), rūrī, temperī (the usual form in early Latin), vesperī. In all cases the Abl. form in e is also found.

38. Plural.

- Nominative.—Early Latin shows -ēis, -is in the mase and feminine. The latter was usually confined to vowel stems, but also occurs occasionally in consonant stems (ioudicis). Later the ending was -ēs for all kinds of stems.
- 2. Generive.—The ending **-um**, uniting with the vowel in vowel stems, gives **-ium**. But many apparently consonant stems show their original vowel form by taking **-ium**: (1) Many fem. stems in **-tāt** (N. tās) with **-ium** as well as **-um**. (2) Monosyllabic and polysyllabic stems in **-t**, **-c**, with preceding consonant. (3) Monosyllables in **-p** and **-b**, sometimes with, sometimes without, a preceding consonant. (4) Stems in **-ss**: see 48, R.
- 3. Accusative.—Old Latin shows also -51s. The classical form is -65 for consonant and -1s for vowel stems. But -65 begins to drive out -1s in some vowel stems and wholly supplants it in the early Empire. On the other hand, some apparently original consonant stems show -1s in early Latin, but the cases are not always certain.

#### I.-CONSONANT STEMS.

#### A .- Liquid Stems.

- 1. LIQUID STEMS IN 1.
- 39. Form the Nominative without s and fall into two divisions \*:
  - A. Those in which the stem characteristic is preceded by a vowel:
- 1. -al, -alis: sāl (with compensatory lengthening), salt; Punic proper names like Adherbal, Hannibal,
- 2. -il, -ilis: mūgil (mūgilis is late), mullet; pugil (pugilis in VARRO), boxer; vigil, watchman. -īl, -īlis: sīl, ochre; Tanaquil (with shortened vowel), a proper name.
  - 3 -ol. -olis: sol, sun.
  - 4. -ul. -ulis: consul, consul; exsul, exile; praesul, dancer.
- B. Two neuter substantives with stems in -11, one of which is lost in the Nominative: mel, mellis, honey; fel, fellis, gall.

ScN.	consul, consul (m.).	PL.—N.	consules, the consuls.
G.	consulis,	G.	consulum,
D.	consuli,	D.	consulibus,
Ac	c. consulem,	Ac.	consules,
V.	cōnsul,	V.	consulēs,
Al	consule	Ah	consulibus

Rules of Gender.-1. Stems in -1 are masculine.

Exceptions: S1, ochre, and sal, salt (occasionally, but principally in the Sing.), are neuter.

- 2. Stems in -Il are neuter.
  - 2. LIQUID STEMS IN m.
- 40. Nominative with s. One example only: hiem(p)s, winter (f.); Gen., hiem-is, Dat., hiem-i, etc.
  - 3. LIQUID STEMS IN n.
- 41. Most masculine and feminine stems form the Nominative Singular by dropping the stem-characteristic and changing a preceding vowel to 0.

<sup>\*</sup> In the following enumerations of stem-varieties, Greek substantives are as a rule omitted.

Some masculine and most neuter stems retain the stemcharacteristic in the Nominative and change a preceding i to e.

The following varieties appear:

- -ēn, -ēnis: the masculine substantives lien, splen, spleen; rēnēs (pl.), kidneys.
- 2. -ō, -inis: homō, man; nēmō, no one; turbō, whirlwind; Apollō, Apollō. Also substantives in -dō (except praedō, G. -ōnis, robber); and in -gō (except harpagō, G. -ōnis, grappling-hook; ligō, G. -ōnis, mattock); as, grandō, hail; virgō, virgin. -en, inis: the mase. substantives flāmen, priest; ōscen (also f.), divining bird; pecten, comb; musical performers, cornicen, fidicen, liticen, tībīcen, tubicen. Also many neuters: as nōmen, name.
- 3. -o (in early Latin 5, in classical period weakened), -ōnis: leð, lion; and about seventy others. -o, -onis: Saxo, Saxon (late).
- 4. Irregular formations: carö, G. carnis, flesh; Aniö, G. Aniönis, a river; Nēriö, G. Nēriönis, a proper name. Sanguis, blood, and pollis, flour, drop the stem characteristic and add s to form nominative; G. sanguinis, pollinis.

42. MASCULINE	. FEMININE.	NEUTER.
SgN. leŏ, lion	(m.). imāgō, likeness (f.).	nomen, name (n.).
G. leönis,	imāginis,	nōminis,
D. leoni,	imāginī,	nōminī,
Ac. leonem,	imāginem,	nōmen,
V. leŏ,	imāgō,	nōmen,
Ab. leōne,	imāgine,	nōmine,
PL.—N. leones,	imāginēs,	nomina,
G. leönum,	imāginum,	nōminum,
D. leonibus,	imāginibus,	nōminibus,
Ac. leones,	imāginēs,	nōmina,
V. leonēs,	imāginēs,	nōmina,
Ab. leonibus.	imāginibus.	nōminibus.
V. leōnēs,	imāginēs,	nōmina,

Note.-Early Latin shows homonem, etc., occasionally.

43. Rules of Gender.—1. Substantives in -ō are mascuine, except carō, flesh, and those in -dō, -gō, and -iō.

Exceptions.—Masculine are cardō, hinge; ōrdō, rank; harpagō, grappling-hook; ligō, mattock; margō, border (occasionally fem. in late Latin); and concrete nouns like pūgiō, dagger, titiō, firebrand, vespertīliō, bat.

2. Substantives in -en (-men) are neuter. See exceptions, 41, 1, 2.

## 4. Liquid Stems in r.

## 44. Form Nominative without s.

Stems fall into the following classes:

- 1. -ar, -aris: salar, trout; proper names like Caesar, Hamilcar; the neuters baccar, a plant; inbar, radiance; nectar, nectar. -ār, -āris: Lār, a deity. -ār, āris: Nār (Enn., Verg.), a river. -ār, arris: fār (n.) spelt.
- 2. -er, -eris: acipēnser, a fish; agger, mound; ānser, goose; asser, pole; aster, a plant; cancer, the disease; carcer, prison; later, brick; mulier (f.), woman; passer, sparrow; tüber (m. and f.), apple; vesper, evening (68, 10); vōmer, plowshare (47, 2). The neuters acer, maple; cadāver, dead body; cicer, pea; lāser, a plant; laver, a plant; papāver, poppy; piper, pepper; sīler, willow; siser, skirret; sūber, cork; tūber, tumor; ūber, teat; [verber], thong. -er, -ris: four words, accipiter, hawk; frāter, brother; māter, mother; pater, father. Also some proper names, as Diēspiter, Falacer, and the names of the months, September, Octōber, November, December. Also, imber, shower, linter, skiff, ūter, bag, venter, belly, which were probably vowel stems originally (see 45, R. 1). -ēr, -eris: āēr, air; aethēr, ether. -ēr, -ēris: vēr, spring.
- 3. -or, -oris: arbor (f.), tree (stem originally in -os); some Greek words in -tor, as rhētor, rhetorician; slave names in -por, as Mārcipor; the neuters: ador, spelt: aequor, sea; marmor, marble. -or, -ōris: very many abstract words, as amor, love; color, color; clāmor, outery; soror, sister; uxor, wife; these may come from stems in ōs (see 47, 4); also verbals in -tor, as victor.
- 4. -ur, -uris: augur, augur; furfur, bran; turtur, dove; vultur, vulture; lemurēs (pl.), ghosts, and a few proper names; also the neuters fulgur, lightning; guttur, throat; murmur, murmur; sulfur, sulphur. -ūr, -ūris; fūr, thief.
- 5. Four neuters, ebur, ivory; femur, thigh; iecur, liver; röbur, oak, show Gen. in -oris; two of these, femur, iecur, have also the irregular forms feminis and iecineris, iecinoris, iocinoris. Iter, way, has G. itineris; and supellex, furniture, has G. supellectilis.

45.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	labor, toil (m.),	laborēs,	pater, father (m.),	patrēs,
G.	labēris,	laborum,	patris,	patrum,
D.	labōrī,	labēribus,	patri,	patribus,
Ac	. labōrem,	laborēs,	patrem,	patrēs,
٧.	labor,	labōrēs,	pater,	patrēs,
Ab	. labore.	laboribus.	patre.	patribus.

REMARKS.—I. Imber, shower, linter, skiff, "iter, bag, venter, belly, show the vowel nature of their stems by having Gen. Pl. in -ium. Imber has also sometimes Abl. Sing. in I. (See 37, 4.)

2. Röbur, strength, also forms a Nom. röbus (47, 4), and vömer, plow-share, vömis (47, 2).

Note.—Arbor, and many stems in -ōr, were originally stems in -s; the s became r (47) between two vowels in the oblique cases, and then reacted upon the Nominative. But many Nominatives in -ōs are still found in early Latin; and some are still retained in the classical times: arbōs (regularly in Verg., frequently in Lucr., Hor., Ov.), honōs (regularly in Verg., commonly in Cic., Livy), and others.

**46.** Rules of Gender.—1. Substantives in -er and -or are masculine. 2. Substantives in -ar and -ur are neuter.

Exceptions.—Masculine are salar, trout, and proper names in -ar; augur, augur; furfur, bran; names of animals in -ur and a few proper names in -ur.

Feminine are arbor, tree; mulier, woman; soror, sister; uxor, wife. Neuter are acer, maple; ador, spell; aequor, sea; cadāver, dead body; cicer, pea; iter, way; läser, a plant; laver, a plant; marmor, marble; papāver, poppy; piper, pepper; sīler, willow; siser, skirret; sūber, cork; tūber, tumor; ūber, teat; vēr, spring; [verber], thong.

### B.-Sibilant Stems.

47. The Nominative has no additional s, and changes in masculines e to i, and in neuters e or o to u before s.

In the oblique cases, the **s** of the stem usually passes over, between two vowels, into **r** (*rhotacism*).

There are the following varieties of stems:

- 1. -ās, -aris: mās, male. -ās, -āsis: vās (n.), vessel. -ās, -assis: ās (m.), a copper (vowel long in Nom. by compensatory lengthening), and some of its compounds (with change of vowel), as bes, semis.
- 2. -ēs, -eris: Cerēs, Ceres. -is, -eris: cinis, ashes; cucumis, cucumber (see 57, R. 1), pulvis (occasionally pulvis), dust; vēmis, plowshare (see 45, R. 2). -us, -eris: Venus, and occasionally pignus, pledge (see 4).
  - 3. -īs, -īris: glīs, dormouse.
- 4.  $-\bar{o}s$ ,  $-\bar{o}sis$ : old Latin ianitōs, labōs, clāmōs (see 45, N.). -os, -ossis: os (n.), bone.  $-\bar{o}s$ ,  $-\bar{o}ris$ : flōs, flower; glōs, sister-in-law; lepōs, charm; mōs (m.), custom; -ōs (n.), mouth; rōs, dev. -us, -oris: corpus, body; decus, grace; pīgnus, pledge, and twelve others; on rōbus (see 45, R. 2).
- 5. -us, -uris: Ligus, Ligurian. -ūs, -ūris: tellūs (f.), earth; mūs (m.), mouse; the neuters: crūs, leg; iūs, right; pūs, pus; rūs, country; tūs, incense.
  - 6. aes, aeris, brass.

48. SINGULAR. PLURAL. SINGULAR. PLURAL. N. A. V. genus, kind (n.), genera, corpus, body (n.), corpora, G. generis. generum. corporis, corporum. D. generi, generibus, corpori, corporibus. Ab. genere. generibus. corpore. corporibus.

Remark.—Ās, a copper, and os, bone, form the Gen. Pl. in ium, after the usage of vowel stems (see 38, 2). So also mūs, mouse.

49. Rule of Gender.—Masculine are substantives in -is (-eris), and -ōs, -ōris: except ōs, mouth (G. ōris), which is neuter.

Neuter are substantives in -us (G. -eris, -oris), and in -ūs (G. -ūris); except tellūs, earth (G. tellūris), which is feminine; and the masculines, lepus, hare (G. leporis); mūs, mouse (G. mūris).

## C .- Mute Stems.

50. All masculines and feminines of mute stems have s in the Nominative. Before s a P-mute is retained, a K-mute combines with it to form x, a T-mute is dropped.

Most polysyllabic mute stems change their final vowel i into e in the Nominative.

The stems show variations as follows:

51. Stems in a P-mute.

I. -abs, -abis: trabs, beam; Arabs. -aps, -apis: [daps], feast.

2. -ēbs, ēbis: plēbs, commons.

3. -eps, -ipis: princeps, chief, and fourteen others. -ips, -ipis: stips, dole.

4. -ops, -opis: [ops], power.

5. -eps, upis: auceps, fowler, and the old Latin manceps, contractor.

6. -rbs, -rbis: urbs, city.

7. -rps, -rpis: stirps, stock.

Sc.—N. princeps, chief (m.), PL.—principēs,
G. principis, principum,
D. principi, principibus,
Ac. principem, principēs,
V. princeps, principēs,
Ab. principe.

52. Stems in a K-mute.

I. -ax, -acis: fax, torch, and many Greek words in -ax, Atax, proper name. -āx, -ācis: fornāx, furnace; līmāx, snail; pāx, peace; and Greek cordāx, thôrāx.

- 2. -ex, -ecis: faenisex, mower; nex, murder; [prex], prayer; [resex], stump. -ēx, -ēcis: āllēx (also āllēc), brine; vervēx, wether. -ex, -egis: grex, herd; aquilex, water-inspector. -ēx, -ēgis: interrēx: lēx. law: rēx, king.
- 3. -ex, -icis: auspex, soothsayer, and about forty others. -ex, -igis: rēmex, rower. -ix, icis: cervix, neck, and about thirty others; verbals in -ix, as victrix. -ix, -icis: appendix, appendix, and ten others. -ix, -igis: strix, screech-owl; also many foreign proper names, as Dumnorix, which may, however, be forms in -ix, -igis.
- 4. -ōx, -ōcis: celōx, cutter; vōx, voice. -ox, -ocis: Cappadox, Cappadocian. -ox, -ogis: Allobrox, Allobrogian.
- 5. -ux, -ucis: crux, cross; dux, leader; nux, nut.  $-\bar{u}x$ ,  $-\bar{u}cis$ :  $l\bar{u}x$ , light;  $ball\bar{u}x$ , gold-dust;  $Poll\bar{u}x$ . -ux, -ugis:  $c\bar{o}niux$  (-unx), spouse.  $-\bar{u}x$ ,  $-\bar{u}gis$ :  $fr\bar{u}x$ , fruit.
- 6. -rx, -rcis: arx, citadel; merx, wares. -lx, -lcis: falx, sickle; calx, heel, lime. -nx, -ncis: lanx, dish; compounds of -unx, as quincunx, and a few names of animals; phalanx has G. phalangis.
- 7. Unclassified: nix (G. nivis), snow; bos (G. bovis; see 71), ox; [faux] (G. faucis), throat; faex (G. faecis), dregs.

ScN.	rēx,	king (m.).	PL.	-rēgēs,
G. :	rēgis,			rēgum,
D. :	rēgī,			rēgibus,
Ac.	rēgem,			rēgēs,
V. :	rēx,			rēgēs,
Ab.	rēge,			rēgibus.

## 53. Stems in a T-mute

- 1. -ās, -ātis: many feminine abstracts, as aetās, age; some proper names, as Maecēnās. -as, -atis: anas, duck. -as, -adis: vas, bail: lampas. torch.
- 2. -es, -etis: indiges, patron deity; interpres, interpreter; praepes, bird; seges, crop; teges, mat. -ēs, -etis: abiss, fir; ariss, ram; pariss, wall. -ēs, -ētis: quiss, quiet; requiss, rest. -ēs, -edis: pēs, foot, and its compounds. -ēs, -ēdis: hērēs, heir; mercēs, hire.
- 3. -es, -itis: antistes, overseer; caespes, sod, and some fifteen others. -es, -idis: obses, hostage; praeses, protector. -īs, -ītis: lis, suit. -is, -idis: capis, bowl; cassis, helmet, and nearly forty others, mostly Greek.
- 4.  $-\bar{o}s$ ,  $-\bar{o}tis$ :  $c\bar{o}s$ , whetstone;  $d\bar{o}s$ , dowry;  $nep\bar{o}s$ , grandson;  $sacerd\bar{o}s$ , priest.  $-\bar{o}s$ ,  $-\bar{o}elis$ :  $c\bar{u}st\bar{o}s$ , guard.
- 5. -ūs, -ūtis: glūs, glue, and some abstracts: iuventūs, youth; salūs, safety; senectūs, old age; servitūs, servitude; virtūs, manliness.
- -us, -udis: pecus, sheep. -ūs, -ūdis: incūs, anvil; palūs, marsh; subscūs, tenon.

6. -aes, -aedis: praes, surety. -aus, -audis: laus, praise; fraus, fraud.

7. -ls, -ltis: puls, porridge. -ns, -ntis: Infans, infant; dens, tooth; fons, fountain; mons, mountain; frons, brow; pons, bridge; gens, tribe; lens, lentil: mens, mind; rudens, rope; torrens, torrent. -s, -ntis: latinized Greek words like gigas, giant. -rs, -rtis: ars, art; cohors, cohort; fors, chance; Mars; mors, death; sors, lot.

8. Unclassified: cor (G. cordis), heart; nox (G. noctis), night; caput (G. capitis), head; lac (G. lactis), milk.

SG.-N. aetās, age (f.). PL.-aetātēs, SG.-pēs, foot (m.). PL.-pedēs, G. aetātis, aetātum. pedis, pedum. D. aetāti, aetātibus. pedī. pedibus. Ac. aetātem, aetātēs, pedem. pedēs, V. aetās. aetātēs, pēs, pedēs. Ab. aetāte, aetātibus. pede, pedibus.

54. Many substantives of this class were originally vowel stems (see 56), and show their origin by having the termination -ium in the Gen. Pl. and -I in the Abl. Singular. Some not originally vowel stems do the same. (See 38, 2.)

Monosyllabic mute stems, with the characteristic preceded by a consonant, have the Gen. Pl. in -ium: urbium, of cities; arcium, of citadels; montium, of mountains; partium, of parts; noctium, of the nights. But -um is also found in gentum (Attius), partum (Ennius).

Monosyllabic mute stems, with characteristic preceded by a long vowel or diphthong, vary: dot-ium, lit-ium, fauc-ium, fraud-um (-ium), laud-um (-ium). But praed-um, vocum.

Monosyllabic mute stems with characteristic preceded by a short yowel have -um; but fac-ium, nuc-um (-ium), niv-ium (-um).

The polysyllabic stems in -nt and -rt have more frequently -ium, as clientium (-um), of clients; cohortium (-um), of companies. So adulo-scentium (-um), amantium (-um), infantium (-um), parentum (-ium), serpentium (-um), torrentium (-um); rudentum (-ium); but only quadrantum.

Of other polysyllabic stems feminine stems in -āt have frequently both -um and -ium, as aetātum and aetātium, cīvitātum and cīvitātium, etc.; the rest have usually -um: but artifex, (h)aruspex, extispex, iūdex, supplex, cōniux, rēmex, and usually fornāx have -ium. Forceps, manceps, mūniceps, prīnceps have -um. Palūs has usually palūdium.

Notes,—r. The accusative lentim from [lens] is occasionally found, and partim from pars, as an adverb.

2. Sporadic ablatives in -i occur as follows: animantī (Cic.), bidentī (Lucr.), tridentī (Sil., Verg.), capitī, consonantī (gram.), hērēdī (inscr.), lēgī (inscr.), lentī (Titin., Col.), lūcī (early), mentī (Col.), occipitī (Pers., Aus.), pācī (Varro), partī, rudentī (Vitr.), sortī, torrentī (Sen.).

- 55. Rule of Gender.—Mute stems, with Nominative in s, are feminine.
  - 1. Exceptions in a k-mute.

Masculines are substantives in -ex, -ex, -ix, and -unx; except cortex, bark, forfex, shears, frutex, shrub, imbrex, tile, latex, fluid, obex, bolt, silex, flint, varix, varicose vein, which are sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine; and faex, dregs, forpex, tongs, lex, law, nex, slaughter, vibex, weal, and forms of [prex], prayer, which are feminine. Calx, heel, and calx, chalk, are sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine.

2. Exceptions in a t-mute.

Masculine are substantives in -es, -itis, except merges (f.), sheaf; also pēs, foot, and its compounds; pariēs, wall; lapis, stone.

Masculines in -ns are: dens, tooth, and its compounds; fons, spring; mons, mountain; pons, bridge; rudens, rope; torrens, torrent; also some substantivized adjectives and participles.

Neuters are only: cor, heart, lac, milk, and caput, head.

### II.-VOWEL STEMS.

## 1.-Vowel Stems in i.

56. Masculines and feminines form their Nominative in s. Some feminines change, in the Nominative, the stemvowel i into e.

Neuters change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel i into e. This e is generally dropped by polysyllabic neuters after 1 and r.

Stems in i have Genitive Plural in -ium.

Neuter stems in i have the Ablative Singular in ī, and Nominative Plural in -ia.

The varieties of stems are:

- 1. -is, -is: nearly one hundred substantives, like civis, citizen.
- 2. -ēs, -is: thirty-five, like vulpēs, fox. Some of these have also variant nominatives in -is in good usage.
  - 3. -e, -is: some twenty neuters, as mare, sea.
- 4. —, -is: twenty-four neuters, which form Nominative by dropping the stem characteristic and shortening the preceding vowel: animal, -ālis, animal; calcar (G. calcāris), spur.
- 5. For substantives in -er, -ris, see 44, 2. Irregular is senex, (G. senis; see 57, R. 3), old man.

		M.	F.	F.	N.	N.
Se	-N.	collis, hill.	turris, tower.	vulpēs, fox.	mare, sea.	animal, living being.
	G.	collis,	turris,	vulpis,	maris,	animālis,
	D.	collī,	turri,	vulpī,	marī,	animālī,
	Ac.	collem,	turrim(em),	vulpem,	mare,	animal,
	V.	collis,	turris,	vulpēs,	mare,	animal,
	Ab.	colle,	turri(e),	vulpe,	marī,	animālī,
PL-	-N.	collēs,	turrēs.	vulpēs,	maria,	animālia,
		collium,	turri-um,	vulpium,	marum,	animālium,
	D.	collibus,	turri-bus,	vulpibus,	maribus,	animālibus,
	Ac.	collis(ēs),	turrīs(ēs),	vulpīs(ēs),	maria,	animālia,
	V.	collēs,	turrēs,	vulpēs,	maria,	animālia,
	Ab.	collibus.	turri-bus.	vulpibus.	maribus.	animālibus.

- 57. Remarks.—I. The proper ending of the Acc. Sing. -im, is retained always in amussis, būris, cucumis (see 47, 2), fūtis, mephītis, rāvis, rūmis, sitis, tussis, vīs; and in names of towns and rivers in -is, as Neāpolis, Tiberis; usually in febris, puppis, pelvis, restis, secūris, turris; occasionally in bipennis, clāvis, crātis, cutis, len(ti)s (see 54, N. 1), messis, nāvis, neptis, praesaepis, sēmentis, strigilis.
- 2. The Abl. in -I is found in substantives that regularly have -im in Acc. (except perhaps restis): also not unfrequently in amnis, avis, bipennis, canālis, cīvis, clāssis, fīnis (in formulæ), fūstis, īgnis (in phrases), orbis, sēmentis, strigilis, unguis; occasionally in anguis, bīlis, clāvis, collis, convallis, corbis, messis, neptis; regularly in neuters in e, al, and ar, except in rēte, and in the towns Caere, Praeneste.

Note.—So also the adjectives of this class, when used as substantives by ellipsis: annälis (sc. liber, book), chronicle; nātālis (sc. diēs, day), birthday; Aprīlis (sc. mēnsis, month), and all the other months of the Third Declension: Abl., annāli, nātāli, Aprīli, Septembrī, etc. But iuvenis, young man; and aedīlis, aedile, have Abl., iuvene, aedīle; adjectives used as proper nouns have generally Abl. in -e, as, Iuvenālis, Iuvenāle.

- 3. In the Gen. Pl., instead of the ending -ium, -um is found always in canis, dog, iuvenis, young man, pānis, bread, senex, old, struēs, heap, volucris, bird; usually in apis, bee, sēdēs, seat, vātēs, bard; frequently in mēnsis, month. On imber, etc., see 45, R. I. Post-classical and rare are ambāgum, caedum, clādum, veprum, and a few others; marum (the only form found) occurs once.
- 4. In the Nom. Pl. -61s and -1s are found in early Latin. So occasionally in consonant stems (see 38, 1), but in classical times such usage is doubtful.
- 5. The proper ending of the Acc. Pl., -Is (archaic, -EIS), is found frequently in the classical period along with the later termination -ES, which supplants -IS wholly in the early empire. On the other hand, -IS for -ES in consonant stems is confined to a few doubtful cases in early Latin.

**58.** Rule of Gender.—1. Vowel stems, with Nominative in -es are feminine; those with Nominative in -is are partly masculine, partly feminine.

Masculine are: amnis, river (f., early); antes (pl.), rows: axis, axle; būris, plowtail; casses (pl.), toils; caulis, stalk; collis, hill; crīnis, hair; ēnsis, glaive; fascis, fagot; follis, bellows: fūnis, rope (f., Lucr.); fūstis, cudgel: īgnis, fire; mānēs (pl.), Manes; mēnsis, month; mūgil(is), mullet; orbis, circle; pānis, bread; postis, door-post; torris, fire-brand; unguis, nail; vectis, lever; vermis, worm.

Common are: callis, footpath; canālis, canal; clūnis, haunch; corbis, basket; fīnis, end; rētis, net (also rēte, n.); sentis (usually pl.), bramble; scrobis, ditch; torquis (es), necklace; tolēs (pl.), goitre; venrēs (pl.), bramble.

Remark.—Of the names of animals in -is, some are masculine; tigris, tiger (fem. in poetry); canis, dog (also fem.); piscis, fish; others feminine: apis, bee; avis, bird; ovis, sheep; felis, cat (usually feles).

2. Vowel stems, with Nominative in -e, -al, -ar, are neuter.

### 2. Vowel Stems in u.

**59.** Of stems in **u**, the *monosyllabic* stems, two in number, belong to the Third Declension.

Sc.—N.	grüs, crane (f.)	PL.—gruës
G.	gruis	gruum
D.	gruī	gruibus
Ac.	gruem	gruēs
V.	grūs	gruēs
Ab.	grue	gruibus.

Sūs, swine (commonly f.), usually subus, in Dat. and Abl. Plural.

TABLE OF NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE ENDINGS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The \* before the ending denotes that it occurs only in the one word cited.

#### 60. A. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A LIQUID. GEN. Nom. NOM. GEN. -āli-s animal. animal. -ār \*-arr-is fār. spelt. -ăl-is Hannibal, proper name. -er-is anser, g008e. -āl \*-ăl-is sāl, salt. -r-is pater, father. -el -ell-is mel, honey. \*-iner-is iter, journey. -il-is pugil, boxer. -ër \*-ër-is vër, spring. -or-is color, color. -Il-is Tanaguil, proper name. -01 -ōl \*-ōl-is sōl, the sun. -or-is aequor, expanse. -ul -ul-is consul, consul. \*-ord-is cor. heart. -ën -ën-is rënës (pl.), kidneys. lightning. -ur -ur-is fulgur, name. -or-is robur, oak. -en -in-is nomen, -ar -ari-s calcar, smir. -ur -ur-is fur, thief. -ari-s nectar, nectar.

# B. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH s, OR x (cs, gs).

Nom.	GEN.			Nom.	GEN.		
-ās	*-ās-is	vās.	dish.	-ls	*-lt-is	puls,	porridge.
	*-ar-is	mās,	male.	-m(p)s	*-m-is	hiems,	winter.
	-āt-is	aetās.	age.	-ns	-nd-is	frons,	leafy branch.
-as	*-ad-is	vas,	surety.		-nt-is	frons,	forehead.
	*ass-is	as,	a copper.	-rs	-rd-is	concors,	concordant.
	-at-is	anas,	duck.		-rt-is	pars,	part.
-aes	-aed-is	praes,	surety.	-bs	-b-is	urbs,	city.
	*aer-is	aes,	brass.	-ps	-p-is	stirps,	stalk.
-aus	-aud-is	fraus,	cheatery.	-eps	-ip-is	princeps,	chief.
-ēs	-is	nūbēs,	cloud.		*-up-is	auceps,	fowler.
	-ed-is	pēs,	foot.	-āx	-āc-is	pāx,	peace.
	-ēd-is	hērēs,	heir.	-ax	*-ac-is	fax,	torch.
	*-er-is	Cerēs,	Ceres.	-aex	-aec-is	faex,	dregs.
	-et-is	abiēs,	flr.	-aux	-auc-is	[faux,]	throat.
	-ēt-is	quiës,	rest.	-ex	-ec-is	nex,	death.
es	-et-is	seges,	crop.		-ic-is	iūdex,	judge.
	-id-is	obses,	hostage.		-eg-is	grex,	flock.
	-it-is	mīles,	soldier.		*-ig-is	rēmex,	rower.
-is	-is	amnis,	river.	-ēx	*-ēc-is	āllēx,	pickle.
	-id-is	lapis,	stone.		*-īc-is	vibēx(ix),	weat.
	-in-is	sanguis,	blood.		-ēg-is	rēx,	king.
	-er-is	cinis,	ashes.	-ĩx	-ic-is	cervix,	neck.
-18	*-īt-is	līs,	suit at law.	-ix	-ic-is	calix,	cup.
	*-īr-is	glis,	dormouse.		*-ig-is	strix,	screech-owl.
-õs	*-ōd-is	cūstōs,	keeper.		*-iv-is	nix,	snow.
	-ōr-is	flös,	flower.	-ōx	-ōc-is	vox,	voîce.
	-ōt-is	cōs,	whetstone.	-0X	*-oc-is	praecox,	early-ripe.
	*-0V-is	bōs,	ox.		*-og-is	Allobrox,	Allobrogian.
-05	*oss-is	08,	bone.		*-oct-is	nox,	night.
FUS	*-ud-is	pecus,	cattle, sheep.	-ux	-c-is	crux,	cr088.
	*-ur-is	Ligus,	a Ligurian.		-ug-is	coniux,	spouse.
	-or-is	corpus,	body.	-ūx	-ūc-is	lūx,	light.
	-er-is	scelus,	crime.		-fig-is	[früx,]	fruit.
-ūs		sūs,	swine.	-lx	-lc-is	falx,	sickle.
	-ūd-is	incūs,	anvil.	-nx	-nc-is	lanx,	dish.
	-ūr-is	iūs,	right.	-rx	-re-is	arx,	citadel.
	-ūt-is	salūs,	weal.				

## C. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A MUTE.

-āc \*-act-is lāc, milk. -ut \*-it-is caput, head. -&c \*-ēc-is āllēc, pickle (68, 12).

## D. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A VOWEL.

-e	-i-s	mare, sea.
-0	-on-is	Saxo, Saxon.
-ŏ	-ōn-īs	pāvð, peacock.
	-in-is	homŏ, man.
	*-n-is	carŏ, flesh.

### FOURTH DECLENSION.

61. The Fourth Declension embraces only dissyllabic and polysyllabic stems in u.

The endings are those of the Third Declension.

In the Genitive and Ablative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural (sometimes, too, in the Dative Singular), the **u** of the stem absorbs the vowel of the ending, and becomes long. In the Dative and Ablative Plural it is weakened to i before the ending -bus.

The Accusative Singular, as always in vowel stems, has the ending -m, without a connecting vowel (compare the Accusative in -i-m of the stems in i), hence -u-m.

	MASCULINE.		NEUTER.		
Se	N.	früctus, fruit.	PL-früctüs,	Secornū, horn.	PLcornua,
	G.	frūctūs,	frūctuum,	cornüs,	cornuum,
	D.	früctul (fruetu),	früctibus,	cornū,	cornibus,
	Ac.	früctum,	früctüs,	cornū,	cornua,
	V.	früctus,	frūctūs,	cornū,	cornua,
	Ab.	frūctū.	früctibus.	cornū.	cornibus.

REMARKS.—I. Dat. Abl. The original form -u-bus is retained always in acus, arcus, quercus, tribus, and in classical times in partus. But artus, genu, lacus, portus, specus, tonitrū, verū, have both forms.

2. Domus, house, is declined: G. domu-os (archaic), domu-is and domī (early), domu-us (late), domūs. D. domō (early), domuī. Ac. domum. V. domus. Ab. dom-ū (sporadie), domō. Loe. domī. Pl. N. domūs. G. domōrum (Lucr. always, Verg., Flor.), domuum (late). D. Ab. domībus. Ac. domōs, domūs. Classical forms are those in black-faced type. A classical variant for domī (Loc.) is domuī.

Notes.—1. Singular: Genitive. In early inscriptions we find the ending -os, as senātuos; and in early authors not unfrequently -is, along with the contraction -ūs (-uis), which becomes the regular form in classical times. In inscriptions under the empire -us is occasionally found, as exercituus. The termination -ī, after the analogy of the Second Declension, is common in early Latin, and is still retained in some words even into the classical period; as senātī (Crc., Sall., Livy), tumultī (Sall.).

2. Dative. In the early time -uēī is found very rarely for -uī. Also ū, as senātū, frūctū, which became the only form for neuters. In classical times -ū in masc. and fem. is poetical only (Caesar uses, however, cāsū, exercitū, magistrātū, senātū, quaestū), but extends to prose in the Augustan age and later.

3. Plural: Nom., Acc., Voc. In imperial inscriptions -uus occurs.

4. Genitive. The poets frequently contract -uum into -um for metrical reasons, and this usage was sometimes extended to prose (not by Cicero) in common words; as passum for passuum.

Colus, distaff, belongs properly to the Second Declension, but has variants: G. colüs, Ab. colü, Pl., N., Ac., colüs, from the Fourth.

**62.** Rule of Gender.—Substantives in **-us** are masculine; those in **-u** are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Feminines are acus, needle (usually), domus, house, idus (pl.), the Ides, manus, hand, penus, victuals (also m.), porticus, piazza, quinquātrūs (pl.), festival of Minerva, tribus, tribe. Early and late Latin show some further variations.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

63. The stem ends in -ē; Nominative in s.

In the Genitive and Dative Singular -ē has been shortened after a consonant.

In the Accusative Singular we find always ě.

The ending in the Genitive Singular is that of the Second Declension, -1; the other endings are those of the Third.

	MASCI	ULINE.	FEMI	ININE.
SgN.	diēs, day.	PL.—diēs,	Sc.—res, thing.	PL.—rēs,
G.	diēt,	diērum,	reī,	rērum,
D.	diēī,	diēbus,	reī,	rēbus,
Ac.	diem,	diēs,	rem,	rēs,
V.	diēs,	diēs,	rēs,	rēs,
Ab.	diē.	diēbus.	rē.	rēbus.

REMARKS.—I. Plural: Gen., Dat., Abl. Common in but two substantives, diēs, rēs. Late Latin shows also speciēbus, and very rarely spēbus and aciēbus.

2. Many words of the Fifth Declension have a parallel form, which follows the First Declension, as mollities, softness, and mollitia. Where this is the case, forms of the Fifth Declension are usually found only in the Nom., Acc., and Abl. Singular.

Notes.—1. Singular: Genitive. The older ending -e-s is found sporadically in early Latin, but usually the ending -e-i, which became later -e-i after consonants, though early poets show numerous examples of rei, spei, fidei. Ei was occasionally scanned as one syllable, whence arose the contraction e, which is retained not unfrequently in the classical period; so acië (Caes., Sall.), die (Pl., Caes., Sall., Livy, later), fide (Pl., Hor., Ov., late Prose), and other less certain cases; foccurs very rarely, principally in early Latin (but dii, Vers., pernicii, Cic.). Plēbēs, in combination with tribūnus, aedīlis, scītum, often shows a Gen. plēbī (plēbēī).

- 2. Dative. The contraction -5 is found, but less often than in the Gen.; aci6 (Sall.); die, faci6 (early Latin); fide (early Latin, ('Aes., Sall., Livy), pernici6 (Livy), and a few other forms. The Dat. in -1 is found very rarely in early Latin.
- **64.** Rule of Gender.—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are feminine except dies (which in the Sing. is common, and in the Pl. masculine), and meridies (m.), midday.

## Declension of Greek Substantives.

65. Greek substantives, especially proper names, are commonly Latinized, and declined regularly according to their stem-characteristic. Many substantives, however, either retain their Greek form exclusively, or have the Greek and Latin forms side by side. These variations occur principally in the Singular, in the Plural the declension is usually regular.

## Singular Forms of Greek Substantives.

## First Declension.

N.	Pēnelopē,	Leonidas,	Anchīsēs,
G.	Pēnelopēs,	Leonidae,	Anchisae,
D.	Pēnelopae,	Leonidae,	Anchīsae,
Ac.	Pēnelopēn,	Leonidam, ān,	Anchīsēn, am,
V.	Pēnelopē,	Leonida,	Anchisē, ā, ă,
Ab.	Pēnelopā.	Leonida.	Anchisā.

## Second Declension.

us,
,
, ō, ōna,
, ,

### Third Declension.

N.	Solon, Solo,	āēr, air:	Xenophōn,	Atlās,
G.	Solonis,	āeris,	Xenophontis,	Atlantis,
D.	Soloni,	āerī,	Xenophonti,	Atlanti,
Ac.	Solona, em,	āera, em,	Xenophonta, em,	Atlanta,
V.	Solon,	ãēr,	Xenophon,	Atlā,
Ab.	Solone.	āere.	Xenophonte.	Atlante.

N.	Thales,	Paris,	hēros, hero,
G.	Thal-ētis, -is,	Paridis, os,	hērōis,
D.	Thal-ētī, -ī,	Paridī, ĭ,	hērōī,
Ac.	Thal-ēta, -ēn, -em,	Par-ida, -im, -in,	hērōa, em,
V.	Thalē,	Pari, Paris,	hērōs,
Ab.	Thalē.	Paride.	hērōe.

## Mixed Declensions.

	п. ш.	II. III.	II. III.
N.	Orpheus,	Athōs,	Oedipūs,
G.	Orphei, ei,	Athō, ōnis,	Oedip-odis, -1,
D.	Orpheō,	Athō,	Oedipodī,
Ac.	Orpheum, ea,	Atho, on, onem,	Oedip-um, -oda,
V.	Orpheu,	Athōs,	Oedipe,
Ab.	Orpheō.	Athone.	Oedip-ode, -ō.

	II. III.	II. III.	III. IV.
N.	Achilles, eus,	Socrates,	Dīdō,
G.	Achillis, ef, f, eos,	Socratis, i,	Dīdūs, onis,
D.	Achillī,	Socrati,	Dido, oni,
Ac.	Achillem, ea, ēn,	Socraten, em,	Dīdō, ōnem,
V.	Achilles, ē, ēu, e,	Socrate, es,	Dīdō,
Ab.	Achille, ē, ī,	Socrate.	Dīdō, one.

REMARKS.—I. In the Gen. Pl. -on and -eon are found in the titles of books; as, Georgicon, Metamorphoseon.

- 2. Many Greek names, of the Third Declension in Latin, pass over into the First Declension in the Plural; as, Thūcydidās, Hyperīdae, and many names in -cratēs; as Socratēs; Pl., Socratae (also Socratēs).
- 3. In transferring Greek words into Latin, the Accusative Singular was sometimes taken as the stem:
  - So κρατήρ, Acc. κρατήρα, (punch) bowl.
    crātēr, crātēris (masc.), and crātēra (crēterra) crātērae (fem.).
    Σαλαμίς, Acc. Σαλαμῖνα, Salamis.
    Salamīs, Salamīnis, and Salamīna, ae.
- 66. Notes.—1. Singular: Genitive. The Greek termination 000 (010) appears rarely in early Latin, but \$\bar{u}\$ (00) is more frequent, especially in geographical names, etc. The termination -08 (05) is rare except in feminine patronymics in -is, -as, (G. -idos, -ados).
- 2. Dative. The ending -1 is very rare; and rarer still is the Dat. in -5 from feminines in -5, and Dat. in -\$\bar{y}\$ from Nominatives in -ys.
- 3. Accusative. -a is the most common termination in the Third Declension, and is found regularly in some words otherwise Latinized; as āera, aethera. Stems in -ō usually have -ō, very rarely -ōn,
- 4. Plural. In the Second Declension of is found occasionally in the Nom., in early Latin; as, adelphoe. The Third Declension shows frequently es in the Nom. and as in the Accusative; also occasionally on the Nom. and Acc. of neuters, and -si (but only in the poets) in the Dative.
- 5. For other peculiarities, not observable in the paradigms, the dictionaries should be consulted. Sometimes the forms are merely transliterations of Greek cases.

#### IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

## 1. Redundant Substantives. (Abundantia.)

67. A. Heterogeneous Substantives, or those whose gender varies:

I. The variation occurs in several cases in either number or in both,

abrotonum,	-us,	a plant (rare),	clipeus,	-um,	shield,
aevom (um),	-us,	age,	collum,	-us,	neck,
baculum,	-us,	staff,	costum,	-us,	a plant (rare),
balteus,	-um,	girdle,	forum,	-us,	market,
buxus,	-um,	box-wood (rare),	gladius,	-um,	sword,
[calamister],	-um,	curling-iron (rare),	intibus,	-um,	succory (rare),
cāseus,	-um,	cheese,	iugulum,	-us,	collar-bone,
cavom (um),	-us,	cavity,	nardum,	-us,	nard (rare),
cingulum,	-us,	belt,	nāsus,	-um,	nose,

. palātum,	-us,	palate,	thēsaurus,	-um,	treasure,
pileus,	-um,	cap,	uterus,	-um,	womb,
sagum,	-us,	cloak,	vāllus,	-um,	palisade,
tergum,	-us,	back,	and many	others	

- 2. The gender varies in Singular and Plural. a. The Plural has -a sometimes, while the Singular ends in -us (or -er): clivus, hill, iocus, jest, locus (loca, localities; loci, usually passages in books, topics), and many others, especially names of places.
- b. The Plural has -i, while the Singular ends in -um: filum, thread, frēnum, bit, rāstrum, hoe, and many others.
- **68.** B. Heteroclites, or substantives which show different stems with the same Nominative; Metaplasts, or those which have certain forms from another than the Nominative stem.
  - 1. 1st, 2d. esseda, -um, chariot, margarita, -um, pearl,
- ostrea, -um, oyster,
  2. 1st, 5th. düritia, -ës, hardness, māteria, -ës, matter,
  and many others. See 63, R. 2.
  - 3. 2d, 1st. mendum, -a, fault, sertum, -a, wreath.

The following form their Plural according to the First Declension only: balneum, bath, delicium, pleasure, epulum, banquet, fulmentum, prop.

4. 2d, 3d. sequester, trustee, Mulciber, Vulcan.

5. 2d, 4th. Many names of trees of the Second Declension have certain cases according to the Fourth; never, however, the Gen. and Dat. Pl., and very rarely the Dat. Sing.; as cornus, cupressus, fagus, ficus, laurus, myrtus, pinus, and a few others.

Also angiportus, alley, colus, distaff, domus, house, and a large number of substantives of the Fourth Declension which have one or two cases of the Second; so arcus has G. arcī; conātus (-um), iūssus (-um), vultus have Nom. Pl. in a; senātus has Gen. Sing. senātī. See 61, RR, NN.

Finally, some substantives of the Second Declension form individual cases according to the Fourth: fāstī (Ac. Pl. fāstūs), fretum (N. fretus, Ab. fretū), lectus (G. lectūs), tribūtum (N. tribūtus), and others.

6. 2d, 5th. diluvium, -es, flood.

7. 3d. 2d. Vās, vessel, and vāsum; palumbes, pigeon, and palumbus; [iūger], acre, and iūgerum; all Greek nouns in -a (G. atis), as poēma, poem (G. poēmatis), but Pl. Gen. poēmatōrum, Dat. Abl. poēmatīs.

8. 3d, 5th. Fames, hunger, tābes, corruption, have Abl. famē, tābē; requiēs, quiet 'G. -ētis) has Acc. requiem, Abl. requiē; satiās (G. ātis) is early and late for satietās, sufficiency, and a form satiēs is cited from late authors; plēbs (G. plēbis), commons, and plēbēs (G. plēbel).

9. 4th, 3d. Specus, cave, has occasionally forms of the Third Declension.

10. 2d, 3d, 1st. Vesper, evening, has Acc. vesperum; Dat. Abl. vesperö; Pl. Nom. vespera of the Second Declension; Acc. vesperam; Abl. vesperā of the First; Gen. vesperis; Abl. vespere; Loc. vespere, vesperī of the Third.

11. 4th, 2d, 3d. Penus, food, (G. ūs). Forms of the Second Declension are rare; of the Third early and late.

12. Variations in the same Decleusion: femur (G. femoris, feminis, etc.); iecur (G. iecoris, iecinoris, etc.); pecus, early, also pecu (G. pecoris, pecudis, etc.).

Also allee and allex, baccar and baccaris, cassis and cassida, lac and lacte (early), panis and pane (early), rete and retis, satias and satietas.

### II. Defective Substantives.

### 1. SUBSTANTIVES DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

69. A. Substantives used in Singular only: Singularia tantum,

Most abstract substantives, and names of materials; such as
ifistitia.

justice, aurum, gold.

B. Substantives used in Plural only: Plūrālia tantum.

altāria, ium. altar (sing. late). Insidiae. ambuscade. intestines. ambāgēs. round about. lactēs. angustiae. straits. lāmenta. lamentations. lautomiae, stone-quarries. antae. door-posts. children. rows (of vines). liberi. antēs. mānēs, shades of the dead. arma, orum, arms. manubiae. spoils. armāmenta, ōrum, tackle. minae. threuts. bellāria, ōrum, dessert. tonn-mall. bigae, quadrigae, two-horse, four-horse moenia, ium, chariot (sing, late). nundinae (-num). market. wedding. cancelli. nūptiae. eyelids (sing. late). cassēs. toils (snare). palpebrae. festival for dead relaopening. parentālia, caulae. neck (sing. early, late, tions. cervicēs, parietinae. ruins. and poet.). cibāria. victuals. penātēs, the Penates. claustrum, lock (sing. late). phalerae. trappings. pack-saddle. praecordia, orum, dianhraam. clītellae. codicilli. a short note. praestrigiae, jugalers' tricks. preces, -um, compedës. fetters. prayer. rattle. first-fruits. crepundia, ōrum, prīmitiae. quisquiliae, cūnae. cradle. rubbish. divitiae, riches. reliquiae, remains. dūmēta, ōrum, thorn-bush. rēnēs. kidneys. banquet. salīnae. salt-pits. epulae (epulum). excubiae. watching. scalae. stairway. funeral procession. brambles. sentēs. exsequiae, the internal organs. spolia, orum. spoils (sing, late, and exta, orum, equipments. poet.). exuviae. facētiae. witticism (sing, earsponsālia, ium, betrothal. ly and late). suppetiae. succor (early and late). calendar. winged sandals. fastī (fastūs), tālāria, ium, gullet. tenebrae, darkness. faucēs, holidays. thermae. warm baths. fēriae. tonsils. flābra. breezes. tonsillae. door (sing. early, tormina. colic. fores, late and poet.). tricks. trīcae. fraga, orum, strawberries. ūtēnsilia, ium, necessaries. grātēs, thanks. valvae, folding-doors. scourging (sing. poet, hīberna. winter quarters. verbera, um. Īdūs, Kalendae, Ides, Calends, and late). vindiciae. a legal claim. Nonae. Nones. incūnābula, swaddling-clothes. virgulta, orum, shrubbery. indūtiae. viscera, entrails (sing. poet. truce.

sacrifices for the dead.

and late).

Inferiae.

Notes.-1. Four of these have the Abl. Sing. in -e: ambage, compede, fauce, prece.

2. Names of persons or towns, and collectives and the like, may be either singulāria tantum, as Iūppiter; Rōma; capillus, hair; or plūrālia tantum, as māiōrēs, ancestors; Quirītēs; līberī, children; pulmōnēs, lungs. Many of these are not included in the above list, which is meant to contain only the principal forms.

## Akin to plūrālia tantum are :

## C. Substantives used in Plural with a special sense: Heterologa.

		_	
aedēs, is,	temple (better aedis),	aedēs,	house, palace.
aqua,	water,	aquae,	mineral springs.
auxilium,	help,	auxilia,	auxiliaries, reinforcements
carcer,	prison,	carcerēs,	barriers.
castrum,	fort,	castra,	camp.
cēra,	wax,	cērae,	waxen tablets.
comitium,	place of assemblage,	comitia,	assemblage for voting.
copia,	abundance,	copiae,	forces, troops.
dēlicium,	pleasure,	dēliciae,	pet.
facultās,	capability,	facultātēs,	goods.
fīnis,	end, limit,	fīnēs,	territory, borders.
fortūna,	fortune,	fortunae,	possessions.
habēna,	strap,	habēnae,	reins.
impedimentum,	hindrance,	impedimenta	, baggage.
līttera,	letter (of the alphabet),	litterae,	epistle, literature.
lūdus,	game, school,	lūdī,	public games.
opera,	work,	operae,	workmen.
pars,	part,	partēs,	also role.
röstrum,	beak,	rostra,	the tribunal at Rome.
sors,	lot,	sortes,	also oracle.
tabula,	board, tablet,	tabulae,	also accounts.
vigilia,	a night-watch,	vigiliae,	pickets.

#### 2. SUBSTANTIVES DEFECTIVE IN CASE.

- 70. A. Substantives occurring in only one case: Gen. dicis, form: Acc. infitias (ire), (to) lie: pessum (ire), (to) perish: Abl. pondō, in weight: sponte, of free will: tābō, corruption (Gen. late); and many verbals in ū, as accitū, admonitū, arcessītū, coāctū, compressū, concēssū, domitū, inductū, interpositū, invītātū, iūssū (other forms late), iniūssū, mandātū, missū, nātū, permissū, promptū, rogātū. A few others occur occasionally in ante-classical and post-classical Latin.
- B. Substantives with only two cases: fās, nefās, Sing. N. Ac.; instar, Sing. N. Ac.; interneciō, Sing. Ac. Ab.; naucum, Sing. G. Ac.; secus, Sing. N. Ac.; spinter, Sing. N. Ac.; suppetiae, Plur. N. Ac., and a few others. Some verbals in -us have in Plural only Nom. and Acc., as impetūs, monitūs. Greek neuters in -os have only Nom. and Acc. Singular.
- C. Substantives with three cases: faex, Sing. N., D., Plur. Ab.; virus, slime; Sing. N., G., Ab.
- D. Defective substantives with more than three cases are numerous, but in the classical period the most important are: calx, lime, cos, [daps], dica, [diciō], flāmen, blust, forum, [frūx], [indāgo], later, lūx, [ops], os, mouth, pāx, rēmex, vis, [vix], and most substantives of the Fifth Declension. The Nominatives in brackets do not occur, but only oblique cases.
- E. Němě, nobody, substitutes for Gen. and Abl. nüllius hominis, and nüllö homine. In the Dat. and Acc. it is normal; němini, něminem.

## 71.

### III. Peculiarities.

ās, assis (m.), a copper.
auceps, aucupis, fowler.
bōs (for bovs), bovis (c.), ox, cow.
G. Pl. boum.
D. Ab. būbus, bōbus.
caput, capitis (n.), head.
anceps, ancipitis, two-headed.
praeceps, -cipitis, headlong.
carō, carnis (f.), flesh.
Pl. G. carnium.
Cerēs, Cerers, Ceres.
fār, farris (n.) epett.
fel, fellis (n.), qall.

femur, femoris (n.), thigh.

iter, itineris (n.), way, route
iecur, iecoris (n.), liver.
iecinoris, iecineris, iocineris.
Iuppiter, Iovis.
mel, mellis (n.), honey.
nix, nivis (f.), snow.
os, ossis (n.), bone (48 r.).
ōs, ōris (n.), mouth.
pollis, pollinis (m.), flour.
sanguis, sanguinis (m.), blood.
senex, senis, old man.
supellēx, supellēctilis (f.), furniture.
Venus, Veneris, Venus.

## ADJECTIVES.

72. The adjective adds a quality to the substantive. Adjectives have the same declension as substantives, and according to the stem-characteristic are of the First and Second, or Third Declension.

## Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.

73. Stems in -o for masculine and neuter, -a for feminine; nominative in -us, -a, -um; (er), -a, -um. The same variations in termination occur as in the substantives; except that adjectives in -ius form Singular Genitive and Vocative regularly. See 33, R. 1 and 2.

## Bonus, bona, bonum, good.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
ScN.	bonus,	bona,	bonum.	PLbonī,	bonae,	bona.
G.	bonī,	bonae,	bonī.	bonorum,	bonārum,	bonorum.
D.	bonō,	bonae,	bono.	bonis,	bonis,	bonis.
Ac.	bonum,	bonam,	bonum.	bonōs,	bonās,	bona.
V.	bone,	bona,	bonum.	bonf,	bonae,	bona.
Ab	· bonō,	bonā,	bonō.	bonīs,	bonis,	bonis.

### Miser, misera, miserum, wretched.

ScN.	miser,	misera,	miserum, PL	-miserī,	miserae,	misera.
G.	miserī,	miserae,	miserī.	miserorum,	miserārum,	miserorum.
D.	miserō,	miserae,	miserō.	miseris,	miserīs,	miserīs.
A	. miserum	miseram,	miserum.	miseros,	miserās,	misera.
V.	miser,	misera,	miserum.	miserī,	miserae,	misera.
Al	· miserō,	miserā,	miserō.	miseris,	miseris,	miserīs.

## Piger, pigra, pigrum, slow.

Sc		piger,	pigra,	pigrum.	PL	-pigrī,	pigrae,	pigra.
	G.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigrī.		pigrōrum,	pigrārum,	pigrorum.
	D.	pigrō,	pigrae,	pigrō.		pigrīs,	pigrīs,	pigrīs.
	Ac.	pigrum,	pigram,	pigrum.		pigrōs,	pigrās,	pigra.
	V.	piger,	pigra,	pigrum.		pigrī,	pigrae,	pigra.
	Ab.	pigrō,	pigrā,	pigrō.		pigrīs,	pigrīs,	pigrīs.

REMARK.—For irregularities in the declension of ambō, both, duo, two, see 95; for meus, my, see 100, R. I.

74. Stems in -ro follow the same principle in the formation of the Nominative masculine as the substantives, except that -us is retained in ferus, wild, properus, quick, praeproperus, praeposterus, absurd, înferus, lower (înfer is early), superus, upper (super is early), and a few others in late Latin; also when -ro is preceded by a long vowel; as, austērus, harsh, mātūrus, early, prōcērus, tall, pūrus, pure, sevērus, serious, sincērus, sincere, sērus, late, vērus, true.

Remarks.—I. Dextera, dexterum, etc., right, are found side by side with dextra, dextrum, etc., throughout the language (see 8, 2). Caesar uses only the shorter form.

- 2. A few adjectives of this class lack the Nom. Sing, wholly or in part; so there is no coterus or posterus in the classical period.
- 75. Notes on the Cases.—1. The Gen. Sing. in -1 from adjectives in -ins occurs occasionally in inscriptions and in late authors. The Gen. Sing. fem. in early Latin had sometimes 51, and in inscriptions occasionally -aes and -es.
- 2. The Dat. Sing. fem. in early Latin occasionally ended in -ai, and in the oldest inscriptions in -a.
  - 3. In early inscriptions the -d of the Abl. is occasionally retained.
- 4. Very rarely in early inscriptions does the Nom. Pl. masc. end in -51s, and in one case the Nom. Pl. fem of a perfect participle ends in -51.
- 5. In poetry, but at all periods, we find **-um** alongside of **-5rum** and **-5rum** in the Gen. Plural.
- 6. In the Dat. and Abl. Pl. -iis from adjectives in -ius is often contracted to is; usually in names of months and in adjectives formed from proper names. In early inscriptions -ābus is found occasionally for -is in the Dat. and Abl. Pl. feminine.
- 76. The so-called pronominal adjectives alter, one of the two; alteruter (a combination of alter and uter), either of the two; alius, other; neuter, neither; nullus, none; solus, sole; totus, whole; ullus, any; unus, one; uter, which of the two, and their compounds, show the following variations in declension:

1. They usually make the Gen. Sing. in -Ius for all genders.

REMARKS.—I. The Gen. alius is very rare, and as a possessive its place is usually taken by alienus.

2. The I of the ending -Ius (except in alIus) could be shortened in poetry. This was usually the ease with alter, and regularly in the compounds of uter; as, utriusque.

NOTE.—The regular forms are early and rare; in classical prose only nulli (Crc. Rosc. Com. 16, 48) and occasionally aliae.

2. They usually make the Dat. Sing. in -1.

Note.—Regular forms are sometimes found, but in classical prose only alterae, nullo, toto, and perhaps totae. Ali is found in early Latin for alii.

- 3. In the compound alteruter we find usually both parts declined; sometimes the second only.
  - 4. Alius makes Nom, and Acc. Sing. neuter irregularly: aliud,

Note.—Alis and alid, for alius and aliud, are early and rare; the latter, however, occurs several times in Luca, and once in CATULLUS.

### Adjectives of the Third Declension,

77. The declension of the adjectives of the Third Declension follows the rules given for the substantives.

Most adjectives of the Third Declension are vowel stems in -i, with two (rarely three) endings in the Nominative.

The remaining adjectives of the Third Declension are consonant stems and have one ending only in the Nominative.

### ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS.

78. I. These have (except stems in -ri) one ending in the Nominative for masculine and feminine, one for neuter.

Most stems in -i form the masculine and feminine alike, with Nominative in s; but the Nominative neuter weakens the characteristic i into e. (Compare mare, sea.)

2. Several stems in -i, preceded by r (cr, tr, br), form the Nominative masculine, not by affixing s, but by dropping the i and inserting short e before the r, as, stem ācri, sharp, Nom., ācer (m.), ācris (f.), ācre (n.).

These adjectives are acer, alacer, campester, celeber, celer, equester, palüster, pedester, puter, salüber, silvester, terrester, volucer, and the last four months; and are sometimes called adjectives of three endings.

The e belongs to the stem in celer, celeris, celere, swift, and therefore appears in all cases.

	M. and F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
ScN.	facilis, easy.	facile,	ācer, sharp,	ācris,	ācre,
G.	facilis,	facilis,	ācris,	ācris,	ācris,
D.	facilī,	facili,	ācrī,	ācrī,	ācrī,
Ac.	facilem,	facile,	ācrem,	ācrem,	ācre,
V.	facilis,	facile,	ācer,	ācris,	ācre,
Ab.	facilī.	facili.	ācri.	ācrī.	ācrī.
PLN.	facilēs,	facilia,	ācrēs,	ācrēs,	ācria,
G.	facilium,	facilium,	ācrium,	ācrium,	ācrium,
D.	facilibus,	facilibus,	ācribus,	ācribus,	ācribus,
Ac.	facilēs (īs),	facilia,	ācrēs (īs),	ācrēs (īs),	ācria,
V.	facilēs,	facilia,	ācrēs,	ācrēs,	ācria,
Ab.	facilibus.	facilibus.	ācribus.	ācribus.	ācribus.

Remark.—Stems in -āli and -āri differ from the substantival declension in not suffering apocope in the Nom. Sing. neuter, except occasionally capital. See 56.

- 79. REMARKS.—1. Many adjectives of two endings (except stems in -ri) have also -e in the Ablative. This is found chiefly in the poets, very rarely, if ever, in classical prose, occasionally in early and pre-Augustan prose, and more often in inscriptions. When, however, these adjectives become proper names, -e is the rule. See 57, R. 2, N.
- 2. The Gen. Pl. in -um is found occasionally in inscriptions, frequently in the poets. In classical prose are found only Titiensum and familiarum.

Notes .- 1. The Nom. Pl. has in early Latin not unfrequently -is.

2. In the Acc. Pl., masc. and fem., of adjectives, the ending -is (eis) is found along-side of -es in every period of the language, though in decreasing proportion, and after the Augustan period principally in omnis.

#### ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING.

80. Adjective stems of one ending (consonant stems) close with 1, r, s, a p mute, a k mute, or a t mute. Examples are:

vigil, alert, memor, mindful, pauper, poor, cicur, tame, pūbēs, adult, vetus, old, vigilis. memoris, pauperis. cicuris. pūberis. veteris.

rarticeps, sharing, caelebs, unmarried, inops, poor, participis. caelibis. inopis.

audāx, bold, fēlix, lucky, duplex, double, ferōx, fierce, trux, savage, audācis. fēlīcis. duplicis. ferōcis. trucis.

dives, rich, deses, slothful, compos, possessed of, prüdens, wise, concors, harmonious divitis, desidis, compotis, prüdentis, concordis,

Present active participles are also consonant stems and follow the same declension.

## 81. The stem varieties are:

1. Liquid stems in (a) -1: vigil (G. vigil-is), alert, pervigil; (b) -r: pār (G. par-is), equal, impār (these two lengthen the vowel in the Nom.), compar, and three others; pauper (G. pauper-is), poor, über; memor (G. memor-is), mindful, immemor; concolor (G. -ōr-is), and three other compounds of color; dēgener (G. -er-is), from genus (G. gener-is).

2. Sibilant stems in (a) -s: exos (G. exoss-is), boneless (Luck.); (b) -r: gnārus

(G. gnārur-is; Plaut.), Ligus, vetus; pūbēs (G. pūber-is), impūbēs.

- 3. Mute stems in (a) a K-mute: audāx (G. audāc-is), bold, and four others; fēlīx (G. fēlīc-is), pernīx, atrōx (G. atrōc-is), ferōx, vēlōx; exlēx (G. -lēg-is); trux (G. truc-is), redux; the multiplicatives in -plex (G. -plic-is), as simplex, etc. (b) A P-mute: inops (G. inop-is); caelebs (G. caelib-is); compounds of -ceps (G. -cip-is, from capere), as particeps, and of -ceps (G. -eipit-is, from caput), as anceps, praeceps (Plaut. sometimes uses, in the Nom., ancipes, praecipes, etc.). (c) A T-mute: hebes (G. hebet-is) and three others; locuplēs (G. -plēt-is) and three others; dīves (G. dīvit-is), for which in poetry dīs (G. dīt-is), sōspes; compos (G. compot-is), impos; superstes (G. -sti-tis), āles; exhērēs (G. ed-is); dēses (G. dēsid-is), reses; compounds from substantives: cōnsors (G. -sort-is), exsors; concors, discors, misericors, sōcors, vēcors; expers (G. -ert-is), iners, sollers; āmēns (G. āment-is), dēmēns; intercus (G. cut-is); pernox (G. -noct-is); bipēs (G. -ped-is), quadrupēs, ālipēs; adjectives and participles in -āns, -ēns (G. -ant-is, -ent-is); and proper names in -ās (G. āt-is), -īs (G. -īt-is), -ns (G. -nt-is), -rs (G. -rt-is), Arpīnās, Samnīs, Veiēns, Camers.
- 82. The consonant stems have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the Accusative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.

In the oblique cases they follow in part the declension of vowel stems; thus,

 ${f r}$ . In the Ablative Singular they have  ${f i}$  and  ${f e}$ —when used as adjectives commonly  ${f i}$ ; when used as substantives commonly  ${f e}$ .

The participles, as such, have e; but used as substantives or adjectives, either e or i, with tendency to i.

- 2. In the neuter Plural they have ia; except vetus, old, which has vetera. Many have no neuter.
- 3. In the Genitive Plural they have: ium, when the stemcharacteristic is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant; um, when the characteristic is preceded by a short vowel. The participles have ium.

		M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and	F. N.
] , ,	G. D. Ac. V.	fēlīx,lucky fēlīcis, fēlīcī, fēlīcem, fēlīx, fēlīcī (e)	/,fēlīx, fēlīcis, fēlīcī, fēlīx, fēlīx, fēlīcī (e)	prūdentis, prūdentī, prūdentem, prūdēns,	prūdentī, prūdēns, prūdēns,	vetus, old veteris, veteri, veterem, vetus, vetere (I)	veteris, veteri, vetus,
1	G. D. Ac. V.	fēlīcēs, fēlīcium, fēlīcibus, fēlīcēs, fēlīcēs, fēlīcēs,	fēlīcibus, fēlīcia, fēlīcia,	prūdentium prūdentibus prūdentēs, prūdentēs,	prūdentia, , prūdentium, , prūdentibus, prūdentia, prūdentia, , prūdentibus.	veterum, veteribus veterēs, veterēs,	veterum, , veteribus, vetera, vetera,
		M. and F	٠.	N.	M. and	F.	N.
1	N. G. D. Ac.	amāns, lor amantis, amantī, amantem,	,	amāns, amantis, amantī, amāns,	Pr.—amantēs amantiu amantib amantēs amantēs	m, and	mantia, mantium, mantibus, mantia, mantia,
	Ab.	amāns, amante (i		amāns, amante (ī).	amantib		mantia,

83. Remark.—In early and late Latin, and at all periods in the poets, -e is often found for -I in the Abl. Singular. In classical prose we find regularly compote, dēside, impūbere, participe, paupere, pūbere, superstite, vetere, and frequently dīvite (but always dītī), quadrupede, sapiente. With participles, -I is usual when they are used as adjectives, but classical prose shows -e also in antecēdēns, candēns, cōnsentiēns, dēspiciēns, effluēns, hiāns, imminēns, influēns, prōfluēns, cōnsequēns (but sequēns not before Livy), titubāns, vertēns.

Notes.—1. In the Nom. and Acc. Pl. -Is for 5s belongs to early Latin and the poets, but a few cases of the Acc. are still found in Cicero. In the case of participles -Is is very common, and is the rule in Vergil and Horace. In the neuter, -a for -ia is found only in übera, vetera; ditia is always used for the unsyncopated form divitia.

2. Compound adjectives, whose primitives had -um in Gen. Pl., have usually -um instead of -ium; quadrupēs, quadrupedum, and other compounds of pēs; inops, inopum; supplex, supplicum. Also, cicur, cicurum; vetus, veterum; dīves, dīvitum; locuplēs, locuplētum (rare, usually -ium). In the poets and in later writers, -um is not unfrequently found where classical prose uses -ium.

## Irregular Adjectives.

### 84. A. ABUNDANTIA.

1. Some adjectives which end in -us, -a, -um, in the classical times, show occasionally in early Latin, in the poets, and in later Latin, forms in -is, -e, e. g., imbēcillus and imbēcillis; înfrēnus and infrēnis; biiugus and biiugis, violentus and violēns; indecērus and indeceris; so also perpetuus and perpes. In a number of other adjectives the variant forms are very rare or disputed.

2. Many adjectives which end in -is, -e, in the classical times, show parallel forms in -us, -a, -um, in early Latin, and more rarely in late Latin. Adjectives in -us, -a, -um, in early Latin, seem to have had a tendency to go over into forms in -is, -e. Thus, hilarus is the regular form in early Latin; in Cicero it is used side by side with hilaris, and later hilaris is universal. Other examples in the classical period are inermis and inermus; imberbis and imberbus; ālāris and ālārius; auxiliāris and auxiliārius; intercalāris and intercalārius; tālāris and tālārius.

## 85. B. DEFECTIVE.

- 1. Several adjectives lack a Nom. Singular, wholly or in part: as, cētera (f.), cēterum, perperum (n.), nūperum (n.), prīmōris (G.), bimaris (G.), tricorporis (G.), and a few others.
- 2. Some adjectives are defective in other cases: thus, exspēs and perdius, a are found only in the Nom.; exlēx only in the Nom. and Acc. (exlēgem); pernox only in Nom., Abl. (pernocte), and Nom. Pl. (pernoctes, rare); centimanus has only the Acc. Sing. (Hor., Ov.).; also ūnimanus (Liv.), and a few others.

## C. INDECLINABLES.

Nequam; potis, and pote (early); frugī; macte (mactus, -um, very rare); necesse, necessum, and necessus (early and poetical); volup and volupe (early); and the judicial damnās.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

**86.** The Degrees of Comparison are: Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Comparative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings -ior for the masculine and feminine, and -ius for the neuter.

The Superlative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings -is-simus, -a, -um (earlier -is-sumus).

Vowel stems, before forming the Comparative and Superlative, drop their characteristic vowel.

Positive.	Comparativi	SUPERLATIVE.
	M. and F.	N.
altus, a, um, high,	altior, higher, alt	ius, altissimus, a, um, highest.
fortis, e, brave,	fortior, for	tius, fortissimus.
ūtilis, e, useful,	ūtilior, ūti	lius, ütilissimus.
audāx, bold,	audācior, aud	lācius, audācissimus.
prūdēns, wise,	prüdentior, pri	identius, prūdentissimus.

Note.—In early Latin we find very rarely -ios for ior; also -ior used for the neuter as well.

#### Peculiarities.

87. I. Adjectives in -er add the Superlative ending (-rumus) -rimus (for -simus by assimilation; see 9, I) directly to the Nominative masculine. The Comparative follows the rule.

Positive.		Comp	SUPERLATIVE.	
miser, a, um,	wretched,	miserior,	miserius,	miserrimus.
celer, is, e,	swift,	celerior,	celerius,	celerrimus.
ācer, ācris, ācre,	sharp,	ācrior,	ācrius,	ācerrimus.

Remarks.—1. Dexter, right, and sinister, left, have always dexterior and sinisterior in the Comparative. Deterior, worse, deterrimus, lacks a Positive.

2. Vetus, old, has Comp. veterior (archaic) or vetustior; Sup., veterrimus. Mātūrus, ripe, has occasionally Sup. mātūrrimus in addition to the normal mātūrissimus.

Note.—In early Latin and in inscriptions this rule is occasionally violated. Thus celerissimus in Ennius; integrissimus, miserissimus, in inscriptions.

- 2. Some Comparatives in -er-ior, whose Positive is lacking or rare, form the Superlative either in -rēmus by metathesis; or in -imus or -umus; or in both. These are: citerior, on this side, citimus (rare); exterior, outer, extrēmus, extimus (latter not in Cic.); dexterior (87, I, R. I; once in Cic.), dextimus (rare; not in Cic.); Inferior, lower, Infimus, Imus; interior, inner, intimus; posterior, hinder, postrēmus, postumus; superior, upper, suprēmus, summus.
- 3. Six adjectives in -ilis add -limus to the stem, after dropping -i, to form the Superlative; perhaps by assimilation: facilis, easy; difficilis, hard; similis, like; dissimilis, unlike; gracilis, slender, and humilis, low.

facilis, Comp. facilior, Sup. facillimus.

4. Adjectives in -dicus, -ficus, -volus, borrow the Comparative and Superlative from the participial forms in -dīcēns, -ficēns, and -volēns.

benevolus, benevolent, Comp. benevolentior, maledicus, scurrilous.

māgnificus, distinguished.

Comp. benevolentior, maledicentior, maledicentissimus.

magnificus, distinguished.

Sup. benevolentissimus.

maledicentissimus.

Note. - Benevolëns, malevolëns, maledicëns, still occur in early Latin.

In like manner egēnus and providus form their Comparative and Superlative.

egēnus, needy, egentior, egentissimus. prōvidus, far-sighted, prōvidentior, prōvidentissimus.  Adjectives in -us (os), preceded by a vowel (except those in -quos), form the Comparative and Superlative by means of magis and māximē, more and most.

idoneus, st., Comp. magis idoneus, Sup. māximē idoneus.

antiquos, old, Comp. antiquior, Sup. antiquissimus.

Remark.—But pius, pious, which lacks the Comparative, forms the Superlative regularly, piissimus (in inscriptions also pientissimus); likewise in late Latin, impius.

Notes.—1. A few words, chiefly in early Latin, show the normal comparison. In Cic. only, assiduissimē (adv.) and alsius.

2. Comparison by means of plūs and plūrimum is late.

Some Comparatives and Superlatives are in use, whilst the corresponding Positive is either lacking or rare.

So deterior (87, 1, B. 1); ocior, swift, ocissimus; potior, better, potissimus; exterior, outer (87, 2), from exterus, on the outside, and prep. extra, without; superior, upper (87, 2), from superus, on the top, and prep. supra, above; Inferior, tower (87, 2), from Inferus, below, and prep. Infra, below; posterior, hinder (87, 2), from posterus, coming after, and prep. post, after; citerior, on this side (87, 2), from citer, and prep. citra, on this side.

- 8. The Positive stem of existing Comparatives is sometimes met with only in a preposition or an adverb; as, ante, before; anterior, that is before; prope, near; propior, proximus; ülterior, further, ültimus, from ültrā, beyond; interior, inner, intimus, from intrā, within; prior, former, prīmus, first, from prō, before; sequior (late), worse, from secus.
- Many adjectives lack one or both of the degrees of comparison;
   especially those denoting material, relationship, time, etc.

Novus, new, falsus, untrue, meritus, deserved, have no Comparative.

Longinquos, afar, propinquos, near, salūtāris, healthful, iuvenis, young (Comparative iūnior), and senex, old (Comparative senior), have no Superlative.

"Youngest" and "oldest" are expressed by minimus, māximus (nātū).

 ${\tt Note}.{\tt -The\ Plautine}$  and late  ${\tt medioximus}, {\it middle most},$  lacks Positive and Comparative.

- 10. Dives, rich, shows in Cic. only divitior and divitissimus; otherwise the Comparative and Superlative are found principally in poetry and later prose, the more usual forms being the syncopated ditior, ditissimus.
- 88. Participles used as adjectives are subject also to the same laws of comparison: as, amāns, loving, amantior, amantissimus; apertus, open, apertior, apertissimus.

89. The Superlative follows the declension of adjectives of Three Endings of the First and Second Declensions. The Comparative is declined according to the Third Declension, thus:

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
ScN.	altior,	altius.	PLaltiōrēs,	altiöra.
G.	altioris,	altiōris.	altiōrum,	altiorum.
D.	altiorī,	altiörī.	altioribus,	altioribus.
Ac.	altiorem,	altius.	altiōrēs,	altiōra.
V.	altior,	altius.	altiores,	altiōra.
Ab.	altiore and -i,	altiore and -I.	altiōribus,	altioribus.

REMARKS.—I. In classical prose the Abl. Sing. ends in -e. In the poets and in early and late prose, often in -I.

2. Extremely rare is the ending -is for -ēs in the Nom. Plural. In the Acc. Pl. this ending -is (-ēis) is more common but still not frequent, and confined mainly to plūrīs, minōrīs, māiōrīs, meliōrīs. The neuter in -ia is found rarely in complūria, and perhaps once in plūria.

3. The Gen. Pl. in -ium is found in plurium and complurium only.

90.		Irr	egular C	omparison.	
bonus, malus, magnus, parvus, multus,	good, bad, great, small, much,	-	melior, pēior, māior, minor, —— plūrēs,	melius, pēius, māius, minus, plūs (no Dat. nor Abl.), plūra.	optimus. pessimus. māximus. minimus. plūrimus.
nēquam, frūgī (indecl.),	worthless, frugal,		complürēs, nēquior, frūgālior,		nēquissimus. frūgālissimus.

## ADVERBS.

91. Most adverbs are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of nominal or pronominal stems.

The cases from which they are derived are principally the Accusative and the Ablative.

1. (a) From the Accusative are Substantival Adverbs in -tim. This was a favorite formation, and is used very often in all periods. In the classical times the adverbs of this form are:

Acervātim, articulātim, centuriātim, certātim, generātim, gradātim, gregātim, membrātim, paulātim, prīvātim, sēparātim, singulātim, statim, summātim, viritim, tribūtim, strictim, pedetemptim, raptim, fīrtim, partim, praesertim, confēstim, and a few others; disguised forms of -tim are: caesim, incisim, sēnsim, cursim, passim, vicissim, for caed-tim (9, 1-3), etc.: also interim.

- (b) A few very common adverbs are, perhaps, from Λccusative Singular feminine of adjectives and pronominal stems. Chiefly clam, secretly, coram, in one's presence, palam, openly, perperam, wrongly, tam, so, quam, as, aliquam, some, iam, already; and forms in -fariam, as bifariam, multifariam, etc.
- (c) The Accusative Singular neuter of many adjectival and pronominal stems is used as an adverb. This is true of all Comparatives.

Multum, much; paulum, a little; nimium, too much; cēterum, for the rest; prīmum, first; postrēmum, finally; potissimum, chiefly; facile, easily; dulce, sweetly; trīste, sadly; impūne, scot-free; aliquantum, somewhat, and others.

To the Comparatives belong magis, more; nimis, too; satis, enough.

- (d) The Accusative Plural feminine is found in aliās, at other times, perhaps in forās, out-of-doors. The Accusative Plural neuter is found in alia, cētera, omnia, and occasionally in reliqua and a few others.
- 2. (a) From the Ablative are some substantival adverbs; the principal ones in classical Latin being domō, at home; impendiō, greatly; initiō, at the outset; modo, only; oppidō, very; prīncipiō, in the beginning; prīvātō, privately; vulgō, commonly; forte, by chance; māgnopere, greatly, and other compounds of -opere; grātis, for nothing, and ingrātiis, and a few others.
  - (b) Ablatives are also adverbs in ē from adjectives in -us and -er: altus, lofty, altē; pulcher, beautiful, pulchrē; miser, wretched, miserē. Also ferē and fermē (Sup.), almost.
- (c) The Ablative of some adjectives and pronouns serves as an adverb:

tūtō, safely; falsō, falsely; perpetuō, ceaselessly; continuō, forthwith; improvisō, unexpectedly; prīmō, at first; hōo, here; istō, there, etc.

- (d) In a few cases the adverbial form is the Abl. Sing. feminine:
- aliā, otherwise; aliquā, somehow; dexterā and dextrā, to the right; sinistrā and laevā, to the left hand; quā, on which side; rēctā, straightway, and some others.
- (e) A large number of these adjectives show adverbs in two endings, sometimes with a difference in meaning:

consults and consults, purposely; certs, at least, and certs, certainly (certs scio, I certainly know; certs scio, I know for certain); rars, thinly, and rars, seldom; vers, in truth, and vers, true but; rects, correctly, and rects, straightway; dexters or dextra, to the right; and dexters, skillfully.

(f) Ablatives are also qui, how (archaic), nequiquam, to no purpose; alioqui, otherwise; perhaps also div, by day and its compounds.

- 3. Locative in origin are the following, in addition to those mentioned under 37, 5: die (in combination with numeral adjectives in early Latin, as die septimi) and its compounds cottidie, daily, hodie, today, pridie, the day before, postridie, the day after; quotannis, yearly; foris, outside. Also many forms from the pronounial stems, as hie, illie, istic (isti belongs to early Latin and Verg.); sic, so, ut (uti, utei), as; iti, there, and its compounds alibi, ibidem; ubi (cubi), where, and its compounds.
- 4. A number of adverbs cannot be referred to a definite case, as: adverbs of separation: hinc, hence, illinc (illim), istinc (istim), thence; temporal adverbs: tunc, then, cum, when, quondam, once, quandō, when ? and its compounds; also, ante, before; post (poste), after; paene, almost; prope, propter, near; saepe, often; circiter, around; praeter, past; ergō, therefore; crās, to-morrow; hand (hau, haut), not; item, likewise; susque dēque, up and down; vix, scarcely.
- 92. r. Adjectives and participles of the Third Declension form their adverbs by adding -ter (-iter) to the stem; stems in -nt dropping the t, and stems in a k-mute inserting the connecting vowel i before the ending; also a few adjectives of the Second Declension:

fortis, brave, fortiter; ferox, wild, ferociter; prūdēns, foreseeing, prūdenter.

Exceptions: audāx, bold, audāc-ter (seldom audāciter); difficilis, hard to do, difficulter, difficiliter (but generally, non facile, vix, aegrē), and others.

- 2. A large number of adjectives of the Second Declension in -us, -a, -um, and -er, -era, -erum, form in early and late Latin their adverbs by dropping the stem vowel and adding -iter (those in -tus added -er only). Many of these occur in classical writers alongside of the normal form in -ē: hūmāniter and hūmānē, humanely; largiter and largē, lavishly; turbulenter and turbulentē, riotously.
- 3. Some adverbs of origin are formed from substantival or adjectival stems by the ending -tus. In classical Latin mainly antiquitus, from early time; divinitus, from the gods; funditus, from the foundation; penitus, from the depths; radicitus, from the roots; also intus, from within.
- 4. The termination -vorsus, -vorsum, is used to show direction whither; but in classical Latin it is found principally in the adverbs: introrsus (introvorsus), inwards; prorsus (-um), onwards; rūrsus (-um, rūsum), back; sūrsum (sūsum), up; vorsum, towards.
- 5. A very large number of adverbs are formed by adding various other terminations; as, -de: inde, thence, unde, whence: -dem: pridem, long ago, itidem, likewise, etc.; -dō: quandō, when, etc.; -dam: quondam, once; -dum: dūdum, a while ago; vixdum, hardly yet, etc.; -per: nūper, lately, parumper, a little, semper, always, etc.; -quam: umquam, ever, numquam, never, etc.; -secus: extrinsecus, outside, etc.; -tenus: quātenus, how far? etc.

6. Syntactical and miscellaneous: admodum, very (to a degree), dēnuō, anew, imprīmis; super, above, and its compounds, dēsuper, insuper; extemplō, at once; ūsque, to, and its compounds; invicem, in turn; adeō, so; anteā, before; intereā, meanwhile; posteā, after; praetereā, besides; proptereā, on that account, and a few others.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

93. The Comparative of the adverb is the Accusative neuter of the Comparative of the adjective. The Superlative ends in -is-simē, -er-rimē, etc., according to the Superlative of the adjective.

Positi	VE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
altē,	loftily,	altius,	altissimē.
pulchrē,	beautifully,	pulchrius,	pulcherrimē.
miserē,	poorly,	miserius,	miserrimē.
fortiter,	bravely,	fortius,	fortissimē.
audācter,	boldly,	audācius,	audācissimē.
tūtō,	safely,	tūtius,	tūtissimē.
facile,	easily,	facilius,	facillimē.
bene,	well,	melius,	optimē.
male,	ill,	pēius,	pessimē.
[parvus],	small,	minus, less,	minimē, least.
[māgnus],	great,	magis, more,	māximē, most.
multum,	much,	plūs, more,	plūrimum.
cito,	quickly,	citius,	citissimē.
diū,	long,	diūtius,	diūtissimē.
saepe,	often,	saepius,	saepissimē.
nüper,	recently,	,	nüperrimē.
satis,	enough,	satius, better,	

## NUMERALS.

### NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

**94.** The Cardinal numerals answer the question **quot**, how many? and are the numbers used in counting. The Ordinal numerals are derived from these and answer the question **quotus**, which one in the series? They are as follows:

	1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.	2. Ordinal Numbers.
1	I ūnus, ūna, ūnum	primus, -a, -um (prior)
2	II duo, duae, duo	secundus (alter)
3	III trēs, tria	tertius .
4	IV (IIII) quattuor	quārtus
5	V quinque	quintus
6	VI sex	sextus
7	VII septem	septimus
	4	

1.	CARDINAL	NUMBERS.

## 2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

		11 0111	TO MEDILEO	w. Ondinal roughing.
	8	VIII	octō	octāvus
	9	IX	novem	nōnus
	10	X	decem	decimus
	11	XI	ündecim	ūndecimus
	12	XII	duodecim	duodecimus
	13	XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus
	14	XIV	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
	15	XV	quindecim	quintus decimus
	16	XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus
	17	XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus
	18	XVIII	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
	19	XIX	ündēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
	20	XX	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
	21	XXI	vīgintī ūnus	vicēsimus prīmus
	22	XXII	vīgintī duo	vīcēsimus secundus
	23	XXIII	vīgintī trēs	vīcēsimus tertius
	24	XXIV	vīgintī quattuor	vīcēsimus quārtus
	25	XXV	viginti quinque	vīcēsimus quintus
	26	XXVI	viginti sex	vīcēsimus sextus
	27	XXVII	viginti septem	vīcēsimus septimus
	28	XXVIII	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus
	29	XXIX	ūndētrīgin:ā	tindētrīcēsimus
	30	XXX	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
	40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
	50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquagesimus
	60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
	70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
	80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
	90	XC	nonāgintā	nonāgēsimus
	100	C	centum	centēsimus
	101	CI	centum et ūnus	centēsimus prīmus [mus
	115	CXV	centum et quindecim	centēsimus (et) quintus deci-
	120	CXX	centum et viginti	centēsimus vīcēsimus
	121	CXXI	centum viginti ūnus	centēsimus vicēsimus primus
	200	CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
	300	CCC	trecenti	trecentēsimus
	400	CCCC	quadringenti	quadringentēsimus
	500	D (I3)	quingenti	quingentësimus
	600	DC	sēscentī	sēscentēsimus
	700	DCC	septingenti	septingentēsimus
	800	DCCC	octingenti	octingentēsimus
	900	DCCCC	nongenti	nongentësimus
1	.000	M (CIO)	mille	mīllēsimus

	1. CAR	DINAL NUMBERS.	2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.
1001	MI	mīlle et ünus	mīllēsimus prīmus
1101	MCI	mille centum unus	mīllēsimus centēsimus prīmus
1120	MCXX	mille centum viginti	mīllēsimus centēsimus vīcē-
		[ūnus	simus [simus prīmus
1121	MCXXI	mīlle centum vigintī	mīllēsimus centēsimus vīcē-
1200	MCC	mīlle ducentī	mīllēsimus ducentēsimus .
2000	MM	duo mīlia (millia)	bis mīllēsimus
		bīna mīlia	
2222		duo milia ducenti vi-	bis mīllēsimus ducentēsimus
		gintī duo	vīcēsimus secundus
5000	CCI	quinque milia	quinquiës millesimus
		quina milia	
10,000	CCIDD	decem mīlia	deciēs mīllēsimus
		dēna mīlia	
21,000		ūnum et vīgintī mīlia	semel et vīciēs mīllēsimus
100,000		centum milia	centiēs mīllēsimus
		centēna mīlia [mīlia	
,000,000		deciēs centēna (centum)	deciēs centiēs mīllēsimus

95. The Cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except: unus, one, duo, two, tres, three, the hundreds beginning with ducenti, two hundred, and the plural milia, thousands, which forms milium and milibus.

				M and F.	N.
N.	duo, two,	duae,	duo,	trēs, three,	tria.
G.	duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	trium,	trium.
D.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	tribus,	tribus.
A.	duōs, duo,	duās,	duo,	trēs, trīs,	tria.
Ab.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	tribus,	tribus.

Like duo is declined ambo, -ae, -o, both.

1.

Remarks.—1. For the declension of unus see 76. It occurs also in plural forms in connection with pluralia tantum, as unis litteris (Cic. Att., v. 9, 2), or with another numeral in the sense only; in the latter sense also with substantives.

- 2. The Gen. of the hundreds, ducenti, etc., ends in -um and not-ōrum. This must be distinguished from the use of the neuter singular in -um as a collective, as argenti sēscentum (Luc.), a six hundred of silver.
- 3. The Pl. mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus, are treated almost always as substantives, the adjectival form being the Singular.

Notes.—1. The form oines for unus is found in early Latin. A Voc. une is occasional (Car., 37, 17).

2. For duae late Latin shows occasionally duo, and in inscriptions dua, for neuter

duo, is sometimes found. The Gen. duum (old duom) for duorum is not unfrequent. In the Dat. and Abl., duo is found in inscriptions, and for ambobus occasionally ambis. In the Acc. Pl. masc., duo and ambo for duos and ambos are quite common in early Latin, and also in classical times, but the better forms are duos, ambos.

3. Quattor is found for quattuor occasionally in inscriptions, and in early poetry

quattuor was sometimes scanned as a dissyllable.

4. In inscriptions the forms meilia and millia are also found.

5. In regard to spelling of the Ordinals we find in early Latin quinctus as well as quintus; septumus and decumus regularly, and often the endings -ēnsimus and -ēnsumus in Ordinals from vicēsimus on.

### 96.

## 1. Compound Numerals.

- 1. From 10 to 20, as in the tables, or separately: decem et tres.
- 2. The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, etc., are commonly expressed by subtraction; occasionally, as in English, but never in Cicero, and very rarely in other classical authors. duodecentum is not found, and undecentum but once (PLIN. MAI.).
- 3. From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as the English: twenty-one, viginti ūnus; or, one and twenty, ūnus et (atque) viginti; as, twenty-one years old: annōs ūnum et viginti (viginti ūnum), ūnum et viginti annōs nātus. But compounds like septuāgintā et trēs are not uncommon, though avoided by good writers.
- 4. From 100 on, et may be inserted after the first numeral, if there be but two numbers; as, centum quattuor, or centum et quattuor. If the smaller number precedes, the et should be inserted; likewise in all cases where a word is inserted within the compound numeral, as ducenti anni et viginti. If there be three numerals, the et is regularly omitted; exceptions are very rare.
  - 5. In compound ordinals alter is preferred to secundus.
- 6. Centēna mīlia is often omitted after the numeral adverb deciēs = 1,000,000; especially in stating sums of money.
- 7. Fractions are expressed by pars (omitted or expressed) in combination with dimidia  $(\frac{1}{2})$ , tertia  $(\frac{1}{3})$ , quārta  $(\frac{1}{4})$ , etc. A Plural numerator is expressed by a Cardinal; as, duae quintae  $(\frac{2}{3})$ . The fraction is often broken up; as, pars dimidia et tertia  $(\frac{5}{6} = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3})$ . The even denominators could be divided; as, dimidia tertia  $(\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{3} = \frac{1}{6})$ . Instead of dimidia without pars, dimidium is used.

## 2. Numeral Signs.

D is short for IO, M for CIO. Adding O on the right of IO multiplies by 10; IOO = 5000; IOOO = 50,000. Putting C before as often as O stands after multiplies the right-hand number by 2; CIO = 1000; CCIOO = 10,000; CCCIOO = 100,000. A line above multiplies by 1000;  $\overline{V} = 5000$ . A line above and at each side multiplies by 100,000:  $|\overline{X}|$  | IIII| = 1,400,000. These signs may be combined: thus,  $|\overline{X}|$  |  $\overline{X}$  |  $\overline{X}$ 

## 97.

ündetricenī

### 3. Distributive Numerals.

1	singuli, -ae, -a, one each.	30	trīcēnī
2	bīnī, -ae, -a, two each.	40	quadrāgēnī
3	ternī (trīnī)	50	quinquāgēni
4	quaterni	60	sexāgēnī
5	quini	70	septuāgēnī
6	sēnī	80	octōgēnī
7	septēnī	90	nonagenī
8	octoni	100	centēnī-
9	novění	102	centēnī bīnī
10	dēnī	125	centeni viceni quini
11	undēnī	200	ducēnī
12	duodēnī	300	treceni
13	ternī dēnī	400	quadringēnī
14	quaterní dění	. 500	quingēnī
15	quini dēni	600	sexcēnī (sēscēnī)
16	sēnī dēnī	700	septingēnī
17	septēnī dēnī	800	octingēnī
18	octoni deni, duodeviceni	900	nongeni
19	novēnī dēnī, ũndēvīcēnī	1000	singula milia
90	vicēni	2000	bīna mīlia
21	vīcēnī singulī	3000	trīna mīlia
22	vicēnī binī, binī et vicēnī	10,000	dēna mīlia
28	duodētrīcēnī	100,000	centēna mīlia

These answer the question quotens, how many each?

REMARKS.—I. The Gen. Pl. masc. and neuter ends usually in -um, except that singulus has always singulorum, and CICERO uses binorum.

- 2. The Distributives are used with an exactness which is foreign to our idiom, whenever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table. But when **singulf** is expressed, the Cardinal may be used.
- 3. The Distributives are used with plūrālia tantum: bīnae lītterae, two epistles. But with these ūnī is used for one, trīnī for three: ūnae lītterae, trīnae lītterae.
- 4. The same rules as to the insertion or omission of et apply to the Distributives as to the Ordinals (96, 1. 3, 4).

Notes.—1. The poets and later prose writers occasionally use the Distributives for Cardinals, with words other than plūrālia tantum (n. 3); also some forms of the Singular. Especially noteworthy is the combination trīnum nūndinum, which is technical, and therefore found also in model prose.

2. Parallel forms not found in classical times are quadrini (early, late), and the late du(o)centēni, trecentēni, quadringentēni, quingentēni, ses(x)centēni, millēni, etc.

## 4. Multiplicative Numerals.

# Only the following forms occur:

1	simplex,	single,	5	quincuplex
2	duplex,	double,	7	septemplex
3	triplex,	triple,	10	decemplex
4	quadruplex,	quadruple.	100	centuplex

These answer the question, how many fold?

## 5. Proportional Numerals.

## Only the following forms occur:

1	simplus, -a, -um,	single,	4	quadruplus
2	duplus,	double.	7	septuplus
3	triplus		8	octuplus

These answer the question, how many times as great?

## 98. NUMERAL ADVERBS.

1	semel, once,	22	bis et vīciēs, vīciēs et bis,
2	bis, twice.		vīciēs bis *
3	ter	30	trīciēs
4	quater	40	quadrāgiēs
5	quinquies (-ens)	50	quinquagiës
6	sexiës (-ēns)	60	sexāgiēs
7	septiēs (-ēns)	70	septuāgiēs
8	octiēs (-ēns)	80	octōgiēs
9	noviēs (-ēns)	90	nōnāgiēs
10	deciēs (-ēns)	100	centiēs
11	ūndeciās (-ēns)	200	ducentiës
12	duodeciēs, etc.	400	quadringentiës
13	ter deciēs, tredeciēs	500	quingentiës
14	quater decies, quattuordecies	600	sexcenties (sescenties)
15	quinquies decies, quindecies	700	septingenties
16	sexiēs deciēs, sēdeciēs	800	octingentiës
17	septiēs deciēs	900	nongenties
18	duodēvīciēs, octiēs deciēs	1,000	mīlliēs
19	ūndēvīciēs, noviēs deciēs	2,000	bis mīlliēs
20	vīciēs	100,000	centies millies
21	semel et vīciēs, vīciēs et semel,	1,000,000	mīlliēs mīlliēs, deciēs cen
	vīciēs semel *		tiēs mīlliēs

These answer the question quotiens (es): how often?

<sup>\*</sup> Not semel vīciēs, bis vīciēs, etc., because that would be, once twenty times = 20 times; twice twenty times = 40 times; this, however, does not hold for numerals between 10 and 20.

REMARKS.—I. These adverbs, from quinquiës on, have an older form in -ēns; quinquiëns. In totiens, so often, and quotiens, how often, this remained the more usual form in classical times.

2. The combination of an adverb with a distributive adjective was much liked by the Romans: as bis bina for quaterna, etc. But the normal forms are not unfrequent.

NOTE.—For the adverbs from **undecis** on, examples are very rare, and some are cited only from the grammarians. So, when two forms are given, one is often due to the grammarians; thus **quinquies** decies, sexies decies, are cited only from Priscian. The order, too, of compound adverbs varies.

## PRONOUNS.

## 99. Pronouns point out without describing.

SUBSTANTIVE.

Note.—The pronoun is not a word used instead of a noun. The noun says too much, for all nouns (proper as well as common) are originally descriptive; the pronoun simply points out. The noun says too little, because it cannot express person, as ego, I, tū, thou; it cannot express local appurtenance, as hīc, this (here), ille, that (there).

### A. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

POSSESSIVE.

## 100. I. Personal Pronouns of the First Person.

Sg.	-N.	ego,	I,	
	G.	mei,	of me,	meus, -a, -um, mine or my.
	D.	mĭhī,	to, for me,	
	Ac.	mē,	me,	
	Ab.	mē,	from, with, by me.	
PL.	-N.	nōs,	we,	
	G.	nostrī,	of us,	
		nostrum	,	noster, nostra, nostrum, our or ours.
	D.	nōbīs,	to, for us.	
	Ac.	nōs,	us,	
	Ab.	nobis.	from, with, by us.	

REMARKS.—I. The Voc. Sing. masc. of meus is mī, except when meus is used with a substantive which does not change its form in the Voc.; thus, meus ocellus (Plaut.; possibly, however, appositional), but mī anime.

2. Nostrum in the Gen. Pl. is the form for the Partitive Genitive.

Notes.—1. Early Latin shows the following: Sg., N. egō; G. mīs; D. mī, mihēl (inscr.); mihē (inscr.); Ac. mēd, mēmē; Ab. mēd (mēmē is doubtful); Pl., N. Ac. ēnōs (in Carmen Arvale only); G. nostrōrum, nostrārum (for nostrum); D. Ab. nōbēls (inscr.).

2. In late Latin mf also serves for the Voc. Sing. fem. and Voc. Pl. masc. Meum, nostrum, in the Gen. Pl. of the Possessives, are not unfrequent in early Latin.

3. The forms of meus, of tul and tuos, of sul and suos, very frequently suffer Synizesis (727) in early Latin.

4. On the combination of these pronouns with -met and -pte see 102, N. 2, 8.

#### 101. II. Personal Pronouns of the Second Person.

		SUB	STANTIVE.	Possessive.
Sc	N. V.	tū,	thou,	
	G.	tuī,	of thee,	
	D.	tibī,	to, for thee,	tuus (-os), -a, -um (-om), thy or thine.
	Ac.	tē,	thee,	
	Ab.	tē,	from, with, by thee.	
PL	N.	vös,	ye or you,	
	G.	vestrī,	of you,	
		vestrum,		vester (archaic voster), vestra, vestrum,
	D.	võbīs,	to, for you,	your or yours.
	Ac.	võs,	you,	
	Ab.	võbīs,	from, with, by you.	

Notes.-1. Early forms are: G. tis; D. tibei (inser.), tibe (inser.); Ac. Ab. ted. tětě; Pl. G. vostrí, vostrôrum, -ārum.

- 2. Vestrum is for the Partitive Genitive.
- 3. Tuom and vostrom in the Gen. Pl. of the Possessives are rare and confined to early Latin.
  - 4. On Synizesis see 100, N. 3. On combination with -met or -pte see 102, N. 2, 3.

### III. Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.

102. The original personal pronoun of the third person, together with its possessive, is used only as a reflexive in Latin, and therefore lacks a Nominative. Its place is taken in the oblique cases by the Determinative is (103).

## DETERMINATIVE.

Possessive.

Sg.—N. G.	[is, ea, id], he, she, it, ēius, of him,	supplied by the Genitive.  ēius, his, hers, its.
PLN.	[eī, iī, ī; eae, ea], they,	o Summa o Summa o Summa de de la de

Ab.

SUBSTANTIVE.

rum, earum, edrum, of them, edrum, earum, edrum, their or theirs. etc.

			REFLEXIVE.	
		Su	BSTANTIVE.	Possessive.
Sc	-N.	-		
	G. D. Ac. Ab.	suī, sibī, sē, sēsē, sē, sēsē,	of him, her, it(self), to, for, him(self), her(self), him(self), her(self), from, with, by him(self).	<b>snus</b> (- <b>os</b> ), - <b>a</b> , - <b>um</b> (- <b>om</b> ), his, her(s), its (own).
PL	G. D. Ac.	suī, sibī, sē, sēsē,	of them(selves), to, for them(selves), them(selves),	suns (-os), -a, -um (-om), their (own), theirs.

sē, sēsē, from, with, by them(selves).

Notes.—1. Inscriptions show sibel. The use of sess in classical prose is regulated mainly by artistic reasons. Suom in Gen. Pl. from suus is rare and early.

2. The enclitic -met may be added to all the forms of ego (except nostrum), to all the forms of t\vec{u} (except t\vec{u} and vestrum), to sibi, s\vec{e}, and some forms of suus; egomet, I myself. Instead of t\vec{u}met, t\vec{u}te is found; from which early poets formed occasionally t\vec{u}temet, t\vec{u}timet. Met is also occasionally appended to forms of meus (early) and tuus (late).

3. The enclitic -pte is joined very rarely to forms of the Personal Pronoun (mēpte, Pl., Men. 1059); more often to the Abl. Sing. of the Possessives; it is especially common with suō: suōpte ingeniō, by his own genius.

4. From noster and vester and also from cūins, whose? are formed the Gentile adjectives of one ending: nostrās, of our country; vestrās, of your country; cūiās, of whose country? G. nostrātis, vestrātis, cūiātis.

## 103. B. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

#### I. is, he, that.

			,	/		
		SINGULAR.		PLU	RAL.	
N.	is,	ea,	id,	iī, eī, ī,	eae,	ea,
G.	ēius,	ēius,	ēius,	eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
D.	eï,	eī,	eī,	i	is, eis, is,	
Ac.	eum,	eam,	id,	eōs,	eās,	ea,
Ab.	eō,	eā,	eō.	i	īs, eīs, īs.	

Note.—The following variations in the forms are found: N. it for id (post-cl.); G. cīius (inscr.), cīius (early poetry); D. cīcī (inscr.), cīi, cīi (early poetry), cae (f.); Ac. cm, im (early), for cum; Pl. N. cīis, ccīis, icīi (early and rare), for cī; the usual classical form is iī; G. cum (inscr.) for ccīrum; D. cīcīs, ccīs, icīs (inscr.), ibus (early poetry and rare); the usual classical form is iīs. The early forms sum, sam, sōs, sās, for cum, cam, cōs, cās, are cited by Festus. Acc. and Abl. Sing. and Gen. Pl. often suffer Synizesis in early poetry.

### 2. Idem (is + dem), the same.

SINGULAR. PLURA

N. īdem. eadem, idem. īdem, eīdem, iīdem, eaedem, G. ēiusdem, ēiusdem, ēiusdem, eōrundem, eārundem, eōrundem, D. eidem. eidem. eīdem. īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem, Ac. eundem, eandem, idem, eāsdem. eadem. eösdem, Abl. eodem. eādem, eodem. isdem, eisdem, iisdem.

Note.—Variations in form: N. **Sidem, isdem** (inscr., early) for **idem**; D. **idem** (inscr.) for **eidem**; Pl. N. **idem** (more usual in poetry), **eisdem, isdem** (inscr.); D. Ab. **iisdem** (rare), **eisdem** (uncommon in classical prose). Synizesis is common.

## 3. ipse (perhaps is + pse), he, self.

	5	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
N.	ipse,	ipsa,	ipsum,	ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsa,
G.	ipsīus,	ipsīus,	ipsīus,	ipsērum,	ipsārum,	ipsõrum,
D.	ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs,
Ac.	ipsum,	ipsam,	ipsum,	ipsōs,	ipsās,	ipsa,
Ab.	ipsō,	ipsā,	ipsõ.	ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.

Notes.—1. In the earlier time the first part of ipse was also declined, thus: N. eapse; Ac. eumpse, eampse; Ab. eopse, eapse. Other forms are doubtful.

2. For ipse the form ipsus was very commonly employed in early Latin, but fades out with TERENCE, and later is only sporadic.

3. Inflectional variations are: D. ipsō, ipsae (late); Pl. N. ipsēl (inscr.). The few

other forms are uncertain. Ipsīus is dissyllabic twice in Terence.

4. Plautus shows ipsissimus (comp. Gr. αὐτότατος), and in late Latin ipsimus and ipsima are found. A post-Ciceronian colloquialism was isse, issa,

5. Ipse combines with -met : ipsemet and ipsimet (N. Pl.), both rare,

## 104. C. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

## I. Demonstrative Pronoun for the First Person.

## hic. this.

Sg	-N.	hīc,	haec,	hōc,	PL.—hī,	hae,	haec, these,
	G.	hūius,	hūius,	hūius,	hõrum,	hārum,	hörum,
	D.	huīc,	huic,	huīc,	his,	hīs,	hīs,
	Ac.	hunc,	hanc,	hōc,	hōs,	hās,	haec,
	Abl.	hōc,	hāc,	hōc.	his,	hīs,	hīs.

Notes.—1. The full forms of hic in -ce are still found in limited numbers in early Latin; G. hōiusce (in the phrase hūiusce modī, the form is common in the classical period and later); D. hoice (inser.); Pl. N. hoisce, hisce (not uncommon); G. hōrunce (rare); D., Ab. hisce (in Platt. and Ter. usually before vowels); Ac. hōsce, hāsce (not uncommon; occasionally in Cic.).

2. Other variations in form are: G. hūius and hūīus (in early poetry for metrical reasons); D. hae (rare and early); Ac. honc; Pl. N. heī, heīs for hī, haec for hae (in Plaur, and Ter. regularly before vowels or h, occasionally before consonants; occasionally also in classical times and later); G. hōrunc, hārunc (early). Pl. N. hīc for hī and D. Ab. hībus for hīs are doubtful.

3. Hic combines with -ne. Usually -ne was appended to hice, etc., and the e weakened to i. Sometimes -ne is added directly to the regular forms. The examples are frequent in early Latin, but occur also in Crc. and later writers: hicine, haecine, hōcine, huicine, huncine, hancine, hōcine, hācine, haecine (N. Pl. fem.), haecine (N. Pl. neut.), hiscine, hōscine, hāscine; also hicne, haecne, hōcne, hūusne, huncne, hancne, hōcne, hācne, haecne, hōsne, hāsne.

#### II. Demonstrative Pronoun for the Second Person.

#### iste, that.

Sg.—N.	iste,	ista,	istud,	PL.—isti,	istae,	ista,
G.	istīus,	istīus,	istīus,	istōrum,	istārum,	istōrum,
D.	istī,	istī,	istī,	istīs,	istīs,	istīs,
Ac.	istum,	istam,	istud,	istōs,	istās,	ista,
Abl.	istō,	istā,	istō.	istīs,	istīs,	istīs.

Notes .- 1. The Dat. Sing. shows isto in late and istae in early Latin.

2. Iste combines with -ce. In a very few cases (three times in early, once in late Latin) this -ce is retained unchanged, but usually it is shortened to -c. The following forms occur, all except istue (more common than istud in classical Latin) and istage

(nenter, occasionally in Crc., Ep. and later), being wholly confined to early and late Latin. N. istic, istaec, istuc (istoc, once); D. istīc; Ac. istunc, istanc; Ab. istōc, istāc. Pl. N. istaec (f.), istaec (n.).

3. In a few cases in Plaut. and Ter. -ne is appended to istice, etc., the preceding e being weakened to i: istucine, istōcine, istōcine, istōscin'.

### III. Demonstrative Pronoun for the Third Person.

Sg.—N.	ille,	illa,	illud,	PL.—illī,	illae,	illa,
G.	illīus,	illīus,	illīus,	illōrum,	illārum,	illērum,
D,	illī,	illī,	illī,	illīs,	illis,	illîs,
Ac.	illum,	illam,	illud,	illōs,	illās,	illa,
Ab.	illō,	illā,	illō.	illīs,	illīs,	illîs.

Notes.—1. The older forms from stem ollo- occur on early inscriptions, in laws, and in the poets (except Plaut. and Ter.), even to a very late period, as follows: N. ollus, -e (early); D. ollī; Pl. N. ollī, olla; G. ollom, ollārum (early); D. ollēis, ollīs; Ac. ollōs (early).

2. Inscriptions show illut occasionally for illud. Other rare forms are: G. illi (doubtful); D. illae: Pl. N. illei. Illius is often dissyllabic in early Latin.

3. Ille often combines with -ce, which is, however, usually shortened to -c: illīusce, illāce, illōce, illōce, illāsce, illīusce, all in early Latin; shortened forms: N. illic, illaec, illuc; D. illīc; Ac. illunc, illanc; Ab. illōc, illāc; Pl. N. illaec (f.), illaec (n.), all with rare exceptions confined to Plautus and Terence.

 A few cases of combination with -ne : illicine, illancine occur in Plautus and TERENCE.

## 105. D. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

qui (Substantive and Adjective), who.

Sc.—N.	quī,	quae,	quod,	PL.—quī,	quae,	quae,
G.	cūius,	cūius,	cūius,	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
D.	cuī,	cuī,	cuī,	quibus,	quibus,	quibus,
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quod,	quōs,	quās,	quae,
Ab.	quō,	quā,	quō.	quibus,	quibus,	quibus.

### General Relatives are:

Substantive. quisquis, whoever, quidquid, quicquid, whatever.

Adjective. (quiqui, quaequae, quodquod), whosoever.
quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque, whichever.

Notes .- 1. Archaic and legal are quis and quid as relatives.

2. The prevalent form of Gen. on inscriptions of the Republican period and in early Latin is quoins; quius, cuiius, and other variations are also found. Other archaic forms are: D., quoi. D. Pl., quois. D. Ab. Pl., quois is common in the poets at all periods; and also in prose writers; but not cited from Caesar, and only from the letters of Cicrro.

3. The Abl. Sing. qui for all genders is the prevalent form in early times, and in

combination with cum is preferred to quo, qua by CICERO.

4. Quisquis is occasionally used as an adjective, but not in classical Latin. Occasionally, also, but rarely in Cicero, it is used for quisque, quidque. The Nom. Sing. of the adjective quiqui, etc., probably does not occur. In the other cases the forms are

the same as those of **quisquis** and can be distinguished only by the usage. In combination with **modī** we find **cuīcuī** in Gen. sometimes in Cicero. In the Plural the only form found is **quibusquibus**. (Liv. XLI., 8, 10.)

5. In quicumque the -cumque is often separated by tmesis. The only variations in form are queiquomque, quescumque in early Latin, and occasionally quiscumque for quibuscumque (several times in Cicero).

## 106. E. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Substantive. quis? who? quid? what?
Adjective. qui? quae? quod? which?
Subst. and Adj. uter? utru? who, which of two?

SG. N. quis? quid? who? what?

G. cūius? cūius? whose?

D. cui? cui? to, for whom?

Ac. quem? quid? whom? what?

Ab. quō? quō? from, with, by whom or what?

The plural of the substantive interrogative pronoun and both numbers of the adjective interrogative pronoun coincide with the forms of the relative qui, quae, quod, who, which.

## Strengthened Interrogatives.

Substantive. quisnam? who, pray? quidnam? what, pray? ecquis? is there any one who? ecquid? Adjective. quinam? quaenam? quodnam? which, pray? ecqui? ecqui?

Remark.—In the poets qui is sometimes found as a substantive for quis in independent sentences. In dependent sentences the use always fluctuates. A difference in meaning can hardly be made other than that qui is generally used in much the same sense as quālis. On the other hand, quis is often used as an adjective for qui; usually, however, the substantive which follows is best looked upon as in apposition. In the classical period qui is the normal form for the adjective in dependent questions.

Notes.—1. Inscriptions show here and there quit and quot for quid and quod. Quid is sometimes used for quod, but usually in the phrase quid nomen tibi est and only in early Latin. Sometimes quae seems to be used as a substantive, but another explanation is always possible.

2. In the oblique cases the same variations occur as in the oblique cases of the relative. The Abl. quf means how?

3. For the declension of uter see 76.

4. The possessive cūius (quōius), -a, -um was used both as relative and as interroga-

tive. It is frequent in Plaur. and Ter., but rare in other authors. Besides the Nom. the only forms found are Ac. quōium, quōiam; Ab. quōiā; Pl. N. quōiae, and, perhaps, G. Pl. quōium.

5. Quisnam is sometimes used as an adjective for quinam and quinam occasionally for quisnam as a substantive. The -nam may be separated by tmesis. Ecquis and ecqui are not common, and are subject to the same fluctuations as quis and qui. Ecquis combines with -nam to form ecquisnam and a few other occasional forms, as: ecquaenam, ecquidnam, ecquidnam, ecquidnam, ecquidnam, ecquidnam.

## 107. F. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

I. Substantive. aliquis, aliqua (rare), aliquid, somebody, some one quis, qua, quid, or other.

Adjective. aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, some, any.

qui, quae, qua, quod, some, any.

REMARK.—The common rule is that quis and qui occur properly only after si, nisi, në, num, or after a relative; otherwise aliquis, aliqui.

Notes.—1. Aliquis and quis are not unfrequently used as adjectives instead of aliqui, qui, but rarely in early Latin. Occasionally (not in early Latin) aliqui is used as a substantive. Qui is also so used, but only after sī, sīn, sīve, nē.

The use of quid and aliquid for quod and aliquod, and of aliquod for aliquid,

is very rare and late.

- 2. Besides the variations in form mentioned under the relative and interrogative, the indefinitive quis shows ques as an early form for que (N. Pl.), and in Pl. Nom. Acc. neut. quae and qua in equally good usage. Aliquis shows in Abl. Sing. alique (rare and early), in the Pl. Nom. Acc. neut. always aliqua, and not unfrequently in post-classical Latin aliquis for aliquibus.
  - 2. quidam, quaedam, quiddam (and quoddam), a certain, certain one.

REMARK.—Quidam, quaedam occur both as substantives and adjectives, but quiddam is always substantive, quoddam always adjective. The Plural is rare in early Latin (never in Plautus).

quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam (and quodpiam), some one, some.
 quisquam, ———, quicquam, any one (at all). No plural.

Notes.—1. quispiam, quaepiam are rare as adjectives. In the neuter, quippiam and quoppiam occur rarely. The comic poets do not use the Piurai, and it is rare elsewhere.

2. Quisquam is seldom used as an adjective, except with designations of persons; scriptor quisquam, any writer (at alt). Gallus quisquam, any Gaul (at alt). The corresponding adjective is fillus. The use of quisquam as a feminine is only in early Latin. Quidquam is a poor spelling for quicquam. In Abl. Sing. quiquam occurs occasionally. In Sing. Gen. Dat. Acc. frequently, and in Plural always, forms of fillus were used.

4. quivis, quaevis, quidvis (and quodvis), any one you please, quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (and quodlibet), you like.

Note.—Quivis, quaevis, quilibet (archaic -lubet), quaelibet may be used either as substantives or adjectives, but quidvis, quidlibet are substantives only, quodvis, quodlibet are adjectives only. Peculiar forms of quivis are G. quoivis in quoivismodi (Plaut.); D., quōvis (late); Ab., quivis (Plaut., Ter.), and the compounds cüiusviscumque (Lucr. III., 383) and quōviscumque (Mart. XIV., 2, 1). Quilibet may be separated by tmesis into qui and libet (Sall., Cut. 5, 4).

quisque, quaeque, quidque and quodque, each one.
 unusquisque, unaquaeque, unumquidque and unumquodque, each one severally.

Note.—Quisque occurs occasionally in early Latin as a feminine, and with its forms is not unfrequently found in early and late Latin for quisquis, or quicumque. Quidque is substantive, quodque adjective. In the Abl. Sing. quique occurs occasionally. The Plural is regular, but rare until post-classical times. In Nom. Pl. quaeque is either fem. or neuter.

108. The declension of the pronominal adjectives has been given in 76. They are:

üllus, -a, -um, any; nüllus, -a, -um, no one, not one. The corresponding substantives are nēmō (76) and nihil, the latter of which forms only nihilī (Gen.) and nihilō (Abl.), and those only in certain combinations.

nonnullus, -a, -um, some, many a, declined like nullus.

alius, -a, -ud, another; the Possessive of alius is alienus.

alter, -era, -erum, the other, one (of two).

neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither of two.

alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum, the one or the other of the two.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two, either. ambo, -ae, -ō, both.

utervis, utravis, utrumvis,

uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet,

# CORRELATIVES.

## 109. I. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

INTERE	ROGATIVES.	DEM	ONSTRATIVES.	REL	ATIVES.
quis ?	who?	is,	that,	quī,	who.
quālis?	of what	tālis,	such (of that	quālis,	as (of which
	kind?		kind),		kind).
quantus?	how much?	tantus,	so much,	quantus,	as much.
quot ?	how many?	tot,	so many,	quot,	as many.

#### 110. II. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADVERBS.

Pronominal adverbs of place.

nhī? where ? ihī. there. ubi. where. where. where, which quā ? hic, hāc, here, this way, qua, which way? way. istīc, istāc, there, that way.

illic, illac, there, yonder way.

unde? whence ? unde. whence. inde. thence. hinc. hence

> istinc. thence. illine. thence, from yonder.

whither ? thither. whither. quō? eō. quō,

hūc, (hōc,) hither. istūc, (istōc,) thither.

illūc, (illōc,) thither, yonder.

# 2. Pronominal adverbs of time.

quando? when? tum. then. quando, when. at that time. tune. quom, cum. nunc. nom. quotiens? how often? totiens, so often. quotiens, as often as,

3. Pronominal adverbs of manner.

quomodo? qui? how? ita, sīc, so, thus. ut. uti. as. how much? tam. quam? so much. quam.

# 111. III. COMPOUNDS OF THE RELATIVE FORMS.

1. The relative pronouns become indefinite by prefixing ali-:

aliquantus, somewhat great; aliquot, several, some; alicubi, somewhere; alicunde, from somewhere; aliquando, at some time.

2. The simple relatives become universal by doubling themselves, or by suffixing -cunque (-cumque), sometimes -que:

quantuscunque, however great; qualiscunque, of whatever kind; quotquot, however many; ubicunque, wheresoever; quandocunque, quandoque, whenever; quotiescunque, however often; utut, in whatever way; utcunque, howsoever; quamquam, however, although.

3. Many of the relatives are further compounded with -vis or -libet:

quantuslibet, quantusvis, as great as you please; ubivis, where you will; quamvis, as you please, though,

## THE VERB.

- 112. The inflection given to the verbal stem is called Conjugation, and expresses:
  - 1. Person and Number;
  - 2. Voice—Active or Passive.

The Active Voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject: amo, I love.

The Passive Voice denotes that the subject receives the action of the Verb: amor, I am loved.

3. Tense—Present, Imperfect, Future,

Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

The Present, amō, I love; Future, amābō, I shall love; Pure Perfect, amāvī, I have loved; Future Perfect, amāverō, I shall have loved, are called Principal Tenses.

The Imperfect, amābam, I was loving; Historical Perfect, amāvī, I loved; Pluperfect, amāveram, I had loved, are called Historical Tenses.

REMARK.—The Pure and Historical Perfects are identical in form.

4. Mood—Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.

The Indicative Mood is the mood of the fact: amo, I love. The Subjunctive Mood is the mood of the idea: amem, may I love, I may love; amet, may he love, he may love; si amet, if he should love.

The Imperative Mood is the mood of command: amā, love thou!

For further distinctions see Syntax.

5. These forms belong to the Finite Verb. Outside of the Finite Verb, and akin to the noun, are the verbal forms called

Infinitive, Supine, Participle, Gerund.

The Infinitive active and the Supine are related to the noun, the former being originally a Dative or Locative and the Supine showing two cases, Accusative and Ablative,

No adequate uniform translation can be given, but for the general meaning see paradigms.

113. A large number of Verbs have the passive form but

are active in meaning: hortor, I exhort. These are called deponent (from deponere, to lay aside).

- 114. The Inflection of the Finite Verb is effected by the addition of personal endings to the verb stems.
- 1. The personal endings are mostly pronominal forms, which serve to indicate not only person, but also number and voice. They are:

PASSIVE.

Sg.—I. -m (or a vowel, coalescing with -r the characteristic ending); Pf. 1,

2. -s; Pf. -s-ti; Impv. -to(d) or want- -ris or -re; Impv. -re or -tor, ing,

-mur.

3. -t; Impv. to(d), -tur; Impv. -tor.

PL .- I. - mus,

2. -tis; Pf. -s-tis-; Impv. -te or -tōte, -minī.

3. -nt; Pf. erunt or ere; Impv. -nto(d), -ntur; Impv. -ntor.

2. The personal endings are added directly to the stem in the Present Indicative and Imperative only, except in the third conjugation, in some forms of the Future Indicative. In the other tenses certain modifications occur in the stem, or tense signs are employed:

(a) In the Present Subjunctive final ā of the stem is changed to ē(e); final ē to eā (ea); final ī to iā (ia); final e to ā (a). In the Future Indicative final e is changed to a or ē (e); final ī to ia (iē, ie).

- (b) The tense signs are: for the Imperfect Indicative, bā (ba); for the Imperfect Subjunctive, rē (re); for the Future Indicative in ā and ē verbs bǐ (b, bu); for the Perfect Indicative, ī (i); for the Perfect Subjunctive, erī; for the Pluperfect Indicative, erā (era); for the Pluperfect Subjunctive, issē (isse); for the Future Perfect Indicative, erī (er).
- 3. The stem itself is variously modified; either by change of vowel or by addition of suffixes, and appears in the following forms:
- (a) The Present stem; being the stem of the Present, Imperfect, and Future tenses. These forms are called the Present System.
- (b) The Perfect stem; being the stem of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses. These forms are called the Perfect System.
- (c) The Supine\* stem; being the stem of the Future Active and Perfect Passive Participles and of the Supine. These forms are called the Supine System.

Note.—For details as to the formation of these stems, see 132 ff.

<sup>\*</sup> This designation is retained because it is an established terminus technicus; as a matter of fact the Supine stem is not the stem of the Participles.

INFINITIVE.

Pr. -re.

Pf.

**115.** 1. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses in the Passive are formed by the combination of the Perfect Passive Participle with forms of the verb  $\mathbf{sum}$ , I am.

2. The Future Passive Infinitive is formed by the combination of

PASSIVE.

-tum (-tam, -tum) esse.

rī, ī.

the Supine with the Present Passive Infinitive of eo, I go.

ACTIVE.

-isse,

3. The infinite parts of the verb are formed by the addition of the following endings to the stems:

Fut	tūrum (-am, -um)	esse,	-tum īrī.			
Participles. Prns (Gntis),						
Pf			-tus (-ta,	-tum).		
Fut.	tūrus (-a, -um).					
GERUND.	Gr	ERUNDIVE.	Su	PINE.		
-ndī (-dō, -dum,	, -dō)ndv	ıs (-a, -um).	-tun	ı; -tū.		
116.	THE VERB	sum, I an	n.			
	(Pres. stem es-,	Perf. stem	fu-)			
INDICATIV	E. Prese		JUNCTIVE.			
Sg.—I. sum, I			I be.			
,		,	thou be,			
,		,	he, she, it b	e.		
PL.—I. sumus, w	ve are.	sīmus,	we be,			
,	ou are,	sītis,	you be,			
3. sunt, th	hey are.	sint,	they be.			
Co s augm 7	IMPERI was,		I were	(forem),		
		,	thou wert	(forēs),		
,		,	he were	(foret).		
5,		,	we were,	(10100).		
,	,	,	you were,			
, ,		,	they were	(forent).		
3. 02440,	icy word,	0000110,	oney were	(101010)		
C - T	FUTU	RE.				
,	shall be, hou wilt be,					
-,	e will be.					
5. 0110,						
	ve shall be,					
, ,	ou will be,					
3. erunt, th	hey will be.					

#### PERFECT.

	PERF	ECT.	
Sg.—1. fui,	I have been, I was,	fuerim,	I have, may have, been,
2. fuistī,	thou hast been, thou wast,	fueris,	thou have, mayest have, been,
3. fuit,	he has been, he was.	fuerit,	he have, may have, been.

PL.—I. fuimus, we have been, we vere,

2. fuistis, you have been, you were,

puritis, you have, may have, may have, been, been,

3. fuërunt, fuëre, they have fuerint, they have, may have, been, they were. been.

### PLUPERFECT.

	2 20 2 23	*** ***	
Sc1. fueram,	I had been,	fuissem,	I had, might have, been,
2. fuerās,	thou hadst been,	fuissēs,	thou hadst, mightst have,
			been,
3. fuerat,	he had been.	fuisset,	he had, might have, been.
PL.—I. fuerāmus,	we had been,	fuissēmus,	we had, might have, been,

2. fueratis, you had been, fuissetis, you had, might have, been,
3. fuerant, they had been. fuissent, they had, might have, been.

### FUTURE PERFECT.

Scr.	faerō,	I shall have been,
2.	fueris,	thou wilt have been,
. 3.	fuerit,	he will have been.

PL.—I. fuerimus, we shall have been, 2. fueritis, you will have been, 3. fuerint, they will have been.

PRESENT SG.—1.— 2. es, 3.— rint, they will have been.

IMPERA	ATIVE.	1	NFINITIVE.
r	FUTURE.	PRES. es	se, to be,
,	,	PERF. fu	isse, to have been,
, be thou,	esto, thou shalt be,	FUT. fu	tūrum (-am, -um) esse
	esto, he shall be.		(fore), to be about to
			ha

PL.—I. ——,
2. este, be ye, estote, you shall be,

3. —, sunto, they shall be. Fut. futurus, -a, -um, about to be.

Notes .- 1. Early forms are :

(a) In the Pres. Ind. es for es; regularly in Plautus and Terence, but the

quantity of the vowel is disputed.

(b) In the Pres. Subjv. siem, sies, siet, sient; regular in inscriptions until the first century B. C. and common in early poets chiefly for metrical reasons; side by side with this occur fuam, fuās, fuat, fuant (also Lucr. iv., 637, Verg. x., 108, Liv. xxv., 12, 6), which are taken up again by very late poets. Sit is also common.

(c) In the Impf. Subjv. the forms forem, fores, foret, forent were probably in very early times equivalent to futurus essem, etc.; and occasionally this force seems to be still present in the later period, especially in Sallust; usually, however, they are equivalent to essem, esset, esset, essent; in the Inf. fore always remained the equivalent of futurum esse.

(d) In all the Perfect forms the original length was fu-, which is still found occa-

sionally in early Latin.

(e) Early and principally legal are the rare forms escit, escet, esit, for erit;
 -essint for erunt.

The Pres. Part. is found only in the compounds; ab-sēns, absent, and prae-sēns, present.

# 117. Compounds of sum, I am.

ab-sum, I am away, absent. Pf. ob-sum, I am against, I hurt. Pf. (abful) āful. obful or offul.

ad-sum, I am present. Pf. affui, pos-sum, I am able.

dē-sum, I am wanting. prae-sum, I am over, I superintend.

in-sum, I am in. prō-sum, I am for, I profit.

inter-sum, I am between. sub-sum, I am under. No Pf. super-sum, I am, or remain, over.

These are all inflected like sum; but prosum and possum require special treatment by reason of their composition.

# Prosum, I profit.

# 118. In the forms of prosum, prod- is used before vowels.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. prō-sum, prōd-es, prōd-est, prō-sim,

prō-sumus, prōd-estis, prō-sunt,

Imperfect. prod-ersm. prod-essem.

FUTURE. prod-ero,

Perfect. pro-fui, pro-fuerim,

Pluperfect. pro-fueram, pro-fuissem.

Fut. Perf. pro-fuero,

INFINITIVE. PRES. prod-esse; Fut. pro-futurum esse (-fore); Perf. pro-fuisse

# Possum, I am able, I can.

119. Possum is compounded of pot (potis, pote) and sum; t becomes s before s; in the perfect forms, f (pot-fui) is lost.

#### INDICATIVE.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

#### PRESENT.

SG.—I. pos-sum, I am able, can, pos-

pos-sim, I be able.

2. pot-es,

pos-sīs,

PL.-I. pos-sumus,

pos-sīmus,

2. pot-estis,

pos-sītis,

3. pos-sunt.

pos-sint.

## IMPERFECT.

SG.-I. pot-eram, I was able, could,

pos-sem, I were, might be, able.

pot-erās,
 pot-erat.

pos-sēs,

PL.—I. pot-erāmus,

pos-sēmus,

2. pot-erātis,

pos-sētis,

3. pot-erant.

pos-sent.

### FUTURE.

SG.-1. pot-ero, I shall be able.

2. pot-eris,

3. pot-erit.

PL.-1. pot-erimus,

pot-eritis,
 pot-erunt.

#### PERFECT.

SG .- I. pot-ui, I have been able,

pot-uerim, I have, may have, been

able.

2. pot-uisti,
3. pot-uit.

pot-ueris,

PL.—I. pot-uimus,

pot-uerīmus, pot-uerītis.

pot-uistis,
 pot-uērunt.

pot-uerint.

#### PLUPERFECT.

Sc.-1. pot-ueram, I had been able.

pot-uissem, I had, might have,

been able.

pot-uerās,
 pot-uerat.

pot-uisset,

PL.-1. pot-uerāmus,

pot-uissēmus,

2. pot-uerātis,

pot-uissētis,

3. pot-uerant.

pot-uissent,

#### FUTURE PERFECT.

SG.—I. pot-uerš, I shall have been PL.—I. pot-ueršmus,
2. pot-ueršs, [able, 2. pot-uerštis,

3. pot-uerit. 3. pot-uerint.

INFINITIVE. PRES., posse, to be able. PERF., potnisse, to have been able.

Notes.—1. In the early Latin the fusion of the two parts of the compound has not fully taken place; we accordingly find not unfrequently: potis sum, potis es, potis est, potis sunt; potis siem, potis sis, potis sit, potis sint; potis erat; pote fuisset; and sometimes (even in classical and Augustan poets) potis and pote alone, the copula being omitted. Partial fusion is seen in Inf. pot-esse, potisse; Subjv. poti-sit (inser.), poti-sset.

2. Occasional passive forms (followed by a passive infinitive) are found in early Latin (not in Plaut. or Ter.) and Lucretius: potestur, possetur, possitur, poter-

atur. Poterint for poterunt is doubtful.

## REGULAR VERBS.

## SYSTEMS OF CONJUGATION.

- 120. r. There are two Systems of Conjugation, the Thematic and the Non-thematic (132). The Non-thematic is confined to a small class. The Thematic System comprises four Conjugations, distinguished by the vowel characteristics of the present stem,  $\bar{\mathbf{a}}$ ,  $\bar{\mathbf{e}}$ ,  $\bar{\mathbf{e}}$ ,  $\bar{\mathbf{e}}$ ,  $\bar{\mathbf{e}}$ , which may be found by dropping -re from the Present Infinitive Active. The consonant preceding the short vowel stem-characteristic is called the consonant stem-characteristic.
- 2. From the *Present* stem, as seen in the Present Indicative and Present Infinitive active; from the *Perfect* stem, as seen in the Perfect Indicative active; and from the *Supine* stem, can be derived all the forms of the verb. These tenses are accordingly called the *Principal Parts*; and in the regular verbs appear in the four conjugations as follows:

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.	
I. am-ō,	amā-re,	amā-vì,	amā-tum,	to love.
II. dēle-ō,	dēlē-re,	dēlē-vī,	dēlē-tum,	to blot out.
mone-ō,	monē-re,	mon-uī,	mon-i-tum,	to remind.
III. em-ō,	eme-re,	ēm-ī,	ēm(p)-tum,	to buy.
statu-ō,	statue-re,	statu-I,	statū-tum,	to settle.
scrīb-ō,	scribe-re,	scrip-si,	scrip-tum,	to write.
capi-ō,	cape-re,	cēp-ī,	cap-tum,	to take.
IV. audi-ō,	audī-re,	audī-vī,	audī-tum,	to hear.

## Rules for forming the Tenses.

- 121, I. The *Present System*. From the Present stem as obtained by dropping -re of the Pres. Inf. Active, form
- a. Pres. Subjv. by changing final ā to e, ē to ea, e to a (or -ia), I to ia, and adding -m for active, -r for passive; Pres. Impv. Passive by adding -re; Fut. Impv. by adding -to for Active and -tor for the Passive; Pres. Part. by adding -ns and lengthening preceding vowel; Gerund by adding -nd after shortening ā and ē, changing I to ie, and in a few verbs eto ie. Pres. Impv. Active is the same as the stem; Pres. Indic. Passive may be formed from Pres. Indic. Act. by adding -r (after shortening ō).
- b. Impf. Indic. by adding -bam for active and -bar for passive to the stem in the first and second conjugations; to the lengthened stem in the third and fourth (e to & or i&, I to i&); Impf. Subjv. by adding the endings -rem and -rer, or by adding -m and -r respectively to the Pres. Inf. Active.
- c. Future, by adding -bō and -bor to the stem in the first and second conjugations; -m and -r in the third and in the fourth (e being changed to a (ia); i, to ia).
- 2. The *Perfect System*. From the Perfect stem as obtained by dropping final **i** of the Perfect, form
- a. Perf. Subjv. Active by adding -erim; Perf. Inf. Active by adding -isse.
- b. Plupf. Indic. Active by adding -eram; Plup. Subjv. Active by adding -issem.
  - c. Fut. Perf. Active by adding -erō.
- 3. The Supine System. From the Supine stem as obtained by dropping final -m of the Supine, form
  - a. Perf. Part. Passive by adding -s.
- b. Fut. Part. Active by adding -rus (preceding u being lengthened to ū).
- c. The Compound Tenses in the Passive and the Periphrastic forms by combining these Participles with forms of esse, to be.

REMARK.—Euphonic changes in the consonant stem-characteristic. Characteristic b before s and t becomes p; g and qu before t become c; c, g, qu, with s, become x; t and d before s are assimilated, and then sometimes dropped. See further, 9.

scrib-ō, scrip-si, scrip-tum; legō, lēc-tum; coqu-ō, coc-tum; dic-ō, dixi (dic-sī); iung-ō, iūnx-i (iūng-sī); coqu-ō, coxī (coqu-sī); ed-ō, ē-sum (ed-sum); cēd-ō, cēs-sī (cēd-sī); mit-ō, mi-sī (mit-sī), mis-sum (mit-sum).

### 122.

### First Conjugation.

## CONJUGATION OF amare, to love.

PRIN. PARTS: am-ō, amā-re, amā-vī, amā-tum.

### ACTIVE.

#### INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

### PRESENT.

Am loving, do love, love.

Sg.-1. am-ō.

2. amā-s.

3. ama-t.

Be loving, may love.

ame-m. amē-s.

ame-t.

PL.-1. amā-mus,

2. amā-tis,

3. ama-nt,

amē-mus. amē-tis.

ame-nt.

#### IMPERFECT.

Was loving, loved.

SG .- I. amā-ba-m.

2. amā-bā-s.

3. amā-ba-t,

PL.-I. amā-bā-mus.

2. amā-bā-tis,

3. amā-ba-nt,

Were loving, might love.

amā-re-m, amā-rē-s.

amā-re-t.

ama-rē-mus.

amā-rē-tis. amā-re-nt.

#### FUTURE.

Shall be loving, shall love.

Sg.-1. amā-b-ō,

2. amã-bi-s,

3. amā-bi-t.

PL.-1. amā-bi-mus,

2. amā-bi-tis,

3. amā-bu-nt.

#### PERFECT.

Have loved, did love. Su.-1. amā-v-1,

2. amā-v-istī.

3. amā-v-it,

PL.-I. amā-v-imus,

2. amā-v-istis,

3. ama-v-ērunt (-ēre),

Have, may have, loved.

amā-v-eri-m.

amā-v-erī-s.

ama-v-eri-t.

amā-v-erī-mus. amā-v-erī-tis.

amā-v-eri-nt.

## First Conjugation.

### ACTIVE.

#### INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

#### PLUPERFECT.

Had loved

Had, might have, loved.

Sg.-I. ama-v-era-m,

amā-v-isse-m.

2. amā-v-erā-s.

amā-v-issē-s.

3. amā-v-era-t.

amā-v-isse t.

PL.-I. amā-v-erā-mus. 2. amā-v-erā-tis.

amā-v-issē-mus. amā-v-issē-tis.

3. amā-v-era-nt,

amā-v-isse-nt.

### FUTURE PERFECT.

· Shall have loved.

Sg.-I. amā-v-er-ō,

2. amā-v-eri-s.

3. amā-v-eri-t.

PL.-I. amā-v-erī-mus,

2. amā-v-erī-tis.

3. amā-v-eri-nt.

PRESENT.

IMPERATIVE.

Sc.-1. ---,

FUTURE.

2. amā, love thou, amā-tō, thou shalt love. amā-tō, he shall love, 3. ----

PL.-I. ---

\_\_\_\_ 2. amā-te, love ye, amā-tote, ye shall love.

3. ---,

ama-nto, they shall love.

#### INFINITIVE.

Pres. amā-re, to love.

PERF. amā-v-isse, to have loved.

amā-tūr-um, -am, -um esse, to be about to love.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

N. [amā-re], loving.

G. ama-nd-I, of loving,

D. ama-nd-ō, to loving. Ac. [amā-re],

Ab. ama-nd-ō, by loving.

Ac. amā-tum, to love.

(ad) ama-nd-um, loving, to love.

Ab. amā-tū, to love, in the loving.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. N. amā-n-s (G. ama-nt-is), loving.

FUTURE. ama-tur-us, -a, -um, being about to love.

## First Conjugation.

### PASSIVE.

#### INDICATIVE.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

### PRESENT.

Am loved.

Sc.-1. amo-r. 2. amā-ris (-re).

3. amā-tur,

PL-1. amā-mur. 2. amā-minī.

3. ama-ntur,

Be, may be, loved.

ame-r.

amē-ris (-re).

amë-tur.

amē-mur. amē-minī.

ame-ntur.

#### IMPERFECT.

Was loved.

Se .- 1. amā-ba-r,

2. amā-bā-ris (-re),

3. amā-bā-tur,

PL-1. amā-bā-mur,

2. amā-bā-minī.

3. amā-ba-ntur,

Were, might be, loved.

amā-re-r,

amā-rē-ris (-re).

amā-rē-tur.

amā-rē-mur,

amā-rē-minī.

amā-re-ntur.

#### FUTURE.

Shall be loved.

Se .- I. amā-bo-r,

2. amā-be-ris (-re).

3. amā-bi-tur.

PL.-1. amā-bi-mur.

2. amā-bi-minī.

3. amā-bu-ntur.

### PERFECT.

Have been loved, was loved.

SG.-I. amā-t-us, -a, -um sum, est.

68,

Hàve, may have, been loved.

amā-t-us, -a, -um sim,

sis. sit.

amā-t-1, -ae, -a simus,

PL .- I. amā-t-1, -ae, -a sumus, 2. estis,

2.

3.

3.

sunt.

sītis. sint.

## First Conjugation.

## PASSIVE.

### INDICATIVE.

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

### PLUPERFECT.

	Had been loved	t.	Had, might have,	been loved.
SG.—I. 2. 3.	amā-t-us, -a, -um	eram, erās, erat,	amā-t-us, -a, -um	essem, essēs, esset,
PL.—I. 2. 3.	amā- <b>t-ī, -ae</b> , -a	erāmus, erātis, erant.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a	essēmus, essētis, essent.

### FUTURE PERFECT.

Shall have been loved.

Contract traces	
Sg.—I. amā-t-us, -a, -um	erō,
2.	eris,
3.	erit.
PL1. amā-t-f, -ae, -a	erimus
2.	eritis,
3-	erunt.

PRESENT.

### IMPERATIVE.

SG.	-1, 2. amā-re,	be thou loved.	amā-tor	thou shalt be loved.
	3. —,		amā-tor,	he shall be loved.
PL.	.—ı. ——,		—,	
	2. amā-mii	i, be ye loved.	,	
	3		ama-ntor,	they shall be loved.

### INFINITIVE.

	4141 1141 1141 12.	
PRES.	amā-rī,	to be loved.
PERF.	amā-t-um, -am, -um esse,	to have been loved.
Fur.	amā-tum īrī,	to be about to be loved.
Fur. Pr.	amā-t-um, -am, -um fore.	

### PARTICIPLE.

### GERUNDIVE.

FUTURE.

PERF. amā-t-us, -a, -um, loved. ama-nd-us, -a, -um, (one) to be loved.

## 123.

## Second Conjugation.

# CONJUGATION OF delere, to destroy (blot out).

PRIN. PARTS: dele-o, dele-re, dele-vi, dele-tum.

SUBIV.

## ACTIVE.

INDIC.

## PASSIVE.

SUBJV.

INDIC.

INDIC.	SUBJV.	INDIC.	SUBJV.		
	Press	ENT.			
Se.—dēle-ō.	dēlea-m,	dēle-o-r,	dēlea-r,		
dēlē-s,	dēleā-s,	dēlē-ris (-re),	dēleā-ris (-re),		
dēle-t,	delea-t,	dēlē-tur,	dēleā-tur,		
PL.—dēlē-mus,	deleā-mus,	dēlē-mur,	dēle-ā-mur,		
dēlē-tis,	dēleā-tis,	dele-mini,	dēle-ā-mini,		
dele-nt.	dēlea-nt.	dēle-ntur.	dēle-a-ntur.		
	IMPERI				
Sc.—dēlē-ba-m,	dēlē-re-m,	dēlē-ba-r,	dēlē-re-r,		
dēlē-bā-s,	dēlē-rē-s,	dēlē-bā-ris (-re),	dēlē-rē-ris (-re),		
dēlē-ba-t,	dēlē-re-t,	dēlē-bā-tur,	dēlē-rē-tur,		
PL.—dēlē-bā-mus,	dēlē-rē-mus,	dēlē-bā-mur,	dēlē-rē-mur,		
dēlē-bā-tis,	dēlē-rē-tis,	dēlē-bā-minī,	dēlē-rē-minī,		
dēlē-ba-nt.	dēlē-re-nt.	dēlē-ba-ntur,	dēlē-re-ntur.		
	Furu	RE.			
Sc.—dēlē-b-ō.		dēlē-bo-r,			
dēlē-bi-s,		dēlē-be-ris (re),			
dele-bi-t,		dēlē-bi-tur,	•		
PL.—dēlē-bi-mus.		dēlē-bi-mur,			
dele-bi-tis,		dēlē-bi-minī,	•		
dēlē-bu-nt.		dēlē-bu-ntur.			
Perfect.					
Se.—dēlē-v-ī.	dēlē-v-eri-m,	dele-t-us sum,	dēlē-t-us sim,		
dēlē-v-istī,	dēlē-v-erī-s,	es,	sīs,		
dēlē-v-it,	dēlē-v-eri-t,	est,	sit.		
PL.—dēlē-v-imus,	dele-v-eri-mus,	dēlē-t-ī sumus,	dēlē-t-i sīmus,		
dēlē-v-istis,	dēlē-v-erī-tis,	estis,	sītis,		
dēlē-v-ērunt	,	sunt,	sint.		

# Second Conjugation.

		Second Co	njugatio	n.		
	ACTIVI	E.		PAS	SIVE.	
	INDIC.	SUBJV.		INDIC.	S	UBJV.
		PLUPER	RFECT.			
SG	—dēlē-v-era-m,	dēlē-v-isse-m,	dēlē-t-us	eram,	dēlē-t-us	essem,
	dēlē-v-erā-s,	dēlē-v-issē-s,		erās,		essēs,
	dēlē-v-era-t,	dēlē-v-isse-t.		erat,		esset.
PL.	—dēlē- <b>v-erā-mus</b> ,	dēlē-v-issē-mus,	dēlē-t-1	erāmus,	dēlē-t-ī	essēmus,
	dēlē-v-erā-tis,	dēlē-v-issē-tis,		erātis,		essētis,
	dēlē-v-era-nt,	dēlē-v-isse-nt.		erant,		essent.
		Future I	PERFECT.			
Sg.	—dēlē-v-er-δ,		dēlē-t-us	erō.		
Du.	dēlē-v-erī-s,			eris.		
	dēlē-v-eri-t,			erit.		
70			1=1=			
PL.	-dēlē-v-erī-mus,		dēlē-t-i	erimus,		
	dēlē-v-erī-tis,			eritis,		
	dēlē-v-eri-nt,			erunt.		
		IMPERA	TIVE.			
	PRESENT.	FUTURE.	PRESENT.		FUTURE.	
SG.	—,	<del></del> ,	—,		<del></del> ,	
	dēlē,	dēlē-tō,	dēlē-re,		dele-tor,	
	,	delē-tō,	,		dēlē-tor.	
PL.		<del></del> ,	,			
	dēlē-te.	dēlē-tōte.	dēlē-min	I.		
	,	dēle-ntō.	—,	•	dēle-ntor	
		INFINI	THE STATE OF THE S			
	Pres. dēlē-re.	INFINI	Pres.	dēlē-rī.		
	PRES. dele-re.		PRES. PERF.		ım, -am, -u	m esse
	Fur. dele-tur-um	-0m -11m 0050	Fur.	dēlē-tu		an osso,
	FUT, dele-tul-um	, -am, -am 0550.			um, -am, -t	ım fore.
			,			
	GERUND.	SUPINE.			CIPLES.	
	[dēlē-re].				e-n-s; G. d	
-	dele-nd-i.				r-us, -a, -u1	
D.	dēle-nd-ō.	1 2020		. dele-t-i	ıs, -a, -um.	
Ac.	[dēlē-re]	Ac. dēlē-tum	•	CF	RUNDIVE.	
A 1.	(ad) dele-nd-um.	Ab Jala 4e				
AD.	dēle-nd-ō.	Ab. dēlē-tū.		dele-n	d-us, -a, -u	III.

124. Like dēlēre, to destroy, are conjugated only, nēre, to spin, flēre, to weep, and the compounds of -plēre, fill, and -olēre grow (the latter with Supine in -itum); also ciēre, to stir up. See 137(b).

All other verbs of the Second Conjugation retain the characteristic e in the Present System, but drop it in the Perfect System, changing vi to ui, and weaken it to i in the Supine System.

## Second Conjugation.

## CONJUGATION OF monere, to remind.

PRIN. PARTS: mone-ō, monē-re, mon-uī, moni-tum.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.		
INDIC.	SUBJV.	INDIC.	SUBJV.	
	1	PRESENT.		
Sc.—mone-ō,	monea-m,	mone-o-r,	monea-r,	
monē-s,	moneā-s,	monē-ris (-re),	moneā-ris (-re),	
mone-t,	monea-t,	monē-tur,	moneā-tur,	
PL.—monē-mus,	moneā-mus,	monē-mur,	mone-ā-mur,	
monē-tis,	moneā-tis,	monē-minī,	mone-ā-minī,	
mone-nt.	monea-nt.	mone-ntur.	mone-a-ntur.	
	Is	PERFECT.		
Sgmone-ba-m,	monē-re-m,	monē-ba-r,	monē-re-r,	
mon <del>ē</del> -bā-s,	monē-rē-s,	monē-bā-ris (-re),	monē-rē-ris (-re),	
monē-ba-t,	monē-re-t,	monē-bā-tur,	monē-rē-tur,	
PL.—monē-bā-mus,	monē-rē-mus,	monē-bā-mur,	monē-rē-mur,	
monē-bā-tis,	monē-rē-tis,	monē-bā-minī,	monē-rē-minī,	
monē-ba-nt.	monē-re-nt.	monē-ba-ntur.	monē-re-ntur.	
		FUTURE.		
Sg.—monē-b-ō,		monē-bo-r,		
monē-bi-s,		monē-be-ris (-re),		
monē-bi-t,		monē-bi-tur,		
Prmonē-bi-mus,		monē-bi-mur,		
monē-bi-tis,		monē-bi-minī,		
monē-bu-nt.		mone-bu-ntur.		
		Perfect.		
Sg.—mon-u-i,	mon-u-eri-	,	moni-t-us sim,	
mon-u-istī,	mon-u-eri-	,	sis,	
mon-u-it,	mon-u-eri-	t, est,	sit,	
PLmon-u-imus,	mon-u-eri-	,	ıs, moni-t-i simus,	
mon-u-istis,	mon-u-eri-	tis, estis	,	
mon-u-ērunt (-	ire), mon-u-eri-ı	at. sunt	sint.	

## Second Conjugation.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

INDIC.

SUBJV.

INDIC.

SUBIV.

PLUPERFECT.

Sg --mon-u-era-m, mon-u-erā-s.

mon-u-isse-m, mon-u-issē-s.

moni-t-us eram. erās.

moni-t-us essem. essēs.

mon-u-era-t.

mon-u-isse-t.

erat.

esset.

PL.-mon-u-erā-mus, mon-u-issē-mus, moni-t-ī erāmus, moni-t-ī mon-u-erā-tis, mon-u-issē-tis,

erātis. erant.

essēmus, essētis.

mon-u-era-nt.

mon-u-isse-nt.

essent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Sg.-mon-u-er-o,

mon-u-eri-s. mon-u-eri-t. moni-t-us ero.

eris. erit,

PL. -mon-u-eri-mus. mon-u-eri-tis.

moni-t-I erimus. eritis.

mon-u-eri-nt.

erunt.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT. Sa. mone.

PRESENT. FUTURE.

FUTURE.

mone-to. monē-tō. monē-re.

mone-tor, mone-tor.

PL.

monē-te, monē-tōte, mone-ntō.

monē-minī,

mone-ntor.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. monë-re.

Pres. monë-ri. PERF.

Perf. mon-u-isse.

moni-t-um. -am. -um esse. Fur. moni-t-um iri.

Fur. moni-tūr-um, -am, um esse.

Fur. Pr. moni-t-um, -am, -um fore.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

PARTICIPLES.

N. [mone-re]. G. mone-nd-I.

FUT.

PRES. N. mone-n-s; G. mone-nt-is, moni-tūr-us, -a, -um,

D. mone-nd-ō. PERF. moni-t-us, -a, -am.

Ac. [monē-re] Ac. moni-tum.

(ad) mone-nd-um.

GERUNDIVE.

Ab. mone-nd-ō.

Ab. moni-tū.

mone-nd-us, -a, -um,

125.

## Third Conjugation.

# CONJUGATION OF emere, to buy.

PRIN. PARTS: em-o, eme-re, ēm-I, ēm(p)-tum.

## ACTIVE.

ēm-ērunt (-ēre). ēm-eri-nt.

## PASSIVE.

INDIC.	SUBJV.	INDIC.	SUBJY.	
	P	RESENT.		
Sg.—em-o,	ema-m,	em-o-r,	ema-r,	
emi-s,	emā-s,	eme-ris (-re),	emā-ris (-re),	
emi-t,	ema-t,	emi-tur,	emā-tur,	
PL.—emi-mus.	emā-mus,	emi-mur,	emā-mur.	
emi-tis,	emā-tis.	emi-mur,	emā-minī,	
emu-nt.	ema-us,	emu-ntur.	ema-mini, ema-ntur.	
Ciliu-me,	Cima-mo.	emu-nour,	ema-neur.	
	Im	PERFECT.		
Sc.—emē-ba-m,	eme-re-m,	emē-ba-r,	eme-re-r,	
emē-bā-s,	eme- <b>rē-s</b> ,	emē-bā-ris (-re,)	eme-rē-ris (-re),	
emē-ba-t,	eme-re-t,	emē- <b>bā-tur</b> ,	eme-rē-tur,	
PL.—emē-bā-mus,	eme-rē-mus,	emē-bā-mur,	eme-rē-mur.	
emē-bā-tis,	eme-rē-tis,	emē-bā-minī,	eme-rē-minī,	
emē-ba-nt.	eme-re-nt.	emē-ba-ntur.	eme-re-ntur.	
	10	UTURE.		
Sg.—ema-m,		ema-r,		
emē-s,		emē-ris (-re),		
eme-t,		emē-tur,		
PL.—emē-mus,		emē-mur,		
emē-tis,		emē-minī,		
eme-nt.		eme-ntur.		
	P	ERFECT.		
Sg.—ēm-ī,	ēm-eri-m,	ēmp-t-us sum,	ēmp-t-us sim,	
ēm-istī,	čın-eri-s,	es,	sīs.	
ēm-it,	ēm-eri-t,	est,	sit,	
PL.—ēm-imus,	ēm-erī-mus,	ēmp-t-i sumus,	ēmp-t-i simus,	
ēm-istis,	ēm-erī-tis,	estis.	sitis.	
······,		,	watta,	

sunt.

sint.

## Third Conjugation.

	AC	TIVE.		PASS	SIVE.	
	INDIC.	SUBJV.	IN	DIC.	SUE	JV.
		1	PLUPERFECT.			
Sg	-ēm-era-m,	ēm-isse-m,	ēmp-t-us	eram,	ēmp-t-us	essem,
	ēm-erā-s,	ēm-issē-s,		erās,		essēs,
	ēm-era-t,	ēm-isse-t,		erat,		esset,
PL	-ēm-erā-mus,	ēm-issē-mus,	ēmp-t-ī	erāmus,	ēmp-t-I	essēmus,
	ēm-erā-tis,	ēm-issē-tis,		erātis,		essētis,
	ēm-era-nt.	ēm-isse-nt.		erant.		essent.
		Fu	TURE PERFECT.			
Se	-em-er-ō,		ēmp-t-us	erð,		
	ēm-eris,			eris,		
	ēm-eri-t,			erit,		
Pr	-ēm-erī-mus,		ēmp-t-I	erimus,		
	em-eri-tis.		omp o c	eritis.		
	ēm-eri-nt.			erunt.		
		I	MPERATIVE.			
1	PRESENT.	FUTURE.	Presen	T.	FUTURE.	
SG.	-	-				
	eme,	emi-tō,	eme-re	,	emi-tor,	
		emi-tō,			emi-tor,	
PL.					-	
	emi-te.	emi-tōte,	emi-mi	inī.	-	
	-	emu- <b>ntō.</b>	-		emu-nton	r.
		1	NFINITIVE.			
PRES	s. eme-re.		Pres.	em-ī.		
PERE	e. ēm-isse.		Perf.	ēmp-t-um	, -am, -um	esse.
FUT.	ēmp-tūr-um,	-am, -um esse.	Fur.	ēmp-tum	īrī.	
			Fur. Pr.	ēmp-t-un	ı, -am, -um	fore.
	GERUN	D.	SUPINE.		PARTICIPI	LES.
N.	[eme-re].		P	res. N. e	mē-n-s; G.	eme-nt-is
	em-e-nd-1.		F	UT. emp	-tūr-us, -a,	-um.

Ac. ēmp-tum.

Ab. ēmp-tū,

PERF. Emp-t-us, -a, -um.

GERUNDIVE.

em-e-nd-us, -a, -um.

(ad) em-e-ndum. Ab. em-e-nd-ō.

D. em-e-nd-ō.

Ac. [em-e-re]

126. Many verbs of the third conjugation with stem in ie (Pres. Indic. in iō) weaken this ie to e before -re, and to i before m, s, and t in all tenses of the Present System except the Future. Otherwise they follow the inflection of eme-re.

These verbs are capiō, cupiō, faciō, fodiō, fugiō, iaciō, pariō, quatiō, rapiō, sapiō, and their compounds; also compounds of -liciō, -spiciō, and the deponents gradior and its compounds, morior and its compounds, patior and its compounds.

SYNOPSIS OF PRESENT SYSTEM OF cape-re, to take.

PRIN. PARTS: capi-ō, cape-re, cēp-ī, cap-tum.

ACTIVE.		. P	PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJV.	INDIC.	SUBJV.	
	PR	ESENT.		
Se.—capi-ō,	capia-m,	capi-o-r,	capia-r,	
capi-s,	capiā-s,	cape-ris (-re),	capiā-ris (-re),	
capi-t,	capia-t,	capi-tur,	capiā-tur,	
PL.—capi-mus,	capiā-mus,	capi-mur,	capiā-mur,	
capi-tis,	capiā-tis,	capi-minī,	capiā-mini,	
capiu-nt.	capia-nt.	capiu-ntur.	capia-ntur.	
IMPERFECT.				
Sc.—capiē-ba-m,	cap-e-re-m,	capi-ē-ba-r,	cape-re-r,	
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	
	Fu	TURE.		
Sc.—capia-m,		capia-r,		
capiē-s,		capie-ris (-re),		
etc.		etc.		
	IMPE	RATIVE.		
Pres.	Fur.	Pres.	Fur.	
Sg.—cape,	cap-i-tō,	cape-re,	capi-tor,	
	cap-i-tō,		capi-tor,	
capi-te.	capi-tōte,	capi-minf.	conin mtan	
	capiu-ntō.		capiu-ntor.	
2	INFI	NITIVE.	n #	
Pres. cape-re.		caj	p- <b>i</b> .	
PARTICIPLE.	GERU	ND.	GERUNDIVE.	
Pres. capiē-n-s.	G. capie	e-nd-ī.	capie-nd-us, -a, -um.	

## 127.

## Fourth Conjugation.

# CONJUGATION OF audire, to hear.

PRIN. PARTS: audi-ō, audi-re, audi-vi, audi-tum.

INDIC SURIV INDIC SURIV.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

	INDIC.	SUBJV.	INDIC.	SOBJV.
		PR	ESENT.	
Sg	-audi-ō,	audia-m,	audi-o-r,	audia-r,
	audī-s,	audiā-s,	audī-ris (re),	audiā-ris (-re),
	audi-t,	audia-t,	audī-tur,	audiā-tur,
PL	-audī-mus,	audiā-mus,	audI-mur,	audiā-mur,
	audī-tis,	audiā-tis,	audī-minī,	audiā-mini,
	audiu-nt.	audia-nt.	audi-u-ntur.	audia-ntur.
		IMP	ERFECT.	
Sg	-audie-ba-m,	audi-re-m,	audiē-ba-r,	audI-re-r,
	audiē-bā-s,	audī-rē-s,	audiē-bā-ris (re),	audī-rē-ris (-re),
	audiē-ba-t,	audī-re-t,	audiē-bā-tur,	audī-rē-tur,
PL.	-audiē-bā-mus,	audī-rē-mus,	audiē-bā-mur,	audī-rē-mur,
	audiē-bā-tis,	audī-rē-tis,	audiē-bā-minī,	audī-rē-minī,
	audiē-ba-nt.	audī-re-nt.	audiē-ba-ntur.	audi-re-ntur,
•		Fo	TURE.	
Sg	-audia-m,		audia-r,	
	audie-s,		audie-ris (-re),	
	audie-t,		audie-tur,	
PL	-audiē-mus,	7.	audiē-mur,	
	audiē-tis,		audiē-minī,	
	audie-nt.		audie-ntur.	

### PERFECT.

So.—audī-v-ī, audī-v-istī, audī-v-it,	audī-v-eri-m, audī-v-eri-s, audī-v-eri-t,	audī-t-us	sum, es, est,	audī-t-us	sim, sīs, sit,
PL.—audī-v-imus,	audi-v-eri-mus,	audī-t-ī	sumus,	audī-t-1	simus,
audī-v-istis,	audī-v-erī-tis,		estis,	1 1 2 2 2 m	sītis,
audî-v-ērunt (-ēre).	audī-v-eri-nt.		sunt.		sint.

## Fourth Conjugation.

SUBJV.

A	OF	TE	37	1.3
- A	. 7	ш	v	114

INDIC.

Sg.-audi-v-er-o,

PL.--

# PASSIVE.

SUBIV.

INDIC.

Pluperfect.					
Sg.—audī-v-era-m, audī-v-erā-s, audī-v-era-t,	audī-v-issē-m, audī-v-issē-s, audī-v-isse-t,	audī <b>-t-us</b>	eram, erās, erat,		essem, essēs, esset,
PL.—audī-v-erā-mus, audī-v-erā-tis, audī-v-era-nt.	audī-v-issē-mus, audī-v-issē-tis, audī-v-isse-nt.		erāmus, erātis, erant.		essēmus, essētis, essent.

### FUTURE PERFECT.

audī-t-us erō,

audī-v-erī-s, audī-v-eri-t,			eris, erit,	
Pl.—audī-v-erī-mus, audī-v-erī-tis, audī-v-eri-nt.		audī-t-ī	erimus, eritis, erunt.	
	IMPE	RATIVE.		
PRESENT.	FUTURE.	PRE	SENT.	FUTURE.

Sg.— —			-
audī,	audī-tō,	audī-re,	audi-tor,
	audī-tō,		audi-tor,

audī-te. audī-tōte, audī-minī. — audiu-ntor.

#### INFINITIVE.

dī-v-isse.	esse.	PERF.	audi-ri. audi-t-um, -am, um audi-tum iri.	esse.
		Fur. Pr.	audi-t-um, -am, -um	fore.
CERTIFIE	CITOTATE		DADERGIDI EG	1

GERUND.	SULIME.	I AITHUIT LIES.
N. [audī-re].		PRES. N. audie-n-s, G. audie-nt-is.
G. audie-nd-I.		Fur. audī-tūr-us, -a, -um.
D. audie-nd-ō.		Perf. audi-t-us, -a, -um.
Ac. [audi-re]	Ac. audī-tum.	
(ad) andia ad um		GERUNDIVE.

(ad) audie-nd-um.

Ab. audie-nd-ō.

Ab. audi-tū.

GERUNDIVE.

audie-nd-us, -a, -um.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

128. Deponent verbs have the passive form, but are active in meaning. They have also the Present and Future Active Participles, and the Future Active Infinitive. Thus a deponent verb alone can have a Present, Future, and Perfect Participle, all with active meaning. The Gerundive, however, is passive in meaning as well as in form.

The conjugation differs in no particular from that of the regular conjugation.

## I. First Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF hortari, to exhort.

PRIN. PARTS: hort-or, horta-ri, horta-tus sum.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Exhort.
Sg.—hort-o-r,

hortā-ris (-re),

PL.—hortā-mur,

horta-minī,

Was exhorting.

Sg.—hortā-ba-r, hortā-bā-ris (-re),

hortā-bā-tur, Pl.—hortā-bā-mur,

> hortā-bā-minī, hortā-ba-ntur.

Shall exhort.

Sg.—hortā-bo-r,

hortā-be-ris (-re), hortā-bi-tur.

PL.-hortā-bi-mur,

hortā-bi-minī,

hortā-bu-ntur.

Be exhorting, may exhort

horte-r,

hortē-ris (-re), hortē-tur,

hortē-mur, hortē-minī.

horte-ntur.

IMPERFECT.

Were exhorting, might exhor

hortā-re-r,

hortā-rē-tur.

hortā-rē-mur.

horta-re-mini.

hortā-re-ntur.

FUTURE.

#### PERFECT.

Have exhorted, exhorted. Have, may have, exhorted. Sg.—hortā-t-us, -a, -um sum, hortā-t-us. -a. -um sim. es. sīs. est. sit. PL.—hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a sumus. horta-t-I. -ae. -a sīmus. estis. sītis. sint. sunt.

PLUPERFECT. Had, might have, exhorted, Had exhorted. Sg.-hortā-t-us, -a, -um eram, hortā-t-us, -a, -um essem, erās. essēs. esset. erat. essēmus. PL.—hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a erāmus, hortā-t-i. -ae. -a erātis. essētis. erant. essent.

#### FUTURE PERFECT.

Shall have exhorted.

Sg.-hortā-t-us. -a. -um erō.

eris.

erit.

PL,-hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a erimus. eritis. erunt.

IMPERATIVE. FUTURE. PRESENT. Sg. horta-re, exhort thou. horta-tor, thou shalt exhort. hortā-tor, he shall exhort. PL. hortā-mini, exhort ye. horta-ntor, they shall exhort. INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLES. PRES. hortā-rī, to exhort. Pres. hortā-n-s, exhorting.

Fur. hortā-tūr-um, am, -um esse, to be about to exhort.

PERF. horta-t-um. -am. -um esse, to have exhorted.

F. P. hortā-t-um, -am, -um fore.

SUPINE.

horta-tum, to exhort, for ex-Ac. horting.

Ab. hortā-tū, to exhort, in the exhorting.

Fur. hortā-tūr-us, -a, um, about to exhort.

PERF. hortā-t-us, -a, -um, having exhorted.

GERUNDIVE.

horta-nd-us, -a, -um, [one] to be exhorted.

GERUND.

G. horta-nd-i, of exhorting.

## 2. Second, Third, Fourth Conjugations.

Synopsis of vereri, to fear; loqui, to speak; mentiri, to lie.

PRIN. PARTS: vere-or, verē-rī, veri-tus sum; loqu-or, loqu-ī, locū-tus sum; menti-or, menti-rī, menti-tus sum.

#### INDICATIVE.

	n.	III.	IV.		
Pres.	vere-o-r,	loqu-o-r,	menti-o-r,		
	verē-ris (-re), etc.,	loque-ris (-re), elc.,	mentī-ris (-re), etc.,		
IMPERF.	verē-ba-r,	loque-ba-r,	mentie-ba-r,		
Fur.	verē-bo-r,	loqua-r,	mentia-r,		
PERF.	veri-t-us sum,	locū-t-us sum,	mentī-t-us sum,		
PLUPF.	veri-t-us eram,	locū-t-us eram,	mentī-t-us eram,		
FUT. Pr.	veri-t-us erō.	locū-t-us erō.	mentī-t-us erō.		
	SU	BJUNCTIVE.			
PRES.	verea-r,	loqua-r,	mentia-r,		
	vereā-ris (-re), etc.,	loqua-ris (-re), etc.,	mentiā-ris(-re), etc.,		
IMPERF.	verē-re-r,	loque-re-r,	mentī-re-r,		
PERF.	veri-t-us sim,	locū-t-us sim,	mentī-t-us sim,		
PLUPF.	veri-t-us essem.	locū-t-us essem.	mentī-t-us essem.		
	13	IPERATIVE.			
Pres.	verē-re,	loque-re,	mentī-re,		
Fur.	verē-tor.	loqui-tor.	mentī-tor.		
INFINITIVE					
Pres.	verē-rī.	loqu-i,	mentī-rī,		
FUT.	veri-tūr-um esse.	locū-tūr-um esse.	mentī-tūr-um esse		
PERF.	veri-t-um esse,	locu-t-um esse.	mentī-t-um esse.		
FUT. PF.	veri-t-um fore.	locū-t-um fore.	menti-t-um fore		
201.11.		2000 0 0000			
PARTICIPLES.					
PRES.	verē-n-s,	loqu <b>ē-n-s</b> ,	mentiē-n-s,		
FUT.	veri-tūr-us,	locū-tūr-us,	mentī-tūr-us,		
PERF	veri-t-us.	locū-t-us.	mentī-t-us.		
GERUND.	vere-nd-i, etc.,	loque-nd-i,	mentie-nd-1,		
GERUNDIV		loque-nd-us,	mentie-nd-us,		
SUPINE.	veri-tum,	locū-tum,	mentī-tum,		
	veri-tū,	loeū-tū.	mentī-tū.		

## Periphrastic Conjugation.

129. The Periphrastic Conjugation arises from the combination of the Future Participle active and the Gerundive with forms of the verb sum.

## ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. amātūrus (-a, -um) sum, amātūrus (-a, -um) sim,

Am about to love. Be about to love.

IMPF. amātūrus eram, amātūrus essem,

Was about to love. Were about to love.

Fut. amātūrus erō,
Shall be about to love.

Perf. amātūrus fuī, amātūrus fuerim,

Have been, was, about to love. Have, may have, been about to love.

Plupp. amātūrus fueram, amātūrus fuissem,

Had been about to love. Had, might have, been about to love.

Fut. Perf. amātūrus fuerē, Shall have been about to love.

INFINITIVE. PRES. amātūr-um (-am, -um) esse, To be about to love.

## PASSIVE.

PRES. amandus (-a, -um) sum, amandus (-a, -um) sim,

Have to be loved. Have to be loved.

IMPF. amandus eram, amandus essem, forem,

Had to be loved. Had to be loved.

Fur. amandus ero, Shall have to be loved.

Perf. amandus fui, amandus fuerim,

Have had to be loved. Have had to be loved.

PLUPF. amandus fueram, amandus fuissem,

Had had to be loved. Should have had to be loved.

INFINITIVE. PRES. amandum (-am, -um) esse, To have to be loved.

PERF. amandum fuisse, To have had to be loved.

## Notes on the Four Conjugations.

# 130. The Present System.

- 1. PRESENT INDICATIVE.—(a) In the third person Singular active, early Latin, and occasionally later poets, often retain the original length of vowel in the endings -āt, -ēt, and -īt of the first, second, and fourth conjugations. Final -īt in the third conjugation is rare, and due, perhaps, to analogy or to metrical necessity. In the first person Plural the ending -mūs is found a few times in poetry. In third person Plural an earlier ending, -onti, is found only in a Carmen Saliare, and is disputed. The ending -ont is frequent in early Latin for -unt.
- (b) In the second Singular, passive, in all tenses of the Present stem, the ending -re is much more common in early Latin than -ris, and is regular in Cic. except in the Pr. Indic., where he prefers -ris on account of confusion with Pr. Inf., admitting -re only in deponents, and then but rarely. In general, in the Pr. Indic. -re is rare in the first and second conjugations, more rare in the third, and never found in the fourth, in prose authors. Post-Ciceronian prose writers, e. g., Luvy, Tactrus, prefer -ris, even in the other tenses of the Present stem. The poets use -ris or -re to suit the metre.
- 2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.—In the fourth conjugation, instead of -iē-, we find in early times -i-. This is common in early Latin (especially scibam), in the poets to suit the metre, and occasionally in later prose. In the verb eō, and its compounds (but ambire varies), this form was regular always.
- 3. Future Indicative.—Plautus shows sporadic cases of -īt, as erīt, vēnībīt (vēneš). In the fourth conjugation -ībō for -iam is very common in early Latin (especially scībō), and forms in -ībō of the third conjugation are occasional.
- 4. Present Subjunctive.—Final -āt of the third person Singular active is occasional in early Latin and also in later poets. In early Latin the active endings -im, -is, -it, -int are found in dare (and some compounds), which forms very often duim, duis, duit, duint. On similar forms from esse, see 116; from edere, see 172.
- 5. IMPERATIVE.—(a) Four verbs, dicere, dücere, facere, ferre (171), form the Pr. Impv. active dic, düc, fac, fer. But in early Latin dice, düce, face are not uncommon. The compounds follow the usage of the simple verbs, except prepositional compounds of faciö. Scire, to know, lacks the Pr. Impv. sci.
- (b) The original ending of the Fut. Impv. active -tōd is found in early inscriptions, but very rarely.
- (c) The Pr. Impv. passive (second and third Singular) ends occasionally in early Latin in -minō. Appellāminō (Cic. Leg. III. 3, 8) as third Plur. is a blunder.
- 6. Present Infinitive Passive.—The early ending -rier (-ier) is very common in early Latin and occasionally in poetry at all periods. Plautus shows about 140 such formations. In literary prose it does not appear till very late.
- 7. The Present Participle occurs sporadically in early Latin with the ending -as, -es, the n having been omitted owing to its weak sound; see 12, R. I.
- 8. The older ending of the Gerund and Gerundive in the third and fourth conjugations was -undus; and -endus was found only after u. In classical times -undus is frequent, especially in verbs of third and fourth conjugations. Later, -endus is the regular form.

# 131. The Perfect System.

1. SYNCOPATED FORMS.—The Perfects in -\$\vec{s}\vec{v}\i, -\vec{v}\vec{v}\i, -\vec{v}\vec{v}\vec{v}\i, -\vec{v}\vec{v}\vec{v}\i, -\vec{v}\vec{v}\vec{v}\vec{v}\vec{v}\vec{v}\vec{v}\vec{v}\vec{v}\vec{v}\vec{v}\vec{v}\vec{v}\v

The syncopated forms are found in all periods, and in the poets are used to suit the metre.

### PERFECT.

SING. 1. 2. amāvistī, amāstī. dēlēvistī, dēlēstī. audīvistī, audīstī. 3. PLUR. 1. 2. amāvistis, amāstis. dēlēvistis, dēlēstis, audīvistis, audīstis, 3. amaverunt, amarunt, deleverunt, delerunt, audiverunt, audierunt, Subjy. amāverim, amārim, dēlēverim, dēlērim, audiverim, audierim. etc. etc. etc. PLUPERFECT. INDIC. amaveram, amaram, dēlēveram, dēlēram, audiveram, audieram, dēlēvissem, dēlēssem, audīvissem, audīssem, Subjy. amāvissem, amāssem,

amāverō, amārō, dēlēver

FUTURE PERFECT.

dēlēverō, dēlērō,

etc.

audīverō, audierō,

etc.

etc.
Infinamävisse, amässe.

Infinitive Perfect.
dēlēvisse, dēlēsse. audīvisse, audīsse.

2. In the first and third persons Sing. and in the first person Pl. of the Perfect, syncope occurs regularly only in Perfects in IVI, and no contraction ensues. It is most common in the Perfects of Ire (169) and petere. In other verbs this syncopation is post-Ciceronian, except in a few forms. So Cicero uses dormit, ērudiit, expediit, molliit, cupiit (also Plautus); Caesar, commūniit, resciit, quaesiit. Dēsinere forms desii and dēsiit, once each in early Latin (Cicero uses dēstiti and dēstitit instead), and then in post-Augustan Latin; dēsiimus is cited once from Cicero. The unsyncopated forms are always common except those of ire (169), which are very rare in classical prose, but occur more often in the poets for metrical reasons.

Note.—The forms nomus (Enn. = novimus), enarramus (Ter., Ad., 365), flemus, mūtāmus, and nārramus (Prop.), suēmus (Lucr.), in the Perfect, are sporadic and sometimes doubtful.

3. novi, I know, and movi, I have moved, are also contracted, in their compounds especially.

Sing.-2. nostī. Plur.-2. nostis. 3. norunt. Subjv. norim, etc.

Plupf. noram, etc. Subjv. nossem, etc. Inf. nosse.

But the Fut. Perf. noro is found only in compounds.

Similar contractions are seen in movi, but not so often; iūvi shows also a few cases of syncope in poetry.

4. (a) In the early Latin poets frequently and occasionally in later, syncope takes place in Perfects in -s1. These drop the s and contract. A few cases are found in Cicero, especially in the letters. Examples are dixt1 (found also in Cic. and probably an earlier formation, and not by syncope for dixist1); duxt1, principally in compounds; intellext1 (once in Cic.); soripst1: mist1 (misist1) and several others; also soripstis.

(b) Akin to these are a number of forms in -sō for Fut. Perfect; -sim for Pf. Subjv. and more rarely -sem for Plupf. Subjv. These forms are most usual in the

third conjugation, but are also not unfrequent in the other three; thus,

- 1. Future Perfect: faxō (facere); capsō (capere) and compounds: iūssō (iubēre; Verg.); amāssō (amāre); servāssō (servāre) and compounds, together with some others.
- 2. Perfect Subjunctive: faxim and compounds; dūxim; ausim (audēre, also used by Crc.); iūssim; ēmpsim (emere); locāssim (locāre); negāssim (negāre). In the second and third persons Sing., where the Fut. Pf. Indic. and the Pf. Subjv. are identical, the forms are much more common. The plural forms are much less frequent.

3. Pluperfect Subjunctive: faxem; prō-mīssem; intel-lexēs; re-cēsset and a

few other forms; ērēpsēmus (Hor., S., i. 5, 79). These forms are rare.

4. Infinitive: dîxe; dē-spexe; ad-dūxe, etc.; intel-lexe; dē-trāxe, etc.; advexe; ad-mīsse, and a few others. Also the Future forms āveruncāssere, reconciliāssere, impetrāssere, oppūgnāssere.

The exact origin of these forms is still a matter of dispute, but the common view is

that they are a ristic formations.

5. From the earliest times the third Plural of the Pf. Indic. active shows two endings, -ëront (later -ërunt) and -ëre. The form in -ërunt was always preferred, and in classical prose is the normal form. The form in -ëre seems to have been the popular form, and is much liked by Livy and later writers. Tacitus seems to have preferred -ërunt for the Pure Perfect, and -ëre for the Historical Perfect. The poets scan, according to the exigencies of the metre, at all periods also ĕrunt.

6. In regard to the other endings, we have to notice in early Latin -is occasionally in the Pf. Subjv. and Fut. Pf. Indic. active; Perfects in -ii are always written with -iei-on inscriptions; in other Perfects the third person Singular in -6it (older -8t), or -it; as dedet; occasionally the first person ends in -6i and the second in -isten. Peculiar forms are dedrot (dedro), (for dederunt), feed (for fecit), and a few others.

## THE STEM.

132. With the exception of the verbs sum, I am, edō, I eat, eō, I go, ferō, I bear, volō, I wish (perhaps dō, I give), and their compounds, most of whose forms come directly from the root, all verbs in Latin form their stems from the root by the addition of a vowel or of a combination of a vowel with a consonant. This vowel is called the thematic vowel; see 190.

In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, and in some verbs of the third conjugation, the stem thus formed is found throughout the whole conjugation; in other verbs the present stem shows different forms from the other stems.

## 1. THE PRESENT STEM.

133. I. The Stem or Thematic class: To this class belong those verbs whose stems are formed by the addition of a thematic vowel (usually i, sometimes u) to the root, as in the third conjugation, or to a stem formed by the addition of ā, ě, or i to the root, as in the first, second, and fourth conjugations. The stem thus formed is seen (with lengthened vowel sometimes) in all forms of the verb. To this class belong verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, and in the

third (a) verbs formed from a strong root, i. e., verbs with i,  $\bar{u}$ ,  $\bar{a}$ ,  $\bar{b}$ ,  $\bar{b}$ , ae, au; and with e in the stem; as  $dic\bar{o}$  (=  $deic\bar{o}$ ),  $d\bar{u}c\bar{o}$  (=  $douc\bar{o}$ ),  $r\bar{a}d\bar{o}$ ,  $c\bar{e}d\bar{o}$ ,  $r\bar{o}d\bar{o}$ , caed $\bar{o}$ , plaud $\bar{o}$ ; veh $\bar{o}$ , verg $\bar{o}$ , pend $\bar{o}$ , etc.; (b) verbs formed from a weak root, i. e., those with vowel i,  $\bar{u}$ ,  $\bar{o}$ , and probably those with  $\bar{a}$ : as di-vid $\bar{o}$ , fur $\bar{o}$ , ol $\bar{o}$  (olere), ago.

II. The Reduplicated class: The Present stem is formed by reduplication, with i in the reduplicated syllable:

gen-, gī-gnō (for gi-gen-o), gī-gne-re, to beget; sta-, si-stō, si-ste-re, to set, stand. Compare stāre, to stand. Other forms, as sīdō (for si-s(e)Do), serō (for si-so), and perhaps bibō, have the Reduplication concealed.

III. The T class: The root, which usually ends in a guttural, is strengthened by to, te: flecto (flec.), flecte-re, to bend.

IV. The Nasal class: In this class the root is strengthened by no, no, the nasal being inserted

A. In vowel-stems: sinō (SI-), sine-re, to let; linō (LI-), line-re, to besmear.

B. After the characteristic liquid: cernō (CER-), cerne-re, to sift, separate; temnō (TEM-), temne-re, to scorn.

Notes.—1. After 1 assimilation takes place: pello (for pel-nō), pelle-re, to drive.
2. In a few verbs the strengthened forms (-no after a vowel, -ino after a liquid) are confined mainly to the third person Plural active of the Present, and are found taker than the close of the sixth century of the city: danunt (= dant), explēnunt (= explent), nequinont (= nequeunt), and a few others.

C. Before the characteristic mute: vincō (VIC-), vince-re, to conquer; frangō (FRAG-), frange-re, to break; fundō (FUD-), funde-re, to pour.

Before a p-mute n becomes m: rumpō (RUP-), rumpe-re, to rend; cumbō (CUB-), cumbe-re, to lie down.

D. Here belong also those verbs in which the root is strengthened by -nuō, nue; as sternuō (ster-), sternue-re, to sneeze.

Note.—In verbs like  $tingu\bar{o}$ , Isoak, the consonantal u disappears before a consonant in the Pf. and Supine : tinxi, tinc-tum.

V. The Inchoative class: The Present stem has the suffix -sco, -sce. irā-scor, I am in a rage; crē-scō, I grow; ob-dormī-scō, I fall asleep; apī-scor, I reach; pro-ficī-scor, I set out; nancī-scor (NAC-), I get; nō-scō (= gnō-scō), I become acquainted; pō-scō (= porc-scō), I demand; mīs-ccō (= mic-sc-cō), I mix; dīscō (= di-dc-scō), I learn. A number of Inchoatives are derivative formations from substantives; as, lapidēscō (from lapis), I become stone.

VI. The I class: Instead of the simple thematic vowel i the root is increased by the form ie. In some forms of the Present stem, i. e., the Pr. Inf., Impf. Subjv., second Sing., Pr. Impv., this appears in the form e; in some other forms it appears as i: capi-ō (CAP-), cape-re, to take,

NOTE.—Verbs of the fourth conjugation also belong to the i class; but for convenience the i class is here restricted as above.

VII. The Mixed class: Some verbs that originally belong to the i-class have gone over in the Present stem to the forms of the stem class: as veniö (ven-), veni-re, to come; videō (vid-), vidē-re, to see; sonō (son-), sonā-re, to sound.

#### II. THE PERFECT STEM.

134. I. Perfect in -vi (or -ui): These are formed by the addition

(a) Of -vī to the stem as it appears in the Present Inf. in combination with the thematic vowel. To this class belong the Perfects of the first and fourth conjugations, and the few verbs of the second conjugation mentioned in 124; amā-re, amā-vī; audī-re, audī-vī; delē-re, delē-vī.

(b) Of -ui to the Present stem after its characteristic vowel is dropped. Here belong the majority of the verbs of the second conjugation; mone-re, mon-ui.

II. Perfect in -sI: These are formed by the addition of -sI to the root; which is, as a rule, long either by nature or position. This class comprises a large number of verbs in the third conjugation in which the stem-characteristic consonant is a mute; three in which it is -m (preme-re, to press; sūme-re, to take; con-tem(n)e-re, to scorn); and a few in which it is -s, as ūr-ō, I burn, ūs-sI; haereō, I stick, haesī (= haes-sI).

Examples are rēpō, I ereep, rēp-sī; scrībō, I write, scrīp-sī; dīcō, I say, dīxī (= dīc-sī); carpō, I pluck, carp-sī; rādō, I scrape, rāsī (= rād-sī).

Note.—But verbs in -ndō, take I in the Perfect: dēfend-ō, I strike (ward) off, dēfend-I; perhaps because they formed originally a reduplicated perfect; as, mandō, I chew, man(di)dI; so (fe)fendI, I have struck.

III. Reduplicated Perfects: These are formed by prefixing to the unstrengthened root its first consonant (or consonantal combination) together with the following vowel, a and ae being weakened to e, or, if the root began with a vowel, by prefixing e, and adding the termination -I. In Latin but few of these forms remain, and they have been variously modified: direc, I learn, di-dici; spondec, I pledge, spo(s)pondi; tango, I touch, te-ti-gi; tundo, I strike, tu tud-i; ago, I act. ēgi (= e-ag-ī); emo, I buy, ēmi (= e-em-ī).

In composition the reduplication is in many eases dropped; so always in compounds of cade-re, to fall; caede-re, to fell; cane-re, to sing; falle-re, to deceive; pange-re, to fix; parce-re, to spare; pare-re, to bear; pende-re, to hang; punge-re, to prick; tange-re, to touch; tende-re, to stretch (occasionally retained in late Latin); tende-re, to shear (but occasionally retained in late Latin); tunde-re, to strike.

Disce-re, to learn, always retains it, and so posce-re, to demand, and admordere, to bite. Of compounds of curre-re, to run, succurrere always

drops the reduplication, practurere always retains it; the others vary. Of compounds of dare, abscondere usually drops it, but all trisyllabic compounds that change the a, and all quadrisyllabic compounds, retain it. Compounds of sistere, to set, and stare, to stand, retain it.

IV. Perfect in i. Verbs of the third conjugation, with a short stem-syllable, take i in the Perfect, after lengthening the stem-syllable and changing i into ō. In many cases these Perfects are the remains of reduplicated forms: legō, I read, lēg-i; vide-ō, I see, vid-i; fodi-ō, I stab, fōd-i; fugi-ō, I flee, fūg-i; frang-ō, I break, frēg-i.

V. Denominative verbs in -uō, like acuō, I sharpen; metuō, I fear; also sternuō, I sneeze, form the Perfect in -u-ī after the analogy of primary verbs, and the formation in -uī gradually extended in Latin.

#### III. THE SUPINE STEM.

- 135. I. Supine in -tum, Perfect Passive Participle in -tus: The stems are formed by the addition of -tu or -to
- (a) To the stem as it appears in the Present Infinitive active. Here belong most verbs of the first and fourth conjugations, and those verbs of the second conjugation that are mentioned in 124: amā-tum, dēlētum, audī-tum. Those verbs of the second conjugation which form Perfect in -uī, form the Supine stem by weakening the thematic vowel e to i, and adding -tu, -to, except cēnsē-re, to deem, docē-re, to teach, mīscē-re, to mix, tenē-re, to hold, torrē-re, to scoreh, which omit the thematic vowel, and form cēnsum, doctum, mīxtum, (tentum), tōstum.
- (b) To the unstrengthened stem. Here belong most verbs of the third conjugation and the five verbs of the second just given, with sporadic forms in the other conjugations: cap-tum (capiō, I take), rēp-tum (rēpō, I creep), dio-tum (dīcō, I say), fac-tum (faciō, I do).

In combinations of -t- with a dental, assimilation took place, giving usually ss after a short vowel and s after a long vowel: scissum (scindō, I cleave), caesum (caedō, I fell). On the analogy of this and under the influence often of Perfect in -si, we find -s- also in some other stems:

1. In stems with a guttural characteristic; as, fix-um (figō, I fix); often with a preceding liquid: mersum (mergō, I dip; Pf. mersī); tersum (tergeō, I wipe; Pf. tersī); parsum (parcō, I spare; Pf. parsī, old); spar-sum (spargō, I sprinkle; Pf. sparsī); mul-sum (mulgeō, I milk; Pf. mul-sī); but far-tum (farciō, I sluff; Pf. farsī); tortum (terqueō, I twist; Pf. torsī); indul-tum (rare and post-classical, from indulgeō, I indulge; Pf. indulsī).

2. In one with a labial characteristic: lap-sum (labor, I slip).

3. In some stems with characteristic s; as. consum (consec, I deem; see I. a.); hassum (haered, I stick); pinsum (pinso, I pound).

4. In some stems with a nasal characteristic : pressum (premo, I press; Pf. pressi);

mānsum (maneō, I remain; Pf. mānsi).

5. In stems where ll, rr has arisen by assimilation: pulsum (pello, I drive); falsum (fallo, I falsify); vulsum (vello, I pluck); cursum (curro, I run); versum (verro, I sweep).

- II. FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE IN -tūrus.—The same changes occur in the stem as are found in the case of the Supine.
- I. In some stems ending in -u a thematic vowel i is inserted; as arguitūrus (arguere, to prove); luitūrus (luere, to loose); abnuitūrus (abnuere, to deny); ruitūrus (ruere, to rush); ēruitūrus (ēruere, to root out); fruitūrus (fruī, to enjoy).
- 2. Some Future Participles are found without corresponding Perfect: calitūrus (calēre, to be warm); caritūrus (carēre, to lack); dolitūrus (dolēre, to grieve); iacitūrus (iacēre, to lie); pāritūrus (pārēre, to obey); valitūrus (valēre, to be well).
- 3. Irregular are: āgnotūrus, āgnitūrus (āgnoscere, to know well); discitūrus (discere, to learn); hausūrus, hausūrus (haurīre, to drain); nīsūrus (nītī, to lean); moritūrus (morī, to die); nōscitūrus (nōscere, to know); oritūrus (orirī, to arise); paritūrus (parere, to bear).

### Change of Conjugation.

- 136. A change of Conjugation occurs in verbs which show a long thematic vowel in the Present stem, but not in the Perfect stem, or the reverse.
- 1. Verbs with Perfect and Supine formed regularly, according to the third conjugation, have the Present stem formed according to one of the other three:

auge-ō,	augē-re,	aux-ī,	auc-tum,	to increase.
senti-ō,	sentī-re,	sēn-sī,	sēn-sum,	to feel.
saepi-ō,	saepī-re,	saep-sī,	saep-tum,	to hedge about.
veni-ō,	venī-re,	vēn-ī,	ven-tum,	to come.
vide-ō,	vidē-re,	vīd-ī,	vī-sum,	to see.
vinci-ō,	vinci-re,	vinx-ī,	vinc-tum,	to bind.

2. Verbs with Perfect and Supine formed according to the first, second, or fourth conjugations, have the Present stem formed according to the third, in consequence of strengthening:

ster-n-ō,	ster-ne-re,	strā-vī,	strā-tum,	to strew.
crē-sc-ō,	crē-sce-re,	crē-vī,	crē-tum,	to grow.
li-n-ō.	line-re.	lē-vī (lī-vī).	li-tum.	to smear.

- 3. Verbs with the Present formed regularly according to the third conjugation, have the Perfect and Supine formed according to (a) the second, or (b) the fourth conjugation:
- (a) accumbere, to rectine, fremere, to rage, gemere, to groan, gignere, to beget, molere, to grind, strepere, to resound, vomere, to vomit, form Perfect in -ui, Supine in -itum.

alere, to nourish, colere, to cultivate, consulere, to consult, frendere, to show the teeth, occulere, to conceal, rapere, to snatch, and its compounds form Perfect in -ui, Supine in -tum (-sum). For ali-tus, see 142, 3.

compescere, to check, con-cinere, to sing together, and other compounds of canere. to sing, excellere, to excel, stertere, to snore, tremere, to tremble, form Perfect in -ui, but no Supine.

- (b) arcessere, to summon, incessere, to enter, cupere, to desire, petere, to seek, quaerere, to search, and its compounds, rudere, to roar, sapere, to savor, form Perfect in -īvī, Supine in -ītum.
  - 4. Stems vary among the first, second, and fourth conjugations.
- (a) Verbs with the Present formed according to the first, and Perfect and Supine according to the second conjugation:

crepare, to crackle, cubare, to lie, domare, to conquer, micare, to flash, plicare, to fold, sonare, to sound, tonare, to thunder, vetare, to forbid, with Perfect in -ui. Supine in -itum :

fricare, to rub, necare, to kill, secare, to cut, with Perfect in -ui, Supine in -tum (but participles in ātus are occasional, principally in later Latin).

- (b) Verbs with Present formed according to fourth, and Perfect and Supine according to the second: amicire, to wrap, aperire, to open, operire, to cover, salire, to leap, and compounds.
- (c) Of the second and fourth conjugations is cie-ō (ci-o), cie-re (ci-re), cīvī, cītum (ci-tum), to stir up, and its compounds; while poto, potare, to drink, forms Sup. pö-tum or pö-tātum, and Fut. Part. pö-tūrus or potā-tūrus.
- 5. dare, to give, and stare, to stand, pass over to the third conjugation in the Perfect, in consequence of reduplication.

### LIST OF VERBS ACCORDING TO THE PER-FECT FORM.

PERFECT: -vī: SUPINE: -tum.

137. Stem class:

(a) Verbs of first and fourth conjugations, except those mentioned in 136, 4. Irregular in Supine is

sepeli-ō, sepelf-re, sepelī-vī, to bury. sepul-tum, (b) In the second conjugation: dēle-ō, dēlē-re, dēlē-vī, to destroy. dēlē-tum, fle-ō. flē-re. flē-vī, flē-tum, to weep. ne-ō, nē-re, nē-vī. nē-tum, to spin. -ole-ō (ab-, in-), -olē-re, -olē-vī, to grow. These compounds form Supine in itum; abolitum, inolitus. -pleō. -plē-re, plē-vī, plē-tum. to fill. So the compounds with com-, in-, ex-, re-, sup-. vië-re, viē-tus. to plait. Irregular is

ciē-re (cīre), cī-vī,

cI-tum (ci-tum), to stir up. In the compounds we find the Participles concitus or concitus, percitus, excitus or excitus, but accitus.

#### (c) In the third conjugation:

arcess-ō, arcesse re, arcessī vī, arcessī-tum, to send for.
So, too, lacess-ō, I teuse, capess ō, I luy hold of. In early Latin we often find accersō, the relation of which to arcessō is variously explained. The forms arcessīrī, and later arcessīrētur, from the fourth conjugation, also occur.

in-cess-ō, in-cesse-re, in-cessi-vi (cessi), to attack. So facess ō, I cause, make off.

pet-ō, pete re. petī-vī, petī-tum, to seek (fly at). quaere re. quaer.o. quaesi-vi. quaesi-tum. to seek. con quir-o. con-quire-re. conquisi-vi. con-quisi-tum, to hunt un. So other compounds of -quiro (quaero). rud-ō. rude-re, rudī-vī. rudī-tum, to roar.

Tib., 1. 4, 48, has at-ternisse, and Applicius has similar forms.

### 138. Reduplicated class:

ser-ō, sere-re, sē-vī, sa-tum, to sow. So cōnserō, but with Sup. cōn-situm.

#### 139. Nasal class:

A. li-n-ō, li-ne-re, lō-vI, li-tum, to besmear. So compounds of linō. Pf. li vi is rare.

si-n-ō, si-ne-re, sī-vī, si-tum, to let. So dē-sinō, I leave off, and in early Latin, pōnō (= po-sinō), I put.

B. cer-n-ō, cer-ne-re, crō-vī, (crō-tum), to separate. So dēcernō, I decide.

sper-n-ō, sper-ne-re, sprē-vī, sprē-tum, to despise. ster-n-ō, ster-ne-re, strā-vī, strā tum, to strew.

### 140. Inchoative class:

inveterā-sc-ō, inveterā-sce-re, inveterā-vī, inveterā-tum, to grow old.
pā-sc-ō, pā sce-re, pā-vī, pās tum, to graze (trans.).
vesperā-sc-ō. vesperā-sce-re, vesperā-vī. — to become evening.

vesperā-sc-ō, vesperā-sce-re, vesperā-vī, — to become evenin So advesperāscō.

crē-sc-ō, crē-sce-re, crē-vī, crē-tum, to grow. So the compounds.

con-cupi-sc ō, -cupi-sce-re, -cupi-vi, -cupi-tum, to long for.

ob-dormi-sc ō, -dormi-sce-re, -dormi-vi, -dormi-tum, to fall asleep.

So condormisc ō. ēdormisc ō.

ex-olē-sc-ō, -olē sce re, -olē-vī, -olē-tum, to get one's growth. So ob-solēscō, I grow old. But ab olēscō, I disappear, has abolitum; co-alēscō, I grow together, co-alitum; ad-olēscō, I grow up, ad-ultum in the Sup.; and inolēscō lacks the Supine.

quië-sc-ō, quië-sce-re, quië-vI, quië-tum, to rest.
sci-sc-ō, sci-sce-re, sci-vI, sci-tum, to decree.
So ad-sciscō, I take on.

su-ësc-ö, suë-sce-re, suë-vi, suë-tum, to accustom one's self-So compounds as-, con-, dē-, man-.

(g)nō-sc-ō, nō-see-re, nō-vī, (nō-tum), to know.
So īgnōscō, I pardon; but cō-gnōsco, I recognize, and other compounds of nōsco, have Sup. in -itum.

re-sip-Isc-ō, -sipI-sce-re, -sipI-vI, — to come to one's senses.

141. I-class:

cupi-ō, cupe-re, cupī-vī, cupī-tum, to desire.
sapi-ō, sape-re, sapī-vī (-uī), — to huve a flavor.

#### PERFECT: -ui; SUPINE: (i)tum.

#### 142. Stem class:

- 1. The majority of the verbs of the second conjugation; see 184, I, b, and 185, a. But
- sorbe-ō, sorbē-re, sorb-uī, to sup up.
  Pf. sorp-sī occurs in Val. Max. and Lucan.
  - 2. Of the first conjugation:
- crep-ō, crepā-re, crep-uI, crepi-tum, to rattle.

  So the compounds, but in early and late Latin the regular forms of dis-crepāre and in-crepāre are occasional.
- cub-ō, cubā-re, cub-ul, cubi-tum, to lie.

  Occasional regular forms in post-Ciceronian Latin.
- dom-ō, domā-re, dom-uī, domi-tum, to tame.
- fric-ō, fricā-re, fric-uI, fric-tum (-ā-tum), to rub.

  Occasionally in early and more often in post-classical Latin, the regular forms are found in the compounds; so always -fricā-tūrus,
- mic-ō, mic-ā re, mic-uī, to quiver, flash.

  But dī-mic-āre, lo flght (out), is regular, except occasionally in Ovid.
- nec-ō, necā-re, necā-vi (nec-uī rare), necā-tum, to kill.

  The compound ēnecā-re, to kill off, has ēnecāvī in early Latin, otherwise ēnecuī (rare); and ēnectus (but Plin. Mai., ēnecātus).
- plic-ō, plicā-re, (plicā-vī), plici-tum, to fold.

  The simple forms of plicāre are rare. The compounds ap-, com-, ex-, im-, vary between -āvī and -uī in the Pf., and -ātum and -itum in the Sup.; but Cicero uses always applicāvī, applicātum; complicāvī, complicātum; and usually explicāvī, always explicātum; always implicātum; circumplicāre is always regular; forms of replicāre are rare.
- sec-ō, secā-re, sec-uī, sec-tum, to cut.
  Regular forms are early, late, and rare.
- son-ō, sonā-re, son-uī, soni-tum, to sound.

  But regularly sonātūrus. Regular forms are late. In early Latin the forms sonere, sonit, sonunt, resonit, resonunt, show that the simple verb was sonere.
- ton-ō, tonā-re, ton-uī, to thunder.
  But at-tonitus and intonātus (Hor., Epod. 2, 51).

				99
vet-ō, But Persius	vetā-re, (5, 90) uses vet	vet-uî, ã-vī.	veti-tum,	to forbid.
3. Of the	third conjuga	ation:		
frem-ō,	freme-re,	frem-uI,		to roar, rage.
gem-ō,	geme-re,	gem-ui,	quinoscopicos.	to groan.
vom-ō,	vome re,	vom-ui,	vomi-tum,	to vomit.
al-ō, Participle ali	ale-re, i-tus occurs fro	al-uī, m Līvy on.	al-tum,	to nourish.
col-ō,	cole-re,	col-uī,	cul-tum,	to cultivate.
con-cin-ō, So occinere,	-cine-re, praecinere.	-cin-uI,		to sing together.
con-sul-o,	con-sule-re,	con-sul-ui,	cōn-sul-tum,	to consult.
deps-ō,	depse-re,	deps-uī,	deps-tus,	to knead.
mol-ō,	mole-re,	mol-uī,	moli-tum,	to grind.
occul-ō,	occule-re,	occul-uī,	occul-tum,	to conceal.
pîns-ō,	pînse-re,	pīns-uī,	pīnsi-tum,	to pound.
	sum, pīstum.	Collateral forms o	f pīsō, pīsere,	are early and rare
so also is <b>pinsi</b> l	oant.			
ser-ō,	sere-re,	as danna danna	(ser-tum),	to string (out). Esertum, to desert
The same forms	are found occas	sionally in compour	ids of serere, t	o sow (138), but no
in classical Lati			•	
stert-ō,	sterte-re,	stert-uf,	And in contrast of the contras	to snore.
strep-ō,	strepe-re,	strep-uī,	(strepi-tum),	to make a din.
tex-ō,	texe-re,	tex-ui,	tex-tum,	to weave.
Irregular	are			
met-ō,	mete-re,	mess-uf,	mes-sum,	to mow.
vol-ō, So nōlō, mā	vel-le, lō; see 174.	vol-uī,		to wish.
4. In the	fourth conjug	gation:		
amici-ō,	amicī-re,	amic-uī (amixī),	amic-tum,	to clothe.
aperi-ō,	aperi-re,	aper-uI,	aper-tum,	to open.
operi-ō,	operi-re,	oper-uī,	oper-tum,	to cover up.
sali-ō,	sali-re,	sal-uī,	sal-tum,	to leap.

# classical writers, and often syncopated. 143. Reduplicated class:

gI-gn-ō (GEN-), gI-gne-re, gen-uI, geni-tum, to beget.
Early Latin has the Present forms genit, genunt, genat, genitur, genuntur, genendi, geni.

The regular Perfects salivi, salii, are found in compounds, but usually in post-

#### 144. Nasal class:

frend-ō, frende-re, — fre-sum, fres-sum, to gnash.

Also in the form frende-ō. frende-re.

ac-cumb-ō, -cumbe-re, cub-uI, cubi-tum, to lie down. So also the compounds con-, dis-, in-; but re-cumbō lacks the Supine.

ex-cell-ō, -celle-re, (cell-uI), (cel-sus), to surpass.

But per-cellere, to beat down, has Pf. per-culf, Sup. per-culsum. Excelluërunt is found in Gell. xiv. 3, 7, and in Augustine; otherwise forms of Pf. and Sup. do not occur.

#### 145. The Inchoative class:

dispēsc-ō, dispēsce-re, dispēsc-ul, — to let loose.

So compēscere, to check.

A large number of verbs are formed from verbs of the second conjugation, or from substantives or adjectives, and take Pf. in -uī; as,

co-alēsc-ō,	alēsce-re,	al-uī,	ali-tum,	to grow together.
See 140.				
ē-vānēsc-ō,	vānēsce-re,	vān-uī,		to disappear.
con-valēsc-ō,	valēsce-re,	val-ui,	vali-tum,	to get well.
in-gemīsc-ō,	gemisce-re,	gem-uī,		to sigh.
nōtēsc-ō,	nōtēsce-re,	nōt-uī,		to become known.
incalēsc-ō,	incalēsce-re,	incal-ui,		to get warm.

#### 146. The I-class:

rapi-ō, rape-re, rap-ui, rap-tum, to snatch. cor-ripiō, ripe-re, rip-ui, rep-tum, to seize.

So other compounds. In early Latin, surripere syncopates some of its forms, as surpuit, surpere; surpuerat occurs in Hon.; a oristic forms, as rapsit, surrepsit, belong also to the early period. 131, 4,  $\delta$ . 2.

#### PERFECT: -si; SUPINE: -tum, -sum.

### 147. Stem class:

lūce-ō.

1. In the second conjugation:

lūcē-re.

iube-ō, On sorbeō	iubē-re, see 142, 1.	iūs-sī,	iūs-sum,	to order.
ārde-ō,	ārdē-re,	ār-sī,	ār-sum,	to be on fire.
rīde-ō,	rīdē-re,	rī-sī,	rf-sum,	to laugh (at).
haere-ō,	haerē-re,	hae-sī,	(hae-sum),	to stick (to).
mane-ō,	manē-re,	mān-sī,	mān-sum,	to remain.
suāde-ō,	suādē-re,	suā-sī,	suā-sum,	to counsel.
With dents	al dropped before	ending of Pf. a	nd Supine.	
auge-ō,	augē-re,	auxI,	auc-tum,	to cause to wax.
frīge-ō,	frigē-re,	(frixi),	woman when	to be chilled.

to give light.

lūxi,

lūge-ō,	lūgē-re,	lūxī,	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	o be in mourning.	
alge-ō,	algē-re,	al-sī,	الأراث المحدد والأراث	o freeze.	
fulge-ō,	fulgē-re,	ful-sī,		o glow.	
		third conjugati	on occur: fulgit, f	ulgere, effulgere	
(VERG., A, VIII	. 677).				
indulge-ō,	indulgē-re,	indul-sī,	(indul-tum),	to give way.	
mulce-ō,	mulcē-re,	mul-sī,	mul-sum,	to stroke.	
Rarely mule	Rarely mulc-tus in compounds.				
mulge-ō,	mulgē-re,	mul-sī,	mul-sum(ctum	), to milk.	
terge-ō,	tergē-re,		ter-sum,	to wipe.	
			ergitur, terguntu	r, are occasionally	
found; and so	too in some late c	ompounds. V	arro has tertus.		
torque-ō,	torquē-re,	tor-sī,	tor-tum,	to twist.	
turge-ō,	turgē-re,	tur-sī,	Security desire	to swell.	
urge-ō,	urgē-re,	ur-sī,	-	to press.	
cō-nīve-ō (gnig	gv), -nīvē-re,	-nixi (ivi),		to close the eyes.	

### 2. In the third conjugation:

	carpe-re,	carp-si,	carp-tum,	to pluck.
- '	lē-cerpe-re,	dē-cerp-sī,	dē-cerp-tum,	to pluck off.
	clepe-re,	clep-sī (clēp-ī),	clep-tum,	to flich.
Rare and ante-	classic.			
nūb-ō,	nūbe-re,	nūp-sī,	nūp-tum,	to put on a veil
				(as a bride).
rēp-ō,	rēpe-re,	rēp-sī,	rēp-tum,	to creep.
scalp-ō,	scalpe-re,	scalp-si,	scalp-tum,	to scrape.
scrīb-ō,	scribe-re,	scrīp-sī,	scrip-tum,	to write.
sculp-ō,	sculpe-re,	sculp-si,	sculp-tum,	to chisel.
serp-ō,	serpe-re,	serp-si,	serp-tum,	to creep.
prem-ö (-primö),	preme-re,	pres-sī,	pres-sum,	to press.

Some compounds of emo, I take, buy, have Pf. in -sī, Sup. in -tum, before which a cuphonic p develops:

com-o,	come-re,	com-p-si,	com-p-tum,	to adorn.
dēm-ō,	dēme-re,	dēm-p-sī,	dēm-p-tum,	to take away.
prom-o,	prome-re,	prom-p-sī,	prom-p-tum,	to take out.
sūm-ō,	sūme-re,	sūm-p-sī,	sūm-p-tum,	to take.
On contem	n-ō see 149, c.			
dīc-ō.	dice-re,	dīxī (dīc-sī),	dic-tum,	to say.
		sionally in old Lati		ire.
dūc-ō.	dūce-re.	dūxī.	duc-tum,	to lead.
,	duc, see 130, 5.	,	,	
fīg-ō.	fige-re,	fīxi.	fixum,	to fasten.
		casional in early Lat		
		e-re, -flīxī,	-flīc-tum.	to strike.
		onally in early Latin		
			frīc-tum,	to parch.
frig-ō,	frige-re,	frixi,	HAO-UUIII,	co par cres

efic-A	süge-re	sūxī,	süc-tum,	to suck.
Fut. exsugo	bo is found in Pr.	АЦТ., Ер. 188.	Juo-bulli,	to such
merg-ō,	merge-re,	mer-sī,	mer-sum,	to plunge.
sparg-ō,	sparge-re,	spar-sī,	spar-sum,	to strew.
con-sperg-o,	con-sperge-re,	con-sper-si,	con-sper-sum,	to besprinkle.
coqu-ō,	coque-re,	coxī,	coc-tum,	to cook.
[-lig-ō (leg-),	-lige-re,	-lēxī,	-lēc-tum.]	
dī-lig-ō, intelligō, or	dī-lige-re,	dī-lēxī,	dilēc-tum,	to love.
intellegő,	intellege-re,	intel-lēxī,	intel-lēc-tum,	to understand.
negligō, or	man lama na	non lani	mam 130 tmm	to monleat
neg-leg-ō, Other compo	neg-lege-re, unds have legī.	neg-lēxī, Sall., J. 40, 1,	neg-lēc-tum,	to neglect.
				to keen night
reg-ō, dī-rig-ō,	rege re, di rige-re,	rēxī, dī-rēxī,	rēc-tum, dī-rēc-tum,	to keep right. to guide.
per-g-ō,	per-ge-re,	per-rēxī,	per-rēc-tum,	to go on.
su-rg-ō,	su-rge-re,	sur-rēxī,	sur-rēc-tum,	to rise up.
But experge	formed expergi	tus in earry and	late Latin.	
teg-ō,	tege-re,	tēxī,	tēc-tum,	to cover.
claud-ō,	· claude re	e, clau sī,	clau-sum,	to shut.
con-, ex-clūd			ex-clū-sum,	to shut up, out.
Early Latin	shows also clūdō,	clūdere.		
laed-ō,	laede re,	lae sī,	lae-sum,	to harm.
col-līd-ō,	col-līde-1	re, col-lī-sī,	col-lī-sum,	to strike together
lūd-ō,	lūde-re,	lū-sī,	lū-sum,	to play.
	aud-ō), plaude r		plau-sum,	to clap.
ex-plōd-ō,	ex-plōde	re, ex-plō-sī,	ex-plō-sum,	to hoot off.
rād-ō,	rāde-re,	rā-sī,	rā-sum,	to scratch.
rōd-ō,	rōde-re,	rō-sī,	rō-sum,	to gnaw.
trūd-ō,	trūde-re,	trū-sī,	trū-sum,	to push.
vād-ō (in-, ē-),	-vāde-re	-vā-sī,	-vā-sum,	to go.
cēd-ō,	cēde-re,	cēs-sī,	cēs-sum,	to give way.
quati-ō,	quate-re	,	quas-sum,	to shake. to shatter.
	r-, ex-), con-cute			to send.
mitt-ō, dī-vid-ō,	dī-vide-r	,	mis-sum, dī-vī-sum.	to part.
ūr-ō,	ūre-re,	ūs-sī,	ūs-tum,	to burn.
com-būr-ō,	com-būr	,	. ,	
ger-ō,	gere-re,	ges-sī,	ges-tum,	to carry.
flu-ō (flugv-),	flue-re,	fluxī,	(flux-us),	to flow.
stru-ō (strugv	•		strūc-tum,	to build.
trah-o (tragh-			trāc-tum,	to drag.
veh-ō (vegh),	vehe-re,	vexī,	vec-tum,	to carry.
vīv-ō (vigv-),	vîve-re,	vīxī,	vic-tum,	to live.

#### 148. The T-class:

flect-ō,	flecte-re,	flexī,	flexum,	to bend.
nect-δ, The Pf. forms:	necte-re, in-nexui (Vere	nexī (nexuī), a., A. v., 425).	nexum,	to knot.
pect-ō,	pecte-re,	pexī,	pexum,	to comb.
plect-ō,	plecte-re,	(plexi),	plexum,	to plait.

#### 149. The Nasal class:

### (a) Supine without N:

fing-ō,	finge-re,	finxī,	fic-tum,	to form.
ming-ō,	minge-re,	minxī,	mic-tum,	to urinate.
ping-ō,	pinge-re,	pinxī,	pic-tum,	to paint.
string-ō,	stringe-re,	strinxī,	stric-tum,	to draw tight.

### (b) Supine with N:

ang-ō,	ange-re,	anxī,		to throttle, vex.
cing-ō,	cinge-re,	cinxī,	cinc-tum,	to gird.
ē-mung-ō,	ē-munge-re,	ē-munxī,	ē-munc-tum,	to wipe the nose.
iung-ō,	iunge-re,	iūnxī,	iūne-tum,	to yoke, join.
ling-ō,	linge-re,	linxī,	line-tum,	to lick.
ning-ō,	ninge-re,	ninxī,		to snow.
pang-ō,	pange-re,	panxī,	panc-tum,	to drive in.
Perfect also pēgī, and Supine pāctum. Compare 155 and paciscor, 165.				

plang-o,	plange-re,	planxi,	planc-tum,	to smite.
-stingu-ō, So the compou	-stingue-re, nds ex-, dis-, re-	-stinxi, ; the simple	-stinc-tum, e verb is ante-classic.	to put out.

ting-ō (tingu-ō), ting(u)e-re, tinxī, tinc-tum, to wet, dye.
ung-ō (ungu-ō), ung(u)e-re, ünxī, ünc-tum, to anoint.

(c) tem-n-ö (rare) and its compounds form the Pf. with a euphonic p: con-tem-n-ō, -temne-re, -tem-p-sī, -tem-p-tum, to despise.

### 150. The I-class:

### 1. In the third conjugation:

[-lici-ō (LAC), lice-re, -lexI, -lec-tum], to lure.

pel-lici-ō, pel-lice-re, pel-lexI, pel-lec-tum, to allure.

So allicere, illicere, which, however, have early Pf. in -uI, as does pellicere also

But &-licere has -uI regularly in classical times, and &-lexI only later.

[-spici-ō (spec), -spice-re, -spexI, -spec-tum], to peer.

per-spici-ō, per-spice-re, per-spexI, per-spec-tum, to see through.

So the compounds with ad-, con-, dō-, in-.

2. In the fourth conjugation :

saepi-ō,	saepī-re,	saep-sī,	saep-tum,	to hedge in.
sanci-ō,	sancī-re,	sānxī,	sanc-tum.	to hallow.
The Sup. sanci	i-tum is rare.		,	
vinci-ō,	vinci-re,	vinxī,	vinc-tum,	to bind.
AIHUI-O,	A11101-103	ATHYT,	VIIIC-tuiii,	wo orna.
farci-ō (-ferci-ō),	farci-re,	far-sī,	far-tum,	to stuff.
fulci-ō,	fulcī-re,	ful-si,	ful-tum.	to prop.
sarci-ō,	sarcī-re,	sar-sī,	sar-tum.	to patch.
Bar cr-o,	1907 (7-10)	pa1-51,	sar-tum,	w paiere.
senti-ō,	senti-re,	sēn-sī,	sēn-sum,	to feel.
hauri-ō,	hauri-re.	hau-si.	haus-tum,	to drain.
VERG., A. iv.,				ant (Luca.) and

Vebs., A. iv., 383, has hausūrus. Early Latin shows haurībant (Luck.) an haurīerint; haurītūrus is very late.

rauci-ō, rauci-re, rau-si, rau-sum, to be hoarse.

This verb is very rare.

#### PERFECT: -I WITH REDUPLICATION; SUPINE: -sum, -tum.

151. In the first conjugation:

- d-ō, da-re, ded-i, da-tum, to give, put, do.
   Everywhere ă, except in dās, thou givest, and dā, give thou.
- Like do, are conjugated the compounds with dissyllabic words, such as: circum-d-o, I surround; satis-do, I give bail; pessum-do, I ruin; vēnum-do, I sell; thus:
- circum-d-ō, circum-da-re, circum-de-dī, circum-da-tum, to surround.
- 2. The compounds of da-re with monosyllabic words pass over wholly into the Third Conjugation.

ab-d-ō,	ab-de-re,	ab-did-ī,	ab-di-tum,	to put away.
ad-d-ō,	ad-de-re,	ad-did-I,	ad-di-tum,	to put to.
con-d-ō,	con-de-re,	con-did-I,	con-di-tum,	to put up (found).
abs-con-dō,	abs-con-de-re,	abs-con-d-i,	abs-con-di-tum,	to put far away.
Pf. abscon	didi is found in	PL., Mer. 360, tl	nen not until late Lati	in.

crē-d-ō.	crē-de-re,	crē-did-ī,	crē-di-tum,	to put faith.
dē-d-ō,	dē-de-re,	dē-did-ī,	dē-di-tum,	to give up.
€-d-ō,	ē-de-re,	ē-did-ī,	ē-di-tum,	to put out.
in-d-ō,	in-de-re,	in-did-ī,	in-di-tum,	to put in.
per-d-ō,	per-de-re,	per-did-I,	per-di-tum,	to fordo (ruin).
prō-d-ō,	pro-de-re,	pro-did-ī,	prō-di-tum,	to betray.
red-d-ō,	red-de-re,	red-did-i,	red-di-tum,	to give back.
trā-d-ō,	trā-de-re,	trā-did-ī,	trā-di-tum,	to give over.
vēn-d-ō,	vēn-de-re,	vēn-did-ī,	vēn-di-tum,	to put up to sale.

Note.—In early Latin dare formed the Pr. Subjv., also duim. So in some of its compounds, as perduim, See 190, 4.

2. st-ō, stā-re, stet-ī, (stā-tū-rus), to stand.

So the compounds:

ad-st-ō, ad-stā-re, ad-stit-I, — to stand by.
cōn-st-ō, cōn-stā-re, cōn-stit-I, — to stand fast.

īn-st-ō,	īn-stā-re,	īn-stit-ī,		to stand upon.
ob-st-ō,	ob-stā-re,	ob-stit-ī,		to stand out
				against.
per-st-ō,	per-stā-re,	per-stit-ī,		to stand firm.
prae-st-ō,	prae-stā-re,	prae-stit-ī,		to stand ahead.
re-st-ō,	re-stā-re,	re-stit-1,		to stand over.
dī-st-ō,	dī-stā-re,	-	-	to stand apart.
ex-st-ō,	ex-stā-re,		-	to stand out.

All compounds of stare with dissyllabic prepositions have, however, -stetI in the Perfect, as: ante-stō, I am superior; inter-stō, I am between; super-stō, I stand upon; thus:

circum-st-ō, circum-sta-re, circum-stet-ī, — to stand round.

Note.—Compare sistō and its compounds; 154, 1.

### 152. In the second conjugation:

morde-o. morde-re, mo-mord-ī. to bite. mor-sum. pende-ō, pendē-re, pe-pend-I, to hang (intr.). sponde-ō. spondē-re. spo-pond-i. spon-sum. to pledge oneself. Compounds omit the reduplication, but PLAUT. shows also de-spo-pondisse and dē-spo-ponderās.

tonde-ō, tondē-re, to-tond-ī, ton-sum, to shear.

#### 153. In the third conjugation:

#### (a) Stem class.

Reduplication lost in the compounds:

cad-ō, cade-re, ce-cid-ī, cā-sum, to fall.
oc-cid-ō, oc-cide-re, oc-cid-ī, oc-cā-sum, to perish.
re-cidere sometimes forms reccidī, as well as recidī, in the Perfect.

caed-ō. caede-re. ce-cid-i, cae-sum, to fell. oc-cid-ō. oc-cide-re. oc-cid-i. oc-cI-sum. to kill. can-o. cane-re, ce-cin-ī. (can-tum). to sing. Compounds form the Pf. in -ui. For (cantum), cantatum was used.

parce-\(\bar{o}\), parce-re, pe perc-\(\bar{i}\) (par-s\(\bar{u}\)), (par-s\(\bar{u}\)), (b spare. com-parc\(\bar{o}\)), com-parce-re, com-pars-\(\bar{i}\), com-par-sum, to save. pars\(\bar{i}\) is common in early Latin, and is the only form used by Plautus. Early Latin shows rarely parcu\(\bar{u}\). Ter uses compersit.

### 154. (b) Reduplicated class:

1. **sistō** (= **si-st-ō**), as a simple verb, has the transitive meaning, I (cause to) stand, but in its compounds, the intransitive meaning, I stand. Compare **stō**, I stand, and its compounds (151):

sist-ō, siste-re, (stit-ī), sta-tum, to (cause to) stand.

So the compounds:

con-sist-o, con-siste-re, con-stit-i, con-sti-tum, to come to a stand de-sist-o (ab-), de-siste-re, de-stit-i, de-sti-tum, to stand off.

ex-sist-ō, ob-sist-ō,	ex-siste-re, ob-siste-re,	ex-stit-ī, ob-stit-ī,	ex-sti-tum, ob-sti-tum,	to stand up. to take a stand against.
re-sist-ō, ad-sist-ō, în-sist-ō, circum-sist-ō,	re-siste-re, ad-siste-re, In-siste-re, circum-siste-re,	re-stit-ī, ad-stit-ī, īn-stit-ī, circum-stet-	re-sti-tum,	to withstand. to stand near. to stand upon. to take a stand
2. bi-bō, No Supine.	bi-be-re, The Pf. Part. is	bi-bī,	(bi-bi-tus),	round. to drink.

### 155. (c) Nasal class:

- fall-ō, falle-re, fe-fell-ī, fal-sum, to cheat.

  The compound refellō has the Perfect refellī, and lacks Supine.
- pell-ō, pelle-re, pe-pul-ī, pul-sum, to push, drive back.
  repellō loses the reduplicating vowel in Pf. reppulī.
- toll-6, tolle-re, to lift up.

  Pf. and Sup. are formed sus-tuli (from reduplicated Pf. tetuli, 171, N. 1) and sub-latum (for t'lā-tum); a recent view makes su-stuli from (s)tollō.
- (pang-ō), (pange-re), pe-pig-ī, pāc-tum, to drive a bargain.

  The Pr. forms are supplied by pacīscor, 165. The Pf. pēgī, rare in the simple form, is regular in the compounds com-, im-, op-. See 149, b.
- tang-ō (TAG), tange-re, te-tig-Ī, tāc-tum, to touch.
  at-ting-ō, at-tinge-re, at-tig-Ī, at-tāc-tum, to border upon.
  So with other compounds.
- pend-ō, pende-re, pe-pend-ī, pēn-sum, to hang (trans.).

  tend-ō, tende-re, te-tend-ī, tēn-sum and -tum, to stretch.
  ex-tend-ō, ex-tende-re, ex-tend-ī, ex-tēn-sum and -tum, to stretch out.
  os-tend-ō, os-tende-re, os-tend-ī, os-tēn-sum (-tus), to stretch at, show.
  The compounds prefer the Sup. in -tum; so always attentus, contentus, usually distentus and intentus.
- pung-ō, punge-re, pu-pug-î, punc-tum, to prick.
  inter-pungō, inter-punge-re, inter-punxI, inter-punc-tum, to place points
  between.
- tund-ō, tunde-re, tu-tud-ī, tūn-sum, tū-sum, to thump.

  Simple form has usually tūnsus in the Participle; in the compounds more often tūsus. The reduplicating vowel is lost in rettudī.
- curr-ō, curre-re, cu-curr-ī, cur-sum, to run.

  The compounds vary in their use of the reduplication; praecurrere always has the reduplication, succurrere always omits it; other compounds vary. See 134, 111.

### 156. (d) Inchoative class:

- discō (= di-d(e)c-seō), disce-re, di-dic-i, to learn.

  A late form is Fut. Part. discitūrus. Compounds retain reduplication. See 134, m.
- pōsc-ō (= porc-scō), pōsce-re, po-pōsc-ī, to claim.
  Compounds retain the reduplication. See 134, III.

### 157. (e) The I-class:

pari-ō, pare-re, pe-per-I, par-tum (paritūrus), to bring forth.

The compounds drop the reduplication and form the Inf. in -Ire. But reperire, to find, forms its Pf., repperi, with omission of the vowel of reduplication.

#### PERFECT: -1; SUPINE: -tum, -sum.

#### 158. In the first conjugation:

iuv-ō, iuvā-re, iūv-ī, iū-tum (iuvātūrus), to help. ad-iuv-ō, -iuvā-re, -iūv-ī, -iū-tum (-iū-tūrus), to stand by as aid.

(lav-ō), (lav-ere), lāv-ī, lau-tum (lō-tum), to wash. lav-ō, lavā-re, (lavā-vī), lavā-tum, to wash.

The Present forms of lavere belong principally to early Latin, with occasional forms in Augustan poets and late writers; lautum and lötum are both used in classical times; but lautum belongs rather to early, lötum to post-classical Latin. The form lavatum is early and poetical.

### 159. In the second conjugation :

cave-ō, cavē-re, cāv-I, cau-tum, to take heed.
fave-ō, favē-re, fāv-ī, fau-tum, to be well-disposed.

ferve-ō (o), fervē-ro (ere), ferv-ī (ferb-uī), — lo seethe.

The Pr. forms of the third conjugation belong to early Latin and the poets. The Pf. in -uI is post-Ciceronian.

fove-o. fovē-re. fov-i, fo-tum. to keep warm. move-ō. movē-re. möv-ĩ. mō-tum. to move. pave-ō. pavē-re. pāv-ī. to quake (with fear). prande-ō. prandë-re. prand-i, pran-sum, to breakfast. sede-ō. sedē-re. sēd-f. ses-sum. to sit. stride-ō (-dō). stride-re(-e-re), strid-i, to whistle, screech. vove-ō. vovē-re. vov-i. vō-tum. to non.

The Present forms of the third conjugation belong almost entirely to Augustan poets and later writers.

vide-o, vide-re, vid-i, vi-sum, to see.

### 160. In the third conjugation:

With long vowel in the Perfect.

#### 1. The Stem class:

ēg-I, ag-0, age-re, ac-tum. to do, drive. cō-g-ō, cō-ge-re, co-ēg-I, co-ac-tum, to compel. dē-g-ō, dē-ge-re, to pass (time). to bring back. red-ig-ō, red-ige-re, red-ēg-I, red-ac-tum. em-o. eme-re. ēm-ī. ēmp-tum. to take, to buy. inter-im-ō, -ime-re, -ēm-ī, -ēmp-tum, to make away with.

inter-im-ō, -ime-re, -ēm-f, -ēmp-tum, to make away with.

co-em-ō, I buy up, is conjugated like em-o. But the compounds with ad-, ex-,
inter-, red-, take -im-ō, So, too, dir-im-ō. I sever.

ed-ō, ede-re, ēd-ī, ē-sum, to eat.

Note.—In agere, edere, emere, the reduplication has coalesced with the root; as,  $\mathbf{\bar{e}gi} = \mathbf{eagi}$ .

cūd-ō, cūde-re, (cūd-ī), (cū-sum), to hammer.
The Pf. and Sup. occur in compounds only.

ic-ō (defective), ice-re, ic-i, ic-tum, to strike.

Present stem rare: ic-it, ic-itur, ic-imur.

sīd-ō, sīde-re, sīd-ī, to sit down.

The Pf. was originally reduplicated as the Present; see 133, II. In composition the Pf. is -sēdī, -sessum, from sede-ō, thus:

con-sid-o. con-side-re. con-sed-i. con-ses-sum. to settle down. scab-ō. scabe-re, scāb-ī. to scratch. solv-ō. solve-re. solv-ī. solū-tum. to loose, pay. vert-ō. verte-re. vert-ī. ver-sum. to turn. re-vert-or. revert-I (active), to turn back. re-vert-ī. re-ver-sum. verr-ō, verr-I (rare), to sweep. verre-re, ver-sum, vīs-ō. to visit. vise-re. vîs-î. volv-ö. volū-tum. volve-re. volv-ī. to roll. On percello, perculi, see 144. On tollo, sustuli, see 155.

#### 2. The Nasal class:

psall-ō, psalle-re, psall-I, — to play on the cithern.
sall-ō, salle-re, (sall-I), sal-sum, to salt.

Very rare except in the past participle salsus.

vell-ō, velle-re, vell-ī (vul-sī), vul-sum, to pluck.

The Pf. vulsī is post Augustan.

lamb-ō. to lick. lambe-re. lamb-i. rump-ō, rumpe-re, rūp-i, rup-tum, to break. ac-cend-I. to kindle. ac-cend-ō. ac-cende-re. ac-cen-sum. dē-fend-ō. dē-fende-re, dē-fend-ī. dē-fēn-sum. to strike away. defend. fund-ō (FUD), funde-re. fūd-ī, to pour. fū-sum. mand-ō. mande-re, mand-I, mān-sum, to chew. pande-re. to spread out. pand.o. pand-ī, pas-sum, pān-sum in Supine is late.

prehend-ō, prehende-re, prehend-ī, prehēn-sum, to seize.

Often shortened to prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum.

scan-sum. to climb. scand-ō, scande-re. scand-1. ā(d)-, dē-scend-ō, dē-scende-re, dē-scend-I, dē-scēn-sum, toclimbup, down frange-re. frēg-i. frāc-tum. to break. frang-ō, per-frac-tum, to shiver. per-fring-o, per-fringe-re. per-freg-1, to leave. linque-re, liqu i, lingu-ō. re-liqu-i, to leave behind. re-lingu-ō, re-linque-re, re-lic-tum, (pange re), (pēg-I), (pāc-tum), to drive in. (pang-c), com-pac-tum, to drive tight. com-pinge re, com-peg-1, com-ping-ō, See 149, b, 155.

vine-5 (vic), vince-re, vic-i, vic-tum, to conquer.

#### 3. The I-class.

(a) With long vowel in the Perfect.

capi-ō (cap-),	cape-re,	cēp-i,	cap-tum,	to take.
ac-cipi-ō,	ac-cipe-re,	ac-cep-ī,	ac-cep-tum,	to receive.
faci-ō,	face-re,	fēc-ī,	fac-tum,	to make.
cale-faci-ō (calf.)	, cale face-re,	cale-fēc-ī,	cale-fac-tum,	to make warm.
per-fici-ō,	per-fice-re,	per-fēc ī,	per-fec-tum,	to achieve.
The Pf. was origin	nally reduplicat	ed; on Impv. fac	e, see 130, 5.	

fodi-ō,	fode-re,	fod-ī,	fos-sum,	to dig.
fugi-ō,	fuge-re,	füg-I,	(fug-i-tūrus),	to flee.
iaci-ō,	iace-re,	iēc-ī,	iac tum,	to cast.
con-ici-ō,	con-ice-re,	con-iēc-ī,	con-iec-tum,	to gather.

(b) With short vowel in the Pf. due to the loss of the reduplication:

find-ō,	finde-re,	fid-ī,	fis-sum,	to cleave.
seind-ō,	scinde-re,	scid-I,	scis-sum,	to split.
The reduplic	ated form sci-cio	li is found i	n early Latin.	

### 161. In the fourth conjugation:

ah.lu-A

amici-ō forms rarely in late Latin amici; see 142, 4.

oh luo no oh lu f

com-peri-ō, com-peri-re, com-per-i, com-per-tum, to find out.

re-peri-ō, re-peri-re, rep-per-i, re-per-tum, to find.

See the simple verb parere, 157.

veni-ō, veni-re, vēn-i, ven-tum, to come.

In early Latin sporadic tenses from a form venere occur, as advenat, ēvenat.

162. A number of verbs of the *third* conjugation have a characteristic -u-; these form the perfect in -I.

ah lii tum

to anneh off

ab-1u-0,	ab-lue-re,	ab-1u-1,	ab-lu-tum,	to wash off.
ab-nu-ō,	ab-nue re,	ab-nu i,	(ab-nu-itūr-us),	to dissent.
acu-ō,	acue-re,	acu-ī,	acū-tum,	to sharpen.
ad-nu-ō(an-nu-ō)	ad nue-re,	ad-nu-L		to nod assent.
argu-ō,	argue-re,	argu-i,	argū-tum,	to accuse.
batu-ō,	batue-re,	batu-ī,		to beat.
con-gru-ō,	con-grue-re,	con gru-I,		to agree.
dē-libu-ō,	dē-libue-re,	dē-libu-ī,	dē-libū-tum,	to anoint.
ex-u-ō,	ex-ue-re,	ex-u-i,	ex-ū-tum,	to put off, doff.
im-bu-ō,	im-bue-re,	im-bu-ī,	im-bū-tum,	to dip, dye.
in-du-ō,	in-due-re,	in-du-ī,	in-dū-tum,	to put on, don.
lu-ō,	lue-re,	lu-ī,	lu-itūr-us,	to atone for.
metu-ō,	metue-re,	metu-ī,		to fear.
minu-ō,	minue-re,	minu-ī,	minū-tum,	to lessen.
plu-ō,	plue-re,	plu-it, plūv-it,	-	to rain.
ru-ō,	rue-re,	ru-ī,	ru-tum (ruitūrus),	to rush down.
spu-ō,	spue-re,	spu-ī,	spū-tum,	to spew.
statu-ō,	statue-re,	statu-I,	statū-tum,	to settle.
sternu-ō,	sternue-re,	sternu-i,	-	to sneeze.
su-ō,	sue-re,	su-ī,	sū-tum,	to sew.
tribu-ō,	tribue-re,	tribu-i,	tribū-tum,	to allot.

#### DEPONENTS.

163. The majority of the deponent verbs belong to the *first* conjugation. In many instances they have parallel active forms in early or in late Latin. The principal verbs are as follows:

In the first conjugation:

- adul-or, adula-ri, adula-tus sum, to fawn upon.

  Occasionally active in ante classical Latin (Luck. v., 1070) and more often in later Latin.
- altercor, alterca-rī, alterca-tus sum, to wrangle.

  In early Latin altercasti (Ter., And. 653), altercas. Active forms more common in late Latin.
- arbitr-or, arbitra-ri, arbitra-tus sum, to think.
  PLAUT. uses this verb also as an active, but later this usage is rare.
- aucup-or, aucupā-rī, aucupā-tus sum, to try to catch.

  Active forms are common in early Latin.
- augur-or, augurā-rī, augurā-tus sum, to take the auguries.

  Active forms are early, legal, and late. Use as a passive is occasional in the classical period.
- auspic-or, auspica-rī, auspica-tus sum, to take the auspices.

  Active forms are early and late. Circ. and Livy use the verb as a passive in a few instances.
- comit-or, comitā-rī, comitā-tus sum, to accompany.

  Poets (Ov., Prop., etc.) use the active forms frequently. The Perfect Part. comitā-tus is common as a passive, also in classical Latin.
- comment-or, commenta-rī, commenta-tus sum, to discuss.
  Cic. uses commentatus as a passive in Br. 88, 301, Fam. xvi., 26, 1.
- conflict-or, conflicta-ri, conflicta-tus sum, to struggle. Occasionally found for conflictare, See Ter., And, 93.
- conspic-or, conspica-ri, conspica-tus sum, to descry.

  So despicor, suspicor. But a few forms are occasionally (usually in early Latin) used as passives, especially despicatus (Plaut., Ter.), compared despicatissimus by Cic. (Sest. 16, 36, Verr. III., 41, 98). Plaut., Cas. 394, suspices.
- contempl-or, contempla-ri, contempla-tus sum, to survey.

  The active forms are used frequently in early Latin (regularly by PLAUT.).
- côpul-or, côpulā-rī, côpulā-tus sum, to join.
  So Plaut., Aul. 116. Otherwise everywhere côpulāre.
- crīmin-or, crīminā-rī, crīminā-tus sum, to charge.
  Plaut. uses crīmināret. Ennius crīmināt.
- cunet-or, cunetā-rī, cunetā-tus sum, to delay.

  Active forms are occasional in early and late Latin.
- dignā-rī, dignā-tus sum, to deem worthy.

  This verb is predominantly post-classical and poetical. The active forms are early and rare; perhaps once in Cicero.

fabric-or, fabrica-rī, fabrica-tus sum, to forge.

The active forms belong to poetry and to post-Augustan prose.

faener-or, faenera-rī, faenera-tus sum, to lend on interest.

Active forms occasional in early Latin and more frequent in late Latin.

fluctu-or, fluctuā-rī, fluctuā-tus sum, to undulate.

Active forms are rare in Plaut. and in Cic., but not uncommon later. The deponent forms are post-Ciceronian.

(for), fā-rī, fā-tus sum, to speak.

früstra-ri, früstra-tus sum, to deceive.

Active forms rare, but at all periods.

illacrim-or, illacrima-ri, illacrima-tus sum, to weep over.
In Cic. and Hor.; otherwise active.

interpret-or, interpretā-rī, interpretā-tus sum, to interpret.

Cic. uses interpretātus occasionally as a passive; likewise Livy and others.

luctor, luctā-rī, luctā-tus sum, to wrestle.

Plaut., Ter., Ennius, Varro show sporadic forms of the active.

ludific-or, ludifica-rI, ludifica-tus sum, to make sport.

Active frequent in PLAUT., and occasionally later.

medic-or, medicā-rī, medicā-tus sum, to heal.

The active is once in Plaut, and frequent in poets and post-Augustan prose.

medita-ri, medita-tus sum, to think over.

The form meditatus is very commonly found as a passive.

müner-or, müner-a-rī, müner-a-tus sum, to bestow.

Active forms in early Latin and occasionally in Cic. and later.

nūtrīc-or, nūtrīcā-rī, nūtrīcā-tus sum, to suckle.

Active forms in early Latin.

odor-or, odora-ri, odora-tus sum, to smell.

Active forms occasional at all periods.

opin-or, opinā-rī, opinā-tus sum, to think.

palp-or, palpā-rī, palpā-tus sum, to etroke.

Is occasional (principally in early Latin) for palpāre.

popul-or, populā-rī, populā-tus sum, to ravage.

Active forms in simple verb and compounds are early, poetical, and post-classic.

sciscit-or, sciscita rī, sciscita-tus sum, to inquire.
Plaut., Merc. 389, sciscitare (active).

scrüt-or, scrütā-rī, scrütā-tus sum, to search.
PLAUT., Aul. 657, perscrütāvī. The use as a passive occurs first in Seneca.

sect-or, sectā-rī, sectā-tus sum, to pursue.

Active forms and passive usages are early.

stabul-or, stabulā-rī, stabulā-tus sum, to stable.

Active forms begin with Vergul.

tūt-or, tūtā-rī, tūtā-tus sum, to protect.

Active forms and passive usages are early and rare.

tumultu-or, tumultu-a-rī, tumultu-a-tus sum, to raise a riot.

But Plautus uses active forms; and passive uses are occasional later.

vag-or, vagā-rī, vagā-tus sum, to wander.

Active forms belong to early Latin.

vener-or, venerā-rī, venerā-tus sum, to reverence.

But Plaut: uses venerō, venerem; Verg., Hor., and later writers show passive uses.

### 164. In the second conjugation:

fate-or, fatē-rī, fas-sus sum, to confess.

cōn-fite-or, cōn-fitē-rī, cōn-fes-sus sum, to confess.

Both fateor and cōnfiteor are used occasionally as passives by Cic. and later.

lice-or, licē-rī, lici-tus sum, to bid (at a sale).

mere-or, mere-rī, meri-tus sum, to deserve.

Especially in the phrases mereri bene de aliquo, to deserve well of any one.

Otherwise the active is usual.

misere-or, misere-rī, miseri-tus sum, to pity.

In early Latin the active forms are found occasionally, e. g., Luck. III., 881.

pollice-or, pollice-rī, pollici-tus sum, to promise.

Occasionelly used as a passive in post classical Latin.

re-or, rē-rī, ra-tus sum, to think.
Pr. Part. Active is wanting.

tue-or, tuē rī, tui-tus (tūtus) sum, to protect.

In early Latin and occasionally later, a parallel form, tuor, tuī, tuitus sum, occurs. For tuitus usually tūtātus.

vere-or, verē-rī, veri-tus sum, to fear.

### 165. In the third conjugation:

apisc-or, apisc-i, ap-tus sum, to get.

Simple verb is frequent in early and late Latin Of the compounds, adipiscor, adipisci, adeptus sum, is usually deponent in classical times, but occurs occasionally as a passive in Sall. and later writers. The compounds ind-, red-, are rare.

am-plect-or, am-plect-I, am-plex us sum, to twine round, embrace. So the compounds complector, circumplector. In early Latin active forms are occasionally found; e. g., amplectitōte, circumplecte (Plaut).

com-min-isc-or, com-min-isc-i, com-men-tus sum, to think up, devise.

Ovid and later writers use commentus as a passive.

experg-isc-or, (-reg-) ex-perg-isc-i, ex-per-rec-tus sum, to (right one's self up) awake.

fung-or, fung-I, func-tus sum, to discharge.

This verb is used passively very rarely: Ter., Ad. 508. Lucr. III., 968. Cic., Sest.

4. 10.

fru-or (frugv-), fru-I, fruc-tus (fru-i-tus) sum, to enjoy.

The form fruitus is rare and late.

gradi-or. grad-ī. gres-sus sum, to step. ag-gredi-or, ag-gres-sus sum. ag-gred-i. to attack.

Occasionally active forms of the fourth conjugation are found in early Latin.

lāb-ī. lab-or. lāp-sus sum, to glide. loqu-or, logu-ī. locū-tus sum. to speak.

mori-or. mor-I. mortu-us sum. to die.

Early Latin shows parallel forms of the fourth conjugation, as moriri, emoriri. Fut. Part. moriturus : see 135, 11., 3.

nanc-isc-or, nanc-isc-i. nac-tus (nanc-tus) sum, to get.

nāsc-or (gnā-), nāsc-ī, nā-tus sum. to be born.

Fut. Part. nāscitūrus.

nit-or (gnict- | nit-i, nī-sus (nīx-us) sum, ( to stay one's self on. from genü), nī-sūrus.

ob-lī-tus sum, ob-liv-isc-or. ob-līv-īsc-ī. to forget.

pac-isc-or. pac-isc-i, pac-tus sum (pepigi), to drive (a bargain). Occasionally active forms are found in early Latin; in Cic. pactus is frequently used as a passive. See pango.

pati-or. pat-î. to suffer. pas-sus sum.

to endure to the end. per-peti-or. per-pet-1, per-pes-sus sum, pro-fic-isc-or. pro-fic-īsc-ī, pro-fec-tus sum. to (get forward) set out.

But PLAUT., M. G. 1329, proficisco.

quer-or, quer-ī, ques-tus sum, to complain. sequ-or, sequ-ī, secū-tus sum, to follow. ulc-Isc-or. ulc-isc-i, ul-tus sum. to avenge.

Active forms are rare; so once in Ennius. But Sall., Livy, and later writers use the verb as a passive sometimes.

ut-or. ūt-ī. ū-sus sum. to use. PLAUT. shows the compound ab'asa as a passive (Asin. 196).

veh-or. veh-ī. vec-tus sum, to (wagon) ride.

vesc-ī, to feed. vesc-or.

### 166. In the fourth conjugation:

assentī-rī, assēn-sus sum, to assent.

Active forms are not uncommon in early Latin. Cic. uses the Pf. active forms frequently; likewise later writers.

to find out. com-peri-or. comperi-ri,

Occasionally found (but rarely in classical Latin; as, SALL., J., 45, 1; 108, 3) for comperio, comperire. But experior, experiri, expertus sum, to try, is regularly deponent; though Cic. and others use often the Pf. active forms.

to bestow. largi-or, largi-ri. largi-tus sum, to lie. menti-or. menti-ri. menti-tus sum. The poets and later prose writers use this as a passive also.

mētī-rī. mēn-sus sum, to measure.

Passive usage is common, especially in the compounds: demensus, dimensus, ēmēnsus, permēnsus, remēnsus.

ördi-or, ördi-ri, ör-sus sum, to begin.
örsus, and more commonly exorsus, are also found as passives.

ori-or, ori-ri, or-tus sum, to arise.

The Pr. Indic. is usually formed according to the third conjugation; the Impf. Subjv. always orerer; but the Fut. Part. is oritūrus. The compounds follow the same usage except adorīrī, to rise up at, attack, which follows the fourth conjugation.

parti-or, parti-ri, parti-tus sum, to share.

Active forms and passive uses are found in early Latin, and sporadically in Cro. and later.

poti-or, potī-rī, potī-tus sum, to get possession of.
The Pr. Indic., Impf. Subjv., and occasionally other forms, are also found in early Latin and the poets, inflected according to the third conjugation; so regularly after Plaut. potitur, frequently poterētur, poterēmur.

pūni-or, pūni-rī, pūni-tus sum, to punish.

Occasionally in Cic. and late writers for pūnīre.

sorti-or, sorti-ri, sorti-tus sum, to cast lots.

Active occasionally in early Latin, and passive uses later of the Pf. Participle.

#### SEMI-DEPONENTS.

167. I. A few verbs form the Perfect forms only as deponents:

aude-ō, audē-re, au-sus sum, to dare.
On the aorist forms ausim, etc., see 131, 4, b.

fīd-ō, fīd-ere, fī-sus sum, to trust.

gaude-ō, gaudē-re, gāv-īsus sum, to rejoice. sole-ō, solē-re, sol-itus sum, to be wont.

The Pf. active is found in early Latin; but rarely.

2. The reverse usage is found in:

re-vert-or, re-vert-I, re-vert-I, to turn back.
So also devertI, but without Pf. Part. Reversus is also used actively, but reversus sum for revertI is post-classic.

See also assentior, etc., 166.

Notes.—1. Some active verbs have a Perfect Participle passive with active meaning, as: cēnātus, one who has dined, from cēnāre, to dine; prānsus, having breakfasted, from prandeō, I breakfast; pōtus, drunken, from pōtō, I drink; iūrātus, having taken the oath, sworn, from rūrō, I swear; conrūrātus, a conspirator, from conrūrō, I conspire. Many such are used purely as Adjectives: cōnsiderātus, circumspect, from cōnsiderō; cautus, wary, from caveō, I beware.

2. The Perfect Participle of many deponent Verbs has both active and passive meaning: adeptus (adipiscor), having acquired, or being acquired: comitatus (comitor, I accompany); effatus (effor, I speak out): expertus (experior, I ry): exsectatus (exsecror, I curse); imitatus (imitor, I copy): meritus (mereor, I deserve): opinatus, necopinatus (opinor, I think): pactus (paciscor, I contract): partitus (partior, I distribute): sortitus (sortior, I cust lots); tueor, I protect; tūtus, sqfc.

For others, see the list of deponents.

### IRREGULAR VERBS.

### 168. Irregular in the formation of the tense-stems:

1. Nine verbs of the third conjugation, which have, in spite of the short stem-syllable, the Pf. in -si, viz.:

clepō, Iflich; rego, I keep right; tego, I cover in; coquō, I bake; and the compounds of lego, I pick up; laciō, I lure; speciō, I spy(-ligō, -liciō, -spiciō); dīvidō, I part; quatiō, I shake. See 147, 2.

From lego, however, only diligo, I love: intellego, I understand; and neglego,

neglect, are irregular. The other compounds are regular. See 147, 2.

2. Five verbs of the third conjugation, which, in spite of long stem-syllable, have the Pf. in -1, viz.:

lambō I lick; cūdō, I hammer; sīdō, I sit (160, 1); strīdeō, I whistle (159); vertō, I turn (160, 1).

3. Assimilation between bs and ms occurs in the Pf. and Sup. of

iube-ō,	I order.	See 147, 1.
prem-ō (-prim-ō),	I press.	See 147, 2.

4. Special irregularities occur in :

bib-ō,	Idrink.	154, 2.
mane-δ,	I remain.	147, 1.
mēti-or,	I measure.	166.
met-ō,	I mow.	142, 3.
mori-or,	I die.	165.
rauci-ō,	I am hoarse.	150, 2.
re-or,	I think.	164.

5. Formed from different tense-stems, are the tenses of

fer-ō,	I bear.	171.
toll-ō.	I lift.	155.

169. Irregular in the conjugation of the Present-stem:

1. ori-or, ori-ri, or-tus sum, to arise.

See 166.

### 2. i-re, to go.

The stem is i, which, before a, o, u, becomes e.

PRIN. PARTS: eo, fre, fvī (iī), itum.

INDI	CATIV		SUBJUN	CTIVE.
	I go.		$I \ be \ g$	oing.
PRES. SG1.	e-ō,	PL. —i-mus,	Sg.—ea-m,	PL.—eā-mus,
2.	Ĭ-S,	I-tis,	eā-s,	eā-tis,
3.	i-t,	eu-nt.	ea-t,	ea-nt.

IMPF. I-ba-m, I went.

Fut. i-b-ō, I shall go.

PERF. I-V-I (i-I), I have gone.

Plupf. i-v-era-m (i-era-m), I had gone.

Fut. Pf. 1-v-er-ō (i-er-ō), I shall have gone.

1-re-m, I were going.

ī-v-eri-m (i-eri-m).

1-v-isse-m (i-isse-m, 1-sse-m).

#### IMPERATIVE.

S6.—2. **i**, go thou.
3. —
PL.—2. **i**-te, go ye.
3. —

i-tō, thou shalt go.
i-tō, he shall go.
i-tōte, ye shall go.
eu-ntō, they shall go.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. I-re.

Fur. i-tur-um esse.

PERF. I-v-isse (I-sse).

PARTICIPLES.
Pres. iē-ns (G. eu-nt-is).

Fur. i-tūr-us.

GERUND.

eu-nd-ī, etc.

SUPINE.

i-tum, to go.

Remarks.—I. Like the simple verb are inflected most of the compounds, except in the Perfect system, where syncope regularly takes place (see 131, 2). Vēn-eō, I am for sale, and per-eō, I perish, serve as passives to vēn-dō, I sell, and per-dō, I destroy, whose regular passives occur only in the forms vēnditus, vēndendus, and perditus (but see Hor., Sat., ii. 6, 59). Amb-iō, I solicit, follows the fourth conjugation throughout, but in post-Ciceronian writers (Livx, Tac., Plin. Min.) shows occasional forms like those of eō. Some compounds show occasionally Fut. in -eam after the time of Seneca.

2. The passive of the simple verb is found only in the impersonal forms itur, ibātur, itum est, irī (in combination with the Supine). But compounds with transitive force are conjugated regularly; so, praeter-eo forms praeter-eor, -iris, itur, -imur, -imini, -euntur, ibar, etc., -itus sum, eram, ero, -euntor, -itor, -iri, -eundus.

3. quire, to be able; nequire, to be unable.

170. (a) que-ō, I am able, is found in the following forms, of which those in parenthesis are unclassical, occurring in early and late Latin and the poets; Cæsar uses no form of queō.

PR. Indic. queō, (quis), (quit), quimus, (quitis), queunt. PR. Subjv. queam, queās, queat, queāmus, queātis, queant. Impf. (quibam), (quirem). Fut. (quibō). Pf. quivi, etc.; quiverim, etc. Pluff. quiveram, etc.; quivissem, etc. Fut. Pf. quiverō, etc. Pr. Inf. quire. Pf. quivisse. Part. quiens.

(b) neque-ō, I am unable, has the same forms, all of which seem to be classic excepting the Future Indicative, which is not cited.

### 4. fer-re, to bear.

171. The endings beginning with t, s, and r are added directly to the root (132). Some parts are supplied by tul-(tol-, tla-).

PRIN. PARTS: fero, ferre, tuli, latum.

#### ACTIVE.

Pres.	INDICAT:		SUBJUNCT I be beari	
		Pr. —fer-i-mus,	Sg.—fera-m,	
	fer-s,	fer-tis,	ferā-s,	ferā-tis,
3.	fer-t,	fer-u-nt.	fera-t,	fera-nt.
IMPF.		, I was bearing. I shall bear.	fer-re-m, I w	vere bearing.
PERF.	,	I have borne.	tul-eri-m,	
PLUPF.	tul-era-m		tul-isse-m.	
Fur. Pf.	tul-er-ō.			

#### IMPERATIVE.

fer-tō,

3. —	fer-to, he shall bear.
PL.—2. fer-te, bear ye.	fer-tote, ye shall bear.
3. —	feru-ntō, they shall bear.
INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
Pres. fer-re.	Pres. ferē-ns, bearing.
Fur. la-tur-um esse.	Fur. lā-tūr-us.
Perf. tul-isse.	

fere-nd-ī, etc.

GERUND.

bear thou.

Sg.-2. fer,

SUPINE. lā-tum (t(o)lā-tum).

thou shalt bear.

			P.	ASSIVE.				
		INDIC	ATIVE			SUBJU	INCTI	VE.
		Iam	borne.			I be	born	е.
PRES. S	G.—I.	fer-o-r,	PL	-feri-mur,	Se	-fera-r,	PL-	-ferā-mur,
	2.	fer-ris,		feri-minī,		ferā-ris,		ferā-minī,
	3.	fer-tur,		feru-ntur.		ferā-tur	,	fera-ntur.
IMPF.		ferē-ba-ı	r.			fer-re-r.		
Fur.		fera-r.						
PERF.		lā-tus su	m.			lā-tus si	m.	
PLUPF.		lā-tus er	am.			lā-tus es	sem.	
Fur. Pr.		lā-tus er	ō.					

PRES.

fer-rī.

#### IMPERATIVE.

Sg.—2. fer-re,	be thou borne.	fer-tor,	thou shalt be borne.
3. —		fer-tor,	he shall be borne.
PL2. feri-mini,	be ye borne.		
3. —		feru-ntor,	they shall be borne.

## INFINITIVE. ri. to be borne.

PARTICIPLE.
PERF. lā-t-us, -a, -um, borne.

Fut. lā-tum īrī.

Perf. lā-tum esse, to have been borne.

GERUNDIVE.

fere-nd-us.

#### COMPOUNDS.

af-fer-ō,	af-fer-re,	at-tul-ī,	al-lā-tum,	to bear to.
au-fer-ō,	au-fer-re,	abs-tul-ī,	ab-lā-tum,	to bear away.
con-fer-o,	con-fer-re,	con-tul-ī,	col-lā-tum,	to collect.
dif-fer-ō,	dif-fer-re,	dis-tul-ī,	dī lā-tum,	to put off.
ef-fer-ō,	ef-fer-re,	ex-tul-ī,	ē-lā-tum,	to carry out.
of-fer-ō,	of-fer-re,	ob-tul-I,	ob-la-tum,	to offer.

Notes.—1. The Pf. tuli was originally reduplicated te-tuli. See 134, iii., 155. Traces of this are seen in rettuli.

2. Suf-ferō, I undergo, has the Pf. sus-tin-uī (sus-tul-ī, sub-lā-tum, being appropriated to toll-ō). (155.)

### 5. ed-ere, to eat.

172. In certain forms the endings beginning with s, t, and r are added directly to the root (132); d before s (r) is dropped or assimilated (as ss), and before t becomes s.

PRIN. PARTS: edő, edere (ēsse), ēdī, ēsum.

#### ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

		PRESENT.		
	I eat.		I be e	eating.
Sg.—1.	ed-ō,	PL.—edi-mus,	Sg.—eda-m,	PL.—edā-mus,
2.	edi-s, ē-s,	edi-tis, ēs-tis,	edā-s,	edā-tis,
3.	edi-t, ē-st,	edu-nt.	eda-t,	eda-nt.
IMPF.	edē-ba-m,	I ate.	ede-re-m, ēs-se-m	, I were eating.
Fur.	eda-m.			
PERF.	ēd-ī.		ēd-eri-m.	

Pluff. 8d-era-m. 8d-isse-m.

Fut. Pr. ēd-er-č.

#### IMPERATIVE.

	ALVAN ANADA		
Sg2. ede, ës,	eat thou.	edi-to, ës-tō,	thou shalt eat:
3. ——		edi-to, ēs-tō,	he shall eat.
PL2. edi-te, ēs-te,	eat ye.	edi-tōte, ēs-tōte	, ye shall eat.
3. —		edu-ntō,	they shall eat
INFINITIVE.		PARTICI	PLE.
Pres. ede-re, ēs-se,	to eat.	Pres. (edē-ns	).
Fuт. ēs-ūr-um esse.		Fur. ës-ür-u	S.
PERF. ēd-isse.			
GERUND.		SUPIN	NE.
ede-nd-I, etc.		ēs-um,	ēs-tī.

#### PASSIVE.

In the passive voice the only peculiarities are as follows: Pr. Indic. Sing. Third, editur and ēstur. Impf. Subjv. Sing. Third, ederētur and ēssētur. The Pf. Part. is ēsus and the Gerundive edendus.

NOTE.—In the Pr. Subjv. Active, early Latin shows edim, edis, edit, edimus, editis, edint. Also ēssum and ēssū in the Sup., ēssūrus in the Fut. Part. Comedere also shows comestus for comēsus.

### 6. fi-eri, to become.

173. Fi-ō is conjugated in the Present, Imperfect, and Future, according to the fourth conjugation, but in the Subjunctive Imperfect and in the Infinitive the stem is increased by e; thus, fi-e-rem, I were becoming; fi-e-ri, to become. In these forms the i is short, but elsewhere it is long even before another vowel.

The Infinitive ends in -ri, and the whole Verb in the Present-stem is treated as the Passive to facio, I make. The rest of the Passive is formed regularly from facio.

PRIN. PARTS: fio, fieri, factus sum.

	ACTI	VE.		PASSIVE.
PRES.	faciō,	I make.	INDIC.	fio, I am made, I become.
				fīs, fit (fīmus, fītis), fīunt.
IMPF.	faciēbam,	I made.		fiebam, I was made, I became.
Fur.	faciam,	I shall make		fiam, I shall be made (become)
PERF.	fēcī.			factus sum.
PLUPF.	fēceram.			factus eram.
FUT. PF	. fēcerō.			factus erō.
SUBJV.	faciam, e	tc.	SUBJV.	fīam, fīās, fīat, etc.
	facerem,	etc.		fierem, fieres, etc.
I	NFINITIV	E.		INFINITIVE.
	facere, etc.		PRES.	fierī.
I	MPERATIV	E.	PERF.	factum esse, to have become.
(fī)	, (fī-	·tō).	Fur.	futurum esse or fore.
(fi-	te).		FUT. PF.	factum fore.

Notes.—1. Occasionally in early Latin the form fiere is found for the Infinitiva, which indicates that the verb was originally active. The forms fieri and fierem are very common in early Latin, along with the normal forms. Of the forms in parenthesis finus and fitis do not certainly occur, and the Imperative forms are early. Passive forms of fio are very rare; never in PLAUTUS or TERENCE.

2. The compounds of facio with Prepositions change the a of the stem into i, and form the Passive in classical Latin regularly from the same stem: perficio, I achieve. Pass. perficio; interficio, Pass. interficior, I am destroyed. But interfiert, conflerent, confleri, and several other forms are found in early Latin, and occasionally in classical times. When compounded with words other than prepositions, facio retains its a, and uses fio as its Passive:

patefaciō, I lay open, Pass. patefiō; calefaciō, I warm, Pass. calefiō. For the accent, see 15, 2, n. 2.

174. 7. vel-le, to be willing.
nölle, to be unwilling; mälle, to be willing rather.

PRIN. PARTS: volo, velle, volui; nölö, nölle, nölui; mālö, mālle, mālui.

		INDICATIVE.	
PRES.	volö,	nōlō,	mālō,
	vis,	non vis,	māvīs,
	vult,	non vult,	māvult,
	volumus,	nōlumus,	mālumus,
	vultis,	non vultis,	mãvultis,
	volunt.	nölunt.	mālunt.
IMPF.	volēbam,	nōlēbam,	mālēbam.
Fur-	volam,	nōlam,	mālam,
	volës, etc.	noles, etc.	mālēs, etc.
PERF.	volui,	nōluī,	māluī, etc.
PLUPF.	volueram,	nōlueram,	mālueram, etc.
FUT. PF	. voluero,	nöluerö,	māluerō, etc.
		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES.	velim,	nōlim,	mālim,
	velis,	nōlīs,	mālīs,
	velīt,	nōlit,	mālit,
	velīmus,	nölīmus,	mālimus,
	velītis,	nölītis,	mālītis,
	velint.	nölint.	mālint.
IMPF.	vellem,	nöllem,	māllem.
	make andre	nōluerim.	māluerim, etc.
PERF.	voluerim,	nonderini,	markorini, coo.

IMPV. (fac velīs). Sg.—nolī, nolīto.

PL. -nölite, nölitöte, nöluntö.

INF. PR. velle, nõlle, mälle.
PF. voluisse, nõluisse, mäluisse,

PART. volēns, nolēns.

Notes.—1. To the time of Cicero, and occasionally later, volt, voltis, are employed for vult, vultis. In familiar language sī vīs, sī vultis, were contracted to sīs, sultis; vīs was further combined with -ne into vīn.

2. Noto is a contraction of nevolo (= non volo), and in early Latin we find, along with the forms given above, also nevis, nevolt; also occasionally we find non velis, non velit, non velint, non veliem, for nolis, etc.; but the feeling is slightly different.

8. Mālō = ma volō, from mag(mage, magis)-volō. Frequently in PLAUT., but tarely in Ter., we find mavolō, mavolunt, mavolet, mavelim, -is, -it, mavellem, instead of mālō, mālim, mālis, etc.

### 175. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

### I. āiō, I say aye.

INDIC. Pres. Sg.—1. āiō, 2. ais, 3. ait, Pl.—3. āiunt. Impf. āiēbam, etc.

PERE. 3. ait.

SUBJV. Pres. Sc. - 2. āiās. 3. āiat. 3. āiant.

PART. āiens (as adj.), affirmative. IMPV. al.

Note.—In early Latin ain (= aisne?) was scanned often as a monosyllable; and in the Impf., āībam, āībās, āībat, āībant were frequently employed along with the normal forms. The Impv. is rare, and found only in early Latin. Pr. Subjv. āiam is emended into Pt., Ep., 281.

### 2. inquam, I say, quoth I.

INDIC. Pres. So.—1. inquam, 2. inquis, 3. inquit.

PL.—1. inquimus, 2. inquitis, 3. inquiunt.

IMPF. Sg.— 3. inquiebat.
Fut. Sg.— 2. inquies, 3. inquiet.

Put. Su.— 2. inquies, 3. inquies,

Perf. Sg.—1. inquif, 2. inquisti, 3. inquit.

IMPV. inque, inquito.

### 3. fā-rī, to speak.

INDIC. PRES. fātur. Fut. fābor, fābitur. PERF. fātus sum, etc. IMPV. fāre. PART. PRES. fāns, fantis, fanti, fantem. GER. fandī, fandō. SUP. fātū.

Note.—In addition to these, compounds show also Pres.: -fāris, -fāmur, -fāminī, -fantur; Impp.: -fābar, -fābantur; Fur.: -fābere, -fābimur; Part.: -fante and others. These forms, as well as the uncompounded forms, though occasionally found in prose, are peculiar to the poets until post-Augustan times. The Pf. Part. is sometimes used passively; so especially fātum, fate; effātus, designated.

### 4. havē-re (avē-re), salvē-re.

IMPV. havē, salvē, salvēbis, hail thou !
havētō. salvētō.

havēte, salvēte, hail ye!

INF. havēre, salvēre.

Corresponding to these are the forms of valere, viz.: vale, valete, valere, farewell.

### 5. coepī, meminī, ōdī, nōvī.

In use only in the Perfect-stem are coepi, I have begun, which serves as a Perfect to incipiō, and memini, I remember, ōdi, I hate, nōvī (from nōscō, see 131, 3, 140), I know, am aware, cōnsuēvī (from consuēscō), I am wont, which have the force of Presents.

a. INDIC. coepi, I have begun. SUBJV. coeperim. coepissem. coepissem. INF. coepisse, to have begun.

Note.—Early Latin shows coepiō, coepiās, coepiat, coepiam, coepere, coeperet. Future Participle coeptūrus is Post-Augustan. Incēpī is ante-classical.

Passive forms coeptus sum, etc., occur with the same meaning in combination with a Passive Infinitive. Sec 423, N. 3.

b. INDIC. meminf, I remember. SUBJV. meminerim. memineram. meminissem. meminisse, to remember.

IMPV. Sg.—mementő. Pl.—mementőte.
c. INDIC. ödi, I hate, SUBJV. öderim.

öderam. ödissem.

ōderō. INF. ōdisse, to hate.

FUT. PART. Ösürus.

Note.—Occasionally in early Latin, the poets, and later prose, deponent forms of the Perfect are found, osus sum, etc. For the Passive the phrase odio esse is used.

d. INDIC. novi. SUBJV. noverim (norim).
noveram (noram). novissem (nossem),
novero (noro). INF. novisse (nosse) to know.

### 6. cedo, quaeso.

Other defective forms are:

Sg.—cedo, give ! (old Impv.) PL.—cette,
INDIC. Pres. quaesō, please (i. e., I seek, beg), quaesumus.

Note.—Other forms of quaeso are found occasionally in early Latin, and sporadically in Cic., Salle, and later; the Pf. forms have been attached to quaerere, 187, c.

#### FORMATION OF WORDS.

- 176. By the formation of words is meant the way in which stems are made of roots, new stems of old, and in which words are compounded.
- 177. All roots of the Latin language are probably monosyllabic.\* They can be ascertained only by scientific analysis.

The difference between Root and Stem has been set forth in 25, NN. Sometimes the Stem is the same as the Root; so especially in the Root Verbs (132). But it is usually different.

178. Words are either simple or compound.

A simple word is one that is formed from a single root: sol, sun; sta-re, stand, stay.

A compound word is one that is made up of two or more roots: sol-stiti-um, sun-staying, solstice.

### A.-Simple Words.

- 179. Simple words are partly primitive, partly derivative or secondary.
- 1. Primitive words come from the root, and as this usually appears in the simplest form of the verb-stem, primitive words are called verbals. Examples are the root-verbal forms (134, II., 132, 135, I.), some substantives of the third declension, as dux (duc-s), leader, root duc (see 183, I), many substantives of the first, second, and fourth declensions, as: scrib-a (scribō, I write), scribe.
- 2. Derivative words are formed from a noun-stem; hence called denominatives: vetus-tas, age, from vetes-(N. vetus), old.

NOTE.—Denominative verbs include many verbs which cannot definitely be referred to any substantive; such as many frequentatives and intensives. In its narrower signification the term refers to the special class of verbs made from substantives in use.

180. Substantives are generally formed by means of a suffix. A suffix is an addition to a stem, and serves to define its meaning or show its relations. So from the verbal stem scrib-(scribō, I write) comes scrip-tor, writ-er; scrip-tiō(n), writ-ing.

<sup>\*</sup>The theory of monosyllabic roots is adopted here as being somewhat more convenient than the theory of polysyllabic roots, now held by some important scholars. Of course it will be understood that the actual existence of mere roots can be assumed only for a very early period in the development or language, long before the independent existence of Latin.

Suffixes are either *primary* or *secondary*. A primary suffix is one added to a root (or verb stem) to form primitive words. A secondary suffix is one used in the formation of derivative words. Thus, -tor in scrip-tor is a primary suffix; -tās in vetus-tās is secondary.

Notes.—1. By the fading out of the difference between primary and secondary suffixes, primary suffixes come to be used sometimes to form secondary derivatives.

2. Consonant stems before consonant suffixes undergo the usual changes (9). So scrib-tor becomes scrip-tor; reg-s becomes rex. Stems are sometimes extended by a vowel, usually i, less often u, to facilitate pronunciation: val-i-dus, strong: documentum, proof; sometimes they change the stem vowel: teg, cover; tog-a, loga; tug-urium, hut.

3. Vowel stems lengthen the final vowel: acu-, sharpen; acu-men, sharp part,

point.

The final vowel often disappears before the suffix : opta-, choose; opt-io, choice.

#### 181. FORMATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

The suffixes, as applied to various roots, have often special functions, and form words of definite meaning. The most important are as follows:

- 1. Agency is indicated by
- -tor, -tric (N. tor (m.), trix (f.)): amā-tor, lover; vic-trix, conqueress; occasionally -ter (N. ter, G. -tri): ar-bi-ter (= ad + ba, step), umpire; -ōn (N. ō, G. ōnis): com-bib-ō (fellow-drinker), boon companion; occasionally -o, -a (N. -us, -a): serv-os, slave; scrib-a, scribe; -ōno, -ōna (N. ōnu-s, -ōna): col-ōnu-s, settler; -(i)t (N. es, G. itis): mil-es, soldier, and a few others.
  - 2. Action, Activity, and Event are indicated by
- a. -tu (N. tu-s, su-s, G. -ūs): ad-ven-tus, arrival; -trī-na (N. trīna): doc-trīna, instruction; -īn-a (N. -īna): rap-īna, rapine; -men (N. men, G. min-is): āg-men, train; -mento (N. mentum): tor-mentu-m, torture; -ē-lu (ellu): loqu-ēla, speech; quer-ēla, complaint; -cinio (N. -u-m): latrō ciniu-m, highway robbery; -mōnio, -mōnia (N. mōnia, mōniu-m): queri-mōnia, complaint; tēsti-mōniu-m, testimony.
- b. Abstracts. Masculine: -ōs (N. -or, G. -ōr-is): ang-or, anguish. Feminine: -on (N. dō, gō, G. in-is): imā-gō, image; cup-ī-dō, desire; -ia: audāc-ia, boldness; -iōn (N. iō): leg-iō, legion; -tia: avārī-tia, avarīce; collateral are some with Nom. in -tiēs, as dūrī-tiēs, hardness; -tiōn (N. tiō, siō): amb-i-tiō, ambition; cōn-fū-siō, confusion; -tāt (N. tās): aequāli-tās, equality; -tūra: pic-tūra, painting; -tūt-(N. tūs, sus): iuven-tūs, youth; -tu (-su) (N. tu-s, su-s), sōn-sus, perception; -tūdon (N. tūd-ō, G. -inis): aegrī-tūdō, sickness of heart. Neuter: -tiō (N. tiu-m): servi-tiu-m, bondage.
  - An Artisan or Tradesman is indicated by -ārio (N. āriu-s): argent-āriu-s, money changer.

- 4. The Trade is indicated by
- -āria: argent-āria, silver mine, bank.
- 5. The Locality of the work (or trade) is indicated by
- -ārio (N. āriu-m); sēmin-āriu-m, seed-plot; -ōnio (N. ōniu-m); fullōnium, fuller's shop; -īna; offic-īna, workshop; -cro, -culo (N. -cru-m, -culu-m); lavā-cru-m, bath; -trīno, -trīna (N. trīna, trīnu-m); sūtrīna, shoemaker's shop; pis-trīnu-m, mill.
  - 6. Instrument and Means are indicated by
- -bro, -bra (N. bra, bru-m): II-bra, balance; crI-brum, sieve; -cro, -culo (N. cru-m, culu-m): ba-culu-m, walking stick; -lo, -la (N. -la, -lu-m): pI-la, pillar; tō-lu-m, weapon; -ulo, -ula (N. ulu-s, ula, ulu-m): cap-ulu-s, handle; rōg-ula, rule; cing-ulu-m, girdle; -mento (N. mentu-m): al-i-mentu-m, nourishment; -tro, -tra (N. tra, tru-m): fenes-tra, window; arā-tru-m, plow.
  - 7. Relationship is indicated by
  - -ter (N. ter, G. tr-is): pa-ter, father; ma-ter, mother.
  - 8. Condition or Relation by
  - -ina: discipl-ina, discipline; medic-ina, medicine.
  - 9. Function is indicated by
  - -tūra (sūra): cul-tūra, cultivation.
  - 10. Office is indicated by
- -ūtu (N. ātus, G. ātūs): consul-ātus, consulship; -tūra (-sūra): dictā-tūra, dictatorship.
  - 11. Dense Growths are indicated by
- -ēto (N. čtu-m): murt-čtu-m, myrtle grove; -to (N. tu-m): virgul-tu-m, brushwood.
  - 12. Diminutives are indicated by
- -lo, -la (N. lu-s, etc.), before which a liquid is assimilated (9, 3):
  (ager), agel-lu-s, little field; (tabul-a), tabel-la, tablet; (corön-a), coröl-la, chaplet; Catul-lu-s (= Catōn-lu-s); homul-lu-s (= homōn lu-s), manikin;
  -olo, -ulo: olo after e, i, v, otherwise -ulo (N. olu-s, ola, ulu-s, ula):
  (alve-us), alve-olu-s, little hollow; (fili-a), fili-ola, little daughter; (valv-a), valv-olae, pod (little flaps); (circu-s), circ ulu-s, little ring. -culo, -cula (N. culu-s, etc.), after e, i, u, and consonant stems: (spēs), spē-cula, slight hope; (amni-s), amni-culu-s, streamlet; (versu-s), versi-culu-s, versicle; (homō, homin-), homun-culu-s, manikin; (flōs), flōs-culu-s, floweret; (cor, cord-), cor-culu-m, dear heart.

Note.—Diminutives have, as a rule, the gender of their primitives. Exceptions are sometimes due to difference in signification.

### 182. FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES.

The significance of the most important adjective suffixes, which are often identical with the substantive suffixes, are as follows:

1. Action is indicated by

-bundo, -bunda: cunctā-bundu-s, lingering. Repeated action by -ulo, -ulu: crēd-ulu-s, quick to believe; quer ulu-s, complaining. Passive action is indicated by -bili: amā-bili-s, lovable; vēnd-i-bili-s, to be sold.

2. Capacity and Inclination are indicated by

-cundo, -cunda: fā-cundu-s, of ready speech; verē-cundu-s, modest. Passive Capacity by -ili: ag-ili-s, readily moved, quick; doc-ili-s, teachable. The Capacity and Resulting Condition by -tili: duc-tili-s, ductile; fic-tili-s, capable of being moulded, of clay.

- 3. Tendency is indicated by
- -āci (N. āx): aud-āx, bold; rap-āx, greedy.
- 4. Likeness and Composition or Material are indicated by

-āceo, -ācea: arundin-āceu-s, reedy; crēt-āceu-s, chalky; -icio: later-iciu-s, made of brick; -no, -na: acer-nu-s, of maple; -neo, -nea: ac-neu-s, brazen.

5. Belonging to is indicated by

-io, -ia: imperātār-iu-s, belonging to a general; -icio, -icia: aedīl-iciu-s, belonging to an ædile; -āno, -āna: hūm-ānu-s, human; urb-ānu-s, urbane, city.

6. Appurtenance and Medium are indicated by

-tico, -tica: aquā-ticu-s, aquatic; -tili-: aquā-tili-s, aquatic; plāmā-tili-s, (embroidered) like feathers.

7. Origin is indicated by

-io, -ia: Cornēl-ia (lēx), Corinth-iu-s;  $-\bar{a}no$ ,  $-\bar{a}na$ ,  $-\bar{i}no$ ,  $-\bar{i}na$ : Rōm-ānu-s, Lat-īnu-s.

8. Time is indicated by

-tino, -tina: crās-tinu-s, of to-morrow; -terno, -terna: hesternu-s, of yesterday; -urno, -urna: noct-urnu-s, by night; -tīno, -tīna: mātū-tīnu-s, of early morning.

9. Locality, where, whence, is indicated by

-ia: Gall-ia, Gaul; -tīno: intes-tīnu-s, inner, intestine; -ēnsi: circ-ēnsi-s, from the circus; Sicili-ēnsi-s, Sicilian; -āti (N. -ās): cūi-ās, of what country?

10. Fullness is indicated by

-ōso, -ōsa: anim-ōsu-s, full of spirit; verb-ōsu-s, wordy; -lento, lenta: sanguin-o-lentu-s, bloody; op-u-lentu-s, with abundant means.

- 11. Descent and Relationship are indicated in Latin mainly by Greek adjectives, made by the addition of Greek suffixes to proper names. These suffixes are
- M. -idēs (G. idae), F. -is (G. idis), from Nominatives in us, or, ōs, and s preceded by a consonant; M. -īdēs (G. idae), F. -ēis (G. ēidis), from Nominatives in -eus; M. -adēs (G. adae), F. -ēis (G. ēidis), from Nominatives in ās (G. ae) and -ēs (G. -ae); M. -iadēs (G. iadae), F. -ias (G. iadis), from Nominatives in ius, ēs, ōn, o; F. -īnē, from Nominatives in -us and -eus; F. -iōnē, from Nominatives in ius: (Tantalus) Tantal-idēs, son of Tantalus; Tantal-is, daughter of Tantalus; (Pelops) Pelopidēs; (Thēs-eus) Thēs-īdēs, Thēsēis; (Aenēās) Aene-adēs (Aeneadae also); (Lāertēs) Lāert-iadēs; (Neptūnus) Neptūn-īnē; (Acrisius) Acrisiōnē, etc.
- 12. Diminutive adjectives are formed by the same suffixes as diminutive substantives (181, 12): albus, white, albu-lus, whitish; miser, wretched, mis-ellus, poor (little); acer, sharp, acri-culu-s, somewhat sharp.

#### 183. SUBSTANTIVES WITHOUT SUFFIXES.

(Root Substantives.)

A few substantives are formed from roots without a suffix:

- 1. With weak root: duc-s (dux), leader, from root duc, lead; nec-s (nex), killing, from root nec, kill.
- With strong root: lūc-s (lūx), light, from root lūc, light; rēg-s (rēx), king, from root rēg, rule.
- 3. With reduplication: car-cer, jail; mar-mor, marble; mur-mur, murmur.

#### THE SUFFIXES IN DETAIL.

#### 184.

#### Vowels.

-o, -a (N. u-s, a, u-m). Primary and secondary adjectives, and primary substantives. The primary adjectives resemble somewhat active participles in meaning; fer-u-s, wild; vag-u-s, wandering. Secondary are especially adjectives in -ōrus, as dec-ōru-s, graceful, from decor, grace, and many others. Masculine substantives in -u-s are often nouns of agency, sometimes nōmina āctiōnis and concretes therefrom: coqu-o-s, cook; rog-u-s, pyre. Those in -a (ā) are regularly nōminu agentis, especially in composition; scrib-a, scribe; agri-cola, husbandman (land-tiller). Feminines are in -o (which are principally names of trees: pir-us, pear tree) and in -a: lup-a, she-wolf, as well as lup-u-s. Neuters are those in -u-m, especially names of fruits: pir-u-m, pear.

-i (N. i-s, e). Substantives: M. orb-i-s, circle; pisc-i-s, fish, etc.; F. av-i-s, bird; nāv-i-s, ship; N. mar-e, sea; conclāv-e, room. Adjectives: dulc-i-s, sweet; turp-i-s, ugly.

Note.—In adjectives especially, i is often weakened from -0, as inermis and inermus, etc. Sometimes in substantives the Nom. shows &s instead of is, as caed&s and caedis, etc.

- -io, -ia (N. iu-s, ia, iu-m).—1. This is the principal secondary suffix, and is found in many combinations; but it is also found as primary in substantives: M. gen-iu-s, genius; glad-iu-s, sword; F. pluv-ia, rain; tib-ia, fife; N. fol-iu-m, leaf; od-iu-m, hate; and in adjectives ex-im-iu-s, pre-eminent (taken out); sauc-iu-s, wounded, pluv-iu-s, rainy.
- 2. The suffix occurs as secondary in the forms -ēio (-aeo), -io, eo, io, in a large number of Gentile names: Flāv-ēiu-s, Flāv-iu-s; Lūc-ēiu-s, Lūc-iu-s, Lūc-iu-s; similar to these are those in ed-iu-s, id-iu-s, id-iu-s, -ēl-iu-s, Il-iu-s, as Lūc-id-iu-s, Corn-ēl-iu-s, Lūc-īl-iu-s. Also in some adjectives of material in eu-s, as aur-eu-s, golden; ferr-eu-s, iron. It occurs, moreover, in many compound adjective and substantive endings, to be discussed later, and in many abstract substantives in -antia, -entia, as abundant-ia, abundance; sci-ent-ia, knowledge, etc.

Note. - Instead of -ia, we find -ea in a few words : cav-ea, cage ; cochl-ea, snail.

-u (N. u-s, u). M. arc-u-s, bow; curr-u-s, chariot; F. ac-u-s, needle; man-u-s, hand; N. gel-ū, frost; gen-u, knee. Secondary is socr-u-s, mother in-law. This suffix is found occasionally in adjectives compounded with manus, as centi-manus, hundred-handed; also in the form -ui in a few adjectives, as ten-ui-s, thin.

Note .- The suffix -o often alternates with -u.

-uo, -ua (N. uo-s, ua, uo-m). Primary and secondary substantives and adjectives. Primary: M. eq-uo-s, horse; F. al-vo-s, belly; N. ar-vo-m, field; par-vo-s, small. Secondary: M. patr-uo-s, uncle; cer-vo-s, stag; F. iān-ua, gate; cern-uo-s, stooping; aesti-vo-s, of the summer.

Note.—Ivo-s is found in voc-ivo-s (vacuos), rediv-ivo-s, etc. -vo is weakened to -vi in pel-vi-s, basin.

### 185. Suffixes with Gutturals.

- 1. -co, -ca (N. cu-s, ca, cu-m). This forms both adjectives and substantives, but is usually secondary. As primary it is found in: io-cu-s, jest; lo-cu-s, place; as secondary in: medi-cu-s, physician; pedi-ca, fetter. Adjectives are primary: cas-cu-s, very old; or secondary: civi-cu-s, civic.
- 2. -āco, -āca (N. ācu-s, āca, ācu-m). Primary in clo-āca, sewer; secondary in ver-bēn-āca, vervain, and in adjectives, as mer-ācu-s, pure.

- 3. -īco, -īca (N. Icu-s, Ica, Icu-m). In substantives, such as: M. umbil-Icu-s, navel; F. lect-Ica, litter; urt-Ica, nettle. In adjectives, as: am-Icu-s, friendly, etc.
- 4. -ūco, -ūca (N. ūcu-s, ūca, ūcu-m). Primary in the adjectives: cad-ūcu-s, tottering; mand-ūcu-s, voracious; secondary in alb-ūcu-s, asphodel; and in substantives in -ūca, as ēr-ūca, caterpillar; verr-ūca, wart.

Note.—Similar is the secondary suffix inquo in long-inquo-s, distant; propinquo-s, near.

- 5 -āc (N. āx) forms substantives and adjectives; the latter expressing inclination. Primary: aud-āx, bold; fug-āx, fleeing. Secondary: F. forn-āx, furnace; līm-āx, snail; vēr-āx, truthful.
  - 6. -ēc (N. ēx) is found in verv-ēx, wether.
- 7. -ic (N. ex) forms a number of substantives that are mainly masculine, except names of plants and trees. Primary: M. ap-ex, point; cort-ex, bark; F. Il-ex, holm-oak. Secondary: F. imbr-ex, gutter-tile.
- 8. -īc (N. īx) forms substantives and adjectives. Primary: F. rādīx, root; fēl-īx, happy. Secondary: corn-īx, crow, and feminines in -trīx.
- 9.  $-\bar{v}c$  (N.  $\bar{v}x$ ) is found in the substantive cel- $\bar{v}x$ , yacht, and in a number of adjectives: atr- $\bar{v}x$ , ferocious.
- 10. -āceo, -ācea (N. āceu-s, ācea, āceu-m), forms adjectives of material or likeness: crēt-āceu-s, chalk-like.

Note.-Notice also the suffix -ac-io, especially in proper names : Ver-acia.

- II. -ic-eo, -ic-io (N. iceu-s, etc., iciu-s, etc.), form adjectives indicating material, the latter suffix also some indicating relation: palmiceu-s, of palms; tribūn-iciu-s, proceeding from a tribune.
- 12. -īc-io (N. iciu-s, etc.) is found in nov-īciu-s, new, and in words of participial meaning coming from forms in -to, as advent-īciu-s, stranger.
  - 13. -ūc-eo, -ūc-io, occurs in pann-ūceu-s or pann-ūciu-s.
- 14. -ci-no and ci-n'-io occur (perhaps) in vāti-cinu-s, prophetic, and in some secondary neuter substantives, which denote action or event, as latrō-ciniu-m, robbery.
- 15. -ero, -eri, -elo, -eulo (N. cer, cris, clu-m, culu-m) are found in some adjectives with participial force, and in a few neuter substantives indicating instrument or locality; as ala-cer, quick; medio-cris, medio-cre; peri-clum (-culu-m), danger; ba-culu-m, stick (also m.); sepulcrum, grave. Also the primary ridi-culu-s, laughable, and the secondary anni-culu-s, aged.

## 186.

### Suffixes with a Dental.

- 1. -d (N. (d)s). Substantives only : frau-s, cheatery ; merce-s, pay ; custo-s, guard.
- -do, -di (N. du-s, etc., di-s). A secondary suffix used especially for the formation of adjectives: frig-i-du-s, cold; vir-i-dis, blooming.
- 3. -to (-so) (N. tu-s, ta, tu-m). This forms substantives and adjectives, and is both primary and secondary. Primary: M. cub-i-tu-s, elbow; dig-i-tus, finger; also substantives in -ta after Greek analogy: poō-ta, poet; F. has-ta, spear; am-i-ta, aunt; N. lu-tu-m, mud; tēc-tum, roof; ap-tu-s, fit; beā-tu-s, blessed. Secondary: M. nau-ta, sailor; F. iuven-ta, youth; N. dense growths in ō-tu-m: frutic-ō-tu-m, copse; iūs-tu-s, just; and passive adjectives like barb-ā-tus, bearded.
- 4. -ti (-si) [N. tis (sis)] forms primary and secondary substantives and adjectives. Primary: M. fūs-ti-s, club; cas-si-s, hunting-net; F. cu-ti-s, skin; si-ti-s, thirst; for-ti-s, brave; mī-ti-s, mild. Secondary: (1) in adjectives and substantives indicating home, origin, usually preceded by ā, ī, more rarely ē: Camer-s (Camer-ti-s), from Camerinum; Arpīnā-s (Arpīnā-ti-s), of Arpīnum; nostr-ās, from our country; (2) in the form -ēnsi (for ent-ti) in adjectives of origin and locality: Sicili-ēnsi-s, from Sicily; castr-ēnsi-s, belonging to a camp.
- 5. -t (N. (t)s) forms primary and secondary substantives and adjectives. Primary: M. com-e-s, companion; dēn-s, tooth; F. qui-ē-s, rest; ar-s, art; locupl-ē-s, wealthy; with preceding e: dīv-e-s, rich. Note also the Participles in -ns. Secondary: M. āl-e-s, bird; eque-s, horseman.
- 6. -ento- (N. -entu-s, etc.) forms substantives and adjectives; the latter are participial in nature. M. v-entu-s, wind; F. pol-enta, cluster; N. ungu-entu-m, salve; cru-entu-s, bloody. Secondary adjectives: gracil-entu-s, slender; and by false analogy corpul entu-s, corpulent, and the like.
- 8. -tio, -tia, -tiē (N. tiu-m, tia, tiē-s), likewise form abstracts and collectives, some neuter, most masculine: servi-tiu-m, slavery; mollitia and molli-tiē-s, gentleness, etc.
- Notes.—1. In in-i-tiu-m, beginning, and spa-tiu-m, room, the suffix is primary.

  2. Many roots form various derivatives of similar meaning, thus: dur-i-tia, dur-i-tie-s, dur-i-ta-s, hardness, etc.
- 9. -ti-co (N. ti-cu-s, etc.) forms secondary adjectives signifying pertaining to: domesticu-s, domestic; aquā-ticu-s, aquatic.

Note.—In such substantives as canti-cu-m, triti-c-um, the ending -co has been added to a participial form in -to (canto, trito).

- 10. -ter forms primary substantives of kinship; as, pa-ter, etc. Different in formation is soror, which, like ux-or, has no feminine ending.
- 11. -tor (-sor), F. -trīc (N. tor, trīx), form substantives of agency, those in trīx being all secondary: aud-ī-tor, hearer; vēnā-trīx, huntress; -tor is secondary in gladiā-tor, etc.
- 12. -tūro-, -tūr-a (N. tūru-s, etc.), forms participles in tūru-s, as amā-tūru-s, and feminine substantives denoting activity or office: cultūr-a, cultivation; cēn-sūr-a, censorship.
- 13. -tōr-io (-sōr-io) (N. tōriu-s, etc.), form neuter substantives of place and instrument, and adjectives denoting that which pertains to the actor: audī-tōr-iu-m, lecture hall; āleā-tōr-iu-s, pertaining to a diceplayer.
- 14. -tro, -tra (N. tra, tru-m), forms substantives, mostly neuter, of means: arā-tru-m, plow; fenes-tra (f.), window. From words like mon-s-tru-m, monster, come by false analogy those in -ster, as pin-aster, wild pine.
- 15. -tero, -tera (N. ter, tra, tru-m) forms comparatives: al-ter, other; dex-ter, right; nos-ter, our; perhaps also adjectives of relation, appurtenance, or locality in -s-ter (G. stris), such as: palūs-ter (= palūd-ter), swampy; eques-ter, equestrian; campes-ter, champaign; terres-ter, of the earth, terrestrial.
- 16. -trīno, -trīna (N. trīna, trīnu-m). forms substantives of activity (f.), or of locality (f., n.): doc-trīna, instruction; pis-trīna, bakery; pis-trīnu-m, (pounding) mill.
- 17. -tili (-sili) (N. tili s, tile) forms primary adjectives of capacity and adaptation, and with preceding ā secondary adjectives of relation or belonging: duc-tili s, ductile; mis-sili-s, missile; aquā-tili-s, belonging to the water.
- 18. -ter-no (N. ternu-s, etc.) forms adjectives indicating time: hes-ternu-s, of yesterday.
- 19. -turn-no(N. turnu-s, etc.) forms substantives and adjectives indicating continuance, from which come proper names: Sā-turnu-s, Vol-turnu-s, tac-i turnu-s, silent.
- 20. -tino, -tīno (N. tinu-s, tīnu-s, etc.), forms adjectives of time, the latter also of place: crās tinu-s, of to-morrow; intes-tīnu-s, inner, intestine; mātū-tīnu-s, of early morning.
- 21. -tu (-su) (N. tu-s, su-s) forms substantives of action and its result: adven-tu-s, arrival; cur-su-s, course; or-tu-s, rising.
- 22.  $-\bar{u}$ -tu (N.  $\bar{a}$ -tu-s) forms secondary substantives of office :  $c\bar{o}nsul$ - $\bar{a}$ -tu-s, consulship; sen- $\bar{a}$ -tu-s, sen ate.

## 187.

#### Suffixes with a Labial.

- r. -bo, -ba (N. bu-s, etc.), forms substantives and adjectives: M. mor-bu-s, disease; F. bar-ba, beard; N. ver-bu-m, word; pro-bu-s, upright.
- 2. -bro, -bra (N. bra, bru-m), forms substantives indicating means of instrument. Primary: F. dolā-bra, celt; lī-bra, balance; ter-e-bra, borer; N. crī-bru-m, sieve. Secondary: candēlā-bru-m, candlestick.

Note.—Very rare are masculines; as, fa-ber, wright; Mulci-ber, Vulcan.

- 3. -bulo, -bula (N. bula, bulu-m), form substantives: F. fā-bula, tale; fī-bula (fig-), brooch; N. pā-bulu-m, fodder; sta-bulu-m, stall.
- 4. -bili (N. bili-s) forms adjectives, mostly of passive meaning in classical prose: amā-bili-s, lovable; nō-bili-s, noble; fiō-bili-s, tearful.

# 188. Suffixes with an original S.

- 1. -is (N. is, G. er-is) forms a few substantives: vom-is (also vom-er), plowshare; ein-is, ashes; pulv-is, dust; cucum-is, cucumber.
- 2. -us (N. us, G. er-is, or-is) forms primary and secondary neuter substantives. Primary: foed-us, bond; gen-us, race; temp-us, time. Secondary: pect-us, breast; fūn-us, funeral.

Note.—Some such words have become monosyllabic, as aes, iūs, rūs,

3. -ōs (-ōr) (N. ōs, or, G. ōr-is) forms many primary and a few secondary masculine abstracts. Primary: fl-ōs, flower; am-or, love. Secondary: aegr-or, sickness.

Note.—Noteworthy are M. lep-us, hare ; F. arb-ōs, tree (45 n.); Ven-us (G. Veneris), and the adjective vet-us (G. veteris), old.

- 4. -es (N. es, ēs, G. is, ĕi) forms a few substantives of the third and fifth declension: vāt-ēs, bard; fam-ēs, hunger; plēb-ēs, people.
- 5. -ōr-o (N. ōru-s, etc.) forms secondary adjectives, as: can-ōru-s, sounding; hon-ōru-s, honorable; and a few substantives, as: aur-ōra, morning; Flōra, etc.

# 189. Suffixes with a Liquid.

- i. -lo, -la (N. lu-s, etc.), forms many feminine and neuter, and a few masculine substantives: M. mā-lu-s, mast; F. pi-la, pillar; N. cae-lu-m (= caed-lu-m), chisel; fi-lu-m, thread.
  - 2. -i-lo, -i-la (N. ilu-s, etc.), forms primary and secondary sub

stantives and adjectives. M. sib-i-lu-s, hissing; N. cae-lu-m (= cav-i-lu-m, hollow), heaven; nūb-i-lu-s, cloudy.

- 3. (-o-lo), -u-lo, -u-la (N. ulu-s, etc.), form primary and secondary substantives, most of which indicate instrument, and primary adjectives indicating repeated action or tendency: M. ang-u-lu-s, corner; oc-u-lu-s, eye; F. rēg-u-la, rule; tēg-u-la, tile; N. iac-u-lu-m, javelin; spec-u-lu-m, mirror; bib-u-lu-s, bibulous; crēd-u-lu-s, quick to believe; quer-u-lu-s, complaining; caer-u-lu-s, blue (secondary), and caer-u-leu-s. Also fam-u-lu-s, servant, and the extension fam-ili-a, family.
- 4. -li (N. li-s, le) occurs in the substantive: M. cau-li-s, stalk; and in adjectives: subti-li-s, fine; inci-li-s, cut in. Secondary in fide-li-s, faithful.
- 5. -i-li (N. ili-s, ile) forms a few substantives and many adjectives indicating passive capacity: F. strig-i-li-s, scraper; N. teg-i-le, roof. Also vig-il, watchman; ag-i-li-s, readily moved; doc-ili-s, teachable. Secondary in hum-i-li-s, low, and in the terminations -tili-s, -sili-s.
- 6. -olo, -ola (after e, i, v), -ulo, -ula (N. olu-s, ulu-s, etc.), form diminutives: alve-olu-s, little belly; fili-olu-s, little son; rīv-ulu-s, brook-let; rēg-ulu-s, chief; vōc-ula, voice; grān-ulu-m, grain; alb-ulu-s, whit-ish; parv-olu-s, small.
- 7. -ello, -ella (N. ellu-s, etc.), forms diminutives after 1 and by assimilation after n, r: pop-ellu-s, tribelet; tab-el-la, tablet; pu-el-la, girl; bel-lu-s (bonus), good; misel-lus (miser), wretched. Doubly diminutive are catel-lu-s, puppy; cistel-la, basket; capitel-lu-m, head.
- 8. -illo, -illa (N. illu-s, etc.), forms diminutives, and is formed like ello, but usually after a preceding i: pulv-illu-s, small cushion; pistrilla, small mill; sig-illu-m, small image; bov-illu-s, bovine. Also codicills, billets; paux-illu-s, slight; pus-illu-s, tiny.
  - 9. -olla is found in cor-ol-la, wreath; ol-la, jar (aula).
- 10. -ullo, -ullo, occurs in  $\bar{u}$ l-lu-s, any. Sul-la (=  $S\bar{u}$ r-u-la), Catul-lu-s (Catōn-lus), homullus (=  $hom\bar{o}$ n-lu-s).
- II. (-co-lo), -cu-lo (N. culu-s, etc.), forms diminutives, especially after consonantal and e, i, u stems: M. flos-culu-s, floweret; homun-culu-s, manikin (irregular); avu-n-culu-s, uncle (n.other's brother, irregular); F. spē-cula, little hope; auri-cula, ear; arbus-cula, little tree (irregular); domu-n-cula, little house (irregular); N. cor-culu-m, (dear) heart; mūnus-culu-m, little gift. Adjectives are dulci-culu-s, sweetish, and especially diminutives from comparative stems, melius-culu-s.
- 12. -cello (-cillo) (N. cellu-s, etc.) stands to culo as ello to ulo: M. pēni-cillu-s, -m, painter's brush; os-cillu-m, little mouth; molli-cellu-s, softish.

- 13. -uleo (N. üleu-s) forms substantives that were originally adjectival: acūleu-s, sting.
- 14. -āli, -āri (N. āli-s, āri-s, etc.), form secondary adjectives, some of which are substantivized in the neuter, and a few substantives: vēnālis, venal; mort-āli-s, mortal; singul-āri-s, unique; vulg-āri-s, common; can-āli-s, canal; animal, living being; calc-ar, spur.
- 15. -ēla (-ella) forms primary and secondary substantives, most of which indicate action: loqu-ēla (loqu-ella), talking; cand-ēla, candle; cūstōd-ēla, watching.
- 16. -ēli (N. ēli-s, etc.) forms secondary substantives and adjectives: cardu-ēli-s, linnet; crūd-ēli-s, cruel.
- Remark.—A further development of -ēli is -ēlio, -ēlia: Aur-ēli-us, contum-ēli-a, contumely.
- 17. -711 (N. ili-s, ile) forms secondary substantives and adjectives: M. aed-ili-s, ædile; N. cub-ile, couch; sed-ile, seat; civ-ili-s, civic; eri-li-s, master's.
- 18. -mo, -ma (N. mu-s, etc.), forms primary substantives and primary and secondary adjectives. The feminine substantives express usually the result of an action: M. an-i-mu-s, spirit; cal mu-s, cal-a-mu-s, stalk; F. fā-ma, fame; flam-ma, flame; N. ar-ma, arms; pō-mum, fruit. Adjectives, primary: al-mu-s, fostering; fir-mu-s, strong. Secondary: op-i-mu-s, fat; patr-i-mu-s, mātr-i-mu-s, with father, mother, living.
- 19. -men (N. men, G. min-is) forms primary, neuter substantives, mostly indicating activity or results of activity: āg-men, train; flu-men, river; but M. fla-men, priest.
- 20. -men-to (N. mentu-m) forms substantives (mostly primary) indicating instrument: al-i-mentu-m, nourishment; tor-mentu-m, tor-ture.
- Notes. -1, -men and -mentum are often formed from the same radical. In that case mentu-m is the more common: teg-u-men, teg-u-mentu-m, covering.
  - 2. Rare and archaic are feminines in -menta: armenta = armentu-m.
  - 3. -menti occurs in sēmenti-s (f.), seed = sēmen (n ).
- 21. -met (N. mes, G. mit-is) forms a few masculine substantives: trā-mes, path; fō-mes, fuel; II mes, cross-path.
- 22. -mino, -mina, -mno, -mna (N. minu-s, etc.), form substantives: M. ter-minu-s, boundary; F. al-u-mna, foster-daughter; fémina, woman; N. da-mnu-m, loss.
- 23. -mon (N. mo, G. mon-is) forms primary and secondary masculine substantives: pul-mo, lung; ser-mo, discourse; to-mo, pole (of a chariot).
  - 24. -mon-io, -mon-ia (N. monia, moniu-m), forms primary and

secondary substantives. Primary: F. al-i-mōnia, nourishment; quer-i-mōnia, complaint; N. al-i-mōniu-m, nourishment. Secondary: F. ācri-mōnia, tartness; N. mātr-i-mōniu-m, marriage.

25. -mor forms primary masculine substantives: cre-mor, broth; rū-mor, rumor.

26. -mic (N. mex, G. mic-is) forms a few substantives : cI-mex, bug; pū-mex, pumice.

27. a. -no, -na (N. nu-s, etc.), forms primary and secondary adjectives; the primary are participial in meaning; the secondary indicate material or relation, and occasionally locality; when added to local comparatives and adverbs, distributive numerals are also formed with this suffix. Primary: dig-nu-s, worthy; plē-nu-s full. Secondary: diur-nu-s, daily; frāter-nu-s, brotherly; acer-nu-s, maple; ex-ter-nu-s, outer; bī-nī, two each.

Note.—Adjectives denoting material have also -neo (= n'-eo), as ae-neu-s, brazen; ilig-neu-s, quer-neu-s.

b. -no, -na (N. nu-s, etc.), forms primary and a few secondary substantives. Primary: M. fur-nu-s, oven; pūg-nu-s, fist; F. cē-na, meal; lā-na, wool. N. dō-nu-m, gift; rēg-nu-m, kingdom. Secondary: M. tribū-nu-s, tribune; F. fortū-na, fortune; albur-nu-m, sap-wood.

Note.—This suffix is extended in pecū-nia, money.

28. -bundo-, -cundo (N. bundu-s, etc., cundu-s, etc.), form adjectives of activity: cunct-ā-bundu-s, delaying; fā-cundu-s, eloquent.

29. -ni (N. ni-s) forms primary substantives and adjectives: am-ni-s, stream; pē-ni-s, toil; pā-ni-s, bread; im-mā-ni-s, wild; sēg-ni-s, lazy.

30. -ino, -ina (N. inu-s, etc.), forms primary and secondary substantives and adjectives. Primary: M. dom-inu-s, lord; F. pāg-ina, page; lic-inu-s, curled upwards. Secondary: M. ped-ic-inu-s, foot; F. fisc-ina, basket; N. sūc-inu-m, amber; face-inu-s, making dregs.

Note.—The suffix is extended in the proper name Lic-iniu-s.

31. -āno, -āna (N. ānu-s, etc.), forms secondary adjectives, some of which are substantivized. They indicate origin or appurtenance; decum-ānu-s, belonging to the tenth; hūm-ānu-s, human; alt-ānu-s, seawind. Primary in Vole-ānu-s, Di-āna.

32. -ān-eo (N. āneu-s, etc.) forms primary and secondary adjectives. Primary: consent-aneu-s, harmonious. Secondary: subit-aneu-s, sudden. This suffix becomes ānio (= ān'io) in proper names: Afr-aniu-s, Fund-aniu-s.

33. -ēno, -ēna (N. ēnu-s, etc.), forms secondary substantives and

adjectives: M. Vibidi-ēnu-s; F. cat-ēna, chain; hab-ēna, rein; N. ven-ēnu-m, poison; eg-ēnu-s, needy; ali-ēnu-s, strange.

Note.—This is extended to en-on in toll eno, (well) sweep.

34. -īno, -īna (N. inu-s, etc.), forms primary and secondary substantives and adjectives. Primary: M. cat-īnu-s, -m, dish; F. rap-īna, rapine; ru-īna, ruin; nec-op-īnu-s, unexpected. Secondary: M. pulv-īnu-s, cushion; sal-īnu-m, salt-cellar, and many feminines, especially those denoting shops and factories; rēg-īna, queen; cul-īna, kitchen; offic-īna, workshop; āgn-īnu-s, belonging to a lamb; dīv-īnu-s, divine.

Note.—An extension of this suffix is found in ric-iniu-m, veil.

- 35. -en (N. -en, G. -in-is) forms a few substantives : M. pect-en, comb; N. glüt-en, glue.
- 36. -on (N. ŏ, G. in-is) forms a few substantives: M. card-ō, hinge; marg-ō, rim; ord-ō, row; F. a-sperg-ō, sprinkling; virg-ō, maid; car-ŏ, flesh.

Notes.-1. Noteworthy is hom-o, hom-in-is, man.

- 2. This suffix occurs very commonly in compounds forming feminine abstracts:
- $-\bar{e}d\bar{o}n$  (N. &dō), dulc-ēdō, sweetness;  $-\bar{i}d\bar{o}n$  (N. Idō), cup-Idō, desire; form-Idō, fear;  $-\bar{u}d\bar{o}n$  (N. \bar{u}dō), test-\bar{u}dō, tortoise;  $-t\bar{u}d\bar{o}n$  (N. \bar{u}dō), aegri-t\bar{u}dō, sickness;  $-\bar{u}g\bar{o}n$  (N. \bar{u}gō), im-\bar{u}gō, image;  $-\bar{u}g\bar{o}n$  (N. \bar{u}gō), aer-\bar{u}gō, rust;  $-\bar{i}g\bar{o}n$  (N. \bar{u}gō), cal-\bar{u}gō, thick darkness; or-\bar{u}gō, origin, etc.
- 37.  $-\bar{v}n$  (N.  $\bar{o}$ , G.  $\bar{o}$ nis) forms primary and secondary substantives. The primary are nouns of agency: combib- $\bar{o}$ , fellow-drinker; prace- $\bar{o}$ , herald; ti- $\bar{o}$ , recruit. The secondary indicate often the possession of some bodily or mental peculiarities;  $\bar{a}$ le- $\bar{o}$ , dice-player; centuri- $\bar{o}$ , centurion.
- 38. -iōn (N. iō) forms a few masculine and many feminine primary and secondary substantives. Primary: M. pūg-iō, dagger; F. opin-iō, opinion; reg-iō, region. Secondary: M. pell-iō, furrier; vespertīl-iō, bat; F. com-mūn-iō, communion.

Note.—Especially frequent are feminine abstracts in t-iō (s-iō): amb-i-tiō, ambi-tion; op-pūgnā-tiō, siege. Noteworthy are the secondary diminutives, homune-iō, senec-iō.

- 39. -ōno, -ōne (N. ōnu-s, ōna), forms few primary and many secondary substantives; the masculines indicate agents, especially person employed: M. col-ōnu-s, settler; F. mātr-ōna, matron; Bell-ōna.
- 40. -ōnio, -ōnia (N. ōniu-s, etc.), forms substantives and adjectives: M. Fav-ōniu-s, zephyr; Pomp-ōniu-s, etc.; caup-ōniu-s, belonging to a host. Neuters indicate the trade or shop: full-ōniu-m, fu-ler's-shop.
- 41. -ro, -ra (N. (e)r, -ra, ru-m), forms primary substantives and adjectives: M. ag-e-r, field; cap-e-r, goat; mū-ru-s, wall; F. lau-ru-s, laurel;

ser-ra, saw; N. flag-ru-m, whip; lab-ru-m, lip; clā-ru-s, bright; pū-rus, clean.

Often a short vowel precedes: M. num-e-ru-s, number; F. cam-era, vault; N. iūg-eru-m, measure of land. So hil-aru-s, joyous; līb-er, free; cam-uru-s, vaulted; sat-ur, full.

Notes .- 1. Extensions are Mer-curiu-s, tug-uriu-m, hut.

- 2. In a number of primary substantives and adjectives simple r is preceded by a short vowel: M. late-r, tile; ans-er, goose; F. mul-i-er, woman; N. ac-er, maple; ver (= ves-er), spring; cic-ur, tame.
- 42. -ri (N. -(e)-r, -ris, G. ris) forms substantives and adjectives: M. imb-e-r, rain-storm; āc-e-r, sharp; funeb-ri-s, funeral; perhaps celeb-er, thronged.
  - 43. -āro forms adjectives, as: av-āru-s, greedy; am-āru-s, bitter.
- 44. -āri, -āli (N. āri-s, āli-s, etc.), forms secondary substantives and adjectives; -āri when the stem has l, -āli when it has an r: pugill-ārē-s, tablets; primipil-āri-s, one who has been primipilus; some neuters in ar (from -āre): calc-ar, spur; ex-em-p-l-ar, puttern; pulvīn-ar, (sacred) couch; auxili-āri-s, auxiliary; mīlit āri-s, military; cōnsulāri-s, consular.
- 45. -ārio, -āria (N. āriu s, etc.), forms substantives and adjectives. There are sometimes collateral forms in -āri-s. The substantives, when masculine, indicate artisans; when feminine, business or profession; when neuter, the place where the work is carried on. M. argent-āriu-s, money-changer; ferr-āriu-s, iron-worker; F. argent-āria, silver mine, bank or banking; N. api-āriu-m, beehive; pōm-āriu-m, apple orchard.
- 46. -ēro (N. ēru-s, etc.) forms sev-ērus, earnest, and the substantive gal-ēru-s, -m, bonnet.
- 47. \$\bar{u}ri\$ forms the substantive sec-uri-s, axe, and by extension penuria, want.
- 48. The letter r appears often in combination with other suffixes, as:
  -er-co in lup-ercu-s, Pan; nov-erca, step-mother; -er-to in lac-ertu-s, arm; lac-ertu-s, a lizard; -er-bo in ac-erbu-s, sour; sup-erbu-s, proud; -er-vo in ac-ervo-s, heap; cat-erva, crowd; -er-na in cav-erna, hollow; lu-cerna, lamp; -ter-na in lan-ter-na, lantern; -ur-no in alb-urnu-s, white fish; lab-urnu-m, laburnum.

# 190. FORMATION OF VERBS.

- r. Primitives are confined to the Third Conjugation, to some forms of the Irregular verbs, and to some Inchoatives. The various stemformations are shown in 133.
  - 2. Derivatives comprise the verbs of the First, Second, and Fourth

Conjugations, and some verbs of the Third Conjugation. They are all (except the Inchoatives and the Meditatives) formed with the suffix io, ie (yo, ye), which is added either to simple verbal stems, or to noun (16) stems already existing or presupposed. The i in io, ie, contracts with the preceding vowels  $\bar{a}$ ,  $\bar{b}$ , i, u, leaving the ordinary forms of the regular conjugations. Certain categories of these verbs have obtained special names according to their various meanings:

The Causatives, formed by a change in the stem-vowel.

The Desideratives, formed by the addition of -io to nomina agentis in -tor; afterwards a desiderative force was associated with the combination -tor-io (-tar-io), and it was applied indiscriminately.

The *Frequentatives* come originally probably from participial stems in -to; Latin developed also the suffix -ito; further, this being added again to -to gave rise to -tito (-sito).

The *Inchaatives*, formed by a special suffix, -sco (sko), are treated in conjugation as primitives belonging to the Third Conjugation.

The Meditatives have not been explained.

Note.—Theoretically the Verbālia are all Dēnāmināliva, but owing to the wide working of Analogy, it has been impossible in many cases, as in amā-re, monē-re, to discover an original noun; while in other cases, as the verbal is formed from a part of a denominative verb. it is convenient to retain the division.

# 191. A. Verbālia (derived from verb-stems, 190, N.):

- 1. Frequentatives or Intensives, denoting repeated or intense Action. These verbs end in -tāre (-sāre), -itāre, -titāre (-sitāre), and follow the supine stem (perfect passive form).
- (a) cantāre, sing; compare canō (cantum): cursāre, run to and fro; compare currō (cursum): dictāre, dictate; compare dicō (dictum): dormītāre, be sleepy; compare dormiō (dormītum): habitāre, keep, dwell; compare habeō (habitum): pollicitārī, promise freely; compare polliceor (pollicitus): pulsāre, beat; compare pellō (pulsum).
- (b) agitāre (ago), nōscitāre (nōscō), scīscitāre (scīscō), vīsitāre (vīsō), vocitāre (vocō), volitāre (volō).
  - (c) cantitare (cantare), dictitare (dictare), cursitare (cursare).
- Notes.—1 The simple verb presupposed by the frequentative or intensive is often out of use, as in the case of: gus-tāre, tuste; hor-tārī, enhort. The frequentative or intensive in -tāre is often out of use: āctitāre, repeatedly or zealously agitate (no āctāre), from ago, āctum: lēctitāre, read carefully (no lēctāre), from legō, lēctum.
- 2. The verbs of the Fourth Conjugation form no frequentatives except dormiō, sleep, dormītō; mūniō, fortify, mūnitō (rare); saliō, leap, saltō; apertō, luy bare, and opertō, cover, and compounds of ventō (veniō, come).
- Inchaatives indicate entrance upon an action. For their formation see 133, V.
  - 3. Desideratives denote Desire or Tendency. They are formed

by means of the suffix -turio (-surio): esurire (for ed.t), to be sharp-set for eating, hungry; em-p-turire, to be all agog for buying.

4. **Causatives** signify the *Effecting* of the *Condition* indicated by their original verb. They are found mainly in the Second Conjugation, and show usually a change in the stem-vowel.

Change: cadere, fall, and caedere, fell; liquere, melt (trans.), and liquere, melt (intr.); from root men- (as in me-men-to) comes monere, remind; necare, kill, and nocere, be death to; placere, please, and placere, cause to be pleased, appease; sedere, sit, and sedere, settle.

No change; fugere, flee, and fugure, put to flight; iacere, throw, and iacere, (lie) thrown; pendere (hang) weigh, and pendere, hang (intr.).

5. **Meditatives:** (verbs that look forward to an action). These end in -essere: arcessere, to summon; capessere, to catch at; facessere, to do eagerly; incessere, to enter; lacessere, to irritate (136, 3, b).

# 192. B. Denominatives (derived from noun-stems):

- 1. These are most commonly found in the First Conjugation, even though the stem-vowel of the noun is i or u.
- (a) acervā-re, heap up (from acervo-s); aestuā-re, seethe (aestu-s); corōnā-re, wreathe (corōna); levā-re, lighten (lev-i-s); maculā-re, be-smirch (macula); nōminā-re, name (nōmen, nōmin-is); onerā-re, load (onus, oner-is).

The Deponents signify Condition, Employment: ancillā-rī, be maid (ancilla); aquā-rī, be a drawer of water (aqua); fūrā-rī, thieve (fūr); laetā-rī, be glad (laetu-s).

- (b) albē-re, be white (albu-s); flörē-re, be in bloom (flös, flöris); frondē-re, be in leaf (fröns, frondi-s); lūcē-re, be light (lūx, lūc-is).
- (c) argue-re (be bright, sharp), prove; laede-re, hurt; metue-re, be in fear (metu-s).
- (d) cūstōdī-re, guard (cūstōs, cūstōd-is); fīnī-re, end (fīnī-s); lēnī-re soften (lēnī-s); vestī-re, clothe (vestī-s).
- 3. Noteworthy are the *Diminutives* formed by the suffix -illāre: st-illāre, drop (st-illa); scint-illare, sparkle (scint-illa); ōsc-illāre, to swing (ōsc-illum). Similar in function but of different formation are pullulāre, sprout (pul-lus); fodic-āre, punch (fodere, dig); albicāre, whiten (albu-s).

Notes.—1. The Denominatives of the First, Third, and Fourth Conjugations are regularly transitive, those of the Second Conjugation are regularly intransitive.

2. These verbs are often found only in combination with prepositions: ab-undare, run over, abound (from unda, wave); ac-cūsāre, accuse (from causa, case); ex-aggerāre, pile up (from agger); ex-stirpāre, root out (stirp-s); il-lūmināre, illumine (from lūmen, lūmin-is).

# B.-Compound Words.

## I. FORMATION OF COMPOUND WORDS.

193. I. By composition words are so put together that a new word is made with a signification of its own. The second word is regularly the fundamental word, the first the modifier.

Note.—Properly speaking, composition occurs only in the case of substantives, *i. e.*, where two or more simple stems come together. In verbs, there is either juxtaposition, where the parts still retain their original force, or the combination of a verb with a preposition. Broadly speaking, however, composition applies to all combinations of words.

2. Composition is either proper or improper.

## 194. Substantive.

In Composition Improper there are either traces of construction or the first part is still inflected: ē-nōrmis = ex nōrmā, out of all rule; lēgis-lātor, lawgiver; Senātūs-cōnsultum, decree of the Senate.

Many of these compounds have gradually become inflectional: delirus (de-lira), crazy from fear; egregius (e-grege), distinguished (from the crowd); proconsul (for proconsule); trium-vir (from trium virum), etc.

Note.—From composition we must distinguish juxtaposition. So a preposition is brought into juxtaposition with a substantive, or a substantive with a substantive: ad-modum, to a degree, very; ob-viam, in the way, meeting; ususfructus, usufruct; Iuppiter, Father Jove. Noteworthy are the Copulative compounds; such are compound numerals like un-decim, duo-decim, etc., and occasional others: su-ove-taur-Ilia, offerings of swine, sheep, and bulls.

# 195. Composition Proper.

1. The first part of the compound may be a particle, as ne-fār-iu-s, nefarious; vē-sānu-s, mad, out of one's sound senses: or a substantive.

If it is a substantive-

- (a) The stems in -a, -o, -u regularly weaken these vowels into -i before the consonants of the second part, which i may vanish: causidicus, pleader, lawyer (causa); signi-fer, standard-bearer (signu-m); corni-ger, horn-wearer (cornū); man-ceps (manu- and cap-), one who takes in hand, contractor. The i-stems retain i or drop it: igni-vomu-s, fire-vomiting (igni-s); nau-fragu-s, shipwrecked (nāvi-s).
- (b) Vowel-stems drop their vowel before the vowel of the second part: māgn-animu-s, great-souled; ūn-animu-s, of one mind.
- (c) Consonant-stems either drop their consonants or add i: homicid-a, manslayer (homin-); lapi-cīd-a, stone-cutter (lapid-); mātr-i-cīd-a, mother-murderer, matricide.

Note.—The first part is rarely, if ever, a verb. Apuleius uses the form poscinummius,

2. The second part of the composition is a noun: tri-enn-iu-m, space of three years (annus); miseri-cor-s, tender-hearted (cor).

When the second part ends in a vowel, it adapts itself, if an adjective, to changes of gender, as flavi-comus, yellow-haired (coma, hair), but more often this final vowel becomes i and the adjective follows the third declension: tri-rēmi-s, trireme (rēmu-s, oar); ab-nōrmi-s, abnormal (nōrma, norm).

When the second part ends in a consonant, the last term usually undergoes no change: bi-den-s, two-pronged; simplex (sim-plec-s), simple.

Note.—From genus (G. generis), is formed de-gener.

## II. SIGNIFICATION OF COMPOUNDS.

196. Compound substantives and adjectives are divided according to their signification into two main classes: Determinative and Possessive.

In Determinative compounds one of the terms is subordinate to the other. They fall into two classes: Attributive or Appositional, and Dependent.

197. 1. Attributive compounds. The first part is the attribute of the second.

The first word is, (1) a substantive: **āli-pēs**, wing-foot(ed); (2) an adjective: **māgn-animus**, great-hearted; **lāti-fundium**, large estate; (3) a numeral: **bi-enni-um** (i. e., **spatium**), space of two years.

- 2. Dependent compounds. In these the second word is simply limited by the other, its signification not being altered.
- (a) The first word is: (1) an adjective: meri-diës (from medi-dië = mediō diē), mid-day; (2) an adverb: bene-ficus (well-doing), bene-ficent; male-ficus, evil-doing; (3) a numeral: ter-geminus, triple; (4) a particle: dis-sonus, harsh-sounding; per-māgnus, very large; in-dīgnus, unworthy; (5) a verb-stem: horr-i-ficus, horrible (horror-stirring).
- (b) The first word gives a case relation, such as (1) the Accusative: armi-ger = arma gerēns, armor-bearer; agri-cola = agrum colēns (land-tiller), husbandman; (2) the Genitive: sōl-stitium = sōlis statiō (sun-staying), solstice; (3) the Locative: aliēni-gena (born elsewhere), alien; (4) the Instrumental: tībī-cen = tībīā canēns, flute-player.
- 198. Possessive Compounds are adjectival only, and are so called because they imply the existence of a Subject possessing the quality indicated.

The first term is, (1) a substantive: angui-manus, (having a) snake-hand (elephant): (2) an adjective: flavi-comus, (having) yellow hair; (3) a numeral: bi-frons, (having) two front(s); (4) a particle: dis-cors, discordant; in-ers, inactive.

Note.—Notice that these divisions run into each other; thus magn-animus is possessive, attributive, and dependent.

## 199. Verb.

In Composition Improper the verb is joined to a verb, substantive, or adverb. In Composition Proper the verb is combined with a preposition.

# 200. I. Composition Improper.

- (a) Verb with verb: This only takes place when the second part of the compound is facio or fio (173, N. 2). The first part of the compound is regularly an intransitive of the second conjugation: cale-facio, cale-fio, warm, am warmed.
- (b) Verb with substantive: anim-advertō = animum advertō, take notice; manū-mittō, set free; ūsū-capiō, acquire by use.
- (c) Verb with adverb: bene-dīcō, bless; male-dīcō, curse; mālō, nōlō (for mage (magis) volō, ne- volō), satis-faciō, satisfy.
  - 2. Composition Proper.

The verb combines with separable or inseparable prepositions. Compare 413, R. 3.

- (a) With inseparable prepositions: amb-iō, go about; am-plector, enfold; an-hēlō, draw deep breath, pant; dis-currō, run apart; dir-imō, 160, I, and 715, R.I; por-tendō, hold forth, portend; red-dō, give back; re-solvō, resolve; sē-iungō, separate.
- (b) With separable prepositions: ab eō, go away; ad-eō, come up; ante-currō, run in advance; com-pōnō, put together; dē-currō, run down, finish a course; ex-cēdō, overstep; in-clūdō, shut in; ob-dūcō, draw over; per-agrō, wander through; post-habeō, keep in the background; prae-dīcō, foretell; praeter-eō, pass by; prōd-eō, go forth; prae-videō, foresee; sub-iciō, put under; subter-fugiō, flee from under; super-sum, remain over; trāns-gredior, pass beyond.

# SYNTAX.

201. SYNTAX treats of the formation and combination of sentences.

A sentence is the expression of a thought (sententia) in words.

Sentences are divided into simple and compound.

A simple sentence is one in which the necessary parts occur but once; for the compound sentence see 472.

The necessary parts of the sentence are the subject and the predicate.

The predicate is that which is said of the subject.

The subject is that of which the predicate is said.

Luna fulget, The moon shines.

Luna is the subject; fulget, the predicate.

REMARKS.—I. The Interjection (16, R. 2) and the Vocative case (23, 5) stand outside the structure of the sentence, and therefore do not enter as elements into Syntax, except that the Vocative is subject to the laws of Concord. See R. 3.

2. The Vocative differs from the Nominative in form in the second declension only, and even there the Nominative is sometimes used instead, especially in poetry and solemn prose.

Almae filius Māiae, H., O., I. 2, 43; son of mild Maia! Audī tū, populus Albānus, L., I. 24, 7; hear thou, people of Alba!

ō is prefixed to give emphasis to the address:

Ō förmöse puer, nimium në crëde colori, V., Ec. 2, 17; Oshapely boy! trust not complexion all too much.

The Vocative is commonly interjected in prose, except in highly emotional passages.

3. On the use of the Vocative of an adjective or participle in apposition, attribution, or predication, see 289, 325, R. I.

# SYNTAX OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

202. The most simple form of the sentence is the finite verb: su-m, I am; docē-s, thou teachest; scrībi-t, he writes.

Remark.—Here the form contains in itself all the necessary elements (compare 114), the persons being indicated by the endings. From the expansion and modification of the finite verb arise all the complicated forms of the compound sentence.

203. Subject.—The subject of the finite verb is always in the Nominative Case, or so considered.

REMARKS.—1. The subj. of the Inf. is in the Accusative (343, 2).

2. The use of the Nom. in Latin is the same as in English.

204. The subject may be a substantive or a pronoun, or some other word, phrase, or clause used as a substantive:

Deus mundum gubernat, God steers the universe. Ego rēgēs ēiēcī, [C.] ad Her., IV. 53, 66; I drove out kings. Sapiēns rēs adversās non timet, the sage does not fear adversity. Victī in servitūtem rediguntur, the vanquished are reduced to slavery. Contendisse decorum est, Ov., M., IX. 6; to have struggled is honorable. Māgnum beneficium [est] nātūrae quod necesse est morī, Sen., E.M., 101, 14; it is a great boon of nature, that we must needs die. Vidēs habet duās syllabās, (the word) "vides" has two syllables.

Notes.—1. Masculine and feminine adjectives, and to a less degree participles, are used as substantives, but with the following limitations:

(a) Many adjectives in -ārius and -icus (the latter mostly Greek), designating office or occupation, and words expressing friendship, kinship, or other relationship, are used often as substantives both in the Sing, and the Pl. of the masculine and feminine: aquārius, waterman; librārius, bookman (-seller, writer, etc.): grammaticus, grammarian; amīcus, friend; cōgnātus, kinsman; socius, purtner. Many of these have become almost wholly fixed as substantives, as amīcus, friend. See 16, N. 1.

(b) Adjectives are very often used as substantives in the mase. Pl. when they designate a class: pauperes, the poor; divites, the rich. In the oblique cases of the Sing., this use is also not uncommon; but in the Nom. the substantive is generally expressed: vir bonus, a good man; mulier peregrina, a foreign woman. So regularly, if used with a proper name: Plato, doctissimus homo, the learned Plato. Exceptions are are and scattering in prose: ego et suëvissimus Cicero valemus, C., Fam., xiv. 5, 1.

(c) On the use of participles as substantives see 437, N.

(d) When persons are not meant, a substantive is understood: cani (capilli), gray

hairs; calida (aqua), warm water; dextra (manus), right hand.

2. Neuter adjectives and participles are freely employed as substantives in both numbers; in the Pl. usually in Nom. and Acc., in the Sing. in all cases, but especially in connection with prepositions: medium, the midst; extrēmum, the end; reliquom, the residue; futūrum, the future; bonum, good; bona, biessings, possessions; malum, evil; mala, misfortunes. The Plural is frequently employed when the English idiom prefers the Singular: vēra, the truth; omnia, everything.

3. Adjectives of the Second Declension are sometimes used as neuter substantives in the Gen., after words of quantity or pronouns: aliquid bon1, something good; nihil mal1, nothing bad. Adjectives of the Third Declension are thus employed only in

combination with those of the Second, and even then very rarely (369, R. 1).

Usually the adjective of the Third Declension draws the adjective of the Second

into its own construction: Quid habet ista res aut laetabile aut gloriosum?

4. Instead of the neuter adjective, the word res, thing, is frequently used, especially in forms which are identical for different genders, and consequently ambiguous; so

bonārum rērum, of blessings, rather than bonōrum (masc. and neut.).

5. In Latin the Pl. of abstract substantives occurs more frequently than in English; adventūs imperātōrum, the arrival(s) of the generals (because there were several generals, or because they arrived at different times). Pluralizing abstract substantives often makes them concrete: fortitūdinēs, gallant actions; formīdinēs, bugbears; frae, quarrels.

6. Other Pl. expressions to be noted are: nivēs, snow(flakes); grandinēs, hail (-stones); pluviae, (streams of) rain; līgna, (logs of) wood; carnēs, pieces of meat; aera, articles of bronze; also symmetrical parts of the human body: cervicēs, neck;

pectora, breast.

The Pl. is freely used in poetry and in later prose: Otia si tollas, periere Cupidinis arcus, Ov., Rem. Am., 139; if you do away with holidays, Cupid's bow (and

arrows) are ruined.

7. The rhetorical Roman often uses the First Person Pl. for the First Person Singular. The usage originates in modesty, but mock modesty is the worst form of pomposity. It is never very common, and is not found before CICERO: Librum ad të dë senectüte mīsimus, C., Cat. M., 1, 3; we (I) have sent you a treatise on old age.

In poetry there is often an element of shyness; Sitque memor nostri necne, referte mihi, Ov., Tr., iv. 3, 10; bring me back (word) whether she thinks of us (me

among others) or no.

8. (a) The Sing., in a collective sense, is also used for the Pl., but more rarely: faba, beans; porcus, pig (meat); gallina, fowl (as articles of food); vestis, clothing.

(b) The use of the Sing, in designations of nationalities and divisions of troops is introduced by Livy: Rōmānus, the Roman forces; Poenus, the Carthaginians; hostis, the enemy; mīles, the soldiery; pedes, the infantry; eques, the cavalry.

205. PREDICATE and COPULA.—When the predicate is not in the form of a verb, but in the form of an adjective or substantive, or equivalent, the so-called copula is generally employed, in order to couple the adjective or substantive with the subject.

The chief copula is the verb sum, I am.

Fortuna caeca est, C., Lael., 15, 54; fortune is blind. Usus magister est optimus, C., Rab. Post., 4, 9; practice is the best teacher.

Note.—Strictly speaking, the copula is itself a predicate, as is shown by the translation when it stands alone or with an adverb: est Deus, there is a God, God exists; rēctē semper erunt rēs, things will always be (go on) well; sīc vīta hominum est, C., Rosc. Am., 30, 84; such is human life; "So runs the world away."

206. Other copulative verbs are: vidērī, to seem; nāscī, to be born; fierī, to become; ēvādere, to turn out; creārī, to be created; dēligī, to be chosen; putārī, to be thought; habērī, to be held; dīcī, to be said; appellārī, to be called; nōminārī, to be named. Hence the rule:

Verbs of seeming, becoming, with the passive of verbs of

making, choosing, showing, thinking, and calling, take two Nominatives, one of the subject, one of the predicate:

Nēmō nāscitur dīves, Sen., E.M., 20, 13; no one is born rich. Aristīdēs iūstus adpellātur, Aristīdes is called just. [Servius] rēx est dēclārātus, L., 1. 46, 1; Servius was declared king. [Thūcydidēs] numquam est numerātus ōrātor, C., O., 9, 31; Thucydides has never been accounted an orator.

Remarks.—I. With esse, serve as; videri, seem; haberi, be held; duci, be deemed, and rarely with other verbs, instead of the Predicate Nom., a phrase may be employed, as: pro with Abl., (in) loco, in numero, with Gen., etc.

Audācia prō mūrō habētur, S., C., 58, 17; boldness is counted as a bulwark. In filii loco, C., Red. in Sen., 14, 35; as a son.

- 2. The previous condition is given by ex or do and the Abl. (396, N. 2). Ex orator exator factus, C., Ph., 111. 9, 22; a pleader turned plowman.
- 3. All copulative verbs retain the Nom. with the Inf. after auxiliary verbs (423).

Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmŏ potest, C., N.D., 1. 18, 48; no one can be happy without virtue.

4. On the Double Acc. after Active Verbs, see 340.

Notes.—1. The verbs mentioned, with some others, are found in good prose. Others are either poetical or unclassical, thus: perhibērī, to be held, is early; appārēre, to appear, is poetic and post-classical for vidērī; reddī is not used for fierī; sistī, to be set down, is Plautine; manēre, to remain, is late (permanēre once in Cicero).

2. Noteworthy is the use of audire, like the Greek acover, to be called, which is confined to Horace; rexque paterque audisti, Ep., 1. 7, 38; S., 11. 6, 20, just as "hear" in this sense is said to be confined to Milton.

207. Subject Omitted.—The personal pronoun is not expressed in classical prose, unless it is emphatic, as, for example, in contrasts:

Amāmus parentēs, We love (our) parents. Ego rēgēs ēiēcī, võs tyrannōs intrōdūcitis, [C.] ad Her., 1v. 53, 66; I drove out kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.

Note.—The insertion of the pronoun without emphasis is very common in the comic poets, and seems to have been a colloquialism. Also common in Catullus, Sallust (as an archaism), and Petronius.

- 208. IMPERSONAL VERBS.—Impersonal Verbs are verbs in which the agent is regularly implied in the action, the subject in the predicate, so that the person is not expressed. Chief of these are:
- 1. Verbs pertaining to the state of the weather: tonat, it thunders, the thunder thunders, or rather, the Thunderer thunders; fulget, fulgu-

rat (less common), fulminat (poet.), it lightens; pluit (poet.), it rains; ningit, it snows, etc.

Nocte pluit tôtā, V., (Poet. Lat. Min., iv. 155, B.); all night it (he, Jupiter) rains.

Note.—The divine agent is sometimes expressed; so, naturally, in religious or popular language: Iove tonante, fulgurante, C., Div., II. 18, 43; Iove fulgente, C., N. D., II. 25, 65.

2. The passive of intransitive verbs is often used impersonally; so regularly of verbs which in the active are construed with the Dat. (217): vivitur, people live; curritur, there is a running; pūgnātur, there is a battle; mihi invidētur, I am envied. The subject is contained in the verb itself: sīc vīvitur = sīc vīta vīvitur, such is life; pūgnātur = pūgna pūgnātur, abattle is (being) fought. In the same way explain taedet, it wearies; miseret, it moves to pity; piget, it disgusts; pudet, it puts to shame.

Notes.—1. With all other so-called Impersonal Verbs an Inf. (422,535) or an equivalent (523) is conceived as a subject: Non lubet mihī dēplorāre vītam, C., Cat. M., 23,84. Sed accidit perincommodē quod eum nūsquam vīdistī, C., Att., 1.7.2.

2. Other uses coincide with the English. So the Third Person Pl. of verbs of Saying, Thinking, and Calling. Also the ideal Second Person Singular (258). To be noticed is the occasional use of inquit, quoth he, of an imaginary person, but not by Caesar, Sallust, or Tacitus: Non concedo, inquit, Epicuro, C., Ac., II. 32, 101; I do not yield the point, quoth he (one), to Epicurus.

209. COPULA OMITTED.—Est or sunt is often omitted in saws and proverbs, in short statements and questions, in rapid changes, in conditional clauses, and in tenses compounded with participles:

Summum iūs summa iniūria, C., Off., I. 10, 33; the height of right (is) the height of wrong. Nēmo malus fēlīx, Juv., Iv. 8; no bad man (is) happy. Quid duleius quam habēre quīcum omnia audeās loquī? C., Lael., 7, 22; what sweeter than to have some one with whom you can venture to talk about everything? Sed haec vetera; illud vērō recēns, C., Ph., II. II., 25. Aliquamdiū certātum, S., Iug., 74, 3. Cūr hostis Spartacus, sī tū cīvis? C., Parad., 4, 30.

So also esse, with participles and the like:

Caesar statuit exspectandam classem, Caes., B.G., III. 14, 1; Caesar resolved that the fleet must be waited for.

Notes. - 1. The omission of esse is not common with the Nom. and Infinitive.

2. Popular speech omits freely; so, mīrum nī, mīrum quīn, factum, in Latin comedy; likewise potis and pote for forms of posse. To a like origin are due mīrum quantum, nimium quantum, etc., found at all periods.

3. The cllipsis of other forms of the copula is unusual. Thus Cicero occasionally omits sit in the Indirect Question, and Tacitus other forms of the Subjv. besides.

Fuisse is omitted by LIVY, and not unfrequently by TACITUS.

4. The Ellipsis of esse was sometimes due to the desire of avoiding the heaping up

of Infinitives. Thus sentences like non dubito to esse sapientem dicere (to declare you to be wise) were regularly cut down to non dubito to sapientem dicere (to declare you wise).

5. The ellipsis of other verbs, such as facere, ire, venire, dicere, etc., is characteristic of popular speech; it is therefore not uncommon in Cicero's letters (ad Att.), in Pliny's letters, and in works involving dialogue, such as Cicero's philosophical writings. The historians avoid it, and it never occurs in Caesar and Velletus.

#### CONCORD.

- 210. THE THREE CONCORDS.—There are three great concords in Latin:
  - I. The agreement of the predicate with the subject (211).
- 2. The agreement of attributive or appositive with the substantive (285, 321).
  - 3. The agreement of the relative with antecedent (614).

# 211, Agreement of the Predicate with the Subject.

The verbal predicate agrees with its subject { in number and person.

The adjective predicate agrees with its subject { in number, gender, and case.

The substantive predicate agrees with its subject in case.

Substantīva mobilia (21, 2) are treated as adjectives, and follow the number and gender of the subject.

Ego rēgēs ēiēcī, võs tyrannōs intrōdūcitis, [C.] ad Her., Iv. 53, 66 (207). Vērae amicitiae sempiternae sunt, C., Lael., 9, 32; true friendships are abiding. Dōs est decem talenta, Ter., And., 950; the dowry is ten talents. Ūsus magister est optimus, C., Rab. Post., 4, 9 (205). Arx est monosyllabum, "Arx" is a monosyllable. Compare Īgnis cōnfector est et cōnsūmptor omnium, C., N.D., II. 15, 41; fire is the doer-up (destroyer) and eater-up (consumer) of everything, with cōnfectrix rērum omnium vetustēs, C., Frag.

Remarks.—1. The violation of the rules of agreement is due chiefly to one of two causes; either the natural relation is preferred to the artificial (construction ad sensum, per synesin, according to the sense), or the nearer is preferred to the more remote. Hence the following

EXCEPTIONS.—(a) Substantives of multitude often take the predicate in the Plural: pars, part; vis (power), quantity; multitudo, crowd; organized bodies more rarely. Also, but not often, such words as quisque, uterque, nēmo, etc.

Pars mālor recēperant sēsē, I., XXXIV. 47, 6; the greater part had retired. Omnis multitūdō abeunt, I., XXIV. 3, 15; all the crowd depart.

Māgna vis ēminus missa tēlōrum multa nostrīs vulnera inferēbant, CAES., B.C., II. 6, 5. Uterque cōrum ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcunt, CAES., B.C., III. 30, 3.

Note.—This usage is very common in comedy, but extremely rare in model prose. Livy shows a greater variety and a larger number of substantives than any other author, and poets and late prose writers are free. Yet Horace uses regularly the Sing, with a collective, while Verbell varies, often employing first a Sing, and then a Pl. verb with the same substantive (as A., 11. 64). Tactrus often uses quisque with a Plural.

(b) The adjective predicate often follows the natural gender of the subject; so especially with milia. This usage belongs pre-eminently to the historians.

Capita coniūrātionis virgīs caesī (sunt), L., x. 1, 3; the heads of the conspiracy were flogged. Samnītium caesī tria mīlia, Cf. L., x. 34, 3; of the Samnītes (there) were slain three thousand.

The passive verb often agrees in gender with the predicate: Non omnis error stultitia dicenda est, C., Div., 11. 43, 90; not every fulse step is to be called folly.

(c) The copula often agrees with the number of the predicate ("the wages of sin is death"):

Amantium irae (204, N. 5) amõris integrātiō est, Ter., And., 555; lovers' quarrels are love's renewal.

2. A superlative adjective defined by a Partitive Gen. follows the gender of the subj. when it precedes:

Indus, qui est omnium fluminum māximus, C., N.D., 11. 52, 130; the Indus, which is the greatest of all rivers.

Otherwise it follows the Genitive; but this usage is post-classic:

Vēlocissimum omnium animālium est delphīnus, Plin., N. H., ix. 8, 20; the dolphin is the swiftest of all animals.

3. The Voc. is sometimes used by the poets in the predicate, either by anticipation or by assimilation. (See 325, R. 1.)

4. The neuter adjective is often used as the substantive predicate of a masculine or feminine subject:

Triste lupus stabulis, V., Ec., 3, 80; the wolf is a baleful thing to the folds. Varium et mūtābile semper fēmina, V., A., IV. 569; "a thing of moods and fancies" is woman ever.

This construction is poetical; in Cicero it is used with a few words only; such as extrēmum, commune:

Omaium rērum (204, N. 4) mors [est] extrēmum, Cf. C., Fam., VI. 21, 1; death is the end of all things.

5. The demonstrative pronoun is commonly attracted into the gender of the predicate:

Negat Epicurus; hōc enim vostrum lümen est, C., Fin., 11. 22, 70; Epicurus says No; for he is your great light. Ea nōn media sed nūlla via est, L., xxxII., 21, 33; that is not a middle course, but no course at all.

But in negative sentences, and when the pronoun is the predicate, there is no change. So in definitions:

Quid aut quāle [est] Deus ? Cf. C., N.D., 1. 22, 60; what or what manner of thing is God? Nec sopor illud erat, V., A., III. 173. Quod ita erit gestum, id lēx erit, C., Ph., I. 10, 26.

Exceptions are but apparent. C., O., II. 38, 157.

6. The adjective predicate sometimes agrees with a substantive in apposition to the subject. So especially when the appositive is oppidum, civitās, and the like:

Corioli oppidum captum [est], L., 11. 33, 9; Corioli-town was taken. Corinthum, tōtīus Graeciae lūmen, exstinctum esse voluērunt, C., Imp., 5, 11; they would have Corinth, the eye of all Greece, put out.

Notes.—1. Peculiar is the occasional use of the Fut. participle in -ūrum for feminines in early Latin: Alterō (gladiō) tē occisūrum ait (Casina), alterō vīlicum. Pl., Cas., 693. So Truc., 400

2. Age is often used in early Latin as if it were an adverb, with the Plural; occa-

sionally also cave: Age modo fabricamini. PL., Cas., 488.

Akin is the use of a Voc. Sing. with a Pl. verb, which is occasionally found in classical prose also: Tum Scaevola; quid est, Cotta? inquit, quid tacētis? C., O., 1. 35, 160.

The use of aliquis, some one of you, in this way is early : Aperite aliquis actutum

östium, TER., Ad., 634.

3. Other less usual constructions ad sēnsum are: the use of a neuter demonstrative where a substantive of a different gender is expected, and the construction of rēs as if it were neuter (both found also in Cicero); the neuter Singular summing up a preceding Plural:

In Graeciā mūsicī floruērunt, dīscēbantque id (that [accomplishment]) omnēs, C., Tusc., 1. 2, 4. Servitia repudiābat, cūius (of which [class]) initiō ad eum māgnae cōpiae concurrēbant, S., C., 56, 5. See also C., Div., 11. 57, 117.

# Forms of the Verbal Predicate.

212. There are two Voices in Latin—Active and Passive.

REMARK.—The Latin Passive corresponds to the Greek Middle, and, like the Greek Middle, may be explained in many of its uses as a Reflexive.

213. Active.—The Active Voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject. Verbs used in the Active Voice fall into two classes, as follows:

Verbs are called *Transitive* when their action *goes over* to an object (trānseō, *I go over*); *Intransitive* when their action *does not go beyond* the subject: occidere, to fell = to kill (Transitive); occidere, to fall (Intransitive).

REMARK.—Properly speaking, a Transitive Verb in Latin is one that forms a personal passive, but the traditional division given above has its convenience, though it does not rest upon a difference of nature, and a verb may be trans. or intrans. according to its use. So

(a) Transitive verbs are often used intransitively, in which case they serve simply to characterize the agent. This is true especially of verbs of movement; as deelinare, inclinare, movere, mutare, vertere, and the like, and is found at all periods.

(b) On the other hand, many intrans. verbs are often used transitively. This occurs also at all periods, but the Acc. is usually the *inner* object (332).

(c) On the use of the Inf. active, where English uses the passive, see 532, N. 2.

214. Passive.—The Passive Voice denotes that the subject receives the action of the verb.

The instrument is put in the Ablative.

Virgīs caedētur, C., Verr., III. 28, 69; he shall be beaten with rods. [Īgnis] lūmine proditur suo, Ov., Her., 15, 8; the fire is betrayed by its own light.

The agent is put in the Ablative with ab (ā).

Ab amīcīs prodimur, C., Cluent., 52, 143; we are betrayed by friends. Virgīs caesī tribūnī ab lēgāto sunt, L., XXIX. 18, 13; the tribunes were beaten with rods by the lieutenant.

Remarks.—1. Intrans. verbs of passive signification are construed as passives: fame perire, C., Inv., II. 57, 172, to perish of hunger. So vēnīre, to be sold; vāpulāre (chiefly vulgar), to be beaten, ab aliquō, by some one.

Ab reō fūstibus [vāpulāvit], Cf. QUINT., IX. 2, 12; he was whacked with cudgels by the defendant. Salvēbis ā meō Cicerōne, C., Att., vi. 2, 10; greeting to you from Cicero.

2. When the instrument is considered as an agent, or the agent as an instrument, the constructions are reversed:

Vinci ā Voluptāte, C., Off., I. 20, 68; to be overcome by Dame Pleasure. Patricis invenibus saepserant latera, L., III. 37, 6; they had flanked him with a guard of patrician youths.

The latter construction is very rare in Cicero, and seems to belong pre-eminently to the historians.

Animals, as independent agents, are treated like persons.

Ā cane non māgno saepe tenētur aper, Ov., Rem.Am., 422; a boar is often held fast by a little dog.

Animals, as instruments, are treated like things.

Compare equo vehi, to ride a horse (to be borne by a horse), with in equo, on horseback.

- 215. The person in whose interest an action is done is put in the Dative. Hence the frequent inference that the person interested is the agent. See 354.
- 1. With the Perfect passive it is the *natural* inference, and common in prose.

Mihř rēs tota provisa est, C., Verr., 1v. 42, 91; I have had the whole thing provided for. Carmina nulla mihī sunt scripta, Ov., Tr., v. 12, 35; poems—I have none written (I have written no poems).

2. With the Gerundive it is the *necessary* inference, and the Dative is the reigning combination.

Nihil [est] homini tam timendum quam invidia, C., Chuent., 3, 7; there is nothing that one has to fear to the same extent as envy.

216. The Direct Object of the Active Verb (the Accusative Case) becomes the Subject of the Passive.

Alexander Dārēum vīcit, Alexander conquered Darius.

Dārēus ab Alexandro victus est, Darius was conquered by Alexander.

217. The Indirect Object of the Active Verb (Dative Case) cannot be properly used as the Subject of the Passive. The Dative remains unchanged, and the verb becomes a Passive in the Third Person Singular (Impersonal Verb). This Passive form may have a neuter subject corresponding to the Inner object (333, 1).

Active: Miseri invident bonis, The wretched envy the well-to-do.

Passive: mihǐ invidētur, I am envied,
tibǐ invidētur, thou art envied,
eI invidētur, he is envied,
nōbīs invidētur, we are envied,
vōbīs invidētur, you are envied,
iīs invidētur, they are envied,

ab aliquo, by some one.

Nihil facile persuādētur invītīs, QUINT., IV. 3, 10; people are not easily persuaded of anything against their will. Anulis nostrīs plūs quam animis crēditur, Sen., Ben., III. 15, 3; our seals are more trusted than our souls.

REMARKS.—1. In like manner a Gen. or Abl. in dependence upon an active verb cannot be made the subj. of the passive.

2. On the exceptional usage of personal Gerundives from intrans. verbs see 427, N. 5.

Notes.—1. The poets and later prose writers sometimes violate the rule, under Greek influence or in imitation of early usage: Cūr invideor? (for cūr invidētur mihi?), H., A.P., 56; vix equidem crēdar, Ov., Tr., 111. 10, 35; persuāsus vidētur

esse, [C.] ad Her., 1.6, 9. (Persuadeo hospitem, Petr., 62, 2, is perhaps an intentional solecism.)

2. Similar liberties are taken by poets and late prose writers with the passive of other intrans. verbs, such as concēdere, permittere, praecipere, pronuntiāre: Fātīs numquam concēssa (= cuī concēssum est) movērī Camarīna, V., A., III. 700.

218. Reflexive.—Reflexive relations, when emphatic, are expressed as in English:

Omne animal sē ipsum dīligit, C., Fin., v. 9, 24, Every living creature loves itself.

But when the reflexive relation is more general, the passive (middle) is employed: **lavor**, *I bathe*, *I bathe myself*.

Pürgäri [nequivērunt], Cf. L., XXIV. 18, 4; they could not clear themselves. Cum in mentem vēnit, pōnor ad scribendum, C., Fam., IX. 15, 4; when the notion strikes me I set myself to writing.

Note.—Some of these verbs approach the deponents, in that the reflexive meaning of the passive extends also to some active forms; thus, from vehor, Iride, we get the form vehēns, riding (rare): Adulēscentiam per mediās laudēs quasi quadrīgis vehentem, C., Br., 97, 331.

219. As the active is often used to express what the subject suffers or causes to be done, so the passive in its reflexive (middle) sense is often used to express an action which the subject suffers or causes to be done to itself: trahor, I let myself be dragged; tondeor, I have myself shaved.

Duōs Mỹsōs [insuist] in cüleum, Cf. C., Q.F., 1.2, 2, 5; you sewed two Mysians into a sack (had them sewn). Sine gemitü adüruntur, C., Tusc., v. 27, 77; they let themselves be burned without a moan. Diruit, aedificat, H., Ep., 1. 1, 100; he is pulling down, he is building. Ipse docet quid agam; fās est et ab hoste docērī, Ov., M., Iv. 428; he himself teaches (me) what to do; it is (but) right to let oneself be taught even by an enemy (to take a lesson from a foe).

**220.** Deponent.—The Deponent is a passive form which has lost, in most instances, its passive (or reflexive) signification. It is commonly translated as a transitive or intransitive active: **hortor**, *I* am exhorting (trans.); **morior**, *I* am dying (intrans.).

Notes.—1. A number of intrans, verbs show also a Perfect Part, passive used actively; not, however, in classical prose combined with esse to take the place of the regular Perfect. On the use of such participles as substantives, see 167, N. I.

Quid causae excōgitārī potest, cur tē lautum voluerit, cēnātum nōluerit occīdere ? C., Dei., 7, 20.

2. Many verbs show both active and deponent forms side by side. In this case the active forms belong more often to early authors. See 163-167.

221. RECIPROCAL.—Reciprocal relations ("one another") are expressed by inter, among, and the personal pronouns, nos, us; vos, you; se, themselves.

Inter se amant, C., Q. F., III. 3, 1; They love one another.

Remarks.—1. Combinations of alter alterum, alius alium, uterque alterum, and the like, also often give the reciprocal relation: sometimes there is a redundancy of expression.

Placet Stōicīs hominēs hominum causā esse generātōs, ut ipsī inter sē aliī aliīs prōdesse possent, C., Off., I. 7, 22; it is a tenet of the Stoics that men are brought into the world for the sake of men, to be a blessing to one another.

 Later writers use invicem or mūtuō, inter sē, vicissim; and early Latin shows occasionally uterque utrumque.

Quae omnia hūc spectant, ut invicem ārdentius dīligāmus, PLIN., Ep., VII. 20, 7; all these things look to our loving one another more fervently. Uterque utrīquest cordī, Ter., Ph., 800; either is dear to other.

## TENSES.

222. The Tenses express the relations of time, embracing:

- 1. The stage of the action (duration in time).
- 2. The period of the action (position in time).

The first tells whether the action is *going on*, or *finished*. The second tells whether the action is *past*, *present*, or *future*.

Both these sets of relations are expressed by the tenses of the Indicative or Declarative mood—less clearly by the Subjunctive.

223. There are six tenses in Latin:

- 1. The Present, denoting continuance in the present.
- 2. The Future, denoting continuance in the future.
- 3. The Imperfect, denoting continuance in the past.
- 4. The Perfect, denoting completion in the present.
- 5. The Future Perfect, denoting completion in the future.
- 6. The Pluperfect, denoting completion in the past.

224. An action may further be regarded simply as attained, without reference to its continuance or completion. Continuance and completion require a point of reference for definition; attainment does not. This gives rise to the acristic or indefinite stage of the action, which has no especial tense-

form. It is expressed by the Present tense for the present; by the Future and Future Perfect tenses for the future; and by the Perfect tense for the past.

Of especial importance are the *Indefinite* or *Historical* Present and the *Indefinite* or *Historical* Perfect (Aorist), which differ materially in syntax from the *Definite* or *Pure* Present and Perfect.

225. The Tenses are divided into *Principal* and *Historical*. The *Principal Tenses* have to do with the Present and Future. The *Historical Tenses* have to do with the Past.

The Present, Pure Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect are *Principal Tenses*.

The Historical Present, Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Historical Perfect are *Historical Tenses*.

The Historical Tenses are well embodied in the following distich:

Tālia tentābat, sīc et tentāverat ante,

Vixque dedit victās ūtilitāte manūs. Ov., Tr., 1. 3, 87.

# 226. Table of Temporal Relations. INDICATIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE.

Continuance. Completion. Attainment. Pres. scribo. scripsi. scrībō. I am writing. I have written. I write. scrībam, scripsero, scribam (scripsero), Fur. I shall be writing. I shall have written. I shall write. Past. scríbēbam, scripseram, scripsi, I was writing. I had written. I wrote.

PASSIVE.

Continuance. Completion. Attainment. PRES. scribitur (epistula), scripta est, scrībitur. The letter is written has been written. is written. is written. (writing). scrībētur. scripta erit. scrībētur, FUT. The letter will be will have been, will be written.

written(writing). will be written.

Past. scribēbātur, scripta erat, s

The letter was writ- had been written,
ten (writing). was written.

scripta est,
was written.

Remark.—The English passive is ambiguous. The same form is currently used for continuance, attainment, and completion. The context alone can decide. A convenient test is the substitution of the active.

A letter was written: Continuance, Some one was writing a letter.

Completion, Some one had written a letter.

Attainment, Some one wrote a letter.

## Present Tense.

**227.** The Present Tense is used as in English of that which is going on now (Specific Present), and of statements that apply to all time (Universal Present).

Specific Present:

Auribus teneo lupum, Ter., Ph., 506; I am holding a wolf by the ears.

Universal Present:

Probitās laudātur et alget, Juv., I. 74; honesty is bepraised and freezes. Dulce et decorum est pro patriā morī, H., O., III. 2, 13; sweet and seemly 'tis to die for fatherland.

So regularly of the quoted views of authors, the inscriptions of books, etc.:

De iuvenum amore scribit Alcaeus, C., Tusc., IV. 33, 71; Alcaeus writes concerning the love of youths.

Notes.—1. The Specific Pr. is often to be translated by the English Progressive Present. The Universal Pr. is Acristic, true at any point of time.

2. As continuance involves the notion of incompleteness the Pr. (see 233) is used of attempted and intended action (Present of Endeavor). But on account of the double use of the Pr. this signification is less prominent and less important than in the Impf. Do not mistake the Endeavor which lies in the verb for the Endeavor which lies in the tense.

Periculum vitant, C., Rosc. Am., 1.1; they are trying to avoid danger. In the example sometimes cited: Quintus frater Tüsculanum vēnditat, C., Att., 1.14, 7; Brother Quintus is "trying to sell" his Tusculan villa; vēnditāre itself means to effer for sale. Translate: intends to offer for sale, if the notion lies in the Tense.

3. The Pr. when used with a negative often denotes Resistance to Pressure (233); this is, however, colloquial: Tacë: non taceo Pl., Cas., 826; keep quiet! I won't.

4. The ambiguity of our English passive often suggests other translations. Use and Wont make Law; hence the frequent inference that what is done is what ought to be done; what is not done is not to be done: (Deus) nec bene promeritis capitur, nec tangitur frā, Luch., II. 651; God is not to be inveigled by good service, nor touched by anger.

228. The Present Tense is used more rarely than in English in anticipation of the future, chiefly in compound sentences:

SI vincimus, omnia tüta erunt, S., C., 58, 9; if we conquer (= shall conquer) everything will be safe. Antequam ad sententiam redeō dō mō pauca dicam, C., Cat., IV. 10, 20; before I return to the subject, I will

say a few things of myself. Exspectabo dum venit, Ter., Eun., 206; I will wait all the time that he is coming, or, until he comes.

Notes.—1. This construction is archaic and familiar. It is very common in the Comic Poets, very rare in Cicero and Caesar, but more common later. Some usages have become phraseological, as sī vīvō, if I live, as I live.

2. On the Pr. Indic. for the Deliberative Subjv., see 254, N. 2.

229. The Present Tense is used far more frequently than in English, as a lively representation of the past (Historical Present):

Cohortis incedere inbet, S., C., 60, 1; he orders the cohorts to advance. Maturat proficisci, Caes., B. G., 1. 7, 1; he hastens to depart.

REMARK.—**Dum**, while (yet), commonly takes a Pr., which is usually referred to this head. **Dum**, so long as, follows the ordinary law, 571, ff.

Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est, Caes, B.G., 1. 46, 1; while these things were transacting in the conference, word was brought to Caesar.

230. The Present is used in Latin of actions that are continued into the present, especially with iam, now; iam diū, now for a long time; iam pridem, now long since. In English we often translate by a Progressive Perfect.

(Mithridātēs) annum iam tertium et vīcēsimum rēgnat, C., Imp., 3, 7; Mithridates has been reigning now going on twenty-three years. Liberāre vēs ā Philippē iam diū magis vultis quam audētis, L., XXXII. 21, 36; you have this long time had the wish rather than (= though not) the courage to deliver yourselves from Philip.

"How does your honor for this many a day?" SHAK., Ham., III. 1, 91.

Notes.-1. The Pr. sometimes gives the resulting condition:

Qui mortem non timet, magnum is sibi praesidium ad beatam vitam comparat, C., Tusc., II. 1, 2; he who fears not death gets for himself great warrant for a happy life. (Dicunt) vincere (= victorem esse) bello Romanum, L., II. 7, 2.

2. More free is this usage in the poets, sometimes under Greek influence:

Auctore Phoebo gignor ( $\gamma i \gamma \nu o \mu a \iota = \gamma o \nu o s \epsilon i \mu \iota$ ); haud generis pudet. Sen., Ag., 295.

VERGIL is especially prone to use a Pr. after a Past, denoting by the Past the cause, by the Pr. the effect: Postquam altum tenuere rates nec iam amplius üllae adparent terrae, A., III. 192.

# Imperfect Tense.

231. The Imperfect Tense denotes continuance in the past: pūgnābam, I was fighting.

The Imperfect is employed to represent manners, customs, situations; to describe and to particularize. A good example is Ter., And., 74 ff.

158

The Imperfect and the Historical Perfect serve to illustrate one another. The Imperfect dwells on the process; the Historical Perfect states the result. The Imperfect counts out the items; the Historical Perfect gives the sum. A good example is NEP., II. 1, 3.

232. The two tenses are often so combined that the general statement is given by the Historical Perfect, the particulars of the action by the Imperfect:

(Verrēs) in forum vēnit; ārdēbant oculī; tötō ex ōre crūdēlitās ēminēbat, C., Verr., v. 62, 161; Verres came into the forum, his eyes were blazing, cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.

233. The Imperfect is used of attempted and interrupted, intended and expected actions (Imperfect of Endeavor). It is the Tense of Disappointment and (with the negative) of Resistance to Pressure. (Mere negation is regularly Perfect.)

Cūriam relinquēbat, Tac., Ann., 11. 34, 1; he was for leaving the senate-house. [Lēx] abrogābātur, Cf. L., xxxiv. 1, 7; the law was to be abrogated. Simul ostendēbātur (an attempt was made to show) quēmodo cōnstitūtionem reperīrī oportēret, [C.] ad Her., 11. 1, 2. Dīcēbat (positive) melius quam scrīpsit (negative) Hortēnsius, C., Or., 38, 132; Hortensius spoke better than he wrote. Aditum non dabat, Nep., Iv. 3, 3; he would not grant access (dedit, DID not). See also Mart., XI. 105.

Notes.—1. The Impf. as the Tense of Evolution is a Tense of Vision. But in English, Impf. and Hist. Pf. coincide; hence the various translations to put the reader in the place of the spectator.

2. The continuance is in the mind of the narrator; it has nothing to do with the absolute duration of the action. The mind may dwell on a rapid action or hurry over a slow one. With definite numbers, however large, the Hist. Pf. must be used, unless there is a notion of continuance into another stage (overlapping).

(Gorgias) centum et novem vixit annös, Quint., III. 1, 9; Gorgius lived one hundred and nine years. Biennium ibi perpetuom misera illum tuli, Ter., Hec., 87; I bore hum there—poor me!—for two long years together.

3. As the Teuse of Disappointment, the Impf. is occasionally used, as in Greek, to express a startling appreciation of the real state of things (Imperfect of Awakening). Greek influence is not unlikely.

Tū aderās, Ten., Ph., 858; (so it turns out that) you were here (all the time). Peream male sI non optimum erat, H., S., H. 1, 6; perdition catch me if that was not the best course (after all).

Hence the modal use of debebam and poteram (254, R. 2).

234. The Imperfect is used as the English Pluperfect, which often takes a progressive translation; especially with iam, iam did, iam dudum.

Iam düdum tibi adversābar, Pl., Men., 420; I had long been opposing you. (Archiās) domicilium Romae multos iam annos [habēbat], Cf. C., Arch., 4, 7; Archias had been domiciled at Rome now these many years.

Remark.—As the Hist. Pr. is used in lively narrative, so the Hist. Inf. is used in lively description, parallel with the Imperfect (647).

## Perfect Tense.

The Perfect Tense has two distinct uses:

1. Pure Perfect.

2. Historical Perfect (Aorist).

## 1. PURE PERFECT.

235. The Pure Perfect Tense expresses completion in the Present, and hence is sometimes called the Present Perfect.

- 1. The Pure Perfect differs from the Historical Perfect, in that the Pure Perfect gives from the point of view of the Present an instantaneous view of the development of an action from its origin in the Past to its completion in the Present, that is, it looks at both ends of an action, and the time between is regarded as a Present. The Historical Perfect obliterates the intervening time and contracts beginning and end into one point in the Past.
- 2. An intermediate usage is that in which the Perfect denotes an action in the Past (Historical), whose effect is still in force (Pure).

236. Accordingly, the Perfect is used:

1. Of an action that is now over and gone.

Viximus, C., Fam., XIV. 4, 5; we have lived (life for us has been). Filium ünicum habeō, Immo habuī, Ter., Heaut., 94; I have an only son—nay, have had an only son. Tempora quid faciunt: hanc volo, tō voluī, Mart., VI. 40, 4; what difference times make! (Time is) I want Her., (Time has been) I wanted you.

2. Far more frequently of the present result of a more remote action (resulting condition):

Equum et mülum Brundisii tibǐ reliqui, C., Fam., xvi. 9, 3; I have left a horse and mule for you at Brundusium—(they are still there). Perdidī spem quā mē oblectābam, Pl., Rud., 222; I've lost the hope with which I entertained myself. Āctumst, perīstī, Ter., Eun., 54; it is all over; you're undone.

Remark.—The Pure Pf. is often translated by the English Present: novi, I have become acquainted with, I know; memini, I have recalled, I remember; odi, I have conceived a hatred of, I hate; consuovi, I have made it a rule, I am accustomed, etc.

Öderunt hilarem trīstēs trīstemque iocosī, H., Ep., 1. 18, 89; the long-faced hate the lively man, the jokers hate the long-faced man.

But the Aorist force is sometimes found:

Tace, inquit, ante hoc novi quam tu natus es, Phaed., v. 9, 4; silence, quoth he, I knew this ere that you were born.

Note.—The Pf. is used of that which has been and shall be (Sententious or Gnomic Perfect, 242, N. 1), but usually in poetry, from Catullus on, and frequently with an indefinite adjective or adverb of number or a negative. It is seldom an Aorist (Greek).

Evertere domos totas optantibus ipsis di faciles, Juv., x. 7; whole houses at the masters' own request the (too) compliant gods o'erturn. Nemo repente fuit turpissimus, Juv., II. 83; none of a sudden (hath ever) reach(ed) the depth of baseness.

237. As the Present stands for the Future, so the Perfect stands for the Future Perfect.

(Brūtus) sī conservātus erit, vicimus, C., Fam., XII. 6, 2; Brutus!—if HE is saved, we are victorious, we (shall) have gained the victory.

238. Habeō or teneō, I hold, I have, with the Accusative of the Perfect Participle Passive, is not a mere circumlocution for the Perfect, but lays peculiar stress on the maintenance of the result.

Habeō statūtum, Cf. C., Verr., 111. 41, 95; I have resolved, and hold to my resolution. Perspectum habeō, Cf. C., Fam., 111. 10, 7; I have perceived, and I have full insight. Excūsātum habeās mē rogo, cēno domī, Mart., 11. 79, 2; I pray you have me excused, I dine at home.

## 2. HISTORICAL PERFECT.

239. The Historical or Indefinite Perfect (Aorist) states a past action, without reference to its duration, simply as a thing attained.

Milō domum vēnit, calceōs et vestīmenta mūtāvit, paulisper commorātus est, C., Mil., 10, 28; Milo came home, changed shoes and garments, tarried a little while. (Gorgiās) centum et novem vīxit annōs, Quint., 111. 1, 9 (233, N. 2). Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī, Suet., Iul., 37; I came, saw, overcame.

Note.—The Pf., as the "short hand" for the Plupf., is mainly post-Ciceronian, but begins with Caesar. It is never common: superioribus diebus nona Caesaris legio castra eo loco posuit, Caes., B.C., III. 66, 2.

240. The Historical Perfect is the great narrative tense of the Latin language, and is best studied in long connected passages, and by careful comparison with the Imperfect. See C., Off., III. 27, 100; Tusc., I. 2, 4.

# Pluperfect Tense.

- 241. The Pluperfect denotes Completion in the Past, and is used of an action that was completed before another was begun. It is, so to speak, the Perfect of the Imperfect. Hence it is used:
  - 1. Of an action just concluded in the past.

Modo Caesarem regnantem viderāmus, C., Ph., II. 42, 108; we had just seen Caesar on the throne.

2. Of an action that was over and gone.

Fuerat inimicus, C., Red. in Sen., 10, 26; he had been my enemy.

3. Of a resulting condition in the past.

Massiliënsës portës Caesari clauserant, Caesa, B.C., 1. 34, 4; the Marseillese had shut their gates against Caesar. (Their gates were shut.)

REMARK.—When the Pf. of Resulting Condition is translated by an English Pr. (236, 2, R.), the Plupf. is translated by an English Imperfect: noveram, I had become acquainted with, I knew; memineram, I remembered; oderam, I hated; consubveram, I was accustomed, etc.

Notes.—1. Not unfrequently in early Latin, rarely in classical prose, but more often in the poets, the Plupf. seems to be used as an Aorist; so very often dixerat:

Nil equidem tibĭ abstulī. EV. At illud quod tibĭ abstulerās cedo, Pl., Aul., 635. Non sum ego quī fueram, Prop., I. 12, 11. See Ov., Tr., III. II, 25.

The Periphrastic Plupf. with habeō corresponds to the Perfect (238). It is rare, and shows two forms, one with the Imperfect and one with the Plupf., the latter

being post-classical.

Equitātum, quem ex omnī provinciā coāctum habēbat, praemittit, Caes., B.G., 1. 15, 1. Multorum aurēs illa lingua attonitās habuerat, Val. M., III. 3.

## Future Tense.

242. The Future Tense denotes Continuance in the Future: scribam, I shall be writing.

The Future Tense is also used to express indefinite action in the Future: scribam, I shall write.

Remarks.—1. In subordinate clauses the Latin language is more exact than the English in the expression of future relations.

Donec eris fēlix, multos numerābis amicos, Ov., Tr., I. 9, 5; so long as you shall be (are) happy, you will count many friends.

2. Observe especially the verbs volō, I will, and possum, I can.

Ödero sī poterō; si nōn, invītus amābō, Ov., Am., III. II, 35; I will hate if I shall be able (can); if not, I shall love against my will. Qui

adipisci vēram gloriam volet, iūstitiae fungātur officiis, C., Off., II. 13, 43; whoso shall wish to obtain true glory, let him discharge the calls of justice.

3. The Fut. is often used in conclusions, especially in CICERO:

Sunt illa sapientis; aberit igitur ā sapiente aegritūdō, C., Tusc., III. 8, 18.

Notes.-1. The Fut. is used sometimes as a gnomic (236, N.) tense:

Haut facul fēmina inveniētur bona, Afr., 7; unneth (= hardly) a woman shall be found that's good. Et tremet sapiēns et dolēbit, et expallēscet, Sen., E.M., 71, 29.

2. Observe the (principally comic) use of the Future to indicate likelihood:

Verbum hercle hoc verum erit, Ter., Eun., 732; this will be God's own truth.

243. The Future is used in an imperative sense, as in English, chiefly in familiar language.

Tū nihil dīcēs, H., A.P., 385; you will (are to) say nothing (do you say nothing). Cum volet accēdēs, cum tē vītābit abībis, Ov., A.A., 11. 529; when she wants you, approach; and when she avoids you, begone, sir. Non mē appellābis, sī sapis, Pl., Most., 515; see C., Fam., v. 12, 10. Compare ūtētur and ūtātur, [C.] ad Her., 11. 3, 5.

Similar is the Future in Asseverations (comic).

Ita mē amābit Iūppiter, Pl., Trin., 447; so help me God!

# Future Perfect Tense.

244. The Future Perfect is the Perfect, both Pure and Historical, transferred to the future, and embraces both completion and attainment: fecero, Ter., Ph., 882; I shall have done it, or I shall do it (once for all); videro, Ter., Ad., 538; I will see to it; profecerit, C., Fin., III. 4, 14; it will prove profitable.

Remarks.—1. Hence, when the Pf. is used as a Pr., the Fut. Pf. is used as a Future: novero, I shall know; consuevero, I shall be accustomed; Odero, si potero, Ov., Am., III. 11, 35 (242, R. 2).

2. In subordinate sentences, the Latin language is more exact than the English in the use of the Fut. Perfect; hence, when one action precedes another in the future, the action that precedes is expressed by the Fut. Perfect.

Qui prior strinxerit ferrum, sius victoria erit, L., xxiv. 38, 5; who first draws the sword, his shall be the victory.

3. The Fut. Pf. is frequently used in volo, I will; nolo, I will not; possum, I can; licet, it is left free; libet, it is agreeable; placet, it is the pleasure; whereas the English idiom familiarly employs the Present.

SI potuero, faciam vodis satis, C., Br., 5, 21; if I can, I shall satisfy you.

4. The Fut. Pf. in both clauses denotes simultaneous accomplishment or attainment; one action involves the other.

Qui Antōnium oppresserit, is bellum cōnfēcerit, C., Fam., x. 19, 2; he who shall have crushed (crushes) Antony, will have finished (will finish) the war. [Ea] vitia qui fügerit, is omnia ferē vitia vitāverit, C., Or., 69, 231; he who shall have escaped these faults, will have avoided almost all faults.

Sometimes, however, the first seems to denote antecedence, the second finality. An Impv. is often used in the first clause.

Immuta (verborum collocationem), perierit tota res, C., Or., 70, 232; change the arrangement of the words, the whole thing falls dead.

Notes.—1. The independent use of the Fut. Pf. is characteristic of Comedy, but occurs occasionally later in familiar style. Sometimes it gives an air of positiveness:

Bene merenti bene profuerit, male merenti pār erit, P.L., Čapt., 315; good desert shall have good issue; ill desert shall have its due. Ego crās hic ero: crās habuero, uxor, ego tamen convivium, P.L., Cas., 786. Nūsquam facilius hanc miserrimam vitam vel sustentābo vel abiēcero, C., Att., III. 19, 1. See also C., Ac., II. 44, 135; L., I. 58, 10.

2. The Periphrastic Fut. Pf. with habeo is rare. It corresponds to the Pf. and

Pluperfect.

Quod sī fēcerīs, mē māximō beneficiō dēvinctum habēbis, C., Att., xvi. 16 B. 9.

**245.** As the Future is used as an Imperative, so the Future Perfect approaches the Imperative.

De te tu viders; ego de me ipse profitebor, C., Ph., 11. 46, 118; do you see to yourself; I myself will define my position.

Note.—This is confined in Cicero almost entirely to videris, which is suspiciously like the familiar Greek future  $\delta\psi\epsilon\iota$ , and is used in the same way.

# Periphrastic Tenses.

**246**. The Periphrastic Tenses are formed by combining the various tenses of **esse**, to be, with participles and verbal adjectives. See 129.

## I. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION-ACTIVE VOICE.

- 247. The Periphrastic Tenses of the Active are chiefly combinations of esse and its forms with the so-called Future Participle Active. The Future Participle is a verbal adjective denoting capability and tendency. Compare amator and amaturus. The translation is very various:
- 1. Scriptūrus sum, I am about to write, I am to write, I purpose to write, I am likely to write.
  - 2. Scriptūrus eram, I was about to write, etc.

- 3. Scriptūrus fui, I have been or was about to write (often = I should have written).
  - 4. Scriptūrus fueram, I had been about to write, etc.
  - 5. Scriptūrus ero, I shall be about to write, etc.
- Scriptūrus fuero, I shall have made up my mind to write, etc. (of course very rare).
  - I. Fiet illud quod futurum est, C., Div., II. 8, 21; what is to be, will be.
- 2. [Rex] non interfuturus navali certamini erat, L., XXXVI. 43, 9; the king did not intend to be present at the naval combat.
- 3. Fascis ipsi ad mē dēlātūrī fuērunt, C., Ph., xiv. 6, 15; they themselves were ready to tender the fasces to me. Dēditōs ūltimīs cruciātibus adfectūrī fuērunt, L., xxi. 44, 4; they would have put the surrendered to extreme tortures.
- 4. Māior Romānorum grātia fuit quam quanta futūra Carthāginionsium fuerat, L., XXII. 22, 19; the Romans' credit for this was greater than the Carthaginians' would have been.
- 5. Eōrum apud quōs aget aut erit āctūrus, mentēs sēnsūsque dēgustet, C., Or., 1. 52, 223; he must taste-and-test the state of mind of those before whom he will plead or will have to plead.
- 6. (Sapiens) non vivet, si fuerit sine homine victūrus, Sen., E.M., 9, 17; The wise man will not continue to live, if he finds that he is to live without human society. (The only example cited, and that doubtful.)

REMARKS.—I. The forms with sum, eram, and the corresponding Subjv. forms with sim, essem, are much more common than those with ful, etc., probably for euphonic reasons.

 The Subjy. and Inf. scriptūrus sim, essem, fuerim, fuissem, scriptūrum esse, fuisse, are of great importance in subordinate clauses. (656.)

Notes.—1. The use of **forem** for **essem** appears first in Sallust, but is not uncommon in Livy, and occurs sporadically later. **Fore** for **esse** is post-classical.

Dicit se venisse quaesitum pacem an bellum agitaturus foret, S., Iug., 109, 2.

2. The periphrastic use of the Pr. Part. with forms of esse is rare, and in most cases doubtful, as the question always arises whether the Part. is not rather a virtual substantive or adjective. So with the not uncommon ut sis sciens of the Comic Poets.

The effect of this periphrasis is to emphasize the continuance.

Nëmỗ umquam tam sul dëspiciëns (despiser of self, self-depreciator) fuit quin spëraret melius së posse dicere, C., Or., II. 89, 364.

# II. PERIPHRASTIC TENSES OF THE PASSIVE.

## A .- Of Future Relations.

248. The periphrases futurum esse (more often fore) ut, (that) it is to be that, and futurum fuisse ut, (that) it was to be that, with the Subjunctive, are very commonly used to take the place of the Future Infinitive active; necessarily so

when the verb forms no Future Participle. In the passive they are more common than the Supine with iri.

Spērō fore ut contingat id nöbīs, C., Tusc., 1. 34, 82; I hope that we shall have that good fortune. In fātīs scrīptum Vēientēs [habēbant] fore ut brevī ā Gallis Rōma caperētur, C., Div., 1. 44, 100; the Veientes had it written down in their prophetic books that Rome would shortly be taken by the Gauls.

Remark.—Posse, to be able, and velle, to will, on account of their future sense, do not require a periphrasis. In the absence of periphrastic forms, the forms of posse are often used instead. (656, R.)

Notes.-1. These periphrases do not occur in early Latin.

2. Fore ut is used chiefly with Pr. and Impf. Subjv.; Pf. and Plupf. are very rare. (C., Att., XVI. 16 E. 16.)

3. The form futurum fuisse ut is used with passive and Supineless verbs, to ex-

press the dependent apodosis of an unreal conditional sentence.

Nisi eō ipsō tempore nūntii dō Caesaris victōriā essent allātī, existimābant plērīque futūrum fuisse utī (oppidum) āmitterētur, Caes., B. C., III. 101, 8. (656, 2.)

4. The Subjv. forms **futurum sit**, **esset**, **fuerit ut**, are used in the grammars to supply the periphrastic Subjv. of passive and Supineless verbs (see 515, R. 2). Warrant in real usage is scarce.

An utique futurum sit ut Carthaginem superent Romani? Quint. III. 8, 17 (not merely periphrastic).

In eō [erat] ut (Pausaniās) comprehenderētur, NEP., IV. 5, 1; it was on the point that Pausanias should be (P. was on the point of being) arrested.

Note.—This phrase occurs in Nepos and Livy, seldom in earlier writers.

#### B .- Of Past Relations.

250. The Perfect Participle passive is used in combination with sum, I am, and fui, I have been, I was, to express the Pure Perfect and Historical Perfect of the Passive Voice. Eram, I was, and fueram, I had been, stand for the Pluperfect; and erō, I shall be, and fuerō, I shall have been, for the Future Perfect.

Remarks.—I. Ful is the favorite form when the participle is frequently used as an adjective: convivium exornatum fuit, the banquet was furnished forth; ful is the necessary form when the Pf. denotes that the action is over and gone: amatus ful, I have been loved (but I

am loved no longer). The same principle applies to fueram and fuero, though not so regularly.

Simulācrum ē marmore in sepulcrō positum fuit; hōc quīdam homō nōbilis dēportāvit, C., Dom., 43, 111; a marble effigy was deposited in the tomb; a certain man of rank has carried it off. Arma quae fīxa in parietibus fuerant, ea sunt humī inventa, C., Div., I. 34, 74; the arms which had been fastened to the walls were found on the ground. Quod tibī fuerit persuāsum, huīc erit persuāsum, C., Rosc. Com., I, 3; what is (shall have proved) acceptable to you will be acceptable to him.

2. To be distinguished is that use of the Pf. where each element has its full force, the Participle being treated as an adjective. In this case the tense is not past.

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, CAES., B.G., 1, 1.

NOTES.—1. The ful, etc., forms are rarely found in Cicero, never in Caesar, but are characteristic of Livy and Sallust.

2. Forem for essem is common in the Comic Poets, occurs twice in Cicero's letters (Att., VII. 21, 2; X. 14, 3), never in Caesar, but in Livy and Nepos is very common, and practically synonymous with essem.

### C.-Periphrastic Conjugation-Passive Voice.

251. I. The combination of the Tenses of esse, to be, with the Gerundive (verbal in -ndus), is called the Periphrastic Conjugation of the Passive, and follows the laws of the simple conjugation (129). The idea expressed is usually one of necessity.

Praeponenda [est] divitiis gloria, C., Top., 22, 84; glory is to be preferred to riches.

2. According to the rule (217) the Gerundive of intransitive verbs can be used only in the Impersonal form:

Parcendum est victis, The vanquished must be spared.

Notes.—1. The Gerundive is a verbal adjective, which produces the effect of a Progressive Participle. Whenever a participle is used as a predicate it becomes characteristic, and good for all time. As amāns not only = quī amat, but also = quī amet, so amandus = quī amētur. Compare 488, R.

2. Forem for essem is post-classical and comparatively uncommon.

## TENSES IN LETTERS.

252. The Roman letter-writer not unfrequently puts himself in the position of the receiver, more especially at the beginning and at the end of the letter, often in the phrase Nihil erat (habēbam) quod scrīberem, I have nothing to write. This permutation of tenses is never kept up long, and applies only to temporary situations, never to general statements.

### Table of Permutations.

scrībō,	I am writing,	becomes	scribēbam.
	I write,	66	scrīpsī.
scripsi,	I have written,	66	scripseram.
	I wrote,	44	scrīpseram.
	or remains unc	hanged.	
scrībam,	I shall write,	44	scriptūrus eram.

The adverbial designations of time remain unchanged—or

herī,	yesterday,	becomes	prīdiē.
hodië,	to-day,	46	quō diē hās lītterās dedī, dabam.
crās,	to-morrow,	46	postero die, postridie.
nunc,	now,	66	tum.

Formias mē continuo recipere cogitābam, C., Att., vII. 15, 3; I am thinking of retiring forthwith to Formiae. Cum mihi dīxisset Caecilius puerum sē Romam mittere, haec scrīpsī raptim, C., Att., II. 9, 1; as Caecilius has told me that he is sending a servant to Rome, I write in a hurry. (Litterās) eram datūrus postrīdiē eī quī mihi prīmus obviam vēnisset, C., Att., II. 12, 4; I will give the letter to-morrow to the first man that comes my way.

Note.—Cicero is much more consistent in this tense-shifting than PLINY; and exceptions are not numerous proportionally: Ego etsī nihil habeō quod ad tē scrībam, scrībō tamen quia tēcum loquī videor, C., Att., XII. 53.

# MOODS.

253. Mood signifies manner. The mood of a verb signifies the manner in which the predicate is said of the subject.

There are three moods in Latin:

- 1. The Indicative.
- 2. The Subjunctive.
- 3. The Imperative.

Note.—The Infinitive form of the verb is generally, but improperly, called a mood.

## The Indicative Mood.

254. The Indicative Mood represents the predicate as a reality. It is sometimes called the Declarative Mood, as the mood of direct assertion.

The use of the Latin Indicative differs little from the English.

Remarks.—I. The Latin language expresses possibility and power, obligation and necessity, and abstract relations generally, as facts; whereas, our translation often implies the failure to realize. Such ex-

pressions are: debed, I ought, it is my duty; oportet, it behooves; necesse est, it is absolutely necessary; possum, I can, I have it in my power; convenit, it is fitting; par, aequom est, it is fair; infinitum, endless; difficile, hard to do; longum, tedious; and many others; also the Indic. form of the passive Periphrastic Conjugation. Observe the difference between the use of the Inf. in Eng. and in Latin after past tenses of debed, possum, oportet, etc.

Possum persequi permulta oblectămenta rărum rūsticărum, C., Cat. M., 16, 55; I might rehearse very many delights of country life. Longum est persequi ūtilitătēs asinōrum, C., N.D., 11. 64, 159; it would be tedious to rehearse the useful qualities of asses (I will not do it). Ad mortem tē dūcī oportēbat, C., Cat., 1. 1, 2; it behooved you to be (you ought to have been) led to execution (you were not). Volumnia dēbuit in tē officiosior esse, et id ipsum, quod fēcit, potuit dīligentius facere, C., Fam., XIV. 16; it was Volumnia's duty to be (V. ought to have been) more attentive to you; and the little she did do, she had it in her power to do (she might have done) more carefully. Quae condiciō nōn accipienda fuit potius quam relinquenda patria? C., Att., VIII. 3, 3; what terms ought not to have been accepted in preference to leaving thy country? [Eum] vīvum illinc exire non oportuerat, C., Mur., 25, 51; he ought never to have gone out thence alive.

The Pf. and Plupf. always refer to a special case.

2. The Impf. as the Tense of Disappointment is sometimes used in these verbs to denote opposition to a present state of things: dēbēbam, I ought (but do not); poterās, you could (but do not). These may be considered as conditionals in disguise. (See R. 3.)

Poteram morbos appellare, sed non conveniret ad omnia, C., Fin., 111. 10, 35; I might translate (that Greek word) "diseases," but that would not suit all the cases (poteram si conveniret). At poteras, inquis, melius mala ferre silendo, Ov., Tr., v. 1, 49; "But," you say, "you could (you do not) bear your misfortunes better by keeping silent" (poteras si sileras).

3. The Indic. is sometimes used in the leading clause of conditional sentences (the Apodosis), thereby implying the certainty of the result, had it not been for the interruption. The Indic. clause generally precedes, which is sufficient to show the rhetorical character of the construction.

With the Impf. the action is often really begun:

Läbebar longius, nisi më retinnissem, C., Leg., 1. 19,52; I was letting myself go on (should have let myself go on) too far, had I not checked myself. Omninë supervacua erat doctrina, si nätüra sufficeret, QUINT., 11. 8, 8; training were wholly superfluous, did nature suffice. Praecläre viceramus, nisi Lepidus recepisset Antonium, C., Fam., XII. 10,3; we had (should have) gained a brilliant victory, had not Lepidus received Antony.

In all these sentences the English idiom requires the Subjv., which is disguised by coinciding with the Indic. in form, except in "were."

4. In general relative expressions, such as the double formations, quisquis, no matter who, quotquot, no matter how many, and all forms in -cumque, -ever, the Indic. is employed in classical Latin where we may use in English a Subjv. or its equivalent: quisquis est, no matter who he is, be, may be; qualecumque est, whatever sort of thing it is, be, may be.

Quidquid id est, timeo Danaos et dona ferentes, V., A., II. 49; whatever it (may) be, I fear the Danai even when they bring presents.

CICERO has occasional exceptions (Ideal Second Person or by attraction) to this rule, and later writers, partly under Greek influence, frequently violate it. Exceptions in early Latin are not common.

Notes.—1. Cicero introduces (non) putaram, "I should (not) have thought so," and malueram, I could have preferred. Lucan and Tacitus alone imitate the latter; the former was never followed.

Mālueram, quod erat susceptum ab illīs, silentiō trānsīrī, C., Att., II. 19, 3. Feriam tua vīscera, Māgne; mālueram socerī, Lucan, VIII. 521.

2. In early Latin, occasionally in the more familiar writings of Cicero, and here and there later we find the Pr. Indic. (in early Latin occasionally the Fut.) used in place of the Subjv. in the Deliberative Question.

Compressãn palmā an porrēctā ferið ? Pl., Cas., 405. Advolone an maneð ? C., Att., XIII. 40, 2. Quoi dono lepidum novom libellum, Cat., 1, 1.

## Subjunctive Mood.

255. The Subjunctive Mood represents the predicate as an idea, as something merely conceived in the mind (abstracts from reality).

REMARK.—The Latin Subjv. is often translated into English by the auxiliary verbs may, can, must, might, could, would, should. When these verbs have their full signification of possibility and power, obligation and necessity, they are represented in Latin by the corresponding verbs, thus: may, can, might, could by the forms of posse, to be able, licet, it is left free; will and would by velle, to will, to be willing; must, by debeo or oportet (of moral obligation), by necesse est (of absolute obligation).

Nostrās iniūriās nec potest nec possit alius ulcīscī quam vos, L., XXIX. 18, 18; our wrongs no other than you has the power or can well have the power to avenge.\*

Note.—In the Latin Subjv. are combined two moods, the Subjv. proper, and the Optative, sometimes distinguished as the moods of the *will* and the *wish*. This fusion has rendered it difficult to define the fundamental conceptions of certain constructions.

<sup>\*</sup> In this unique passage nec potest denies with the head, nec possit refuses to believe with the heart.

**256.** I. The realization of the idea may be *in suspense*, or it may be *beyond control*. The first, or purely Ideal Subjunctive, is represented by the Present and Perfect Tenses; the second, or Unreal, is represented by the Imperfect and Pluperfect.

Notes.—1. The Subjv., as the name implies (subiungo, I subjoin), is largely used in dependent sentences, and will be treated at length in that connection.

2. The following modifications of the above principles must be carefully observed:
(a) The Romans, in lively discourse, often represent the unreal as ideal, that which

is beyond control as still in suspense. (596, R. I.)

(b) In transfers to the past, the Impf. represents the Pr., and the Plupf. the Pf. Subjunctive. (510.)

2. The idea may be a view, or a wish. In the first case the Subjunctive is said to be Potential, in the second case Optative. The Potential Subjunctive is nearer the Indicative, from which it differs in tone; the Optative Subjunctive is nearer the Imperative, for which it is often used.

## Potential Subjunctive.

- 257. 1. The Potential Subjunctive represents the opinion of the speaker as an opinion. The tone varies from vague surmise to moral certainty, from "may" and "might" to "must." The negative is the negative of the Indicative, non.
- 2. The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The verification is in suspense, and so future; the action may be present or future: with Perfect sometimes past.

Velim, I should wish; nolim, I should be unwilling; malim, I should prefer; dicas, you would say; credas, you would believe, you must believe; dicat, dixerit aliquis, some one may undertake to say, yo so far as to say.

Caedi discipulos minime velim, Quint., 1. 3, 13; I should by no means like pupils to be flogged. To Platônem nec nimis valdê nec nimis saepe laudāveršs, C., Leg., III. 1, 1; you can't praise Plato too much nor too often.

Notes.—1. The Pf. Subjv. as a Potential seems to have been very rare in early Latin. Cicero extended the usage slightly and employed more persons; thus First Person Pl. and Second Sing. occur first in Cicero. From Cicero's time the usage spreads, perhaps under the influence of the Greek Aorist. It was always rare with Deponents and Passives. Another view regards this direct as a Fut. Pf. Indicative.

2. The Potential Subjv. is sometimes explained by the ellipsis of an Ideal or of an

Unreal Conditional Protasis. But the free Potential Subjv. differs from an elliptical conditional sentence in the absence of definite ellipsis, and hence of definite translation. Compare the two sentences above with:

Eum qui palam est adversārius facile cavendō (sī caveās) vitāre possis, C., Verr., 1. 15, 30; an open adversary you can readily avoid by caution (if you are cautious). Nil ego contulerim iūcundō sānus (= dum sānus erō) amicō, H., S., 1. 5, 44; there is naught I should compare to an agreeable friend, while I am in my sound senses.

3. The Potential Subjv., as a modified form of the Indic., is often found where the Indic. would be the regular construction. So after quanquam (607, R. 1).

258. The Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive, chiefly in the Ideal Second Person, an imaginary "you."

Crēderēs victos, L., 11. 43, 9; you would, might, have thought them beaten. Haud facile discernerēs utrum Hannibal imperātorī an exercituī cārior esset, L., xxi. 4, 3; not readily could you have decided whether Hannibal was dearer to general or to army. Mīrārētur quī tum cerneret, L., xxxiv. 9, 4; any one who saw it then must have been astonished.

Vellem, I should have wished; nollem, I should have been unwilling; mallem, I should have preferred (it is too late).

Notes.—1. With vellem, nollem, mallem, the inference points to non-fulfilment of the wish in the Present (261, R.); with other words there is no such inference.

2. The Unreal of the Present and the Ideal of the Past coincide. What is unreal of a real person is simply ideal of an imaginary person. The Impf. is used as the tense of Description.

The Aoristic Pf. Subjv. and the Plupf. Subjv. are rarely used as the Ideal of the Past:

Hī ambō saltūs ad Libuōs Gallōs dēdūxerint (var. dēdūxissent), L., XXI. 38, 7.

Eā quā minimum crēdidisset (cōnsul) resistēbant hostēs, L., XXXII. 17, 4.

259. The Mood of the Question is the Mood of the expected or anticipated answer (462). Hence the Potential Subjunctive is used in questions which serve to convey a negative opinion on the part of the speaker.

Quis dubitet (= nēmő dubitet) quīn in virtūte dīvitiae sint? C., Parad., vi. 2, 48; who can doubt that true wealth consists in virtue? (No one.) Quis tulerit Gracchōs dē sēditiōne querentēs? Juv., II. 24; who could bear the Gracchi complaining of rebellion? (No one.) Apud exercitum fuerīs? C., Mur., 9, 21; can you have been with the army? Hōc tantum bellum quis umquam arbitrārētur ab ūnō imperātōre cōnficī posse? C., Imp., II, 31; who would, could, should have thought that this great war could be brought to a close by one general?

## Optative Subjunctive.

260. The Subjunctive is used as an Optative or wishing mood.

The regular negative is no. Non is used chiefly to negative a single word; but very rarely in the classical period. A second wish may be added by neque or nec (regularly if a positive wish precedes), but this is also rare in the classical period, and is denied for Caesar.

The Pr. and Pf. Subjv. are used when the decision is in suspense, no matter how extravagant the wish; the Impf. and Plupf. are used when the decision is adverse. The Pf. is rare and old.

Stet haec urbs, C., Mil., 34, 93; may this city continue to stand! Quod dī ōmen āvertant, C., Ph., III. 14, 35; which omen may the gods avert. Ita dī faxint (= fēcerint), Pl., Poen., 911; the gods grant it! Nē istūc Iūppiter optimus māximus sīrit (= sīverit)! L., XXXIV. 24, 2; may Jupiter, supremely great and good, suffer it not!

261. The Optative Subjunctive frequently takes utinam, utinam nē, utinam nēn; ut is archaic and rare; ō sī, oh if, poetical and very rare; quī, how, occurs chiefly in early Latin and in curses.

Valeās beneque ut tibi sit, PL., Poen., 912; farewell! God bless you! Utinam modo cōnāta efficere possim, C., Att., IV. 16; may I but have it in my power to accomplish my endeavors. Utinam reviviscat frāter! Gell., x. 6, 2; would that my brother would come to life again! Utinam inserere iocōs mōris esset, Quint., II. 10, 9; would that it were usual to introduce jokes! Illud utinam nē vērē scrīberem, C., Fam., v. 17, 3; would that what I am writing were not true! Utinam susceptus nōn essem, C., Att., III. 11, 8; would I had not been born! (Cicero's only example of nōn.) Ō mihi praeteritōs referat sī Iūppiter annōs, V., A., viii. 560; O if Jove were to bring me back the years that are gone by!

Remark.—For the wish with adverse decision, vellem and mallem (theoretically also nollem) may be used with the Impf. and sometimes (especially vellem) with the Plupf. Subjunctive.

Vellem adesse posset Panaetius! C., Tusc., I. 33, 81; would that Panaetius could be present! Vellem mē ad cēnam invītāssēs, C., Fam., XII. 4, 1; would that you had invited me to your dinner-party.

So velim, nolim, etc., for the simple wish (546, R. 2).

Tuam mihž darī velim čloquentiam, C., N. D., II. 59, 147; I could wish your eloquence given to me.

Notes.—1. **Utinam** was perhaps originally an interrogative, *How.* pray? If so, it belongs partly to the potential; hence the frequent occurrence of non. O si (occasionally si, V., A., vi. 187) introduces an elliptical conditional sentence, which is not intended to have an Apodosis. When the Apodosis comes, it may come in a different form; as in the example: V., A., viii. 560, 568.

The Impf. Subjv. is occasionally used in early Latin to give an unreal wish in the Past. This is almost never found in the later period.

Utinam të di prius perderent, quam periisti ë patriä tuä, Pl., Capt., 537. Tunc mihi vita foret, Tib., I. 10, 11.

## 262. The Optative Subjunctive is used in asseverations:

Ita vīvam ut māximōs sūmptūs faciō, C., Att., v. 15, 2; as I live, I am spending very largely (literally, so may I live as I am making very great outlay). Moriar, sī magis gaudērem sī id mihī accidisset, C., Att., viii. 6, 3; may I die if I could be more glad if that had happened to mc.

Note.—The Fut. Indic. in this sense is rare: Sic mē dī amābunt ut mē tuārum miseritumst fortūnārum, Ter., Heaut., 463.

### 263. The Subjunctive is used as an Imperative:

1. In the First Person Plural Present, which has no Imperative form:

Amēmus patriam, C., Sest., 68, 143; let us love our country. Nā difficilia optāmus, C., Verr., IV. 7, 15; let us not desire what is hard to do.

NOTE.—In the First Person Singular, the command fades into the wish.

- 2. In the Second Person.
- (a) In the Present chiefly in the Singular, and chiefly of an imaginary "you":

Isto bono ütare, dum adsit, cum absit, ne requiras, C., Cat. M., 10, 33; you must enjoy that blessing so long as 'tis here, when it is gone you must not pine for it.

Note.—The Comic Poets use the Pr. negatively very often of a definite person, sometimes combining it with an Impv.: **ignosce**, **irāta nē** si**ēs**, Pl., Am., 924; but in the classical period such usage is rare, and usually open to other explanations; a definite person may be used as a type, or the sentence may be elliptical.

# (b) In the Perfect negatively:

Në transieris Hiberum, L., XXI. 44, 6; do not cross the Ebro. Në vos mortem timueritis, C., Tusc., I. 41, 98; have no fear of death!

# 3. In the Third Person Present (regularly):

Suum quisque noscat ingenium, C., Off., I. 31, 114; let each one know his own mind. Don's impit no placare audeant deos, C., Leg., II. 16, 41; let the wicked not dare to try to appeare the gods with gifts.

Note.—The Pf. in this usage is very rare. S., Iug., 85, 47; TAC., Ann., IV. 32, 1.

## 264. The Subjunctive is used as a Concessive:

Sit für, C., Verr., v. 1, 4; (granted that) he be a thief. Fuerit (malus civis), C., Verr., 1. 14, 37; (suppose) that he was a bad citizen.

For other examples with ut and ne, see 608.

Note.—The past tenses are very rarely used concessively; see C., Tuec., III. 19,75 (Impf.); Sest., 19, 43 (Plupf.).

**265.** The Subjunctive is used in Questions which expect an Imperative answer (cōniūnctīvus dēlīberātīvus).

Genuine questions are commonly put in the First Person, or the representative of the First Person:

Utrum superbiam prius commemorem an crūdēlitātem, C., Verr., I. 47, 122; shall I mention the insolence first or the cruelty? Māgna fuit contentio utrum moenibus sē dēfenderent an obviam irent hostibus, Nep., I. 4, 4; there was a great dispute whether they should defend themselves behind the walls or go to meet the enemy. (Utrum nos dēfendāmus an obviam eāmus?) [Example of Third Person, 428, N. I.]

Rhetorical questions (questions which anticipate the answer), under this head, are hardly to be distinguished from Potential.

Quō mē nunc vertam? Undique cūstōdior, C., All., x. 12, 1; whither shall I now turn? Sentinels on every side. Quid agerem? C., Sest., 19, 42; what was I to do?

REMARK.—The answer to the Deliberative Question is the Impv. or the Imperative Subjv. of the Present (263, 2) or Past (272, 3).

# Imperative Mood.

266. The Imperative is the mood of the will. It wills that the predicate be made a reality. The tone of the Imperative varies from stern command to piteous entreaty. It may appear as a demand, an order, an exhortation, a permission, a concession, a prayer.

Abi in malam rem, Pl., Capt., 877; go (to the mischief), and be hanged. Compësce mentem, H., O., I. 16, 22; curb your temper. Dā mihǐ hōc, mel meum! Pl., Trin., 244; give me this, honey dear!

267. The Imperative has two forms, known as the First and the Second Imperative (also, but less accurately, as the Present and Future Imperative). The First Imperative has only the Second Person; the Second Imperative has both Second and Third Persons. The First Person is represented by the Subjunctive (263, 1).

REMARK.—Some verbs have only the second form. This may be due to the signification: so scito, know thou; memento, remember thou; and habeto, in the sense of know, remember.

On violation of Concord with the Imperative, see 211, N. 2.

Note.—The use of the Pronouns  $t\bar{u}$ ,  $v\bar{o}s$ ,  $\epsilon\ell c$ ., with the Impv., is colloquial, hence common in Comedy; or solemn: see V., A., vi. 95, 365, 675, 834,  $\epsilon\ell c$ .

268. 1. The First Imperative looks forward to immediate fulfilment (Absolute Imperative):

Special: Patent portae; proficiscere, C., Cat., 1. 5, 10, Open stand the gates; depart.

General: Iŭstitiam cole et pietātem, C., Rep., VI. 16, 16, Cultivate justice and piety.

2. The Second Imperative looks forward to contingent fulfilment (Relative Imperative), and is chiefly used in laws, legal documents, maxims, recipes, and the like; likewise in familiar language.

REGIO IMPERIO DUO SUNTO; 1ÎQUE CONSULES APPELLÂMINO (130, 5, c); NEMINÎ PÂRENTO; OLLÎS (104, III. N. 1) SALŪS POPULĪ SUPRĒMA LĒX ESTŌ, C., Leg., III. 3, 8; there shall be two (officers) with royal power; they shall be called consuls; they are to obey no one; to them the welfare of the people must be the paramount law. Rem vodīs proponam: vos eam penditote, C., Verr., IV. 1, 1; I will propound the matter to you; do you thereupon perpend it. Percontātorem fugitō, nam garrulus idem est, H., Ep., I. 18, 69; avoid your questioner, for he is a tell-tale too.

269. Strengthening Words.—The Imperative is often strengthened and emphasized by the addition of Adverbs, fossilized Imperatives, Phrases, etc.: age, agite, agedum, agitedum, come; enclitic dum, then; modo, only: iamdūdum, at once; proinde, well, then; quin, why not? sānē, certainly; amābō, obsecrō, quaesō, please; sīs (= sī vīs), sultis (= sī voltis), sōdēs (= sī audēs), if you please. Most of these belong to familiar language, and are therefore found in great numbers in Comedy and in Cicero's letters. In the classical prose, and even later, they are not common. Dum in classical times is confined to agedum; quīn is cited twice in Cicero (Mil., 29, 79; Rosc. Com., 9, 25), and rarely later. Iamdūdum begins with Vereur, and belongs to poetry and late prose. Sānē is not cited for the classical period. Sultis is confined to early Latin; and sōdēs occurs but once in Cicero (Att., vii. 3, 11).

Mittite, agedum, lēgātōs, L., xxxvIII. 47, 11. Quin tū I modō, Pl., Cas., 755.

Note.—On the violation of Concord with age, see 211, N. 2.

270. NEGATIVE OF THE IMPERATIVE.—1. The regular negative of the Imperative is no (nove, neu), which is found with the Second Imperative; with the First Imperative, it is poetical or colloquial.

Hominem mortuum in urbe në sepelltö nëve üritö, C., Leg., II. 23, 58; one shall not bury nor burn a dead man in the city. Impius në audëtö pläcëre dönis Iram deörum, C., Leg., II. 9, 22; the impious man must not

dare attempt to appease by gifts the anger of the gods. Tu në cëde malis, sed contră audentior îtō, V., A., VI. 95; yield not thou to misfortunes, but go more boldly (than ever) to meet them.

REMARKS.-I. Non may be used to negative a single word:

Ā lēgibus non recēdāmus, C., Cluent., 57, 155; let us not recede from (let us stick to) the laws. Opus poliat līma, non exterat, Cf. Quint., x. 4, 4; let the file rub the work up, not rub it out.

2. Instead of **nē** with the First Imperative was employed either **nōli** with the Infinitive (271, 2); or **nē** with the Pf. Subjv., but the latter is very rare in elevated prose (263, 2, b). On **nē** with Pr. Subjv. see 263, 2, a.

Note.—The use of **non** with the actual Impv. is found only in Ovid; but the addition of a second Impv. by **neque**, **nec**, instead of **nove**, **neu**, begins in classical times (C., All., XII. 22, 3), and becomes common later. The use of **neque** (**nec**), **nihil**, **nomon**, **nullus** with the Subjv. in an Impv. sense has recently been claimed for the Potential Subjv. (*must*, 257, 1) on account of the negative.

271. Periphrases.—i. Cūrā (cūrātō) ut, take care that; fac (facitō) ut, cause that; fac (facitō), do, with the Subjunctive, are common circumlocutions for the Positive Imperative.

Cūrā ut quam prīmum (303, r. 1) veniās, C., Fam., IV. 10, 1; manage to come as soon as possible. Fac cōgitēs, C., Fam., XI. 3, 4, Do reflect!

Notes.—1. Facito is almost wholly confined to early Latin, especially Plautus; so also curato.

Early Latin also shows vidě and vidětō with Subjv. Terence introduces volō, velim, with Subjv., which is found also in later times; as, C., Fum., IX. 12, 2.

2. Cavē and cavē (cavētō) nē, beware lest, with the Subjunctive, and nōlī, be unwilling, with the Infinitive, are circumlocutions for the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive). Fac nē is also familiarly used.

Cave festines, C., Fam., xvi. 12, 6; do not be in a hurry. Tantum cum finges ne sis manifesta caveto, Ov., A.A., 111. 801; only when you pretend, beware that you be not detected. Noil, amado, verberare lapidem, ne perdas manum, Pl., Curc., 197; don't beat a stone, I pray you, lest you spoil your hand. Fac ne quid aliud cures hoc tempore, C., Fam., xvi. 11, 1; see that you pay no attention to anything else, at this time.

Notes.—1. Rare and confined to early Latin is the use of cave with any but the second person. (f. Pl., Aul., 660; Ter., And., 403.

2. Other phrases are those with vidē nē and cūrātō nē, with Subjv.; comperce, compēsce with Inf. (all ante-classical); parce, mitte, omitte with Inf. (poetical and post-classical); nōlim with Subjv. (Cic.); fuge with Inf. (Hor.); absiste with Inf. (Verg.).

- 272. Representatives of the Imperative.—1. Instead of the Positive Imperative, may be employed:
  - (a) The Second Person of the Present Subjunctive (263, 2).
  - (b) The Second Person of the Future Indicative (243).
  - (c) The Third Person of the Present Subjunctive (263, 3).
- 2. Instead of the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive), may be employed:
  - (a) The Second Person of the Present Subjunctive, with ne (263, 2, N.).
  - (b) The Second Person of the Perfect Subjunctive, with ne (263, 2).
  - (c) The Second Person of the Future, with non (243).
- (d) The Third Person of the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, with no (263, 3).

Remark.—The Pr. Subjv. is employed when stress is laid on the continuance of the action; the Pf., when stress is laid on the completion. Hence the use of the Pf. Subjv. in total prohibitions and passionate protests.

3. The Imperative of the Past is expressed by the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive (unfulfilled duties). Compare 265, R.

Dotem darētis; quaereret alium virum, Ter., Ph., 297; you should have given her a portion; she should have sought another match. Crās Irēs potius, hodiē hīc cēnārēs. Valē, Pl., Pers., 710; you ought rather to have put off going till to-morrow, you ought to (have) dine(d) with us to-day. Good-bye. (Anything decided is regarded as past.) Potius docēret (causam) non esse aequam, C., Off., III. 22, 88; he should rather have shown that the plea was not fair. Nē poposcissēs (libros), C., Att., II. I, 3; you ought not to have asked for the books.

Observe the difference between the Unfulfilled Duty and the Unreal of the Past (597).

Morerëtur; fëcisset certë si sine maximo dëdecore potuisset, C., Rab. Post., 10, 29; he ought to have died; he would certainly have done so, could he have (done so) without the greatest disgrace.

Note.—The Plupf. tense in this usage is not ante-classical.

273. Passionate questions are equivalent to a command:

Non taces? Pl., Am., 700; won't you hold your tongue? Quin taces? Why don't you hold your tongue? Quin datis, si quid datis? Pl., Cas., 765; why don't you give, if you are going to do it? (Compare Fac, si quid facis, MART., I. 46, 1.) Cur non ut plonus vitae conviva recedis? Luck., III. 938; why do you not withdraw as a guest sated with life?

274. Puta, ut puta, for example, begins with [C.] ad Her., II. 11, 16 (reading doubtful); then H., S., II. 5, 32, Quinte, puta, aut Pübli. Later it becomes more common, especially with the Jurists. See C., Ph., II. 6, 15.

# 275. Summary of Imperative Constructions.

#### Positive.

2d P. Audī, hear thou; audītō (legal or contingent); audītō (familiar); audītō (ideal Second Person chiefly).

3d P. Audītō (legal), let him hear; audiat.

#### Negative.

2d P. Nē audī, hear not (poetic); nē audītō (legal); nōn audītō (familiar); nē audītō (chiefly ideal); nōlī audīre (common); nē audīverīs (rarer).

3d P. Nē audītō (legal), let him not hear; nē audīverī nē audīverīt.

## Tenses of the Moods and Verbal Substantives.

- 276. The Indicative alone expresses with uniform directness the period of time.
- 277. 1. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive have to do with *continued* action, the Perfect and Pluperfect with *completed* action. The Perfect Subjunctive is also used to express the *attainment*.
- 2. In simple sentences Present and Perfect Subjunctive postpone the ascertainment of the Predicate to the Future. The action itself may be Present or Future for the Present Subjunctive; Present, Past, or Future for the Perfect Subjunctive.

Crēdat. He may believe (now or hereafter).

Crediderit. Let him have had the belief (heretofore), he may have come to the belief (now), he may come to the belief (hereafter).

3. In simple sentences the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are Past Tenses, and regularly serve to indicate unreality. (See 597.)

Note.—A Subjv. of the Past, being a future of the past, gives a prospective (or future) action the time of which is over (or past), so that the analysis of the past tenses of the Subjv. shows the same elements as the Periphrastic Conjugation with **eram** and **ful**. Hence the frequent parallel use. See 254, R. 2, and 597, R. 3.

4. In dependent sentences the Subjunctive is future if the leading verb has a future signification (515, R. 3); otherwise

the Subjunctive represents the Indicative. The tense is regulated by the law of sequence. (See 509.)

278. The Imperative is necessarily Future.

279. The Infinitive has two uses:

- 1. Its use as a Substantive.
- 2. Its use as a representative of the Indicative.
- 280. THE INFINITIVE AS A SUBSTANTIVE.—As a Substantive the Infinitive has two tenses, Present and Perfect. (See 419.)
- 1. The Present Infinitive is the common form of the Infinitive, used as a Substantive. It has to do with *continued* action.
- (a) The Present Infinitive is used as a subject or predicate. (See 423, 424.)

Quibusdam totum hoc displicet philosophari, C., Fin., I. 1, 1; to some this whole business of metaphysics is a nuisance.

(b) The Present Infinitive is used as the object of Verbs of Creation (Auxiliary Verbs, Verbs that help the Infinitive into being; see 423.)

Catō servire quam pūgnāre māvult, C., Att., vii. 15, 2; Cato prefers to be a slave rather than to fight (being a slave to fighting).

- 2. The Perfect Infinitive is comparatively little used as a Substantive. It has to do with *completed* action, and is also used to express *attainment*.
- (a) As a subject, it is used chiefly in fixed expressions or in marked opposition to the Present.

Plūs proderit domonstrasse rectam protinus viam quam revocare ab errore iam lāpsos, Quint., 11. 6, 2; it will be more profitable to have pointed out the right path immediately than to recall from wandering those that have already gone astray. [Non] tam turpe fuit vinci quam contendisse decorum est, Ov., M., 1x. 5; 'twas not so much dishonor to be beaten as 'tis an honor' to have struggled.

REMARKS.—1. By a kind of attraction decuit, became, takes occasionally a Pf. Inf. (emotional).

Tunc flesse decuit, L., xxx. 44, 7; that was the time when it would have been becoming to weep (to have wept). Et erubuisse decebat, Ov., M., IV. 330; the very flush of shame was becoming.

2. So oportuit, behooved, is frequently followed by the Pf. Part. passive, with or without esse. This seems to have belonged to familiar style; it is accordingly very common in early Latin.

[Hõc] iam pridem factum esse oportuit, C., Cat., I. 2, 5; this ought to have been done long ago.

(b) As an object, the Perfect Infinitive is seldom found in the active, except after **velle**, to wish, which seems to have been a legal usage.

Něminem notă strênui aut ignāvī mīlitis notāsse voluī, L., xxiv. 16, 11; I wished to have marked (to mark finally, to brand) no soldier with the mark of bravery or of cowardice. Annālēs, quibus crēdidisse mālis, L., xlii. 11, 1. Neiquis eŏrum bacānal habuise velet, S. C. de Bac.

Otherwise it is found mainly in the poets (after the fashion of the Greek Aorist Inf.), and usually with the Pf. and Plupf. tenses, volui, etc., potui, děbueram (děbuí).

Notes.—1. This usage with velle seems to have approached often the Fut. Pf. in force. A Pf. Inf. after the Pr. of posse occurs very rarely: Non potes probasse nugās, Pl., Aul., 828; see V., A., vi. 78, and several cases in Ovid and Martial.

2. The Pf. Inf. act. (subj. or obj.) is often found in the poets, especially in elegiac poetry, as the first word in the second half of a pentameter, where it can hardly be distinguished from a Present. This usage may be due partly to analogy with verbs of wishing, partly to the exigencies of the metre, partly to the influence of the Greek Aorist. It must be distinguished from the normal use of the Perfect: Quam iuvat immītēs ventōs audīre cubantem Et dominam tenerō dētinuisse sinū! Tie., I. I. 1, 45.

3. Noteworthy is the occasional use of dēbeō with the Pf. Inf. act. in the sense "must have": statim vīcisse dēbeō, C., Rosc. Am., 23,73; dēbēs adnotāsse, Plin., Ep., VII. 20, 6.

(c) In the Passive, the Perfect Infinitive is used after verbs of Will and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfilment. See 537.

[Patriam] exstinctam cupit, C., Fin., IV. 24, 66; he desires his country blotted out.

Here the Infinitive esse is seldom expressed.

Corinthum patrës vestri tëtius Graeciae lümen exstinctum esse voluërunt, C., Imp., 5, 11 (211, R. 6).

Note.—This usage is common in Comedy and in Cicero, rare, if at all, in Caesar and Sallust; and later also it is rare, surviving chiefly in phrases. The principal verb is volo, less often cupio, very rarely expeto and nolo.

281. THE INFINITIVE AS THE REPRESENTATIVE OF THE INDICATIVE.—As the representative of the Indicative, the

Infinitive has all its Tenses: Present, Past, Future, and Future Periphrastics.

1. The Present Infinitive represents contemporaneous action—hence the Present Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Imperfect after a Historical Tense:

Dicō eum venīre, I say that he is coming; dicēbam eum venīre, I said that he was coming.

2. The Perfect Infinitive represents *Prior Action*—hence the Perfect and Imperfect Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Pluperfect, Imperfect, and Historical Perfect Indicative after a Historical Tense:

Dicō eum vēnisse, I say that he came, has come, used to come.

Dixī eum vēnisse, I said that he had come, used to come, did come.

Note.—Memini, I remember, when used of personal experience, commonly takes the Present: Tum mē rēgem appellārī ā vöbis memini, nunc tyrannum vocāri videō, L., xxxiv. 31, 13; I remember being styled by you a king then, I see that I am called a tyrant now.

So also rarely memoria teneo, recordor, I remember, I recall, and fugit me, I do not remember. When the experience is not personal, the ordinary construction is followed: Memineram Marium ad Infimorum hominum misericordiam confugisse, C., Sest., 22, 50; I remembered that Marius had thrown himself on the mercy of a set of low creatures.

The peculiar construction with the Pr. arises from the liveliness of the recollection. When the action is to be regarded as a bygone, the Pf. may be used even of personal experience: Mē meminī īrātum dominae turbāsse capillōs, Ov., A.A., II. 169; I remember in my anger having tousled my sweetheart's hair.

**282.** The Present Participle active denotes continuance; the Perfect passive, completion or attainment.

NOTE.—The Latin is more exact than the English in the use of the tenses. So the Pf. Part. is frequently employed when we use the Present; especially in classical prose, with verbs that indicate a condition, mental or physical, where the action of the participle is conceived as continuing up to, and sometimes into, that of the leading verb, as ratus, thinking; veritus, fearing; gavisus, rejoicing, etc. This usage spreads later: complexus, embracing; hortatus, exhorting.

**283.** The Future Participle (active) is a verbal adjective, denoting capability and tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with sum, Iam, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations.

Notes.—1. The so-called Fut. Part. passive is more properly called the Gerundive, and has already been discussed (251).

2. The Supine, being without tense relations, does not belong here.

### SIMPLE SENTENCE EXPANDED.

284. The sentence may be expanded by the multiplication or by the qualfication, A, of the subject, B, of the predicate.

### A.

# 1. Multiplication of the Subject.

#### Concord.

285. Number.—The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the Plural number:

Lūcius Tarquinius et Tullia minor iunguntur nūptiīs, L., I. 46, 9; Lucius Tarquinius and Tullia the younger are united in marriage. Pater et māter mortuī [sunt], Ter., Eun., 518; father and mother are dead.

EXCEPTIONS.—I. The common predicate may agree with a Sing. subject when that subject is the nearest or the most important: "My flesh and my heart faileth," PSA., LXXIII. 26.

Aetās et fōrma et super omnia Rōmānum nōmen tē ferōciōrem facit, L., XXXI. 18, 3; your youth and beauty, and, above all, the name of Roman, makes you too mettlesome. Latagum saxō occupat ōs faciemque adversam V., A., x. 698 (323, N. 2).

The agreement depends largely also upon the position of the verb. If it precedes or follows the first subj., the Sing. is more apt to stand.

2. Two abstracts in combination, when conceived as a unit, take a Sing. verb: "When distress and anguish *cometh* upon you," Prov., I. 27.

Religio et fides anteponatur amicitiae, C., Off., III. 10, 46; let the religious obligation of a promise be preferred to friendship.

So any close union: "Your gold and silver is cankered," Jas., v. 3.

Senātus populusque Rōmānus intellegit, C., Fam., v. 8, 2; the senate and people of Rome perceives (= Rome perceives). Tua fāma et gnātae vīta in dubium veniet, Ter., Ad., 340; your good name will be jeoparded and your daughter's life.

3. When the same predicate is found with two or more subjects, who are conceived as acting independently, classical usage requires that the predicate be in the Singular. Livy introduces the Pl., which grows, and becomes the rule in Tacitus: Palātium Rōmulus, Remus Aventīnum ad inaugurandum templa capiunt, L., 1. 6, 4.

Notes.—1. Neque-neque, neither—nor. allows the Pl. chiefly when the Persona are different: Haec neque ego neque tū fēcimus, Ter., Ad., 103; neither you nor 1 did this.

The same is true, but not so common, of et - et (as well as), aut-aut, either-or.

2. A Sing. subj. combined with another word by cum, with, is treated properly as a Singular. It is treated as a Pl once each by Cato, Terence (Heaut., 473), Cicero (by anacoluthon), Caesar (B.C., III. 88), more often by Sallust and his imitators, LIVY, and later writers. Velleius, Valerius M., and Tacitus follow the classical usage.

Sulla cum Scīpione . . . . lēgēs inter sē contulērunt, C., Ph., XII. II, 27. Inse dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur, L., XXI. 60,7; the general himself with some of the leading men are captured.

- 3. In the Abi. Abs. the Part. stands usually in the Pl. with persons, usually in the Sing. with things. C. Graccho et M. Fulvio Flacco interfectis, S., Iug., 16, 2. Cāritāte benevolentiāque sublātā, C., Lael., 27, 102.
- 286. Gender.—When the Genders of combined subjects are the same, the adjective predicate agrees in gender; when the genders are different, the adjective predicate takes either the strongest gender or the nearest.
- 1. In things with life, the masculine gender is the strongest; in things without life, the neuter.
  - (a) The strongest:

Pater et mater mortui [sunt], Ter., Eun., 518 (285). Murus et porta de caelo tacta erant, L., XXXII. 29, 1; wall and gate had been struck by lightning. Hoc anima atque animus vincti sunt foedere semper, Luck., III. 416.

(b) The nearest:

Convicta est Messalina et Silius, Cf. Tac., Ann., XII. 65; Messalina was convicted and (so was) Silius. Hippolochus Lārissaeorumque dēditum est praesidium, L., XXXVI. 9, 14; Hippolochus and the Larissaean garrison (were) surrendered.

- 2. When things with life and things without life are combined, the gender varies.
  - (a) Both as persons:

Rex regiaque classis profecti (sunt), L., xxi. 50, 11; the king and the king's fleet set out.

(b) Both as things:

Nātūrā inimīca [sunt] lībera cīvitās et rēx, Cf. L., XLIV. 24, 2; a free state and a king are natural enemies.

3. When the subjects are feminine abstracts the predicate may be a neuter Plural (211, R. 4).

Stultitiam et intemperantiam dicimus esse fugienda, C.; Fin., 111. 11, 39; folly and want of self-control (we say) are (things) to be avoided.

Note .- This usage does not appear in early Latin, nor in Caesar or Sallust.

287. Persons.—When the persons of combined subjects are different, the First Person is preferred to the Second, the Second to the Third:

Sī tū et Tullia, lūx nostra, valētis, ego et suāvissimus Cicerō valēmus, C., Fam., xiv. 5, 1; if Tullia, light of my life, and you are well, dearest Cicero and I are well.

Remark.—(a) In contrasts, and when each person is considered separately, the predicate agrees with the person of the nearest subject.

Et ego et Cicero meus flägitäbit, C., Att., IV. 18, 5; my Cicero will demand it and (so will) I. Beäte vivere alii in alio, vos in voluptäte ponitis, C., Fin., II. 27, 86; some make a blessed life to rest on one thing, some on another, you on pleasure.

So regularly with disjunctives, see 285, N. 1.

(b) The order is commonly the order of the persons, not of modern politeness: Ego et uxor mea, Wife and I.

# 2. Qualification of the Subject.

**288.** The subject may be qualified by giving it an attribute. An attribute is that which serves to give a specific character. The chief forms of the attribute are:

I. The adjective and its equivalents: amicus certus, a sure friend.

REMARK.—The equivalents of the adjective are: I. The pronouns hie, this, ille, that, etc. 2. Substantives denoting rank, age, trade: servus homő, a slave person; homő senex, an old fellow; homő gladiator, a gladiator-fellow; mulier ancilla, a servant-wench. 3. The Genitive (360, I). 4. The Ablative (400). 5. Preposition and case: excessus & vitā, departure from life. 6. Adverbs, chiefly with substantival participles: rēctē facta, good actions. 7. Relative clauses (505).

II. The substantive in apposition: Cicero orator, Cicero the orator.

### I. ADJECTIVE ATTRIBUTE.

#### Concord.

289. The Adjective Attribute agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case:

GENDER.

Number.

Vir sapiēns, a wise man, virī sapientēs, wise men.

Mulier pulchra, a beautiful woman, mulierēs pulchrae, beautiful women.

Rēgium dōnum, royal gift, rēgia dōna, royal gifts.

CASE.

VirI sapientis, of a wise man. Mulieri pulchrae, for a beautiful woman. Virum sapientem, wise man. bone fili! good son!
rēgiō dōnō, by royal gift.
mulierēs pulchrās, beautiful
women.

290. The common attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest; rarely with the most important.

Volusēnus, vir et consilii māgni et virtūtis, Caes., B. G., 111. 5, 2; Volusenus, a man of great wisdom and valor. Cūncta maria terraeque patēbant, S., C., 10, 1; all seas and lands lay open. Multa alia castella vicique aut dēlēta hostiliter aut integra in potestātem vēnēre, L., 1x. 38, 1.

Remarks — I. For emphasis, or to avoid ambiguity, the adj. is repeated with every substantive. Sometimes also for rhetorical reasons simply.

(Semproniae) multae facetiae, multusque lepos inerat, S., C., 25, 5; Sempronia had a treasure of witticisms, a treasure of charming talk.

2. When a substantive is construed with several *similar* adjectives in the Sing., it may be in agreement with one in the Sing. or may stand in the Pl., according to its position:

Quarta et Martia legiones, C., Fam., xi. 19, 1, but Legio Martia quartaque, C., Ph, v. 17, 46, The fourth and Martian legions.

Notes.—1. A common surname is put in the Plural: M. (et) Q. Cicerones, Marcus and Quintus Cicero; C., Cn., M. Carbones, Gaius, Gnaeus (and) Marcus Carbo; otherwise, M. Cicero et Q. Cicero, Marcus and Quintus Cicero.

2. Poets are free in regard to the position of the adjective: Semper honos nomenque tuum laudesque manebunt, V., A., 1.609.

- 291. Position of the Attribute.—1. When the attribute is emphatic, it is commonly put before the substantive, otherwise in classical Latin ordinarily after it. But see 676.
  - 1. Fugitivus servus, a runaway slave (one complex).
  - 2. Servus fugitīvus, a slave (that is) a runaway (two notions).

Many expressions, however, have become fixed formulæ, such as cīvis Rōmānus, Roman citizen; populus Rōmānus, people of Rome.

Compare body politic, heir apparent in English.

Remarks.—I. Variation in the position of the adj. often causes variation in the meaning of the word. Thus res bonae, good things; bonae res, articles of value, or good circumstances; res urbanae, city matters; urbanae res, witticisms; mensa secunda, a second table; secunda mensa, dessert.

- 2. Superlatives which denote order and sequence in time and space are often used partitively, and then generally precede their substantive: summa aqua, the surface of the water; summus mons, the top of the mountain; vere primo, primo vere, in the beginning of spring. Similarly in media urbe, in the midst of the city; reliqua, cetera Graecia, the rest of Greece, and the like.
- 2. When the attribute belongs to two or more words, it is placed sometimes after them all, sometimes after the first, sometimes before them all.

Divitiae, nomen, opës vacuae consilio dedecoris plenae sunt, C., Rep., 1. 34, 51; riches, name, resources (when) void of wisdom are full of dishonor.

For examples of the other positions see 290.

### Numerals.

292. Duo means simply two, ambō, both (two considered together), uterque, either (two considered apart, as, "They crucified two other with him, on either side one," John, XIX. 18):

Supplicatio amborum nomine et triumphus utrique decretus est, L.. XXVIII. 9, 9; a thanksgiving in the name of both and a triumph to either (each of the two) was decreed. Qui utrumque probat, ambobus dobuit üti, C., Fin., II. 7, 20; he who approves of either ought to have availed himself of both.

Remark.—Uterque is seldom Pl., except of sets; so with pluralia tantum.

Utrīque (i.e., plēbis fautōrēs et senātus) victōriam crūdēliter exercēbant, S., C., 38, 4; either party (democrats and senate) made a cruel use of victory. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs: utraeque in eā fugā periērunt, CAES., B.G., I. 53, 4; Ariovistus's wives were two in number; both perished in that flight. Proximō diē Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, CAES., B.G., I. 50, 1.

On uterque with the Pl., see 211, R. 1; with Gen., see 371, R.

293. Mille, a thousand, is in the Sing. an indeclinable adj. and is less frequently used with the Genitive: mille milites, rather than mille militum, a thousand soldiers; in the Pl. it is a declinable substantive, and must have the Genitive: duo milia militum, two thousand(s of) soldiers = two regiments of soldiers. If a smaller number comes between, the substantive usually follows the smaller number:

S500 cavalry, tria milia quingenti equitës, tria milia equitum et quingenti, but equitës tria milia quingenti, or equitum tria milia quingenti.

But duo milia quingenti hostium in acië periëre, L., XXII. 7, 3.

NOTE.—The use of mille as a substantive with the Part. Gen. is found mostly in ante-classical and post-classical Latin. CICERO and CAESAR use it but rarely, and in phrases such as mille nummum, mille passuum. Livy is fonder of it.

294. ORDINALS.—The Ordinals are used more often in Latin than in English; thus always in dates: anno ducentesimo quarto, in the year 204. Sometimes they are used for the cardinals with a carelessness that gives rise to ambiguity:

Quattuor anni sunt, ex quō tē non vidī,

It is four years, that I have not seen you (since I saw you).

Quartus annus est, ex quo te non vidi.

It is the fourth year (four years, going on four years).

Note.—To avoid this ambiguity forms of incipere, to begin, and exigere, to finish, seem to have been used. Cf., Pl., Capt., 980; Cist., 161.

On quisque with the ordinal, see 318, 2.

295. DISTRIBUTIVES —The distributives are used with an exactness which is foreign to our idiom wherever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table.

Bis bina quot [sunt]? C., N.D., II. 18, 49; how many are twice two? Scriptum eculeum cum quinque pedibus, pullos gallināceos trīs cum ternis pedibus nātos esse, L., XXXII. I, 11; a letter was written to say that a colt had been fooled with five feet (and) three chickens hatched with three feet (apiece).

With singuli the distributive is preferred, but the cardinal may be

Antōnius (pollicitus est) dēnāriōs quingēnōs singulīs militibus datūrum, C., Fam., x. 32, 4; Antonius promised to give five hundred denarii to each soldier. Singulīs cēnsōribus dēnāriī trecentī (so all MSS.) imperātī sunt, C., Verr., 11. 55, 137; the censors were required to pay three hundred denarii apiece.

Note.—Poets and later prose writers often use the distributive when the cardinal would be the rule; thus bini is not unfrequently used of a pair even in Cicero: binos (scyphos) habobam, Verr., IV. 14, 32. When there is an idea of grouping, the distributive is often broken up into a multiplicative and a distributive; as,

Carmen ab ter novēnīs virginibus canī iūssērunt, L., XXXI. 12, 9; they ordered

a chant to be sung by thrice nine virgins.

On the other hand, prose sometimes shows a cardinal when exact usage would require a distributive. So regularly mília.

Mīlia talentum per duodecim annōs (dabitis), L., xxxvII. 45, 15. On the distributives with plūrālia tantum, see 97, R. 3.

# Comparatives and Superlatives.

**296.** Comparative.—The comparative degree generally takes a term of comparison either with quam, than, or in the Ablative:

Ignoratio futurorum malorum ütilior est quam scientia, C., Div., II. 9, 23; ignorance of future evils is better than knowledge (of them). Nihil est virtute amābilius, C., Lael., 8, 28; nothing is more lovable than virtue.

Remarks.—1. (a) The Abl. is used only when the word with quam would stand in the Nom. or Acc. (644).

Caesar minor est { quam Pompēius, } Caesar is younger than Pompey.

Caesarem plūs amāmus { quam Pompēium, } we love Caesar more than Pompēiō, } Pompey.

In the second example the use of the Abl. may give rise to ambiguity, as the sentence may also mean "we love Caesar more than Pompey loves him." This ambiguity is always present when adverbs are used, and hence good prose avoids using a comparative adv. with an Ablative. See H., S., 1. 1, 97.

(b) With cases other than Nom. or Acc., quam is regularly used to avoid ambiguity.

Ānulīs nostrīs plūs quam animīs crēditur, Sen., Ben., 111. 15, 3 (217).

The Abl. is very common in negative sentences and is used exclusively in negative relative sentences.

Polybium sequāmur, quō nēmŏ fuit dīligentior, C, Rep, 11–14, 27; let us follow Polybius, than whom no one was more careful.

- 3. Measure of difference is put in the Ablative (403).
- 4. Quam is often omitted after plūs, amplius, more, and minus, less, and the like, without affecting the construction:

Hominī miserō plūs quīngentōs colaphōs înfrēgit mihī, Ter., Ad., 199; he has dealt me, luckless creature, more than five hundred crushing boxes on the ear. Spatium est non amplius pedum sescentōrum, Caes., B.C., 1. 38, 5; the space is not more than (of) six hundred feet.

But the normal construction is not excluded:

Palūs non lātior pedibus quinquāgintā, Caes., B.G., vii. 19, 1; a swamp not broader than fifty feet (or pedēs quinquāgintā). Nostrī mīlitēs amplius horis quattuor pūgnāvērunt, Caes., B.G., 17, 37, 3,

- 5. In statements of age we may have a variety of expressions; thus, more than thirty years old may be:
- 1. Nātus plūs (quam) trīgintā annos. 3. Māior (quam) trīgintā annos nātus.
- 2. Nātus plūs trīgintā annīs (rare). 4. Māior trīgintā annīs (nātus).
  - 5. Māior trīgintā annorum.
- 6. On the combination of the comparative with opinion, sps, hope, and the like, see 398, N. 1.
- Notes.—1. Verbs and other words involving comparison sometimes have the Abl. where another construction would be more natural. Thus, mālle, to prefer (poet, and post-classical), aequē, adaequē, equally (early and late), alius, other (mainly poetic and rare): Nūllōs his māllem lūdōs spectāsse, H., S., H. 8, 79. Quī mē in terrā aequē fortūnātus erit? Pr., Curc., 141. Nē putēs alium sapiente bonōque beātum, Ep., 1. 16, 20.
  - 2. Instead of the Abl., the Gen. is found occasionally in late Latin.
- 3. Instead of quam or the Abl., prepositional uses with the positive are often found; as prae, in comparison with, praeter, ante, beyond; also suprā quam. Poetical is the circumlocution with quālis, as Hor., Epod., 5, 59. Inferior is sometimes construed with the Dat., according to the sense; inferior to instead of tower than.
  - 4. Atque for quam is mainly poetical; see 644, N. 2.
- 297. Standard of Comparison omitted.—When the standard of comparison is omitted, it is supplied: 1. By the context; 2. By the usual or proper standard; 3. By the opposite.
  - r. By the context:

Solent rēgēs Persārum plūrēs uxōrēs habēre, Cf. C., Verr., 111. 33, 76; the kings of Persia usually have more wives [than one].

2. By the proper standard:

Senectüs est nătură loquizcior, C., Cat.M., 16, 55, Old age is naturally rather (or too) talkative.

3. By the opposite:

Quiësse erit melius, L., III. 48, 3; it will be better to be-perfectly-quiet (than to make a disturbance).

298. Disproportion.—Disproportion is expressed by the comparative with quam pro, than for, and the Ablative, or with quam ut, that, or quam qui, who, and the Subjunctive:

Minor caedes quam pro tanta victoria fuit, L., x, 14, 21; the loss was (too) small for so great a victory. Quis non intellegit Canachi signa rigidiora esse quam ut imitentur veritatem? C., Br., 18, 70; who does not perceive that Canachus' figures are too stiff to imitate the truth of nature? Maior sum quam cui possit Fortuna nocere, Ov., M., vi. 195; I am too great for Fortune possibly to hurt me.

REMARK.—Disproportion may also be expressed by the positive in combination with prepositional phrases, etc.: pro multitudine angusti fines, Caes., B.G., 1. 2, 5; boundaries too small for their multitude.

Notes.—1. The constructions quam pro and quam qui are both post-Ciceronian.

2. The ut is frequently omitted after quam, as: Dolābella eelerius Asiā [excessit], quam eo praesidium addūcī potuisset, C, Fam, XII. 15, 1. This is especially common after potius quam,

299. Two Qualities compared.—When two qualities of the same substantive are compared, we find either magis and quam with the positive, or a double comparative:

Celer tuus disertus magis est quam sapiens, C., Att., x. 1, 4; your (friend) Celer is eloquent rather than wise—more eloquent than wise.

Acūtiōrem sē quam ōrnātiōrem [vult], C., Opt. Gen., 2, 6; he wishes to be acute rather than ornate.

Notes.—1. There is no distinction to be made between the two expressions. In the latter turn, which is found first, but rarely, in Cicero, the second comparative is merely attracted into the same form as the first. The same rule applies to the adverb: fortius quam fēlīcius, with more bravery than good luck.

2. Post-Augustan Latin shows occasionally the comparative followed by quam, and the positive: Nimia pietās vestra ācrius quam considerātē excitāvit, TAC., H., 1.82.

**300.** Restriction to the Comparative.—When but two objects are compared, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison, whereas, in English, the superlative is employed, unless the idea of duality is emphatic.

Natu maior, the eldest (of two), the elder; natu minor, the youngest, the younger. Prior, the first; posterior, the last.

Posteriores cogitationes, ut aiunt, sapientiores solent esse, C., Ph., XII. 2, 5; afterthoughts, as the saying is, are usually the wisest.

REMARK.—The same rule applies to the interrogative uter, which of two ? (whether?): Ex duōbus uter dignior? ex plūribus, quis dignissimus? QUINT., VII. 4, 21; of two, which is the worthier? of more (than two), which is the worthiest?

Note.—Quis is rarely used instead of uter, as C., Fam., vi. 3, 1; V., A., XII. 725.

301. Comparative Strengthened. The comparative is often strengthened during the classical period by the insertion of etiam, even; later also by adhūc, still. Multō is properly the Ablative of difference, and is the normal form until the time of Vergil, when its place is taken largely by longō, except in Horace, who retains multō. Ante-classical and post-classical Latin occasionally doubles the comparative: magis dulcius, Pl., Stich., 699. Nihil inveniōs magis hōc certō certius, Pl.,

Capt., 643. Even in Cicero a word involving Preference is sometimes strengthened by potius:

[Themistoclī fuit] optābilius oblīvīscī posse potius quam meminisse, C., Or., II. 74, 300; Themistocles thought it (more) preferable to be able to forget (rather) than to be able to remember.

**302.** Superlative.—The Latin superlative is often to be rendered by the English positive, especially of persons:

Quintus Fabius Māximus, Quintus Fabius the Great. Māximō impetū, māiōre fortūnā, L., XXVIII 36, 2; with great vigor, with greater luck. Tam fēlix essēs quam fōrmōsissima vellem, Ov., Am., 1.8, 27; would thou wert fortunate as (thou art) fair.

303. Superlative Strengthened.—The superlative is strengthened by multö, much (especially in early Latin); longē, by far (the normal usage in the classical period); vel, even; ūnus, ūnus omnium, one above all others; quam (with adverbs and adjectives), quantus (with māximus), ut (with adverbs)—potest, potuit, as—as possible.

Ex Britannis omnibus longë sunt hümänissimi qui Cantium incolunt, Caes., B.G., v. 14, 1; of all the Britons by far the most cultivated are those that inhabit Kent. Protagoras sophistes illis temporibus vel māximus, C., N.D., 1. 23, 63; Protagoras, the very greatest sophist (= professor of wisdom) in those times. Urbem ünam mihi amicissimam dēclīnāvi, C., Planc., 41, 97; I turned aside from a city above all others friendly to me. (Caesar) quam aequissimo loco potest castra commūnit, Caes., B.G., v. 49, 7; Caesar fortifies a camp in as favorable a position as possible.

Remarks.—I. The omission of potest leaves quam with the superlative, which becomes a regular combination: as (great) as possible.

2. For tam, tantum, with positive followed by quam, quantum qui, and the superlative, see 642, R. 5.

### PRONOUNS.

### I. Personal Pronouns.

304. 1. The personal Pronoun is usually omitted when it is the subject of a verb; see 207.

2. The Genitive forms, mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, are used mainly as *Objective* Genitives; see 364, N. 2.

(Mārcellinus) sē ācerrimum tuī dēfēnsōrem fore ostendit, C., Fam., 1. 1, 2; Marcellinus showed that he would be your keenest defender.

Notes.—1. Nostrum and vestrum for nostrī, vestrī, are very rare: [Iūppiter, cūstōs] hūius urbis āc vestrum, Cf. C., Cat., III. 12, 29.

2. The Possessive pronouns sometimes are found in place of this Genitive: Neque neclegentia tua neque odio id fecit tuo, Ter., Ph., 1016; he did this neither from

neglect of thee nor from hatred of thee. Vester conspectus reficit et recreat mentem meam, C., Planc., 1,2; the sight of you refreshes and renews my spirits.

"If I be a master, where is my fear ?" MAL., 1.6.

3. The Genitive forms, nostrum and vestrum, are used partitively; see 364, R.

Te ad me venire uterque nostrum cupit, C., Att., XIII. 33, 2; each of us two desires that you should come to me.

Notes.—1. So regularly also in certain phraseological uses which may be partitive at basis. Frequentia vestrum, consonsus vestrum, regularly in combination with omnium (364, r.), and occasionally when the Possessive is more natural; is enim splendor est vestrum, C., Att., vu. 13A, 3.

2. For a Part. Gen. of the third person (reflexive) a circumlocution must be used, such

as ex sē or the Possessive suorum.

### 2. Demonstrative Pronouns.

- **305. Hic,** this (the Demonstrative of the First Person), refers to that which is nearer the speaker, and may mean:
  - 1. The speaker himself: hic homo = ego, PL., Trin., 1115.
- 2. The persons with whom the speaker identifies himself, e. g., the judges in a suit at law: si ego hōs nōvi, if I know these men (= the jury).
- 3. The most important subject immediately in hand: hic sapiens de quo loquor, C., Ac., II. 33, 105; this (imaginary) wise man of whom I am speaking.
- 4. That in which the speaker is peculiarly interested: hoc studium, this pursuit of mine, of ours.
- 5. That which has just been mentioned: haec hactenus, these things thus far = so much for that.
- 6. Very frequently, that which is about to be mentioned: his condicionibus, on the following terms.
- 7. The current period of time: hic dies, to-day; have now, the night just past or just coming; hic mensis, the current month.
- **306.** Iste, that (of thine, of yours), refers to that which belongs more peculiarly to the Second Person (Demonstrative of the Second Person):

Perfer istam militiam, C., Fam., vII. II, 2; endure that military service of yours. Adventū tuō ista subsellia vacuēfacta sunt, C., Cat., I. 7, 16; at your approach the benches in your neighborhood were vacated.

Note.—The supposed contemptuous character of **iste** arises from the refusal to take any direct notice of the person under discussion, "the person at whom one speaks or points," and precisely the same thing is true of **hic** and **ille**, but less common.

307. Ille, that (the Demonstrative of the Third Person), denotes that which is more remote from the speaker, and is often used in contrast to hic, this.

Sõl mõ ille admonuit, C., Or., III., 55, 209; that (yon) sun reminded me. Q. Catulus non antiquo illo mõre sed hoc nostro eruditus, C., Br., 35, 132; Q. Catulus, a cultivated man, not after the old-fashioned standard of a by-gone time (illo) but by the standard of to-day (hōc).

Ille may mean :

- I. That which has been previously mentioned (often ille quidem): illud quod initio vobis proposui, C., Font., 7, 17; that which I propounded to you at first.
- 2. That which is well known, notorious (often put after the substantive): tēstula illa, that (notorious) potsherd = institution of ostracism; illud Solonis, that (famous saying) of Solon's.
- 3. That which is to be recalled: illud imprimis mirābile, that (which I am going to remind you of) is especially wonderful.
  - 4. That which is expected:

Illa dies veniet mea qua lügubria põnam, Ov., Tr., iv. 2, 78; the day will come when I shall lay aside (cease) my mournful strains.

Remarks.—1. Hic and ille are used together in contrasts: as, the latter—the former, the former—the latter.

(a) When both are matters of indifference the natural signification is observed: hie, the latter; ille, the former.

Ignāvia corpus hebetat, labor firmat; illa mātūram senectūtem, hic longam adolēscentiam reddit, Cels., i. i; laziness weakens the body, toil strengthens it; the one (the former) hastens old age, the other (the latter) prolongs youth.

(b) When the former is the more important, his is the former, ille, the latter:

Melior tütiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria; haec in nostrā, illa in deōrum manū est, L., xxx. 30, 19; better and safer is certain peace than hoped-for victory; the former is in our hand(s), the latter in the hand(s) of the gods.

2. Hic et ille; ille et ille; ille aut ille, this man and (or) that man = one or two.

Non dicam hoc signum ablatum esse et illud; hoc dico, nüllum të signum reliquisse, C., Verr., I. 20, 53; I will not say that this statue was taken off and that; (what) I say (is) this, that you left no statue at all.

- 3. The derived adverbs retain the personal relations of hic, iste, ille: hic, here (where I am); hinc, hence (from where I am); hic, hither (where I am); istic, there (where you are); illic, there (where he is), etc.
- 4. The Demonstratives hie, iste, ille, and the Determinative is, are often strengthened by quidem, indeed. The second member is then introduced by sed, sed tamen (more rarely tamen, vērum, autem, vērō), vērumtamen, and sometimes is added asyndetically. The sentence often requires that either the demonstrative or the particle be left untranslated.

Optare hōc quidem est, nōn docōre, C., Tusc., II. 13, 30; that is a (pious) wish, not a (logical) proof. Nihil perfertur ad nōs praeter rūmōrēs satis istōs quidem cōnstantēs sed adhūc sine auctōre, C., Fam.XII. 9, 1; nothing is brought to us except reports, consistent enough, it is true, but thus far not authoritative.

Ille is most often used thus; is, iste, hic, more rarely.

Notes.—1. His and ille are sometimes employed to add a qualification to a substantive by means of a contrast: **Ōrātor nōn** ille vulgāris sed hīc excellēns, C., Or., 14, 45; an orator, not of the (yon) common type, but of the ideal excellence (we seek).

2. Not unfrequently in poetry, very rarely in prose, in a long sentence a substantive is repeated by means of ille: V., A., I. 3, ille et terris iactātus; H., O., IV. 9, 51.

3. Sometimes two forms of hie, ille, or is are found in the same clause referring to different substantives: Evolve diligenter ēius [i. e., Platonis] eum librum, qui est dē animo, C., Tusc., I. 11, 24.

4. Ille may refer to an oblique form of is: Non est amici talem esse in eum,

quālis ille in sē est, C., Lael., 16, 59.

5. Ille is found chiefly in poetry with the personal pronouns ego, tū, and occasionally with hīc, and when so used takes its fullest force. Hunc illum fātīs externā ab sēde profectum portendī generum, V., A., vii. 255.

### 3. Determinative and Reflexive Pronouns.

**308.** Is, *that*, is the determinative pronoun, and serves as the lacking pronoun of the Third Person. It furnishes the regular antecedent of the relative:

Mihǐ vēnit obviam tuus puer; is mihǐ lītterās abs tē reddidit,  $\dot{C}$ ., Alt., II. I, I; I was met by your servant; he delivered to me a letter from you. Is minimō eget mortālis quī minimum cupit, Syrus, 286 (Fr.); that mortal is in want of least, who wanteth least.

REMARKS.—I. Is, as the antecedent of the relative, is often omitted, chiefly in the Nom., more rarely in an oblique case (619).

Bis dat qui dat celeriter, Syrus, 235 (Fr.); he gives twice who gives in a trice.

Often it has the force of talis (631, 1) in this connection:

Ego is sum qui nihil umquam meā potius quam meōrum cīvium causā fēcerim, C., Fam., v. 21, 2; I am a man never to have done anything for my own sake, rather than for the sake of my fellow-citizens.

2. Is, with a copulative or adversative particle, is used as he or that in English, for the purpose of emphasis. Such expressions are: et is, atque is, isque, and he too, and that too; neque is, et is non, and he not, and that not; sed is, but he, further strengthened by quidem, indeed. To refer to the whole action id is employed.

Exempla quaerimus et ea non antiqua, C., Verr., III. 90. 210; we are looking for examples, and those, too, not of ancient date. Epicurus una in domo et ea quidem angusta quam magnos tenuit amicorum greges, C., Fin., 1. 20, 65; what shoals of friends Epicurus had in one house, and

that a pinched-up one! Negotium magnum est navigare atque id mense Quinctili, C., Att. v. 12, 1; it is a big job to take a voyage and that in the month of July.

3. Is does not represent a substantive before a Gen., as in the English *that of*. In Latin the substantive is omitted, or repeated, or a word of like meaning substituted.

Non iūdicio discipulorum dicere dēbet magister sed discipuli magistrī, Quint., II. 2, 13; the master is not to speak according to the judgment of the pupils; but the pupils according to that of the master. Nulla est celeritās quae possit cum animī celeritāte contendere, C., Tusc., I. 19, 43; there is no speed that can possibly vie with that of the mind. M. Coelius tribūnal suum iūxtā C. Trebōnī sellam collocāvit, Caes., B.C., III. 20, 1; Marcus Coelius placed his chair of office next to that of Gaius Trebonius.

Of course hie, ille, and iste can be used with the Gen. in their proper sense.

- 309. REFLEXIVE. Instead of forms of is, the Reflexive Pronoun suī, sibī, sē, together with the Possessive of the Reflexive suos (-us), sua, suom (-um) is used. (See 521.)
- 1. Regularly when reference is made to the grammatical subject of the sentence:

Ipse sē quisque dīligit quod sibǐ quisque cārus est, C., Lael., 21, 80; every one loves himself, because every one is dear to himself. (Fadius) ā mē dīligitur propter summam suam hūmānitātem, C., Fam., xv. 14, 1; Fadius is a favorite of mine by reason of his exceeding kindliness.

The subject may be indefinite or (occasionally) impersonal.

Contentum suis rēbus esse māximae sunt divitiae, C., Par., vi. 3, 51; to be content with one's own things (with what one hath) is the greatest riches. Perventum ad suōs erat, L., XXXIII. 8, 6.

"Pure religion and undefiled is this . . . to keep himself unspotted from the world." James, z. 27.

2. Frequently when reference is made to the actual subject (521, R. 2):

Suos rēx rēginae placet, Pl., St., 133; every queen favors her own king (every Jill loves her own Jack). Ōsculātur tigrim suus cūstōs, Sen., E.M., 85, 41; her own keeper kisses the tigress (the tigress is kissed by her own keeper). Cuī proposita sit conservatio suī necesse est huīc partēs quoque suī cārās esse, C., Fin., v. 13, 37; he who has in view the preservation of himself (self-preservation) must necessarily hold dear the parts of (that) self also.

This is especially common with **suos**, which when thus employed has usually its emphatic sense: own, peculiar, proper.

3. Suī, sibī, sē are the regular complements of the infinitive and its equivalents when a reflexive idea is involved; and sē is also used with prepositions ergā, inter, propter, per, for especial emphasis.

(Rōmāní) sui colligendi hostibus facultātem (nōn) relinquunt, Caes., B.G., III. 6, 1; the Romans do not leave the enemy a chance to rally. Ipsum Furnium per sē vidi libentissimē, C., Fan., x. 3, 1.

4. Suos (-us) is also used in prepositional phrases that are joined closely with the substantives; so after cum, inter, and more rarely after in, intrā, and ad.

Māgönem cum clāsse suā in Hispāniam mittunt, L., XXIII. 32, 11; they sent Mago with his fleet to Spain. Helvētiös in fīnēs suōs revertī iūssit, CAES., B.G., I. 28, 3; he ordered the Helvetians to return to their own country.

So the phrases suo tempore, at the right time; suo loco, at the right place.

Cōmoediae quem üsum in pueris putem suō locō dīcam, Quint., 1.8, 7; what I consider to be the good of comedy in the case of boys I will mention in the proper place.

Notes.—1. The writer may retain forms of is, if he desires to emphasize his own point of view. So too in prepositional combinations.

(Caesar) Ciceronem pro sius merito laudat, Caesa, B. G., v. 52, 4; Caesar praises Cicero according to his desert. [Pompsius] cum decretum de me Capuae fecit, ipse cunctae Italiae sius fidem imploranti signum dedit, C., Mil., 15, 39.

2. In early comedy and then again in late Latin, suos is sometimes strengthened by sibi: Suō sibi gladiō hunc iugulō, Ter., Ad., 958; very rarely in classical Latin (C., Ph., 11. 37, 96). Similarly meā mihi, Pl., Truc., 698.

3. On suum quisque, see 318, 3.

4. In dependent clauses the reflexive is used with reference either to the principal or to the subordinate subject. See for fuller treatment 521.

310. Idem, the same, serves to unite two or more attributes or predicates on a person or thing; it is often to be translated by at the same time; likewise, also; yet, notwithstanding.

(Cimōn) incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suus, Nep., v. 3, 1; Cimon fell into the same odium as his father. Quidquid honestum [est] idem [est] ütile, C., Off., 11. 3, 10; whatever is honorable is also (at the same time) useful. Nil prodest quod non laedere possit idem, Ov., Tr., 11. 266; nothing helps that may not likewise hurt. (Epicūrus), cum optimam et praestantissimam nātūram deī dīcat esse, negat īdem esse in deō grātiam, C., N.D., 1. 43, 121; although Epicurus says that the nature of God is

transcendently good and great, yet (at the same time) he says that there is no sense of favor in God. Difficilis facilis, iŭcundus acerbus, es Idem, MART., XII. 47, 1; crabbed (and) kindly, sweet (and) sour, are you at once.

REMARKS.—I. When a second attribute is to be added to a substantive it is often connected by idemque, et idem, atque idem: Vir doctissimus Platō atque idem gravissimus philosophōrum omnium, C., Leg., II. 6, 14; Plato, a most learned man, and at the same time weightiest of all the philosophers.

2. The same as is expressed by idem with qui, with atque or ic, with ut, with cum, and poetically with the Dative. See 359, N. 6, 642, 643.

Tibi mecum in eodem est pistrino vivendum, C., Or., II. 33, 144; you have to live in the same treadmill with me.

- 3. Idem cannot be used with is, of which it is only a stronger form (is + dem).
- 311. 1. Ipse, self, is the distinctive pronoun, and separates a subject or an object from all others:

Ipse feci, I myself did it and none other, I alone did it, I did it of my own accord, I am the very man that did it. Nunc ipsum, at this very instant, at this precise moment.

Valvae subitō sē ipsae aperuērunt, C., Div., I. 34, 74; the folding-doors suddenly opened of their own accord. (Catō) mortuus est annis octōgintā sex ipsīs ante [Cicerōnem] cōnsulem, C., Br., 15, 61; Cato died just eighty-six years before Cicero's consulship. Huīc reī quod satis esse vīsum est militum reliquit (Caesar); ipse cum legiōnibus in fīnēs Trēverōrum proficiscitur, Caes., B.G., v. 2, 4.

REMARKS.—I. Owing to this distinctive character, **ipse** is often used of *persons* in opposition to *things*; *riders* in opposition to *horses*; *inhabitants* in opposition to the *towns* which they inhabit; the *master* of the house in opposition to his *household*, *etc*.

Eð quð mð ipsa misit, Pl., Cas., 790; I am going where mistress sent me. Ipse dixit, C., N.D., 1. 5, 10; the master said (αὐτὸς ἔφα).

2. Et ipse, likewise, as well, is used when a new subject takes an old predicate:

[Locri urbs] desciverat et ipsa ad Poenos, L., XXIX. 6, 1; Locri-city had likewise (as well as the other cities) revolted to the Carthaginians.

[Camillus] ex Volscis in Aequos transiit et ipsos bellum molientes, L., VI.

2, 14; Camillus went across from the Volscians to the Aequians, who were likewise (as well as the Volscians) getting up war.

CLEERO prefers in this meaning ipse alone, but et ipse occurs occasionally (not in CAESAR OF SALLUST), and becomes the prevailing form in Livy and later.

2. Ipse is used to lay stress on the reflexive relation; in

the Nominative when the subject is emphatic, in the Oblique Cases when the object is emphatic.

Sē ipse laudat, he (and not another) praises himself. Sē ipsum laudat, he praises himself (and not another).

Piger ipse sibt obstat, Prov. (Sen., E M., 94, 28); the lazy man stands in his own way, is his own obstavle. Non egeo medicina; me ipse consolor, C., Lael., 3, 10; I do not need medicine; I comfort my-self (I am my only comforter). Eodem modo sapiens erit affectus erge amicum quo in se ipsum, C., F in., 1. 20, 68; the wise man will feel towards his friend as he feels towards himself.

## Exceptions are common:

Quique aliis cavit, non cavet ipse sibi, Ov., A.A., 1.84; and he who cared for others, cares not for himself.

Note.—Livy seems to use sometimes ipse in connection with a reflexive as if it were indeclinable or absolute: cum dies vēnit, causā ipse pro sē dictā, damnātur, L., IV. 44, 10; when the appointed day came he pleaded his own cause and was condemned.

### 4. Possessive Pronouns.

312. The Possessive Pronouns are more rarely used in Latin than in English, and chiefly for the purpose of contrast or clearness.

Manūs lavā et cēnā, C., Or., II. 60, 246; wash (your) hands and dine. Praedia mea tū possidēs, ego aliēnā misericordiā vīvō, C., Rosc. Am., 50, 145; you are in possession of my estates, (while) I live on the charity of others.

Remarks.—I. Observe the intense use of the Possessive in the sense of property, peculiarity, fitness: suum esse, to belong to one's self, to be one's own man.

Tempore tuō pūgnāstī, L., XXXVIII. 45, 10; you have fought at your own time (= when you wished). Hōc honōre mē adfēcistis annō meō, C., Leg. Agr., II. 2, 4; you visited me with this honor in my own year (= the first year in which I could be made consul). Pūgna suum fīnem, cum iacet hostis, habet, Ov., Tr., III. 5, 34; a fight has reached its fit end when the foe is down.

2. On the use of the Possessive Pronouns for the Gen., see 364.

# 5. Indefinite Pronouns.

313. Quidam means one, a, a certain one, definite or indefinite to the speaker, but not definitely designated to the hearer. In the Plural, it is equivalent to some, sundry, without emphasis.

Intereā mulier quaedam commigrāvit hūc, Ter., And., 69; meanwhile a certain woman took up her quarters here. Intellegendum est quibusdam quaestionibus alios, quibusdam alios esse aptiores locos, C., Top., 21, 79: it is to be observed that some grounds are more suitable for some questions, for some, others. Tam nescire quaedam milites quam scire oportet, Tac., H., 1, 83.

REMARKS.—I. With an adjective quidam often serves to heighten the attribute by adding a vagueness to it. (Gr. 715).

Est quodam incredibili robore animi, C., Mil., 37, 101; really he is endowed with a strange strength of mind (one that is past belief).

Quidam is often used with or without quasi, as if, to modify an expression:

Non sunt isti audiendi qui virtutem duram et quasi ferream esse quandam volunt, C., Lael., 13, 48; those friends of yours are not to be listened to who will have it (maintain) that virtue is hard, and, as it were, made of iron. Est quaedam virtutum vitiorumque vicinia, Quint., 11. 12, 4 (cf. 111. 7, 25); there is a certain neighborly relation between virtues and vices.

- 3. Quidam may be strengthened by the addition of certus or tinus:
  Vita agenda est certo genere quodam, non quolibet, C., Fin., III. 7, 24.
  Est eloquentia tina quaedam de summis virtutibus, C., Or., III. 14, 55.
- 314. Aliquis (aliqui) means, some one, some one or other, wholly indefinite to the speaker as well as to the hearer:

[Dēclāmābam] cum aliquō cottīdiē, C., Br., 90, 310; I used to declaim with somebody or other daily.

In the predicate it is often emphatic (by Litotes, 700): sum aliquis, aliquid, I am somebody = a person of importance, something = of some weight; opposed to: nüllus sum, nihil sum, I am a nobody, nothing.

This force is often heightened by a following contrast:

Est höc aliquid, tamets non est satis, C., Div. in Caec., 15, 47; this is something, although it is not enough. Fac, ut me vells esse aliquem, quoniam, qui fui et qui esse potul, iam esse non possum, C., Att., 111. 15, 8; do make out that I am somebody, since I can no longer be the man I was and the man I might have been.

- Remarks.—1. Aliquis and aliqui are distinguished as substantive and adjective; accordingly, when aliquis is used with a substantive the relation is appositional. This always occurs with Proper names; and even with other substantives the Romans seem to have preferred aliquis to aliqui. (See 107, N. 1.)
- 2. With numerals, aliquis is used like English some. Occasionally also it has the force of many a. So in Caes., B.C., 1. 2, 2, dixerat aliquis löniörem sententiam, where aliquis refers to three persons, named later.

315. Quis (quī), fainter than aliquis, is used chiefly after sī, if; nisi, unless; nē, lest; num, whether, and in relative sentences. See 107. R.

No quid nimis! Ter., And., 61; nothing in excess! Fit plorumque ut if qui boni quid volunt adferre, adfingant aliquid, quo faciant id, quod nuntiant, lactius, C., Ph., 1.3, 8; it often happens that those who wish to bring (some) good tidings, invent something more, to make the news more cheering.

Notes.-1. Aliquis is used after si, etc., when there is stress: si quis, if any; si

aliquis, if some; sī quid, if anything; sī quidquam, if anything at all.

Sī aliquid dandum est voluptātī, senectūs modicīs convīviīs dēlectārī potest, C., Cato. M., 14, 44; if something is to be given to pleasure (as something or other must), old age can take delight in mild festivities.

Aliquis is regular if the sentence contains two negatives : [Verres] nihil umquam

fēcit sine aliquō quaestū, C., Verr., v. 5, 11. (446.)

2. Quis and qui are distinguished as aliquis and aliqui, but the distinction is often neglected, even in classical Latin. See 107, N.1.

- 316. Quispiam is rarer than aliquis, but not to be distinguished from it, except that quispiam never intimates importance. Dixerit quispiam, C., Cat. M., 3, 8; some one may say.
- 317. 1. Quisquam and ūllus (adjective) mean any one (at all), and are used chiefly in negative sentences, in sentences that imply total negation, and in sweeping conditions:

[Iūstitia] numquam nocet cuīquam, C., Fin., 1. 16, 50; justice never hurts anybody. Quis umquam Graecōrum rhētorum ā Thūcǯdide quidquam dūxit? C., Or., 9, 317; what Greek rhetorician ever drew anything from Thucydides? [None]. Sī quisquam, ille sapiēns fuit, C., Lael., 2, 9; if any one at all (was) wise, he was. Quamdiū quisquam erit quī tē dēfendere audeat, vīvēs, C., Cat., 1. 2, 6; so long as there shall be any one to dare defend you, live on. Hostem esse in Syriā negant ūllum, C., Fan., 111. 8, 10; they say that there is not any enemy in Syria. Omnīnō nēmŏ ūllīus reī fuit ēmptor cuī dēfuerit hīc vēnditor, C., Ph., 11. 38, 97; generally there was never a buyer of anything who lacked a seller in him (no one ever wanted to buy anything that he was not ready to sell).

So after comparatives:

Solis candor infustrior est quam üllius ignis, C., N.D., II. 15, 40; the brilliancy of the sun is more radiant than that of any fire.

Notes.—1. Quisquam is occasionally (principally in Livr) strengthened by finus, especially after a negative: Cum multī magis fremerent, quam quisquam finus recusare audēret, L., III. 45, 4.

After sine, without, omnī is often used instead of ullo (ulla) in early Latin:
 Sine omnī cura dormias, PL., Trin., 621.

3. On quisquam as an adj., see 107, 3, N. 2. Ullus is occasionally a subst. in Livy.

2. The negative of quisquam is nēmō, nobody; nihil, nothing (108). The negative of tillus is nullus, no, none, which is also used regularly as a substantive in the Genitive and Ablative instead of nēminis and nēmine.

Nēmō is also sometimes used apparently as an adjective, though the conception is usually appositional.

Nêmỗ vir māgnus, C., N.D., 11. 66, 167; no great man, no one (who is) a great man.

Notes.-1. On neque quisquam and et nemo, see 480.

2. Nūllus is used in familiar language instead of non (so sometimes in English): Philippus nūllus ūsquam, L., XXXII. 35,2; no Philip anywhere. Quis is also used familiarly: Prospectum petit, Anthea sī quem videat, V., A., I. 181; an Antheus, i.e., Antheus or somebody who would answer for him.

3. Nēmo and nullus are occasionally strengthened by unus.

318. 1. Quisque means each one, as opposed to omnis, every, and is usually post-positive.

Mēns cūiusque, is est quisque, C., Rep., vI. 24, 26; each man's mind is each man's self. Laudātī omnēs sunt dōnātīque prō meritō quisque, L., XXXVIII. 23; all were praised and rewarded, each one according to his desert. Quam quisque nōrit artem in hāc sō exerceat, [C.], Tusc., I. 18, 41. (616.)

2. With superlatives and ordinals quisque is loosely translated every:

Optimum quidque rārissimum est, C., Fin., II. 25, 81; every good thing is rare; more accurately, the better a thing, the rarer it is. (645, R. 2.) Quintō quōque annō Sicilia tōta cēnsētur, C., Verr., II. 56, 139; every fifth year all Sicily is assessed.

3. Quisque combines readily with the reflexives, suī, sibĭ, sē, suus, in their emphatic sense (309, 2). Here, except for special reasons, the reflexive precedes. Suum cuīque has become a standing phrase.

Sua quemque fraus et suus terror vexat, C., Rose. Am., 24, 67; it is his own sin and his own alarm that harasses a man.

Notes.—1. After Cicero's time, owing to the phraseological character of the combination, suf etc. quisque, we find it used without agreement.

Exercitus āmissō duce āc passim multīs sibī quisque imperium petentibus brevī dīlābitur, S., Iug., 18, 3. Īnstīgandō suōs quisque populōs effēcēre ut omne Volscum nōmen dēficeret, L., u. 38, 6.

2. Classical but not common is the attraction of quisque into the case of the reflexive. Hace proclivitas ad suum quodque genus a similitudine corporis aegrotatio dicatur, C., Tusc., IV. 12, 28.

3. Quisque combined with primus has two meanings: (a) as early as possible, (b) one after the other in order (deinceps).

Primo quoque tempore, C., Ph., III. 15, 39; at the earliest time possible. Primum quidque (each thing in order) considera quale sit, C., N.D., 1. 27, 77.

- 4. The various uses of quisque are well summed up in Nagelsbach's formulæ:
- a. Non omnia omnibus tribuenda sunt, sed suum cuique:
- b. Omnēs idem faciunt, sed optimus quisque optimē; c. Non omnibus annis hoc fit, sed tertio quoque anno;
- d. Non omnes idem faciunt, sed quod quisque vult.

319. Alter and alius are both translated other, another, but alter refers to one of two, alius to diversity. They are used in various phraseological ways, which can be best shown by examples:

Sölus aut cum altero, alone or with (only) one other; alter Nero, a

Alter alterum quaerit, one (definite person) seeks the other (definite person); alius alium quaerit, one seeks one, another another; alterialteri, one party-another party (already defined); alii-alii, someothers. Alter often means neighbor, brother, fellow-man; alius, third person.

## Alter:

(Āgēsilāüs) fuit claudus altero pede, NEP., XVII. 8, 1; Agesilaüs was lame of one foot. Altera manu fert lapidem, panem ostentat altera, PL., Aul., 195; in one hand a stone he carries, in the other holds out bread. Mors nec ad vivos pertinet nec ad mortuos: alteri nulli (317, 2, N. 2) sunt, alteros non attinget, C., Tusc., I. 38, 91; death concerns neither the living nor the dead: the latter are not, the former it will not reach.

# Alins:

Fallacia alia aliam trudit, Ter., And., 779; one lie treads on the heels of another (indefinite series). Aliī voluptātis causā omnia sapientēs facere dixerunt; alii cum voluptate dignitatem coniungendam putaverunt, C., Cael., 15, 41; some have said that wise men do everything for the sake of pleasure, others have thought that pleasure is to be combined with dignity. Divitias alii praeponunt, alii honores, C., Lael., 6, 20; some prefer riches, others honors. Aliī vestrum anseres sunt, aliī canes, C., Rosc. Am., 20, 57; some of you are geese, others dogs. Aliud aliī nātūra iter ostendit, S., C., 2, 9; nature shows one path to one man, another path to another man.

## Alter and alius:

Ab aliō expectēs alteri quod fēceris, Syrus, 2 (Fr.); you may look for from another what you've done unto your brother (from No. 3, what No. I has done to No. 2),

Notes.—1. Alius is found occasionally, especially in late Latin, for alter: alius Nerō, Suet., Tit. 7; but in Caes., B. G., I. 1, 1, alius follows unus. Aliı for reliqui or cēteri is occasional, in the earlier times, but more common in Livy and later.

2. The Greek usage of alius in the meaning besides, is post-Ciceronian and rare.

Eō missa plaustra iūmentaque alia, L., IV. 41, 8.

## APPOSITION.

**320.** By apposition one substantive is placed by the side of another, which contains it:

Cicero orator, Cicero the orator. Rhenus flumen, the river Rhine.

#### CONCORD.

**321.** The word in apposition agrees with the principal word (or words) in case, and as far as it can in gender and number:

Nom. Hērodotus pater historiae, Herodotus the father of history; Gen. Hērodotī patris historiae; Dat. Hērodotō patrī historiae.

Cnidus et Colophon, nobilissimae urbēs, captae sunt, Cf. C., Imp., 12, 33; Cnidus and Colophon, most noble cities, were taken. Omnium doctrīnārum inventrīcēs Athēnae, Cf. C., Or., 1. 4, 13; Athens, the inventor of all branches of learning.

REMARKS.—I. Exceptions in *number* are due to special uses, as, for example, when **dēliciae** or **amōrōs**, *etc.*, are used of a Singular:

Pompēius, nostrī amorēs, ipse sē afflixit, C., Att., 11. 19, 2; Pompey, our special passion, has wrecked himself.

2. The Possessive Pronoun takes the Gen. in apposition:

Tuum, hominis simplicis, pectus vidimus, C., Ph., 11. 43, 111; we have seen your bosom bared, you open-hearted creature! Urbs meā ūnius operā fnit salva, Cf. C., Pis., 3, 6; the city was saved by my exertions alone.

3. On the agreement of the predicate with the word in apposition, see 211, r. 6.

Notes.—1. In poetry, instead of the Voc. in apposition, the Nom. is often found. Semper celebrabere donis, Corniger Hesperidum, fluvius rēgnator aquarum, V., A., viii. 77. In prose not before PLINY.

2. Very rarely persons are looked upon as things, and the Appositives used in the neuter: Dum patres et plebem, invalida et inermia, lüdificetur, TAC., Ann., I. 46.

**322.** Partitive Apposition.—Partitive Apposition is that form of Apposition in which a part is taken out of the whole. It is sometimes called Restrictive Apposition.

Māxuma pars ferē mērem hunc hominēs habent, PL, Capl., 232; man-kind—pretty much the greatest part of them—have this way. Cētera multitūdē sorte decumus quisque ad supplicium lēctī (sunt), L., 11. 59, 11; (of) the rest of the crowd every tenth man was chosen by lot for punishment.

323. Distributive Apposition.—Distributive Apposition is that form of Apposition in which the whole is subdivided into its parts, chiefly with alter—alter, the one—the other; quisque, uterque, each one; alii—alii, pars—pars, some—others. (It is often called Partitive Apposition.)

Duae filiae altera occisa altera capta est, Caes., B.G., 1. 53, 4; (of) two daughters, the one was killed, the other captured.

REMARK.—The Part. Gen, is more commonly employed than either of these forms of apposition.

Notes.—1. Partitive Apposition is not found in Cicero or Caesar, and Distributive Apposition rarely. They are more frequent in Sallust, and not uncommon in Livy.

2. The Greek figure of the whole and the part (σχήμα καθ' ὅλον καὶ μέρος) is rare and poetical in Latin. Latagum saxō occupat ōs faciemque adversam, V., A., x. 698; smites Latagus with a bowlder, full (in) mouth and face ((ff. Eng. "hand and foot").

**324.** Apposition to a Sentence.—Sometimes an Accusative stands in apposition to a whole preceding sentence; either explaining the contents of the sentence or giving the end or the aim of the action involved in the sentence. The latter usage, however, is not found in Cicero or Caesar.

Admoneor ut aliquid etiam de sepultura dicendum existimem, rem non difficilem, C., Tusc., I. 43, 102; I am reminded to take into consideration that something is to be said about burial also—an easy matter. Descrunt tribunal, ut quis praetorianorum militum occurreret manus intentantes, causam discordiae et initium armorum, Tac., Ann., I. 27.

If the main verb is passive the Appositive may be in the Nominative: Tac., Ann., 111. 27.

Notes.—1. Neuter adjectives and participles are occasionally used in the same way, and some regard such neuters as Nominatives.

2. This Acc. is to be regarded as the object effected (330) by the general action of the sentence.

# Predicative Attribution and Predicative Apposition.

325. Any case may be attended by the same case in Predicative Attribution or Apposition, which differ from the ordinary Attribution or Apposition in translation only.

NOMINATIVE : Fīlius aegrōtus rediit.

Ordinary Attribution: The sick son returned.

Predicative Attribution: The son returned sick = he was sick when he returned.

Herculēs iuvenis leonem interfēcit.

Ordinary Apposition: The young man Hercules slew a lion.

Predicative Apposition: Hercules, when a young man, slew a lion = he was a young man when he slew a lion.

GENITIVE: Potestās čius adhibendae uxōris, the permission to take her to wife.

Dative: Amico vivo non subvēnistī, you did not help your friend (while he was) alive.

Accusative : Hercules cervam vivam cepit.

Ordinary Attribution: Hercules caught a living doe. Predicative Attribution: Hercules caught a doe alive.

ABLATIVE: Aere utuntur importato, they use imported copper = the copper which they use is imported.

REMARKS.—I. The Voc., not being a case proper, is not used predicatively. Exceptions are apparent or poetical.

Quō, moritūre, ruis? V., A., x. 810; "whither dost thou rush to die" (thou doomed to die)? Sic veniās, hodierne, Tib., 1. 7, 53.

Notice here the old phrase: Macte virtute esto, H., S., I. 2, 31; increase in virtue = heaven speed thee in thy high career.

Macte is regarded by some as an old Voc., from the same stem as magnus; by others as an adverb. A third view is that macte with esto is an adverb, and only when used absolutely a Vocative.

- 2. Victores redierunt may mean, the conquerors returned, or, they returned conquerors; and a similar predicative use is to be noticed in idem, the same: Iidem abount qui venerant, C., Fin., iv. 3, 7; they go away just as they had come (literally, the same persons as they had come).
- 3. Predicative Attribution and Apposition are often to be turned into an abstract substantive:

Defends rem publicam adulescens, non deseram senex, C., Ph., 11. 46, 118; I defended the state in my youth, I will not desert her in my old age.

So with prepositions:

Ante Ciceronem consulem, before the consulship of Cicero; ante urbem conditam, before the building of the city.

- 4. Do not confound the "as" of apposition with the "as" of comparison—ut, quasi, tamquam, sīcut, velut (602, n. 1, 642): Hanc (virtūtem) võbīs tamquam hērēditātem māiōres vestrī relīqpērunt, C., Ph., IV. 5, 13; your ancestors left you this virtue as (if it were) a legacy.
- 5. When especial stress is laid on the adjective or substantive predicate, in combination with the verbal predicate, the English language is prone to resolve the sentence into its elements:

Fragilem truci commisit pelago ratem primus, H., O., 1. 3, 10; his frail bark to the wild waves he trusted first = to trust his frail bark to the wild waves he was first. Una salus victis nullam sporare salutem, V., A., II. 353; sole safety for the vanquished 'tis, to hope for none—the only safety that the vanquished have is to hope for none.

6. The English idiom often uses the adverb and adverbial expressions instead of the Latin adjective: so in adjectives of inclination and disinclination, knowledge and ignorance, of order and position, of time and season, and of temporary condition generally: libens, with pleasure; volens, willing(ly); nolens, unwilling(ly); invitus, against one's will; prūdēns, aware; imprūdēns, unawares; sciens, knowing(ly); prīmus, prior, first; ūltimus, last; medius, in, about the middle; hodiernus, to-day; mātūtīnus, in the morning; frequents, frequent(ly); sublīmis, aloft; tōtus, wholly; sōlus, ūnus, alone, and many others.

Ego eum ā mē invītissimus dīmīsī, C., Fam., XIII. 63, 1; I dismissed him most unwillingly. Plūs hodiē bonī fēcī imprūdēns quam sciēns ante hunc diem umquam, Ter., Hec., 880; I have done more good to-day unawares than I have ever done knowingly before. Adcurrit, mediam mulierem complectitur, Ter., And., 133; he runs up, puts his arms about the woman's waist. Quī prior strinxerit ferrum ēius victōria erit, L., XXIV. 38, 5 (244, R. 2). Vespertīnus pete tēctum, H., Ep., I. 6, 20; seek thy dwelling at eventide. Rārus venit in cēnācula mīles, Juv., X. 18; the soldiery rarely comes into the garret. Sē tōtōs trādidērunt voluptātibus, C., Lael., 23, 86; they have given themselves wholly to pleasure. Sōli hōc contingit sapientī, C., Par., v. 1, 34; this good luck happens to the wise man alone = it is only the wise man who has this good luck.

7. Carefully to be distinguished are the uses of **primus**, and the adverbs **primum**, first, for the first time, and **primo**, at first. **Primum** means first in a series; **primo**, first in a contrast. But these distinctions are not always observed.

Prīmum docent esse deōs, deinde quālēs sint, tum mundum ab iīs administrārī, postrēmō cōnsulere eōs rēbus hūmānīs, C., N.D., 11. 1, 3; first, they teach us that there are gods, next of what nature they are, then that the world is ruled by them, finally, that they take thought for human affairs. Prīmō Stōicōrum more agāmus, deinde nostrō institūtō vagābimur, C., Tusc., 111. 6, 13; let us treat the subject at first after the manner of the Stoics, afterwards we will ramble after our own fashion.

## B.

# 1. Multiplication of the Predicate.

326. The Multiplication of the Predicate requires no further rules than those that have been given in the general doctrine of Concord.

# 2. Qualification of the Predicate.

**327.** The Qualification of the Predicate may be regarded as an External or an Internal change:

- I. External change: combination with an object.
  - 1. Direct Object, Accusative. 2. Indirect Object, Dative.
- II. Internal change: combination with an attribute which may be in the form of
  - 1. The Genitive case.
- 3. Preposition with a case.
- 2. The Ablative.
- 4. An Adverb.

Note.—The Infinitive forms (Infinitive, Gerund, Gerundive, and Supine) appear now as objects, now as attributes, and require a separate treatment,

# I. External Change.

#### Accusative.

The great function of the Accusative is to form temporary compounds with the verb, as the great function of the Genitive is to form temporary compounds with the noun. Beyond this statement everything is more or less extra-grammatical, and sharp subdivisions are often unsatisfactory. Still it may be said that

328. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object.

The Direct Object is the object which defines directly the action of the verb.

Remark.—The Dative defines indirectly because it involves an Accusative; and the Genitive with the verb depends upon the nominal idea contained in the verb.

1. (a) The Object may be contained in the verb (Inner Object, Object Effected):

Deus mundum creavit, God made a creation—the universe.

(b) Akin to this is the Accusative of Extent:

Ā rēctā conscientiā trāversum unguem non oportet discēdere, C., Att., XIII. 20, 4; one ought not to swerve a nailbreadth from a right conscience. Decem annos (Troia) oppūgnāta est, L., v. 4, 11; ten years was Troy besieged. Māximam partem lacte vivunt, Caes., B.G., IV. 1, 8; for the most part they live on milk.

2. The object may be distinct from the verb (Outer Object, Object Affected):

Deus mundum gubernat, God steers the universe.

# General View of the Accusative.

329. I. Inner Object: Object Effected:

Cognate Accusative.

Accusative of Extent.

- 1. In Space.
- 2. In Time.
- 3. In Degree.

Terminal Accusative (Point Reached).

- II. Outer Object: Object Affected:
  - I. Whole.
  - 2. Part (so-called Greek Accusative).
- III. Inner and Outer Objects combined:
  - 1. Asking and Teaching.
  - 2. Making and Taking.
- IV. Accusative as the most general form of the object (object created or called up by the mind):
  - I. In Exclamations.
  - 2. Accusative and Infinitive.

## DIRECT OBJECT (Inner and Outer).

NOTE.—The Accusative is the object reached by the verb. This object is either in apposition to the result of the action of the verb, and then it is called the Inner Object or Object Effected; or it is in attribution to the result of the action, and then it is said to be the Outer Object or Object Affected. The Inner Object is sometimes called the Voluntary Accusative, because it is already contained in the verb; the Outer Object is sometimes called the Necessary Accusative, because it is needed to define the character of the action; both verb and substantive contribute to the result; compare hominem caedere (occidere), to slay a man (Object Affected), with homicidium facere (G. Quint., v. 9,0), to commit manslaughter (Object Effected).

# 330. Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative case:

Rōmulus Urbem Rōmam condidit, Cf. C., Div., 1. 17, 30; Romulus founded the City of Rome. (Object Effected.)

[Mēns] regit corpus, C., Rep., vi. 24, 26; mind governs body. (Object Affected.)

Remark.—Many verbs of Emotion which are intrans. in English are trans. in Latin, as: dolēre, to grieve (for); dēspērāre, to despair (of); horrēre, to shudder (at); mīrārī, to wonder (at); rīdēre, to laugh (at).

Honores desperant, C., Cat., 11. 9, 19; they despair of honors (give them up in despair). Necata est Vitia quod filii necem flevisset (541), Tac., Ann., vi. 10. 1; Vitia was executed for having wept (for) her son's execution. Conscia mens recti Famae mendacia risit, Ov., F., IV. 311; conscious of right, her soul (but) laughed (at) the falsehoods of Rumor.

NOTES.—1. From the definition of transitive given above (213, R.) it will be seen that this traditional rule reverses the poles; it is retained merely for practical purposes.

2. This Acc. with verbs of Emotion is very rare in early Latin, and is not widely extended even in the classical period. With most verbs an Abl. of Cause or a prepositional phrase is much more common, as: Cūr dē suā virtūte dēspērārent? CAES., B. G., I. 40, 4.

3. The Acc. with verbal substantives is confined to PLAUTUS: quid tibi nos

tactiost, mendice homo? Aul., 423.

4. The Acc. with verbal adjectives in -undus is rare and mainly post-classical: Haec prope contionabundus circumibat homines, L., III. 47, 2.

331. Verbs compounded with the prepositions ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, per, praeter, sub, subter, super, and trans, which become transitive, take the Accusative.

All with circum, per, praeter, trans, and subter.

Many with ad, in, and super.

Some with ante, con, inter, ob, and sub. See 347.

Pythagoras Persarum magos adiit, C., Fin., v. 29, 87; Pythagoras applied to (consulted) the Persian magi. Stella Veneris antegreditur solem, C., N.D., 11. 20, 53; the star Venus goes in advance of the sun. Omnes Domitium circumsistunt, CAES., B.C., I. 20, 5; all surround Domitius. Eam, sī opus esse vidēbitur, ipse conveniam, C., Fam., v. 11, 2; I will go to see her, myself, if it shall seem expedient. Convivia cum patre non inibat, C., Rosc. Am., 18, 52; he would not go to banquets with his father. Fretum, quod Naupactum et Patras interfluit, L., XXVII. 29, 9; the frith that flows between Naupactus and Patrae. Alexander tertio et trīcēsimō annō mortem obiit, C., Ph., v. 17, 48; Alexander died in his thirty-third year. Caesar omnem agrum Picenum percurrit, CAES., B.C., 1. 15.1; Caesar traversed rapidly all the Picenian district. [Populus] solet dignos praeterire, C., Planc., 3, 8; the people is wont to pass by the worthy. Epaminondas poenam subiit, Cf. NEP., XV. 8, 2; Epaminondas submitted to the punishment. Criminum vim subterfugere nullo modo poterat, C., Verr., I. 3, 8; he could in no way evade the force of the charges. Romani ruinas mūri supervadēbant, L., XXXII. 24, 5; the Romans marched over the ruins of the wall. Crassus Euphrätem nüllä belli causā trānsiit, Cf. C., Fin., III. 22, 75; Crassus crossed the Euphrates without any cause for war.

REMARKS.—1. If the simple verb is trans., it can take two Accusatives: Equitum magnam partern flumen traideit, Caes., B.C., I. 55, 1; he threm a great part of the cavalry across the river.

2. With many of these verbs the preposition may be repeated; but never circum: Cōpiās trāiēcit Rhodanum, or trāns Rhodanum, he threw his troops across the Rhone.

3. Sometimes a difference of signification is caused by the addition of the preposition:

Addre ad aliquem, to go to a man; addre aliquem, to apply to (to consult) a man.

#### INNER OBJECT.

**332.** Any verb can take an Accusative of the Inner Object, when that object serves to define more narrowly or to explain more fully the contents of the verb.

The most common form of this object is a neuter pronoun or adjective.

The most striking form is the so-called Cognate Accusative.

333. 1. Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives are often used to define or modify the substantive notion that lies in the verb.

Xenophon eadem fere peccat, C., N.D., 1. 12, 31; Xenophon makes very much the same mistakes. Vellem equidem idem possem gloriari quod Cyrus, C., Cat. M., 10, 32; for my part I could wish that it were in my power to make the same boast as Cyrus.

With trans. verbs an Acc. of the person can be employed besides:

Discipulos id ünum moneo ut praeceptores suos non minus quam ipsa studia ament, QUINT., II. 9, 1; I give pupils this one piece of advice, that they love their teachers no less than their studies themselves.

Remarks.—I. The usage is best felt by comparing the familiar English it after intrans. verbs, "to walk it, to foot it," etc., where "it" represents the substantive that lies in "walk, foot," etc.

2. In many cases the feeling of the case is lost to the consciousness, so especially with the interrogative quid, which has almost the force of cūr. Quid rīdēs? what (laughter) are you laughing = what means your laughter?

Id nos ad to, si quid vellos, vonimus, Pl., M.G., 1158; that's why we have come to you, to see if you wanted anything.

Notes.—1. With verbs of Emotion this Acc. gives the ground of the emotion:

Utrumque laetor (I have a double gladness, I am doubly glad), et sine dolore to fuisse et animo valuisse, C., Fam., vii. i, 1. Laetae exclamant: vonit! id quod (in this that, for this that) mo repente aspexerant, Ter., Hec., 368.

From this arises the causal force of quod, in that = because.

2. Occasionally, but at all periods, the relative is used thus, to facilitate connection with a demonstrative clause :

Quae hominës arant (what men do in the way of plowing, etc.), nëvigant, aedificant, omnia virtüti përent, S., C., 2, 7. Id ipsum quod maneam in vitë (in the very fact of my remaining in life) peccëre më [existimo], C., Fam., iv. 13, 2.

2. Cognate Accusative.—When the dependent word is of the same origin or of kindred meaning with the verb, it is called the Cognate Accusative, and usually has an attribute Faciam ut mei memineris dum vitam vivās, Pl., Pers., 494; I'll make you think of me the longest day you live. Mirum atque inscitum somniāvī somnium, Pl., Rud., 597; a marvellous and uncanny dream I've dreamed. Iūrāvī vērissimum iūs iūrandum, C., Fam., v. 2, 7; I swore the truest of oaths.

REMARK.—After the analogy of the Cognate Acc. are many phraseological usages, such as rem certare, to fight a case; foedus ferire, to make a treaty (compare, to strike a bargain); its respondere, to render an opinion; causam vincere, to win a case, etc. Also the phrases with ire: exsequias ire, to attend a funeral; infitias ire, to deny, etc.

Notes.—1. The omission of the attribute is found most often in legal phraseology, proverbs, and the like :

Māiōrum nēmō servitūtem servīvit, C., Top., 6, 29; of our ancestors no one ever slaved (what you would call) a slavery. Sī servos fūrtum faxit noxiamve noxit, XII. Tab.

2. When the Cognate Acc. is replaced by a word of similar meaning, but of a different root, the effect is much the same as when an adjective is employed with the normal Accusative. This usage, however, is rare, and mainly poetical.

Tertiam iam aetātem hominum (Nestor) vīvēbat, C., Cat. M., 10, 31 (reading doubtful). Omne mīlitābitur bellum, H., Epod., 1, 23.

3. Interesting extensions are found in the poets, and rarely in prose.

Quī Curiōs simulant et Bacchānālia vīvunt, Juv., 11. 3. Nunc Satyrum, nunc agrestem Cyclōpa movētur, H., Ep., 11. 2, 125.

 Instead of the Inner Acc. the Abl. is occasionally found: lapidibus pluere, to rain stones; sanguine sūdāre, to sweat blood.

Herculis simulācrum multo sūdore mānāvit, C., Div., 1. 34, 74; the statue of Hercules ran freely with sweat.

5. Verbs of Smell and Taste have the Inner Object, which is an extension of the Cognate variety.

Piscis sapit ipsum mare, Cf. Sen., N.Q., III. 18,2; the fish tastes of the very sea.

Non omnes possunt olere unguenta exotica, Pl., Most., 42; it is not every one can smell of foreign perfumes.

6. A poetical and post-classical construction is that which makes a substantival neuter adjective the object of a verb. This occurs chiefly with verbs of sound: nec mortale sonans, V., A., vi. 50; magna sonatūrum, H., S., i. 4, 44. Yet bolder is nec võx hominem sonat, V., A., i. 3, 28. A verb of sight is found in tam cernis acūtum, H., S., i. 3, 26. Cf. dulce ridentem, H., O., i. 22, 23.

## Accusative of Extent.

The Accusative of Extent has to do with Degree, Space, or Time.

**334.** The Accusative of Extent in Degree is confined to neuter adjectives and pronouns used substantively, multum, plūs, tantum, quantum, etc.

SI mē amās tantum quantum profectō amās, C., Att., II. 20, 5; if you love me as much as in fact you do love me.

REMARKS.—I. The number of adjectives and pronouns so used is large, and in many cases the form is felt more as an adverb than as a substantive.

- 2. Here belong the adverbial Accusatives tuam, etc., partem, vicem, which occur occasionally at all periods.
- 335. The Accusative of Extent in Space is used properly only with words that involve a notion of space. When space is not involved in the governing word the idea of extent is given by the use of **per**, through.

Trabēs, distantēs inter sē binōs pedēs, in solō collocantur, Caes., B.G., vii. 23, 1; beams two feet apart are planted in the ground. Ā rēctā cōnscientiā trāversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere, C. Att., xiii. 20, 4 (328, b). Equitēs per ōram maritimam dispositī sunt, Cf. Caes., B.C., iii. 24, 4; cavalry were posted along the sea shore. Phoebidās iter per Thēbās [fēcit], Nep., xvi. 1, 2; Phoebidas marched through Thebes. Mīlitēs aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs trīgintā altum pedēs octōgintā exstrūxērunt, Caes., B.G., vii. 24, 1; the soldiers raised an embankment three hundred and thirty feet wide (and) eighty feet high.

Remarks.—I. The adjectives in most common use with this Accusative are longus, long, latus, wide, altus, deep, high. Thickness, which was indicated in early times by crassus, is expressed by phrases with crassitūdō. Similarly occur phrases with māgnitūdō, longitūdō, latitūdō, altitūdō. Profundus, deep, never occurs with the Accusative.

2. With abesse and distare, an Abl. of Measure may also be used:
Milibus passuum quattuor et viginti abesse, Caes., B.G., 1. 41, 5; to
be twenty-four miles from....

NOTE.—When the point of reference is taken for granted, **ab** (\$\overline{a}\$) with the Abl. is occasionally used; but only by Caesar and Livy. Here it has been suggested that **ab** is used adverbially, and the Abl. is one of Measure.

(Hostēs) ab mīlibus passuum minus dubbus castra posuērunt, Caes., B.G., II. 7, 3; the enemy pitched their camp less than two miles off.

**336.** The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the verb, either with or without **per**, in answer to the question, *How long?* 

Duodēquadrāgintā annōs tyrannus Syrācūsānōrum fuit Dionysius, C., Tuse., v 20, 57; thirty-eight years was Dionysius tyrant of Syracuse. (Gorgiās) centum et novem vīxit annōs, Quint., III. I, 9 (233, N. 2). Lūdī per decem diēs factī sunt, C., Cat., III. 8, 20; games were performed for ten days. Est mēcum per diem tötum, Plin., Ep., I. 16, 7; he is with me the livelong day. Sedet aeternumque sedēbit înfēlīx Thēseus, V., A., vi. 617; there sits and shall forever sit unhappy Theseus.

REMARKS.—I. In giving definite numbers with iam, iam diu, iam dudum, etc., the Latin often employs the ordinal where the English prefers the cardinal. Compare the Ablative of Measure (403).

Mithridātēs annum iam tertium et vīcēsimum rēgnat, C., Imp., 3, 7 (230).

2. Per with the Acc, is frequently used like the Abl. of Time Within Which. Per illa tempora = illis temporibus, in those times.

So especially with the negative:

Nulla res per triennium nisi ad nutum istīus iūdicāta est, C., Verr., 1. 5, 13; no matter was decided during (in) the three years except at his beck.

3. With an Aoristic tense the dating point is given by abhine, which usually precedes the temporal designation.

Abhinc annos factumst södecim, Pl., Cas., 39; 'twas done sixteen years ago. Dömosthenös abhinc annos prope trecentos fuit, C., Div., II. 57, 118; Demosthenes lived nearly three hundred years ago.

The use of an Acc. with an Aoristic tense without a dating word, like abhine, is very rare and doubtful. Caes., B. G., II. 35, 4, has been emended.

4. Natus, old (born), seems to be an exception to R. 3, but it is only an apparent one, as the dating point is involved in the verb with which it is construed. For various constructions with natus, see 296, R. 5.

Puer decem annos natus est, the boy is ten years old. Quadraginta annos natus regnare [coepit], C., Div., 1. 23, 46; (he was) forty years old (when) he began to reign.

Notes.—1. The use of the indefinite substantival adjective is rare. Plautus uses sempiternum, Vergil introduces acternum (see example above), while perpetuum does not appear until Apuleius.

2. Here belong the phraseological uses id temporis, id actātis, which belonged to the popular speech, and never became firmly rooted in literature. Thus Cicero rarely uses them, except in his earliest works and his letters. Id genus is used after the same general analogy, but is not temporal. This occurs in Cicero but once, Att., XIII. 12, 3. CAESAR never uses any of these forms.

Poetical and rare is the extension which makes the Accusative of Extent the subject of a passive verb.

Nunc tertia vīvitur aetās, Ov., M., XII. 188 = nunc tertiam vīvitur aetātem. Tōta mihī dormītur hiems, Mart., XIII. 59, 1 = tōtam dormiō hiemem.

Normally the verb becomes impersonal or is regularly used with a proper subject, and the Accusative of Extent is unchanged: [Bellum] quō duodecimum annum Italia ūrēbātur, L., xxvii. 39, 9.

## Accusative of the Local Object.

## Terminal Accusative.

337. The activity of a verb may be defined by the Point Reached. Hence the rule: Names of Towns and small Islands, when used as limits of Motion Whither, are put in the Accusative.

So also rūs, into the country, domum, domos, home.

Missī lēgātī Athēnās sunt, L., III. 31, 8; envoys were sent to Athens. Lātōna cōnfūgit Dēlum, Cf. C., Verr., I. 18, 48; Latona took refuge in Delos. Ego rūs ībō atque ibi manēbō, Ter., Eun., 216; I shall go to the country and stay there. Innumerābilēs (philosophī) numquam domum revertērunt, C., Tusc., v. 37, 107; innumerable philosophers never returned home.

REMARKS.—1. Countries and large islands being looked upon as areas, and not as points, require prepositions, such as: in, into; ad, to; versus, -ward; in Graeciam proficisci, to set out for Greece.

2. When urbem, city, or oppidum, town, precedes the name of the city or town, the idea of area is emphasized, and the preposition in or ad is prefixed; if urbem or oppidum follows, in or ad may be omitted: In (ad) oppidum Cirtam, to, in (at) the town (of) Cirta.

When urbem or oppidum is qualified by an adjective, it regularly follows the name of the town, and has the preposition:

Iugurtha Thalam pervenit in oppidum magnum et opulentum, S., Iug., 75, 1; Jugurtha arrived at Thala, a great and wealthy town.

- 3. Domum, with a possessive pronoun, or Gen., may mean house as well as home, and accordingly may or may not have in before it: domum meam, or, in domum meam, to my house; domum Pompēii, or, in domum Pompēii, to Pompey's house; also domum ad Pompēium. Otherwise: in māgnificam domum venīre, to come into a grand house.
- 4. Ad means to the neighborhood of, often before, of military operations. Ad Mutinam, to the neighborhood (siege of) Mutina (Modena).
  - 5. The simple Acc. will suffice even for extent:

Omnir illa municipia, quae sunt a Vibone Brundisium, C., Planc., 41, 97; all the free towns from Vibo to Brundisium.

6. Motion to a place embraces all the local designations:

Phalara in sinum Māliacum prōcēsserat, L., XXXV. 43, 8; he had advanced to Phalara on the Maliac Gulf. Tarentum in Italiam inferiorem proficisci, to set out for Tarentum in Lower Italy.

Notes.—1. The omission of the preposition before countries and large islands is poetical and post-classical. Caesar shows such omission with **Aegyptus** only, Cicero not at all.

Poets and later prose writers extend the Acc. also to names of peoples and streams.
 Beginnings of this are seen in CICERO: cum Bosphorum confugisset, Mur., 16, 34.

The insertion of the preposition with names of towns and small islands is rare in good prose, but is always legitimate when the preposition is to be emphasized.

4. The use of **usque** with this Acc. to emphasize the continuity of the motion is found first in Terence, occasionally in Cicero. From Livy on it spreads and is used also with other local designations.

 Verbal substantives are also occasionally followed by this Accusative: Reditus Rômam, C., Ph., 11. 42, 108; return to Rome.

## OUTER OBJECT.

## Accusative of Respect.

**338.** The Accusative of the object affected sometimes specifies that *in respect to which* the statement of a passive or intransitive verb, or an adjective, applies. There are two varieties:

I. Definite: The Accusative of the part affected.

Percussa novā mentem formīdine, V., G., IV. 357; her mind stricken with a new dread. Iam vulgātum āctīs quoque saucius pectus, QUINT., IX. 3, 17; by this time "breast-wounded" is actually become a common newspaper phrase.

 Indefinite: cătera, alia, reliqua, omnia, plăraque, cuncta; in other respects, in all respects, in most respects.

Cētera adsentior Crassō, C., Or., 1. 9, 35; in all other points I agree with Crassus. Omnia Mercuriō similis, V., A., 1v. 558; in all respects like unto Mercury.

Notes.—1. This is commonly called the Greek Accusative, because it is so much more common in Greek, and because its extension in Latin is due to Greek influence. The first variety is very rare in early Latin; introduced into prose by Sallust, it is rare in Livy and later, and is applied usually to wounds. It is much more common in the poets. Of the second variety cotera is found here and there at all periods; the others are very rare. Good prose uses the Ablative for the first variety, and for the second, ad cotera, in coteris, per cotera, ctc.

2. Different is the Accusative with induor, I don; exuor, I doff; eingor, I gird on myself, and other verbs of clothing and unclothing, as well as passives, where the Subject is also the Agent; in which verbs the reflexive or middle signification is retained.

These uses are poetical or post-classical.

Inutile ferrum cingitur, V., A., II. 510; he girds on (himself) a useless blade. Löricam induitur fidöque accingitur önse, V., A., VII. 640; he dons a corselet and begirds himself with his trusty glaive. (Arminius) impetü equi perväsit oblitus faciem suo cruore no nosceretur, Tac., Ann. II. 17,7; Hermann pushed his way through, thanks to the onset of his charger, having smeared his face with his own gore, to keep from being recognized.

## DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE (Inner and Outer).

When two Accusatives depend on the same verb, one is the Inner and the other the Outer object. Theoretically any combination of Inner and Outer objects is allowable; practically the language has restricted its usage to varieties a and b.

**339.** (a) Active verbs signifying to Inquire, to Require, to Teach, and cēlāre, to conceal, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, and the other of the Thing.

Pūsionem quendam Socrates interrogat quaedam geometrica, C., Tusc., 1. 24, 57; Socrates asks an urchin sundry questions in geometry. Caesar Aeduos frümentum flägitābat, CAES., B.G., I. 16, 1; Caesar kept demanding the corn of the Aedui. Quid nunc tē, asine, litterās doceam? (265), C., Pis., 30, 73; why should I now give you a lesson in literature,

you donkey? Non tō cēlāvī sermönem Ampii, C., Fam., 11. 16, 3, I did not keep you in the dark about my talk with Ampius.

Remarks.-1. The expressions vary a good deal. Observe:

This then is not the only way,
For it is also right to say,
Docēre and cēlāre dē,
Interrogāre dē quā rē.

Posco, I claim, and flagito, And always peto, postulo, Take aliquid ab aliquo, While quaero takes ex, ab, de, quo.

Adherbal Rōmam lēgātōs mīserat, quī senātum docērent dē caede frātris, S., Iug., 13, 3; Adherbal had sent envoys to Rome to inform the senate of the murder of his brother. Bassus noster mē dē hōc librō cēlāvit, C., Fam., vII. 20, 3; our friend Bassus has kept me in the dark about this book. Aquam ā pūmice nunc pōstulās, Pl., Pers., 41; you are now asking water of a pumice-stone (blood of a turnip).

- 2. With doceo the Abl. of the Instrument is also used: docere fidibus, equo, to teach the lyre, to teach riding; with erudire, the Abl., in with the Abl. or (rarely) do. Doctus and eruditus generally take the Abl.: Doctus Graecis litteris, a good Grecian.
- 3. With celari the Acc. of the Thing becomes the subject, and the Acc. of the Person is retained; or the Acc. of the Person is made the subject, and instead of the Acc. of the Thing, do with the Abl. is used.

Notes.—1. There is a great deal of difference in the relative frequency of these verbs. So doceō and its compounds, rogō, pōscō, repōscō, cēlō, are common; înterrogō, ōrō, expōscō, pōstulō, flāgitō, cōnsulō, are rare, exigō (in passive), percontor, are ante-classical and post-classical. So, too, the classical Latin in general avoids two Accusatives, unless one is a neuter pronoun.

2. The construction with ab, with verbs of Requiring, is much more common than the double Acc., and in some cases is necessary; so, too, the construction with de after verbs of Inquiring.

3. Other verbs of teaching than doceo and its compounds, and orudire, always have do until late Latin, as instructe, etc. So docore, when it means to inform.

4. The Passive form, with the Nom. of the Person and the Acc. of the Thing, is sparingly used. Discere is the prose word for doceri, except that the past participle doctus is classical but rare.

Mõtüs docērī gaudet Iōnicōs mātūra virgō, H., O., HI. 6,21; the rare ripe maid delights to learn Ionic dances. Vir omnēs bellī artēs ēdoctus, L., xxv. 40,5; one who had learned (been taught) thoroughly all the arts of war.

**340.** (b) Verbs of Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, Showing, may have two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing:

[Īram] bene Ennius initium dīxit īnsāniae, C., Tusc., IV. 23, 52; well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness. Ancum Mārcium rēgem populus creāvit, L., I. 32, 1; the people made Ancus Marcius king. Catō Valerium Flaccum habuit collēgam, Cf. Nep., XXIV. 1, 2; Cato had Valerius Flaccus (as) colleague. Eum simillimum deō iūdicō, C., Marc., 3, 8; I judge him (to be) very like unto a god. Athēniēnsibus Fēthia praecēpit ut

Miltiadem sibi imperatorem sumerent, Nep., 1. 1, 3; the Pythia instructed the Athenians to take Miltiades (as) their commander. Praesta to eum qui mihi es cognitus, C., Fam., 1. 6, 2; show yourself the man that I know you to be. Quem intellegimus divitem? C., Par., VI. 1, 42; whom do we understand by the rich man?

Remarks.—I. The Double Acc. is turned into the Double Nom. with the Passive (206). Reddō, I render, is not used in the Passive, but, instead thereof, fiō, I become.

Habeō, with two Accusatives, commonly means to have; in the sense of hold, regard, other turns are used; usually prō.

Utrum prõ ancillā mē habēs an prõ filiā ? PL., Pers., 341; do you look upon me as a maid-servant or as a daughter ?

Similarly habēre servõrum loco, (in) numero deõrum, to regard as slaves, as gods.

2. With verbs of Taking and Choosing the end is indicated by the Dat. or ad with Accusative.

(Rōmulus) trecentōs armātōs ad cūstōdiam corporis habuit, L., I. 15, 8; Romulus had three hundred armed men as a body-guard.

**341.** (c) Double Accusatives, where one is the cognate, are very uncommon:

Tē bonās precēs precor, CATO, R.R., I. 3, 4. Tam tē bāsia multa bāsiāre vēsānō satis et super Catullöst, CAT., VII. Q.

Notes.-1. Curious extensions occasionally occur:

Idem iūs iūrandum adigit Afrānium, CAES., B. C., 1. 76.

2. In early Latin frequently, and in later times occasionally, the Inner object is given by a neuter pronoun, in the simplest form. Quid me vis? what do you want of me? what do you want me for? So with prohibere; also with iubere (once in Cicero and Caesar), admonere, etc.

Neque mē Iūppiter neque dī omnēs id prohibēbunt, Pt., Am., 1051. Litterae quae tē aliquid inbērent, C., Fam., XIII. 26, 3.

342. (d) In early Latin we find cases of two Accusatives with a single verb, where the verb forms a single phrase with one of the Accusatives, and the second Accusative is the object of the phrase: animum advertere, to perceive; lūdōs facere, to make game of; manum inicere, to lay hands on, etc. In classical Latin these phrases have been usually, where possible, formed into a single word: animadvertere, lūdificārī.

Animum advertit Gracchus in contione Pisonem stantem, C., Tusc., III. 20, 48; Gracchus perceived Piso standing in the assembly.

Note .- On the Double Accusative with compound verbs, see 331, R. r.

# ACCUSATIVE AS A GENERAL OBJECTIVE CASE.

343. The Accusative as the Objective Case generally is used as an object of Thought, Perception, Emotion; an ob-

ject created by the mind, evoked or deprecated by the will. Hence the use of the Accusative:

(a) In Exclamations.

(b) With the Infinitive.

1. The Accusative is used in Exclamations as the general object of Thought, Perception, or Emotion:

Mō miserum, C., Fam., XIV. I, 1; poor me! Mō caecum qui haec ante non viderim, C., Att., x. 10, 1; blind me! not to have seen all this before.

So in Exclamatory Questions:

Quō mihi fortūnam, sī nōn concēditur ūtī ? H., Ep., 1. 5, 12; what (is the object of) fortune to me if I'm not allowed to enjoy it ?

Interjections are used:

Heu mē miserum! Alas! poor me! **0** miserās hominum mentēs, **0** pectora caeca, Lucr., II. 14; oh, the wretched minds of men, oh, the blind hearts!

So, in apposition to a sentence, see 324.

Notes.—1.  $\overline{\mathbf{0}}$  with the Voc. is an address; with the Nom. a characteristic; with the Acc. an object of emotion.

2. Em, Lo! and Ecce, Lo here! have the Acc. in the earlier language:

Em tibǐ hominem! Pl., Asin., 880; here's your man! Ecce mē! Pl., Ep., 680; here am I!

So eccum, ellum, eccam, eccillam, in comic poetry.

Ecce takes only the Nom. in classical Latin. Distinguish between em and 8n, the latter of which, in the sense lo! does not appear until Cicero's time, and takes the Nominative, rarely the Accusative.

Prō takes the Vocative: Prō dī immortālēs! Ye immortal gods! The Accusative occurs in: Prō deum atque hominum fidem! C., Tusc., v. 16, 48; for heaven's sake! and similar phrases.

Ei (hei)! and Vae! take the Dative.

Ei mihi! Ah me! Vae victis! Woe to the conquered!

- 2. The Accusative and the Infinitive are combined so as to present the notion of Subject and Predicate as an object of thought or perception (527). Hence the Accusative with the Infinitive is used:
  - (a) In Exclamations. (See 534.)
  - (b) As an Object. (See 527.)
  - (c) As a Subject. (See 535.)

# DATIVE.

344. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, and always involves a Direct Object, which may be contained in the verb or expressed by the complex of verb and object.

Nêmỗ errat tini sibi, Sen., E.M., 94, 54; no one errs (makes mistakes) to (for) himself alone. Non omnibus dormiō, C., Fam., vii. 24, 1; it is not for everybody that I am asleep. Tibi exercitum patria prō sē dedit, C., Ph., xiii. 6, 14; your country gave you an army for its own defence. Mulier sibi fēlicior quam virīs, C., Ph., v. 4, 11.

NOTE.—In English the form of the Indirect Object is the same as that of the Direct: "He showed me (Dat.) a pure river;" "he showed me (Acc.) to the priest." Originally a case of Personial Interest, it is used freely of Personified Things, sparingly of Local Relations, and this despite the fact that Locative and Dative are blended in the First and Third Declensions. If a Locative, the Dative is a sentient Locative.

## Dative with Transitive Verbs.

**345**. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with Transitive verbs, which already have a Direct Object in the Accusative. Translation, to, for, from. This Accusative becomes the Nominative of the Passive. The Dative depends on the complex.

Active Form:

To: Facile omnes, quom valemus, recta consilia aegrotis damus, Ter., And., 309; readily all of us, when well, give good counsel to the sick.

For: Frangam tonsori crura manusque simul, Mart., XI. 58, 10; I'd break the barber's legs for him and hands at once.

From: Somnum mihž [adēmit], C., Att., 11. 16, 1; it took my sleep away from me.

## Passive Form:

Mercës mihi glöria dëtur, Ov., F., III. 389; let glory be given to me as a reward. Immeritis franguntur crüra caballis, Juv., x, 60; the innocent hacks get their legs broken for them. Arma [adimuntur] militibus, L., xxII. 44, 6; the soldiers have their arms taken from them. Domus pulchra dominis aedificătur non müribus, Cf. C., N.D., III. 10, 26; a handsome house is built for its owners, not for the mice.

REMARKS.—I. These constructions are found with more or less frequency at all periods. But the Dat. with verbs of Taking Away, Prohibiting, and the like, is mostly confined to poetry and later prose. The translation *from* is merely approximate, instead of *for*. When the idea of Personal Interest is not involved, the Abl. is necessary.

Is frater, qui ëripuit fratrem carcere, non potuit ëripere fato, Sen., Dial., XI. 14, 4.

A good example of a play on construction is PL., Aul., 635:

St. Nihil equidem tibi abstuli. Eu. At illud quod tibi abstuleras cedo.

2. The translation For is nearer the Dat. than To. It is the regular

220 DATIVE.

form when the Acc. is that of the object effected; when it is that of the object affected the translation is more often to; but for (in defence of) is pro: pro patria mori, to die for one's country. To (with a view to) is ad or in, and when the idea of motion is involved, the preposition must be used, even with dare, which gives its name to the Dative:

Litteras alicui dare, to give one a letter (to carry or to have).

Litteras ad aliquem dare, to indite a letter to one.

Rogās ut mea tibī scrīpta mittam, C., Fam., I. 9, 23; you ask me to send you my writings (you wish to have them). Librōs iam prīdem ad tē mīsissem sī esse ēdendōs putāssem, C., Fam., I. 9, 23; I should have sent the books to you long since if I had thought they ought to be published.

## Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

**346.** The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with many Intransitive Verbs of Advantage or Disadvantage, Yielding and Resisting, Pleasure and Displeasure, Bidding and Forbidding.

Fuit mīrificus in Crassō pudor, quī tamen non obesset ēius orātionī, C., Or., 1. 26, 122; Crassus had a marvellous modesty, not, however, such as to be a bar to the effectiveness of his oratory. Ipsa sibi imbēcillitās indulget, C., Tusc., IV. 18, 42; weakness gives free course to itself. Probus invidet nēminī, C., Tim., 3, 9; your upright man cherishes envy to no one. Catilina litterās mittit sē fortūnae cēdere, S., C., 34, 2; Catiline writes that he gives way to fortune. Dies stultis quoque mederi solet, C., Fam., VII., 28, 3; time is wont to prove a medicine even to fools. Moderārī et animō et ōrātiōnī est non mediocris ingeniī, C., Q.F., I. II. 13, 38; to put bounds both to temper and to language is the work of no mean ability. Sīc agam, ut ipsī auctorī hūius disciplīnae placet, C., Fin., I. o. 29; I will act as it seems good to the head of this school (of thought) himself. [Mundus] deo paret et huic oboediunt maria terraeque, C., Leg., III. 1, 3; the universe is obedient to God, and seas and lands hearken unto him. Virtūtī suōrum satis crēdit, Cf. S., Iug., 106, 3; he puts full confidence in the valor of his men. Illi poena, nobis libertas [appropinguat], C., Ph., IV. 4, 10; to him punishment, to us freedom, is drawing nigh.

REMARKS.—I. Of course the passives of these verbs are used impersonally (208):

Qui invident egent, illis quibus invidetur, i rem habent, Pl., Truc., 745; those who envy are the needy, those who are envied have the stuff.

2. The verbs found with this Dat. in classical Latin are: prodesse, obesse, nocere, conducit, expedit; assentīrī, blandīrī, cupere, favēre, grātificārī, grātulārī, ignoscere, indulgēre, morigerārī, studēre, suffrāgārī; adversārī, insidiārī, invidēre, īrāscī, maledīcere, minārī, minitārī, obtrectāre,

officere, refrāgārī, suscēnsēre; cēdere, concēdere; resistere; auxiliārī, cōnsulere, medērī, opitulārī, parcere, prōspicere; moderārī, temperāre (sibī); placēre, displicēre; auscultāre, imperāre, obsequī, obtemperāre, pārēre, persuādēre, servīre, suādēre; crēdere, fīdere, cōnfīdere, diffīdere, dēspērāre; accidit, contingit, ēvenit; libet, licet; appropinquāre, repūgnāre. Also nūbere, to marry (of a woman); supplicāre, to implore.

Notes.—1. Some other verbs are used occasionally in the same way, as incommodare, which Cicero uses once. Also, dolere, with Dat. of suffering person, is found sometimes in Cicero, though it belongs rather to the Comic Poets.

2. Some of these words have also other constructions. These occur usually in anteclassical and post-classical Latin; if in classical Latin a different meaning is usually found in the new construction. Thus indulgere aliquid, to grant a thing, invidere alicui aliquid, obtrectare, with Acc., suadere, persuadere, with Acc. of the Person, are post-classical and late; moderari, with Acc., is found in Lucretius and in Silver Latin; temperare, meaning mix, takes Acc. at all periods. Fidere, confidere, diffidere are found also with Ablative.

Sometimes the personal interest is emphasized when the Dat. is employed, as over against the Accusative. So regularly with verbs of Fearing, as: metuere aliquem, to dread some one, but metuere alicul, to fear for some one; cavere aliquen, to take precautions for some one; but cavere aliquem (also de, ab alique), to take precautions against some one; cavere alique re (early), to beware of a thing. Consulere aliquem, to consult a person; consulere alicul, to consult for a person. On convenire, see 347, R. 2.

Noteworthy are the constructions of invidere and vacare;

Invidere alicui (in) aliqua re (Ctc. uses prep.)
alicui aliquid (Verg., Hor., Livy, etc.)
to be grudge a man a thing.

alicuius rei (once in Horace, S., 11. 6, 84), to begrudge a thing. (alicuius) alicui rei (common), to envy something belonging to a man.

Vacare rei, to be at leisure for, to attend to a matter

Sometimes there is hardly any difference in meaning:

Comitor aliquem, I accompany a man; comitor aliqui, I act as companion to a man; praestolor aliqui (better) or aliquem, I wait for.

3. Some words with similar meanings take the Accusative; the most notable are: aequare, to be equal; decere (to distinguish), to be becoming; deficere, to be wanting; delectare, to please; iuvare, to be a help; iubere, to order; laedere, to injure; and vetare, to forbid. The Dat. also occurs after aequare and deficere.

Eam pictūram imitātī sunt multī, aequāvit nēmē, Plin., N.H., xxxv. 11, 126; that style of painting many have imitated, none equalled. Förma virös neglēcta decet, Ov., A.A., 1. 509; a careless beauty is becoming to men. Mē diēs dēficiat, Cf. C., Verr., 11. 21, 52; the day would fuil me. Fortīs fortūna adiuvat, Ter., Ph., 203; fortune favors the brave.

TACITUS is the first to use iubere with Dative; Ann., IV. 72, etc.

4. The Dat. use is often obscured by the absence of etymological translation. So nubere alicul, to marry a man (to veil for him); medērī alicul, to heal (to take one's measures for) a man; supplicare, to beg (to bow the knee to); persuādēre, to persuade (to make it sweet).

5. After the analogy of verbs the phrases audientem esse, to hear, i.e., to obey, supplicem esse, to entreat, auctorem esse, to advise, fidem habere, to have faith in, are also found with the Dative:

Sī potest tibī dictō audiens esse quisquam, C., Verr., I. 44, 114.

6. The poets are very free in their use of the Dat. with verbs of the same general

222 DATIVE.

meaning as those given. So se miscere, to mingle with: coire, concurrere, to meet; verbs of contending, as contendere, bellare, pugnare, certare; verbs of disagreement, as differre, discrepare, distare, dissentire. Here belongs haerere with the Dat., as V., A., IV. 73, which may, however, be a Locative construction.

# Dative and Verbs Compounded with Prepositions.

347. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, (post), prae, sub, and super, take the Dative, especially in moral relations.

Transitive Verbs have an Accusative case besides.

Plēbēs cūncta comitiīs adfuit, C., Planc., 8, 21; the entire commonalty was present at the election. Omnis sēnsus hominum multō antecellit sēnsibus bēstiārum, C., N.D., 11. 57, 145; every sense of man is far superior to the senses of beasts. (Ennius) equī fortis et victōris senectūtī comparat suam, C., Cat.M., 5, 14; Ennius compares his (old age) to the old age of a gallant and winning steed. Imminent duo rēgēs tōtī Asiae, C., Imp., 5, 12; two kings are menaces to all Asia. Interes cōnsiliis, C., Att., xiv. 22, 2; you are in their councils, are privy to their plans. Piger ipse sibǐ obstat, Prov. (311, 2). Omnibus Druidibus praeest ūnus, Caes., B.G., vi. 13, 8; at the head of all the Druids is one man. Anatum ōva gallīnīs saepe suppōnimus, C., N.D., 11. 48, 124; we often put ducks' eggs under hens (for them to hatch). Neque dēesse neque superesse reī pūblicae volō, C. (Pollio), Fam., x. 33, 5; no life that is not true to the state, no life that outlives the state's—that is my motto.

REMARKS.—I. The Dat. is found, as a rule, only when these verbs are used in a transferred sense. In a local sense the preposition should be employed, although even classical Latin is not wholly consistent in this matter. In poetry and later prose the Dat. is extended even to the local signification. In early Latin the repetition of the preposition is the rule.

So incumberein gladium, C., Inv., II. 51, 154, to fall upon one's sword.

2. The principal intrans. verbs with the Dat. in classical Latin are:
Accēdere (to join, or, to be added; otherwise usually preposition ad);
accumbere (once in Cic.); adesse (also with ad, in, and, in Plaut., apud);
adhaerēscere (ad of local uses); arrīdēre (once in Cic.); annuere (occasionally with Acc.); assentīrī; assidēre; antecēdere (also with Acc.);
anteīre (also with cum); consentīre (also with cum); constāre; convenīre (to suit; with cum, to agree with, especially in the phrase convenit mihī cum aliquo, I agree with); illūdere (also with Acc. and occasionally in and Acc.); impendēre (with Acc, is archaic; occasionally in); incodere (Sall., Livy, etc.); incidere (twice in Cic.; regularly in); incubāre (but incumbere regularly with in or ad); inesse (once in Cic.); inhaerēre (occa-

sionally ad or in with Abl.); inhiāre (Plaut. has Acc. only); innāseī (innātus); inservīre; insinuāre (once in Cic.; usually in); insistere (locally, in with Abl.; occasionally Acc.); instāre; invādere (once in Cic.; occasionally Acc.); regularly in); intercēdere; intercurrere; interesse (also with in and Abl.); intervenīre; obesse; obrēpere (usually in, ad); obsistere; obstāre; obstrepere; obtingere; obvenīre; obversārī; occurrere; occursāre; praestāre; praesidēre; subesse; subvenīre; succēdere; succumbere; succrēscere (once in Cic.); succurrere; superesse.

- The same variety of construction is found with transitive verbs, in composition.
- After the analogy of praestare, excellere, to excel, is also found with the Dative.
- Some trans. verbs, compounded with de and ex (rarely with ab), take the Dat., but it properly comes under 345.

Caesar Dēiotarō tetrarchian ēripuit, eldemque dētrāxit Armeniam, Cf. C., Div., 11. 37, 79; Caesar wrested from Dejotarus his tetrarchy, and stripped from him Armenia.

## Dative with Verbs of Giving and Putting.

348. A few verbs, chiefly of Giving and Putting, take a Dative with an Accusative, or an Accusative with an Ablative, according to the conception.

Praedam militibus dönat, Caes., B.G., vii. 11, 9; he presents the booty to the soldiers. But Rubrium corona dönasti, C., Verr. III. 80, 185; thou didst present Rubrius with a crown.

Natura corpus animo circumdedit, Sen., E.M., 92, 13; Nature has put a body around the mind. But Deus animum circumdedit corpore, Cf. C., Tim., 6, 20; God has surrounded the mind with a body.

Remarks.—I. These are: aspergere, to be sprinkle and to sprinkle on; circumdare, circumfundere, to surround; donare, to present; impertire, to endow and to give; inducre, to clothe and to put on; exuere, to strip of and to strip off; intercludere, to shut off; miscore, to mix and to mix in.

2. In general, classical Latin here prefers the Dat. of the person, but no fixed rule is followed.

#### Dative of Possessor.

**349.** Esse, to be, with the Dative, denotes an inner connection between its subject and the Dative, and is commonly translated by the verb to have:

[Contröversia] mihĭ fuit cum avunculō tuŏ, C., Fin., III. 2, 6; I had a debate with your uncle. An nescīs longās rēgibus esse manūs ? Ov., Her.,

224 DATIVE.

XVI. 166; or perhaps you do not know that kings have long arms? Compare non habet, ut putāmus, fortūna longās manūs, Sen., E.M., 82, 5.

REMARKS.—I. The predicate of esse, with the Dat., is translated in the ordinary manner: Caesar amicus est mihĭ, Caesar is a friend to me (amīcus meus, MY friend, friend of MINE).

2. The Dat. is never simply equivalent to the Genitive. The Dat. is the Person interested in the Possession, hence the Possession is emphatic; the Gen. characterizes the Possession by the Possessor, hence the Possessor is emphatic. The Gen. is the permanent Possessor, or owner; the Dat. is the temporary Possessor. The one may include the other:

Latini concedunt Romam caput Latio esse, Cf. L., VIII. 4, 5; the Latins concede that Latium has its capital in Rome. (Latii: that Latium's capital is Rome.)

3. Possession of qualities is expressed by esse with in and the Abl., by inesse with Dat. or with in, or by some other turn:

Fuit mirificus in Crassõ pudor, C., Or., 1. 26, 122 (346). Cimôn haběbat satis éloquentiae, Nep., v. 2, 1; Cimôn had eloquence enough.

SALLUST introduces the Dat. also for these relations.

- 4. Abesse and deesse, to be wanting, to fail, take also the Dat. of Possessor.
- 5. The Dat. of the person is regular with the phrases nomen (cognomen) est, inditum est, etc. Here the name is in the Nom. in apposition to nomen, in the best usage. Rarely in Cicero, always in Sallust, never in Caesar, more often in early and post-Ciceronian Latin, the name is found in the Dat.; either by attraction with the Dat. of the person or on the analogy of the Double Dative. The Appositional Genitive (361) is first cited from Velleius. The undeclined Nom. after an active verb appears first in Ovid; then in Suetonius.

Fons aquae dulcis, cui nomen Arethüsa est, C., Verr., Iv. 53, 118; a fountain of sweet water named Arethüsa. Apollodorus, cui Pyragrō cōgnōmen est, C., Verr., III. 31, 74; Apollodorus, surnamed Pyragrus (firetongs). Nomen Arctürō est mihǐ, Pl., Rud., 5; my name is Arcturus. Tibi nomen insānō posuēre, II., S., II. 3, 47; they called you "cracked." [Samnītēs] Maleventum, cui nunc urbī Beneventum nomen est, perfügērunt, I., Ix. 27, 14; the Samnites fled to Maleventum (Ilcome), a city which now bears the name Beneventum (Welcome). Aetās, cui fēcimus 'aurea' nomen, Ov., M., xv. 96; the age to which we have given the name 'Golden.'

#### Dative of Personal Interest.

In its widest sense this category includes the Dative with Transitive and Intransitive Verbs, already treated, and the Ethical Dative, Dative of Reference, and Dative of Agent, to follow. In its narrower sense it applies only to persons or their equivalents who are essential to, but not necessarily participant in or affected by, the result, and differs from the Dative with Transitive and Intransitive Verbs, in that the connection with the verb is much more remote.

**350.** I. The person from whose point of view the action is observed, or towards whom it is directed, may be put in the Dative. A convenient but not exact translation is often the English Possessive (Datīvus Energicus).

EI libenter mē ad pedēs abiēcī, Cf. C., Att., VIII. 9, 1; I gladly cast myself at his feet. In conspectum vēnerat hostibus, Hirt., VIII. 27; he had come into the sight of the enemy. Tuō virō oculī dolent, Cf. Ter., Ph., 1053; your husband's eyes ache; nearer, your husband has a pain in his eyes (tuī virī oculī, your husband's eyes).

Note.—This Dat, is denied by some for early Latin and is rare in Cicero. But it becomes common from Livy on. With Relative and Demonstrative pronouns it is often used by Ciceronian and Augustan poets. In the case of many of the examples we have parallel constructions with the Gen. of Possessor, which is the normal usage.

2. The Dative is used of the person in whose honor, or interest, or advantage, or for whose pleasure, an action takes place, or the reverse (Datīvus Commodī et Incommodī):

Consurrexisse omnes [Lysandro] dicuntur, C., Cat.M., 18, 63; all are said to have risen up together in honor of Lysander. [Deo] nostra altaria fumant, V., Ec., I. 43; our altars smoke in honor of the god. Si quid peccat mihi peccat, Ter., Ad., 115; if he commits a fault, it is at my cost.

## Ethical Dative.

**351.** The Ethical Dative indicates special interest in the action. It may be called the Dative of Feeling, and its use is confined to the personal pronouns (*Datīvus Ēthicus*.)

Tū mihǐ Antōniī exemplō istīus audāciam dēfendis? C., Verr., III. 91, 213; do you defend me (to my face) by Antony's example that fellow's audacity? Ecce tibǐ Sēbōsus! C., Att., II. 15; here's your Sebosus!

"She's a civil modest wife, one (I tell you) that will not miss you morning nor evening prayer."—Shakespeare.

Notes.—1. This is essentially a colloquialism, common in comedy, especially with ecce and em, frequent in Cicero's letters, occasionally found elsewhere. In poetry, notably Augustan, it is almost wholly absent; but there are several cases in Horace. Cicero does not use em. Livy does not use ecce.

2. Especially to be noted is sibi velle, to want, to mean: Quid tibi vis, insane, C., Or., 11. 67, 269; what do you want, madman? Quid volt sibi hace oratio?

TER., Heaut., 615; what does all this holding forth mean?

#### Dative of Reference.

**352.** This indicates the person in whose eyes the statement of the predicate holds good (*Datīvus Iūdicantis*).

Ut mihi dēformis, sie tibi māgnificus, Tac., H., XII. 37; to me a monster, to yourself a prodigy of splendor. Quintia formosa est multis, Cat., 86, 1; Quintia is a beauty in the eyes of many.

NOTE.—This Dative is characteristic of the Augustan poets, but it is also common enough in Cicero and the prose authors.

353. Noteworthy is the use of this Dative in combination with participles, which shows two varieties, one giving the *local* point of view, the other the *mental*, both post-Ciceronian and rare. Caesar gives the first local usage, Livy the first mental:

[Hōc] est oppidum prīmum Thessaliae venientibus ab Ēpīrō, Caes., B.C., III. 80; this is the first town of Thessaly to those coming (as you come) from Epirus. Vērē aestimantī, L., XXXVII. 58,8; to one whose judgment was true.

Notes.—1. This construction is probably drawn from the Greek, although Vitruvius shows several examples.

2. Certainly Greek is the Dat. of the person with volenti, cupienti, invito (est), etc., which is found first in Sallust, once in Livy, and sporadically in Tacitus, and later.

## Dative of the Agent.

354. The Dative is used with Passive Verbs, in prose chiefly with the Perfect Passive, to show the interest which the agent takes in the result. That the person interested is the agent is only an inference. (See 215.)

Mihř rēs töta prövisa est, C., Verr., IV. 42, 91; I have had the whole matter provided for. Cui non sunt auditae Dēmosthenis vigiliae? C., Tusc., IV. 19, 44; to whom are not Demosthenes' long watchings a familiar hearsay?

Notes.—1. Instances of this Dat. with the Tenses of Continuance are poetical, or admit of a different explanation :

Barbarus hic ego sum qui non intellegor ülli, Ov., Tr., v. 10, 37; I am a barbarus hic ego sum qui non intellegor ülli, Ov., Tr., v. 10, 37; I am a barbarian here because I can't make myself intelligible to any one.

Whenever an adj. or an equivalent is used, the Dat. Pl. may be an Ablative:

SIc dissimillimis bestiolis communiter cibus quaeritur, C., N.D., 11. 48, 123; so, though these little creatures are so very unlike, their food is sought in common. Carmina quae scribuntur aquae potoribus, H., Ep., 1. 10, 3; poems which are written when people are water-drinkers. Con ministratur pueris tribus, H., S., 1. 6, 116; Dinner is served, (the waiters being) the waiters are (but) three.

This Dat. is rare in early Latin, rare, if ever, in Caesar, not uncommon in Cicero. But it is much liked by the poets and by some prose writers, notably by Tacitus.

355. The agent of the Gerund and Gerundive is put in the Dative, at all periods.

Diligentia praecipue colenda est nobis, C., Or., II. 35, 148; carefulness is to be cultivated by us first and foremost. Desperanda tibi salva concordia socra, Juv., vi. 231; you must despair of harmony while Mother-in-law's alive,

REMARK.—To avoid ambiguity, especially when the verb itself takes the Dat., the Abl. with ab (a) is employed:

Cīvibus ā vōbīs cōnsulendum, C., Imp., 2, 6; the interest of the citizens must be consulted by you. Supplicātiō ab eō dēcernenda nōn fuit, C., Ph., xiv. 4, 11.

Where there is no ambiguity there is no need of ab:

Linguae moderandum est mihī, Ph., Curc., 486; I must put bounds to my tongue.

Note.—Poets are free in their use of this Dative; so with verbals in bilis; as, multīs ille bonīs flēbilis occidit, H.,  $\theta$ ., I. 24, 9; nūllī exōrābilis, Sil. Ital., V. 131.

## Dative of the Object For Which.

356. Certain verbs take the Dative of the Object For Which (to what end), and often at the same time a Dative of the Personal Object For Whom, or To Whom.

Něminí meus adventus labori aut sümptuí fuit, C., Verr., I. 6, 16; to no one was my arrival a burden or an expense. Virtus sola neque datur dono neque accipitur, S., Iug., 85, 38; virtue alone is neither given nor taken as a present. Habore quaestuí rem públicam turpe est, C., Off., II., 22, 77; it is base to have the state for one's exchequer.

Remarks.—I. Noteworthy is the legal phrase cui bono? to whom is it for an advantage ? = who is advantaged?

2. In the classical times the principal verbs in this construction are esse, dare, dücere, habēre, vertere, and a few others which occur less frequently. Later Latin extends the usage to many other verbs, and especially to Gerundive constructions. Dare is used principally in the phrase dönö dare.

3. The Double Dative is found principally with esse, but occasionally with other verbs. Here there seems to have been a tendency, mainly post-Ciceronian, to use the predicative Nom. instead of the Dative. Interesting sometimes is the shift in usage; thus, Cicero says est turpitūdō, Nepos, fuit turpitūdinī.

Notes.—1. In the same category, but with the idea of finality more clearly indicated, are the agricultural usages, alimento serere, conditui legere; the medical, remedio adhibere; the military terms, praesidio, auxilio, mittere, esse, etc.

2. With Livy we notice the great extension of this Dat. with verbs of seeking, choosing, etc., where classical Latin would prefer some other construction. So locum insidis (insidiarum is classical) circumspectare Poenus coepit, L., xxi. 53, 11. Tactus goes furthest in such usages. Caesar, however, shows a few instances (B. G., I. 39, 3).

3. The Final Dative with intrans. verbs is military and rare. So receptui canere, to sound a retreat, is found first in Caes., B.G., vii. 47. Sallust shows a few examples. The Dat., with similar substantives, is an extension, and is very rare. Cicero, Ph., XIII. 7, 15, says receptui signum.

4. The origin of this usage may have been mercantile (Key). In English we treat Profit and Loss as persons: Quem fors diërum cumque dabit lucro appone, H., O., I. 9, 14; "Every day that Fate shall give, set down to Profit."

On the Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive in a similar sense, see 429.

#### Dative with Derivative Substantives.

357. A few derivative substantives take the Dative of their primitives:

Iŭstitia est obtemperătio legibus, C., Leg., 1. 15, 42; justice is obedience to the laws.

Note.—We find a few examples in Plautus, several in Cicero, and only sporadically elsewhere. Usually the verbal force is very prominent in the substantives; as, **insidiās consuli mātūrāre**, S., C., 32, 2.

#### Local Dative.

358. The Dative is used in poetry to denote the place whither.

Karthāginī iam non ego nuntios mittam superbos, H., O., IV. 4, 69; (to) Carthage no more shall I send haughty tidings. Iam satis terrīs nivis atque dirae grandinis mīsit pater, H., O., I. 2, 1; full, full enough of snow and dire hail the Sire hath sent the Land.

Notes.—1. This construction begins with Accius, and is not uncommon in the Augustan poets. No examples are cited from Plautus or Terence, hence the inference is fair that it was not a colloquialism. As a poetical construction it seems to have sprung from personification.

 Occasionally the substantive is also thus construed; as in the facilis descensus Averno of Vergil (A., VI. 126).

The extreme is reached when the Dative follows ire and the like:

It caelo clamorque virum clangorque tubārum, V., A., x1.192; mounts to High Heaven warriors' shout and trumpets' blare.

3. Tendere manūs has a few times, even in Cicero and Caesar, the Dat. of the person, which is sometimes referred to this head. But the usual construction is ad. Mātrēs familiae Rōmānīs dē mūrō manūs tendēbant, Caes., B. G., vii. 48.

atomants to mare manus tentestant, enset, s.c., .....

# Dative with Adjectives.

**359.** Adjectives of Likeness, Fitness, Friendliness, Nearness, and the like, with their opposites, take the Dative:

Canis similis lupō est, C., N.D., I. 35, 97; the dog is like unto the wolf. Castrīs idōneus locus, Caes., B.G., vi. 10, 2; a place suitable for a camp. Utile est reī publicae nobilēs hominēs esse dīgnōs māioribus suīs, C., Sest., 9, 21; it is to the advantage of the state that men of rank should be worthy of their ancestors. Vir mihǐ amīcissimus, Q. Fabricius, C., Sest., 35, 75; my very great friend, Q. Fabricius. Proxumus sum egomet mihǐ, Ter., And., 636; myself am nearest to me. Omnī aetātī mors est com-

DATIVE.

mūnis, Cf. C., Cat.M., 19, 68; death is common to every time of life. (Tēstis) id dīcit quod illī causae māximē est aliēnum, C., Caec., 9, 24; the witness says what is especially damaging to that case (side).

REMARKS.—I. Many adjectives which belong to this class are used also as substantives, and as such are construed with the Genitive: amīcus, friend; affīnis, connection; aequālis, contemporary; aliēnus (rare), foreign, strange; cōgnātus, kinsman; commūnis, common; contrārius, opposite; pār, match; proprius, pecūliāris, own, peculiar; similis, like ("we ne'er shall look upon his like again"), especially of gods and men, and regularly with personal pronouns, and in early Latin; sacer, set apart, sacred; superstes (rare), survivor. Comparatives have regularly the Dative; Superlatives vary.

[Ille], cūius paucos parēs haec cīvitās tulit, C., Pis., 4,8; (he was) a man few of whose peers the state hath borne. Utinam tē non solum vītae, sed etiam dīgnitātis meae superstitem relīquissem, C., Q.F., 1.3, 1; would that I had left thee survivor not only of my life but also of my position.

2. The object toward which is expressed by the Acc. with in, ergā, adversus:

Manlius (fuit) sevērus in filium, C., Off., III. 31, 112; Manlius was severe toward his son. Mē esse scit sēsē ergā benivolum, Pl., Capt., 350; he knows that I am kindly disposed toward him. Vir adversus merita Caesaris ingrātissimus, Cf. Vell., II. 69, 1; a man most ungrateful towards Caesar's services (to him).

3. The object for which may be expressed by the Acc. with ad, to:

Homo ad nullam rem utilis, C., Off., III. 6, 29; a good-for-nothing fellow.

This is the more common construction with adjectives of Fitness.

Notes.—1. **Propior**, nearer, **proximus**, next, are also construed (like **prope**, near) occasionally with the Acc. (principally by Caesar, Sallust, Livy), the adverbial forms also with the Abl. with **ab**, off:

Crassus proximus mare Ōceanum hiemārat, Caes., B.G., III. 7, 2; Crassus had wintered next the ocean. Id propius fidem est, L., II. 41, 11; that is nearer belief, i.e., more likely.

2. Alienus, foreign, strange, is also construed with the Abl., with or without ab (a); so commonly-absonus.

Homō sum, hūmānī nīl ā mē aliēnum putō, Ten., Heaut., 77; I am a man, and nothing that pertains to man do I consider foreign to me.

- 3. Iunctus, continuents, joined, are also construed frequently with cum and the Abl.; sometimes with the Abl. only: improbitas scelere iuncta, C., Or., II. 58, 237.
- 4. Similis is said to be used with the Gen. when the likeness is general and comprehensive; with the Dat. when it is conditional or partial; hence, in classical prose, always vērī simile, Livy being the first to say vērō simile.
- 5. Adversus, opponent, seems to be construed with the Gen. once in Sallust (C., 52, 7) and once in Quintilian (xii. 1.2). Invidus, envious, is cited with the Gen. once in Cicero (Flac., 1.2), then not till late Latin; with the Dat. it is poetical; otherwise the possessive pronoun is used, as tul invidi (C., Fam., 1.4, 2). Pronus, inclined, with the Dat., occurs in Sallust (lug., 114, 2), then not till Tactrus; the usual construction is ad. Intentus, intent upon, has Abl. in Sallust (C., 2, 9, etc.);

otherwise Dat., or ad (in) with Acc. Notice the use of  $\bar{a}$ versus with Dat. in Tac., Ann., 1. 66, 2; some other examples are doubtful.

6. In poetry, idem, the same, is often construed after Greek analogy, with the Dative. Invitum qui servat idem facit occidenti, H., A.P., 467; he who saves a man('s life) against his will does the same thing as one who kills him (as if he had killed him).

7. Adverbs of similar meaning sometimes take the Dative: Congruenter nātūrae convenienterque vīvere, C., Fin., III. 7, 26.

# II. Internal Change.

#### Cenitive.

**360.** I. The Genitive Case is the Case of the Complement, and is akin to the Adjective, with which it is often parallel. It is the substantive form of the Specific Characteristic.

The chief English representatives of the Genitive are:

- (a) The Possessive case: Domus regis, the king's palace.
- (b) The Objective case with of: Domus regis, the palace of the king.
- (c) Substantives used as adjectives or in composition: Arbor abietis, fir-tree.

Remarks.—1. Other prepositions than of are not unfrequently used, especially with the Objective Genitive. (363, R. 1.)

Patriae quis exsul se quoque fügit? H., O., 11. 16, 19; what exile from his country ever fled himself as well? Boiorum triumphi spem collegae reliquit, L., XXXIII. 37, 10; he left the hope of a triumph over the Boii to his colleague.

Via mortis may be considered the way (mode) of death or the death-path, instead of via ad mortem (L., XLIV. 4, 14).

2. An abstract substantive with the Gen. is often to be translated as an attribute:

Vernī temporis suāvitās, C., Cat.M., 19, 70; the sweet spring-time. Fontium gelidae perennitātēs, C., N.D., II. 39, 98; cool springs that never fail. Compare S., C., 8, 3.

And, on the other hand, the predicative attribute is often to be translated as an abstract substantive with of:

Ante Romam conditam, before the founding of Rome. (325, R. 3.)

Notice also hie metus, this fear = fear of this, and kindred expressions: Quam similitudinem = cuius rei similitudinem, C., N.D., II. 10, 27.

2. The Genitive is employed:

I. and II. Chiefly as the complement of Substantives and Adjectives.

III. Occasionally as the complement of Verbs.

NOTE.—As the Accusative forms a complex with the verb, so the Genitive forms a complex with the Substantive or equivalent. No logical distribution can be wholly satisfactory, and the following arrangement has regard to convenience.

# I. GENITIVE WITH SUBSTANTIVES. Adnominal Genitive.

Appositive Genitive, or Genitive of Specification.

- **361.** The Genitive is sometimes used to specify the contents of generic words instead of Apposition in the same case; there are two varieties:
- 1. Appositional Genitive.—Genitive after such words as, vox, expression; nomen, name, noun; verbum, word, verb; ros, thing, etc.

Nomen amicitiae, C., Fin., II. 24, 78; the name friendship.

2. Epexegetical Genitive.—Genitive after such words as genus, class; vitium, vice; culpa, fault, etc.

[Virtūtēs] continentiae, gravitātis, iūstitiae, fideī, C., Mur., 10, 23; the virtues of self-control, earnestness, justice, honor.

Notes.—1. The former variety is very rare in Cicero, the latter much more common. A special variety is the use of the Gen. after such words as urbs, oppidum, flümen, etc. This is not found in Plautus and Terence, occurs perhaps but once in Cicero, and seems to be confined to a few cases in poetry and later prose. Often personification is at work; thus, in fons Timāvi (V., A., I. 244), Timāvus is a river god, and fons is not equal to Timāvus. Cf. V., A., VIII. 72.

2. Examples like arbor abietis (L., xxiv. 3, 4), fir-tree; arbor fici (Cf. C., Flac.,

17, 41), fig-tree, etc., occur only here and there.

3. Colloquial, and probably belonging here, are: scelus viri (PL., M.G., 1434), a scoundrel of a man; flāgitium hominis (PL., Asin., 473), a scamp of a fellow, and the like. Quaedam pēstēs hominum, C., Fam., v. 8, 2; certain pestilent fellows.

# Possessive Genitive, or Genitive of Property.

362. The Possessive Genitive is the substantive form of an adjective attribute with which it is often parallel; it is used only of the Third Person.

Domus rēgis = domus rēgia, the palace of the king, the king's palace = the royal palace.

REMARKS.—I. The Possession in the First and Second Person (and in the Reflexive) is indicated by the Possessive Pronouns (until after Livy): amīcus meus, a friend of mine; gladius tuus, a sword of thine. But when omnium is added, vestrum and nostrum are used; ārīs et focīs omnium nostrum inimīcus, C., Ph., XI. 4, 10. Sometimes the adjective form is preferred also in the Third Person: canis aliēnus, a strange dog, another man's dog; fīlius erīlis, master's son.

2. The attention of the student is called to the variety of forms which possession may take. Statua Myronis, Myron's statue, may mean:
1. A statue which Myron owns; 2. Which Myron has made; 3. Which represents Myron.

3. Sometimes the governing word is omitted, where it can be easily

supplied, so especially aedes or templum, after ad, and less often after other prepositions: Pecunia utinam ad Opis maneret, C., Ph., I. 7, 17; would that the money were still at Ops's (temple).

Notes.—1. The Family Genitive, as Hasdrubal Gisgōnis (L., xxvIII., 12, 13), Gisgo's Hasdrubal, Hasdrubal, Gisgo's son (as it were, Hasdrubal O'Gisgo), Hectoris Andromachē (V., A., III. 319), Hector's (wife) Andromache, is found twice only in Cicero, otherwise it is poetical and post-Ciceronian. Servos, however, is regularly omitted; Flaccus Claudi, Flaccus, Claudius' slave.

 The Chorographic (geographic) Genitive is rare and post-Ciceronian: Rex Chalcidem Euboeae venit, L., xxvii. 30, 7; the king came to Chalcis of (in) Euboea.

The Chorographic Genitive is not found with persons. Here an adjective or a prepositional phrase is necessary: Thalēs Mīlēsius, or ex Mīlētō, Thales of Miletus.

## Active and Passive Genitive.

- 363. When the substantive on which the Genitive depends contains the idea of an action (nomen actions), the possession may be active or passive. Hence the division into
- 1. The Active or Subjective Genitive: amor Dei, the love of God, the love which God feels (God loves); patriae beneficia, the benefits of (conferred by) one's country (376, R. 2).
- 2. Passive or Objective Genitive: amor Dei, love of God, love toward God (God is loved).

Remarks.—I. The English form in of is used either actively or passively: the love of women. Hence, to avoid ambiguity, other prepositions than of are often substituted for the Passive Genitive, such as for, toward, and the like. So, also, sometimes in Latin, especially in Livy, and later Historians generally:

Voluntās Servilii ergā Caesarem, Cf. C., Q.F., 111. 1. 6, 26; the goodwill of Servilius toward Caesar. Odium in bonos inveterātum, C., Vat., 3, 6; deep-seated hate toward the conservatives.

2. Both Genitives may be connected with the same substantive:

Veterës Helvëtiërum iniüriae populi Römäni, Cf. Caes., B. G., 1. 30, 2; the ancient injuries of the Roman people by the Helvetians.

Note.—The use of the Genitive with substantives whose corresponding verbs take other cases than the Accusative, gradually increases in Latin, beginning with the earliest times, but it is not very common in the classical language.

364. The Subjective Genitive, like the Possessive, is used only of the Third Person. In the First and Second Persons the possessive pronoun is used, thus showing the close relationship of Agent and Possessor.

Amor meus, my love (the love which I feel). Dēsīderium tuum, your longing (the longing which you feel).

Additional attributives are put in the Genitive (321, R. 2):

Iūrāvī hanc urbem meā ūnīus operā salvam esse, C., Pis., 3, 6; I swore that this city owed its salvation to my exertions alone.

REMARK.—Nostrum and vestrum are used as Partitive Genitives:

Magna pars nostrum, a great part of us; uterque vestrum, either (both) of you.

Nostri melior pars means the better part of our being, our better part.

With omnium, the forms nostrum and vestrum must be used (362, R. I).

Notes.—1. Occasionally, however, in Latin, as in English, the Gen. is used instead of the possessive pronoun; so Cicero says **splendor vestrum**  $(Att., vii. i_3 a, 3)$ , and **consensus vestrum** (Ph., v. i, 2), and one or two others; but other examples are very rare until after Tacitus, when the Singular forms, after the example of Ovid (M. i. 30), become not uncommon. See 304, 3, v. 1. "For the life of me" = "for my life."

2. On the other hand the Genitives of the personal pronouns are used regularly as

the Objective Genitive:

Amor mei, love to me. Dēsiderium tui, longing for thee. Memoria nostri, memory of us (our memory).

Occasionally the possessive pronoun is used even here; see 304, 2, N. 2, and compare "The deep damnation of his taking off."

## Genitive of Quality.

**365.** The Genitive of Quality must always have an adjective or its equivalent.

Vir māgnae auctōritātis, CAES., B.G., v. 35, 6; a man of great influence. Homō nihilī (= nūllīus pretii), Pl., B., 1188; a fellow of no account. Trīduī via, CAES., B.G., I. 38, 1; a three days' journey. Nōn multī cibī hospitem accipiēs, multī iocī, C., Fam., IX. 26, 4; you will receive a guest who is a small eater but a great joker.

Remarks.—r. The Genitive of Quality, like the adjective, is not used with a proper name. Exceptions are very rare in classical Latin (Caes., B.G., v. 35, 6, Quintus Lūcānius, čiusdem ordinis). But later they are more common.

2. The Genitive of Quality is less common than the Ablative, being used chiefly of the essentials. The Genitive always of Number, Measure, Time, Space; the Ablative always of externals, so of parts of the body. Often the use seems indifferent. (400.)

NOTE.—The omission of the adjective is not found before APULEIUS, in whom, as in English, a man of influence may be for a man of great influence.

## Genitive as a Predicate.

**366.** The Genitives of Possession and Quality may be used as Predicates.

Hic versus Plauti non est, hic est, C., Fam., IX. 16, 4; this verse is not

by Plautus, this is. Omnia quae mulieris fuerunt, viri fiunt detis nomine, C., Top., IV. 23; everything that was the woman's becomes the husband's under the title of dowry. Virtus tantārum virium est ut sē ipsa tueātur, C., Tusc., V. 1, 2; virtue is of such strength as to be her own protector.

Remarks.—I. The Possession appears in a variety of forms, and takes a variety of translations:

Hūius erō vīvus, mortuus hūius erō, Prop., II. 15, 35; hers I shall be, living; dead, hers I shall be. Nolae senātus Rōmānōrum, plēbs Hannibalis erat, L., xxIII. 39, 7; at Nola the senate was (on the side) of the Romans, the common folk (on) Hannibal's. Damnātiō est iūdicum, poena lēgis, C., Sull., 22, 63; condemning is the judges' (business), punishment the law's. Est animī ingenuī cuī multum dēbeās eidem plūrimum velle dēbēre, C., Fam., II. 6, 2; it shows the feeling of a gentleman to be willing to owe very much to him to whom you already owe much. Pauperis est numerāre pecus, Ov., M., XIII. 823; 'tis only the poor man that counts his flock ('tis the mark of a poor man to count the flock).

Observe the special variety, Genitīvus Auctōris: Is [Herculēs] dīcēbātur esse Myrōnis, C., Verr., IV. 3, 5; that (statue of) Hercules was said to be Myron's (work), by Myron.

So also with facere, to make (cause to be), which is common in Livy especially:

Rōmānae diciōnis facere, L., XXI. 60, 3; to bring under the Roman sway. Summum imperium in orbe terrārum Macedonum fēcerant, L., XLV. 7, 3; the paramount authority of the world they had brought (into the hands) of the Macedonians.

2. For the personal representative of a quality, the quality itself may be used sometimes with but little difference, as: stultitiae est, it is the part of folly; stulti est, it is the part of a fool. So, too, stultum est, it is foolish. But when the adj. is of the Third Declension, the neuter should not be used, except in combination with an adj. of the Second.

Tempori cëdere semper sapientis est habitum, C., Fam., Iv. 9, 2; to yield to the pressure of the times has always been held wise. Pigrum et iners videtur südöre adquirere quod possis sanguine parare, Tac., G., 14, 17; it is thought slow and spiritless to acquire by sweat what you can get by blood.

Some combinations become phraseological, as: consuctudinis, moris est (the latter post-classical), it is the custom.

3. The same methods of translation apply to the Possessive Pronoun in the Predicate ("Vengeance is mine"): meum est, it is my property, business, way.

Non est mentiri meum, Tea., Heaut., 549; lying is not my way (I do not lie). His tantis in rebus est tuum videre, quid agatur, C., Mur., 38, 83; in this important crisis it is your business to see what is to be done.

## Partitive Genitive.

- **367.** The Partitive Genitive stands for the Whole to which a Part belongs. It is therefore but an extension of the Possessive Genitive. It may be used with any word that involves partition, and has the following varieties (368-372):
- **368.** The Partitive Genitive is used with substantives of Quantity, Number, Weight.

Māximus vīnī numerus fuit, permāgnum pondus argentī, C., Ph., 11. 27, 66; there was a large amount of wine, an enormous mass of silver. In iūgerō Leontīnī agrī medimnum trīticī seritur, C. Verr., 111. 47, 112; on a juger of the Leontine territory a medimnus of wheat is sown. Campānōrum ālam, quīngentōs ferē equitēs excēdere aciē iubet, L., x. 29, 2; he orders a squadron of Campanians, about 500 horsemen, to leave the line.

Remark.—This is sometimes called the *Genitivus Generis*, Whether the conception be partitive or not, depends on circumstances.

Medimnus tritici, a medimnus of wheat, may be a medimnus of WHEAT (Genitivus Generis) or a medimnus of wheat (Partitive).

Note.—The reversed construction is occasionally found. Sex diës ad eam rem conficiendam spati $\bar{\imath}$  postulant, Caes., B.C., i. 3, 6, instead of spatium sex diërum.

369. The Partitive Genitive is used with the Neuter Singular of the following and kindred words, but only in the Nominative or Accusative.

tantum, so much, quantum, as (how much), aliquantum, somewhat, multum, much, plūs, more, plūrimum, most. paulum, little, minus, less, minimum, least. satis, enough, parum, too little, nihil, nothing, hoc, this, id, illud, istud, that, idem, the same, guod and guid, which and what? with their compounds.

Quod in robus honestis operae cūraeque ponetur, id iūre laudābitur, C., Off., I. 6, 19; what (of) effort and pains shall be bestowed on reputable deeds, will receive a just recompense of praise. Is locus ab omnī turbā id temporis (336, N. 2) vacuus [erat], C., Fin., v. I, 1; that place was at that (point of) time free from anything like a crowd. Satis oloquentiae, sapientiae parum, S., C., 5, 4; enough (of) eloquence, of wisdom too little.

REMARKS.—I. Neuter adjectives of the Second Declension can be treated as substantives in the Gen.; not so adjectives of the Third, except in combination with adjectives of the Second, but here usually the Second Declension adjective is attracted: aliquid bonum, or boni, something good; aliquid memorābile, something memorable; aliquid boni

et memorābilis, something good and memorable (better aliquid bonum et memorābile).

Quid habet ista rēs aut laetābile aut glōriōsum? C., Tusc., 1. 21, 49 (204, N. 3).

2. A familiar phrase is: Nihil reliqui facere. I. To leave nothing (not a thing). 2. (Occasionally), to leave nothing undone.

Notes.—1. The conception is often not so much partitive as characteristic. So Quodeumque hōc rēgnī, V., A., I. 78; this realm, what (little) there is of it (what little realm I have). Perhaps, too, such combinations as flāgitium hominis may be classed under this head. See 361, N. 3.

2. The partitive construction, with a preposition, is not found in Cicero or Caesar, but begins with Sallust:

Ad id loci, S., C., 45, 3; ad id locorum, S., Iug., 63, 6.

370. The Partitive Genitive is used with numerals, both general and special.

Special:

Centum militum, a hundred (of the) soldiers, a hundred (of) soldiers.

(Centum mīlitēs, a, the hundred soldiers.)

Quintus regum, the fifth (of the) king(s).

(Quintus rex, the fifth king.)

General:

Multī mīlitum, many of the soldiers, many soldiers.

(Multī mīlitēs, many soldiers.)

Remarks.—1. The English language commonly omits the partition, unless it is especially emphatic:

Multī cīvium adsunt, many citizens are present. Multī cīvēs adsunt, many are the citizens present.

2. When all are embraced, there is no partition in Latin:

(Nos) trecenti coniūrāvimus, I., II. 12, 15; three hundred of us have bound ourselves by an oath. Volnera quae circum plūrima mūros accopit patrios, V., A., II. 277; wounds which he received in great numbers before his country's walls.

Qui omnës, all of whom. Quot estis? how many are (there of) you? So always quot, tot, totidem.

Here the English language familiarly employs the partition. Exceptions are very rare.

3. On **mille** and **milia**, see 293. On prepositions with numerals, see 372, R. 2.

371. The Partitive Genitive is used with Pronouns.

II militum, those (of the) soldiers. II milites, those soldiers.

Illi Graecorum, those (of the) Greeks.

Fidenatium qui supersunt, ad urbem Fidenas tendunt, L., iv. 33, 10; the surviving Fidenates take their way to the city of Fidenae.

REMARKS.—I. Uterque, either (both), is commonly used as an adjective with substantives: uterque consul, either consul = both consuls; as a substantive with pronouns, unless a substantive is also used: uterque horum, both of these; but uterque ille dux. So, too, with relatives in the neuter, and with Plural forms of uterque, concord is the rule. Compare uterque nostrum, C., Sull., 4, 13, with utrique nost, C., Fam., XI. 20, 3. See 292.

2. On the use of prepositions instead of the Genitive, see 372, R. 2.

Note. The use of the relative with the Genitive is characteristic of Livy.

**372.** The Partitive Genitive is used with Comparatives and Superlatives:

Prior hōrum in proeliō cecidit, Nep., XXI. 1, 2; the former of these fell in an engagement. Indus est omnium flüminum māximus, C., N.D., II. 52, 130 (211, R. 2).

Remarks.—1. When there are only two, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison (300).

- 2. Instead of the Partitive Genitive with Numerals, Pronouns, Comparatives, and Superlatives, the Abl. may be employed with ex, out of, dē, from (especially with proper names and singulars), in, among (rare), or the Acc. with inter, among, apud: Gallus provocat unum ex Romanis, the Gaul challenges one of the Romans; unus dō multis, one of the many (the masses); Croesus inter rēgēs opulentissimus, Croesus, wealthiest of kings. With unus, ex or dō is the more common construction, except that when unus is first in a series, the Gen. is common.
  - 3. On the concord of the Superlative see 211, R. 2.

Notes.—1. The Partitive Genitive with positives is occasional in poetry; in prose it begins with Livy and becomes more common later.

Sequimur tē, sāncte deōrum, V., A., IV. 576; we follow thee, holy deity. Canum dēgenerēs (caudam) sub alvom flectunt, Plin., N.H., XI., 50, 265; currish dogs curl the tail up under the belly.

2. Substantival neuters, with no idea of quantity, were rarely followed by the Genin early Latin. Cicero shows a few cases of Plurals of superlatives, and one case of a Plural of a comparative in this construction: in interiora aedium Sullae (Att. iv., 3, 3). Caesar shows one case of a positive: in occultis ac reconditis templi (B. C., iii. 105, 5). Sallust shows the first case of the Singular: in praerupti montis extremo (Iug., 37, 4). Then the usage extends and becomes common, especially in Tacitus. In the poets it begins with Lucretius.

Ardua dum metuunt āmittunt vēra viāī (29, N. 2), Lucr., 1. 660; the while they fear the steeper road, they miss the true.

So amara curarum, H., O., IV. 12, 19; bitter elements of cares, bitter cares; strata viarum, V., A., I. 422 = stratae viae, the paved streets.

3. The Partitive Genitive is also used with Adverbs of Quantity, Place, Extent: armorum adfatim, L., xxvii. 17, 7; abundance of arms. ubi terrarum, gentium? where in the world? (Very late Latin, tum temporis, at that time.) The usage with hūc, eō, as hūc, eō arrogantiae processit, he got to this, that pitch of presumption, is a colloquialism, which begins with Sallust, but is not found in Cicero or Caesar.

Notice especially the phrase: quod (or quoad) sius (facere) possum, as far as I can do so: C., Fam., III. 2, 2; Att., XI. 12, 4; Inv., II., 6, 20.

4. The Partitive Genitive with proper names is rare, and mostly confined to Livy: Consulum Sulpicius in dextro Poetelius in laevo cornū consistunt, L., 1x. 27, 8.
5. The Partitive Genitive as a Predicate is Greekish: Fies nobilium tū quoque

fontium, H., O., III., 13, 13; thou too shalt count among the famous fountains.

### Genitive with Prepositional Substantives.

373. Causā, grātiā, ergō, and īnstar are construed with the Genitive.

[Sophistae] quaestūs causā philosophābantur, C., Ac., II. 23, 72; the professors of wisdom dealt in philosophy for the sake of gain. Tū mē amōris magis quam honōris servāvistī grātiā, Enn., F., 287 (m.); thou didst save me more for love's (sake) than (thou didst) for honor's sake. Virtūtis ergō, C., Opt. Gen., 7, 19; on account of valor. Īnstar montis equus, V., A., II. 15; a horse the bigness of a mountain. Platō mihī ūnus īnstar est omnium, C., Br., 51, 191; Plato by himself is in my eyes worth them all.

Remarks.—I. Causā and grātiā, for the sake, commonly follow the Gen. in classical Latin and also in the Jurists. In Livy and later they often precede. Ergō, on account, belongs especially to early Latin, except in formulæ and laws, and follows its Genitive. It is rare in the poets. Instar is probably a fossilized Infinitive (Instare), meaning "the equivalent," whether of size or value.

2. Except for special reasons causā takes the possessive pronoun in agreement, rather than the personal pronoun in the Genitive; more rarely grātiā:

Vestrā reique pūblicae causā, C., Verr., v. 68, 173; for your sake and that of the commonwealth. But in antithesis, multa quae nostrī causā numquam facerēmus, facimus causā amīcōrum! C., Lael., 16, 57 (disputed).

## II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

374. Adjectives of Fulness, of Participation, and of Power, of Knowledge and Ignorance, of Desire and Disgust, take the Genitive.

Plēnus rīmārum, Ter., Eun., 105; full of chinks ("a leaky vessel"). Particeps cōnsilit, C., Sull., 4, 12; a sharer in the plan. Mentis compos, C., Ph., 11. 38, 97; in possession of (one's) mind. Multārum rērum perītus, C., Font., 11, 25; versed in many things. Cupidus pecūniae, Cf. C., Verr., 1. 3, 8; grasping after money. Fāstīdiōsus Latīnārum (lītterārum), C., Br., 70, 247; too dainty for Latin. Omnium rērum inscius, C., Br., 85, 292; a universal ignoramus. Cūr nōn ut plēnus vītae convīva recēdis? Lucr., III. 938 (273). Sitque memor nostrī necne, referte mihī, Ov., Tr., IV.

3, 10 (204, N. 7). Conscia mens recti Famae mendacia risit, Ov., F., IV. 311 (330, R.). Agricolam laudat iüris lēgumque perītus, H., S., I. I, 9; the husbandman('s lot) is praised by the counsel learned in the law. Omnes immemorem beneficii ōdērunt, C., Off., 11. 18, 63; all hate a man who has no memory for kindness. (Bēstiae) sunt rationis et orātionis expertes, C., Off., 1. 16. 50; beasts are devoid of reason and speech (lack discourse of reason). Omnia plēna consiliorum, inānia verborum vidēmus, C., Or., 1. 9, 37; we see a world that is full of wise measures, void of eloquence. Gallia frugum fertilis fuit, L., v. 34, 2; Gaul was productive of grain.

Notes .- 1. Of adjectives of Fulness, with the Gen., only plenus, repletus, inops, and inanis are classical and common; single instances are found of liberalis, profūsus, in Sallust (C., 7, 6; 5, 4), and iēiūnus occurs once in Cicero. Plautus also uses onustus and prodigus. Poets and later prose writers are free. Plenus occurs very rarely with the Abl. in CICERO and CAESAR, more often in LIVY. Refertus is used by CICERO usually with the Abl. of the Thing and with the Gen. of the Person.

2. Participation: Classical are particeps, expers, consors, with some adjectives expressing guilt, as manifēstus (archaic), affīnis, reus. Of these particeps takes also the Dat. in post-classical Latin, and expers has also the Abl. (not classical) from PLAUTUS on. (See S., C., 33, 1.) Affinis has the Dat. in Livy, in local sense also in CICERO; reus takes Abl. or de.

3. Power: Compos alone is classical, and is occasionally found with Abl. in SAL-LUST, VERGIL, LIVY. Potens is found in PLAUTUS, the poets, and post-classical prose; impos in PLAUTUS, and then not until SENECA.

4. Knowledge and Ignorance; Classical are some eighteen. Of these peritus has also Abl., and rarely ad; insuētus takes also Dat. as well as dē; prūdēns has also ad ; rudis has Abl. with in more often than the Gen. in CICERO, but also ad. Ante-

classical Latin shows a few more adjectives. 5. Desire and Disgust: Classical are avidus, cupidus, fāstīdiosus, studiosus. Of these avidus has also in with Acc. and with Abl.; studiosus has Dat. in PLAUTUS (M.G., 801); single examples are cited with ad and in, Fastidiosus occurs but once in Cicero (see above); see H., O., III. 1, 87.

6. In later Latin and in the poets almost all adjectives that denote an affection of the mind take a Gen. of the Thing to which the affection refers, where model prose requires the Abl. or a preposition: consilii ambiguus, TAC., H., IV. 21; doubtful of purpose. Ingrātus salūtis, V., A., x. 665.

The analogy of these adjectives is followed by others, so that the Gen. becomes a

complement to the adjective, just as it is to the corresponding substantive.

Integer vitae, H., O., I. 22, 1; spotless of life; like integritas vitae. (Compare fama et fortunis integer, S., H., II. 41, 5 D; in fame and fortunes intact.)

7. The seat of the feeling is also put in the Gen., chiefly with animi and ingenii (which were probably Locatives originally). Aeger animi, L., 1. 58, 9; sick at heart, heartsick. Audāx ingenii, Stat., S., III. 2, 64; daring of disposition. The Pl. is animīs.

8. The Gen. with adjectives involving Separation instead of the Abl. (390, 3) begins with the Augustan poets; though Sallust shows nudus and vacuus (Iug., 79, 6; 90, 1); līber laborum, H., A.P., 212.

9. Classical Latin uses certus with Gen. only in the phrase certiorem facere, to inform, which has also de (always in CAESAR).

10. Dignus, worthy, and indignus, unworthy, with Gen. are poetical and rare.

11. On alienus, strange, see 359, N. 2. On aequalis, communis, conscius, contrārius, pār, proprius, similis, superstes, and the like, see 359, R. I.

#### Genitive with Verbals.

375. Some Present Participles take the Genitive when they lose their verbal nature; and so occasionally do verbals in -āx in poetry and later prose.

(Epaminondās) erat adeō vēritātis dīligēns ut nē iocō quidem mentīrētur, Nep., xv. 3, 1; Epaminondas was so careful (such a lover) of the truth as not to tell lies even in jest. Omnium cōnsēnsū capāx imperiī nisi imperāsset, Tac., H., 1. 49; by general consent capable of empire, had he not become emperor.

Notes.—1. The participle is transient; the adjective permanent. The simple test is the substitution of the relative and the verb: amāns (participle), loving (who is loving); amāns (adjective), fond, (substantive), lover; patiens (participle), bearing (who is bearing); patiens (adjective), enduring, (substantive), a sufferer.

2. Ante-classical Latin shows only amāns, cupiēns, concupiēns, fugitāns, gerēns, persequēns, sciēns, temperāns. Cicero carries the usage very far, and it is characteristic of his style. Caesar, on the other hand, has very few cases (B. C., I. 69, 3).

CICERO also shows the first case of a Gen. after a compared participle. Sumus nātūrā appetentissimī honestātis, C., Tusc., II. 24, 58. These participles can also revert to the verbal constructions.

3. Of verbals with the Gen., Plautus shows one example: mendāx (Asin., 855); Cicero perhaps one: rapāx (Lael., 14, 50). The usage in later Latin and the poets is confined at most to about one dozen verbals.

#### III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

# Genitive with Verbs of Memory.

376. Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting, take the Genitive.

Të veteris amicitiae commonefecit, [C.] ad Her., IV. 24, 33; he reminded you of your old friendship. Est proprium stultitiae aliörum vitia cernere, oblivisei suörum, C., Tusc., III. 30, 73; the fact is, it shows a fool to have keen eyes for the faults of others, to forget one's own. Ipse indet mortis të meminisse deus, Mart., II. 59; a god himself bids you remember death.

REMARKS.—I. Verbs of Reminding take more often the Abl. with dē (so regularly in Cicero), and the Acc. neut. of a pronoun or Numeral adjective. Tacitus alone uses monēre with the Gen. (Ann., I. 67, 1).

Ōrō ut Terentiam moneātis dē tēstāmentō, C., Att., XI. 16, 5; I beg you to put Terentia in mind of the will. Discipulōs id ūnum moneō, QUINT., II. 9, 1 (333, 1).

Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting also take the Acc., especially of Things;

Haec ölim meminisse iuvābit, V., A., 1. 203; to remember these things one day will give us pleasure. Quī sunt bonī cīvēs, nisi quī patriae beneficia meminērunt? C., Planc., 33, 80; who are good citizens except those who remember the benefits conferred by their country? Oblivīscī nihil solēs nisi iniūriās, C., Lig., 12, 35; you are wont to forget nothing except injuries.

**Recordor** (literally = I bring to heart, to mind) is construed with the Acc. of the Thing, except in three passages from Cicero;  $d\bar{e}$  is found with Persons.

Et vocem Anchisae magni voltumque recordor, V., A., VIII. 156; and I recall (call to mind) the voice and countenance of Anchises the Great.

**Memini,** I bear in mind, I (am old enough to) remember, takes the Accusative:

[Antipatrum] tū probē meministī, C., Or., III. 50, 194; you remember Antipater very well.

3. Venit mihi in mentem, it comes into (up to) my mind, may be construed impersonally with the Gen., or personally with a subject; the latter by Cicero only when the subject is a neuter pronoun.

Venit mihř Platonis in mentem, C., Fin., v. 1, 2; Plato rises before my mind's eye.

### Genitive with Verbs of Emotion.

377. Misereor, I pity, takes the Genitive, and miseret, it moves to pity, paenitet, it repents, piget, it irks, pudet, it makes ashamed, taedet and pertaesum est, it tires, take the Accusative of the Person Who Feels, and the Genitive of the Exciting Cause.

Miserēminī sociōrum, C., Verr., I. 28, 72; pity your allies! Suae quemque fortūnae paenitet, C., Fam., vi. 1, 1; each man is discontented with his lot. Mē non solum piget stultitiae meae, sed etiam pudet, C., Dom., 11, 29; I am not only fretted at my folly, but actually ashamed of it.

REMARKS.—I. Pudet is also used with the Gen. of the Person whose Presence excites the shame:

Pudet deōrum hominumque, L., III. 19, 7; it is a shame in the sight of gods and men.

- 2. These Impersonals can also have a subject, chiefly a Demonstrative or Relative pronoun: Non to have pudent? Ter., Ad., 754; do not these things put you to the blush?
- 3. Other constructions follow from general rules. So the Inf. (422) and quod (542).

Non me vixisse paenitet, C., Cat. M., 23, 84 (540). Quintum paenitet quod animum tuum offendit, Cf. C., Att., XI. 13, 2; Quintus is sorry that he has wounded your feelings.

Notes.—1. With the same construction are found misered (early Latin), miseresco (poetical), dispudet (early Latin), distance (early Latin), vereor (mostly in early Latin), and a few others.

2. Miserārī and commiserārī, to pity, commiserate, take Acc. until very late Latin.

#### Genitive with Judicial Verbs.

The Genitive with Judicial Verbs belongs to the same category as the Genitive with Verbs of Rating, both being extensions of the Genitive of Quality.

378. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting take the Genitive of the Charge.

(Miltiadēs) accūsātus est proditionis, Nep., 1.7,5; Militiades was accused of treason. [Fannius] C. Verrem Insimulat avāritiae, C., Verr., 1.49, 128; Fannius charges Gaius Verres with avarice. Video non tō absolūtum esse improbitātis sed illos damnātos esse caedis, C., Verr., 1.28, 72; I see not that you are acquitted of dishonor, but that they are convicted of murder.

REMARKS.—I. Judicial Verbs include a number of expressions and usages. So capī, tenērī, dēprehendī, sē adstringere, sē adligāre, sē obligāre (ante-classical), and others, mean to be found guilty; increpāre, increpitāre, urgēre, dēferre, arguere, etc., mean charge.

So also kindred expressions: reum facere, (to make a party) to indict, to bring an action against; nomen deferre de, to bring an action against; sacrilegii compertum esse, to be found (guilty) of sacrilege.

- 2. For the Gen. of the Charge may be substituted nomine or crimine with the Gen., or the Abl. with dē: nomine (crimine) coniūrātionis damnāre, to find guilty of conspiracy; accūsāre dē vī, of violence (Gen. vis rare); dē venēficio, of poisoning; dē rēbus repetundīs, of extortion. Postulāre always has dē in Cicero. We find sometimes in with Abl.; convictus in crīmine, on the charge; or, inter: inter sīcārios damnātus est, convicted of homicide (C., Cluent., 7, 21; Cf. Ph., II. 4, 8).
- 3. Verbs of Condemning and Acquitting take the Abl. as well as the Gen. of the Charge and the Punishment, and always the Abl. of the definite Fine; the indefinite Fine, quanti, dupli, quadrupli, etc., is in the Genitive.

Accūsāre capitis, or capite, to bring a capital charge. Damnāre capitis, or capite, to condemn to death. Damnārī decem mīlibus, to be fined ten thousand.

Multare, to mulct, is always construed with the Ablative: Multare pecunia, to mulct in (of) money.

Manlius virtūtem fīliī morte multāvit, QUINT., v. 11, 7; Manlius punished the valor of his son with death.

4. Destination and Enforced Labor are expressed by ad or in, but all examples are post-classical: damnārī ad bēstiās, to be condemned (to be

thrown) to wild beasts; ad (in) metalla, to the mines; ad (in) opus publicum, to hard labor. Voti damnāri, to be bound to fulfil a vow, is Livian (except Nep., XX. 5, 3, where it has a different sense).

5. Verbs of Accusing may have also the Acc. of the Thing and the Gen. of the Person: inertiam accusas adulescentium, C., Or., 1. 58, 246.

## Genitive with Verbs of Rating and Buying.

**379.** Verbs of Rating and Buying are construed with the Genitive of the general value or cost, and the Ablative of the particular value or cost. (404.)

Verbs of Rating are: aestimāre, exīstimāre (rare), to value; putāre, to reckon; dūcere (rare in Cicero), to take; habēre, to hold; pendere (mostly in Comedy), to weigh; facere, to make, put; esse, to be (worth); fierī, to be considered.

Verbs of Buying are: emere, to buy; vēndere, to sell; vēnīre, to be for sale; stāre and constāre, to cost, to come to; prostāre, licēre, to be exposed, left (for sale); conducere, to hire; locāre, to let.

# 380. 1. Verbs of Rating take:

Māgni, much, plūris, more, plūrimi, māximi, most,
Parvi, little, minōris, less, minimi, least,
Tanti, tantīdem, so quantī (and compounds), nihili, naught.

much, how much,

Equivalents of nihili, nothing, are floce, a lock of wool, naue, a trifle, assis, a copper, pili (both in Catullus, mainly), and the like, and so also hūius, that (a snap of the finger), all usually with the negative.

Dum no ob malefacta, peream; parvi existumo, Pl., Capt., 682,; so long as it be not for misdeeds, let me die; little do I care. [Voluptātem] virtūs minimi facit, C., Fin., II. 13, 42; virtue makes very little account of the pleasure of the senses. [Iūdicēs] rem pūblicam floccī non faciunt, Cf. C., Att., IV. 15, 4; the judges do not care a fig for the State. Non habed naucī Marsum augurem, C., Div., I. 58, 132; I do not value a Marsian augur a baubee.

Remark.—Tanti is often used in the sense of operae pretium est = ii is worth while.

Est mihi tanti hūius invidiae tempestātem subire, C., Cat., 11. 7, 15; it is worth while (the cost), in my eyes, to bear this storm of odium.

Notes.—1. Aestimō is found with the Abl. as well as with the Genitive. So aestimāre māgnō and māgnī, to value highly. Cicero prefers the Ablative.

2. Observe the phrases: bonī (aequī bonīque) faciō (a colloquialism), bonī consulo (an old formula), I put up with, take in good part. Non pēnsī habēre (dūcere), to consider not worth the while, is post-Augustan and rare.

2. Verbs of Buying take tanti, quanti, plūris, and minōris, The rest are put in the Ablative.

Vēndō meum (frümentum) nōn plūris quam cēterī, fortasse etiam minōris, C., Off., III. 12, 51; I sell my corn not dearer than everybody else, perhaps even cheaper. Magis illa iuvant quae plūris emuntur, Juv., XI. 16; things give more pleasure which are bought for more. Emit (Canius hortōs) tantī quantī Pythius voluit, C., Off., III. 14, 59; Canius bought the gardens at the price Pythius wanted.

Quanti cēnās? What do you give for your dinner? Quanti habitās? What is the rent of your lodgings?

But:

Parvō famēs constat, māgnō fāstīdium, Sen., E.M., 17, 4; hunger costs little, daintiness much.

An instructive shift:

Emit? perii hercle: quanti?—Viginti minis, Ter., Eun., 984; he bought her? I'm undone. For how much?—Twenty minae.

Remark.—Bene emere, to buy cheap; bene vēndere, to sell dear; male emere, to buy dear; male vēndere, to sell cheap. So, too, other adverbs: melius, optimē, pēius, pessimē.

### Genitive with Interest and Refert.

381. Interest and Refert take a Genitive of the Person, seldom of the Thing, concerned.

Interest omnium recte facere, C., Fin., II. 22, 72; it is to the interest of all to do right. Refert compositionis quae quibus anteponas, Quint., IX. 4, 44; it is of importance for the arrangement of words, which you put before which.

Instead of the Genitive of the personal pronouns, the Ablative Singular feminine of the possessives is employed.

Meā interest, meā rēfert, I am concerned.

Notes.—1. Refert is commonly used absolutely, occasionally with meā, etc., seldom with the Gen., in the classical language.

2. Instead of Apposition use the Relative:

Vehementer intererat vestrā, quī patrēs estis, līberēs vestrēs hīc potissimum dīscere, Plin., Ep., iv. 13, 4; it were vastly to the interest of you parents, that your children, if possible, were taught at home.

3. The Nom. as a subject is rare, except in Pliny's Natural History:

Ūsque adeō māgnī rēfert studium atque voluptās, Luck., IV. 984.

Occasionally the Nom. of a neuter pronoun is found:

Quid (Acc.) tuā id (Nom.) refert? Ter., Ph., 723; what business is that of yours?

4. Refert is the more ancient, and is employed by the poets (interest is excluded from Dactylic poetry by its ordinary forms) to the end of the classical period. Interest is peculiar to prose, employed exclusively by Caesar, and preferred by Cicero when a complement is added.

- 5. No satisfactory explanation has been given of this construction. One view is that meā rēfert was originally [ex] meā rēfert (like ex meā rē est), it is to my advantage, and that the ex was lost. Interest having much the same force, but being later in development, took the constructions of rēfert by false analogy. The Gen. would be but parallel to the possessive.
- 382. 1. The Degree of Concern is expressed by an Adverb, Adverbial Accusative, or a Genitive of Value.

Id meā minumē rēfert, Ter., Ad., 881; that makes no difference at all to me. Theodorī nihil interest, C., Tusc., I. 43, 102; It is no concern of Theodorus. Māgnī interest meā ūnā nos esse, C., Att., XIII. 4; it is of great importance to me that we be together.

2. The Object of Concern is commonly put in the Infinitive, Accusative and Infinitive, ut or ne with the Subjunctive, or an Interrogative Sentence.

Quid Milōnis intererat interfici Clōdium? C., Mil., 13.34; what interest had Milo in Clodius' being killed? [Caesar dicere solebat] non tam suā quam reī pūblicae interesse utī salvus esset, Suet., Iul., 86; Caesar used to say that it was not of so much importance to him(self) as to the State that his life should be spared. Vestrā interest no imperatorem pessimī faciant, Tac., H., 1. 30; it is to your interest that the dregs of creation do not make the emperor. Quid rofert tālēs versūs quā voce legantur? Juv., xi. 182; what matters it what voice such verses are recited with?

3. The Thing Involved is put in the Accusative with ad:

Māgnī ad honorem nostrum interest quam prīmum mē ad urbem venīre, C., Fam., XVI. 1, 1; it makes a great difference touching our honor that I should come to the city as soon as possible.

#### Occasional Uses.

383. r. The Genitive is found occasionally with certain Verbs of Fulness: in classical Latin principally implere, complere, egère, indigère.

Pisō multōs cōdicēs implēvit eārum rērum, C., Verr. 1. 46, 119; Piso filled many books full of those things. Virtūs plūrimae commentātionis et exercitātionis indiget, Cf. C., Fin., III. 15, 50; virtue stands in need of much (very much) study and practice.

Notes.—1. Classical Latin shows in all cases the Abl. much more frequently than the Gen., except in the case of indigere, where Cicero prefers the Genitive. Livy likewise prefers the Gen. with implere.

2. Ante-classical and poetic are explere (Verg.), abundare (Luc.), scatere (Lucr.), saturare (Plaut.), obsaturare (Ter.), carere (Ter.). Carere and egere

have the Acc. occasionally in early Latin.

3. Other Grecisms are laborum decipitur, H., O., II. 13. 38 (reading doubtful).

Rēgnāvit populörum, H., O., 111. 30, 12. Also mīrārī with Gen. in Vergil (A., XL 126). Noteworthy is the occasional use of crēdere with Gen. in Plautus; so once falli,

2. A Genitive of Separation, after the analogy of the Greek, is found in a few cases in the poets.

Ut mē omnium iam laborum levās, P.L., Rud. 247; how you relieve me at last of all my toils and troubles. Dēsine mollium tandem querēllārum, H., O., 11. 9, 17; cease at last from womanish complainings.

3. The Genitive in Exclamations occurs in a very few instances in the poets. Cat., IX. 5; Prop., IV. (v.) 7, 21; compare Pl., Most., 912; Lucan, II. 45.

On the Genitive after comparatives, see 296, N. 2.

### ABLATIVE.

**384.** The Ablative is the Adverbial, as the Genitive is the Adjective case. It contains three elements:

A. Where? B. Whence? C. Wherewith?

In a literal sense, the Ablative is commonly used with prepositions; in a figurative sense, it is commonly used without prepositions.

A. The Ablative of the Place Where appears in a figurative sense as the Ablative of the Time When.

B. The Ablative of the Place Whence appears as:

1. The Ablative of Origin. 2. The Ablative of Measure.

C. The Ablative of the Thing Wherewith appears in a figurative sense, as:

1. The Ablative of Manner. 2. The Ablative of Quality. 3. The Ablative of Means.

Remark.—It is impossible to draw the line of demarcation with absolute exactness. So the Ablative of Cause may be derived from any of the three fundamental significations of the case, which is evidently a composite one.

To these we add:

D. The Ablative of Cause. E. The Ablative Absolute.

# I. The Literal Meanings of the Ablative.

# A. ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHERE.

#### Ablātīvus Locālis.

**385.** The Ablative answers the question *Where?* and takes as a rule the preposition in.

In portū nāvigō, Ter., And., 480; I am sailing in harbor. Pons in Hibērō prope effectus (erat), Caes., B.C., 1.62, 3; the bridge over the

Ebro was nearly finished. Histriö in scaenă [est], Pl., Poen., 20; the actor is on the stage. Haeret in equö senex, Cf. C., Dei., 10, 28; the old man sticks to his horse.

REMARKS.—I. Verbs of Placing and kindred significations take the Abl. with in, to designate the result of the motion: classical are ponere, to place, and compounds; locare, collocare, to put; statuere, constituere, to set; considere, to settle; defigere, to plant; demergere, to plunge; imprimere, to press upon; insculpere, to engrave (figurative); inscribere, to write upon; incidere, to carve upon; includere, to shut into.

Platō ratiōnem in capite posuit, Iram in pectore locāvit, C., Tusc., I. 10, 20; Plato has put reason in the head, has placed anger in the breast. (Lucrētia) cultrum in corde dēfīgit, L., I. 58, 11; Lucretia plants a knife in (thrusts a knife down into) her heart. Philosophī in iīs librīs ipsīs quōs scrībunt dē contemnendā glōriā sua nōmina īnscrībunt, C., Tusc., I. 15, 34; philosophers write their own names on (the titles of) the very books which they write about contempt of glory. (Foedus) in columnā aēneā incīsum, C., Balb., 23, 53; a treaty cut upon a brazen column.

The same observation applies to sub:

Pone sub curru nimium propinqui solis in terra domibus negata, H., O., 1. 22, 21; put (me) under the chariot of the all-too neighboring sun, in a land denied to dwellings.

2. Verbs of Hanging and Fastening take ex, ab, or de.

Cui spēs omnis pendet ex fortūnā, huic nihil potest esse certī, C., Par., II. 17; to him who has all his hopes suspended on fortune, nothing can be certain.

3. Here and there in is often rendered by per: C., Fam., 1. 7, 6, per provincias, here and there in the provinces; V., A., 111. 236.

Notes.—1. In classical prose the use of the Abl. without in is confined to a few words, mostly phraseological. So terrā, on land; marī, by sea; usually in the phrase terrā marīque (rarely in the reversed order), on land and sea. In terrā is more common otherwise than terrā. Locō and locīs, especially when used with adjectives, usually omit in. The same is true of parte and partibus; so regularly dextrā (parte), sinistrā, laevā, etc., on the right, on the left. Livy uses regiō like locus. The tendency, however, is observable as early as Cicero's time to omit the in when an adjective is employed, even in words other than those given above; this tendency becomes more marked in Livy and is very strong in later Latin. The poets are free. Regard must always be had to 389.

2. The Acc. with in after verbs of Placing is very rare in classical prose. In early Latin it is more common; so with ponere, imponere, collocare. The examples with Acc. in classical Latin are principally with compounds of ponere, as imponere (usually), reponere, exponere. Collocare with in and Acc. in Caes., B.G., I. 18, 7, is not in a local sense. Sometimes the Dat. is found with imponere.

3. With a verb of Rest the motion antecedent to the rest is often emphasized by construing the verb with in and the Acc. instead of with in and the Abl. This occurs most often with esse and habere, and seems to have been colloquial, as it is very rare in classical prose.

Numero mihi in mentem fuit dis advenientem gratias agere, PL., Am., 180.

Adesse in senātum iūssit, C., Ph., v. 7, 19 (Cf. hūc ades, come hither). Parcers victīs in animum habēbat, L., XXXIII. 10, 4.

386. Names of Towns in the Singular of the Third Declension, and in the Plural of all Declensions, take the Ablative of Place Where without in.

Ut Romae consules sic Carthagine quotannis bini reges creabantur, Nep., XXIII. 7, 4; as at Rome (two) consuls, so in Carthage two kings, were created yearly. Tālis (Romae Fabricius), quālis Aristides Athenis, fuit, C., Off., III. 22, 87; Fabricius was just such a man at Rome as Aristides was at Athens.

REMARKS.—I. Appositions are put in the Abl. commonly with in; when the appositive has an attribute, the proper name regularly precedes: Neāpolī, in celeberrimō oppidō, C., Rab. Post., 10, 26; at Naples, a populous town.

2. In the neighborhood of, at, is ad with Acc., especially of military operations: pūgna ad Cannās (better Cannēnsis), the battle at Cannae; pūns ad Genāvam, Caes., B.G., I. 7; the bridge at Geneva.

Note.—The Abl. in names of Towns of the Second Declension is found once in Caesar  $(B.C., \text{III.}\ 25)$ , but the reading is questioned); more often in Vitruvius and later Latin, but in Greek words only. Apparent exceptions in Caesar and Cicero are to be referred to the Abl. of Separation. The poets, however, are free.

**387.** In citations from Books and in Enumerations, the Ablative of the Place Where is used without in.

Librō tertiō, third book; versū decimō, tenth verse; aliō locō, elsewhere. But in is necessary when a passage in a book and not the whole book is meant: Agricultūra laudātur in eō librō quī est dē tuendā rē familiārī, C., Cat. M., 17, 59; agriculture is praised in the work on domestic economy.

388. In designations of Place, with tōtus, cūnctus, whole; omnis, all; medius, middle, the Ablative of the Place Where is generally used without in.

Menippus, meō iūdiciō, tōtā Asiā disertissimus, C., Br., 91, 315; Menippus, in my judgment, the most eloquent man in all Asia (Minor). Battiadēs semper tōtō cantābitur orbe, Ov., Am., 1. 15, 13; Battiades (Callimachus) will always be sung throughout the world.

Remark.—In is not excluded when the idea is throughout, in which case per also may be used. Negō in Siciliā tōtā (throughout the whole of Sicily) üllum argenteum vās fuisse, etc., C., Verr., IV. I, 1.

389. In all such designations of Place as may be regarded in the light of Cause, Manner, or Instrument, the Ablative is used without a preposition.

Ut terrā Thermopylārum angustiae Graeciam, ita marī fretum Eurīpī claudit, L., xxxi. 23, 12; as the pass of Thermopylae bars Greece by land, so the frith of Euripus by sea. Ariovistus exercitum castrīs continuit, Caes., B.G., i. 48, 4; Ariovistus kept his army within the camp. Egressus est non viīs sed trāmitibus, C., Ph., xiii. 9, 19; he went out not by high roads but by cross-cuts. Nēmo ire quemquam pūblicā prohibet viā, Pl., Curc., 35; no man forbiddeth (any one to) travel by the public road. Mātrīs cinerēs Rōmam Tiberī subvectī sunt, Cf. Suet., Cal., 15; his mother's ashes were brought up to Rome by the Tiber.

So recipere aliquem tecto, oppido, portu, to receive a man into one's house, town, harbor; where, however, the Acc. with in is not excluded: recipe me in tectum. Pl., R., 574.

# B. ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHENCE. Ablātīvus Sēparātīvus,

390. 1. The Ablative answers the question Whence? and takes as a rule the prepositions ex, out of, de, from, ab, off.

(Eum) exturbāstī ex aedibus? Pl., Trin., 137; did you hustle him out of the house? Arāneās dēiciam dē pariete, Pl., St., 355; I will get the cobwebs down from the wall. Alcibiadem Athēniēnsēs ē cīvitāte expulērunt, Cf. Nep., vii. 6, 2; the Athenians banished Alcibiades from the state. Dēcēdit ex Galliā Rōmam Naevius, C., Quinct., 4. 16; Naevius withdrew from Gaul to Rome. Unde dēiēcistī sive ex quō locō, sive ā quō locō (whether out of or from which place), eō restituās, C., Caec., 30, 88.

2. The prepositions are often omitted with Verbs of Abstaining, Removing, Relieving, and Excluding; so regularly with domo, from home, rure, from the country.

With Persons a preposition (chiefly ab) must be used.

(Verres) omnia domo eius abstulit, C., Verr., II. 34, 83; Verres took everything away from his house. Ego, cum Tullius rüre redierit, mittam eum ad tē, C., Fam., v. 20, 9; when Tullius returns from the country, I will send him to you.

Compare Aliënë manum abstineant, Cato, Agr., 5, 1; let them keep their hand(s) from other people's property, with [Alexander] vix  $\bar{\mathbf{a}}$  së manüs abstinuit, C., Tusc., Iv. 37, 79; Alexander hardly kept (could hardly keep) his hands from himself (from laying hands on himself).

Compare Lapidibus optimos viros foro pellis, C., Har. Res., 18, 39; you drive men of the best classes from the forum with stones, with Istum aemulum ab ea pellito, Ter., Eun., 215; drive that rival from her.

Compare Omnium rērum nātūrā cognitā līberāmur mortis metū, C., Fin., 1. 19, 63; by the knowledge of universal nature we get rid of the

fear of death, with Te ab eo libero, C., Q.F., III. i. 3, 9; I rid you of him.

Compare Amicitia nüllö locö exclüditur, C., Lael., 6, 22; friendship is shut out from no place, with Ab illä exclüdor, höc conclüdor, Cf. Ter., And., 386; I am shut out from her (and) shut up here (to live with her).

Notes.—1. In classical Latin the preposition is usually employed in local relations, and omitted in metaphorical relations; though there are some exceptions.

- 2. It is to be noted that in the vast majority of cases the separation is indicated by a verb; hence this Abl. is found commonly with verbs compounded with prepositions. Thus, classical Latin shows but few simple verbs with the Abl., as follows: movere, chiefly in general or technical combinations: movere loco, senatū, tribū (Caesar, however, has no case); pellere, in technical language with civitāte, domō, forō, patriā, possessionibus, suīs sēdibus; cēdere is found with patriā, vitā, memoriā, possessione, Italiā; cadere, technical with causā; solvere with lēge (lēgibus), religione, etc., somnō; levāre and līberāre are found chiefly in metaphorical combinations, and especially in Cicero; arcēre has peculiarly ab with metaphorical, Abl. with local forces. In the case of most of these verbs, the preposition with the Abl. is also found.
- 3. Of compound verbs with the Abl., Cicero shows only so abdicare (principally technical), abesse (rarely), abhorrōre (once); abfre (in technical uses = 55 abdicare), abrumpere (once), absolvere, abstinēre (intrans. without, trans. more often with, preposition), dēicere (with aedīlitāte, etc.), dēmovēre (once), dēpellere, dēsistere, dēturbāre; ēdūcere (rare); efferre (rare); ēgredī; ēicere; ēlābī (rare); ēmittere (CAES.); ēripere (rare; usually Dat.); ēvertere; excēdere; exclūdere; exīre (rare); expellere; exsolvere; exsistere (rare): exturbāre; interclūdere; interdicere (alicuī aliquā rē; also alicuī aliquid); praecipitāre (CAES.); prohibēre; supersedēre.

Early Latin shows a few more verbs with this construction. The poets are free with the Abl., and also later prose writers, beginning with Livy.

4. Humō, from the ground, begins with Vergil. The preposition ā is found occasionally with domō; necessarily with a word (adjective or adverb) involving measurement, as; longinquē, longē, procul.

5. Compounds with dī (dis) also take the Dative (in poetry):

Paulum sepultae dīstat inertiae cēlāta virtūs, H., O., IV. 9, 29; little doth hidden worth differ from buried sloth.

- 6. The Place Whence gives the Point of View from which. In English a different translation is often given, though not always necessarily: ā tergō, in the rear: exparte dextrā, on the right side; ab oriente, on the east; ā tantō spatiō, at such a distance; ex fugā, on the flight; ā rē frümentāriā labōrāre, to be embarrassed in the matter of provisions.
- 3. The prepositions are also omitted with kindred Adjectives.

Animus excelsus omnī est līber cūrā, C., Fin., I. 15, 49; a lofty mind is free from all care. (Catō) omnibus hūmānīs vitiīs immūnis, semper fortūnam in suā potestāte habuit, Vell., II. 35, 2; Cato, exempt from all human failings, always had fortune in his own power. Iugurtha (Adherbalem) extorrem patriā effēcit, S., Iug., 14, 11; Jugurtha rendered Adherbal an exile from his country. Utrumque (fraus et vīs) homine aliēnissimum, C., Off., I. 13, 41.

- Notes.—1. The preposition is more usual in most cases. Pūrus and immūnis, with simple Abl., are poetical and post-Augustan. Expers, with Abl. instead of with Gen., belongs to early Latin and Sallust. Recens, fresh from, with Abl., belongs to Tacitus.
- 2. Procul, far from, regularly takes the preposition ab, except in the poets and later prose.
- 3. The Abl. of the Supine is early and late, as CATO, Agr., 5; Vilicus prīmus cubitū surgat, postrēmus cubitum eat. See 436, N. 4.
- 391. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Ablative of the Place Whence.

Dēmarātus fūgit Tarquiniös Corinthō, C., Tuse., v. 37, 109; Demaratus fled to Tarquinii from Corinth. Dolābella Dēlō proficiscitur, C., Verr., 1. 18, 46; Dolabella sets out from Delos.

REMARKS.—I. The prepositions ab (a) and ex (b) are sometimes used for the sake of greater exactness, but rarely in model prose. So regularly ab with the Place from which distance is measured:

[Aesculāpiī templum] quīnque mīlibus passuum ab urbe [Epidaurō] dīstat, Cf. L., XLV. 28, 3 (403, N. 1).

When the substantives **urbe**, *city*, and **oppidō**, *town*, are employed, the use of the preposition is the rule, as also when not the town, but the neighborhood is intended; also always with **longō**. When the Appositive has an attribute the proper name regularly precedes.

Aulide, ex oppido Boeotiae, from Aulis, a town of Boeotia. Ex Apollonia Ponti urbe, from Apollonia, a city of Pontus. Ex oppido Gergovia, Caes., B.G., vii. 4, 2; from the town of Gergovia.

Early Latin is free in the use of prepositions; and also from Livy on the usage seems to increase.

2. The Place Whence embraces all the local designations:

Agrigentō ex Aesculāpii fānō whereas we should say, from the temple of Aesculapius at Agrigentum. Unde domō? V., A., VIII. 114; from what home?

3. Letters are dated from rather than at a place.

Note.—Names of countries are but rarely used in the Ablative. Cicero, Sallust, and Livy show no instance, Caesar only one  $(B.C., \, \text{In.}, 58.4)$ . Occasional examples are found in early Latin and in old inscriptions; then in later historians, beginning with Velleius. The use of prepositions with towns seems in general to have been a colloquialism, Qf. Suet., Aug., 86. The poets are free in their usage.

## C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

## Ablātīvus Sociātīvus.

392. The Ablative of Attendance takes the preposition cum, with.

Cum febri domum rediit, C., Or., III. 2, 6; he returned home with a

fever. Catilina stetit in comitio cum telo, Cf. C., Cat., 1. 6, 15; Catiline stood in the place of election with a weapon (on him). Cum baculo peraque [senex], Mart., IV. 53, 3; an old man with stick and wallet. Nec tecum possum vivere nec sine to, Mart., XII. 47, 2; I can't live either with you or without you.

REMARKS.—I. In military phrases, the troops with which a march is made are put in the Ablative, with or without cum; generally without cum when an adjective is used (Ablative of Manner), with cum when no adjective is used (Ablative of Attendance). With definite numbers, however, cum is regularly employed.

Albani ingenti exercitu in agrum Romanum impetum fecere, L., I. 23, 3; the Albans attacked the Roman territory with a huge army. Caesar cum equitibus DCCCC in castra pervenit, Caes., B.C., I. 41, 1; Caesar arrived in camp with nine hundred cavalry.

2. Not to be confounded with the above is the Instrumental Ablative:

Nāvibus profectus est, C., Fam., xv. 3, 2; he set out by ship.

So also with verbs which denote other military actions:

Hasdrubal mediam aciem Hispānīs fīrmat, L., XXIII. 29, 4; Hannibal strengthens the centre with Spanish troops. Āctum nihil est nisi Poenō mīlite portās frangimus, Juv., x. 155; naught is accomplished unless we break the gates with the Punic soldiery (as if with a battering-ram).

# II. The Figurative Meanings of the Ablative.

A. The Place Where is transferred to the Time When.

Ablative of Time. Ablātīvus Temporis.

393. Time When or Within Which is put in the Ablative.

Quā nocte nētus Alexander est, eādem Dǐānae Ephesiae templum dēflagrāvit, Cf. C., N.D., II. 27, 69; on the same night on which Alexander was born, the temple of Diana of Ephesus burned to the ground. Sāturnī stella trīgintā ferē annīs cursum suum cōnficit, C., N.D., II. 20, 52; the planet Saturn completes its period in about thirty years.

Many adverbial forms of time are really Locative Ablatives: So hodie, to-day; heri(e), yesterday; mane, in the morning.

REMARKS.—I. Time Within Which may be expressed by per and the Accusative:

Per eōs ipsōs diēs quibus Philippus in Achāiā fuit, Philoclēs saltum Cithaerōnis trānscendit, L., XXXI. 26, 1; during those very days, while Philip was in Achaia, Philocles crossed the range of Cithaeron.

2. Time Within Which may embrace both extremities; so usually with tōtus, all, whole:

Nocte pluit tôtă, redeunt at mâne serena, V. (Poet. Lat. Min., iv. 155 B); all night (Jupiter) rains; clear skies come back in the morning. Cf. Caes., B.G., 1. 26, 5.

So with definite numbers; but rarely, until the post-Augustan period:

Scriptum est trigintā annīs vixisse Panaetium, posteāquam illos libros ēdidisset, C., Off., III. 2, 8; it is written that Panaetius lived for thirty years after he had published those books (not to be confounded with the Abl. of Difference, 403). Apud Pythagoram discipulis quinque annīs tacendum erat, Sen., E.M., 52, 10; in the school of Pythagoras the disciples had to keep silence five years.

3. When the Notion is Negative, the English Time For Which is the Latin Within Which.

[Röscius] Römam multīs annīs non vēnit, C., Rosc. Am., 27, 74; Roscius has not come to Rome in (for) many years. Not always, however; compare Sex mēnsīs iam hīc nēmō habitat, Pl., Most., 954; no one has been living here these six months.

4. Especially to be noted is the Abl. of Time with hic, this; ille, that: Cui viginti his annis supplicatio decreta est? C., Ph., XIV. 4, 11; to whom during these last twenty years has a supplication been decreed? [Karthäginem] hoc biennio evertes, C., Rep., VI. II, 11; Carthage you will overturn in the next two years.

Transferred to Orātio Oblīqua, hie becomes ille (660. 3):

Diodorus [respondit] illud argentum se paucis illis diebus misisse Lilybaeum, C., Verr., IV. 18, 39; Diodorus answered that he had sent that silver plate to Lilybaeum within a few days (a few days before).

- 5. The Abl. of Time is regularly accompanied by an attribute in classical Latin, except in the case of a number of common designations, as aestāte, diē, hieme, nocte, vespere (vesperī). Exceptions are rare, such as comitis, lūce, pāce, mīlitiā, and some names of games.
- 394. The Ablative with the preposition in is used of points within a period of time, or of the character of the time.

Bis in die,  $twice\ a\ day$ ; in pueritie,  $in\ boyhood$ ; in adulescentie,  $in\ youth.$ 

Nullo modo mihi placuit bis in die saturum fieri, C., Tusc., v. 35, 100; it did not suit me in any way to eat my fill twice a day. Feci ego istaec itidem in adulescentia, Pl., B., 410; I did those things too in my youth.

Remark.—The use or omission of in sometimes changes the meaning. So bello Persico, at the time of the Persian war; but in bello, in war times; in pace, in peace times. Phraseological is in tempore, more frequent than tempore, at the right time. But in illo tempore means in those circumstances, at that crisis. At present, for the present, is always in praesentia or in praesenti (rare).

Notes.—1. Classical Latin confines the use of in to designations of Time of Life (though here, when an adjective is employed, in is usually omitted) and to the periods of time. Later in is used much more extensively. With numerals in is the rule. Cato and the poets have sometimes bis diē, as diēs = ūnus diēs.

2. Dē, from, is also used in designations of time: principally in the phrase dē diē, dē nocte. Ut iugulent hominem surgunt dē nocte latronēs, H., Ep., 1. 2, 32; to

kill a man, highwaymen rise by night, i. e., while it is yet night.

Inter, between: Quae prandia inter continuom perdidi triennium, Pl., St., 213; what luncheons I have lost during three years together.

Intrā, within: Subēgit sõlus intrā vīgintī diēs, PL., Curc., 448; he quelled them all alone in less than twenty days.

On per, through, see 336, R. 2.

Cum, with, is found occasionally in phrases, as cum primā lūce, with daybreak.

## B. The Place Whence is transferred:

1. To Origin. 2. To Respect or Specification.

#### I. Ablative of Origin.

395. Participles which signify Birth take the Ablative of Origin; sometimes with the prepositions ex and de.

Amplissimā familiā nātī adulēscentēs, Caes., B.G., vii. 37, 1; young men born of a great house. Numae Pompiliī rēgis nepōs, filiā ortus, Ancus Mārcius erat, L., i. 32, 1; King Numa Pompilius's grandson, a daughter's issue, was Ancus Marcius. Maecēnās atavīs ēdite rēgibus, H., O., i. i, 1; Maecenas, offshoot of great-grandsire kings. Dīs genite et genitūre deōs, V., A., ix. 639; begotten of gods, and destined to beget gods! Sate sanguine dīvum! V., A., vi. 125; seed of blood divine! Ex mē atque ex hōc nātus es, Ter., Heaut., 1030; you are his son and mine. Ōdērunt nātōs dē paelice, Juv., vi. 627; they hate the offspring of the concubine.

Ab, and occasionally ex, are employed of remote progenitors:

Plērique Belgae sunt orti ab Germānis, Cf. Caes., B.G., II. 4, 1; Belgians are mostly of German descent. Oriundi ex Etrüscis, Cf. L., II. 9, 1; of Etruscan origin.

Notes.—1. The principal participles thus used are nātus, prōgnātus, oriundus; ortus, genitus, and satus begin in prose with Livy; ēditus and crētus are poetic; prōcreātus is late. Ciceno uses oriundus but once; it denotes remote origin.

2. With names of Places the preposition is the rule (362, N. 2); but there are a few exceptions in early Latin and in Ciceno, and a couple of examples in Caesar. Later the simple Abl. disappears. The Abl. was the rule with names of Tribes.

Periphanës Rhodö mercator, Ph., Asin., 499. Magius Cremona, Caes., B.C., I. 24, 4. Q. Verres Römilia, C., Verr., I. 8, 23; Q. Verres of the Romilian tribe.

 With finite verbs denoting Origin, the preposition is regular, except occasionally with nasci.

 The Ablative of Agent properly belongs here. But for convenience of contrast it is treated under 401.

396. The Ablative of Material takes ex in classical Latin.

Ex animō constamus et corpore, Cf. C., Fin., Iv. 8, 19; we consist of mind and body.

Statua ex auro, ex aere, facta, a statue made of gold, of bronze. Often an adjective is used: aureus, golden; ligneus, wooden.

Notes.—1. After Cicero constare is used more often with the Abl.; consistere (with the Abl.) is poetical. Contineri, to be contained in, i.e., almost "to consist of," takes the Abl. only, but with a different conception.

Medicīna tōta cōnstat experimentis, Quint., 11. 17, 9; all medicine is made up of experiments (is empirical).

2. With fieri the previous state is indicated by de as well as by ex.

Dē templō carcerem fierī! C., Ph., v. 7, 18; from a temple to become a jail. Fiēs dē rhētore cōnsul, Juv., vii. 197; from (having been) rhetorician you will become consul. Ex ōrātōre arātor factus, C., Ph., 111. 9, 22 (206, R. 2).

3. Otherwise the simple Ablative of Material is poetic or late:

Māvors caelātus ferrō, V., A., viii. 700; Mars carven of iron.

Meliōre lutō finxit, Juv., xiv. 35; he fashioned it of better clay.

### 2. Ablative of Respect.

397. The Ablative of Respect or Specification gives the Point From Which a thing is measured or treated, and is put in answer to the questions From What Point of View? According to What? By What? In Respect of What?

Discriptus populus cēnsū, ōrdinibus, aetātibus, C., Leg., III. 19, 44; a people drawn off according to income, rank, (and) age. Ennius ingeniō māximus, arte rudis, Ov., Tr., II. 424; Ennius in genius great, in art unskilled. Animō ignāvus, procāx ōre, Tac., H., II. 23, 18; coward of soul, saucy of tongue.

Noteworthy are the phrases: crine ruber, red-haired; captus oculis (literally, caught in the eyes), blind; captus mente, insane; meā sententiā, according to my opinion; iūre, by right; lēge, by law, etc.; and the Supines in -ū (436).

Notes.-1. Prepositions are also used, which serve to show the conception:

(Caesaris) adventus ex colore vestītūs cognitus, Cf. Caes., B. G., vii. 88, 1; the arrival of Caesar was known by the color of his clothing. Do gestū intellego quid respondeās, C., Vat., 15, 35; I understand by your gesture what answer you are giving. Ab animo aeger fui, Pl., Ep., 129; at heart I was sick. Otiosum ab animo, Ter., Ph., 340; easy in mind.

Similarly ex lege, according to law; ex pacto, according to agreement; ex (de) more, according to custom; ex animi sentertia, according to (my) heart's desire;

ex ūsū, useful.

2. A special category is formed by words indicating eminence or superiority; so excellere, antecellere, praestare, superare, vincere; and the adjectives: insignis, illūstris, dīgnus; excellēns, praecellēns. Praecellere is found in early and late Latin, while dīgnārī is poetic and post-Augustan.

Māximē populus Romānus animi māgnitūdine excellit, C., Off., I. 18, 61; the

Roman people excel most in loftiness of mind.

On dignus with Gen., see 374, N. 10.

A curious usage is that of **decorus** and **decore**, with Abl., in Pr., M.G., 619; Asin., 577.

3. The origin of these constructions is still undetermined. They may be deduced also from the Instrumental side of the Abl., or from the Locative side.

**398.** The Ablative of Respect is used with the Comparative instead of **quam**, than, with the Nominative or Accusative; but in the classical language mainly after a negative, or its equivalent. (Ablātīvus Comparātiōnis.)

Tunica propior palliost, PL., Trin., 1154; the shirt is nearer than the cloak. Nihil est virtute amabilius, C., Lael., 8, 28; nothing is more attractive than virtue. Quid est in homine ratione divinius? C., Leg., 1. 7, 22; what is there in man more godlike than reason?

So also after adverbs, but not so freely in prose:

Lacrimā nihil citius ārēscit, C., Inv., I. 56, 109; nothing dries more quickly than a tear. Nēmō est quī tibi sapientius suādēre possit tē ipsō, C., Fam., II. 7, 1; there is no one who can give you wiser advice than you yourself. Pulcrum ōrnātum turpēs mōrēs pēius caenō conlinunt, Pl., Most., 291; foul behavior doth bedraggle fine apparel worse than mud.

REMARK.—When the word giving the point of view is a relative, the Abl. must be used. See 296, R. 2.

Phidiae simulācrīs quibus nihil in illō genere perfectius vidēmus, cōgitāre tamen possumus pulchriōra, C., Or., 2, 8; the statues of Pheidias, than which we see nothing more perfect in their kind, still leave room for us to imagine those that are more beautiful.

Notes.—1. The comparative is also employed with the Abl. of certain abstract substantives and adjectives used as substantives; so opinione, spē, exspectātione; aequō, iūstō, solitō, and the like, all post-Ciceronian except aequō, opinione.

(Consul) serius spē (= quam spēs fuerat) Romam vēnit, L., xxvi. 26, 4; the consul came to Rome later than was hoped. Solitō citātior amnis, L., xxiii. 19, 11; the river running faster than usual.

Aequē and adaequē are found once each in PLAUTUS with the Abl.; and then not till the time of the elder PLINY.

3. For other details, see 296 and 644.

## C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

Ablātīvus Sociātīvus. Ablative of Attendance.

#### 1. Ablative of Manner.

**399.** The Ablative of Manner answers the question How? and is used with the Preposition cum when it has no Adjective; with or without cum when it has an Adjective or its equivalent. (Ablatīvus Modī.)

[Stellae] circulos suos orbesque conficient celeritate mirabili, C., Rep., vi. 15. 15; the stars complete their orbits with wonderful swiftness. Vos

oro ut attente bonaque cum venia verba mea audiatis, C., Rosc. Am., 4, 9; I beg you to hear my words attentively and with kind indulgence. Beātē vivere, honestē, id est cum virtūte, vivere, C., Fin., III. 8, 29; to live happily is to live honestly, that is, virtuously.

Notes. -1. The simple Abl. without an attribute is confined to a few substantives, which have acquired adverbial force; early Latin shows astu, curriculo, dolo, ergo, grātis and ingrātis, ioculo, merito, numero, optāto, ordine, sortito, voluntate, vulgo. Terence adds: vi, iure, iniuria, Classical Latin shows some of these, also ratione, ratione et via, moribus, consuetudine, silentio, casu, lege, fraude, vitio, sacramento (beginning with LIVY), and a few others. Sometimes the idea of Specification is prominent, as in lege, iure (397); sometimes it is hard to distinguish between the Manner and the Instrument : vī, violently and by violence ; vī et armis, by force of arms; pedibus, afoot; navibus, by ship. Notice, also, the use of per, through, with the Accusative: per vim, by violence; per litteras, by letter.

2. The post-Ciceronian Latin extends the use of the Abl. without an attribute.

3. The phrases sub condicione, sub lege, etc., begin with LIVY.

## 2. Ablative of Quality.

(Descriptive Ablative.)

400. The Ablative of Quality has no Preposition, and always takes an Adjective or an equivalent.

[Hannibalis] nomen erat māgnā apud omnēs gloriā, C., Or., II, 18, 75; the name of Hannibal was glorious in the esteem of all the world. (Āgēsilāus) statūrā fuit humilī, NEP., XVII. 8, 1; Agesilāus was (a man) of low stature. Ista turpiculo puella naso, CAT., 41, 3; that girl of yours with the ugly nose. Clavi ferrei digiti pollicis crassitudine, Cf. CAES., B.G., III. 13, 4; iron nails of the thickness of your thumb.

Remarks.—1. External and transient qualities are put by preference in the Ablative; Measure, Number, Time, and Space are put in the Genitive only; parts of the body in the Ablative only. Otherwise there is often no difference.

2. Of unnatural productions cum may be used: agnus cum suillo capite, L., XXXI. 12, 7; a lamb with a swine's nead.

#### 3. Ablative of Means.

401. The Means or Instrument is put in the Ablative without a Preposition.

The Agent or Doer is put in the Ablative with the Preposition ab (a). The Person Through Whom is put in the Accusative with per.

Xerxēs certior factus est, ( 1. nūntiō, by a message. 2. ā nūntiō, by a messenger. Xerxes was informed, 2. a number, by means of a messenger.

Qui sunt hominës, ā quibus ille së lapidibus adpetītum, etiam percussum esse dīxit? C., Dom., 5, 13; who are the men by whom he said he had been thrown at with stones, and even hit? Vulgō occīdēbantur? Per quōs et ā quibus? C., Rosc. Am., 29, 80; were they cut down openly? Through whose instrumentality and by whose agency? Nec bene prōmeritīs capitur neque tangitur īrā, Lucr., 11. 651 (227, n. 4). Ipse docet quid agam: fās est et ab hoste docērī, Ov., M., Iv. 428 (219). Dīscite sānārī per quem didicistis amāre, Ov., Rem. Am., 43; learn to be healed by means of (him by) whom you learned to love.

REMARKS.—1. When the Instrument is personified and regarded as an Agent, or the Agent is regarded as an Instrument, the constructions are reversed; when an adjective is used, the construction may be doubtful; see 354, N. I., and 214, R. 2.

So incent suis testibus, C., Mil., 18, 47; they are cast by their own witnesses; or, they are cast, their own men being witnesses.

A quality, when personified, has the construction of the person.
 So deseri ā mente, ā spē.

Vöbīs animus ab īgnāviā atque socordiā conruptus [est], S., Iug., 31, 2; you have had your soul(s) debauched by sloth and indifference.

Notes.—1. The number of verbs construed with this Abl. is very large and comprises several categories; so verbs of Clothing and Providing, Adorning and Endowing, Training (ērudīre also takes in; others take Acc., see 339), Living and Nourishing, etc.

2. Of special importance are assuēscē, assuēfaciē, assuētus; (Catilina) scelerum exercitātiēne assuēfactus, C., Cat., II. 5, 9. The Dat. is found first in Livy in prose. Ad with the Acc. is also classical.

3. Afficere, to treat, with the Ablative, is a favorite turn; see the Lexicons.

4. Verbs of sacrificing, such as sacrificare, sacrum facere, divinam rem facere, facere and fieri (mostly poetical), immolare, litare (poetical), have the Abl. of Means. But immolare usually has Acc. and Dat., and so the others occasionally, except facere.

Quinquaginta capris sacrificaverunt, L., XLV. 16, 6; they sacrificed fifty shequats.

5. Here belong also verbs like pluere, sūdāre (not classic), stīllāre (not classic), fluere, mānāre, and the like: sanguine pluisse, L., xxiv. 10,7. The Acc. is also common.

6. Nītor, I stay myself, is construed with the Abl.; occasionally with in. Fīdō, cōnfīdō, I trust, rely on, have the Abl.; but with persons the Dat., sometimes also with things. On the other hand, diffīdō, I distrust, always has the Dat. in classical Latin, but Tacitus shows Abl., and so do other later writers. Stāre, to abide by, usually has the Abl., but occasionally in; manēre has usually in; the Abl. is poetical. Acquiēscere, to acquiesce in, with Abl. is rare. Frētus, supported, takes the Abl. regularly; Livy alone uses the Dative. Contentus, satisfied with (by), is used only of one's own possessions (rēbus, fortūnā, etc.), and has the Ablative.

Salūs omnium non vēritāte solum sed etiam fāmā nītitur, Cf. C., Q.F., i. ii. 1, 2; the welfare of all rests not on truth alone, but also on repute. Eius iūdicio stāre nolim, C., Tusc., 11. 26, 63; I should not like to abide by his judgment.

7. A remnant of the old usage is found with flo, facio, and esse:

Quid fecisti scipione ? Pl., Cas., 975; what have you done with the wand? Quid

mē fiet? PL., Most., 1166; what will become of me? Quid tē futūrumst? Ter., Ph., 137; what is to become of you? Quid hōc homine faciās? C., Verr., II. 16, 39; how will you dispose of this man? Quid huīc hominī faciās? C., Caecin., 11, 30; what will you do to this man? Quid dē nōbīs futūrum [est]? C., Fam., IX. 17, 1; what is to happen in our case?

The use of the Dative is rare, and still more rare the use of de.

The construction is colloquial, and never found in Caesar and Tacitus; it is always in an interrogative sentence, except in Cato and Ovid.

### 4. Ablative of Standard. Ablātīvus Mēnsūrae.

402. The Standard of Measure is put in the Ablative with verbs of Measurement and Judgment.

Benevolentiam non ārdore amoris sed stabilitāte iūdicēmus, C., Off., I. 15, 47; good will we are to judge not by ardor but by steadfastness. Māgnos hominēs virtūte mētīmur, non fortūnā, NEP., XVIII. I, 1; we measure great men by worth, not by fortune. Sonis hominēs ut aera tinnītū dīgnoscimus, Quint., XI. 3, 31; we distinguish men by sound, as coppers by ring.

REMARKS.—I. It is often hard to distinguish the Measure from the Respect (see 397).

Ex with the Abl. is frequently found with these verbs; so regularly with aestimāre, existimāre, spectāre, in the sense of judge, value.

Dicendum erit non esse ex fortuna fidem ponderandam, C., Part. Or., 34, 117; the plea will have to be made that faith is not to be weighed by fortune. Sic est vulgus: ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa aestimat, C., Rosc. Com., 10, 29; this is the way of the rabble: they value few things by (the standard of) truth, many by (the standard of) opinion.

# 403. Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative.

Sõl multīs partibus māior (est) quam terra üniversa, C., N.D., II. 36, 92; the sun is many parts larger than the whole earth. (Via) alterō tantō longiōrem habebat ānfrāctum, Nep., xviii. 8, 5; the road had a bend (that made it) longer by as much again, as long again. Quinquiēns tantō amplius Verrēs, quam licitum est, cīvitātibus imperāvit, Cf. C., Verr., III. 97, 225; Verres levied on the various cities five times more than was allowed by law. Turrēs dēnīs pedibus quam mūrus altiōrēs sunt, Curt., v. 1, 26; the towers are (by) ten feet higher than the wall. Tantō est accūsāre quam dēfendere, quantō facere quam sānāre vulnera, facilius, Quint., v. 13, 3; it is as much easier to accuse than to defend, as it is easier to inflict wounds than to heal them. Perfer et obdūrā: multō graviōra tulistī, Ov., Tr., v. 11, 7; endure to the end and be firm: you have borne much more grievous burdens.

Notes.—1. This rule applies to verbs involving difference (such as abesse, distare, malle, praestare, excellere, etc.), as well as to comparatives, with which must be reckoned infra, supra, ultra,

[Aesculāpii templum] quinque mīlibus passuum ab urbe [Epidauro] distat, Cf. L., XLV. 28, 3; the temple of Aesculapius is five miles from the city of Epidaurus.

2. The Acc. is sometimes employed (see 335); especially with neuter adjectives mul-

tum, tantum, etc., but this is not common except with verbs.

3. The Plautine Abl. nimiö, with the comparative, is not classical (compare [C.], Att., x. 8 a, 1), but reappears in Livy. Aliter with this Abl. is very rare and is not classical. So also the Abl. with the positive, of which a few examples are cited from early Latin, as Ter., Heaut., 205.

4. (a) Especially to be noted is the use of the Abl. of Measure with ante, before,

and post, after:

Paucis ante diebus, Paucis diebus ante, a few days before.

Paucis post diebus, Paucis diebus post, a few days after, afterward.

Duōbus annis postquam Rōma condita est, two years after Rome was founded.

Paulo post Troiam captam, a little while after the taking of Troy.

The Acc. can also be employed: post paucos annos, after a few years; ante paucos annos, a few years before; and the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers (but only when quam follows): two hundred years after (ward) may be:

Ducentīs annīs post or Ducentēsimō annō post,
Post ducentōs annōs or Post ducentēsimum annum.

- (b) Ante and post do not precede the Abl. in classical Latin except with aliquanto (rare) and paulo. Ante and post, with the Acc. followed by quam, instead of antequam and postquam with the Abl., belong preëminently to post-classical Latin; classical examples are rare. Cicero never has ante.
- (c) Ante hös sex menses, six months ago (compare 393, R. 4), more frequently abhinc sex menses (336, R. 3); abhinc sex menselus, means six months before.

(d) With a relative sentence the Abl. of the relative may be used alone, instead of

ante (post) quam:

Mors Rôsciī quadriduō quō is occīsus est, Chrysogonō nūntiātur, C., Rosc. Am., 37, 105; the death of Roscius was announced to Chrysogonus four days after he was killed (in the course of the four days within which he was killed). See 398.

(e) Hence is ad: ad sex menses, six months hence.

(f) Do not confuse the Acc. with ante and post with the Acc. of Duration of Time.

#### 5. Ablative of Price.

# 404. Definite Price is put in the Ablative.

Eriphyla auro virī vītam vēndidit, C., Inv., 1. 50, 94; Eriphyle sold her husband's life for gold. Vīgintī talentīs ūnam ōrātiōnem Īsocratēs vēndidit, PLIN., N. H., VII. 31, 110; Isocrates sold one speech for twenty talents. Ēmit morte immortālitātem, QUINT., IX. 3, 71; he purchased deathlessness with death. Argentum accēpī, dōte imperium vēndidī, PL., Asin., 87; the cash I took, (and) for a dowry sold my sway.

Notes.—1. Mūtāre, to exchange, is sometimes Give, sometimes Get; sometimes Sell, sometimes Buy. The latter use is confined to poetry and later prose.

Nēmō nisi victor pāce bellum mūtāvit, S., C., 58, 15; no one unless victorious (ever) exchanged war for peace. Misera pāx vel bellō bene mūtātur, Cf. Tac., Ann., 111. 44, 10; a wretched peace is well exchanged even for war.

But cur valle permutem Sabina divitias operosiores? H., O., III. 1, 47; why should I exchange my Sabine vale for riches sure to breed (me) greater trouble?

So vēnālis, vīlis, cheap : cārus, dear. Non, edepol, minīs trecentīs cārast,
 PL., Pers., 668 ; she is not dear, 'fore George, at three hundred minae.

3. For Genitive of Price, see 379.

## 6. Ablative with Verbs of Plenty and Want.

405. Verbs of Depriving and Filling, of Plenty and Want, take the Ablative.

[Dēmocritus] dicitur oculis sē prīvāsse, C., Fin., v. 29, 87; Democritus is said to have deprived himself of his eyes. Deus bonīs omnibus explēvit mundum, Cf. C., Univ., 3, 9; God has filled the universe with all blessings. Capua fortissimōrum virōrum multitūdine redundat, C., Pis., 11, 25; Capua is full to overflowing with a multitude of gallant gentlemen. Nōn caret effectū quod voluēre duo, Ov., Am., 11. 3, 16; what two have resolved on never lacks execution. Quō māior est in [animīs] praestantia, eō māiōre indigent dīligentiā, C., Tusc., 1v. 27, 58.

Notes.—1. Verbs of Depriving are commonly referred to the Ablative of Separation, rather than to the Instrumental Ablative, and are put here for convenience of contrast. But it must be remembered that in the classic tongues the construction of opposites is identical.

2. Egeo and (more frequently) indigeo also take the Genitive :

Non tam artis indigent quam laboris, C., Or., I. 34, 156; they are not so much in need of skill as of industry. So impleri, V., A., I. 214.

3. Adjectives of Plenty and Want take the Gen., but some of them follow the analogy of the verb (374, N. 1). So onustus, orbus, have Abl. more often than Gen.; indigus, egēnus, and inops have the Gen. more commonly. Plēnus has usually the Gen.; the Abl. in increasing proportion from Lucretius on. Frequens and validus do not take the Gen. until the post-Augustan period. See 374.

Asellus onustus aurō, C., Att., I. 16, 12; a donkey laden with gold. Pollicitis dives quilibet esse potest, Ov., A.A., I. 444; anybody can be rich in promises. Amor et melle et felle est fēcundissimus, Pl., Cist., 69; love is (very) fruitful both in honey and in gall (of acrimony).

406. Opus and ūsus take the Dative of the Person who Wants and the Ablative of the Thing Wanted; but the Thing Wanted may be the subject, and opus (not ūsus) the predicate.

Novō cōnsiliō mihi nunc opus est, Pl., Ps., 601; a new device is what I'm needing now. Viginti iam üsust filiō argenti minis, Pl., Asin., 89; my son has urgent need of twenty minae silver. Nihil opus est simulātione et fallāciis, C., Or., 11. 46, 191; there is no need of making believe, and of cheating tricks. Non opus est verbīs sed füstibus, C., Pis., 30, 73; there is need not of words, but of cudgels. Emās non quod opus est, sed quod necesse est; quod non opus est asse cārum est, Cato (Sen., E.M., 94, 27); buy not what you want, but what is absolutely needful; what you do not want (have no use for) is dear at a penny.

So with the Perfect Participle Passive.

Quod parātō opus est parā, Ter., And., 523; what must be got ready, get ready. Vicīnō conventōst opus, Pl., Cas., 502, the neighbor must

be called on. Citius quod non factost usus fit quam quod factost opus,  $P_{L}$ , Am., 505.

Notes.—1. Opus est means properly: there is work to be done with; fisus est, there is making use of (like tor); hence the Ablative. Some think that opus takes Abl. by analogy with tisus.

Opus est is common throughout; usus est is very rarely found after the early period. It belongs especially to comedy.

3. The Gen. with opus est occurs twice in Livy; also in Propertius, Quintilian, and Apuleius.

4. The neut. Acc. is usually adverbial (333, 1):

Quid (Acc.) digitos opus est graphio lassare tenendo? Ov., Am., 1. 11, 23; what is the use of tiring the fingers by holding the stylus?

5. Besides the Pf. Part. pass., we find the Infin. and sometimes ut; in this case the Person is usually in the Dat. with opus (usus) est, but may be in the Acc. with the Inf., or may be omitted.

Opus est të animo valëre ut corpore possis, C., Fam., xvi. 14, 2; you must be well in mind in order to be well in body. An quoiquamst üsus homini së ut cruciet? Ter., Heaut., 81; of what good is it to any man to torture himself?

The Supine is found occasionally; in Cicero only scitū (Inv., I. 20, 28; disputed).

6. In Plautus and Lucretius are occasional examples of ūsus as a predicate, with the Thing Wanted as the subject.

## 7. Ablative with Sundry Verbs.

407. The Deponent Verbs utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor, take the Ablative.

Victoriā ūtī nescīs, L., XXII. 51, 4; how to make use of victory you know not. Quō ūsque tandem abūtēre patientiā nostrā, C., Cat., I. I, 1; how long, tell me, will you abuse our patience? Lūx quā fruimur ā Deō nōbīs datur, Cf. C., Rosc. Am., 45, 131; the light which we enjoy is given to us by God. Funguntur officiō; dēfendunt suōs, C., Cael., 9, 21; they acquit themselves of a duty; they defend their own people. Fungar vice cōtis, H., A.P., 304; I shall acquit myself of, discharge, the office of a whetstone. Tūtius esse arbitrābantur sine ūllō vulnere victoriā potīrī, Caes., B.G., III. 24, 2; they thought it safer to make themselves masters of the victory without any wound. Numidae lacte vescēbantur, S., Iug., 89, 7; the Numidians made their food of milk (fed on milk).

Notes.—1. These Ablatives are commonly regarded as Ablatives of the Instrument: but fruor, I get fruit, and vescor, I feed myself from, and perhaps fungor, may take the Abl. as a Whence-case.

These verbs seem to have been originally construed with the Acc.; but this case
is not found in classical Latin except in the Gerundive construction (427, N. 5).

(a) **Ūtor** with Acc. is very common in Plattus, less so in Terence, but only with neuter pronouns. Cato uses also the neuter of substantives. **Abūtor** is combined only with Acc. in early Latin.

(b) Fruor with Acc. is not in Plautus, but occasionally in Terence and Cato. Früniscor (rare) is transitive in Plautus and Quadrigarius (ap. Gell.).

(c) Fungor with Acc. is the rule in early Latin (Ter., Ad., 603, is disputed), then in Nepos, Tacitus, Suetonius, and later.

(d) Potior has Gen. at all periods (rare in CICERO; once in CAESAR); the Acc.

occasionally in early and late Latin, in the b. Afr., the b. Hsp., and in Sallust. Noteworthy is the use of an act. **potire** with Gen. in Pl., Am., 178, and a pass. **potitus** with Gen. in several places in Plautus.

(e) Vescor takes the Acc. rarely in early Latin, in the poets, and in later Latin.

Vīvere, hēlluārī, take Abl. like vescī.

3. Utor is a favorite word, and has a most varied translation:

Ūtī aliquō amīcō, to avail one's self of (to enjoy) a man's friendship (to have a friend in him); ūtī cōnsiliō, to follow advice; ūtī bonō patre, to have the advantage of having a good father; ūtī lēgibus, to obey the laws. See the Lexicons.

#### D. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

**408.** The Ablative of Cause is used without a preposition, chiefly with Verbs of Emotion. Ablātīvus Causae.

In culpā sunt qui officia dēserunt mollitiā animi, C., Fin., 1. 10, 33; they are to blame who shirk their duties from effeminacy of temper. Oderunt peccare boni virtūtis amore, II., Ep., 1. 16, 52; the good hate to sin from love of virtue. Dēlicto dolēre, corrēctione gaudēre (oportet), C., Lael., 24, 90; one ought to be sorry for sin, to be glad of chastisement. Non dici potest quam flagrem dēsīderio urbis, C., Att., v. 11, 1; I burn (am afire) beyond expression with longing for Rome.

Notes.—1. A number of combinations become phraseological, as the verbals: arbitrātū, hortātū, impulsū, iūssū, missū, rogātū, etc.; also consilio, auctoritāte, with a Gen. or possessive pronoun: iūssū cīvium, at the bidding of the citizens; meo

rogātū, at my request.

2. The moving cause is often expressed by a participle with the Abl., which usually precedes: adductus, led: ārdēns, fired: commötus, stirred up: incitātus, egged on: incēnsus, influmed: impulsus, driven on: mötus, moved, and many others; amöre, by love: īrā, by anger; odiō, by hate: metū, by fear; spē, by hope, etc. Metū perterritus, sore frightened: veršcundiā dēterritus, doashed, etc.

3. Instead of the simple Abl. the prepositions de and ex (sometimes in), with the

Abl., ob and propter with the Acc., are often used; perhaps occasionally ab.

4. The preventing cause is expressed by prae, for (417, 9): Prae gaudiō ubi sim nesciō, Ten., Heaut., 308; I know not where I am for joy.

5. On causa and gratia with the Gen., see 273.

- 6. The use of the Abl. for the external cause, as regale genus non tam regni quam regis vitis repudiatum est (C., Leg., III. 7, 15), the kingly form of government was rejected not so much by reason of the faults of the kingly form, as by reason of the faults of the kingl, is not common in the early and in the classical period, except in certain formulæ; but it becomes very common later.
- 7. The Ablative of Cause may have its origin in the Instrumental Ablative, in the Ablative of Source, or in the Comitative Ablative.

#### E. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

409. The so-called Ablative Absolute is an Ablative combined with a participle, and serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence. Instead of the participle, a predicative substantive or adjective can be employed.

NOTE.—This Ablative, which may be called the Ablative of Circumstance, springs from the Temporal Use of the Ablative—the Temporal from the Local. Another view regards it as an Ablative of Manner, with a predicate instead of an attribute.

410. The Ablative Absolute may be translated by the English so-called Nominative (originally Dative) Absolute, which is a close equivalent; but for purposes of style, it is often well to analyze the thought, to change Passive into Active, to make use of an abstract substantive.

Xerxe regnante (= cum Xerxes regnaret), Xerxes reigning. When Xerxes was reigning. In the reign of Xerxes.

Xerxe victō (= cum Xerxēs victus esset), Xerxes being, having been, defeated. When Xerxes had been defeated. After the defeat of Xerxes.

Xerxe rēge (= cum Xerxēs rēx esset), Xerxes [being] king. When Xerxes was king.

Patre vivo, WHILE father is, was alive (in father's lifetime).

Urbe expugnātā imperātor rediit :

Passive Form: The city [being] taken (after the city was taken), the general returned.

ACTIVE FORM: Having taken the city (after he had taken the city), the general returned.

Abstract Form: After the taking of the city. After taking the city.

Māximās virtūtēs iacēre omnēs necesse est voluptāte dominante, C., Fin., II. 35, 117; all the great(est) virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, IF (or when) the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress. Rōmānī veterēs rēgnārī omnēs volēbant lībertātis dulcēdine nōndum expertā, L., I. 17, 3; the old Romans all wished to have a king over them (Because they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.

Remarks.—1. As the Latin language has no Pf. Part. active, except when the Deponent is thus used, the passive construction is far more common than in English:

Invenes veste posita corpora oleo perunxerunt, C., Tuse., 1. 47, 113; the youths, (having) laid aside their clothing, anointed their bodies with oil; or, laid aside their clothing, and anointed their bodies with oil.

2. The Abl. Abs., though often to be rendered by a coördinate sentence, for convenience' sake, always presents a subordinate conception:

(Lysander) suadet Lacedaemoniis ut regia potestate dissoluta ex omnibus dux deligatur ad bellum gerendum, Nep., vi. 3, 5; Lysander advises the Lacedaemonians that the royal power be done away with, and a leader be chosen from all, to conduct the war. Here the one is necessary to the other.

3. As a rule, the Abl. Abs. can stand only when it is not identical

with the subject, object, or dependent case of the verbal predicate. Manlius slew ihe Gaul and stripped him of his necklace is to be rendered: Mānlius caesum Gallum torque spoliāvit.

This rule is frequently violated at all periods of the language, for the purpose either of emphasis or of stylistic effect. The shifted construction is clearer, more vigorous, more conversational.

Neque illum mē vīvō corrumpī sinam, Pl., B., 419; nor will I suffer him to be debauched while I am alive.

The violation is most frequent when the dependent case is in the Genitive:

Iugurtha fratre meo interfecto regnum eius sceleris sui praedam fecit, S., Iug., 14, 11; Jugurtha killed my brother, and (= after killing my brother) made his throne the booty of his crime.

Notes.—1. The Pf. Part. of Deponents and Semi-deponents as an active in the Abl. Abs. is not found in early Latin, and is not common in classical Latin, where it is always without an object and is confined to verbs of Growth (principally ortus, coortus, nātus), Death, and Motion. It becomes common later, being used with an object from Sallust on.

2. The Pf. Part. of Deponents as a passive in the Abl. Abs. is confined in classical Latin to **Emeritus**, pactus, partitus. Sallust and Livy, as well as later writers, extend the usage. Tacitus, however, shows but two cases: adeptus (Ann., 1. 7, 8) and ausus (Ann., 11. 67, 4).

3. The Fut. Part. act. in the Abl. Abs. is post-Ciceronian, beginning with Pollio and Livy.

4. The impersonal use of the Abl. Abs. is found not unfrequently in early Latin and Cicero, rarely in Caesar and Sallust. Most of the forms so used have become adverbial in character, as optato, sortito, intestato, consulto, auspicato, directo, merito, etc. The use of a following clause dependent upon the Abl. is begun in Cicero: addiuncto ut (Off., II. 12, 42). Sallust uses audito and comperto with the Infinitive. But Livy extends this construction very greatly, and introduces the use of neuter adjectives in the same way: incerto prae tenebris quid aut peterent aut vitarent, L., xxviii. 36, 12. It is frequent in Tacitus.

5. The use of adjectives and substantives in the Abl. is not common in early Latin, but is a favorite usage of the classical period and later: **mē auctōre**, C., Or., III. 14.54.

6. Λ predicate substantive, with the participle, is rare, but occurs in good prose: Praetōre dēsīgnātō mortuō fīliō, C., Tusc., III. 28, 70.

## LOCATIVE.

411. In the Singular of the First and Second Declensions, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Locative of the Place Where.

Pompēius hiemāre Dyrrhachii, Apolloniae omnibusque oppidis constituerat, Caes., B.C., III. 5, I; Pompey had determined to winter at Dyrrhachium, Apollonia, and all the towns. Timotheus Lesbi (vixit), Nep., XII. 3, 4; Timotheus lived at Lesbos. Rhodi ego non fui, sed fui in Bithynia, C., Planc., 34, 83; Iwas not at Rhodes, but I was in Bithynia.

REMARKS.—I. A few substantives of the Third Declension also form sporadic Locatives; so Carthagini, in Plautus, Cicero, and later; Tiburi in Cicero, Livy, and later, and a few others. See 386.

2. Other Locative forms are, domi, at home (61, R. 2), humi, on the ground (first in Cicero), belli, and militiae, in the combinations domi militiaeque, belli domique, in peace and in war, at home and in the field; rūri, in the country (but rūre meō, on my farm).

Parvi sunt foris arma nisi est consilium domi, C., Off., 1. 22, 76; of little value are arms abroad unless there is wisdom at home. Iacoro humi, C., Cat., 1. 10, 26; to lie on the ground. Humi prosternere, L., XIV. 20, 9; to throw flat on the ground.

Belli is found alone occasionally in Terence and Cicero; Ennius, Vergil, and Ovid have terrae; Vergil also campi.

3. Appositions are put in the Ablative, commonly with in, and regularly follow when qualified by an attribute:

Milités Albae constitérunt in urbe opportună, C., Ph., IV. 2, 6; the soldiers halted at Alba, a conveniently situated town. Archias Antiochiae nătus est celebri quondam urbe, C., Arch., 3, 4; Archias was born at Antioch, once a populous city.

When urbe, city, oppidō, town, or insulā, island, precedes, the preposition is always employed:

In urbe Rōmā, in the city (of) Rome. In oppidō Citiō, in the town of Citium. In insulā Samō, in the island (of) Samos.

4. Domi takes the possessive pronoun in the Genitive :

Domī suae senex est mortuus, C., N.D., 111. 32, 81; the old man died at his own house. Metuis ut meae domī cūrētur dīligenter, Ter., Hec., 257; you fear that she will not be carefully nursed at my house. Also aliënae domuī (61, R. 2), C., Tusc., 1. 22, 51; in a strange house; domī illīus, C., Div. in Caec., 18, 58; in his house.

But in domō Periclī (65), Nep., vii. 2, 1; in the house(hold) of Pericles. In domō castā, in a pure house. In domō, in the house (not, at home).

Notes.—1. Early Latin shows a number of Locative forms that have disappeared for the most part in the classical period. So temperi (tempori) replaced by tempore in Cicero (Livy and Tacitus only in tempore); mānī, replaced by māne; vesperi and heri; and rare forms like diē, crāstinī, proximī. See 37, 5.

2. On Locative forms of the pronouns, see 91, 3. On animi, see 374, N. 7.

# PREPOSITIONS.

412. The Prepositions are originally local adverbs, which serve to define more narrowly the local ideas involved in the cases. The analogy of the local adverbs is followed by other adverbs, which are not so much prepositions as prepositional adverbs. Of the Prepositions proper, that is, Prepositions

used in composition (see Note), as well as in the regimen of cases, cum (con) does not clearly indicate a local relation.

The only cases that involve local ideas are the Accusative and Ablative. The Accusative, as the case of the Direct Object, represents the relation whither? the Ablative represents the relations whence? and where?

REMARKS.—1. In verbs of Motion, the Result of the Motion is often considered as Rest in a place (where). See 385, N. 2.

2. In verbs of Rest, the Rest is sometimes conceived as the Result of Motion (whither). See 385, N. 3.

Note.—Prepositions derive their name from the fact that they are prefixed in composition. Many of the Latin Prepositions are not used in composition, and these may be called improper Prepositions. The prefixes amb- (am- an-), dis (dī), por- (porr-, pol-), red- (re-), sēd- (sē-) and vē- are sometimes called inseparable prepositions.

**413.** Position of the Preposition.—The Preposition generally precedes the case.

REMARKS.—r. Cum always follows a personal pronoun, and may or may not follow a relative pronoun: mēcum, with me; quōcum or cum quō, with whom. Dē is not uncommonly placed after quō and quā, rarely after quibus. Position after the relative is found here and there also in the case of other Prepositions, but principally in early Latin or the poets, as follows: ab, ad (also in Cicero), ex, in, per, post (after hunc, C., Tusc., II. 6, 15), and prō.

Dissyllabic Prepositions are postponed more often, but Cicero restricts this to pronouns, with the following Prepositions: ante, circã, contrã, inter, penes, propter, sine, ültrã. Caesar postpones intrã also.

Tenus, as far as, and versus, -ward, always follow.

2. When the substantive has an attribute the Preposition may come between; hancigitur ob causam (C., Br., 24,94), for this reason, therefore.

3. The Preposition may be separated from its case by an attributive adjective or its equivalent, or other modifier of the case: post vērō Sullae victōriam, but after Sulla's victory; ad beātē vīvendum, for living happily. But model prose usually avoids separating the Preposition by more than a word or two. The poets have no scruples.

Notes.—1. A peculiarity of poetry, Livy, and later prose is the post-position of both Preposition and attribute: metū in māgnō, L., IX. 37, 11; in great fear.

2. Especially to be noted is the position of per, through (by), in adjurations: Lydia die per omnes te deos oro, H., O., I. 8, 1; Lydia, tell, by all the gods, I pray thee. Per ego te deos oro, Ter., And., 834; I pray thee, by the gods.

3. Between the Preposition and its case are often inserted the enclitics que, ne, ve; and after ante, post, and praeter the conjunctions autem, enim, quidem, tamen, vērō, occur, but not frequently. The first word in the combinations et—et, aut—aut,

simul-simul, vel-vel, sometimes follows the Preposition; cum et diurnō et nocturnō metū, C., Tusc., v. 23, 66.

414. Repetition and Omission of the Preposition.—With different words which stand in the same connection, the Preposition is repeated, when the Preposition is emphatic, or the individual words are to be distinguished; so regularly after aut—aut, et—et, nec—nec, vel—vel, non modo—sed etiam, sed, nisi, quam, and in comparative clauses with ut. Otherwise it is omitted; so always with que.

Et ex urbe et ex agris, C., Cat., II. 10, 21; both from (the) city and from (the) country. De honore aut de dignitate contendimus, C., Tusc., III. 21, 50; we are striving about office, or about position.

Remarks.—I. When a relative follows in the same construction as its antecedent, the Preposition is usually omitted.

(Cimon) incidit in eandem invidiam (in) quam pater suus, Nep., v. 3, 1; Cimon fell into the same disrepute into which his father had fallen.

- 2. So in questions: Ante tempus morī miserum. Quod tandem tempus? C., Tusc., I. 39, 93; a hard case 'tis, to die before the time. (Before) what time, pray?
- 3. After quasi, tamquam, sīcut, the Preposition is more often inserted. Rūs ex urbe tamquam ē vinclīs ēvolāvērunt, Cf. C., Or., 11. 6, 22; they sped from the city to the country as if from a jail.

4. Two Prepositions are rarely used with the same word. Either the word is repeated, a form of is used, or one Prep. turned into an adverb:

Prō Scīpiōne et adversus Scīpiōnem, for and against Scipio. Ante pügnam et post eam, before and after the battle. Et in corpore et extrā [sunt] quaedam bona, C., Fin., 11. 21, 68. But intrā extrāque mūnītiōnēs, CAES., B. C., 111. 72, 2.

415. As adverbs without a case are used:

Ad, about, with numerals in Caesar, Livy, and later; adversus, to meet, especially in Plautus and Terence; ante and post of Time (403, N. 4); contrā, opposite, on the other hand; circā, round about, and circum (rare); prae, forward, in Plautus and Terence; prope, near, and propter (rare); iūxtā, near by (rare); intrā, inside (post-classical); extrā, outside; infrā, below; suprā, above; subter, beneath, and super, above, both rare; citrā, on this side; ūltrā, beyond; cōram, in the presence of; clam, secretly; praeter, except (Salle, Livy and later).

# I.-Prepositions Construed with the Accusative.

416. The Prepositions construed with the Accusative are: Ad, adversus, ante, apud, circã, circum, circiter, cis, citrã,

clam, contrā, ergā, extrā, īnfrā, inter, intrā, iūxtā, ob, penes. per, post (pōne), praeter, prope, propter, secundum, suprā, trāns, ūltrā, ūsque, versus.

- r. Ad. Of Motion Whither, to, up to. Of Direction, towards (ad orientem). Of Respect, for, with regard to (ad hās rēs perspicāx); found first in Terence. Of Manner, after, according to (ad hunc modum); colloquial (in Cicero's speeches only quem ad modum). Of Place, at (= apud), colloquial (ad montem, C., Fam., xv. 2, 2) and legal (ad forum, ad tē), rare in Cicero's speeches. Of Time, at, refers only to future, and gives either a point (ad vesperum, at evening), an interval (ad paucōs diēs, a few days hence), or an approaching time, towards. With Numerals, about. Of Purpose, for (castra hostī ad praedam relinquunt, L., III. 63, 4). Also in phrases. Post-Ciceronian Latin extended the sphere of ad, and colloquially it was often a substitute for the Dative.
- 2. Adversus (-um), [i.e., turned to]. Towards, over against, against. Rare in early Latin and in Caesar and Sallust. In the sense, over against, it is found first in Livy. In the transferred sense, towards, it expresses usually hostile disposition, but begins to indicate friendly disposition in Cicero. Exadversus (-um) is found occasionally, beginning with Cicero, and is always local.
- 3. Ante [i.e., over against, facing]. Of Place Where, before. Of Place Whither, before; rarely (not in Cicero). Of Time, before; the most frequent use. Of Degree, before; not in Cicero or Caesar.
- 4. Apud is used chiefly of Persons. At the house of (characteristic locality). In the presence of (iūdicem). In the writings of (Platōnem). In the view of. Of Place, at, in (= in); common in comedy (apud vIllam); rare elsewhere, especially with proper names, where ad was preferred, except by Sallust. In phrases like apud sō esse, to be in one's senses.
- 5. Circā (circum). Around. Circum is exclusively local (except once in Vitruvius, where it is temporal). Circā in the local sense is found first in Cicero. In the meaning about, of Time or Number, it is found first in Horace. So, too, in the transferred sense of the sphere of mental action: circā virentīs est animus campōs, H., O., II. 5, 5.
- 6. Circiter. Of Place, about; once in Plautus. Usually of Time, about, especially with numerals; but the prepositional usage is on the whole small.
- 7. Cis. citrā. This side, short of. Of Place; cis found first in Varro, citrā in Cicero. Cis is occasionally temporal in Plautus, Sallust, Ovid. Citrā, of Time, within, this side of; found first in Ovid. Without (stopping short of); found first in Live, then in Ovid, and

the post-Augustan prose writers. In C., Or., 18,50, citra may be rendered further back; i.e., nearer the beginning.

- 8. Clam. Secretly. With Acc. in early Latin, in the b. Hisp., and in the Jurists. With Abl. in Caesar (B.C., 11. 32, 8), and in the b. Afr., 11, 4 (both passages disputed). Clanculum with Acc., only in Terence.
- 9. Contrā. Opposite to, over against, opposed to, against. It appears as a Preposition first in the classical period, and is used both in local and transferred senses. In the latter case the force is predominantly hostile.
- 10. Ergā. Opposite, towards. Of Place; very rarely, in early and late Latin. Usually in the transferred sense of friendly relations. The hostile sense is occasional in comedy, Nepos, and later writers. Ergā is used always of Persons or personified Things until the time of Tactrus.
- 11. Extrā. Without, outside of, beside. It is used of local and transferred relations; rarely in the sense of sine (TAC., H., I. 49); occasionally in sense of practer, except.
- 12. Infra. Beneath, lower down. Of Space; more frequently in classical Latin, of Rank or Grade; Temporal but once (C., Br., 10, 40). It occurs but rarely in later Latin, and is cited only once from early Latin (Ter., Eun., 489).
- 13. Inter. Between. Of Place Where, rarely of Place Whither. Colloquial were phrases like inter viam (viās), on the road, inter nös, between ourselves. Inter paucos, preëminently, is post-classical. Of Time, during; at all periods, but in Cicero principally in the Letters.
- 14. Intra. Within. Of Local and Temporal (not in Cicero) relations. The usage in transferred relations is post-classical, and mainly poetical.
- 15. Iūxtā [i.e., adjoining]. Hard by, near, next to. It appears as a Preposition first in Varro, then in Caesar, but not in Cicero. It is used locally until Livy, who employs it also in transferred senses of Time, Order, etc.
- 16. Ob [i.e., over against, opposite to]. Right before. Of Place occasionally at all periods (not in Caesar, Livy, Curtius, Tacitus). Of Cause, for; found in early Latin (not with personal pronouns in Plautus), in classical and post-classical Latin in increasing proportion. Caesar uses it only in formulæ with rem (res) and causam. Cieero and Caesar do not use ob id or ob ea, which, found in early Latin, reappear in Sallust. Ob has almost completely supplanted propter in Tacitus. With the substantive and participle (ob defensum Capitolium) ob is found first in Livy.
  - 17. Penes. With = in the hands of; of Persons. Applied to

Things, it is found in poetry first in HORACE; in prose first in TACITUS. It is found wholly with esse until later Latin.

- 18. Per. Of Space, through; of Time, during; of Cause, owing to; of Instrument, by (both persons and things); of Manner, by, in. It is used phraseologically in oaths, by; also with persons (sometimes things), as per me licet, as far as I am concerned you may. Per = ab of Agent is found only in late Latin.
- 19. Pone. Behind, only in Local relations; it is most frequent in Plautus, occurs but once in Cicero, never in Caesar or Horace, and is rare in general.
- 20. Post. Of Place, behind; rare, but in good usage. Of Time, after. Of Rank, subordinate to; in Sallust, poets, and late prose.
- 21. Practer. Of Place, in front of, on before, past. In a transferred sense, except; contrary to (opinionem and the like). Of Rank, beyond (practer omnes is cited only from Plautus and Horace; usually practer ceteros).
- 22. Prope. Of Place, near; found first in the classical period. It sometimes has the constructions of adjectives of Nearness. Of Time, near; very rare and post-classical, as Livy, Suetonius. Propius is found first in Caesar as a preposition.
- 23. Propter. Of Place, near. Of Cause, on account of; very common in early and classical Latin, but avoided by many authors, notably Tacitus. With substantive and participle it appears first in Varro; then is common in Livy, and later.
- 24. Secundum [i.e., following]. Of Place, along (litus), close behind; very rare (C., Fam., iv. 12, 1). Of Time, immediately after; in early Latin and Cicero, common in Livy, but never in Caesar, Sallust, Tacitus. Of Series, next to; in Plautus and Cicero. Of Reference, according to; at all periods. Secus is ante-classical and rare.
- 25. Suprā. Of Place, above, beyond; so Cicero almost exclusively. Of Time, beyond; very rare. Of Grade, above. Of Authority, in charge of; Vitruvius and later.
  - 26. Trans. On the other side, beyond, across; only in Local relations.
- 27. Ūltrā. Of Space and Measure, on that side, beyond. Of Time; only in late Latin. The early form üls is very rare and in formulæ, as, Cis Tiberim et üls Tiberim. In late Latin ültrā supplants praeter almost wholly.
- 28. **Usque**, up to, is found once in Terence, several times in Cicero, and occasionally later, with the Acc. of the name of a town. With other names of localities it appears first in Livy.
- 29. Versus, -ward. As a preposition it first appears in the classical period and is found usually with names of Towns, and small Islands; with other words it is regularly combined with the prepositions ad (not in Cicero) or in.

# II. Prepositions Construed with the Ablative.

- 417. Prepositions construed with the Ablative are ā (ab, abs), absque, cōram, cum, dē, ē (ex), prae, prō, sine, tenus; rarely fīne, palam, procul, simul.
- 1.  $\overline{\mathbf{A}}$  (ab, abs). Of Place Whence, from, especially of the point of departure; so in phrases,  $\overline{\mathbf{a}}$  terg $\overline{\mathbf{o}}$ ,  $\overline{\mathbf{a}}$  capite, etc. Of Cause, from ( $\overline{\mathbf{ira}}$ ); beginning with Livy. Of Agent, by. Of Remote Origin, from. Of Time, from. Of Reference, according to, after. Of Specification, in (doleō ab oculis); often with compound verbs.

Note.—The form before vowels and  ${\bf h}$  is always  ${\bf ab}$ ; before consonants usually  ${\bf \bar a}$ , though  ${\bf ab}$  is not uncommon before consonants other than the labials  ${\bf b}$ ,  ${\bf f}$ ,  ${\bf p}$ ,  ${\bf v}$ , and is frequent before  ${\bf l}$ ,  ${\bf n}$ ,  ${\bf r}$ ,  ${\bf s}$ , and  ${\bf i}$  ( ${\bf j}$ );  ${\bf abs}$  is found only before  ${\bf t\bar e}$  and in the combination  ${\bf absque}$ . Cicero uses  ${\bf abs}$   ${\bf t\bar e}$  in his early writings, but prefers  ${\bf \bar a}$   ${\bf t\bar e}$  in his later ones.

- 2. Absque [i.e., off]. Without. Peculiar to early Latin, where it is used in conditional sentences only. Occasionally in later Latin, as, absque sententiā (Quint., vii. 2, 44), for praeter sententiam.
- 3. Coram. Face to face with, in the presence of; it is used with Persons only, and is found first in Cicero, and then in later writers, but in general it is rare until the time of Tacitus, who uses it very often in the Annals and always postpones.
- 4. Cum. With; of Accompaniment in the widest sense. With Abl. of Manner regularly when there is no attributive; often when there is one. Sometimes it is used of mutual action: 5rāre cum, plead with (Plautus), etc.
- 5. Dē. Of Place, down from, and then from; especially with compounds of dē and ex. Of Source, from; with verbs of Receiving (actual and mental). Of Origin; but mainly in poetry and later prose. Of Object, concerning. Of Time; in phrases dē nocte, dē diē (diem dē diē, day after day). Of the Whole from which a part is taken. Of Reference, according to (dē sententiā). Of Material; poetical and late.
- 6.  $\overline{\mathbf{E}}$  (ex). Of Place, out of, from. Often in phraseological usages, as ex parte, partly; ex asse, and the like. With verbs of Receiving, from. Of Time, from; ex tempore is phraseological. Of Origin, from. Of Reference, according to. Of Manner; in many phrases, as ex aequō, ex ōrdine.  $\overline{\mathbf{E}}$  is used before consonants only, ex before both vowels and consonants.
- 7. Fine (or fini). Up to; found in Plautus and Cato, then not until very late Latin. With the Gen. it occurs in b. Afr. and in Sallust, Fr.; then not until Ovid and very late Latin.
- 8. Palam, in the sense of coram, in the presence of, is found first in Horace and Livy, and is rare.

- 9. Prac. Of Place, in front of; with verbs of Motion only, in classical Latin. In early Latin in the phrase prace manū, at hand. Of the Preventive Cause, for; with negatives only, in and after the classical period; in early Latin, also in positive sentences. Of Comparison, in comparison with; occasionally at all periods.
- 10. Prō. Of Place, before; not in early Latin, but found first in the classical period, where it is confined to certain combinations, as prō rōstrīs, castrīs, aede, vāllō, etc., and means before and on. In behalf of; not cited for early Latin. Instead of; very common at all periods. In proportion to; at all periods. Quam prō; found first in Livy.
- 11. **Procul**, far from, is poetical, and begins in prose with Livy. In classical Latin prose always with ab.
- 12. Simul, in the sense of cum, belongs to poetry and Tacitus (Ann., III. 64).
  - 13. Sine, without, is opposed to cum.
- 14. Tenus, to the extent of. Of Space (actual and transferred), as far as. It is found occasionally with the Gen., but almost wholly with Pl., and perhaps but once in Cicero (Aral., 83); otherwise it belongs to poetry, making its first appearance in prose in Cicero (Dei., 13, 36) and Livy. It occurs with the Acc. in late Latin. Tenus is always postponed.

## III. Prepositions Construed with the Accusative and Ablative.

- 418. Prepositions construed with the Accusative and Ablative are in, sub, subter, super.
- 1. In (the forms endo, indu, are early and rare). (a) With Accusative: Of Place, into, into the midst of. Of Disposition and Direction, towards. Of Time, into (multam noctem), for (diem, multos annos, posterum). Of Purpose or Destination, for; mostly post-classical. Of Manner, in, after. Phraseologically with neuter adjectives: in deterius, for the worse; but mainly post-classical. With Distributives, to, among.
- (b) With Ablative: Of Place, in, on. Of Time, within. Of Reference, in the case of, in regard to, in the matter of. Of Condition, in (armis). In many phrases, especially with neuter adjectives, in incerto, dubio, integro, ambiguo, etc.
- 2. Sub. (a) With Accusative: Of Place Whither, under. Of Time Approaching, about (noctem, vesperum); just Past, immediately after. Of Condition, under (sub potestätem redigi).
- (b) With Ablative: Of Place Where, under; also in phrases, sub arms, etc. Of Time When, about; rare, and first in Caesar. Of Position, under (rege, iūdice, etc.). Of Condition, under (eā condicione); first in Livy.

3. Subter. (a) With Accusative; rare, and locally equal to sub.

(b) With the Ablative; more rare and almost wholly poetical (Catullus and Vergil). Cf. C., Tusc., v. 1, 4, which may be Acc. Subtus occurs only in Vitr., iv. 2, 5, and then with the Accusative.

4. Super. (a) With Accusative but once before the classical time: Of Place, over, above. Of Time, during; found first in PLINY, Epp. Metaphorically of Degree, beyond (super modum); post-classical.

(b) With the Ablative: Of Space, above. Of Time, during (not until the Augustan poets). Metaphorically = praeter; very rare: = dē, concerning; colloquial; hence in Plautus, Cato, Cicero's Letters (ad Att.), Sallust, Horace, Livy; but uncommon.

#### INFINITIVE.

#### The Infinitive as a Substantive.

419. The Infinitive is the substantive form of the verb.

Note.—The Infinitive differs from a verbal substantive in that it retains the adverbial attribute, the designations of voice and time, and the regimen of the verb:

Amāre, to love; valdē amāre, to love hugely; amārī, to be loved; amāvisse, to have loved; amāre aliquem, to love a man; nocēre aliquī, to hurt a man.

But the great claim of the Infinitive to be considered a verb lies in the involution of predicate and subject. Like the finite verb, the Infinitive involves predicate and subject; but the subj. is indefinite and the predication is dependent.

420. The Infinitive, when it stands alone, involves an indefinite Accusative Subject, and the Predicate of that Subject is, of course, in the Accusative Case.

Regem esse, to be king. Bonum esse, to be good. Compare quid stultius quam aliquem eō sibi placere quod ipse non fecit, Sen., E.M., 74, 17; what is more foolish than for a man to (that a man should) pride himself on what he has not done himself.

So in the paradigm of the verb:

Amātūrum esse, to be about to love.

Note.—On the Nom. with the Inf. by Attraction, see 528.

In consequence of this double nature, the Infinitive may be used as a substantive or as a verb.

**421.** The Infinitive, as a substantive, is used regularly in two cases only—Nominative and Accusative. In the other cases its place is supplied by the Gerund and the Ablative Supine.

Notes.—1. Traces of the original Dat. (or Loc.) nature of the Infinitive are still apparent in many constructions, which are, however, mostly poetical:

(a) With verbs of Motion in early Latin and the later poets, when ut, ad with Gerundive or Sup. is to be expected.

Abiit aedem visere Minervae, Pl., B., 900; she went away to visit the temple of Minerva. Semper in Ōceanum mittit mē quaerere gemmās, Prop., II. (III.) 16 (8), 17; she is always sending me to the Ocean to look for (in quest of) pearls.

(b) With verbs of Giving, Rendering, and the like, in early Latin and the poets, where the Acc. of the Gerundive is to be expected. Classical is the use of **bibere** only, in this way. (The old form **biber** points to the effacement of the final sense of this Inf.)

Iovī bibere ministrāre, *Cf. C., Tusc.*, I. 26. Quem virum aut hērōa lyrā vel ācrī tībiā sūmēs celebrāre, *Clīō*? H., O., I. 12, 1. Different, of course, are cases like dī tibi posse tuōs tribuant dēfendere semper, Ov., *Tr.*, III. 5, 21, where posse dēfendere is felt as potestātem dēfendendī.

(c) With many adjectives where the Sup. in ū, or some construction of Purpose, is to

be expected.

In early Latin the adjectives are paratus, consuetus, defessus. But this usage is widely extended by the Augustan poets Vergil and Horace, and later.

It is confined principally, however, to adjectives of capability, ability, necessity, etc., and adjectives like facilis (with act. as well as pass. Inf., first in Prop.), difficilis, and the like: Rōma capi facilis, Lucan, II. 656. Note the strange usage dissentire manifēstus, Tac., Ann., II. 57, 4, and occasionally elsewhere.

2. The Inf. may take an adj. attribute, but in classical prose this is limited to ip-

sum, hoc ipsum, and totum hoc:

Vivere ipsum turpe est nöbis, living itself is a disgrace to us. Quibusdam tötum höc displicet philosophäri (280, 1, a).

#### The Infinitive as a Subject.

**422.** The Infinitive, as a Subject, is treated as a neuter substantive.

Incipere multō est quam inpetrāre facilius, Pl., Poen., 974; beginning is much easier (work) than winning. Miserum est dēturbārī fortūnīs omnībus, C., Quinct., 31, 95; it is wretched to find one's self turned rudely out of all one's fortunes. Non tam turpe fuit vincī quam contendisse decorum est, Ov., M., 1x. 6 (280, 2, a).

Notes.—1. The use of the Inf. as a subj. grew out of its use as an obj., but the original Dat. (Loc.) sense was lost to the consciousness just as the prepositional sense of our own to is lost when our Inf. becomes a subj.; as in, to err is human, to forgive divine. No Roman felt turpe fuit vinci, as, there was disgrace in being beaten; bonum est legere was to him another bona est lectio (see Priscian, 408, 27).

- 2. The substantives used as predicates are not common in early Latin. Lubidō est is confined to Plautus. Stultitia est, consilium est, and tempus est are universal. Cleero introduces the not uncommon mos est, and many others with est, as: consuetudo (-inis), vitium, iūs, fās, nefās, facinus, fātum, caput, rēs (Caesar), opus, mūnus, officium, onus, sapientia, and a few others. Still more are found later. Many of these also take ut; so officium always in comedy (except Ter., And., 331).
- 3. Neuter adjectives are used as predicates in great variety. Ciceronian are certius (quam), consentaneum, falsum, incredibile, integrum, gloriosum, maius (quam), mīrum, novom, optimum, rēctum, singulāre, trītum, vērīsimile, vērum. Most of them, however, but once. Some of these also take ut, but not often in good prose.

4. In early Latin many impersonal verbs are used as predicates. Classical Latin retains most of them, but drops condecet, dispudet, subolet, and adds some, such as paenitet, dedecet, displicet, prodest, obest, attinet. Others come in later. Some, such as oportet, also take ut or the simple Subjy. Noteworthy is est, it is possible, found first in Varro and Lucr., then not till Verg. and Hor., and never common.

5. Certain abstract phrases, whose meanings are akin to the words already mentioned, take the Inf. as a subject. So especially predicate Genitives, as consuctadinis and moris; or combinations like quid negotii, nihil negotii est; predicate Datives such as cordi est, curae est, both unclassical; or phrases, as operae pretium, in animo esse, in mentem venire, of which the last two were introduced by CICERO.

## The Infinitive as an Object.

**423.** 1. The Infinitive is used as the Object of Verbs of Creation, commonly known as Auxiliary Verbs.

These Verbs help the Infinitive into existence.

2. Such verbs denote Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Resolve, Continuance, End, and the like, with their opposites.

Emorī cupio, Ter., Heaut., 971; I want to die. [Cato] esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat, S., C., 54, 5; Cato preferred being (good) to seeming good. Sed precor ut possim tūtius esse miser, Ov., Tr., v. 2, 78; but 1 pray that I may be more safely wretched. Vincere scis, Hannibal; victoriā ūtī nescīs, L., XXII. 51; how to win victory, you know, Hannibal; how to make use of victory, you know not. Qui morī didicit, servīre dēdidicit, Sen., E.M., 26, 10; he who has learned to die has unlearned to be a slave. Maledictis deterrere ne scribat parat, Ter., Ph., 3; he is preparing (trying) to frighten (him) from writing, by abuse. Qui mentīrī solet, pēierāre consuēvit, C., Rosc. Com., 16, 46; he who is wont to lie is accustomed to swear falsely. Vulnera quae fecit debuit ipse pati, Ov., Am., II. 3, 4; the wounds he gave he should himself have suffered. Vereor laudare praesentem, C., N.D., I. 21, 58; I feel a delicacy about praising a man to his face. Rēligionum animum nodis exsolvere pergo, Luck., 1. 932; I go on to loose the spirit from the bonds of superstitious creeds. Tuā quod nīl rēfert, percontārī dēsinās, Ter., Hec., 810; cease to inquire what matters naught to you.

So habeo, I have (it in my power).

Tantum habeō pollicērī mē tibǐ cumulātē satisfactūrum, C., Fam., I. 5A, 3; so much I can promise, that I will give you abundant satisfaction.

Notes.—1. The original force of the Inf. is, in most of these constructions, hard to determine, and was certainly not felt by the Romans themselves. In many cases the Inf. seems to have been used because the governing word or phrase was felt to be more or less equivalent to a Verb of Creation.

2. The principal verbs, construed thus with the Inf., are as follows:

Will: velle, malle, nölle, cupere, optare (rare, except in passive), petere, pöstuläre, avere, audere, desiderare (first in Cic.), praegestire, gestire, ärdere,

metuere (ante-class.), verērī, timēre, formīdāre (ante-class.), reformīdāre, horrēre, horrēscere, hortārī and compounds, monēre and compounds, suādēre (first in Cic.), persuādēre, iubēre, imperāre, praecipere, cōgere, permittere (once in Cic., then later), concēdere (first in Cic.), cūrāre (not in CAES., SALL., LIVY), vetāre, recūsāre (first in Cic.), mittere, omittere, intermittere, cunctārī, cēssāre, morārī, dubitāre, gravārī, prohibēre, impedire, dēterrēre.

Power: posse, quire, nequire, sustinere (first in Cic.), valere (first in Cic.),

pollere (first in Cic.), habere (rare, except in Cic.), scire, nescire.

Duty: debere, necesse habeo.

Habit: assuescere, assuefacere (first in Cic.), consuescere, solere.

Inclination: conarī (only with Inf.), studēre, contendere, intendere (CAES.), laborāre (always with neg. in Cic.), molirī (rare), aggredī, ingredī, adorīrī, nītī (first in CAES.), ēnītī (ante-class. and post-class.), quaerere (first in Cic.), temptāre (first in Hirtus).

Resolve: cogitare, meditari, memini (mostly poet.), parare, statuere (first in Cic.), constituere (first in Ter.), document (not class. in pass.), indicare (first in Cic.), dostinare (first in Caes.), certum est, deliberatum est, propositum est (first in Cic.).

Continuance: stare (first in Cic.), instare, perstare (once in Cic., then late), perseverare (first in Cic.), properare (only word used in early Latin), festinare (first in Cic.), maturare (first in Cic.).

Beginning and End: coepi, incipere (first in Cic.), exordiri, pergere, desinere.

Poets are free in using the Inf. after other verbs.

3. Notice that coepI, I have begun, and desino, I cease, are used in Pf. pass. with passive Infinitives, in early Latin, Cicero, Caesar, always; later the construction varies, and Tacitus does not observe the rule.

Bellō Athēniēnsēs undique premī sunt coeptī, Nep., XIII. 3, 1; the Athenians began to feel the pressure of war on (from) all sides. Veterēs ōrātiōnēs legī sunt dēsitae, C., Br., 32, 123; the old speeches have ceased to be read.

When the passives are really reflexives or neuter, the active forms may be used.

 Verbs of Will and Desire take ut as well as the Infinitive. So regularly opto, 1 choose, in classical prose.

5. Verbs which denote Hope, Promise, and Threat are treated as verbs of Saying and Thinking (530), but also occasionally as in English:

Spērant sē māximum frūctum esse captūrōs, C., Lael., 21, 79; they hope that they will derive great advantage. Subruptūrum pallam prōmīsit tibī, Pl., Asin., 930; he promised to steal the mantle from you.

6. Doceo, I teach, iubeo, Ibid, veto, I forbid, sino, I let, take the Inf. as a Second

Accusative (339):

(Dionysius) no collum tonsori committeret tondere filias suas docuit, C., Tusc., v. 20, 58; Dionysius, to keep from trusting his neck to a barber, taught his daughters to shave (taught them shaving). Ipse iubet mortis to meminise and H., Mart., II. 59 (376). Vitae summa brevis spem nos vetat inchoare longam, H., O., I. 4, 15; Hife's brief sum forbids us open (a) long (account with) hope. Neu sinas Modos equitare inultos, H., O., I. 2, 51; nor let the Median ride and ride unpunished.

## The Infinitive as a Predicate.

**424.** The Infinitive, as a verbal substantive, may be used as a Predicate after the copula **esse**, to be, and the like.

Docto homini et ërudito vivere est cogitare, C., Tusc., v. 38, 111; to a learned and cultivated man to live is to think.

## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

- 425. The other cases of the Infinitive are supplied by the Gerund. With Prepositions, the Gerund, and not the Infinitive, is employed.
  - N. Legere difficile est, reading (to read) is hard to do.
  - G. Ars legendi, the art of reading.

Puer studiosus est legendi, the boy is zealous of reading.

- D. Puer operam dat legendo, the boy devotes himself to reading.
- Ac. Puer cupit legere, the boy is desirous to read.

Puer propensus est ad legendum, the boy has a bent toward reading.

AB. Puer discit legendo, the boy learns by reading.

Note.—Of course the Inf. may be quoted as an abstract notion, a form of the verb:

Multum interest inter "dare" et "accipere," Sen., Ben., 5, 10; there is a vast
difference between "Give" and "Receive."

426. As a verbal form, the Gerund, like the Infinitive, takes the same case as the verb.

Hominës ad deës nüllä rë propius accëdunt, quam salütem hominibus dandē, C., Lig., 12, 38; men draw nearer to the gods by nothing so much as by bringing deliverance to their fellow-men.

Notes.—1. The Gerund is the substantive of the Gerundive (251, N. 1). The most plausible theory connects the forms in -ndu- with those in -nt- (Pr. Part. active) as being verbal nouns originally without any distinction of voice. The signification of necessity comes mainly from the use as a predicate, i.e., through the characteristic idea. Thus, he who is being loved, implies he who is of a character to be loved (qui amētur), and then he who should be loved.

The Gerundive is passive: the Gerund, like other verbal nouns (363), is theoretically active or passive, according to the point of view. Practically, however, the passive signification of the Gerund is rare.

Iugurtha ad imperandum (= ut eī imperārētur, perhaps an old military formula) Tisidium vocābātur, *Cf.* S., *Iug.*, 62, 8.

Gerundive and Pf. Part. passive are often translated alike; but in the one case the action is progressive or prospective, in the other it is completed.

Caesare interficiendo Brütus et Cassius patriae libertātom restituere conāti sunt; by the murder of Caesar (by murdering Caesar), Brutus and Caesius endeavored to restore their country's freedom to her. Caesare interfecto, Brütus et Caesares patriae libertātem non restituorunt; by murdering Caesar, Brutus and Caesius did not restore their country's freedom to her.

- 427. Gerundive for Gerund.—Instead of the Gerund, with an Accusative Object, the object is generally put in the case of the Gerund, with the Gerundive as an Attribute.
  - G. Plācandī Deī, of appeasing God.
  - D. Plācandō Deō, for appeasing God.
  - AB. Plācando Deo, by appeasing God.

In model prose this construction is invariably employed with Prepositions.

Ad plācandōs Deōs, for appeasing the gods (C., Cat., III. 8, 20). In plācandīs Diīs, in appeasing the gods.

Notes.—1. It is impossible to make a distinction between the Gerund and the Gerundive form. They are often used side by side, where there can be no difference (L., xxi. 5, 5; xxv. 40, 6; xxviii. 37, 1; xxxi. 26, 6). The preference for the Gerundive is of a piece with the use of the Pf. Part. pass. in preference to an Abstract Substantive (360, R. 2).

2. The impersonal Gerundive is found with an Acc. obj. once in Plautus (agitandumst vigiliās, Trin., 869), and occasionally elsewhere in early Latin (principally Varro); very rarely in Cicero and for special reasons (Cat. M., 2, 6); here and there later (not in Caesar, Horace, Ovid, and, perhaps, Livy).

Aeternās quoniam poenās in morte timendumst, Luck., 1. 111; since we must fear eternal punishments in death.

3. Neuter adjectives and pronouns are not attracted: aliquid faciend ratio, C., Inv., 1. 25, 36; method of doing something. Cupiditas plura habend greed for having more. But when the neuter adjective has become a substantive (204, x. 2), the Gerundive form may be used: cupiditas vērī videndī, C., Fin., II. 14, 46; the desire of seeing the truth.

4. The Gerundive with personal construction can be formed only from Transitive Verbs, like other passives (217). Hence the impersonal form must be used for all verbs that do not take the Acc., but with such verbs prepositions are rarely found.

Ad non parendum senatui, L., XLII. 9; for not obeying the senate.

5. But the Gerundives from utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor (407) have the personal construction, but usually only in the oblique cases (C., Fin., I. x. 3, is an exception), as a remnant of their original usage. The poets and later prose writers use still more forms in the same way, as laetandus, dolendus, medendus, paenitendus, etc. Cicero also shows single instances of gloriandus, disserendus, respondendus.

6. The use of the Nom. of the Gerundive follows the ordinary rules of the Nomina-

#### Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive.

**428.** The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives which require a complement:

Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est, C., Fin., 1. 13, 42; philosophy is to be considered the art of living. Et propter vitam vivendi perdere causäs, Juv., viii. 84; and on account of life, to lose the reasons for living. Raucaque garrulitäs studiumque immāne loquendī, Ov., M., v. 678; and hoarse chattiness, and a monstrous love of talking. Trīste est nōmen ipsum carendī, C., Tusc., 1. 36, 87; dismal is the mere word "carēre" (go without). Nōn est plācandī spēs mihi nūlla Deī, Ov., Tr., v. 8, 22; I am not without hope of appeasing God. Īgnōrant cupidī maledicendī plūs invidiam quam convīcium posse, Quint., vi. 2, 16; those who are eager to abuse know not that envy has more power than billingsgate. (Titus) equitandī perītissimus fuit, Suet., Tit., 3; Titus was exceedingly skilful in riding. Neuter suī prōtegendī corporis memor (erat), L., 11. 6, 9; neither

thought of shielding his own body. Qui his mõs obsidendi viäs et virös aliënõs appellandi ? L., XXXIV. 2, 9; what sort of way is this of blocking up the streets and calling upon other women's husbands ? Summa ēlūdendi occāsiōst mihi nunc senēs, Ter., Ph., 885; I have a tip-top chance to fool the old chaps now.

REMARKS.—I. As mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, are, in their origin, neuter singulars, from meum, my being, tuum, thy being, suum, one's being, etc., the Gerundive is put in the same form: conservandi sui, of preserving themselves; vestri adhortandi, of exhorting you; and no regard is had to number or gender.

Cōpia plācandī sit modo parva tuī, Ov., Her., 20, 74; let (me) only have a slight chance of trying to appease you (feminine).

2. The Gen. of the Gerund and Gerundive is used very commonly with causā, less often with grātiā, and rarely with (antiquated) ergō, on account of, to express Design: Dissimulandī causā in senātum vēnit, S., C., 31, 52; he came into the senate for the purpose of dissimulation.

The Gen. alone in this final sense is found once in Terence, several times in Sallust, occasionally later, especially in Tacitus.

(Lepidus arma) cēpit libertātis subvortundae, S., Phil. Fr., 10; Lepidus took up arms as a matter of (for the purpose of) subverting freedom.

More commonly ad, rarely ob. See 432.

Esse with this Gen. may be translated by serve to; this is occasional in Cicero; see 366, 429, 1.

Omnia discrimina tālia concordiae minuendae [sunt], L., XXXIV. 54, 5; all such distinctions are matters of (belong to) the diminishing of concord (serve to diminish concord). Compare Caes., B. G., v. 8, 6: [nāvēs] quās suī quisque commodī fēcerat, ships which each one had (had) made (as a matter) of personal convenience.

Notes.—1. In early Latin, in Cicero (early works, *Philippics* and philosophical writings), then in later authors, we find occasionally a Gen. Sing. of the Gerund, followed by a substantive in the Plural. Here it is better to conceive the second Gen. as objectively dependent upon the Gerund form.

Agitur utrum Antōniō facultās dētur agrōrum suīs latrōnibus condōnandī, C., Ph., v. 3, 6; the question is whether Antony shall receive the power of giving away (of) lands to his pet highwaymen.

2. Fās est, nefās est, iūs est, fātum est, copia est, ratio est, consilium est, consilium capere, consilium inīre, and a few others, have often the Inf. where the Gerund might be expected. Sometimes there is a difference in meaning; thus tempus, with Gerund, the proper time (season), with Inf., high time.

The poets and later prose writers extend this usage of the Infinitive.

3. Another peculiarity of the poets is the construction of the adj. or subst. like the cognate verb with the Inf., instead of with the Gen. of the Gerund. (At) sēcūra quiēs et nescia fallere (= quae nesciat fallere) vīta, V., G., II. 467; quiet without a care, and a life that knoweth not how to disappoint (ignorant of disappointment).

Later prose is more careful in this matter.

4. The Gen. of Gerund, depending upon a verb, is rare and Tacitean (Ann., II. 43).

Tacitus also uses the appositional Gerund with a substantival neuter (Ann., XIII. 26).

5. Some substantives, like auctor, dux, may have a Dat. instead of a Gen.; Liv., 1. 23: mē Albānī gerendō bellō ducem creāvēre.

#### Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive.

- 429. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after words that denote Fitness and Function.
- 1. The usage is rare in classical Latin, and begins with a few verbs and phrases: esse (= parem esse), to be equal to; pracesse and practicere, to be (put) in charge of; studere and operam addere, laborem impertire, to give one's attention to; then it is used with a few substantives and adjectives to give the object for which, and with names of Boards.

Solvendō cīvitātēs nōn erant, Cf. C., Fam., 111. 8, 2; the communities were not equal to (ready for) payment. (were not solvent). [Sapiēns] vīrēs suās nōvit, scit sē esse onerī ferendō, Sen., E.M., 71, 26; the wise man is acquainted with his own strength; he knows that he is (equal) to bearing the burden.

So comitia decemvirīs creandīs (C., Leg.Agr., 2, 8); triumvir coloniīs dēdūcendīs (S., Iug., 42); reliqua tempora dēmetendīs frūctibus accommodāta sunt, C., Cat. M., 19, 70.

2. Classical Latin requires ad with the Acc., but from Livy on the use of this Dat. spreads, and it is found regularly after words which imply Capacity and Adaptation. It is found also technically with verbs of Decreeing and Appointing, to give the Purpose.

Aqua nitrõsa ütilis est bibendō, Cf. Plin., N.H., xxxi. 32, 59; alkaline water is good for drinking (to drink). Līgnum āridum māteria est idōnea ēliciendīs īgnibus, Cf. Sen., N.Q., II. 22, 1; dry wood is a fit substance for striking fire (drawing out sparks). Referundae ego habeō linguam nātam grātiae, Pl., Pers., 428; I have a tongue that's born for showing thankfulness.

Notes.—1. In early Latin the use of this Dat. is very restricted, it being found principally after studere; operam dare, or sumere (both revived by Livy); finem (or modum) facere; and a few adjectival forms. Of the latter, Cicero uses only accommodatus, Caesar only par.

Rare and unclassical is the Acc. in dependence upon a Dat. of the Gerund.
 Epidicum operam quaerendo dabo, Pt., Ep., 605.

#### Accusative of the Gerundive.

430. The Gerundive is used in the Accusative of the Object to be Effected, after such verbs as Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving, Letting, Contracting, and Undertaking. (Factitive Predicate.)

Diviti homini id anrum servandum dedit, PL, B, 338; he gave that

gold to a rich man to keep. Conon mūros reficiendos cūrat, NEP., IX. 4, 5; Conon has the walls rebuilt. Patriam dīripiendam relīquimus, C., Fam., XVI. 12, 1; we have left our country to be plundered. [Carvilius] aedem faciendam locāvit, L., x. 46, 14; Carvilius let the (contract of) building the temple.

Of course, the passive form has the Nominative:

Filius Philippi Dēmētrius ad patrem redücendus lēgātīs datus est, L., XXXVI. 35, 13; the son of Philip, Demetrius, was given to the envoys to be taken back to his father.

Notes.—1. Early Latin shows with this construction dare, conducere, locare, rogare, petere, habere, propinare. Classical Latin gives up rogare, petere, propinare, but adds others, as tradere, obicere, concedere, committere, curare, relinquere, proponere. Livy introduces suscipere. The use of ad in place of the simple Acc. is not common.

[Caesar] oppidum ad dīripiendum mīlitibus concēssit, Caes., B.C., III. 80, 6. But ad is necessary in nēminī sē ad docendum dabat, C., Br., 89, 306; he would yield to no one for teaching, i.e., would accept no one as a pupil.

2. Habeō dicendum and the like for habeō dicere, or, habeō quod dicam,

belongs to later Latin (TAC., Dial., 37; Ann. IV. 40, etc.).

## Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive.

431. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used as the Ablative of Means and Cause, seldom as the Ablative of Manner or Circumstance.

Unus homo nobis cunctando restituit rem, Ennius (C., Cat.M., 4, 10); one man by lingering raised our cause again. Hominis mons discendo alitur et cogitando, C., Off., I. 30, 105; the human mind is nourished by learning and thinking. Plausum meo nomine recitando dedorunt, Cf. C., Att., IV. I, 6; they clapped when my name was read. Exercendo cottidio milite hostem opperiobatur, L., XXXIII. 3, 5; drilling the soldiers daily he waited for the enemy.

Notes.—r. The Abl. with adjectives is post-Ciceronian: dīgna stirps suscipiendō (instead of quae susciperet) patris imperiō, Tac., Ann., XIII. 14. So too with verbs: continuandō abstitit magistrātū, L., IX. 34, 2.

2. The Abl. after a comparative is cited only from C., Off., I. 15, 47.

3. In post-Augustan Latin, and occasionally earlier, we find the Abl. of the Gerund paralleled by the Pr. participle: Bocchus, seu reputandō (= reputāns) . . . seu admonitus, etc., S., Iug., 103, 2.

## Prapositions with the Gerund and Gerundive.

432. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive follows the preposition ad, seldom ante, circā, ergā, in, inter, ob, propter, and super. See 427.

Nülla rēs tantum ad dicendum proficit quantum scriptio, C., Br. 24, 92;

nothing is as profitable for speaking as writing. Atticus philosophōrum praeceptis ad vitam agendam non ad ostentātionem ūtēbātur, Cf. Nep., XXV. 17, 3; Atticus made use of the precepts of philosophers for the conduct of life, not for display. Inter spoliandum corpus hostis exspīrāvit, Cf. L., 11. 20, 9; while in the act of stripping the body of the enemy he gave up-the ghost.

Remark.—Ad is very common; noteworthy is its use with verbs of Hindering (palūs Rōmānōs ad īnsequendum tardābat, Caes., B. G., vii. 26, 2); with substantives to give the End (for); with adjectives of Capacity and Adaptation (aptus, facilis, etc.). See 429, 2.

Notes.—1. Ante is very rare (L, Praef., 6; V., G., III. 206). Circā and ergā are post-Augustan and very rare. In gives the End For Which, and is classical but not common. Inter is temporal, during, while, and is found rarely in early, more often in later, but not in classical prose. Ob is used first by Cicero (not by Caesar), and is rare. Propter occurs first in Valentus Maximus; super first in Tacitus.

2. On the Infinitive after a Preposition, see 425.

433. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive takes the prepositions ab, dē, ex, often in, but seldom prō. Post-Ciceronian and rare are cum and super.

Prohibenda māximō est īra in pūniendō, C., Off., 1. 25, 89; especially to be forbidden is anger in punishing. [Brūtus] in liberandā patriā (= dum līberat) est interfectus, C., Cat.M., 20, 75; Brutus was slain in the effort to free his country. Philosophi in iIs librīs ipsīs quōs scribunt dē contemnendā glōriā sua nōmina inscribunt, C., Tusc., 1. 15, 34 (385, R. 1). Ex dīscendō capiunt voluptātem, Cf. C., Fin., v. 18, 48; they receive pleasure from learning.

Notes.—1. In with Abl. is sometimes almost equivalent to a Pr. participle : In circumeundo exercitu animadvertit, b.Afr., 82.

2. Sine is used once in VARRO, L.L., 6, 75, and in DONATUS (TER., And., 391).

3. Even when the word and not the action is meant, the Gerund is the rule: Piscrepat ā timendō confidere, C., Tusc., III. 7, 14; the Inf. in Varro, L.L., 6, 50.

## SUPINE.

434. The Supine is a verbal substantive, which appears only in the Accusative and Ablative cases.

#### The Accusative Supine.

435. The Accusative Supine (Supine in -um) is used chiefly after verbs of Motion, to express Design.

Galliae lēgātī ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt, CAES., B.G., I. 30, 1; the commissioners of Gaul came to congratulate Caesar. Spectātum

veniunt; veniunt spectentur ut ipsae, Ov., A.A., I. 99; they come to see the show; they come to be themselves a show. (Gallī gallīnāceī) cum sõle eunt cubitum, PLIN., N.H., X. 24, 46; cocks go to roost at sunset. Stultitia est vēnātum dūcere invītās canēs, PL., St., 139; 'tis foolishness to take unwilling dogs a-hunting.

Notes.—1. Ire and venire are the most common verbs with the Supine, and they form many phraseological usages, as: ire coctum, cubitum, dormītum, pāstum, supplicātum, sessum, salūtātum, etc. Similarly dare is found in phrases with nūptum, vēnum, pessum.

2. The Supine is very common in early Latin, less so in Cicero, comparatively rare in Caesar, frequent again in Sallust and Livy. Later Latin, and especially the poets,

show but few examples, as the final Inf. takes its place.

 $3.\ \,$  The Acc. Supine may take an object, but the construction is not very common :

(Hannibal) patriam dēfēnsum (more usual, ad dēfendendam patriam) revocātus (est), Nep., XXIII. 6,1; Hannibal was recalled to defend his country.

4. The Fut. Inf. passive is actually made up of the passive Inf. of **ire**, to go, **iri** (that a movement is made, from **itur**: 208, 2), and the Supine:

Rūmor venit datum īrī gladiātorēs, Ter., Hec., 39; the rumor comes that gladiators (gladiatorial shows) are going to be given.

The consciousness of this is lost, as is shown by the Nom. (528).

Reus damnatum iri videbatur, Quint., ix 2,88; the accused seemed to be about to be condemned.

#### The Ablative Supine.

**436.** The Ablative Supine (Supine in  $\cdot \bar{\mathbf{u}}$ ) is used chiefly with Adjectives, as the Ablative of the Point of View From Which (397). It never takes an object.

Mîrābile dictū, wonderful (in the telling) to tell, visū, to behold.

Id dictū quam rē facilius est, L., XXXI. 38, 4; that is easier in the saying than in the fact (easier said than done).

Notes.—1. Cicero and Livy are the most extensive users of this Supine; Caesar has but two forms: factū and nātū; Sallust but three; Cicero uses twenty-four. In early Latin and in the poets the usage is uncommon; in later Latin it grows. Altogether there are over one hundred Supines, but only about twenty-five Supines occur in Abl. alone; the most common are dictū, to tell, factū, to do, audītū, to hear, vīsū, to see, memorātū, relātū, trāctātū; then, less often, cognitū, to know, inventū, intellēctū, scītū, adspectū.

The adjectives generally denote Ease or Difficulty, Pleasure or Displeasure, Right or Wrong (fas and nefas). These adjectives are commonly used with Dative, and a

plausible theory views the Supine in u as an original Dative (ui),

 Ad, with the Gerundive, is often used instead: Cibus facillimus ad concoquendum, C., Fin., 11. 20, 64; food (that is) very easy to digest.

The Infinitive, facilis concoqui, is poetical. Common is facile concoquitur. Other equivalents are active lnfin., a verbal substantive, a Pf. Part. pass. (with opus), or a relative clause (with dignus),

4. The use of the Abl. Supine with verbs is very rare.

(Vilicus) prīmus cubitū surgat, postrēmus cubitum eat, Cato, Agr., 5, 5; the steward must be the first to get out of bed, the last to go to bed. Obsōnātū redeō, Pl., Men., 277; I come back from marketing (imitated by Statius).

#### PARTICIPLE.

437. The Participle may be used as a substantive, but even then generally retains something of its predicative nature.

Nihil est māgnum somniantī, C., Div., 11. 68, 141; nothing is great to a dreamer (to a man, when he is dreaming). Rēgia, crēde mihī, rēs est succurrere lāpsīs, Ov., Pont., 11. 9, 11; it is a kingly thing, believe me, (to run to catch those who have slipped.) to succor the fallen.

Remark.—The Attribute of the Participle, employed as a substantive, is generally in the adverbial form: recte facta, right actions; facete dictum, a witty remark.

Notes.—1. This use as a substantive is rare in classical prose, but more common in the poets and in post-classical prose. In the Pr. Part., principally sapiëns, adulésoëns, amāns; in the Pf. more often, but usually in the Plural; doctī, the learned, victī, the conquered. The first examples of Fut. Part. used as substantives are nuntiātūrī (Curt., vii. 4, 32), pecēātūrōs (Tac., Agr., 19).

2. The use of an attributive or predicative Pf. Part. with a substantive is a growth in Latin. Early Latin shows very few cases, and those mostly with opus and ūsus. Cato has post dimissum bellum, and this innovation is extended by Varro, with propter. Creero is cautious, employing the prepositions ante, dē, in, post, praeter, but Sallust goes much farther, as the strange sentence inter hace parāta atque dēcrēta (664, r. 2) indicates. Livy and Tacitus are, however, characterized by these prepositional uses more than any other authors. The use of a Part. in the Nom. in this way is found first in Livy.

438. The Participle, as an adjective, often modifies its verbal nature, so as to be characteristic, or descriptive.

(Epaminondās) erat temporibus sapienter ūtēns, Nep., xv. 3, 1; Epaminondas was a man who made (to make) wise use of opportunities (= is qui ūterētur). Senectūs est operōsa et semper agēns aliquid et mōliēns, Cf. C., Cat.M., 8, 26; old age is busy, and always doing something and working at something.

Remark.—Especial attention is called to the parallelism of the participle or adjective with the relative and Subjunctive:

Rēs parva dictū, sed quae studiīs in māgnum certāmen excēsserit, L. XXXIV. I; a small thing to mention, but one which, by the excitement of the parties, terminated in a great contest. Mūnera non ad dēliciās muliebrēs quaesīta nec quibus nova nūpta comātur, TAC., Germ., 18.

Note.—The Fut. Part. active is rarely used adjectively in classical Latin except the forms futurus, venturus. The predicate use after verbs of Motion to express Purpose is found first in Cicero (Verr., I. 21, 56), though very rarely, but becomes increasingly common from Livy's time. Livy is the first to use the Fut. Part. as an adjective clause, a usage which also becomes common later.

(Maroboduus) mīsit lēgātōs ad Tiberium ōrātūrōs auxilia, Tac., Ann., H. 46; Marbod sent commissioners to Tiberius, to beg for reinforcements. Servīlius adest dē tē sententiam lātūrus (perhaps due to est), C., Verr., I. 21, 56. Rem ausus plās fāmae habitūram (that was likely to have) quam fidel, L., II. 10, 11. (Dictātor) ad hostem dūcit, nūllō locō, nisi quantum necessitās cōgeret, fortūnae sē commissūrus (with the intention of submitting), L., XXII. 12, 2.

## ADVERB.

- 439. 1. The Predicate may be qualified by an Adverb.
- 2. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, and sometimes substantives, when they express or imply verbal or adjective relations.

Male vivit, he lives ill; bene est, it is well; fere omnes, almost all; nimis saepe, too often; admodum adulescens, a mere youth; late rex (V., A., I. 21), wide-ruling; bis consul, twice consul; duo simul bella, two simultaneous wars.

Notes.—1. The form of the Adverb does not admit of any further inflection, and therefore the Adverb requires no rules of Syntax except as to its position.

2. With other adverbs and with adjectives, adverbs of degree only are allowable, to which must be reckoned bene, ēgregiē, and (later) insigniter. Poetical are such expressions as turpiter ater, splendidē mendax (H., A.P., 3; O., III. x1, 35). Male as a negative is found with sānus only in Cicero (Att., IX. 15, 5); other combinations are poetical, or post-classical.

3. The translation for very varies at different periods; multum is common in Plattus and in Horace's Satires and Epistles, rare elsewhere; valdē is introduced by Cicero, but did not survive him, to any extent. Sānē is also frequent in Cicero, especially in the Letters ad Atticum. Cornifectus affected vehementer, and so do colloquial authors, as Viprauvius; fortiter comes in later; bene is occasional in Plattus and Terence, more common in Cicero; oppidō is characteristic of early Latin, and Livy and the Archaists; admodum is Ciceronian, but adfatim comes later and is rare. Abundē is rare before the time of Sallust. Nimium (nimiō) belongs to early Latin, as do impēnsē and impendiō. Satis is common in the classical period, and also nimis, but mainly with negatives.

4. The Adverb as an attribute of substantives is rare. Cicero shows tum, saeps, quasi, tamquam, Livy uses more.

**440.** Position of the Adverb.—Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb, and before it when it ends the sentence, and immediately before their adjective or adverb.

Iniustē facit, he acts unjustly. Admodum pulcher, handsome to a degree, very handsome. Valdē diligenter, very carefully.

REMARK.—Exceptions occur chiefly in rhetorical passages, in which great stress is laid on the adverb, or in poetry:

[Īram] bene Ennius initium dīxit Insāniae, C., Tusc., Iv. 23, 52; well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness. Vixit dum vixit bene Ter., Hec., 461; he lived while he lived (and lived) well.

## Negative Adverbs.

- 441. There are two original negatives in Latin, nē and haud (haut, hau). From nē is derived nōn [nē-oinom (ūnum), no-whit, not]. Nē is used chiefly in compounds, or with the Imperative and Optative Subjunctive. The old use appears in nē—quidem. Nōn is used with the Indicative and Potential Subjunctive; haud negatives the single word, and is used mainly with adjectives and adverbs.
- **442. Non** (the absolute *not*) is the regular Negative of the Indicative and of the Potential Subjunctive.

Quem amat, amat; quem non amat, non amat, Petr., 37; whom she likes, she likes; whom she does not like, she does not like.

Non ausim, I should not venture.

Remarks.—I. Non, as the emphatic, specific negative, may negative anything. (See 270, R. I.)

Non is the rule in antitheses: Non est vivere sed valere vita, Mart.,
 70, 15; not living, but being well, is life.

Notes.—1. Non in combination with adjectives and adverbs, and rarely with substantives and verbs, takes the place of negative in- or ne-. Non arbitrābātur quod efficeret aliquid posse esse non corpus (ἀσώματον), C., Ac., 1. 11, 39; Cat.M., 14, 47.

2. Other negative expressions are neutiquam, by no means; nihil, nothing ("Adam, with such counsel nothing swayed"). On nullus, see 317, 2, N. 2.

- 3. Nec = non is found in early Latin, here and there in Verg., Livy, and Tactrus. In classical Latin it is retained in a few compounds, as: necopinans, negotium, and in legal phraseology.
- 443. Haud is the negative of the single word, and in model prose is not common, being used chiefly with adjectives and adverbs: haud quisquam, not any; haud māgnus, not great; haud male, not badly.

Notes.—1. Hau is found only before consonants, and belongs to early Latin and Vergu.. Haut (early) and haud are found indiscriminately before vowels.

- 2. Haud is very rarely or never found in Conditional, Concessive, Interrogative, Relative, and Infinitive sentences.
- 3. CAESAR uses haud but once, and then in the phrase haud soio an (457, 2).
  CICERO says also haud dubito, haud Ignoro, haud erravero, and a few others; and combines it also with adjectives and adverbs, but not when they are compounded with negative particles, i.e., he does not say haud difficilis, and the like.
- 4. Haud with verbs is very common in early Latin, and then again in Livy and Tacitus. In antitheses it is not uncommon in comedy, but usually in the second member: inceptiost amentium haud amantium, Ter., And. 218; the undertaking is one of lunatics, not lovers.
  - 5. A strengthened expression is haud quāquam.

444. 1. Nē is the Negative of the Imperative and of the Optative Subjunctive.

Tū nē cēde malīs, V., A., vi. 95; yield not thou to misfortunes. Nē trānsierīs Hibērum, L., xxi. 44, 6; do not cross the Ebro. Nē vīvam, sī sciō, C., Att., iv. 16, 8; may I cease to live (strike me dead), if I know.

Notes.-1. On the negative with the Imperative, see 270, N.

- 2. No as a general negative particle, = non, is found very rarely in early Latin, mostly with forms of velle (no parcunt, Pl., Most., 124, is disputed). Classical Latin retains this only in no-quidem, in compound noquaquam, and in a shortened form in nefas, nego, neque, etc.
  - 2. Nē is continued by nēve or neu. See 260.

No illam vondas neu mo perdas hominem amantem, Pl., Ps., 322; don't sell her, and don't ruin me, a fellow in love.

445. Subdivision of the Negative.—A general negative may be subdivided by neque—neque, as well as by aut—aut, or strengthened by nequem, not even.

Nihil umquam neque însolēns neque glōriōsum ex ōre [Tīmoleontis] prōcēssit, Nep., xx. 4, 2; nothing insolent or boastful ever came out of the mouth of Timoleon. Cōnsciōrum nēmō aut latuit aut fūgit, L., xxiv. 5, 14; of the accomplices no one either hid or fled. Numquam [Scīpiōnem] nē minimā quidem rē offendī, C., Lael., 27, 103; I never wounded Scipio's feelings, no, not even in the slightest matter.

(" I will give no thousand crowns neither."—SHAKESPEARE.)

Note.—In the same way nego, I say no, is continued by neque—neque (nec-nec): Negant nec virtūtēs nec vitia crēscere, C., Fin., III. 15, 48; they deny that either virtues or vices increase (that there are any degrees in).

446. Negative Combinations.—In English, we say either no one ever, or, never any one; nothing ever, or, never anything; in Latin, the former turn is invariably used: nēmē umquam, no one ever.

Verres nihil umquam fecit sine aliquo quaestu, C., Verr., v. 5, 11; Verres never did anything without some profit or other.

Notes.—1. No one yet is nondum quisquam; no more, no longer, is iam non.

2. The resolution of a negative non ullus for nullus, non umquam for numquam, non scio for nescio, is poetical, except for purposes of emphasis, or when the first part of the resolved negative is combined with a coordinating conjunction (490): Non ulla tibi facta est iniuria, Cf. C., Div. in Caec., 18, 60.

3. Němő often equals në quis: Němő dē nöbīs ūnus excellat, C., Tusc., v.

36, 105.

**447.** Negō (I say no, I deny) is commonly used instead of dicō nōn, I say-not.

Assem sēsē datūrum negat, C., Quinct., 5, 19; he says that he will not give a copper. Vel aī vel negā, Accius, 125 (R.); say yes or say no!

Remark.—The positive ( $\bar{\mathbf{a}}$ i $\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ , I say) is sometimes to be supplied for a subsequent clause, as C., Fin., I. 18, 61. The same thing happens with the other negatives, as vol $\bar{\mathbf{o}}$  from  $n\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ l $\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ , iube $\bar{\mathbf{o}}$  from vet $\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ , sci $\bar{\mathbf{o}}$  from nesci $\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ , que $\bar{\mathbf{o}}$  from neque $\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ , quisquam from  $n\bar{\mathbf{e}}$ m $\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ , ut from  $n\bar{\mathbf{e}}$ .

#### POSITION OF THE NEGATIVE.

448. The Negative naturally belongs to the Predicate, and usually stands immediately before it, but may be placed before any emphatic word or combination of words.

Potes non reverti, Sen., E.M., 49, 10; possibly you may not return. (Non potes reverti, you cannot possibly return.) Saepe viri fallunt; tenerae non saepe puellae, Ov., A.A., 111. 31; often do men deceive; soft-hearted maidens not often. Non omnis aetās, Lyde, lūdo convenit, Pl., B., 129; not every age, (good) Lydus (Playfair), sorts with play. Non ego ventosae plēbis suffrāgia vēnor, II., Ep., 1. 19, 37; I do not hunt the voices of the windy commons, no, not I.

Notes.—1. As the Copula esse, to be, is, strictly speaking, a predicate, the Negative generally precedes it, contrary to the English idiom, except in contrasts. The difference in position can often be brought out only by stress of voice: felix non erat, he wasn't happy: non felix erat, he was not happy, he was far from happy.

2. Ne-quidem straddles the emphatic word or emphatic group (445); but very

rarely does the group consist of more than two words.

3. A negative with an Inf. is often transferred to the governing verb: non putant lugendum (esse) viris, C., Tusc., III. 28, 70; on nego, see 447.

449. Two negatives in the same sentence destroy one another, and make an affirmative, but see 445:

Non nego, I do not deny (I admit).

REMARKS.—I. Non possum non, I cannot but (I must):

Qui mortem in malīs pōnit nōn potest eam nōn timēre, C., Fin., III. 8, 29; he who classes death among misfortunes cannot but (must) fear it.

2. The double Negative is often stronger than the opposite Positive; this is a common form of the figure Litotes, understatement (700).

Non indoctus,  $highly\ educated$ ; non sum nescius,  $I\ am\ well\ aware$ .

Non indecoro pulvere sordidi, H., O., II. I, 22; swart (soiled) with (no dis)honorable dust. Non ignara mali miseris succurrere disco, V., A., I. 630; not unacquainted (= but too well acquainted) with misfortune, I learn to succor the wretched.

3. It follows from R. 2 that nec non is not simply equivalent to et, and; nec belongs to the sentence, non to the particular word:

Nee hoc [Zēnō] non vīdit, C., Fin., IV. 22, 60; nor did Zeno fail to see this. At neque non (dī) dīligunt nos, C., Div., II. 49, 102; but neither (is it true that) the gods do not love us, etc

In the classical Latin this form of connection is used to connect clauses but not single words, and the words are regularly separated. Varro, the poets, and later prose use necnon like et, and connect with it also single ideas.

4. Of especial importance is the position of the Negative in the following combinations;

Indefinite Affirmative.		General Affirmative.	
nōnnihil,	somewhat;	nihil non,	everything;
nonnēmo,	some one, some;	nēmŏ nōn,	everybody;
nõnnüllī,	some people;	nūllī nōn,	all;
nonnumquam,	sometimes;	numquam non,	always;
nonnūsquam,	somewhere;	nūsquam non,	everywhere.

In ipsā cūriā nonnēmo hostis est, C., Mur., 39,84; in the senate-house itself there are enemies (nēmo non hostis est, everybody is an enemy). Non est plācandī spēs mihi nūlla Deī, Ov., Tr., v. 8,22 (428); I have some hope of appeasing God (nūlla spēs non est, I have every hope). Nēmo non didicisse māvult quam discere, Quint., III. 1,6; everybody prefers having learned to learning.

#### INCOMPLETE SENTENCE.

## Interrogative Sentences.

**450**. An interrogative sentence is necessarily incomplete. The answer is the complement.

## 451. A question may relate:

(a) To the existence or the non-existence of the Predicate: Predicate Question.

Vivitne pater? Is my father alive?

(b) To some undetermined essential part of the sentence, such as Subject, Object, Adjective, Adverbial modifier: Nominal Question.

Quis est? Who is it? Quid ais? What do you say? Qui hic mos? What sort of way is this? Cur non discedis? Why do you not depart? For a list of Interrogative Pronouns see 104.

Remarks.—I. The second class requires no rules except as to mood (462).

2. The form of the question is often used to imply a negative opin-

ion on the part of the speaker: Quid interest inter periūrum et mendācem? C., Rosc. Com., 16, 46; what is the difference between a perjured man and a liar? All questions of this kind are called Rhetorical.

**452.** I. Interrogative sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound* (disjunctive).  $Am\ I$ ? (simple);  $Am\ I$ , or  $am\ I$  not? (disjunctive).

Note.—Strictly speaking, only the simple interrogative sentence belongs to this section; but for the sake of completeness, the whole subject will be treated here.

2. Interrogative sentences are further divided into direct and indirect, or independent and dependent. Am I? (direct); He asks whether I am (indirect).

#### DIRECT SIMPLE QUESTIONS.

453. Direct simple questions sometimes have no interrogative sign. Such questions are chiefly passionate in their character, and serve to express Astonishment, Blame, Disgust.

Infelix est Fabricius quod rūs suum fodit? Sen., Dial., 1. 3, 6; Fabricius is unhappy because he digs his own field? (Impossible!) Heus, inquit, linguam vīs meam praeclūdere? Phaedr., 1. 23, 5; Ho! ho! quoth he, you wish to shut my mouth, you do? (You shall not.) Tuom parasitum non novisti? Pl., Men., 505; you don't know your own parasite? (Strange!) Hunc tū vītae splendorem maculīs adspergis istīs? C., Planc., 12, 30; you bespatter this splendid life with such blots as those?

Notes.—1. Questions of this kind are characteristic of the Comic Poets. In Cicero they are found especially in expressions of doubt, with **posse**, and with an emphatic personal pronoun.

2. Such a question may have the force of a command. So in the phrase etiam tū

taces? won't you keep quiet? common in comedy (PL., Trin., 514).

3. Noteworthy is the occasional usage of the question in place of a condition. Amat? sapit, PL., Am., 995; is he in love? he is sensible. Trīstis es? indīgnor quod sum tibi causa dolōris, Ov.. Tr., IV. 3, 33 (542). See 593, 4.

4. When several questions follow in immediate succession, only the first generally

takes the Interrogative Pronoun, or -ne. Repeated questioning is passionate.

5. On ut in the exclamatory question, see 558.

**454.** Interrogative Particles.—•Ne (enclitic) is always appended to the emphatic word, and generally serves to denote a question, without indicating the expectation of the speaker.

Omnisne pecunia dissoluta est? C., Verr., III. 77, 180; is all the money paid out? (Estne omnis pecunia dissoluta? Is all the money paid out?)

REMARKS.-I. As the emphatic word usually begins the sentence,

so -ne is usually appended to the first word in the sentence. But exceptions are not uncommon.

2. -Ne is originally a negative. Questioning a negative leans to the affirmative; and -ne is not always strictly impartial.

Notes.—1. -Ne sometimes cuts off a preceding -s (in which case it may shorten a preceding long vowel), and often drops its own e. Viden? Seest? Tün? You? Satin? For certain? Also sein, ain, vin, itan, etc. This occurs especially in early Latin.

2. This -ne is not to be confounded with the asseverative -ne, which is found occasionally in Plautus and Terence, Catullus, Horace (ō sērī studiōrum, quīne putētis, etc., H., S., I. 10, 21, a much discussed passage), and later appended to personal, demonstrative, and relative pronouns.

3. In poetry -ne is sometimes appended to interrogative words, to heighten the effect: utrumne (H., S., II. 3, 251), quone (H., S., II. 3, 295).

4. -Ne is often added to personal pronouns in indignant questions: tune inane

quicquam putes esse ? C., Ac., II. 40, 125.

5. In early Latin -ne seems to be used sometimes with a force similar to that later exercised by nonne; but in most of the examples the expectation of an affirmative answer seems to be due rather to the context than to ne; see, however, R. 2.

## 455. Nonne expects the answer Yes.

Nonne meministi? C., Fin., II. 3, 10; do you not remember? Nonne is generosissimus qui optimus? QUINT., v. II, 4; is he not the truest gentleman who is the best man?

So the other negatives with -ne: nemone, nihilne, and the like.

Note.—Nonne is denied for Plautus, but wrongly, though it occurs but rarely, and regularly before a vowel. It is also rare in Terence. In classical Latin it is frequent, but is never found in Catullus, Tibullus, and Seneca Rhetor.

## **456.** Num expects the answer No.

Numquis est hīc alius praeter mē atque tē? Nēmō est, PL., Tr., 69; is anybody here besides you and me? No. Num tibi cum faucēs ūrit sitis, aurea quaeris pēcula? H., S., I. 2, 114; when thirst burns your throat for you, do you ask for golden cups? [No.]

Note.—Numne is found very rarely, perhaps only in C., N.D., 1.31, 88, and Lael., 11, 36. Numnam belongs to early Latin. In many cases in early Latin, num seems to introduce a simple question for information, without expecting a negative answer.

# **457.** 1. **An** (*or*) belongs to the second part of a disjunctive question.

Sometimes, however, the first part of the disjunctive question is suppressed, or, rather, involved. The second alternative with an serves to urge the acceptance of the positive or negative proposition involved in the preceding statement. This abrupt form of question (or, then) is of frequent use in Remonstrance, Expostulation, Surprise, and Irony.

Non manum abstines? An tibi iam mavis cerebrum dispergam hic? Ter., Ad., 781; are you not going to keep your hands of? Or would you rather have me scatter your brains over the place now? (Vir cūstödit absēns, my husband keeps guard, though absent. Is it not so?) An nescīs longās rēgibus esse manūs? Ov., Her., 16, 166; or perhaps you do not know (you do not know, then) that kings have long hands (arms).

Notes.—1. This usage is found in early Latin, but is a characteristic of Cicero especially.

- 2. An is strengthened by ne. This is found frequently in early Latin, more rarely later. Cicero uses anne only in disjunctive questions, and Horace, Tibullus, Propertius not at all.
- 3. In early Latin very frequently, less often in the poets; occasionally in prose, beginning with Livy, an is used as a simple interrogative; so nescio an = nescio num. There seems to be good reason for believing that an was originally a simple interrogative particle, but became identified later with disjunctive questions.
- 2. Especially to be noted, in connection with an, are the phrases, nesciō an (first in Cicero, and not common), haud sciō an (this is the usual phrase: haud sciam an is rare), I do not know but; dubitō an, I doubt, I doubt but =: I am inclined to think; incertum an (once in Cicero), and rarely dubitārim and dubium an, which give a modest affirmation; very rarely a negation. Negative particles, added to these expressions, give a mild negation.

Haud sciō an ita sit, C., Tuse., II. 17, 41; I do not know but it is so. Haud sciō an nūlla (senectūs) beātior esse possit, C., Cat.M., 16, 56; I do not know but it is impossible for any old age to be happier. Dubitō an [Thrasybūlum] prīmum omnium pōnam, Nep., viii. 1, 1; I doubt but I should (= I am inclined to think I should) put I thrasybulus first of all.

Note.—In early Latin these phrases are still dubitative. The affirmative force comes in first in Cicero, and seems to have been equivalent to försitan, perhaps, with the Potential Subjunctive: Försitan et Priamī fuerint quae fāta requīrās, V., A., II. 506; perhaps you may ask what was the fate of Priam, too.

#### DIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

**458.** Direct Disjunctive Questions have the following forms:

Utrum nescīs quam altē ascenderīs, an pro nihilo id putās? C., Fam., x. 26, 3; are you not aware how high you have mounted, or do you count that as nothing? Vosne Lūcium Domitium an vos Domitius deseruit? Caes., B.C., II. 32, 8; have you deserted Lucius Domitius, or has Domitius deserted you? Eloquar an sileam? V., A., III. 39; shall I speak, or hold my peace? Utrum hōc tā parum commeministī, an ego nōn satis intellēxī, an mūtāstī sententiam? C., Att., IX. 2; do you not remember this, or did I misunderstand you, or have you changed your view?

Notes.—1. Utrumne—an is found once in Cicero (Inv., 1. 31, 51), not in Caesi-3 or Livy, occasionally elsewhere (H., Epod., 1, 7); utrum—ne—an is more common. Ne—an, which is common in prose, is not found in Cat., Tib., Prop., Hor., Lucan.

 Ne in the second member, with omitted particle in first member, occurs only in H., Ep., I. II, 3 (disputed), in the direct question, except in the combination necne (459).

3. Ne-ne is very rare; V., A., II. 738; XI. 126.

4. Aut (or), in questions, is not to be confounded with an. Aut gives another part of a simple question, or another form of it (or, in other words). An excludes, aut extends.

(Voluptās) meliōremne efficit aut laudābiliōrem virum ? C., Parad., t. 3, 15; does pleasure make a better or more praiseworthy man? (Answer: neither.) Tū virum mē aut hominem dēputās adeō esse? Ter., Hec., 524; do you hold me to be your husband or even a man?

459. In direct questions, or not is annon, rarely necne; in indirect, necne, rarely annon.

Isne est quem quaerō, annōn? Ter., Ph., 852; is that the man I am looking for, or not? Sitque memor nostrī necne, referte mihī, Ov., Tr., Iv. 3, 10 (204, N. 7).

Notes.—1. Necne is found in direct questions in Cicero, Tusc., III. 18, 41 (sunt hace tua verba necne?), Flace., 25, 59; and also Lucr., III. 713. Annon in indirect questions occurs in Cicero, Inv., 1. 50, 95; II. 20, 60; Cuel., 21, 52; Balb., 8, 22, etc.

 Utrum is sometimes used with the suppression of the second clause for whether or no? but not in early Latin. So C., Flacc., 19, 45, etc.

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

460. Indirect questions have the same particles as the direct, with the following modifications.

## 1. Simple Questions.

(a) Num loses its negative force, and becomes simply whether. It decays in later Latin.

Speculārī (iūssērunt) num sollicitātī animī sociōrum essent, L., XLII. 19, 8; they ordered them to spy out whether the allies had been tampered with.

(b)  $\mathbf{Si}$ , if, is used for whether, chiefly after verbs and sentences implying trial. Compare  $\mathbf{\bar{0}}$  si (261).

Temptāta rēs est sī prīmō impetū capī Ardea posset, L., I. 57, 2; an attempt was made (in case, in hopes that, to see) if Ardea could be taken by a dash (coup-de-main). Ībō, vīsam sī domī est (467, N.), Ter., Heaut., 170; I will go (to) see if he is at home.

Notes.-1. An is sometimes used for num and ne, but never in model prose.

Consuluit deinde (Alexander) an totius orbis imperium fatis sibi destinaretur, Curt., IV. 7, 26; Alexander then asked the oracle whether the empire of the whole world was destined for him by the fates.

2. Nonne is cited only from Cicero and only after quaerere (Ph., XII. 7, 15).

## 2. Disjunctive Questions.

In addition to the forms for Direct Questions (458), a form with -ne in the second clause only is found in the Indirect Question, but is never common; see 458, N. 2.

Tarquinius Prīscī Tarquiniī rēgis fīlius neposne fuerit parum liquet, I., I. 46, 4; whether Tarquin was the son or grandson of king Tarquin the Elder does not appear.

Notes .- 1. The form -ne is not found in Caesar or Sallust.

2. The form ne-ne is poetical, except once in Caesar (B. G., VII. 141, 8).

3. Utrum—ne—an is rare but classical. Utrumne—an begins with Horace, is not found in Livy, Vell, Val. M., or either Pliny. In Tacitus only in the *Dialogus*.

## SUMMARY OF DIRECT AND INDIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

461. Direct.

Is the last syllable short or long ? Cf. C., Or., 64, 217.

Postrēma syllaba utrum brevis est an longa?
brevisne est an longa?

Indirect.

In a verse it makes no difference whether the last syllable be short or long:

In versu nihil refert

utrum postrēma syllaba brevis sit an longa. postrēma syllaba brevisne sit an longa. postrēma syllaba brevis an longa sit (CICERO). postrēma syllaba brevis sit longane.

## MOODS IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

- 1. In Direct Questions.
- **462.** The Mood of the question is the Mood of the expected or anticipated answer.
- 463. Indicative questions expect an Indicative answer, when the question is *genuine*.
  - A. Quis homo est? B. Ego sum, TER., And., 965; who is that? It is I.
- A. Vivitne (pater)? B. Vivom liquimus, PL., Capt., 282; is his father living? We left him alive.
- **464.** Indicative questions anticipate an Indicative answer in the negative when the question is *rhetorical*.

Quis non paupertatem extiméscit? C., Tusc., v. 31, 89; who does not dread poverty?

REMARK.—Nonne and num in the direct question are often rhetorical (see Pl., Am., 539; C., Div., 1. 14, 24). With nonne a negative answer is anticipated to a negative, hence the affirmative character. Compare further, 451, R. 2.

465. Subjunctive questions which expect Imperative answers are put chiefly in the First Person, when the question is *deliberative*.

A. Abeam? B. Abi, PL., Merc., 749; shall I go away? Go.

A. Quid nunc faciam? B. Të suspenditë, Pl., Ps., 1229; what shall I do now? Hang yourself.

REMARK.—So in the representative of the First Person in dependent discourse (265).

**466.** Subjunctive questions anticipate a potential answer in the negative, when the question is *rhetorical*.

Quis hōc crēdat? who would believe this? [No one would believe this.] Quid faceret aliud? what else was he to do? [Nothing.]

Quis tulerit Gracchos de seditione querentes? Juv., II. 24 (259).

Remark.—On the Exclamatory Question see 534, 558.

## 2. In Indirect Questions.

467. The Dependent Interrogative is always in the Subjunctive.

The Subjunctive may represent the Indicative.

[Considerabimus] quid fecerit (Indie. fecit), quid faciat (Indie. facit), quid facturus sit (Indie. faciet or facturus est), Cf. C., Inv., 1. 25, 36; we will consider what he has done, what he is doing, what he is going to do (will do). (Epaminondas) quaesivit salvusne esset clipeus, C., Fin., 11. 30, 97; Epaminondas asked whether his shield was safe. (Salvusne est?)

The Subjunctive may be original. See 265.

Ipse docet quid agam; fās est et ab hoste docērī, Ov., M., IV. 428 (219); (Quid agam, what I am to do; not what I am doing). Quaerō ā tē cūr  $\mathbf{C}$ . Cornēlium non dēfenderem, C., Vat., 2, 5; I inquire of you why I was not to defend C. Cornelius. (Cūr non dēfenderem? why was I not to defend?)

Remarks.—1. Nesciō quis, nesciō quid, nesciō quī, nesciō quod, I know not who, what, which, may be used exactly as indefinite pronouns, and then have no effect on the construction. This usage is found at all periods.

Nescio quid māius nāscitur Īliade, Prop., II. (III.) 32 (34), 66; something. I know not what, is coming to the birth, greater than the Riad.

2. The Relative has the same form as the Interrogative quis? except in the Nom. Sing.; hence the importance of distinguishing between them in dependent sentences. The interrogative depends on the leading verb, the relative belongs to the antecedent, (611, R. 2.)

Interrogative: die quid rogem, tell me what it is I am asking.

Relative: die quod rogo, Ter., And., 764; tell me that which I am asking (the answer to my question).

The relative is not unfrequently used where we should expect the interrogative, especially when the facts of the case are to be emphasized:

Dicam quod sentiō, C., Or., I. 44, 195; I will tell you my real opinion. Incorporated relatives are not to be confounded with interrogatives:

Patefacio vobis quas isti penitus abstrūsas insidias (= insidias quas) sē posuissse arbitrantur, C., Agr., II. 18, 49; I am exposing to your view the schemes which those people fancy they have laid in profound secrecy.

Note.—In the early Latin of Comedy the leading verb is very frequently disconnected from the interrogative, which consequently appears as an independent sentence with the Indicative. This is most common after dic, responde, loquere, and kindred Imperatives; vidě (Plautus also circumspice, respice); të rogō, interrogō, quaero, and similar phrases; audire, videre, etc., scin; relative words, ut, quomodo, etc., where the modal and not interrogative force is prominent. Classical prose has given up all these usages. A few cases in Cicero are contested or differently explained. In poetry and later prose the examples are found only here and there.

Dic, quid est ? PL., Men., 397; tell me, what is it? (Dic quid sit, tell me what it is.) Quin tū ūno verbo dic: quid est quod me velis ? TER., And., 45; won't you tell me in one word: What is it you want of me? Dic mihi quid feci nisi non sapienter amavi, Ov., Her., II. 27; tell me what have I done, save that I have loved

So also, nescio quomodo, I know not how = strangely; and mirum quantum, it

(is) marvellous how much = wonderfully, are used as adverbs:

Mirum quantum profuit ad concordiam, L., II. 1, 11; it served wonderfully to promote harmony. Nesciō quō pactō vel magis hominēs iuvat glōria lāta quam magna, Plin., Ep., IV. 12, 7; somehow or other, people are even more charmed to have a widespread reputation than a grand one.

Early Latin shows also perquam, admodum quam, nimis quam, incredibile quantum; Cicero mīrum (mīrē) quam, nimium quantum, sānē quam, valdē quam; CAESAR none of these; SALLUST immane quantum; LIVY adds oppido quantum; PLINY MAI. immēnsum, infinitum quantum; FLORUS plūrimum quantum. The position excludes a conscious ellipsis of the Subjunctive.

#### PECULIARITIES OF INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

468. The subject of the dependent clause is often treated as the object of the leading clause by Anticipation (Prolepsis).

Nosti Marcellum quam tardus sit, Caelius (C., Fam., VIII. 10, 3); you know Marcellus, what a slow creature he is.

Note.—This usage is very common in Comedy, and belongs to conversational style in general.

**469.** Contrary to our idiom, the interrogative is often used in participal clauses. In English, the participle and verb change places, and a Causal sentence becomes Final or Consecutive.

Quam ūtilitātem petentēs scīre cupimus illa quae occulta nōbīs sunt? C., Fin., 111. 11, 37; what advantage do we seek when we desire to know those things which are hidden from us? [Solōn Pisistratō tyrannō] quaerentī quā tandem rē frētus sibǐ tam audāciter resisteret, respondisse dīcitur senectūte, C., Cat.M., 20, 72; Solon, to Pisistratus the usurper, asking him (= when Pisistratus the usurper asked him) on what thing relying (= on what he relied that) he resisted him so boldly, is said to have answered "old age."

Note.—The Abl. Abs. with the interrogative is rare. C., Verr., 111. 80, 185.

470. Final sentences (sentences of Design) are used in questions more freely than in English.

Sessum it praetor. Quid ut iddicetur? C., N.D., 111. 30, 74; the judge is going to take his seat. What is to be adjudged? (To adjudge what?)

Remark.—The Latin language goes further than the English in combining interrogative words in the same clause; thus two interrogatives are not uncommon:

Considera quis quem fraudasse dicatur, C., Rosc. Com., 7, 21.

#### Yes and No.

## **471**. (a) Yes is represented:

1. By sānē, (literally) soundly, sānē quidem, yes indeed, etiam, even (so), vērē (rarely vērum), of a truth, ita, so, omnīnē, by all means, certē, surely, certō, for certain, admodum, to a degree, etc.

Aut etiam aut non respondere [potest], C., Ac., II. 32, 104; he can answer either yes or no.

2. By censeo, I think so; scilicet, to be sure.

Quid si etiam occentem hymenaeum? Conseo, Pl., Cas., 806; what if I should also sing a marriage-song? I think you had better.

3. By repeating the emphatic word either with or without the confirmatory particles, vērō (principally with pronouns), sānē, prōrsus, etc.

Estisne? Sumus, are you? We are. Dasne? Do sane, C., Leg., 1. 7, 21; do you grant? I do indeed.

## (b) No is represented:

- By non, non vērō, non ita, minimē, by no means, nihil, nothing, minimē vērō, nihil sānē, nihil minus.
  - 2. By repeating the emphatic word with the negative:

Non irāta es? Non sum irāta, PL., Cas., 1007; you are not angry? I am not.

(c) YEA or NAY.—Īmmō conveys a correction, and either removes a doubt or heightens a previous statement: yes indeed, nay rather.

Ecquid placeant (aedës) më rogës? Immo perplacent, P.L., Most., 907; do I like the house, you ask me? Yes indeed, very much. Causa igitur non bona est? Immo optima, C., Att., IX. 7, 4; the cause, then, is a bad one? Nay, it is an excellent one.

Remark.—Yes, for, and no, for, are often expressed simply by nam and enim: Tum Antōnius: Herī enim, inquit, hōc mihī prōposueram, C., Or., II. 10, 40; then quoth Antony: Yes, for I had proposed this to myself yesterday.

## SYNTAX OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

- 472. 1. A compound sentence is one in which the necessary parts of the sentence occur more than once; one which consists of two or more clauses.
- 2. Coördination (Parataxis) is that arrangement of the sentence according to which the different clauses are merely placed side by side.
- 3. Subordination (**Hypotaxis**) is that arrangement of the sentence according to which one clause depends on the other.

He became poor and we became rich; the second clause is a coördinate sentence.

He became poor that we might be rich; the second clause is a subordinate sentence.

4. The sentence which is modified is called the Principal Clause, that which modifies is called the Subordinate Clause. "He became poor" is the Principal Clause, "that we might be rich" is the Subordinate Clause.

Remark.—Logical dependence and grammatical dependence are not to be confounded. In the conditional sentence, vivam si vivet, let me live if she lives, my living depends on her living; yet "vivam" is the principal, "si vivet" the subordinate clause. It is the dependence of the introductory particle that determines the grammatical relation.

## COÖRDINATION.

473. Coördinate sentences are divided into various classes, according to the particles by which the separate clauses are bound together.

Remark.—Coördinate sentences often dispense with conjunctions (Asyndeton). Then the connection must determine the character.

## Copulative Sentences.

474. The following particles are called Copulative Conjunctions: et, -que, atque (āc), etiam, quoque.

Note.—The Copulative Conjunctions are often omitted, in climax, in enumerations, in contrasts, in standing formulæ, particularly in dating by the consuls of a year, if the **praenōmina** are added; and finally, in summing up previous enumerations by such words as alii, cēteri, cūneti, multi, omnēs, reliqui.

**475.** Et is simply *and*, the most common and general particle of connection, and combines likes and unlikes.

Pānem et aquam nātūra dēsīderat, Sen., E.M., 25, 4; bread and water (is what) nature calls for. Probitās laudātur et alget, Juv., 1. 74; honesty is bepraised and—freezes.

Notes.—1. We find sometimes two clauses connected by et where we should expect et tamen. This usage is characteristic of Tacitus, but is found all through the language. Fierī potest, ut rēctē quis sentiat et id, quod sentit, polītē ēloquī non possit, C., Tusc., 1. 3, 6.

 Et sometimes introduces a conclusion to a condition expressed in the Imperative, but only once in early Latin, never in classical prose. Dic quibus in terris; et eris

mihi māgnus Apollō, V., Ec., III. 104.

3. Et, instead of a temporal conjunction, begins with Caesar (Cf. B. G., 1. 37, 1) and Sallust (Iug., 97, 4); it is never common.

4. On neque ullus for et nullus and the like, see 480. On et after words indicating Likeness, see 643. On et for etiam, see 478, N. 2.

476. -Que (enclitic) unites things that belong closely to one another. The second member serves to *complete* or *extend* the first.

Senātus populusque Rōmānus, C., Planc., 37, 90; the Senate and people of Rome. Ibi mortuus sepultusque Alexander, L., XXXVI. 20, 5; there Alexander died and was buried. [Sōl] oriēns et occidēns diem noctemque cōnficit, C., N.D., 11. 40, 102; the sun by its rising and setting makes day and night.

Notes.—1. Que was very common in early Latin, especially in legal phraseology, where it was always retained.

2. Que-que que is ante-classical and poetic.

- 3. Que is always added to the first word in the clause it introduces, in Plautus, as well as in classical prose; but the Augustan poets are free in their position, for metrical reasons. As regards prepositions, que is never appended to ob and sub, rarely to and ad, but frequently to other monosyllabic prepositions; it is always appended to dissyllabic prepositions in -ā, and often to other dissyllabic prepositions.
  - 4. On que for quoque sec 479, N. 2.
  - 5. Combinations:
  - (a) et -et;
  - (b) que et; rare in early Latin, never in CICERO, CAESAR; begins with SALLUST.

SALLUST and TACITUS always add the que to the pronoun, Livy and later prose writers to the substantive.

(c) et-que; rare, and beginning with Ennius.

(d) que—que begins with Plautus, Ennius. Cicero has it but once (noctësque diësque, Fin., I. 16, 51); it enters prose with Sallust, at d poets are fond of it.

Et domino satis et nimium fürique lupoque, Tib., IV. 1, 187; enough for owner, and too much for thief and wolf.

477. Atque (compounded of ad and -que) adds a more important to a less important member. But the second member often owes its importance to the necessity of having the complement (-que).

Ac (a shorter form, which does not stand before a vowel or h) is fainter than atque, and almost equivalent to et.

Intrā moenia atque in sinū urbis sunt hostēs, S., C., 52, 35; within the walls, ay, and in the heart of the city, are the enemies. A. Servos? Ego? B. Atque meus, PL., Cas., 735; a slave? I? And mine to boot.

Notes.—1. The confirmative force of atque, as in the second example, is found especially in Plautus, occasionally later.

2. Atque adds a climax, and then is often strengthened by ecastor, profecto, vero,

etc., Pl., B., 86; C., Tusc., 1. 20, 46.
3. In comedy, atque has sometimes demonstrative force: atque eccum, Pl., St., 577.

4. Occasionally in Cicero, then in the Augustan poets, Livy and later prose writers, notably Tacitus, atque or āc is often used to connect the parts of a clause in which et or que (sometimes both) has been already employed:

Et potentës sequitur invidia et humilës abiectosque contemptus et turpës ac nocentës odium, Quint., iv. 1, 14; the powerful are followed by envy; the low and grovelling, by contempt; the base and hurtful, by hatred.

5. Atque-atque is found occasionally in Cato, Catullus, Cicero, and Vergil. Que-atque begins in poetry with Vergil, in prose with Livy, and is very rare.

6. Atque, introducing a principal clause after a temporal conjunction, belongs exclusively to PLAUTUS: Dum circumspectō mē, atque ego lembum conspicor, B., 279. Also Ep., 217.

7. Atque is used before consonants, as well as āc, to connect single notions: when sentences or clauses are to be connected, āc only is allowable; either atque or āc with expressions of Likeness.—Stamm.

8. On atque, after words indicating Likeness, see 643. Atque follows a comparative only after a negative in early and classical Latin. Horace is first to use it after a positive.

9. Phraseological is alius atque alius, one or another, found first in Livy, and rare.

478. Etiam, even (now), yet, still, exaggerates (heightens), and generally precedes the word to which it belongs.

Nöbīs rēs familiāris etiam ad necessāria deest, Cf. S., C., 20, 11; we lack means even for the necessaries of life. Ad Appī Claudī senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset, C., Cat. M., 6, 16 (553, 4).

Notes.—1. Etiam as a temporal adverb refers to the Past or Present, and means still; it is sometimes strengthened by tum (tune) or num (nune). But beginning with

LIVY, adhūc, which properly refers only to the Present, is extended to the Past and used like etiam (tum).

Non satis me pernosti etiam qualis sim, Ter., And., 503; you still do not know well enough (= little know) what manner of person I am. Cum iste (i.e., Polemarchus) etiam cubaret, in cubiculum introductus est, C., Verr., 111. 23,56; while the defendant (Polemarchus) was still in bed, he was introduced into the bedroom.

- 2. Instead of etiam, et is occasional in Plautus, in a change of person. Cicebo uses it also after an adversative conjunction, as vērum et; also after nam and simul; more often when a pronoun follows, as et ille, et ipse. Caesar never uses it so, Sallusy rarely, but it becomes common from Livy on.
- Phraseological is etiam atque etiam, time and again. On etiam for yes, see 471, r.
- 479. Quoque, so also, complements (compare que) and always follows the words to which it belongs.

Cum patri (Timothei) populus statuam posuisset, filio quoque dedit, Cf. Nep., XIII. 2, 3; the people, having erected a statue in honor of the father of Timotheus, gave one to the son also (likewise).

REMARK.—The difference between etiam and quoque is not to be insisted on too rigidly:

Grande et conspicuum nostro quoque tempore monstrum, Juv., Iv. 115; a huge and conspicuous prodigy, even in our day.

Notes,—1. In ante-classical and post-classical Latin the double forms etiam—quoque, etiam quoque, are sometimes found, and in classical Latin also quoque etiam occasionally: nunc vērō meā quoque etiam causā rogō, C., Or., I. 35, 164.

2. Que in the sense of quoque is rare (compare mēque, CAT., CH. 3; me too), and is found chiefly in the post-Augustan hodiēque, to-day also.

480. Copulation by means of the Negative.—Instead of et and the negative, neque (nec) and the positive is the rule in Latin.

Opinionibus vulgī rapimur in errorem nec vēra cernimus, C., Leg., 11. 17, 43; by the prejudices of the rabble we are hurried into error, and do not distinguish the truth. (Caesar) properāns noctem dieī coniunxerat neque iter intermiserat, Caes., B.C., 111. 13, 2; Caesar in his haste had joined night with day and had not broken his march.

REMARKS.—1. **Et**—non, and—not, is used when the negation is confined to a single word, or is otherwise emphatic; but neque is found occasionally here, even in Cicero (Off., 111. 10, 41).

Et militävi non sine gloria, II., O., III. 26, 2; and I have been a soldier not without glory.

On nec non, the opposite of et non, see 449, R. 3.

2. In combination with the negative we have the following

Paradigms: And no one,
And no,
And nothing,
And never,

Neque amet quemquam nec ametur ab üllö, Juv., XII. 130; may he love no one, and be loved by none.

3. Nec is often nearly equivalent to nec tamen, and yet not:

Extrā invidiam nec extrā gloriam erat, Tac., Agr., 8, 3; he was beyond the reach of envy, and yet not beyond the reach of glory. Cf. Ter., Eun., 249; C., Tusc., II., 25, 60.

Notes.—1. Neque = nō quidem, is ante-classical and post-classical: nec nunc, cum mō vocat ūltrō, accēdam? II., S., II. 3, 262 (the only case in Horace).

2. Caesar, Lucretius, Vergil, and Propertius use neque regularly before vowels.

3. Combinations:

(a) neque—neque; nec—nec; neque—nec; nec—neque. Sometimes the first neque has the force of and neither; but this is limited in prose to Caesar, Sallust, and Livy; in poetry to Catullus and Properties.

(b) neque—et; neque—que; neque—āc. Of these neque—et is rare in early Latin, but more common in Cicero and later; neque—que is rare, and found first in Cicero; neque—atque (āc) is very rare, and begins in Tacitus.

(c) et-neque is found first in CICERO, who is fond of it, but it fades out after him.

 Neque is usually used for non, when followed by the strengthening words enim, tamen, vero, etc.

- 481. 1. Insertion and Omission of Copulatives.—When multus, much, many, is followed by another attribute, the two are often combined by copulative particles: many renowned deeds, multa et praeclāra facinora; many good qualities, multae bonaeque artēs.
- 2. Several subjects or objects, standing in the same relations, either take et throughout or omit it throughout. The omission of it is common in emphatic enumeration.

Phryges et Pisidae et Cilices, C., Div., i. 41, 92; or, Phryges, Pisidae, Cilices, Phrygians, Pisidians, and Cilicians.

NOTE.—Et before the third member of a series is rare, but occurs here and there at all periods; in CICERO it usually draws especial attention to the last member. Atque (āc) is used thus a little more frequently (mores instituta atque vita, C., Fam., xv. 4,14), and que is not uncommon: aegritudines, irae libidinesque, C., Tusc., I. 33,80.

3. Et is further omitted in climaxes, in antitheses, in phrases, and in formulæ.

Viri non [est] debilitări dolore, frangi, succumbere, C., Fin., 11. 29, 95; it is unmanly to allow one's self to be disabled (unnerved) by grief, to be broken-spirited, to succumb. Difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus, es idem, Mart., XII. 47, 1 (310).

Patres Conscripti, Fathers (and) Conscript (Senators).

Iuppiter Optimus Maximus, Father Jave, supremely good (and) great.

## Other Particles Employed.

- **482.** Other particles are sometimes employed instead of the copulative in the same general sense.
- I. Temporal: tum—tum, then—then; aliās—aliās, at one time—at another; iam—iam, nunc—nunc, modo—modo, now—now; simul—simul, at the same time.

Tum Graecē—tum Latīnē, partly in Greek, partly in Latin. Horātius Cocles nunc singulōs prōvocābat, nunc increpābat omnēs, Cf. I., 11. 10, 8; Horatius Cocles now challenged them singly, now taunted them all. Modo hūc, modo illūc, C., Att., XIII. 25, 3; now hither, now thither (hither and thither). Simul spernēbant, simul metuēbant, they despised and feared at the same time (they at once despised and feared).

Notes.—1. Of these tum—tum is not ante-classical, nunc—nunc is found first in Lucr., and is introduced into prose by Livy: simul—simul is found first in Caesar, but not in Cicero: iam—iam begins with Vergu and Livy. Aliquando—aliquando, quandoque—quandoque, are post-Augustan; interdum—interdum is rare, but occurs in Cicero.

2. The combinations vary in many ways. Ciceronian are tum—aliās; aliās—plērumque; interdum—aliās; modo—tum; modo—vicissim; most of them found but once. Some fifteen other combinations are post-Ciceronian.

3. On cum-tum, see 588.

- 2. Local: In Cicero only aliō—aliō; hine—illine. Others are: hīc—illie (first in Vergil); hine—hine (Vergil, Livy); hine—inde (Tacitus); illine—hine (Livy); inde—hine (Tacitus); alibi—alibi (Livy); aliunde—aliunde (PLINY).
- 3. Modal: aliter—aliter; quā—quā, rare, and lacking in many authors (e.g., Caesar, Sallust). In Cicero only four times, and confined to the Letters; pariter—pariter is poetical and post-classical; aequē—aequē is found once in Horace and once in Tacitus.
  - 4. Comparative: ut-ita, as-so:

Dolābellam ut Tarsēnsēs ita Lāodicēnī ültrē arcessiērunt, C., Fam., XII. 13, 4; as the people of Tarsus so the people of Laodicea (= both the people of Tarsus and those of Laodicea) sent for Dolabella of their own accord.

Often, however, the actions compared are adversative; and ut may be loosely translated although, while.

Haec omnia ut invitis ita non adversantibus patriciis trānsācta, L., III. 55, 15; all this was done, the patricians, though unwilling, yet not opposing (= against the wishes, but without any opposition on the part of the patricians).

Note.—There are also many other similar combinations, as: quemadmodum—sic; ut—sic; tamquam—sic, etc. The adversative use of ut—ita is rare in the classical period, but extends later.

5. Adversative: non modo, non solum, non tantum, not only; sed, sed etiam, sed—quoque, vorum etiam, but even, but also:

Urbes maritimae non solum multīs periculis oppositae [sunt] sed etiam caecīs, C., Rep., 11. 3, 5: cities on the seaboard are liable not only to many dangers, but even (also) to hidden (ones). [Non] docērī tantum sed etiam dēlectārī volunt, Quint., IV. 1, 57; they wish not merely to be taught, but to be tickled to boot.

In the negative form, non mode non, not only not; sed no-quidem, but not even; sed vix, but hardly.

Ego non modo tibi non irascor, sed no reprehendo quidem factum tuum, C., Sull., 18, 50; I not only am not angry with you, but I do not even find fault with your action.

Remarks.—I. Instead of non modo (solum) non—sed no—quidem, the latter non is generally omitted, when the two negative clauses have a verb in common, the negative of the first clause being supplied by the second; otherwise both negatives are expressed.

Pisone consule senatui non solum iuvare rem publicam sed no lügöre quidem licobat, Cf. C., Pis. 10, 23; when Piso was consul, it was not only not left free for the senate (= the senate was not only not free) to help the commonwealth, but not even to mourn (for her).

2. Nodum, not (to speak of) yet, much less, is also used, either with or without a verb in the Subjunctive; it is found first and only once in Terence, never in Caesar and Sallust, in Cicero only after negative sentences; from Livy on it is used after affirmative clauses as well.

Satrapa numquam sufferre ēius sūmptūs queat, nēdum tū possīs, Ter., Heaut., 454; a nabob could never stand that girl's expenditures, much less could you.

Notes.—1. Non tantum is never found in early Latin, Caesar and Sallust, rarely in Creeko. Sed—quoque is found first in Creeko; so, too, sed simply, but rarely. Livy is especially free in his use of sed. Vērum, in the second member, is not ante-classical nor Tacitean. Non alone in the first member is rare, but Ciceronian, it is usually followed by sed only; occasionally by sed etiam. Sed is sometimes omitted from Livy on. Cf. L., XXVIII. 39, 11; Tac., Ann., III. 19, 2, etc.

2. Sed et, for sed etiam, belongs to post-Augustan Latin.

## Adversative Sentences.

483. The Adversative particles are: autem, sed, vērum, vērō, at, atquī, tamen, cēterum. Of these only sed and tamen are really adversative.

Note.—The Adversative particles are often omitted: as when an affirmative is followed by a negative, or the reverse, or in other contrasts.

**484.** Autem (post-positive) is the weakest form of but, and

indicates a difference from the foregoing, a contrast rather than a contradiction. It serves as a particle of transition and explanation (= moreover, furthermore, now), and of resumption (= to come back), and is often used in syllogisms.

Modo accēdēns, tum autem recēdēns, C., N.D., II. 40, 102; now approaching, then again receding. Rūmōribus mēcum pūgnās, ego autem ā tē ratiōnēs requirō, C., N.D., III. 5, 13; you fight me with rumors, whereas I ask of you reasons. Quod est bonum, omne laudābile est; quod autem laudābile est, omne est honestum; bonum igitur quod est, honestum est, C., Fin., III. 8, 27; everything that is good is praiseworthy; but everything that is praiseworthy is virtuous; therefore, what is good is virtuous.

REMARK.—Autem commonly follows the first word in the sentence or clause; but when an unemphatic est or sunt occupies the second place, it is put in the third. So igitur and enim.

Notes.—1. Noteworthy is the use of **autem** in lively questions. Cicero employs it in this way, also to correct his own previous questions (*Epanorthōsis*),

Egon dēbacchātus sum autem an tū in mē? Ter., Ad., 185. Num quis tēstis Postumium appellāvit? Tēstis autem? non accūsātor? C., Rab. Post., 5, 10.

- 2. Autem is a favorite word with Cicero, especially in his philosophical and moral works, but not with the Historians, least of all with Tacitus, who uses it only nine times in all.
- **485.** Sed (set) is used partly in a stronger sense, to denote contradiction, partly in a weaker sense, to introduce a new thought, or to revive an old one.

Non est vivere sed valere vita, Mart., vi. 70, 15 (442, r. 2). Domitius nüllä quidem arte sed Latine tamen dicebat, C., Br, 77, 267; Domitius spoke with no art it is true, but for all that, in good Latin.

Notes.—1. The use of **sed** to carry on a narrative is characteristic of the historians, though found also in Cicero. Sed in ea coniuratione fuit Q. Curius, S., U., 23, 1.

- Sed is repeated by anaphora (682), occasionally in Cicero (Verr., III. 72, 169), more often later.
- 3. **Sed** may be strengthened by **tamen**; by **vērō**, **enimvērō**, **enim**; by **autem**, but only in connection with **quid**, and then only in comedy and in **Vergil**. Sometimes it is equal to **sed tamen**, as in **V**., **A**., **IV**. 660.
- **486. Vērum**, *it is true*, *true*, always takes the first place in a sentence, and is practically equivalent to **sed** in its stronger sense.

Si certum est facere, faciam; vērum nē post conferās culpam in mē, Ter., Eun., 388; if you are determined to do it, I will arrange it; but you must not afterward lay the blame on me.

Note.—Vērum gradually gives place to sed in Cicero. It is used occasionally to return to the subject (vērum hace quidem hāctenus, C., Tusc., III. 34, 84), and in yielding a point (vērum estō, C., Fin., II. 23, 75), where sed is the usual word.

**487.** Vērō, of a truth, is generally put in the second place, asserts with conviction, and is used to heighten the statement.

[Platōnem] Diōn adeō admīrātus est ut sē tōtum ei trāderet. Neque vērō minus Platō dēlectātus est Diōne, Nep., x. 2, 3; Dion admired Plato to such a degree that he gave himself wholly up to him; and indeed Plato was no less delighted with Dion.

Notes.—1. Vērō is properly an affirmative adverb, and such is its only use in Plautus. In Terence it has also acquired adversative force, which it preserves throughout the language in greater or less degree; so in the historians it is hardly more than autem.

 The combination vērum vērō is ante-classical; on combinations with enim, see 498, N. 6.

3. Vērō is also, but not so commonly, used in transitions; especially in the formulæ age vērō, iam vērō,

**488.** At (another form of ad = in addition to) introduces startling transitions, lively objections, remonstrances, questions, wishes, often by way of quotation.

"Philoctēta, St! brevis dolor." At iam decimum annum in spēluncā iacet, C., Fin., II. 29, 94; "Philoctetes, still! the pain is short." But he has been lying in his cave going on ten years. "At multīs malīs affectus?" Quis negat? C., Fin., v. 30, 92; "but he has suffered much?" Who denies it? At vidēte hominis intolerābilem audāciam! C., Dom., 44, 115; well, but see the fellow's insufferable audacity! At vöbīs male sit! Cat., III. 13; and ill luck to you!

Notes.—1. Ast is the archaic form of at, and is found occasionally in Cicero, de Leg. and ad Att., but more often in the poets and the later archaists.

2. At is used in anaphora, and also, especially in the poets, in continuing the narrative. Noteworthy is its use after conditional sentences (in Cicero only after negatives, never in Sallust), where it is frequently strengthened by certē, tamen, saltem: sī minus suppliciō adficī, at cūstōdīrī oportēbat, C., Verr., v. 27, 69.

489. Atqui (but at any rate, but for all that) is still stronger than at, and is used chiefly in argument.

Vix credibile. Atqui sic habet, H., S., 1. 9, 52; scarce credible. But for all that, 'tis so.

Notes.—1. Atquin is occasional in early Latin, and even in Cicero.

2. At seems sometimes to be used for atqui. C., Tusc., 111. 9, 19.

490. Tamen (literally, even thus), nevertheless, is often combined with at, vērum, sed.

It is commonly prepositive, unless a particular word is to be made emphatic.

Nătūram expellēs furcā, tamen ūsque recurret, H., Ep., 1. 10, 24; you may drive out Dame Nature with a pitchfork, for all that she will ever be returning. Domitius nūllā quidem arte sed Latīnē tamen dīcēbat, C., Br., 11. 77, 267 (485).

Remark.—Nihilōminus (nothing the less), nevertheless, is used like tamen, by which it is occasionally strengthened.

**491.** Ceterum, for the rest, is used by the Historians as an adversative particle.

Duo imperātōrēs, ipsī parēs cēterum opibus disparibus, S., Iug., 52, 1; two commanders, equal in personal qualities, but of unequal resources.

Note.—Cōterum is found once in Terence (Eun., 452), once in Cicero (Q.F., II. 12, 1), otherwise not before Sallust.

## Disjunctive Sentences.

492. The Disjunctive particles are aut, vel, -ve, sive (seu).

Note.—The Disjunctive particles are but rarely omitted, and then mainly in contrasted opposites like pauper dīves, plūs minus, and the like.

- 493. 1. Aut, or, denotes absolute exclusion or substitution. Vinceris aut vincis, Prop., II. 8, 8; you are conquered or conquering.
- 2. Aut is often corrective = or at least, at most, rather (aut saltem, aut potius).

CünctI aut māgna pars fidem mūtāvissent, S., Iug., 56, 5; all, or at least a great part, would have changed their allegiance. Duo aut summum trēs iuvenēs, I., XXXIII. 5, 8; two, or at most three, youths.

3. Aut-aut, either-or.

Quaedam terrae partës aut frigore rigent aut üruntur calöre, Cf. C., Tusc., 1. 28, 68; some parts of the earth are either frozen with cold or burnt with heat. Aut die aut accipe calcem, Juv., III. 295; either speak or take a kick.

Notes.—1. The use of aut to carry on a preceding negative is found first in Cicero, but becomes more common later: němě tribūnēs aut plěbem timěbat, L., 111. 16, 4.

2. Aut is sometimes equivalent to partly—partly in Tacitus:

Hausta aut obruta Campāniae ōra, H., 1. 2.

3. On aut in interrogative sentences, see 458, N. 4.

494. 1. Vel (literally, you may choose) gives a choice, often with etiam, even, potius, rather.

Ego vel Cluviènus, Juv., 1. 80; I, or, if you choose, Cluvienus. Per mē vel stertās licet, non modo quiēscās, C., Ac., 11. 29, 93; for all I care, you may (even) snore, if you choose, not merely take your rest (sleep). Satis vel etiam nimium multa, C., Fam., IV. 14, 3; enough, or even too much. Epicūrus homō minimē malus vel potius vir optimus, C., Tusc., II. 19, 44; Epicurus (was) a person by no means bad, or, rather, a man of excellent character.

2. Vel—vel, either—or (whether—or).

[Miltiadēs dīxit] ponte rescissō rēgem vel hostium ferrō vel inopiā paucīs diēbus interitūrum, NEP., I. 3, 4; Miltiades said that if the bridge were cut the king would perish in a few days, whether by the sword of the enemy, or for want of provisions.

Notes.—1. Vel, for example, is rare in Plautus and Terence, but common in Cicero, especially in the Letters.

2. Vel in the sense of aut is rare in the classical period (C., Rep., 11. 28, 50), but is more common later, beginning with OVID. See TAC., Ann., 1. 50.

3. Vel-vel is found in PLAUTUS occasionally in the sense as well as, but in classical Latin is rigidly distinguished from et-et.

 Aut is not uncommonly subdivided by vel-vel: aut canere vel voce vel fidibus, C., Div., II. 59, 122.

495. -Ve (enclitic) is a weaker form of vel, and in Cicero is used principally with numerals, in the sense at most, or with words from the same stem or of similar formation.

Bis terve, C., Fam., II. I, 1; twice or at most thrice (bis terque, twice and indeed as much as thrice, if not more).

Cur timeam dubitemve locum defendere? Juv., I. 103; why should I fear or hesitate to maintain my position? Aliquid faciend non faciend ve ratio, C., Inv., II. 9, 31; the method of doing something or not doing it.

Notes.—1. In early Latin **ve** is more often copulative than adversative, 2. **Ve**—**ve** is poetical only.

496. 1. Sive (seu), if you choose, gives a choice between two designations of the same object.

Urbem mātrī seu novercae relinquit, L., I. 3, 3; he leaves the city to his mother or (if it seems more likely) to his step-mother.

2. Sive—sive (seu—seu), whether—or (indifference).

Sive medicum adhibueris sive non adhibueris non convalesces, C., Fat., 12, 29; whether you employ a physician, or do not employ (one), you will not get well. Seu visa est catulis cerva fidelibus seu rūpit teretes Marsus aper plagās, H., O., I. 1, 27; whether a doe hath appeared to the faithful hounds, or a Marsian boar hath burst the tightly-twisted toils.

Notes.—1. Single sive (= or) is not found in Plautus or Terence ((f. And., 190), but it occurs in Lucretius, Lucilius, and is common in Cicero. Caesar and Sal-

LUST, however, do not use it, and it is rare in the Poets. In the sense of **sive-sive** it is found occasionally in poetry; but in prose only three times in Tacrius.

- 2. Sive-sive is not found in TERENCE, but from CICERO on becomes common.
- 3. No distinction seems possible between sive and seu.

497. An is used in the sense of or not uncommonly in Cicero, especially in the *Letters*; occasionally in Livy, and frequently in Tacitus. Elsewhere it is rare. See 457.

Tiberius cāsū an manibus [Haterii] impedītus prociderat, TAC., Ann., I. 13, 7; Tiberius had fallen forward, either by chance or tripped by Haterius' hands.

## Causal and Illative Sentences.

498. A. The Causal particles are nam, enim, namque, and etenim, for.

Nam is put at the beginning of a sentence; enim is post-positive (484, R.): namque and etenim are commonly put in the first place.

Sensüs mīrificē conlocātī sunt; nam oculī tamquam speculātörēs altissimum locum obtinent, C., N.D., 11. 56, 140; the senses are admirably situated; for the eyes, like watchmen, occupy the highest post. Piscēs ova relinquunt, facile enim illa aquā sustinentur, C., N.D., 11. 51, 129; fish leave their eggs, for they are easily kept alive by the water. [Themistoclēs] mūros Athēniēnsium restituit suo periculo; namque Lacedaemonii prohibēre conātī sunt, Nep., 11. 6, 2; Themistocles restored the walls of Athens with risk to himself; for the Lacedaemonians endeavored to prevent it.

Notes. 1. The Augustan poets postpone both nam and namque according to the requirements of the metre, and in prose, beginning with Livy, namque is found sometimes in the second place, but more often in Livy than later.

In early Latin enim is often first in the sentence; etenim is postponed in prose only in the elder PLINY and APULEIUS; in the poets, not uncommonly, so in AFRANIUS, TIBULLUS, PROPERTIUS, and HORACE.

2. These particles are originally asseverative, and are often used not only to furnish a reason, but also to give an explanation or illustration (as for instance). Quid enim agās? what, for instance, can you do? This is especially true of enim, but is also common enough with nam (s. 3), and a broad difference between nam and enim (which is of common origin with nam) cannot be proved. Etenim is often used to carry on the argument, and gives an additional ground.

3. The asseverative force of nam is retained in conversational style occasionally, even in Cicero (Verr., i. 51, 133). Enim is almost wholly asseverative in Plautus and Terence. Namque is very rare in Plautus and Terence, and is found before vowels only. In classical Latin it is also rare, and found usually before vowels. With Livy it comes into general use before vowels and consonants equally Etenim is found but once in Plautus (Am., 26, an interpolation) and four times in Terence; in post-classical Latin also it is not common, but it is very frequent in classical Latin, especially in Cicero.

4. Noteworthy is the use of nam, in passing over a matter: nam quid ego de actione ipsa plura dicam? (C., O., 1. 5, 18), which is especially common in Creeno.

5. Nam shows an affinity for interrogative particles. Here it sometimes precedes in

the early language (Ter., Ph., 932), but becomes firmly attached in the classical period in the forms quisnam, ubinam, etc., which, however, sometimes suffer tmesis and transposition in poetry (V., G., 4, 445).

6. In atenim (first in Cicero), nempe enim (ante-classical and post-classical), seed enim (rare), vērumenim, enimvērō, vērum enimvērō, as in etenim, the enim gives a ground or an illustration of the leading particle, but translation by an ellipsis would be too heavy, and enim is best left untranslated:

A. Audī quid dīcam, B. At enim taedet iam audīre eadem mīliēns, Ter., Ph., 487; A. Hear what I say. B. But (I won't, for) I am tired of hearing the same things a thousand times already.

7. Enim is used pleonastically after quia in early Latin, and then again in Petro-Nius and Gellius; also after ut and no in early Latin.

8. Quippe is originally interrogative. From this the causal force develops, which is not uncommon in Cicero. In Sallust, and especially in Livy and later writers, quippe is equal to enim.

- 499. B. Illative particles are itaque, igitur, ergō; eō, hinc, inde, ideō, idcircō, quōcircā, proptereā, quāpropter, proin, proinde.
- **500.** Itaque (literally, and so), therefore, is put at the beginning of the sentence by the best writers, and is used of facts that follow from the preceding statement.

Nemő ausus est Phocionem liber sepelire; itaque a servis sepultus est, Cf. Nep., XIX. 4, 4; no free man dared to bury Phocion, and so he was buried by slaves.

Remark.—Itaque in early and classical Latin has first place in a sentence. It is first postponed by Lucretius, then by Cornificius and Horace, and more often later.

501. Igitur, therefore, is used of opinions which have their natural ground in the preceding statement; in CICERO it is usually post-positive, in SALLUST never.

Mihř non satisfacit. Sed quot homines tot sententiae; falli igitur possumus, C., Fin., I. 5, 15; ME it does not satisfy. But many men many minds. I may therefore be mistaken.

Note.—In historical writers **igitur** is sometimes used like **itaque**. Occasionally also (not in classical Latin), it seems to have the force of **enim** (PL., Most., 1102, MSS.).

502. Ergō denotes necessary consequence, and is used especially in arguments, with somewhat more emphasis than igitur.

Negat hace filiam me suam esse; non ergo hace mater mea est, Pl., Ep., 590; she says that I am not her daughter, therefore she is not my mother.

Notes.—1. In the Poets ergō sometimes introduces a strong conclusion in advance of the premise (H., O., I. 24, 5). In the classical period, however, its predominant use is to introduce the logical conclusion.

- Ergö usually comes first, but its position is apt to vary in accordance with the stress laid upon it.
  - 3. Itaque ergo is found in Terence and Livy; ergo igitur in Plautus.
- 503. Other Coördinating Conjunctions: hinc, hence, is found not unfrequently: hinc illae lacrumae, Ter., And., 126. Inde, thence, therefore, is rare, and first in Cicero, but more common in later Latin. Eō, therefore, is found in early Latin, rarely in Cicero (Fam., vi. 20, 1), not in Caesar or Sallust; again in Livy and later; so ideō, on that account, but atque ideō is found once in Caesar. Idcircō, on that account, is rare, but from the earliest times. Quōcircā, on which account, is found first in the classical period; quāpropter is found here and there in early Latin, but more commonly in the classical time, rarely later; proptereā, on that account, is rare, and belongs to early Latin. Proin, proinde, accordingly, are employed in exhortations, appeals, and the like.

Quod praeceptum (nosce të ipsum), quia maius erat quam ut ab homine vidërëtur, idcirco assignatum est deo, C., Fin., v. 16, 44; this precept (know thyself), because it was too great to seem to be of man, was, on that account, attributed to a god. Proinde aut exeant aut quiescant, C., Cat., II. 5, 11; let them then either depart or be quiet.

#### SUBORDINATION.

**504.** Subordinate sentences are only extended forms of the simple sentence, and are divided into *Adjective* and *Substantive* sentences, according as they represent *adjective* and *substantive* relations.

This arrangement is a matter of convenience merely, and no attempt is made to represent the development of the subordinate sentence from the coordinate.

505. Adjective sentences express an attribute of the subject in an expanded form.

Uxor quae bona est, PL., Merc., 812 (624) = uxor bona.

506. Substantive sentences are introduced by particles, which correspond in their origin and use to the Oblique Cases, Accusative and Ablative.

These two cases furnish the mass of adverbial relations, and hence we make a subdivision for this class, and the distribution of the subordinate sentence appears as follows:

- 507. A. Substantive sentences.
  - I. Object sentences.

# II. Adverbial sentences:

- 1. Of Cause. (Causal.)
- 2. Of Design and Tendency. (Final and Consecutive.)
- 3. Of Time. (Temporal.)
- 4. Of Condition and Concession. (Conditional and Concessive.)
- B. Adjective sentences. (Relative.)

## Moods in Subordinate Sentences.

- **508.** 1. Final and Consecutive Clauses always take the Subjunctive. Others vary according to their conception. Especially important are the changes produced by **Ōrātiō Oblīqua**.
- 2. Ōrātiō Oblīqua, or Indirect Discourse, is opposed to Ōrātiō Rēcta, or Direct Discourse, and gives the main drift of a speech and not the exact words. Ōrātiō Oblīqua, proper, depends on some Verb of Saying or Thinking expressed or implied, the Principal Declarative Clauses being put in the Infinitive, the Dependent in the Subjunctive.

#### Socrates dicere solebat :

0. R. Omnēs in eo quod sciunt satis sunt eloquentes.

Socrates used to say: "All men are eloquent enough in what they understand."

- O. Omnes in ed quod scirent satis esse eloquentes, C., Or., I. 14, 63. Socrates used to say that all men were eloquent enough in what they understood.
- 3. The oblique relation may be confined to a dependent clause and not extend to the whole sentence. This may be called *Partial Obliquity*.
  - O. R. Nova nupta dicit: Fleo quod ire necesse est. The bride says: I weep because I must needs go.
  - 0. 0. Nova nupta dīcit sē flēre quod īre necesse sit.

The bride says that she weeps because she must needs go.

- O. R. Nova nupta flet quod ire necesse est, Cf. Cat., LXI. 81.
  The bride weeps because she must go.
- P. 0. Nova nupta flet quod ire necesse sit.

  The bride is weeping because "she must go" (quoth she).

4. Akin to **0**. **0**. is the so-called Attraction of Mood, by which clauses originally Indicative are put in the Subjunctive because they depend on Infinitives or Subjunctives. (663.)

Non dubito quin nova nupta fleat quod ire necesse sit. I do not doubt that the bride is weeping because she must go.

Remark.—The full discussion of  $\bar{O}$ . O. must, of course, be reserved for a later period. See 648.

#### SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

509. 1. In those dependent sentences which require the Subjunctive, the choice of the tenses of the dependent clause is determined largely by the time of the leading or principal clause, so that Principal Tenses are ordinarily followed by Principal Tenses; Historical, by Historical.

Note.—As the subordinate sentence arose out of the coördinate, hypotaxis out of parataxis, the tenses of the Subjv. had originally an independent value, and the association was simply the natural association of time. But in some classes of sentences a certain mechanical levelling has taken place, as in the Final sentence; and in others, as in the Interrogative sentence, the range of the Subjv. is restricted by the necessity of clearness, just as the range of the Inf. is restricted by the necessity of clearness (530); so that a conventional Sequence of Tenses has to be recognized. To substitute for every dependent tense a corresponding independent tense, and so do away with the whole doctrine of Sequence, is impossible. At the same time it must be observed that the mechanical rule is often violated by a return to the primitive condition of parataxis, and that

- 2. This rule is subject to the following modifications:
- 1. Tense means time, not merely tense-form, so that
- (a) The Historical Present may be conceived according to its sense (Past) or according to its tense (Present). (229.)
- (b) In the Pure Perfect may be felt the past inception or origin (Past), or the present completion (Present). (235, 1.)
- 2. The effect of a past action may be continued into the present or the future of the writer (513).
- 3. The leading clause may itself consist of a principal and dependent clause, and so give rise to a conflict of tenses with varying Sequence (511, R. 2).
- 4. An original Subjunctive (467) of the past (265) resists levelling, especially in the Indirect Question.

## 510.

All forms that relate to the Present and Future (so especially Principal Tenses) are followed by the Present Subjunctive (for continued action); the Perfect Subjunctive (for completed action).

All forms that relate to the Past (so especially Historical Tenses)

are followed by the Pluperfect Subjunctive (for continued action); the Pluperfect Subjunctive (for completed action).

Remark.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: I do not know what he has been doing, I did not know what he had been doing. The Latin is unable to make this distinction, and accordingly the Imperfect Indicative (I was doing) is represented in this dependent form by the Perfect and Pluperfect, when the action is completed as to the leading verb.

511. Pr. (Pure cognosco. I am finding out, quid faciās, what you are doing; OR HIST.). I shall (try to) FUT., cognoscam. quid feceris, find out, what you have done, I have found out what you have been PURE PF., cognovi, doing (what you did), (I know), I shall have found what you were doing FUT. PF.. cognovero, out (shall know), (before). HIST. PR., cognosco, I am (was) finding quid faceres, what you were doing; out. cognoscebam, I was finding out, quid fēcissēs, what you had done, what I found out, HIST. Pr., cognovi, you had been doing, what you were doing cognoveram, I had found out PLUPF., (I knew),(before).

When the Subjunctive is original, we have:

cognosco, etc., I am finding out, quid facias, quid faceres, what you are to do. quid faceres, what you were to do. quid faceres, what you were to do. quid faceres, what you were to do.

#### Principal Tenses.

Nihil refert postrema syllaba brevis an longa sit, Cf. C., Or., 64, 217 (461). Ubii (Caesarem) orant (historical) ut sibi parcat, Caes., B. G., vi. 9,

7 (546, 1). Nomo adeo ferus est ut non mitescere possit, H., Ep., I. 1, 39 (552). Nec mea qui digitis lümina condat erit, Ov., Her., 10, 120 (631, 2). Rüsticus exspectat dum döfluat amnis, H., Ep., I. 2, 42 (572). Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuam mali, Pl., Capt., 741 (631, 2). Ārdeat ipsa licet, tormentīs gaudet amantis, Juv., VI. 209 (607).

Utrum nescīs quam altē ascenderis an pro nihilo id putās ? C., Fam., x. 26, 3 (458). Laudat Āfricānum Panaetius quod fuerit abstinēns, C., Off., II. 22, 76 (542). Non is es ut tē pudor umquam ā turpitūdine revocārit, C., Cat., I. 9, 22 (552). Quem mea Calliopē laeserit ūnus egō (sum), Ov., Tr., II. 568 (631, 1). Sim licet extrēmum, sīcut sum, missus in orbem, Ov., Tr., IV. 9, 9 (607). Multī fuērunt qui tranquillitātem expetentēs ā negōtiīs pūblicīs sē removerint, C., Off., I. 20, 69 (631, 2).

#### Historical Tenses.

Epamīnondās quaesīvit salvusne esset clipeus, C., Fin., II. 30, 97 (467). Noctū ambulābat in pūblico Themistoclēs quod somnum capere non posset, C., Tusc., IV. 19, 44 (541). [Athēniēnsēs] creant decem praetorēs qui exercituī praeessent, Nep., I. 4, 4 (545). Accidit ut ūnā nocte omnēs Hermae dēicerentur, Nep., VII. 3, 2 (513, R. 2). Ad Appī Claudi senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset, C., Cat. M., 6, 16 (553, 4). Hannibal omnia priusquam excēderet pūgnā (erat) expertus, L., xxx. 35, 4 (577). (Āgēsilāus) cum ex Aegyptō reverterētur dēcēssit, Nep., xvII. 8, 6 (585).

Tanta opibus Etrūria erat ut iam non terrās solum sed mare etiam fāmā nominis suī implēsset, L., I. 2, 5 (521, R. 1). Cum prīmī ordinēs hostium concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, Caes., B.G., vii. 62, 4 (587). Dēlēta (est) Ausonum gēns perinde āc sī internecīvo bello certāsset, L., IX, 25, 9 (602).

# Original Subjunctive Retained.

Ipse docet quid agam (original, agam); fās est et ab hoste docērī, Ov., M., Iv. 428 (219). Quaerō ā tē cūr ego C. Cornēlium non dēfenderem (original, dēfenderem), C., Vat., 2, 5 (467). Mīsērunt Delphos consultum quid facerent (original, faciāmus), Nep., II. 2, 6 (518).

Remarks.—I. The treatment of the Hist. Pr. according to its sense (past) is the rule in classical Latin, especially when the dependent clause precedes. But there are many exceptions.

Agunt grātiās quod sibī pepercissent; quod arma cum hominibus consanguineis contulerint queruntur, Caes., B. C., 1. 74, 2; they return thanks to them for having spared them, and complain that they had crossed swords with kinsmen.

2. Noteworthy is the shift from the primary to the secondary sequence; this is mostly confined to clauses of double dependence, i.e., where one subordinate clause is itself principal to a second subordinate clause.

Here the first has usually the primary, the second the secondary sequence.

Rogat ut curet quod dixisset, C., Quinct., 5, 18; he asks him to attend to what he had said (he would).

So of authors:

[Chrysippus] disputat aethera esse eum quem homines Iovem appellarent, C., N.D., I. 15, 40; Chrysippus maintains that to be aether which men call Jove.

3. The Pure Pf. is usually treated as a Hist. Pf. in the matter of sequence:

Quae subsidia habērēs et habēre possēs, exposul, Q. Cicero, 4, 13; what supports you have or can have I have set forth.

4. The reverse usage, when an Hist. Pf. is followed by a primary Subjv., is not common. Many of those cited from Cicero are from the Letters, where the shift of tense might be influenced by the letter-tense principle (252).

Sed quō cōnsiliō redierim, initiō audīstis, post estis expertī, C., Ph., x. 4, 8. Quis mīles fuit, quī Brundisiī illam nōn vīderit? C., Ph., II. 25, 61. (The context shows that fuit cannot be Pure Pf.)

512. Sequence of Tenses in Sentences of Design.—Sentences of Design have, as a rule, only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. The Roman keeps the purpose and the process, rather than the attainment, in view.

Pr.,	edunt,	they are eating,	]
PURE PF.,	ēdērunt,	they have eaten,	ut vivant,
Fur.,	edent,	they will eat,	that they may live (to
FUT. Pr.,	ēderint,	they will have eaten,	live).
IMPF.,	edēbant,	they were eating,	ut viverent,
PLUPF.,	ēderant,	they had eaten,	that they might live (to
HIST. Pr.,	ēdērunt,	they ate,	live).

Spectātum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae, Ov., A.A., I. 99 (435). Sed precor ut possim tūtius esse miser, Ov., Tr., v. 2, 78 (424). Gallīnae pennīs fovent pullōs nē frīgore laedantur, Cf. C., N.D., II. 52, 129 (545). Lēgem brevem esse oportet quō facilius ab imperītīs teneātur, Sen., E.M., 94, 38 (545). Mē praemīsit domum haec ut nūntiem uxōrī suae, Pl., Am., 195; he has sent me home ahead of him, to take the news to his wife. Oculōs ecfodiam tibī nē mē observāre possīs, Pl., Aul., 53; I will gouge out your eyes for you, to make it impossible for you to watch me.

[Laelius] veniēbat ad cēnam ut satiāret dēsīderia nātūrae, C., Fin., II. 8, 25; Laelius used to go to table, to satisfy the cravings of nature. (Phaēthōn) optāvit ut in currum patris tollerētur, C., Off., III. 25, 94 (546, I).

Remark.—Parenthetical final sentences like ut ita dīcam, nē errētis, are really dependent on the thought or utterance of the speaker, and have the present sequence everywhere.

No longior sim, vald, C., Fam., xv. 19; not to be tedious, farewell!

No tamen ignores, virtute Neronis Armenius cecidit, H., Ep., 1. 12, 25; but
that you may not fail to know it, it was by the valor of Nero that the
Armenian fell.

Notes.—1. The Pf. and Plupf. Subjv. are sometimes found in sentences of Design, chiefly in earlier and later Latin (no example is cited from Caesar or Sallust), when stress is laid on completion, or when an element of Hope or Fear comes in: Ut sic dixerim (first found in Quint.), if I may be allowed to use the expression.

Affirmāre andeō mē omni ope adnīsūrum esse nē frūstrā vōs hanc spem dē mē concēperītis, L., xliv. 22; I dare assure you that I will strain every nerve to keep you from having conceived this hope of me in vain. (After a past tense, nē concēpissētis.) Nunc agendum est nē frūstrā oppressum esse Antōnium gāvīsi sīmus, C., ad Br., i. 4, 3. Hīc obsistam, nē imprūdentī hūc ea sē subrēpsit (131, 4, b. 2) mihī, Pl., M.G., 333. Effēcit nē cūius alterīus sacrilegium rēs pūblica quam Nerōnis sēnsisset, Tac., Agr., 6.

When the tense is compound, the participle is usually to be considered as a mere adjective.

Patronus extiti uti nē [Sex. Roscius] omnino desertus esset, C., Rosc. Am., 2, 5; where desertus = solus.

2. Occasional apparent exceptions are to be explained in various ways. Thus, in C., Sest., 14, 32: etiamne ēdicere audeās nē maerērent, we have a repetition as an indignant question of the preceding statement: ēdicunt (Hist. Pr.) duo consules ut ad suum vestītum senātores redirent.

513. Exceptional Sequence of Tenses:—Sentences of Result (Consecutive Sentences). In Sentences of Result, the Present Subjunctive is used after Past Tenses to denote the continuance into the Present, the Perfect Subjunctive to imply final result. This Perfect Subjunctive may represent either the Pure Perfect or Aorist, the latter especially with the negative: the action happened once for all or not at all.

Present Tense:

[Siciliam Verres] per triennium ita vexavit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nüllö modō possit, C., Verr., I. 4, 12; Verres so harried Sicily for three years as to make it utterly impossible for it to be restored to its original condition. In [Lücullö] tanta prüdentia fuit ut hodiē stet Asia, C., Ac., II. I, 3; Lucullus's forethought was so great that Asia stands firm to-day.

Perfect Tense (Pure):

(Mūrēna) Asiam sic obiīt ut in eā neque avāritiae neque lūxuriae vēstīgium relīquerit, C., Mur., 9, 20; Murena so administered Asia as not to have (that he has not) left in it a trace either of greed or debauchery (there is no trace there),

# Perfect Tense (Aorist):

Equites hostium acriter cum equitatu nostro conflixerunt, tamen ut nostro es in silvas collesque compulerint, Caes., B.G., v. 15, 1; the cavalry of the enemy engaged the cavalry on our side briskly, and yet (the upshot was that) our men forced them into the woods and hills. Neque vero tam remisso ac languido animo quisquam omnium fuit qui ea nocte conquieverit, Caes., B.C., 1. 21, 5; and indeed there was no one at all of so slack and indifferent a temper as to take (a wink of) sleep that night.

REMARKS.—I. After a Pure Pf., if the dependent clause is affirmative, CICERO prefers the Impf. (he has but five eases of Pf.); if negative the Pf. (in the proportion 2 to 1).

2. After accidit, contigit, and other verbs of Happening, the Impf. is always used, the result being already emphasized in the Indic. form.

Accidit ut una nocte omnes Hermae deicerentur, Nep., vii., 3, 2; it happened that in one night all the Hermae were thrown down.

Notes.—1. The use of the Aoristic Pf. Subjv. after an Aoristic Pf. Indic. seems to have been an attempt of the Romans to replace the consecutive Aor. Inf. in Greek with &ore. Examples are not found in early Latin, are rare in Cicero, very rare in Caesar, perhaps not at all in Sallust; more frequent in Livy, common in Tacitus, very common in Nepos and Suetonius, etc.

2. In two coordinated clauses depending on the same verb we find the tenses occasionally varying. The Pf. in the first subordinate, with Impf. in the second, is doubtful in any case, rare in Cicero, and is cited but once each from Caesar (B. G., vii. 17) and Velleus (I. 9, 1). The reverse construction, Impf. followed by Pf., is more common, but found first (though rarely) in Livy, and belongs mainly to late Latin.

Zēnō nūllō modō is erat quī nervōs virtūtis incīderit, sed contrā quī omnia in virtūte pōneret, C., Ac., I. 10, 35. Here the shift is due to the negative. Tantus pavor omnēs occupāvit ut nōn modo alius quisquam arma caperet—sed etiam ipse rēx perfūgerit, L., xxiv. 40, 12. Here the tenses depend on the ideas of continuance and completion, of the many and the single (nōn caniēbant—rēx perfūgit).

3. In relative sentences of coincident action with causal coloring, either the coincidence is retained, or a principal clause in the Past is followed by the Impf. Subjunctive.

Tū hūmānissimē fēcistī quī mē certiōrem fēcerīs, C., Att., XIII. 43, 1. Cum hōc Pompēius vehementer ēgit cum dīceret, etc., C., Att., II. 22, 2. Videor mihi grātum fēcisse Siculīs, quod eōrum iniūriās sim persecūtus, C., Verr., II. 6, 15 (518, R.).

# Representation of the Subjunctive in the Future and Future Perfect Tenses.

514. The Subjunctive has no Future or Future Perfect, which are represented either by the other Subjunctives, or in the  $\Lambda$ ctive by the Subjunctive of the Periphrastic Conjugation.

RULE I.—(a) After a Future or Future Perfect Tense, the Future relation (contemporary with the leading Future) is

represented by the Present Subjunctive; the Future Perfect (prior to the leading Future) by the Perfect Subjunctive, according to the rule.

Cōgnōscam,

I shall (try to) find out,

Cōgnōverō,

I shall have found out (shall know),

quid faciās, what you are doing (will be doing).

quid fēcerĭs, what you have done (will have done).

(b) But whenever the dependent Future is subsequent to the leading Future, the Periphrastic Tense must be employed.

Cögnöscam,

I shall (try to) find out,

Cögnöverö,

I shall have found out (shall know).

quid factūrus sīs,
what you are going to do (what
you will do).

[Considerabimus], [we shall consider].

A. Quid fecerit aut quid ipsi acciderit aut quid dixerit, what he has done, or what has happened to him, or what he has said.

B. Aut quid faciat, quid ipsi accidat, quid dicat, or, what he is doing, what is happening to him, what he is saying.

C. Aut quid factūrus sit, quid ipsi cāsūrum sit, quā sit ūsūrus ōrātiōne, C., Inv., 1. 25, 36; or what he is going to do (will do), what is going to (will) happen to him, what plea he is going to employ (will employ).

Tū quid sīs āctūrus pergrātum erit sī ad mē scrīpserīs, C., Fam., IX. 2, 5; it will be a great favor if you will write to me what you are going to do.

Remark.—In some of these forms ambiguity is unavoidable. So A may represent a real Perfect, B a real Present.

515. RULE II.—After the other tenses, the Future relation is expressed by the Active Periphrastic Subjunctive, Present or Imperfect.

Cognosco,

I am finding out,

Cognovi,

quid factūrus sīs (what you are going to do), what you will do.

I have found out (know),

Cognoscebam,

I was trying to find out,

Cognoveram,

I had found out,

quid factūrus essēs (what you were going to do), what you would do.

Tam ea res est facilis ut innumerabilis natura mundos effectura sit, efficiat, effeciit, Cf. C., N.D., 1. 21, 53; the thing is so easy that nature will make, is making, has made, innumerable worlds.

Incertum est quam longa cūiusque nostrum vīta futūra sit, C., Verr., I. 58, 153; it is uncertain how long the life of each one of us is going to be (will be).

Anteā dubitābam ventūraene essent legionēs; nunc mihš non est dubium quin ventūrae non sint, C., Fam., II. 17, 5; before, I was doubtful whether the legions would come (or no); now I have no doubt that they will not come.

Remarks.—1. The Pf. and Plupf. Subjv. of the Periphrastic are used only to represent the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional Sentence.

Cōgnōscō, Cōgnōvī, quid factūrus fueris, (what you have been I am finding out, I have found out what you would have done, going to do).

(know),

Cognoscobam, Cognoveram, [quid factūrus fuissos, (what you had been I was trying to find out, I had found out, what you would have going to do).

done, rare.]

2. There is no Periphrastic for the Fut. Pf. active, no Periphrastic for passive and Supineless Verbs. The Grammars make up a Periphrastic for all these from futūrum sit, esset ut, as:

Non dubito quin futurum sit, I do not doubt

at redierit, that he will have returned.
ut macreat, that he will grieve.
ut necētur, that he will be killed.

But there is no warrant in actual usage.

For the dependent Fnt. Pf. act. Terence says (Hec., 618): Tuā rēfert nīl utrum illaec fēcerint quandō haec aberit.

For the dependent Fut. Pf. pass. Cicero says (Fam., vi. 12, 3): Nec dubitō quin confecta res futura sit, nor do I doubt but the matter will have been settled.

In the absence of the Periphrastic forms, use the proper tenses of posse. (248, R.)

3. When the preceding verb has a future character (Fear, Hope, Power, Will, and the like), the simple Subjv. is sufficient.

Galli, nisi perfrēgerint mūnītiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant, Caes., B. G., vii. 85, 3; the Gaus despair of all safety unless they brak through (shall have broken through) the fortifications; the Romans look forward to an end of all their toils, if they hold their own (shall have held). Vēnērunt querentēs nec spem ūllam esse resistendī, nisi praesidium Rōmānus mīsisset, L., xxxiv. 11, 2; they came with the complaint that there was no hope of resistance unless the Roman sent a force to protect them. Intentī quandō hostis inprūdentiā rueret, Tac., H., II. 34.

Of course the Deliberative Subjunctive is future: Examples, 265.

Et certamen habent leti, quae viva sequatur coniugium, Prop., iv. 12, 19 (M.).

516. Sequence of Tenses in Ōrātiō Oblīqua: In Ōrātiō Oblīqua and kindred constructions, the attraction of tenses ap-

plies also to the representatives of the Future and Future Perfect Subjunctive.

In [clāvā] erat scrīptum nisi domum reverterētur sē capitis eum damnātūrōs, Nep., Iv. 3, 4; it was written on the staff that if he did not return home, they would condemn him to death. (Ōrātiō Rēcta: nisi domum revertēris, tē capitis damnābimus, unless you (shall) return home, we will condemn you to death). Pēthia praecēpit ut Miltiadem sibī imperātōrem sūmerent; id sī fēcissent (Ō. R., fēcerītis) incepta prōspera futūra (Ō. R., erunt), Nep., I. 1, 3; the Pythia instructed them to take Miltiades for their general; that if they did that, their undertakings would be successful. Lacedaemonii, Philippō minitante per lītterās sē omnia quae cōnārentur (Ō. R., cōnābiminī) prohibitūrum, quaesīvērunt num sē esset etiam morī prohibitūrus (Ō. R., prohibēbis), C., Tusc., v. 14, 42; the Lacedaemonians, when Philip threatened them by letter that he would prevent everything they undertook (should undertake), asked whether he was going to (would) prevent them from dying too.

517. Sequence of Tenses after the other Moods.—The Imperative and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive have the Sequences of the Principal Tenses; the Imperfect and Pluperfect have the Sequences of the Historical Tenses.

[Nē] compone comās quia sīs ventūrus ad illam, Ov., Rem. Am., 679; do not arrange (your) locks because (forsooth) you are going to see her. Excellentibus ingeniīs citius dēfuerit ars quā cīvem regant quam quā hostem superent, I., II. 43, 10; great geniuses would be more likely to lack the skill to control the citizen than the skill to overcome the enemy. Quid mē prohibēret Epicūrēum esse, sī probārem quae ille dīceret? C., Fin., I. 8, 27; what would prevent me from being an Epicurean if I approved what he said (says)? Tum ego tē prīmus hortārer diū pēnsitārēs quem potissimum ēligerēs, PLIN., Ep., IV. 15, 8; in that case I should be the first to exhort you to weigh long whom you should choose above all others. Quae vīta fuisset Priamō sī ab adulēscentiā scīsset quōs ēventūs senectūtis esset habitūrus? C., Div., II. 9, 22; what sort of life would Priam have led if he had known, from early manhood, what were to be the closing scenes of his old age?

Remarks.—1. Of course, when the Pf. Subjv. represents an Historical Tense, it takes the historical Sequence:

Māgna culpa Pelopis quī non docuerit filium quātenus esset quidque cūrandum, C., Tusc., I. 44, 107; greatly to blame is Pelops for not having taught his son how far each thing was to be cared for. Quī scīs an eā causā mō odisse adsimulāverit, ut cum mātre plūs ūnā esset? Ter., Hec., 235; how do you know but she has pretended to hate me in order to be more with her (own) mother?

So also in the Conditional proposition, when the action is past. For varying conception, see C., Off., III. 24, 92.

2. The Impf. Subjv., being used in opposition to the Present, might be treated as a Principal Tense, but the construction is less usual:

Verērer nē immodicam ōrātiōnem putārēs nisi esset generis ēius ut saepe incipere saepe dēsinere videātur, PLIN., Ep., IX. 4, 1; I should be afraid of your thinking the speech of immoderate length, if it were not of such kind as to produce the effect of often beginning, often ending.  $\bar{\mathbf{0}}$  ego nē possim tālēs sentīre dolōrēs quam māllem in gelidīs montibus esse lapis! TIB., II. 4, 7.

518. Sequence of Tenses after an Infinitive or Participle.

—When a subordinate clause depends on an Infinitive or Participle, Gerund or Supine, the tense of that clause follows the tense of the Finite verb, if the Finite verb is Past; if the Finite verb is Present, it follows the tense that the dependent verb would have had, if it had been independent.

— Quid agas, what you are doing.

Dīcit sē interrogāre (original what you have done. quid ēgerīs, interrogo). quid āctūrus sīs, what you are going He says that he is asking, to do (will do). Dicit se interrogasse (original interrogāvī), quid ageres, what you were doing. He says that he asked. what you had done. quid ēgissēs, Dixit se interrogare (original quid āctūrus essēs, what you were going interrogo), to do (would do). He said that he was asking, quid agat, what he is doing, non re-Mihi interroganti, quid egerit, what he has spondet, when I ask him, done. he gives (literally: to me asking), quid āctūrus what he is going no anto do (will do), swer. quid ageret, what he was doing, non re-Mihi interroganti, quid egisset, what he had spondit.

Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelės ait bėstiolas quasdam nasci quae ūnam diem vivant, C., Tusc., 1. 39, 94 (650). Satis mihř multa verba fēcisse videor quarē esset hōc bellum necessarium, C., Imp., 10, 27; I think I have said enough (to show) why this war is necessary. Apellės pictorės eŏs

quid acturus

esset.

done,

what he was go-

ing to do,

he gave

no an-

swer.

when I asked him,

(literally: to me asking).

peccare dicebat qui non sentirent quid esset satis, C., Or., 22, 73; Apelles used to say that those painters blundered who did not perceive what was (is) enough. Atheniënses Cyrsilum quendam suadentem ut in urbe manerent lapidibus obruërunt, C., Off., III. 11, 48 (546). Cupido incessit animos iuvenum seiscitandi ad quem eorum regnum Romanum esset venturum, L., I. 56, 10; the minds of the young men were seized by the desire of inquiring to which of them the kingdom of Rome would come. Miserunt Delphos consultum quid facerent, Nep., II. 2, 6; they sent to Delphi to ask the oracle what they should do. See 265.

Remark.—Nevertheless examples are not unfrequent where the sequence of the governing verb is retained: Videor mihi grātum fēcisse Siculis quod eōrum iniūriās meō perīculō sim persecūtus, C., Verr., II. 6, 15; I seem to have pleased the Sicilians, in that I have followed up their injuries at my own risk (on account of the coincidence, 513, N. 3).

519. Original Subjunctives in Dependence.—I. The Potential of Present or Future after a Past tense goes into the Past; the same is true of Deliberative Questions (465). On the other hand, the Potential of the Past must be retained even after a Present tense (467).

Videō causās esse permultās quae [Titum Rōscium] impellerent, C., Rosc. Am., 33, 92; I see that there are very many causes which might have impelled Titus Roscius. Quaerō ā tē cūr Gāium Cornēlium non dēfenderem, C., Vat., 2, 5 (467).

2. On the behavior of Conditional Subjunctives in dependence see 597, R. 4.

Remark.—The Sequence of Tenses is not unfrequently deranged by the attraction of parenthetic clauses or, especially in long sentences, by the shifting of the conception. Examples are C., Balb., I. 2; Ph., III. 15, 39; Ac., II. 18, 56, and many others.

# USE OF THE REFLEXIVE IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

- 520. In subordinate clauses, the Reflexive is used with reference either to the subject of the principal, or to the subject of the subordinate, clause; and sometimes first to the one and then to the other.
- 521. The Reflexive is used of the principal subject when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject; hence, in Infinitive Sentences, in Indirect Questions, in Sen-

tences of Design, and in Sentences which partake of the Oblique Relation.

Sentit animus sē vī suā, non aliēnā movērī, C., Tusc., I. 23, 55; the mind feels that it moves by its own force, (and) not by that of another. Quaesīvērunt num sē esset etiam morī prohibitūrus, C., Tusc., v. 14, 42 (516). Pompēius ā mē petīvit ut sēcum et apud sē essem cottīdiē, Cf. C., Att., v. 6, 1; Pompey asked me to be with him, and at his house, daily. Paetus omnēs libros quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihǐ dōnāvit, C., Att., II. 1, 12; Paetus presented to me all the books (as he said) that his brother had left (quōs frāter ēius reliquerat, would be the statement of the narrator).

REMARKS.—I. Sentences of Tendency and Result have forms of is, when the subj. is not the same as that of the leading verb; otherwise the Reflexive:

Tarquinius sic Servium diligēbat ut is čius vulgō habērētur filius, C., Rep. 11. 21, 38; Tarquin loved Servius so that he was commonly considered his son. But Tanta opibus Etrūria erat ut iam non terrās solum sed mare etiam fāmā nominis sul implēsset, L., 1. 2, 5; so great in means (= so powerful) was Etruria that she had already filled not only the land, but even the sea, with the reputation of her name.

2. The Reflexive may refer to the real agent, and not to the grammatical subj. of the principal clause. (309, 2.)

 $\bar{\mathbf{A}}$  Caesare invitor sibi ut sim legatus, C., Att., II. 18, 3; I am invited by Caesar (= Caesar invites me) to be lieutenant to him.

Especially to be noted is the freer use of suus (309, 4). The other forms are employed chiefly in reflexive formulæ (309, 3), as sē recipere, to withdraw, etc.

(Rōmānī) sul colligendi hostibus facultātem (nōn) relinquunt, Caes., B.G., III. 6, 1 (309, 3).

3. The Reflexive is used in general sentences, as one, one's self, etc. (309, 1): Déforme est de se ipsum praedicare, C., Off., 1. 38, 137; it is unseemly to be bragging about one's self.

With the Inf. this follows naturally from 420.

4. In Indic. relative sentences, which are mere circumlocutions (505), is is the rule:

Socrates inhonestam sibi credidit orationem quam el Lysias reo composuerat, Quint., II. 15, 30; Socrates believed the speech which Lysias had composed for him when he was arraigned, dishonoring to him.

Sometimes, however, the Reflexive is put contrary to the rule:

Metellus in is urbibus quae ad sē dēfēcerant praesidia impēnit, S., Iug., 61, 1; Metellus put garrisons in those towns which had gone over to him; regularly, ad eum.

Ille habet quod sibi dēbēbātur, Petr., 43, 1; he has his due; regularly, ei.

5. Sometimes the Demonstrative is used instead of the Reflexive, because the narrator presents his point of view:

Solon, quō tūtior vīta ēius esset, furere sē simulāvit, C., Off., 1. 30, 108; Solon feigned madness that his life might be the safer. (The notion of Result intrudes.) Pompēius īgnēs fierī prohibuit, quō occultior esset ēius adventus, CAES., B.C., III. 30, 5; Pompey forbade fires to be kindled in order that his approach might be the better concealed.

Notes.—1. Occasionally, principally in early Latin, the Reflexive seems to be used with the force merely of a third personal pronoun:

Vītis sī macra erit, sarmenta sua concīditō minūtē, Cato, Agr., 37, 3.

But sentences like eum fēcisse āiunt quod sibi faciundum fuit (PL., Poen., 956), where the relative clause is but a circumlocution for officiam suom, belong properly under R. 4. Similarly, C., Inv., I. 33, 55. In the sentence, Cicerō tibǐ mandat, ut Aristodēmō idem dē sē respondeās quod dē frātre suo respondistī (C., Att., II. 7, 5), dē frātre ēius would jar on account of the sē to which it refers.

2. Examples of Reflexives pointing both ways:

[Rōmānī] lēgātōs mīsērunt quī ā [Prūsiā] peterent nē inimīcissimum suum (= Rōmānōrum) apud sē (= Prūsiam) habēret, Nep., xxii. 12, 2; the Romans sent ambussadors to ask Prusias not to keep their bitlerest enemy at his court. Agrippa Atticum flēns ōrābat atque obsecrābat ut sē sibī suīsque reservāret, Cf. Nep., xxv. 22; Agrippa begged and conjured Atticus with tears to save himself [Atticus] for him [Agrippa] and for his own family [Atticus].

Hopeless ambiguity:

Hērēs meus dare illī damnās estē omnia sua, Quint., vii. 9, 12; my heir is to give him all that is his.

3. For the sake of clearness, the subj. of the leading sentence is not unfrequently referred to in the form of the Demonstrative instead of the Reflexive:

(Helvētii) Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs exīstimābant vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur, Caes., B.G., I. 6, 3; the Helvetians thought that they would persuade or force the Allobroges to let them [the Helvetians] go through their territory.

4. Ipse is always used in its proper distinctive sense; so, when it represents the speaker in  $\overline{\bf 0}$ .  $\bf 0$ . (660.)

#### Eius and Suī.

522. Alexander moriens anulum suum dederat Perdiceae, NEP., XVIII. 2, 1; Alexander, [when] dying, had given his ring to Perdiceas.

Perdiccas acceperat eius anulum, Perdiccas had received his ring.

Quare Alexander declaraverat se regnum el commendasse, thereby, Alexander had declared that he had committed the kingdom to him.

Ex quo Perdiccas coniecerat eum regnum sibi commendasse, from this Perdiccas had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.

Ex quō omnēs coniecerant eum rēgnum eī commendāsse, from this, all had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.

· Perdiccas postulavit ut se regem haberent cum Alexander anulum sibit dedisset, Perdiccas demanded that they should have him for king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.

Amīcī pēstulāvērunt ut omnēs eum rēgem habērent cum Alexander ānu-

lum et dedisset, (his) friends demanded that all should have him for king, as Alexander had given the ring to him. (Lattmann and Müller.)

Ita së gesserat Perdiccās ut el rēgnum ab Alexandrō commendārētur, Perdiccas had so behaved himself that the kingdom was intrusted to him by Alexander.

## OBJECT SENTENCES.

523. Verbs of Doing, Perceiving, Conceiving, of Thinking and Saying, often take their object in the form of a sentence.

Notes.—1. These sentences are regarded, grammatically, as neuter substantives. The Accusative of neuter substantives is employed as a Nominative. Hence, a passive or intransitive verb may take an object sentence as a subject.

2. To object sentences belong also Dependent Interrogative clauses, which have been treated elsewhere for convenience of reference. See 452, r, N, 460, 467.

## I. Object Sentences introduced by QUOD.

**524.** Clauses which serve merely as periphrases (circumlocutions) or expansions of elements in the leading sentence are introduced by **quod**, *that*.

Notes.—1. This usage seems to be in origin explanatory; that is, a demonstrative in the leading clause is explained by the **quod**-clause. But as the relative can always include the antecedent demonstrative, the prevailing usage is without an antecedent. In any case, however, the construction is essentially relative.

2. The original relation of  $\mathbf{quod}$  and its antecedent is adverbial. They are Accusatives of Extent, that = in that, and are to be classed under the Inner Object (322). But after transitive verbs  $\mathbf{quod}$  and its antecedent are felt as Outer Objects, though whenever the notion of Cause intrudes (in that = because), the original relation comes back, as in causal sentences proper.

3. The antecedent demonstrative (whether omitted or inserted) would therefore be either the direct object of the verb or it would be in adverbial or prepositional relation. We have then two uses of the explanatory clause; (a) with verbs, with or without an antecedent demonstrative; (b) as explanatory of an antecedent (expressed or implied) in adverbial relation to the verb or dependent upon a prep sition.

525. I. Quod (the fact that, the circumstance that, in that) is used to introduce explanatory clauses, after verbs of Adding and Dropping, and after verbs of Doing and Happening with an adverb.

Adde hūc quod perferrī lītterae nūllā condicione potuērunt, POLLIO (C., Fam., x. 31, 4); add to this the fact that letters could under no circumstances be got through. Adde quod ingenuās didicisse fidēliter artēs ēmollit morēs nec sinit esse feros, Ov., Pont., 11. 9, 47; add (the fact) that to have acquired faithfully the accomplishments (education) of a gentleman, softens the character, and does not let it be savage. Praetereo quod

eam sibi domum delegit, C., Cluent., 66, 188; I pass over the fact that she chose that house for herself. Bene facis quod me adiuvas, C., Fin., III. 4, 16; 't is kind in you to help me. Accidit perincommode quod eum nüsquam vidisti, C., Att., I. 17, 2; it happened very unfortunately that you saw him nowhere. Bene mihi evenit quod mittor ad mortem, C., Tusc., 1. 41, 97; it is fortunate for me that I am sent to death (execution).

Notes .- 1. Of verbs of Adding adicere is introduced by Livy, addere is cited once each from Accius (200, R.) and TERENCE (Ph., 168), then more often from Lucre-TIUS, HORACE, and OVID, but not from CICERO and VERGIL. Accedere is the passive of addere and occurs at all periods. Of verbs of Dropping, only praetereo, mitto,

and omitto (C., Att., viii. 3, 3) are cited (all classical).

2. Esse is found mostly in the combinations quid (hoc) est quod, why is it that, this is why, which are confined to early Latin : ScIn quid est quod ego ad te venio? PL., Men., 677; hoc est quod ad vos venio, PL., St., 127. Est quod, nihil est quod. etc., occur here and there later, but the effect of the negative on the mood is noteworthy. Compare positive sed est quod suscenset tibi (Ter., And., 448); there is something that makes him angry with you, with negative nihil est iam quod mihi suscenseas (PL., Merc., 317); there is nothing to make you angry with me.

3. To this group belongs the exclamatory interrogation Quid? quod, or quid

quod - ? what of this, that?

Quid quod simulac mihi collibitum est praesto est imago? C., N.D., 1. 38, 108; what is to be said of the fact that the image presents itself as soon as I see fit? (Nay, does not the image present itself?)

4. The use of quod after verbs of Doing and Happening is found first in CICERO;

PLAUTUS uses quia in this construction.

5. With several of the above-mentioned verbs ut can be employed, as well as quod

(ut, of the tendency-quod, of the fact):

Ad Appi Claudi senectūtem accēdēbat ut etiam caecus esset, C., Cat.M., 6, 16 (553, 4), or, quod caecus erat. Accēdit quod patrem plūs etiam quam ipse scit amo, C., Att., XIII. 21,7; besides, I love the father even more than he himself knows. But when the action is prospective or conditional, ut must be used:

Additur ad hanc dēfīnītiönem ā Zēnone rēctē ut illa opīnio praesentis malī sit recens, C., Tusc., III. 31, 75.

6. Quod with verbs of Motion as an adverbial Acc. is confined to early Latin and to

venio (PL., Men., 677) and mitto (PL., Ps., 639).

- 7. The extension of quod to verba sentiendi et dicendi is very unusual. One example in early Latin (PL., Asin., 52) is much disputed; suspicious examples are C., Fum., 111. 8, 6; CAES., B. C., 1. 23, 3, but a certain example is in b. Hisp. (10, 2), renuntiarunt quod haberent. The only case in Augustan poets is V., A., IX. 289; it is doubtful in Livy; perhaps twice in Tacitus (Ann., III. 54; XIV. 6). In later Latin, from Petronius on, it becomes frequent.
- 2. Quod (in that, as to the fact that, whereas) introduces explanatory clauses after demonstratives (expressed or implied), independent of the leading verb. See 627, R. 2.

Mihi quidem videntur hominēs hāc rē māximē bēstiis praestāre, quod logui possunt, C., Inv., I. 4; to me men seem to excel beasts most in this, that they have the power of speech. Praeterquam quod fier I non potuit, no fingi quidem potest, C., Div., II. 12, 28; besides the fact that this could not be done, it could not even be made up. Nil habet infelix paupertas dürius in sē quam quod (= id quod) rīdiculōs hominēs facit, Juv., III. 152; unhappy poverty hath in itself nothing harder (to bear) than that it makes people ridiculous. Māgnum beneficium [est] nātūrae quod necesse est morī, Sen., E.M., 101, 14 (204). Quod spīrō et placeō, sī placeō, tuum est, H., O., Iv. 3, 24; that I do breathe and please, if that I please, is thine.

Notes.-1. In early usage the antecedent is not common, but it is employed very

often by Cicero, for the purposes of argument.

2. Prepositional usages with the Abl. are ex eō, dō eō, in eō, prō eō, cum eō quod. Of these cum eō quod, with the proviso that, is very rare, occurring but once in Cicero (Att., vi. 1, 7). The prepositional usages with the Acc. are ad id quod (only in Livy); super id quod (only in Tacitus); praeter quod (Florus and late writers); prae quod (Plautus only). Similar is exceptō quod (Hor., Quint.). As praeter and super are comparative in force, we find praeter quam quod (early Latin, Cic., and later), super quam quod (only in Livy). Similar to praeter quod is nisi quod (Plaut., Cicero [not Orations], Sall., Livy, and later). Tantum quod — nisi quod, once in Cicero (Verr., i. 45, 116) and is rare; tantum quod, temporal, "just," is colloquial, and found first in Cicero's Letters, then not till the post-Augustan period.

3. Quod, "as to the fact that," is combined also with the Subjv. In early Latin: quod ille gallinam se sectari dicat, etc. (Pt., M. G., 162). This is explained as being the Potential Subjv., inasmuch as all the examples cited involve supposed statements or actions of a second or third (often indefinite) person, which the speaker merely wishes to anticipate. The usage is occasional, also, later: C., Pis., 27, 66; Verr., v. 68, 175, and sporadically in Fronto and Gaius. Sometimes the idea of Partial Obliquity enters, as in C., Br., 18, 73, quod aequalis fuerit Livius, minor fuit aliquanto: Inv., 11. 29,

89, (reading doubtful).

In general the usage of **quod**, "as to the fact that," is familiar. Cicero uses it often in his Letters. But Caesar is fond of it too. Tacitus has it but once (Dial., 25).

3. The reigning mood is the Indicative. The Subjunctive is only used as in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

Cum Castam accūsārem nihil magis pressī quam quod accūsātor ēius praevāricātionis crīmine corruisset, Plin., Ep., 111. 9, 34; when I accused Casta there was no point that I laid more stress on than (what I stated) "that her accuser had gone to pieces under a charge of collusion."

Remark.—Verbs of Emotion, such as Rejoicing, Sorrowing, etc., take quod with the Indic. or Subjunctive. See Causal Sentences, 539.

- II. Object Sentences, with Accusative and Infinitive.
- **526.** Preliminary Observation.—On the simple Infinitive as an object, see 423.

The Inf., as a verbal predicate, has its subject in the Accusative. (420.)

**527.** Active verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving (verba sentiendī et déclārandī), and similar expressions, take the Accusative and Infinitive:

Thales Milesius aquam dixit esse initium rerum, C., N.D., 1. 10, 25;

Thales of Miletus said that water was the first principle of things. [Solon] furere se simulāvit, C., Off., I. 30, 108; Solon pretended to be mad. Medicī causā morbī inventā cūrātionēm esse inventam putant, C., Tusc., III. 10, 23; physicians think that, (when) the cause of disease (is) discovered, the method of treatment is discovered. Volucrēs vidēmus fingere et construere nīdos, C., Or., II. 6, 23; we see that birds fashion and build nests. Audiet cīvēs acuisse ferrum, H., O., I. 2, 21; [the youth] shall hear that citizens gave cdge to steel. Tīmāgenēs auctor est omnium in lītterīs studiorum antīquissimam mūsicēn extitisse, QUINT., I. 10, 10; Timagenes is the authority (for the statement) that of all intellectual pursuits music was the most ancient.

The sentence very often passes over into the Acc. and Inf. (O.O.)

without any formal notice.

Remarks.—I. Verba sentiendi comprise two classes, those of (a) Actual and those of (b) Intellectual Perception. Some verbs, such as sentire, vidère, cernere, audire, belong to both classes. Otherwise the most common are:

- (a) Conspicari, conspicere, aspicere, suspicere, prospicere, also rarely tueri and somniare (early).
- (b) Intellegere, cognoscere, comperire, scire, nescire, and less commonly, but Ciceronian, discere, ignorare, accipere, animadvertere, perspicere, etc.
- 2. Verba dēclārandī can likewise be divided into two classes: (a) those of Actual and (b) those of Intellectual Representation; but the classes often fade into each other, or, rather, a verb of Intellectual Representation can be readily used as one of Actual Representation. In general, verbs of Intellectual Representation are those of Thinking, Remembering, Belief and Opinion, Expectation, Trust and Hope. Verbs of Actual Representation are those of Saving, Showing, Approving, Boasting, Pretending, Promising, Swearing, Threatening, Accusing (the last have more often quod). Verbs of Concluding belong always to both classes. The principal of these verbs are: putare, ducere, arbitrārī, cēnsēre, sūspicārī, crēdere, exīstimāre, meminisse, confidere, spērāre, dēspērāre. Then dicere, ēdicere, affirmāre, confirmāre, āio (rare), loqui (rare), negāre, fatēri, nārrāre, trādere, scribere, nūntiāre, ostendere, probare, gloriari, demonstrare, persuadere, significare, polliceri, promittere, minārī, simulāre, dissimulāre, etc.; conclūdere, colligere, efficere. Also ponere, to suppose (rare), facere, to represent. Similar expressions are spēs est, opīniō est, fāma est, auctor sum, tēstis sum, certiōrem aliquem facere, etc.
- 3. When the subj. of the Inf. is a personal or reflexive pronoun, that subj. may be omitted—chiefly with Fut. Inf.—and then esse also is dropped. This occurs rarely in CICERO, more frequently in early Latin, CAESAR, and later.

Refracturos careerem minabantur, L., vi. 17, 6; they threatened to break open the jail.

4. The simple Inf. is often used in English, where the Latin takes Acc. and Infinitive. This is especially true of verbs of Hoping and Promising. Spērō mē hōc adeptūrum esse, I hope to (that I shall) obtain this. Prōmittēbat sē ventūrum esse, he promised to (that he would) come.

5. When the Acc. with the Inf. is followed by a dependent Acc., ambiguity may arise:

Āiō tē, Aeacidā, Rōmānōs vincere posse (C., Div., II. 56, 116), in which tē may be subject or object.

Real ambiguity is to be avoided by giving the sentence a passive turn:

Āiōā tē, Aeacidā, Rōmānōs vincī posse, I affirm that the Romans can be conquered by thee, son of Aeacus.

Āiō tē, Aeacidā, ā Rōmānīs vincī posse, I affirm that thou, son of Aeacus, canst be conquered by the Romans.

When the context shows which is the real subj., formal ambiguity is of no importance. But see Quint., vii. 9, 10.

Notes.—1. Verbs of Perception and Representation take the Part to express the actual condition of the object of Perception or Representation (536). As there is no Pr. Part. pass., the Inf. must be used, and thus the difference between Intellectual and Actual Perception is effaced, sometimes even in the active, and, in fact, the use of the Part. is confined to authors who are consciously influenced by a rivalry with the Greek.

Audiō cīvēs acuentēs ferrum, Cf. H., O., I. 2,21; I hear citizens sharpen(ing) the steel. Audiō ā cīvibus acuī ferrum, I hear that the steel is sharpened by citizens; or, the steel as it is sharpened by citizens. Octāvium (dolōre) cōnficī vīdī, C., Fin., II. 28,93; I have seen Octavius (when he was) wearing out with anguish. Vīdī histriōnēs flentēs ēgredī, Quint., vi. 2,35; I have seen actors leave the stage weeping.

(Platō) ā Deō aedificārī mundum facit, C., N.D., I. 8, 19; Plato makes out that the universe is built by God. Polyphēmum Homērus cum ariete conloquentem facit, C., Tusc., v. 39, 115 (536). Fac, quaesō, quī ego sum esse tē, C., Fam., vii. 23, 1; suppose, I pray, yourself to be me.

2. The (Greek) attraction of the predicate of the Inf. into the Nom. after the Verb of Saying or Thinking, is poetical; the first example is PL., Asin., 634.

Phasēlus ille, quem vidētis, hospitēs, ait fuisse nāvium celerrimus, Cat., Iv. 1; that pinnace yonder, which you see, my stranger guests, declares she used to be (claims to have been) the fastest craft afloat.

There is one example in CICERO (Agr., II. 21, 57).

3. The use of the Acc. and Inf. with verba dēclārandI is an outgrowth of the use after verbs of Creation (423), just as in English "I declare him to be," is an extension of "I make him to be," in which Acc. and Inf. have each its proper force. This is the origin of the so-called Oratio Obliqua, or Indirect Discourse, which represents not the exact language used, but the general drift, and in which the tenses of the Inf. seem to represent approximately the tenses of the Indicative. It was to complete the scheme of the Tenses that the Fut. Inf. was developed, and this is the sole use of that tense. The use of the Acc. and Inf. after verba sentiendI, like the use in English "I see him go," is more primitive, but the original case of the Inf. is no longer felt.

## Nominative with Infinitive.

- **528.** Passive verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving:
- 1. In the Simple tenses prefer the personal construction, in which the Accusative Subject of the Infinitive appears as the Nominative Subject of the leading verb.
- 2. In the Compound tenses prefer the impersonal construction, which is the rule with Gerund and Gerundive.

Thus, instead of

Trādunt Homērum caecum fuisse, they say that Homer was blind, we should have,

Trāditur Homērus caecus fuisse, Homer is said to have been blind, or,

[Trāditum] est Homērum caecum fuisse, C., Tusc., v..39, 114; there is a tradition that Homer was blind.

[Aristaeus] inventor oleī esse dīcitur, C., Verr., IV. 57, 128; Aristaeus is said to be the inventor of oil. Terentī fābellae propter ēlegantiam sermönis putābantur ā Laeliō scrībī, C., Att., VII. 3, 10; Terence's plays, on account of the elegance of the language, were thought to be written by Laelius. [Sī Vēiōs migrābimus] āmīsisse patriam vidēbimur, L., V. 53, 5; if we remove to Veji, we shall seem to have lost our country. Reus damnātum īrī vidēbātur, Quint., IX. 2, 88 (435, N. 4). Crēditur Pythagorae audītōrem fuisse Numam, L., XL. 29, 8; it is believed that Numa was a hearer of Pythagoras.

# But:

[Venerem] Adonidi nüpsisse proditum est, C., N.D., III. 23, 59; il is recorded that Venus married Adonis. (Philonem) existimandum est disertum fuisse, C., Or., I. 14, 62; we must suppose that Philo was eloquent.

Remarks.—I. The impersonal construction is the rule if a Dat. is combined with the verb: mihř nüntiābātur Parthōs trānsisse Euphrātem, C., Fam., xv. I, 2; it was announced to me that the Parthians had crossed the Euphrates.

2. Various peculiarities are noteworthy in the matter of these verbs. Thus, dicitur usually means it is maintained, dictum est, it is said. Crēditur, etc. (impersonal), is the regular form in classical prose; the personal construction is poetical and late. Vidērī is used, as a rule, personally; the impersonal construction vidētur is rare. The active forms trādunt, crēdunt, etc., are everywhere common.

Notes.-1. In early Latin the personal construction is found with argui. cluëre (a virtual passive), dīcī, exīstimārī, invenīrī, iubērī, nūntiārī, perhibērī, reperīrī, All these, except cluere, are retained in the classical period. CICERO and CAESAR add twenty-five new verbs, and from this time on the construction increases.

2. Virtual passives, on the analogy of cluëre, are rare ; apparēre, constare, venīre in sūspīcionem, are Ciceronian; so also opus est in [C.], Fam., XI. 11, 2, and perhaps

TER., And., 337.

3. A second clause following a Nom, with the Inf. takes its subj. in the Accusative C., Or., II. 74, 299.

4. In verbs of Saying, except dieō (compare TAC., Ann., IV. 34, 3), the personal construction is confined to the third person. The poets are free in treating verbs under this

## Tenses of the Infinitive with Verba Sentiendi et Déclarandī.

- **529.** The Infinitive denotes only the stage of the action, and determines only the relation to the time of the leading verb (281).
- 530. After verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, and the like,

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

REMARK.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: I have been studying, I had been studying. Hence, the Impf. Indic. (I was studying) is represented in this dependent form by the Pf. Inf., because it is prior to the leading verb.

In this table the Present is taken as the type of the Principal, the Imperfect as the type of the Historical, Tenses.

531.

Contemporaneous Action.

ACTIVE.

P. T. Dīcit: tē errāre. He says, that you are going wrong, të dëcipi,

PASSIVE. that you are (being) deceived (217, R.).

H. T. Dîcēbat : tē errāre,

He was saying, that you were going wrong,

të dëcipi,

that you were (being) deceived.

#### Prior Action.

P. T. Dicit: tē errāsse,

He says, that you have gone wrong, that you went wrong, that you have been going wrong,

tē dēceptum esse,

that you have been (are) deceived, that you were deceived (AOR.), (that people have been deceiving you). H. T. Dicebat: te errasse,

He was saying, that you had gone wrong,

that you went wrong, that you had been going wrong, tē dēceptum esse,

that you had been deceived,

that you were deceived (Aor.), (that people had been deceiving you).

## Subsequent Action.

P. T. Dīcit: tē errātūrum esse,

He says, that you (are about to go wrong), will (be) go(ing) wrong,

të dëceptum îri,

that you (are going to) will be deceived.

H. T. Dicebat: te erraturum esse.

He was saying, that you were about to (would) go wrong,

të dëceptum îrī,

that you were going to (would) be deceived.

## Periphrastic Future.

The following form (the *Periphrastic Future*) is necessary when the verb has no Sup. or Fut. participle. It is often formed from other verbs to intimate an interval, which cannot be expressed by other forms, and is more common in the passive than the Fut. Inf. pags. of the paradigms.

P. T. Dicit: fore (futūrum esse) ut errēs (metuās),

fore (futurum esse) ut erraveris (rare), fore ut dēcipiāris (metuāris),

fore ut deceptus sis (rare), usually deceptum fore (not futurum esse).

H. T. Dicēbat: fore (futūrum esse) ut errārēs (metuerēs), errāssēs (rare), fore ut dēciperēris (metuerēris), dēceptum fore (rarely: fore ut dēceptus essēs).

Notes.-1. For examples of the Periphrastic, see 248.

Carthaginiënsës dëbellätum mox fore rëbantur, L., XXIII. 13,6; the Carthaginians thought that the war would soon be (have been) brought to an end. From dëbellätum erit, it will be (have been) brought to an end. So in the deponent adeptum fore.

- 2. Ponderous periphrastics are of rare occurrence. So fētiālēs dēcrēvērunt utrum eērum fēcisset rēctē factūrum (L., xxx. 8); not fore ut fēcisset, although the  $\overline{O}$ . R. requires utrum fēcerīs, rēctē fēcerīs. (244, n. 4.) See Weissenborn's note.
  - 3. Posse, velle, etc., do not require the Periphrastic, and seldom take it. (248, R.)
- 4. Spērāre, to hope, promittere (pollicēri), to promise, which regularly take the Fut. Inf., have occasionally the Pr. when an immediate realization of the hope is anticipated. With spēs est the Pr. Inf. is more common.

Lēgātī veniunt qui polliceantur obsidēs dare, CAES., B.G., IV. 21, 5; ambassadors come to promise the giving of (to give) hostages.

So, too, when the Fut. Inf. is not available, sometimes also when it is, posse and the Pr. is a fair substitute. **Tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse** (= potītūrōs esse) spērant, Caes.. B. G., 1. 3, 8; they hope they can (will) get possession of the whole of Gaul. See 423, N. 5.

Of course sperare may be used simply as a verb of Thinking.

Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs of Will and Desire.

532. Verbs of Will and Desire take a Dependent Accusative and Infinitive.

The relation is that of an Object to be Effected.

Si vis më flëre, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi, H., A.P., 102; if you wish me to weep, you must first feel the pang yourself. Utrum [Milōnis] corporis an Pythagorae tibi mälis virës ingenii dari? C., Cat. M., 10, 33; which (whether) would you rather have given to you, Milo's strength of body or Pythagoras' strength of mind? Ipse iubet mortis të meminisse deus, Mart., 11.59 (376). Vitae summa brevis spem nës vetat inchoëre longam, H., O., 1.4, 15 (423, N. 6). Nëmë ire quemquam püblicë prohibet vië, Pl., Curc., 35 (389). Germānī vinum ad sē omninë importārī nën sinunt, Caes., B.G., IV. 2, 6; the Germans do not permit wine to be imported into their country at all.

Remarks.-I. A list of these verbs is given in 423, N. 2.

2. When the subj. of the Inf. is the same as the subj. of the leading verb, the subj. of the Inf. is usually not expressed:

NI pārēre velīs, pereundum erit ante lucernās, Juv., x. 339; unless you resolve to obey, you will have to perish before candle-light. Et iam māllet equōs numquam tetigisse paternōs, Ov., M., II. 182; and now he could have wished rather never to have touched his father's horses.

But the subj. may be expressed, and commonly is expressed, when the action of the Inf. is not within the power of the subject; so especially with an Inf. passive:

(Timoleon) māluit sē dīligī quam metuī, Nep., xx. 3, 4; Timoleon preferred that he should be loved rather than that he should be feared. Ego rūs abitūram mē certō dēcrēvī, Ter., Hec., 586. Principem sē esse māvult quam vidērī, C., Off., 1. 19, 65.

Notes.—1. On the construction of this class of verbs with ut (ne, quominus), see 546. Impero, I command, in model prose takes only the Inf. passive or deponent; in Sallust, Histius, Curtius, Tacitus, and the Poets sometimes the active.

(Hannibal) imperavit quam plūrimas venēnātas serpentēs vivas colligi, Nep., 23, 10; Hannibal ordered as many poisonous serpents as possible to be caught alive.

Permittō seldom takes the Inf. (e.g., C., Verr., v. 9, 22); the Acc. with Inf. begins in Tacitus; concēdō takes Inf. pass. only, in classical prose. Iubeō, I bid; sinō, I let; vetō, I forbid; prohibeō, I prohibit, always have the Inf. of passive verbs. With sinō and vetō the model construction is Inf. only. Sinō takes ut occasionally in early and late Latin, vetō does not have nē till in the post-Ciceronian period. Iubēre takes ut when it is applied to decrees of the Senate, and from Livy on when used of the orders of generals; prohibēre takes nē and quōminus. These verbs may themselves be turned into the passive: iubeor, sinor, vetor, prohibeor.

2. After iubeo, I bid, and veto, I forbid, the Inf. act. can be used without a subj. (even an imaginary or indefinite one):

Iubet reddere, he bids return (orders the returning).

Vetat adhibēre medicīnam, C., Att., xvi. 15, 5; he forbids the administration of medicine. Infandum, rēgīna, iubēs renovāre dolorem, V., A., 11. 3; unspeakable,

O queen, the anguish which you bid (me, us) revive.

3. After volo, nolo, malo in early Latin, ut and the Subjv. is proportionally more common than in the classical time. But with the Potential forms, velim, malim, vellem, mallem, Cicero uses only the Subjv. (without ut). When volo means maintain, it takes the Inf. only; see 546, R. 1.

4. It is noteworthy that in classical Prose cupere never takes ut, while optare

6. The Poets go much further in using verbs and phrases as expressions of Will and

never takes the Infinitive.

5. On the use of the Pf. Inf. instead of the Pr. after these verbs, see 537, N. I.

Desire. See 423, N. 4.

## Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs of Emotion.

**533.** Verbs of Emotion take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive, inasmuch as these verbs may be considered as verbs of Saying and Thinking. (542.)

Salvom të advenisse gaudeë, Ter., Ph., 286; I rejoice that you should have arrived safe (to think that you have arrived safe, at your arriving safe). Quod salvos advenisti, that you have arrived safe. Quod salvos adveneris, that (as you say) you have arrived safe.

Inferiores non dolore [debent] so a suis dignitate superari, C., Lael., 20, 71; inferiors ought not to consider it a grievance that they are surpassed in rank by their own (friends).

REMARKS.—I. This construction, outside of a few verbs, is not common, though found in a wide range of authors. Gaudēre, laetārī, dolēre, querī (beginning in Cic.), mīrārī, are common; in addition Cicero uses, rarely, however, more than once each, maerēre, lūgēre, cōnficī, discruciārī, angī, sollicitārī, indīgnārī, fremere, dēmīrārī, admīrārī, subesse timōrem. Early Latin shows rīdēre (NAEV.), gestīre, mihī dolet (Ter.), maestus sum (Plaut.), cruciārī (Plaut.), lāmentārī (Plaut., Hor.), sūspīrāre (Lucr.), incendor īrā (Ter.), ferōx est (Plaut.), invidēre (Plaut., Hor.), formīdāre, verērī, in addition to the common gaudēre, etc., already cited.

2. On the Participle after a verb of Emotion, 536, N. 2.

# Accusative and Infinitive in Exclamations.

534. The Accusative with the Infinitive is used in Exclamations and Exclamatory Questions as the object of an unexpressed thought or feeling.

Hem, mea lūx, tē nunc, mea Terentia, sīc vexārī, C., Fam., xīv. 2, 2; h'm, light of my life, for you to be so harassed now, Terentia dear. Hominemne Rōmānum tam Graecē loquī? Plin., Ep., īv. 3, 5; a Roman speak such good Greek? (To think that a Roman should speak such

good Greek.) Mone incepto desistere—! V., A., I. 37; I—desist from my undertaking? Hinc abire matrem! Ter., Hec., 612; mother go away from here?

REMARKS.—I. Different is quod, which gives the ground.

Ei mihi quod nüllīs amor est sānābilis herbīs, Ov., M., 1. 523; woe's me that (in that, because) love is not to be cured by any herbs.

2. On ut, with the Subjv. in a similar sense, see 558. Both forms offer an objection.

## Accusative and Infinitive as a Subject.

535. The Accusative with the Infinitive may be treated as the Subject of a sentence. The Predicate is a substantive or neuter adjective, an impersonal verb or abstract phrase.

In the English "for—to," the "for" belongs not to the case but to the Infinitive, but the object relation has been effaced here as it has been in Latin. See 422, N. 1.

Est inusitatum regem reum capitis esse, C., Dei., I. I; it is an extraordinary thing that a king should (for a king to) be tried for his life. Facinus est vincire civem Romanum, C., Verr., v. 66, 170; it is an outrage to put a Roman citizen in chains. Necesse est facere sumptum qui quaerit (= eum qui quaerit) lucrum, Pl., As., 218; need is that he make outlay who an income seeks. Legem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur, Sen., E.M., 94, 38; it is proper that a law should be brief (a law ought to be brief), that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated. Quid Milonis intererat interfici Clodium, C., Mil., 13, 34 (382, 2). Opus est te animo valere, C., Fam., XVI. 14, 2 (406, N. 5).

Remarks.—  $\mathbf{1}$ . A list of expressions taking the Inf. as a subj. is given in 422, NN.

2. Oportet, it is proper, and necesse est, must needs, are often used with the Subjunctive. So also many other phrases with ut. (See 557.)

Necesse also takes the Dat. of the Person:

Ut culpent aliı, tibi mē laudāre necesse est, Ov., Her., 12, 131; let others blame, but you must give me praise.

3. When the indirect obj. of the leading verb is the same as the subj. of the Inf. the predicate of the subj. is put in the same case as the indirect object: in standard prose chiefly with licet, it is left (free); in poetry and later prose with necesse, with satius est, it is better, contingit, it happens, vacat, there is room.

Licuit esse ōtiōsō Themistocli, C., Tusc., I. 15, 33; Themistocles was free to live a life of leisure.

The Acc. is occasionally found; always if the Dat. is not expressed.

Medios esse iam non licebit (nos), C., Att., x. 8, 4; it will no longer be allowable to be neutral.

## Object Sentences Represented by the Participle.

536. The Participle is used after verbs of Perception and Representation, to express the actual condition of the object of perception or representation.

Catōnem vidī in bibliothēcā sedentem multīs circumfūsum Stōicōrum librīs, C., Fin., 111. 2, 7; I saw Cato sitting in the library with an ocean of Stoic books about him. Prōdiga nōn sentit pereuntem fēmina cōnsum, Juv., vi. 362; the lavish woman does not perceive (how) the income (is) dwindling. Saepe illam audīvī fūrtīvā vōce loquentem, Cat., LXVII. 41; I have often heard her talking in a stealthy (in an under-) tone. Gaudō quod spectant oculī tō mīlle loquentem, H., Ep., 1. 6, 19 (542). Polyphōmum Homērus cum ariete conloquentem facit, C., Tusc., v. 39, 115; Homer represents Polyphemus (as) talking with the ram.

Notes.—1. This construction is found but once in early Latin (Piso), then in Cicero, Sallist, Nefos, Vitruvius, Livy, Horace. The naturalization of it is due to Cicero, and other students of Greek models. The poverty of Latin in participles was a serious drawback to the convenient distinction from the Infinitive; and it may be said that the participle was never perfectly at home.

2. On the Inf., see 527, N. 1. The Greek construction of Part. agreeing with the

leading Nom. after verbs of Perception and Emotion, is rare and poetical:

Gaudent scribentës, H., Ep., II. 2, 107; they have joy while writing. Sënsit mediës dëläpsus in hostës, V., A., II. 377; he perceived (it) having fallen (that he had fallen) 'midst the enemy. Gaudent perfüsi sanguine frätrum, V., G., II. 510; they rejoice, bedrenched with brothers' blood.

**537.** The Perfect Participle Passive is used after verbs of Causation and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfilment:

Si qui voluptătibus dücuntur missõs faciant honôres, C., Sest., 66, 138; if any are led captive by sensual pleasures, let them dismiss honors (at once and forever). Huic mandes si quid recte curatum velis, Ter., Ad., 372; you must intrust to him whatever you want properly attended to.

Notes.—1. After verbs of Will and Desire, the Inf. esse is occasionally found with this Part., and hence it may be considered a Pf. Infinitive (280, 2, c). Compare, however, Pf. Part. pass. with opus est, usus est (406).

2. The verbs of Causation thus employed are curare, dare, facere, reddere. The usage is most common in early Latin. In the classical period only missum facere.

# CAUSAL SENTENCES.

# 538. Causal sentences are introduced:

1. By quia, because, quod, (in that) because.

2. By quoniam (quom iam), now that, quando, quando (Cause quidem, since.

3. By cum (quom), as. (Inference.)

4. By the Relative Pronoun, partly alone, partly with ut, utpote, quippe, etc. (See 626, 634.)

Notes.—1. Quod is the Acc. Sing. neuter, and quia is probably the Acc. Pl. neuter from the relative stem. They have accordingly often a correlative demonstrative; so with quod: eō, eā rē, ideō, idcircō, eā grātiā (in Sallust only), hōc, hāc mente (H., S., II. 2, 90), proptereā, and a few combinations with ob and propter; with quia are found eō, eā rē, ideō, idcircō, proptereā, and ergō (in Platuus only).

2. Quod and quia differ in classical prose, chiefly in that quod is used, and not

quia, when the causal sentence is at the same time an object sentence.

3. Quoniam is originally temporal, and as such is still found in PLAUTUS. The causal use of it becomes much more extensive in classical prose, and, like quando (quando quidem), it is used of evident reasons.

 Quando is used principally as a temporal particle. In a causal sense it is very rare in Cicero (in the Orations never, unless compounded with quidem), and is not

found in CAESAR. The compound with quidem is more common.

5. Quaterus, in so far as, is poetical and in late prose. Horace shows first example, O., III. 24, 30. Valerius M., Quintilian, Tacitus, Pliny Minor, and Suetonius show occasional examples.

# Causal Sentences with QUOD, QUIA, QUONIAM, and QUANDO.

539. Causal sentences with quod, quia, quoniam, and quando are put in the Indicative, except in oblique relation (Partial or Total).

REMARK.—The other person of the oblique clause may be imaginary, and the writer or speaker may quote from himself indirectly:

Laetātus sum, quod mihi licēret rēcta dēfendere, C., Fam., 1. 9, 18; I was glad (to say to myself) that I was free to champion the right.

540. Causal sentences with quod, quia, quoniam, and quando take the Indicative in Direct Discourse.

Torquātus fīlium suum quod is contrā imperium in hostem pūgnāverat necārī iūssit, S., C., 52, 30; Torquatus bade his son be put to death because he had fought against the enemy contrary to order(s) [quod pūgnāsset = because, as Torquatus said or thought]. Amantēs dē formā iūdicāre non possunt, quia sēnsum oculorum praecipit animus, Quint., vi. 2, 6; lovers cannot judge of beauty, because the heart forestalls the eye. Quia nātūra mūtārī non potest idcirco vērae amicitiae sempiternae sunt, C., Lael., 9, 32; because nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting. Neque mē vīxisse paenitet quoniam ita vīxī ut non frūstrā mē nātum exīstumem, C., Cat.M., 23, 84; and I am not sorry for having lived, since I have so lived that I think I was born not in vain. Sõlus erō quoniam non licet esse tuum, Prop., 11. 9, 46; I shall be alone since I may not be thine. Voluptās sēmovenda est quandō ad māiōra quaedam nātī sumus, Cf. C., Fin., v. 8, 21; pleasure is to be put aside

because we are born for greater things. Erant quibus appetentior fāmae [Helvidius] vidērētur quandŏ etiam sapientibus cupīdō glōriae novissima exuitur, Tac., H., Iv. 6, 1; there were some to whom Helvidius seemed too eager for fame, since, even from the wise, ambition is the last (infirmity) that is put off. Sequitur ut līberātōrēs (sint), quandŏquidem tertium nihil potest esse, C., Ph., II. 13, 31.

541. Causal sentences with quod, quia, quoniam, and quando take the Subjunctive in Oblique Discourse (Partial or Total).

Noctū ambulābat in pūblicō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset, C., Tusc., IV. 19, 44; Themistocles used to walk about in public at night because (as he said) he could not get to sleep. Aristīdēs nōnne ob eam causam expulsus est patriā quod praeter modum iūstus esset? C., Tusc., v. 36, 105; (there is) Aristides; was he not banished his country for the (alleged) reason "that he was unreasonably just"? [Nē] compōne comās quia sīs ventūrus ad illam, Ov., Rem.Am., 679 (517). Quoniam (so most MSS.) ipse prō sē dīcere nōn posset, verba fēcit frāter ēius Stēsagorās, Nep., I. 7, 5; "as [Miltiades] could not speak for himself," his brother, Stesagoras, made a speech. (Indirect quotation from the speech of Stesagoras.)

A good example is PL., M.G., 1412-15.

Notes.—1. Quia is the usual particle in the causal sense in Plautus, quod being very rare; but quod is more common in Terence, and is the regular particle in classical prose (Caesar has but one case of quia), though the use of quia revives in post-classical Latin. Cicero makes a point on the difference in meaning in Rosc. Am., 50, 145: concēdō et quod (by reason of the fact that) animus aequus est, et quia (because) necesse est.

2. A rejected reason is introduced by non quod with the Subjv. (as being the suggestion of another person). The Indic., which is properly used of excluded facts, is also used of flat denials, like the negative and Indic. in the independent sentence, but the Subjv. is the rule. Non quia is the rule in early Latin, but classical prose shows very few examples. From Livy on it becomes common. Other equivalents are non quō, non eō quod, non eō quō; further, non quīn for non quō non. All of these are found with Subjv. only. The corresponding affirmative is given by sed quod or sed quia indiscriminately, regularly with the Indicative.

Subjunctive:

Pugilës in iactandis caestibus ingemiscunt, non quod doleant, sed quia profundendā võce omne corpus intenditur venitque plāga vehementior, C., Tusc., II. 23, 56; boxers in plying the caestus heave groans, not that (as you might suppose) they are in pain, but because in giving full vent to the voice all the body is put to the stretch and the blove comes with a greater rush. Māiōrēs nostrī in dominum dē servō quaerī noluērunt; non quin posset vērum invenīrī, sed quia vidēbātur indīgnum esse, C., Mil., 22, 59; our ancestors would not allow a slave to be questioned by torture against his master, not because (not as though they thought) the truth could not be got at, but because such a course seemed degrading. Ā [Lacedaemoniōrum exulibus] praetor vim arcuerat, non quia salvōs vellet sed quia perīre causā indictā nolebat, L., xxxvIII. 33, 11; the praetor had warded off violence from the

Lacedaemonian exiles, not (as you might have supposed) because he wished them to escape, but because he did not wish them to perish with their case not pleaded (unheard).

The same principle applies to magis quod (quo), quia—quam quo (first in Cicero), quod (first in Sallust), quia (first in Livy), with the moods in inverse order.

Libertātis orīginem inde, magis quia annuum imperium consulāre factum est quam quod dēminūtum quidquam sit ex rēgiā potestāte, numerēs, L., II. 1, 7; you may begin to count the origin of liberty from that point, rather because the consular government was limited to a year, than because aught was taken away from the royal power.

Indicative:

Sum non dicam miser, sed certe exercitus, non quia multis debeo sed quia saepe concurrunt aliquorum bene de me meritorum inter ipsos contentiones, C., Planc., 32, 78; I am, I will not say, wretched, but certainly worried, not because I am in debt to many, but because the rival claims of some who have deserved well of me often conflict. Compare also H., S., II. 2, 80.

3. Verbs of Saying and Thinking are occasionally put in the Subjv. with quod by

a kind of attraction. Compare 585, N. 3.

Impetrāre non potul, quod rēligione sē impedīrī dīcerent, C., Fam., IV. 12, 3; I could not obtain permission, because they said they were embarrassed (prevented) by a religious scruple (= quod impedīrentur, because (as they said) they were prevented).

This attraction is said to occur not unfrequently in Cicero, several times in Caesar and Sallust, but is not cited from any other author. Compare, however, crederent, L., XXI. r. 3.

4. On the use of tamquam, etc., to indicate an assumed reason, see 602, N. 4.

5. Quandoque is archaic and rare. It is found first in the Twelve Tables, a few times in Cicero and Livy, three times in Horace, and occasionally later.

6. Causal sentences may be represented by a participle (669), or by the relative (626).

# QUOD with Verbs of Emotion.

542. Quod is used to give the ground of Emotions and Expressions of Emotion, such as verbs of Joy, Sorrow, Surprise, Satisfaction and Anger, Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint.

The rule for the Mood has been given already: 539.

Indicative:

Gaudē quod spectant oculī tē mille loquentem, H., Ep., 1. 6, 19; rejoice that a thousand eyes are gazing at you (while you are) speaking. Dolet mihī quod tū nunc stomachāris, C., ad Br., 1. 17, 6; it pains me that you are angry now. Quīntum paenitet quod animum tuum offendit, Cf. C., Alt., XI. 13, 2(377, R. 3). Iuvat mē quod vigent studia, PLIN., Ep., 1. 13, 1; I am charmed that studies are flourishing. Trīstis es? indīgnor quod sum tibi causa dolōris, Ov., Tr., IV. 3, 33; are you sad? I am provoked (with myself) that I am a cause of pain to you. Tibī grātiās agō, quod mō omnī molestiā līberāstī, C., Fam., XIII. 62; I thank you, that you freed me from all annoyance.

Subjunctive:

Gaudet miles quod vicerit hostem, Ov., Tr., II. 49; the soldier rejoices

at having conquered the enemy. Neque mihř umquam veniet in mentem poenitēre quod ā mē ipse non dēscīverim, C., Att., II. 4, 2; it will never occur to me to be sorry for not having been untrue to myself. Laudat Āfricānum Panaetius quod fuerit abstinēns, C., Off., II. 22, 76; Panaetius praises Africanus for having been abstinent. Nēmŏ est ōrātōrem quod Latīnē loquerētur admīrātus, C., Or., III. 14, 52; no one (ever) admired an orator for speaking (good) Latin. Sōcratēs accūsātus est quod corrumperet iuventūtem, Quint., IV. 4, 5; Socrates was accused of corrupting youth. Meminī glōriārī solitum esse Quintum Hortēnsium quod numquam bellō cīvīlī interfuisset, C., Fam., II. 16, 3; I remember that Quintus Hortensius used to boast of never having engaged in civil war. Agunt grātīās quod sibǐ pepercissent, CAES., B. C., I. 74, 2 (511, R. 1).

Remark.—This class of verbs may be construed with the Acc. and Inf.: salvom to advenisse gaudeo (533); also with quia, principally in early Latin, and in Cicero's Letters, then occasionally in Livy, Tactus, Suetonius, and later. But in Expressions of Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint, quod is more common. On cum, see 564, N. 2.

And to et non neglexisse habed gratiam, Ter., Ph., 54; I love you (= much obliged), and I am thankful to you for not having neglected (it). Gratulor ingenium non latuisse tuum, Ov., Tr., 1. 9, 54; I congratulate (you) that your genius has not lain hidden. [Isocrates] queritur plus honoris corporum quam animorum virtutibus dari, Quint., III. 8, 9; Isocrates complains that more honor is paid to the virtues of the body than to those of the mind.

Notes.—1. Perplexing Emotion (Wonder) may be followed by a Conditional, or by a Dependent Interrogative, as in English, but this construction is not found in Vergil, Caesar, Sallust, and is never common.

Miror si [Tarquinius] quemquam amicum habere potuit, C., Lael., 15,54; I wonder if Tarquin could ever have had a friend.

Besides mīror (and mīrum), there is one case of gaudeō sī in Cicero (*Verr.*, iv. 17, 37), and a few cases after expressions of Fear in Tacitus. There are also sporadic cases of indīgnārī (indīgnitās) sī.

2. Noteworthy is the phrase mīrum (-a) nī (nisi), 'tis a wonder that—not, which belongs to the colloquialisms of early Latin (PL., Capt., 820), but reappears once in Livy.

# SENTENCES OF DESIGN AND TENDENCY.

- 543. 1. Sentences of Design are commonly called Final Sentences. Sentences of Tendency are commonly called Consecutive Sentences. Both contemplate the end—the one, as an aim; the other, as a consequence.
- 2. They are alike in having the Subjunctive and the particle ut (how, that), a relative conjunction.

3. They differ in the Tenses employed. The Final Sentence, as a rule, takes only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. Consecutive Sentences may take also Perfect and Pluperfect.

4. They differ in the kind of Subjunctive employed. The Final Sentence takes the Optative. The Consecutive Sentence takes the Potential. Hence the difference in the

Negative.

Final: nē (ut nē), Consecutive: ut nōn, that not.

nē quis, ut nēmē, that no one.

nē ūllus, ut nūllus, that no.

nē umquam, (nē quandē), ut numquam, that never,

nē ūsquam, (nēcubi,) ut nūsquam, that nowhere.

nē aut—aut, (ut nēve—nēve,) ut neque—neque, that neither—nor.

REMARKS.-I. Verbs of Effecting have the Final Sequence.

2. Verbs of Hindering have the sequence of the Final Sentence, but often the signification of the Consecutive.

3. Verbs of Fearing belong to the Final Sentence only so far as they have the Optative Subjunctive; the subordinate clause is only semi-dependent upon the principal, and we have a partial survival of original parataxis.

Notes.—1. Inasmuch as the Subjy. cannot express a fact, the Latin Consecutive clause does not properly express actual result, but only a tendency, which may, we infer, lead to a result. To obviate this difficulty, the Latin has recourse to the circumlocutions with accidit, evenit, etc.

2. It is to be remarked that the difference between Final and Consecutive often consists only in the point of view. What is final from the point of view of the doer is consecutive from the point of view of the spectator; hence the variation in sequence and negative after verbs of Effecting. A frustrated purpose gives a negative result; hence the variation in negative after verbs of Hindering.

3. Here and there in Cicero, more often in Livy and later writers, instead of neve (neu), a second clause is added by neque, the force of the final particle being felt

throughout the sentence.

Monitor tuus suādēbit tibī ut hinc discēdās neque mihī verbum ūllum respondeās, C., Div. in Caec., 16, 52; your adviser will counsel you to depurt hence and answer me never a word.

#### FINAL SENTENCES.

# 544. Final Sentences are divided into two classes:

I. Final Sentences in which the Design is expressed by the particle; Pure Final Sentences (Sentences of Design).

Oportet esse, ut vivas, non vivere ut edas, [C.], ad Her., iv. 28, 39; you must eat in order to live, not live in order to eat.

This form may be translated by, (in order) to; sometimes by that may, that might, that, with the Subjunctive and the like.

II. Final Sentences in which the Design lies in the leading verb (verba studiī et voluntātis, verbs of Will and Desire); Complementary Final Sentences.

Volō utī mihī respondeās, C., Vat., 7, 17; I wish you to answer me. This form is often rendered by to, never by in order to, sometimes by that and the Subjunctive, or some equivalent.

Of the same nature, but partly Final and partly Consecutive in their sequence, are:

Verbs of Hindering.

Peculiar in their sequence are:

III. Verbs of Fearing.

REMARKS.—1. The use of the Subjv. with Temporal Particles often adds a final sense, inasmuch as the Subjv. regularly looks forward to the future. So dum, donec, quoad (572), antequam, priusquam (577).

- 2. The general sense of a Final Sentence may also be expressed:
- (1) By the Relative qui with the Subjunctive. (630.)
- (2) By the Genitive of Gerund or Gerundive, with (seldom without) causa or gratia. (428, R. 2.)
  - (3) By ad with Gerund and Gerundive. (432.)
  - (4) By the Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive. (429, 2.)
- (5) By the Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive after verbs of Giving, etc. (430.)
  - (6) By the Accusative Supine after verbs of Motion. (435.)
  - (7) By the Future Participle Active (post-Ciceronian). (438, N.)
  - (8) By the Infinitive (poetic and rare). (421, n. 1, a.)

# I. Pure Final Sentences.

545. Pure Final Sentences are introduced by:

1. **Ut** (**utI**) (how) that, and other relative pronouns and adverbs. (630.)

Ut and no are often preceded by a demonstrative expression, such as: idcirco, therefore; eo, to that end; propteres, on that account; eo consilio, with that design; eo causa, ro, for that reason.

2. Quo = ut eo, that thereby; with comparatives, that the  $\dots$  =:

# 3. Nē, that not, lest, continued by nēve, neu. (444.)

Oportet esse, ut vivas, non vivere ut edas, [C.], ad Her., IV. 28, 39 (544, Inventa sunt specula, ut homo ipse se nosset, Sen., N.Q., I. 17, 4; mirrors were invented, to make man acquainted with himself. Ut amēris, amābilis estō, Ov., A.A., II. 107; that you may be loved (to make yourself loved, in order to be loved), be lovable. Legem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur, Sen., E.M., 94, 38 (535). [Senex] serit arbores, quae alteri saeclo prosint, Caecilius (C., Tusc., i. 14, 31); the old man sets out trees, to do good to the next generation. Semper habe Pyladen aliquem qui curet Orestem, Ov., Rem. Am., 589; always have some Pylades, to tend Orestes. [Athēnienses] creant decem praetores qui exercituī pracessent, NEP., I. 4, 4; the Athenians make ten generals to command their army. [Magnesiam Themistocli Artaxerxes] urbem donarat. quae ef panem praeberet, NEP., II. 10, 3; Artaxerxes had given Themistocles the city of Magnesia, to furnish him with bread, Gallinae pennis fovent pullos, ne frigore laedantur, Cf. C., N.D., II. 52, 129; hens keep (their) chickens warm with (their) wings, that they may not be (to keep them from being) hurt by the cold. Dionysius, ne collum tonsori committeret, tondēre fīliās suās docuit, C., Tusc., v. 20, 58 (423, N. 6).

REMARKS.—1. Ut no is found for no with apparently no difference in signification, occasionally at all periods, but not in Caesar, Sallust, Livy. Quō without comparative is rare and cited only from Plautus, Terence, Sallust, Ovid, and later Latin; quōnō (= ut nō) is not found till the time of Dictys; apparent examples in classical Latin are to be otherwise explained. Quōminus and quin occur in special uses.

2. Ut non is used when a particular word is negatived:

Confer to ad Mallium, ut non diectus ad alienos sed invitatus ad tuos isse videaris, C., Cat., I. 9, 23; betake yourself to Mallius, that you may seem to have gone not as an outcast to strangers but as an invited guest to your own (friends).

 Ut and ne are used parenthetically at all periods, depending on a suppressed word of Saying or the like.

Utque magis stupeās lūdōs Paridemque relīquit, Juv., vi. 87; and to stun you more (I tell you that) she left Paris and the games.

The verb of Saying may be inserted: atque ut omnes intellegant dico, C., Imp., 8, 20; and that all may understand, I say.

# II. Complementary Final Sentences.

A. Verbs of Will and Desire.

546. Complementary Final Sentences follow verbs of Willing and Wishing, of Warning and Beseeching, of Urg-

ing and Demanding, of Resolving and Endeavoring (verba studiī et voluntātis).

r. Positive: ut.

Volō utī mihǐ respondeās, C., Vat., 7, 17 (544, II.). (Phaēthōn) optāvit ut in currum patris tollerētur, C., Off., III. 25, 94; Phaethon desired to be lifted up into his father's chariot. Admoneō ut cottīdiē meditēre resistendum esse īrācundiae, C., Q.F., I. i. i3, 38; Iadmonish you to reflect daily that resistance must be made to hot-headedness. Ubii (Caesarem) ōrant, ut sibǐ parcat, CAES., B.G., VI. 9, 7; the Ubii beg Cæsar to spare them. Sed precor ut possim tūtius esse miser, Ov., Tr., v. 2, 78 (423, 2). Exigis ut Priamus nātōrum fūnere lūdat, Ov., Tr., v. 12, 7; you exact that Priam sport at (his) sons' funeral. Athēniēnsēs cum statuerent ut nāvēs cōnscenderent, Cyrsilum quendam suādentem ut in urbe manērent lapidibus obruērunt, C., Off., III. 11, 48; the Athenians, resolving to go on board their ships, overwhelmed with stones (= stoned) one Cyrsilus, who tried to persuade them to remain in the city.

So also any verb or phrase used as a verb of Willing or Demanding.

Pythia respondit ut moenibus ligneis se munirent, Nep., II. 2, 6; the Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood.

2. Negative: nē, ut nē; continued by nēve (neu), and not.

Caesar suis imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent, Caes., B. G., 1. 46, 2; Caesar gave orders to his (men) not to throw back any missile at all at the enemy. Themistoclēs [collēgīs suīs] praedīxit ut nē prius Lacedaemoniōrum lēgātōs dīmitterent quam ipse esset remissus, Nep., II. 7, 3; Themistocles told his colleagues beforehand not to dismiss the Lacedaemonian envoys before he were sent back. Pompēius suīs praedīxerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent nēve sē locō movērent, Caes , B.C., III. 92, 1; Pompey had told his men beforehand to receive Caesar's charge and not to move from their position.

REMARKS.—I. When verbs of Willing and Wishing are used as verbs of Saying and Thinking, Knowing and Showing, the Inf. must be used. The English translation is that, and the Indic.: volō, I will have it (maintain), moneō, I remark, persuādeō, I convince, dēcernō, I decide, cōgō, I conclude.

[Moneō] artem sine adsiduitēte disendī r.īn multum iuvāre, Cf. [C.], ad Her., r. 1, 1: I remark that art without constant practice in speaking is of little avail. Vix cuiquam persuādēbātur Graeciā omnī cēssūrōs (Rōmānōs), L., XXXIII. 32, 3; scarce uny one could be persuaded that the Romans would retire from all Greece. Non sunt istī audiendī quī virtūtem dūram ct quasi ferream esse quandam volunt, C., Lael., 13, 48 (313, R. 2). Est

mõs hominum ut nõlint eundem plüribus rēbus excellere, C., Brut., 21, 84; it is the way of the world not to allow that the same man excels in more things (than one).

2. When the idea of Wishing is emphatic, the simple Subjv., without ut, is employed, and the restriction of sequence to Pr. and Impf. is removed:

Velim existimēs nēminem cuiquam cāriōrem umquam fuisse quam tē mihi, C., Fam., I. 9, 24; I wish you to think that no one was ever dearer to any one than you to me. Mālō tē sapiēns hostis metuat quam stultī cīvēs laudent, I., XXII. 39, 20; I had rather a wise enemy should fear you than foolish citizens should praise you. Excūsātum habeās mē rogo, cēno domi, Mart., II. 79, 2 (238). Hūc ades, insānī feriant sine litora fluctūs, V., Ec., 9, 43; come hither (and) let the mad waves lash the shores. Tam fēlīx essēs quam fōrmōsissima vellem, Ov., Am., I. 8, 27 (302). Vellem mē ad cēnam invītāssēs, C., Fam., XII. 4, 1 (261, R.). Occidit occideritque sinās cum nōmine Trōia, V., A., XII. 828; 'tis fallen, and let Troy be fallen, name and all.

So iubeō in poetry and later prose. Compare also potius quam, 577, N. 6.

3. Ut nē is not used after verbs of negative signification, as impediō, I hinder, recūsō, I refuse (548). Otherwise there seems to be no difference in meaning between it and nē, except that sometimes the nē seems to apply more to a single word in the sentence.

4. On nēdum, see 482, 5, R. 2.

Notes.—1. Such verbs and phrases are: Willing and Wishing: volō, nōlō, mālō, optō, studeō. Wurning and Beseeching: hortor, adhortor, moneō, admoneō, auctor sum, cōusilium dō, ōrō, rogō, petō, precor, pōscō, pōstulō, flāgitō, obsecrō. Urging and Demanding: suādeō, persuādeō, cēnseō, imperō, mandō, praecipiō, ēdicō, dīcō, scrībō. Resolving and Endeavoring: statuō, cōnstituō, dēcernō, nītor, contendō, labōrō, pūgnō, id agō, operam dō, cūrō, videō, prōvideō, prōspiciō, legem ferō, lēx est, etc.

2. Substantives of kindred meaning, in combination with the copula or other verbs, take similar constructions. Such are voluntas, cupiditas, spēs, ardor, auctoritas, consilium (especially in the combination eo, hōc consilio), signum, praeceptum, exemplum, propositum, officium, negotium, mūnus, verba, and litterae (with dare, mittere, etc.), sententia, animus (especially eo animo), condicio (especially

eā condicione), foedus, iūs, lex (eā lege), cūra, opera, causa, ratio.

3. Instead of ut with the Subjv., the Inf. is frequently used with this class of verbs. So, generally, with iubeō, Iorder, 582. With verbs of Asking, however, the Inf. is not common until Vergll. The Inf. only one in Plature, then in Vergll and later poets; in prose first in Tactus. Rogāre has ut regularly, Inf. only once (Cat., xxxv. 10). Quaesō, implōrō, obsecrō, obtēstor, never have Inf., flāgitāre only once (H., S., II. 4, 61) until Suetonius; pōstulāre very often, especially in early Latin in the sense expect; pōsecre not till the Augustan poets. Authors vary. The use of the Inf. is wider in poetry and silver prose.

# B. Verbs of Hindering.

547. The dependencies of verbs of Hindering may be regarded as partly Final, partly Consecutive. No and quominus are originally final,

but the final sense is often effaced, especially in quōminus. Quīn is a consecutive particle. The sequence of verbs of Hindering is that of the Final Sentence.

The negative often disappears in the English translation.

548. Verbs and phrases signifying to Prevent, to Forbid, to Refuse, and to Beware, may take nē with the Subjunctive, if they are not negatived.

Impedior no plura dicam, C., Sull., 33, 92; I am hindered from saying more (I am hindered that I should say no more). "Who did hinder you that ye should not obey the truth?" GAL., v. 7.

Servitūs mea mihi interdīxit nē quid mīrer meum malum, Pl., Pers., 621; my slavery has forbidden me to marvel aught at ill of mine. Histiaeus nē rēs cōnficerētur obstitit, Nep., 1-3, 5; Histiaeus opposed the thing's being done. (Rēgulus) sententiam nē dīceret recūsāvit, C., Off., III. 27, 100; Regulus refused to pronounce an opinion. Maledictīs dēterrēre nē scrībat parat, Ter., Ph., 3 (423, 2). Tantum cum fingēs nē sīs manifēsta cavētō, Ov., A.A., III. 801 (271, 2). Tantum nē noceās dum vīs prōdesse vidētō, Ov., Tr., I. I, 101; only see (to it) that you do not do harm while you wish to do good.

Notes.—1. The most important of these words are: Preventing: impedIre, impedImentō esse, prohibēre, tenēre, retinēre, dēterrēre, interclūdere, interpellāre, dēprecārī, obsistere, obstāre, intercēdere, interponere. Forbidding: interdicere. Refusing: recūsāre, repūgnāre, resistere, sē tenēre, sē reprimere, sibī temperāre, morārī. Beware: cavēre, vidēre, and a few others, especially the phrase per aliquem stāre (more often with quōminus).

2. Many verbs of Preventing and Refusing also take quominus (549), and some also

the Infinitive (423, 2, N. 2).

3. Cavēre, to beware, and praecavēre belong to verbs of Hindering only so far as action is contemplated. Cavēre, followed by ut, means to be sure to; by nē or ut nē, to see to it that not; by nē, to take precautions against. When nē is omitted, cavē, cavētō, with the Subjv., form circumocutions for the negative Imperative (271, 2). So with vidē ut, nē. Cavēre also has the Inf. occasionally as a verb of negative Will (423, 2, N. 2), beginning with Plauves. In prose it is cited only from Cato (once), Cicero (Att., III. 17, 3), Sallust (Iug., 64, 2), and Pliny Mai.

4. Vidē nē (nē nēn), see to it lest, is often used as a polite formula for dubitē an (457, 2), I am inclined to think. Crēdere omnia vidē nē nēn sit necesse, C., Div.,

п. 13, 31.

549. Verbs of Preventing and Refusing may take quōminus (= ut eō minus), that thereby the less, with the Subjunctive.

Actās non impedit quominus agrī colendī studia teneāmus, C., Cat.M., 17, 60; age does not hinder our retaining interest in agriculture. Non deterret sapientem mors quominus reī pūblicae consulat, C., Tusc., I. 38, 91; death does not deter the sage from consulting the interest of the State. Quid obstat quominus (Deus) sit beātus? C., N.D., I. 34, 95; what

is in the way of God's being happy? Caesar cognovit per Afranium stare quominus proelio dimicarotur, Caes., B.C., 1. 41, 3; Caesar found that it was Afranius's fault that there was no decisive fight (stat, there is a stand-still).

Notes.—1. With impedire and prohibère Caesar never uses quōminus; Cicero rarely. But with other words implying Hindrance Cicero uses quōminus not unfrequently. With prohibère the regular construction is the Inf., but this is rare with impedire, quōminus being the rule. With recūsāre, the Inf. is rare (Caes., B. G., III. 22, 3) but classical, becoming more frequent from Livy on. The passive of dēterrēre is also construed with the Inf. occasionally.

2. Plautus does not use quōminus, Terence first, but seldom. It is especially common from the time of Cicero. In Terence the elements are sometimes separated (quō-minus), thus emphasizing the relative character. But it is not so used in the classical Latin, and in the Silver Age the force of its origin ceases to be felt, so that it is construed like quin. The fact that it is not found in Plautus nor in Vitruvius has led to the suggestion that it is a book-word.

. 3. The difference in usage between quōminus and quīn seems to be that while quīn is always used with negatives, quōminus occurs sometimes with positives, so that

according to the connection it is either Final or Consecutive.

4. Quō sētius for quōminus is archaic, but occurs twice in Cornificius and twice in Cicero (Inv., 11.45, 132; 57, 170).

## III. Verbs of Fearing.

**550.** 1. Verbs of Fearing, and expressions that involve Fear, take the Present and Perfect, Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

The Present Subjunctive represents the Present and Future Indicative. The Perfect Subjunctive regularly represents the Perfect Indicative.

Present and Perfect Subjunctive become Imperfect and Pluperfect after a Past Tense.

These constructions are survivals of the original parataxis, when **n5** and **ut** were particles of wish. Thus, **timeō**: **nō** veniat, I am afraid: may he not come (i.e., I am afraid that he will), becomes, when the two clauses are combined, **timeō** nō veniat, I am afraid lest (that) he may (will) come. Similarly with **ut**, which in this usage was originally how. Hence,

2. With verbs of Fearing, nē, lest, shows that the negative is wished and the positive feared; ut (nē nōn) shows that the positive is wished and the negative feared: nē nōn is used regularly after the negative, or an interrogative with negative force.

Vereor në hostis veniat, I fear lest the enemy come, that he is coming, that he will come. (I wish he may not come.)

Vereor në hostis vënerit, I fear lest the enemy have come, that (it will turn out that) he has come.

Vereor ut amicus veniat, I fear (how my friend can come) lest my friend come not, that he is not coming, will not come. (I wish he may come.)

Vereor ut amīcus vēnerit, I fear lest my friend have not come, that he has not come.

Non vereor në amicus non veniat, I do not fear that my friend is not coming, will not come.

Non vereor ne amicus non venerit, I do not fear that my friend has not come.

Id pavēs, nē dūcās tū illam, tū autem ut dūcās, Ter., And., 349; that's what you dread, you lest you marry her (ne ducam!); you, on the other hand, lest you don't (utinam dūcam!).

Vereor në dum minuere velim laborem augeam, C., Leg., I. 4, 12; I fear lest, while I wish to lessen the toil, I increase it (that I am increasing it). Verēmur nē parum hīc liber mellis et absinthiī multum habēre videātur, Quint., III. 1, 5; I am afraid that this book will seem to have too little honey and (too) much wormwood. Timeo ne tibi nihil praeter lacrimas queam reddere, C., Planc., 42, 101; I am afraid that I can give you nothing in return save tears. Aurum inspicere volt në subruptum siet, PL., Aul., 39; he wishes to inspect the gold (for fear) lest it be filched.

Timeō ut sustineās (labōrēs), C., Fam., XIV. 2, 3; I fear that you will not hold out under your toils. Vereor në dum defendam meos, non parcam tuis, C., Att., 1. 17, 3; I fear lest in defending my own I may not spare thine. Non vereor ne tua virtus opinioni hominum non respondeat, Cf. C., Fam., 11. 5, 2; I do not fear that your virtue will not answer to (come up to) public expectation. Metuo në id consilii ceperimus quod non facile explicare possimus, C., Fam., XIV. 12; I fear that we have formed a plan that we cannot readily explain. Unum illud extimescebam ne quid turpius facerem, vel dīcam, iam effēcissem, C., Att., IX. 7, 1; the only thing I feared was, lest I should act disgracefully, or, I should (rather) say, (lest) I had already acted disgracefully.

Notes.-1. Ut seems to be used only after metuo, paveo, timeo, and vereor. Most common is vereor; metuo is common in early Latin, but is cited but rarely later (HORACE, CICERO); paveo has to be supplied once with ut in TER., And., 349. Timeo nt is found first in CICERO, and is very rare.

2. Në non is very rare in early Latin, but becomes more frequent from Cicero on. Ut ne is never found for ne.

3. Two strange cases are cited where, instead of ne, ut seems to be used, viz., Hor., S., I. 3, 120, nam ut ferulā caedās meritum mājora subīre verbera, non vereor. and L., XXVIII. 22, 12, nihil minus, quam ut egredi obsessi moenibus auderent, timeri poterat. In the first case the ut clause precedes, and the non vereor is used by anacoluthon; in the second the ut clause is a circumlocution for an omitted illud. parallel to nihil. This is also helped by the antecedence of the ut clause.

4. When a verb of Fear is a verb of Uncertainty an indirect question may follow:

vereor quo modo accepturi sitis, [C.], ad Her., IV. 37, 49.

5. (a) With the Inf. verbs of Fear are verbs of (negative) Will: versor = prae timore nolo.

Võs Allobrogum tēstimõniis non crēdere timētis? C., Font., 12, 26; are ye afraid to disbelieve the testimony of the Allobroges? Vereor laudāre praesentem, C., N.D., I. 21, 58 (423, 2). Nil metuunt iūrāre, CAT., LXIV. 146; they have no fear to take an oath.

These constructions are found at all periods; chiefly, however, in the poets and I ter prose writers. Ciceno shows reserve. The usage of the Inf. as an out-and-out verbal subst. in the Acc. is poetical: nec morī per vim (= mortem violentam) metuam, H., o., III., 14, 15.

(b) With the Acc. and Inf. verbs of Fear are verbs of Thinking or of Perception: vereor = cum timore puto or video.

Verebar non omnes causam vincere posse suam [Ov., Her., 16, 75]. Telum-

que înstăre tremescit, V., A., XII. 916.

This construction is rare, but occurs at all periods; more often, however, it involves the substantives timor and metus, especially in L:vv, who shows seven cases in all.

### CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.

Sentences of Tendency and Result.

- **551.** I. Consecutive Sentences are those sentences which show the Consequence or Tendency of Actions. In Latin, Result is a mere inference from Tendency, though often an irresistible inference. In other words, the Latin language uses so as throughout, and not so that, although so that is often a convenient translation. The result is only implied, not stated.
  - 2. Consecutive Sentences are divided into two classes:
- I. Consecutive Sentences in which the Tendency is expressed by the Particle: Pure Consecutive Sentences.
- II. Consecutive Sentences in which the Tendency lies in the leading Verb: (a) after verbs of Effecting; (b) after negatived verbs of Preventing, Doubt, and Uncertainty; (c) after words and phrases requiring expansion.

### I. Pure Consecutive Sentences.

- 552. Pure Consecutive Sentences are introduced by
- r. Ut (uti), that, so that, and other relative pronouns and adverbs (631).
- 2. Ut—non, that, so that, as—not, continued by neque, nec (543, 4).
  - 3. Quin = ut non, after a negative sentence (554). Correlative demonstratives occur very often: ita (sīc), tam,

tantopere, tantō, tantum, adeō, eō, huc; tālis, tantus, tot, is, ēius modī, and others of similar meaning.

In virtūte multī sunt adscēnsūs, ut is māximē gloriā excellat, quī virtüte plürimum praestet, C., Planc., 25, 60; in virtue there are many degrees, so that he excels most in glory who is most advanced in virtue, Neque mē vixisse paenitet quoniam ita vīxī ut non frūstrā mē nātum existumem, C., Cat. M., 23, 84 (540). Tanta vis probitātis est, ut eam in hoste etiam dīligāmus, C., Lael., 9, 29; so great is the virtue of uprightness, that we love it even in an enemy. Non is es ut te pudor umquam a turpitūdine revocārit, C., Cat., 1. 9, 22; you are not the man for shame ever to have recalled you (= ever to have been recalled by shame) from baseness. Nēmo adeo ferus est ut non mītēscere possit, H., Ep., I. 1, 39; no one is so savage that he cannot (be made to) soften. Nil tam difficile est quin quaerendo investigari possiet, Ter., Heaut., 675; naught is so hard but it can (= that it cannot) be tracked out by search. Numquam tam male est Siculis quin aliquid facete et commode dicant, C., Verr., IV. 43, 95; the Sicilians are never so badly off as not to (have) something or other clever and pat (to) say.

Remarks.—I. Notice especially the impersonal tantum abest, āfuit (rarely aberat)—ut—ut. The phrase originates with an abstract Abl. dependent on a personal absum, which abstract Abl. is afterward expanded into a consecutive clause with ut.

[Āgēsilāus] tantum āfuit ab īnsolentiā glöriae ut commiserātus sit fortūnam Graeciae, Nep., xvii. 5, 2; Agesilaus was so far from the insolence of glory that he pitied the (mis)fortune of Greece. Tantum abest ab eō ut malum mors sit ut verear nō hominī sit nihil bonum aliud, C., Tuse., I. 31, 76; so far is it from death (= so far is death from) being an evil that I fear man has no other blessing. Tantum āfuit, ut illörum praesidiō nostram fīrmārēmus clāssem, ut etiam ā Rhodiīs urbe prohibērentur nostrī mīlitēs, Lentulus [C., Fam., xii. 15, 2]; so far were we from strengthening our fleet by reinforcements from them that our soldiers were actually kept away from the city by the Rhodians. Tantum abest ut nostra mīrēmur ut ūsque eō difficilēs sīmus ut nōbīs nōn satisfaciat ipso Dēmosthenēs, C., Or., 29, 104; so far are we from admirung our own (compositions) that we are so hard to please that Demosthenes himself fails to satisfy us.

The personal construction is extremely rare.

The second ut may be omitted, and a declarative sentence follow asyndetically: Tantum aberat ut binos (libros) scriberent: vix singulos confecorunt, C., Att., XIII. 21, 5; so far were they from writing two copies of each book, it was with difficulty they finished up one.

Dignus, worthy, indignus, unworthy, aptus, idoneus, fit, take a consecutive sentence with qui. Occasionally in early, more often in later

Latin, dignus and indignus take ut. In poetry all these words are found sometimes with the Infinitive.

Qui modeste paret, videtur qui aliquando imperet dignus esse, C., Leg., III. 2, 5; he who obeys duly seems to be worthy to command some day.

3. While ita (sīc) is usually antecedent to a consecutive ut, it may also be antecedent to a final ut or no when the design or wish intrudes. Ita mo gessī no tibi pudorī essem, L., xl. 15, 6; I behaved myself so as not to be a disgrace to you.

So not unfrequently when a restriction or condition is intended:

Ita probanda est mānsuētūdō ut adhibeātur reī pūblicae causā sevēritās, C., Off., I. 25, 88; mildness is to be approved, so that (provided that) strictness be used for the sake of the commonwealth. Ita fruī volunt voluptātībus ut nūllī propter eās cōnsequantur dolōrēs, C., Fin., I. 14, 48; they wish to enjoy pleasures without having any pain to ensue on account of them. [Pēthagorās et Platō] mortem ita laudant ut fugere vītam vetent, C., Scaur., 4, 5; Pythagoras and Plato so praise death, that they (while they praise death) forbid fleeing from life. Ita tū istaec tua mīscētō nē mē admīsceās, Ter., Heaut., 783; mix up your mixings so you mix me not withal. Tantum ā vāllō [Pompēī] prīma aciēs aberat, utī nē tēlō adicī posset, Caes., B.C., III. 55.

Ut alone may also be used thus: Rex esse nolim ut esse crudelis velim, Syr., 577; king I would not be, if I must school myself to cruelty.

4. Ut non is often = without, and the English verbal in -ing:

(Octāviānus) numquam fīliōs suōs populō commendāvit ut nōn adiceret: sī merēbuntur, Suet., Aug., 56; Octavianus (Augustus) never recommended his sons to the people in such a way as not to add (= without adding): if they are worthy. Quī nē malum habeat abstinet sē ab iniūriā certē mālet existimārī bonus vir ut nōn sit quam esse ut nōn putētur, C., Fin., 11. 22, 71; he who, to avoid misfortune, abstains from injury, will certainly prefer being thought a good man without being such, to being (a good man) without being believed (to be such).

## II. Complementary Consecutive Sentences.

## A. Verbs of Effecting.

553. Verbs of Effecting belong partly to the Consecutive, partly to the Final Sentence. The negative is non or ne; the sequence, final or consecutive.

Such verbs are:

r. Verbs of Causation: facere, efficere, perficere, I make, effect, achieve; assequi, consequi, I attain, accomplish, and many others (sequence, final).

The following are cited as more or less common in Cicero: proficere,

impetrāre, valēre, committere, tenēre, adipīscī, praestāre, ferre (in phrases consuētūdo, nātūra, fortūna fert), adferre, adiuvāre, expūgnāre, extorquēre, exprimere, and a few others.

Efficiam ut intellegātis, C., Cluent., 3, 7; I will cause you to understand. Sed perfice, ut Crassus haec quae coartāvit nōbīs explicet, C., Or., 1. 35, 163; but bring it about that Crassus (make Crassus) unfold to us what he has condensed. Non committam ut causam aliquam tibī recūsandī dem, C., Or., 11. 57, 233; I shall not make the blunder of giving you an excuse for refusing.

## Negatives:

Rērum obscūritās non verborum facit ut non intellegātur orātio, C., Fin., II. 5, 15; it is the obscurity of the subject, not of the words, that causes the language not to be understood. Potestis efficere ut male moriar, ut non moriar non potestis, PLIN., Ep., III. 16, 11; you may make me die a hard death, keep me from dying you cannot. Efficiam posthāc no quemquam voce lacessās, V., Ec., 3, 51; I will bring it about that you challenge no one hereafter in song.

Facere ut is often little more than a periphrasis; especially in the forms fac ut and faxō, faxit (both peculiar to Comedy).

Fortuna vestra facit ut Irae meae temperem, L., XXXVI. 35, 3; your fortune causes that  $I(makes\ me)$  restrain my anger (put metes to my anger). InvItus (325, R. 6) facio ut recorder ruInās reI pūblicae, C., Vat., 9, 21; (it is) against my will that I (am doing so as to) recall the ruined condition of the commonwealth.

# 2. Verbs of Compelling and Permitting (sequence, final):

Cogere, adigere, impellere, ducere, with its compounds, movere, commovere, to which must be added exorere, to force by pleading. Permittere, sinere, concedere, dare, (non) pati, and less often largiri, tribuere, ferre.

Tenēmus memoriā Catulum esse coāctum ut vītā sē ipse prīvāret, C., Or., 111. 3, 9; we remember that Catulus was forced to take his own life. Illud nātūra non patitur, ut aliorum spolis nostrās copiās augeāmus, C., Off., 111. 5, 22; nature does not allow us to increase our wealth by the spoils of others. Collēgam perpulerat nē contrā rem pūblicam sentīret, S., C., 26, 4; he had prevailed upon his colleague, not to take sides against the commonwealth.

Note.—Cogere has usually the Inf. (423, 2, N. 2), also sincre (423, N. 6) pati. On permittere, see 532, N. 1. Cogere in the sense conclude is a verb of Saying (546, R. 1). Facere and efficere, in the sense cause, are very rarely used with the Infinitive. Compare C. Br., 38, 142, (actio) tales oratores videri facit, quales ipsi se videri volunt. This becomes more common in very late Latin.

3. Passive verbs of Causation, and their equivalents,

namely, many Impersonal Verbs of Happening and Following, of Accident and Consequent (sequence, consecutive).

Such verbs are confici, effici, fit, accidit, contingit, obtingit, evenit, it happens, usu venit, it occurs, sequitur, it follows, and many others. So also est, it is the case. For the sequence, see also 513, R. 2.

Ex quō efficitur, non ut voluptās no (the design of the arguer) sit voluptās, sed ut voluptās non (the result of the argument) sit summum bonum, C., Fin., 11. 8, 24; from which it results, not that pleasure is not pleasure, but that pleasure is not the supreme good. Potest fierī ut fallar, C., Fam., XIII. 73, 2; (it) may be (that) I am mistaken. Potest fierī ut is unde tō audīsse dīcis īrātus dīxerit, C., Or., 11. 70, 285; (it) may be (that) he from whom you say you heard (it) said it in anger. Persaepe ēvenit ut ūtilitās cum honestāte certet, C., Part. Or., 25, 89; it very often (so) happens that profit is at variance with honor.

Note.—Noteworthy is the early Latin use of (fieri) potis ut  $n\bar{e}$ , as in fieri potis est ut  $n\bar{e}$  qua exeat, Ter., Ad., 626.

4. Very many impersonal verbs and combinations of neuter adjectives with **est**, after the analogy of the impersonals just mentioned (sequence, consecutive).

Such are: additur, accēdit, it is added; restat, reliquom est, it remains; appāret, it is plain. Enumerations, as, proximum, tertium, extrēmum est; inūsitātum, rārum est, it rarely happens that; novom, singulāre, mīrum, inaudītum, vērum, falsum, (nōn) vērīsimile, cōnsequēns, etc. Also rarely, interest, necesse est, necessārium est, and the like.

Ad Appi Claudi senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset, C., Cat.M., 6, 16; to the old age of Appius Claudius was further added his being blind. Ei no integrum quidem erat ut ad iūstitiam remigrāret, C., Tusc., v. 21, 62; for him it was not even an open question to go back to justice. Rārum (= rārō accidit) ut sit idōneus suae reī quisque dēfēnsor, Quint., IV. I, 46; it is rare for a man to be a good defender of his own case.

Remarks.—1. Necesse est, it is necessary, generally, and oportet, it behooves, always omit ut:

[Leuctrica pūgna] immortālis sit necesse est, Nep., XV. 10, 2; the battle of Leuctra must needs be immortal. Sed non effugies; mēcum moriāris oportet, Prop., II. 8, 25; but you shall not escape; you must die with me.

- 2. The neuter adjectives are rarely used with ut until the post-classical period and are far more commonly construed with the Infinitive.
- 3. Very common is the periphrasis fore (futurum) ut, which gives the common form of the Fut. Infinitive. See 248.

## B. Verbs of Hindering.

**554.** Quin is used like quōminus, with Verbs of Preventing, Refusing, etc., but only when they are negatived or questioned.

Notes.—1. Quin is compounded of qui—an interrogative-relative Ablative or Locative—and ne (non). Its first use is interrogative: "why not" in an indignant question; almost equivalent to an indignant Imperative, with which, through the fading out of its composition, it is occasionally connected, especially in early and later Latin, rarely in Cicero (269).

2. An indignant question (How not? Why not?) objects to opposition, and is therefore naturally construed with the negative of a verb of Hindering. Hence quin, as an interrogative (How not?), takes the sequence of the Interrogative Sentence. But this shows itself only after words of doubt; after verbs of Preventing the sequence coincides with that of the Final Sentence, and after other negative sentences the sequence coincides with that of the Consecutive Sentence.

3. By its combination with verbs of Preventing,  $\mathbf{quin}$  came to be felt as a consecutive particle =  $\mathbf{ut}$   $\mathbf{n\bar{o}n}$ , and was then used in other consecutive connections for  $\mathbf{ut}$   $\mathbf{n\bar{o}n}$ .

- 555. Quin is used when Verbs and Phrases of Preventing, Omitting, Refraining, Refusing, and Delaying, Doubt, and Uncertainty, are negatived or questioned.
- 1. Verbs of Preventing and the like (sequence of the Final Sentence).

Vix nunc obsistitur illis quin lanient mundum, Ov., M., 1.58; they are now hardly to be kept (that they should not rend) from rending the universe. Antiochus non so tenuit quin contră suum doctorem librum oderet, C., Ac., II. 4, 12; Antiochus did not refrain from publishing a book against his teacher. Vix reprimor quin to manore iubeam, Pl., M.G., 1368; I am scarcely kept back (keep myself back) from bidding you remain. Neque mo Iuppiter [prohibobit] quin sic faciam uti constitui, Pl., A.n., 1051; nor will Jupiter prevent me from doing just as I determined to do.

REMARK.—The list of verbs is given in 548, N. 1.

2. Verbs of Doubt and Uncertainty (sequence of the Interrogative Sentence).

Non dubium est quin uxorem nolit filius, Ter., And., 172; there is no doubt that (my) son does not want a wife. Quis dubitet (= nemo dubitet) quin in virtute divitiae sint? C., Parad., vi. 2, 48 (259). Non dubitari debet quin fuerint ante Homerum poetae, C., Br., 18, 71; it is not to be doubted that there were poets before Homer. Nunc mihi non est dubium quin venturae non sint (legiones), C., Fam., 11. 17, 5 (515).

Occasionally verbs of Saying and Thinking are found with the same construction, because they are near equivalents.

Negări non potest quin rectius sit etiam ad pācātōs barbarōs exercitum mitti, Cf. L., XL. 36, 2; it cannot be denied (doubted) that it is better for an army to be sent to the barbarians even though they be quiet. Non abest sūspīciō (Lītotēs [700] for dubitārī non potest) quin (Orgetorīx) ipse sibĭ mortem consciverit, Caes., B.G., 1.4.4; there is no lack of ground to suspect (= there is no doubt that) Orgetorix killed himself.

REMARKS.—I. The principal gain of the interrogative sequence is that the Periphrastic Fut. may be employed (of which, however, the first example is cited from CICERO), but according to 515, R. 3, non dubito quin may have the simple Subjv. instead of the Periphrastic:

Non dubitare quin do omnibus obsidibus supplicium sumat (Ariovistus), CAES., B.G., I. 3I,15; "he did not doubt that Ariovistus would put all the hostages to death." Compare CAT., CVIII. 3.

So when there is an original Subjv. notion:

Non dubito quin ad to statim veniam, C., Att., VIII. IIB, 3; I do not doubt that I ought to come to you forthwith. (Veniam? Shall I come?)

2. Of course dubito and non dubito may have the ordinary interrogative constructions (467). On dubito an, see 457, 2.

3. Non dubito, with the Inf., usually means I do not hesitate to: Non dubitem dicere omnes sapientes semper esse beatos, C., Fin., v. 32, 95; I should not hesitate to say that all wise men are always happy. Et dubitāmus adhūc virtūtem extendere factīs? V., A., v1. 806; and do we still hesitate to spread our (fame for) valor by our deeds? Compare vereor, timeo, I fear, hesitate to (550, 2, N. 5).

So occasionally non dubito quin. See R. I.

(Rōmānī) arbitrābantur non dubitātūrum fortem virum quIn cēderet aequō animō lēgibus, C., Mil., 23, 63; the Romans thought that a brave man would not hesitate to yield with equanimity to the laws.

Note.—Non dubito with the Inf. for non dubito quin occurs chiefly in Nepos, Lrvy, and later writers.

Sunt multī quī quae turpia esse dubitāre non possunt ūtilitātis speciē ductī probent, Quint., 111. 8, 3; there are many who, led on by the appearance of profit, approve what they cannot doubt to be base.

556. Quin, equivalent to ut non, may be used after any negative sentence (sequence of the Consecutive Sentence). Here it may often be translated "without."

Nil tam difficile est quin quaerendo investigari possiet, Ter., Heaut., 675 (552). Nüllum adhüc intermisi diem quin aliquid ad te litterarum darem, C., Att., vii. 15, 1; I have thus far not allowed a day to pass but I dropped you (without dropping you) something of a letter (a line or two).

Note the combination (facere) non possum quin, I cannot but, and similar combinations; non possum non with Inf. is also classical.

Facere non possum quin cottidie ad të mittam (litterës), C., All., XII. 27, 2; I cannot do without (I cannot help) sending a letter to you daily. Non possum quin exclamem, Pl., Trin., 705; I cannot but (I must) ery out. (Nüllö modo facere possum ut non sim populäris, C., Agr., II. 3, 7 (reading doubtful); I cannot help being a man of the people.)

Nihil abest quin sim miserrimus, C., Att., XI. 15, 3; there is nothing wanting that I should be (= to make me) perfectly miserable. Fieri nüllö modö poterat quin Cleomeni parcerëtur, C., Verr., V. 40, 104; it could in nowise happen but that Cleomenes should be spared (= Cleomenes had to be spared). Paulum äfuit quin (Fabius) Vārum interficeret, CAES., B.C., II. 35, 2; there was little lucking but Fabius (had) killed Varus (= Fabius came near killing Varus).

### Explanatory Ut.

557. A Consecutive Sentence with ut is often used to give the contents or character of a preceding substantive, adjective, or pronoun.

Est mos hominum ut nollint eundem plūribus rēbus excellere, C., Br., 21, 84 (546, R. I). An quoiquamst ūsus hominī sē ut cruciet? Ter., Heaut., 81 (406, N. 5). Est miserorum ut malevolentēs sint atque invideant bonīs, Pl., Capt., 583; the wretched have a way of being ill-natured and envying the well-to-do. Nec meum ad tē ut mittam grātīs, Pl., Asin., 190; nor is it my style to let her go to you as a gracious gift. Id est proprium cīvitātīs ut sit lībera, C., Off., 11. 22, 78; it is the peculiar privilege of a state, to be free. Illud ipsum habet consul ut of reliquī magistrātūs pāreant, C., Leg., 111. 7, 16; the consul has this very prerogative, that the other magistrates be obedient unto him. Tōtum in eō est, ut tibī imperēs, C., Tusc., 11. 22, 53; all depends upon this (one thing), your self-command.

Remark.—These are principally mos, consustudo, habit, wont; opus, usus, need; many substantives of opinion and perception, as opinio, sententia, cogitatio, mens, sapientia, scientia, cognitio; natura, genus, status, and others, usually with a demonstrative attached; adjectives indicating possession: meum, tuom, suom (all mainly ante-class.), proprium, commune, praecipuum (Livy), and predicate Genitives with osco: id, hoc, illud, etc. These should be distinguished from final usages.

Notes.—1. Tendency and Character lend themselves readily to circumlocution, and ut with Subjy. becomes a manner of equivalent to the Inf., which, however, is by far the more common construction.

2. To the same principle is to be referred the use of ut after māior (magis) quam, non aliter quam (without), first in Lavy; after nisi (591, b, R. 3). See 298.

Praeceptum māius erat quam ut ab homino vidērētur, C., Fin., v. 16, 44 (503).

### Exclamatory Questions.

558. Ut with the Subjunctive is used in Exclamatory Questions, usually with the insertion of -ne.

Egone ut të interpellem? C., Tusc., II. 18, 42; I interrupt you? Tu ut umquam të corrigës? C., Cat., I. 9, 22; you—ever reform yourself? Di mägni, ut qui civem Römänum occidisset, impünitätem acciperet, Sen., Ben., v. 16, 3; Great Gods! that one who had slain a Roman citizen, should escape unpunished!

Note.—The expression is closely perallel with the Acc. and Infinitive. The one objects to the idea; the other, to any state of things that could produce the result. In neither case is there any definite or conscious ellipsis. Compare Teb., Hec., 589, with 613.

## TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

559. The action of the Temporal or Dependent clause may stand to the action of the Principal clause in one of three relations:

I. It may be antecedent.

Conjunctions: Postquam (Posteā quam, not ante-class.), after that, after; ut, as; ubi, when (literally, where); simulāc, as soon as; ut primum, cum prīmum, the first moment that.

II. It may be contemporaneous.

Conjunctions: Dum, dönec, while, until; quoad, up to (the time) that; quamdiü, as long as; cum, when.

III. It may be subsequent.

CONJUNCTIONS: Antequam, priusquam, before that, before.

A special chapter is required by

IV. Cum (quom), when.

## MOODS IN TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

- 560. 1. The mood of Temporal clauses is regularly the Indicative.
  - 2. The Subjunctive is used only:
- (1) In **Ōrātiō Obliqua** (508), Total or Partial. So also in the Ideal Second Person.
  - (2) When the idea of Design or Condition is introduced.

### I. ANTECEDENT ACTION.

561. In historical narrative, Temporal Clauses with post-quam (posteāquam), ubi, ut, simulāc, ut prīmum, and cum prīmum commonly take the Historical Perfect or the Historical Present Indicative.

The English translation is not unfrequently the Pluperfect.

Postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs popōscit, Caes., B.G., 1. 27, 3; after Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages. Quae ubi nūntiantur Rōmam, senātus extemplō dictātōrem dīcī iūssit, L., Iv. 56, 8; when these tidings were carried to Rome, the senate forthwith ordered a dictator to be appointed. Pompēius ut equitātum suum pulsum vīdit, aciē excēssit, Caes., B.C., III. 94, 5; as Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the line of battle. (Pelopidās) nōn dubitāvit, simul āc cōnspexit hostem, cōnflīgere (555, 2, R. 3), Nep., xvi. 5, 3; as soon as he (had) caught sight of the enemy, Pelopidas did not hesitate to engage (him).

# Subjunctive in Orātio Obliqua.

Ariovistum, ut semel Gallorum copias vicerit (0. R. vicit), superbe imperare, Caes., B.G., 1. 31, 12; "that Ariovistus, as soon as he had once beaten the forces of the Gauls, exercised his rule arrogantly."

**562.** The Imperfect is used to express an action continued into the time of the principal clause (overlapping).

The translation often indicates the spectator (233, N. 1).

Tū postquam qui tibi erant amici non poterant vincere, ut amici tibi essent qui vincebant effecisti, C., Quinct., 22, 70; after (you saw) that those who were friendly to you could not be victorious you managed that those should be friendly to you who were going to be victorious. Ubi nomo obvius ibat, ad eastra hostium tendunt, L., IX 45, 14; when (they saw that) no one was coming to meet them, they proceeded to the camp of the enemy.

# Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

Scripsisti (eum) posteāquam non audēret (Ō. R. non audēbat) reprehendere, laudāre coepisse, C., Att., 1. 13, 4; you wrote that, after he could not get up the courage to blame, he began to praise.

563. r. The Pluperfect is used to express an action completed before the time of the principal clause; often of the Resulting Condition.

Albinus postquam döcröverat nön ögredi prövinciä, militös statīvis castris habēbat, S., Iug., 44, 4; after Albinus had fully determined not to depart

from the province, he kept his soldiers in cantonments. Posteāquam multitūdinem collēgerat emblēmatum, instituit officinam, C., Verr., IV. 24, 54; after he had got together a great number of figures, he set up shop.

2. The Pluperfect is used with postquam when a definite interval is mentioned. Rarely also the Historical Perfect (Aorist).

**Post** and **quam** are often separated. With an Ablative of Measure, **post** may be omitted; with a relative both **post** (ante) and **quam** (403, N.4, d).

(Aristīdēs) dēcēssit ferē post annum quārtum quam Themistoclēs Athēnīs erat expulsus, NEP., III. 3, 3; Aristides died about four years after Themistocles had been (was) banished from Athens. Post diem tertium gesta rēs est quam dīxerat, C., Mil., 16, 44; the matter was accomplished three days after he had said it would be. [Hamilear] nōnō annō postquam in Hispāniam vēnerat occīsus est, NEP., XXII. 4, 2; Hamilear was killed nine years after he came to Spain. (Aristīdēs) sextō ferē annō quam erat expulsus in patriam restitūtus est, NEP., III. 1, 5; Aristides was restored to his country about six years after he was exiled. Trīduō ferē postquam Hannibal ā rīpā Rhodanī mōvit, ad castra hostium vēnerat, L., XXI. 32, 1; (within) about three days after Hannibal moved from the banks of the Rhone he had come to the camp of the enemy.

# Subjunctive in Orātio Obliqua.

Scriptum ā Posidōniō est trīgintā annis vīxisse Panaetium posteāquam librōs [dē officiīs] ēdidisset, C., Off., 111. 2, 8; it is recorded by Posidonius that Panaetius lived thirty years after he put forth his books on Duties.

The attraction is sometimes neglected.

Notes.—1. The most common of these conjunctions is **postquam**, but the others also occur at all periods. **Simul** (atque) is rare in early Latin. In the following notes the usage in Iterative action is excluded.

2. The Impf. with postquam is cited but once from early Latin (Pl., Most., 640), it becomes more common in Cicero, but is distinctive of Livy, who shows nearly one hundred examples. The Impf. with ubi is cited once in early Latin (Ter., Emn., 405), where, however, it is Iterative, not at all from Cicero, once from Caesar, after which it is found more frequently, but never becomes common. The Impf. with ut is found first in Cicero, never in Caesar, Sallust, Vergil, but not uncommonly in Livy; only once in Tactus (H., III. 31), where it is Iterative. The Impf. with simul (atque) is not cited from Cicero and Caesar, but appears once in Sallust, where it is Iterative; it is very rare.

3. The Plupf. with **postquam** is not cited from Plautus or Horace, and but once from Terence (And. 177); Cloero uses it but rarely, Caesar but once (B.C., III. 58, 5); Livy uses it often, and Tacitus is fond of it. The Plupf. with **ub**i is found once in Plautus, twice each in Cicero and Caesar, and then more frequently. The Plupf. with **ut** (**prīmum**) is found first in Cicero, perhaps but once in Caesar (B.C., III. 63, 6), more often later. The Plupf. with **simul** (atque) is cited once from Cicero, not at all from Caesar, and rarely later.

4. Some dozen cases are cited, principally from Cicero, of the Subjv. with post-

quam not in  $\vec{0}$ .O. Most of these are disputed. If the Subjv. is to remain in these passages it is to be explained as due either to Partial Obliquity or to the intrusion of the cum Subjv. into other temporal constructions. The Subjv. appears in late Latin.

5. The Subjv. with ubi occurs occasionally in early Latin, but only once in Cicero, not unfrequently in Livy and Tacitus. This is usually explained as either the Iterative or Potential Subjunctive. The Subjv. with ut is post-classical, and the Subjv. with simul does not occur.

**564.** Postquam and the like, with the Present and Perfect Indicative, assume a causative signification (compare quoniam, now that = since).

[Cūria] minor mihī vidētur posteāquam est māior, C., Fin., v. 1, 2; the senate-house seems to me smaller now that it is (really) greater. Tremō horreōque postquam aspexī hanc, Ter., Eun., S4; I quiver and shiver since I have seen her.

Notes.—1. The use of temporal conjunctions, especially postquam in the Present Sphere, is much more common in early Latin than later. Ubi and ut occur at all periods, but rarely; ubi has almost the same force as sī; ut means ex quō, since. Simul is rare, and found first in Lucretius.

2. Cum, also, has sometimes the causal signification.

Grātulor tibǐ cum tantum valēs, C., Fam., 1X. 14, 3; I wish you joy now that you have so much influence.

565. Ubi and simul are occasionally found with the Future and Future Perfect; not so postquam and ut.

UbI me aspiciet ad carnuficem rapiet continuo, Pl., B., 689; as soon as he shall catch (catches) sight of me he will hurry me at once to the hangman. Id tibi quidem herele fiet, Demaenetum simulae conspexero, Pl., Asin., 477; that indeed shall certainly be your fate, as soon as I shall have espied Demaenetus.

Note.—When thus used **ubi** and **simul** approach almost the meaning of **cum** (580). So also **quandō**; see 580, N. 3. These uses should be distinguished from those of Iterative Action.

#### Iterative Action.

**566.** Rule I.—When two actions are repeated contemporaneously, both are put in tenses of continuance.

Humilös labörant ubi potentös dissident, Phaed., i. 30, 1; the lowly suffer when the powerful disagree. Populus mö sibilat; at mihi plaudö ipse domi simul äc nummös contemplor in arcä, II., S., i. i, 66; the people hiss me; but I clap myself at home as soon as I gloat o'er my cash in the strong box. Ubi frümentö opus erat, cohortës praesidium agitäbant, S., Iug., 55, 4; when there was need of corn, the cohorts would serve as an escort.

The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person.

Bonus segnior fit ubi neglegas, S., Iug., 31, 28; a good man becomes more spiritless when you neglect him.

567. Rule II.—When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect; the subsequent action in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation.

As this use runs through all sentences involving antecedent action, all the classes are represented in the following examples.

Observe the greater exactness of the Latin expression. Compare 244, R. 2.

Quotiens cecidit, surgit, As often as he falls, he rises.

Quotiens ceciderat, surgebat, As often as he fell, he rose.

Quotiens ceciderit, surget, As often as he falls, he will rise.

Simul înflavit tibicen a perito carmen agnoscitur, C., Ac., II. 27, 86; as soon as the fluter blows, the song is recognized by the connoisseur. [Alcibiadēs] simul āc sē remīserat, lūxuriosus reperiēbātur, NEP., VII. I. 4; as soon as Alcibiades relaxed, he was found a debauchee. Dociliora sunt ingenia priusquam obdūruērunt, Quint., I. 12, 9; minds are more teachable before they (have) become hardened. [Ager] cum multos annos quievit, überiöres efferre früges solet, C., Br., 4, 16; when a field has rested (rests) many years, it usually produces a more abundant crop. Cum pālam ēius ānulī ad palmam converterat (Gygēs) ā nūllō vidēbātur, C., Off., III. 9, 38; when(ever) Gyges turned the bezel of the ring toward the palm (of his hand), he was to be seen by no one. Si pes condoluit, si dens, ferre non possumus, C., Tusc., II, 22, 52; if a foot, if a looth ache(s), we cannot endure it. Stomachābātur senex, sī guid asperius dīxeram, C., N.D., I. 33. 93; the old man used to be fretted, if I said anything (that was) rather harsh. Quos laborantes conspexerat, his subsidia submittebat, CAES., B.G., IV. 26, 4; to those whom he saw (had espied) hard pressed he would send reinforcements. Haerebant in memoria quaecumque audierat et viderat (Themistocles), C., Ac., 11. 1, 2; whatever Themistocles had heard and seen (= heard and saw) remained fixed in his memory. Qui timere desierint, ödisse incipient, TAC., Agr., 32; those who cease to fear will begin to hate.

The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person.

Ubi consuluers, mature facto opus est, S., C., 1, 6; when you have deliberated, you want speedy action.

The Subjunctive in Orātio Oblīqua.

[Cato] mīrārī sē āiēbat quod non rīdēret haruspex haruspicem cum vīdis-

set, C., Div., II. 24, 51; Cato said that he wondered that an haruspex did not laugh when he saw (another) haruspex. (Non ridet cum vidit.)

The Subjunctive by Attraction.

[Arāneolae] rēte texunt ut sī quid inhaeserit cōnficiant, C., N.D., II. 48, 123; spiders weave webs to despatch anything that gets caught (sī quid inhaesit, cōnficiunt). Quārē fīēbat, ut omnium oculōs, quotiēscunque in pūblicum prōdīsset, ad sē converteret, NEP., VII. 3, 5; whereby it happened that he attracted the eyes of all every time he went out in public (quotiēscunque prōdierat, convertēbat).

Note.—The Subjunctive in Iterative Tenses may be accounted for on the principle that a repeated action which is retrospective from the point of view of the narrator, and so naturally takes the Indicative, becomes prospective from the point of view of the agent, and so takes the Subjunctive. But, however the construction is justified, the fact remains that the Subjunctive in Iterative Sentences is a growth in Latin. With the principal tenses it is confined mostly to the Ideal Second Person. Indefinite quis is very near to this. So Cicero, Rab. Post., 13, 36: ubi semel quis pēlerāverit—oportet, With Impf. and Plupf. the first examples (excluding cum) are in Catullus (lexitut, 1), and Caesar (e.g. B.C., II. 15, 3). Then it spreads, probably under Greek influence, and is very common in the historians, especially Livy and Tacitus. Ubi and ut are the particles employed; also very often sī and relatives, in general quīcumque, quotiēns, etc. With cum, Iterative Subjunctives are found to a limited extent also in Cicero and Caesar; but all cases of principal tenses in third person have been emended, and those with historical tenses are not common, and sometimes doubtful.

Cum ferrum sẽ Inflexisset, neque ëvellere neque pügnāre poterant (= vidēbant sẽ non posse), Caes., B.G., 1.25, 3; when the iron had bent, they found that they could neither pluck it out nor fight. Incurrere ea gēns in Macedoniam solita erat (as if constituerat) ubi rēgem occupātum externō bellō sēnsisset, L., xxvi. 25, 7; that tribe was wont to make a raid on Macedonia whenever they perceived the king engrossed in foreign war. Quī ünum čius ōrdinis offendisset omnēs adversōs habēbat (as if certō sciēbat sẽ habitūrum), L., xxxui. 46, 1; whose had offended one of that order was sure to have all against him. Modum adhibendō ubi rēs pōsceret, priōrēs erant, L., III. 19, 3; by the use of moderation, when the case demanded it, they were his superiors.

### II. CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION.

568. Conjunctions used of Contemporaneous Action are:
Dum, donec, while, so long as, until; quoad, up to (the time) that; quamdiu, as long as; cum, when.

An action may be contemporaneous in Extent—so long as, while.

An action may be contemporaneous in Limit—until.

Remark.—Dum, (while) yet, denotes duration, which may be eoëxtensive, so long as, or not. It is often causal. Donec (old form donicum, used only in the sense until), is parallel with dum in the sense so long as, until. Cicero uses it only as until.

## 1. Contemporaneous in Extent.

(So long as, while.)

569. Complete Coextension.—Dum, donec, quoad, quamdiu, so long as, while, take the Indicative of all the tenses.

Vita dum superest, bene est, Maecenas (Sen., E.M., 101, 11); while (so long as) life remains, 'tis well. Sibi vērō hanc laudem relinquont, "Vixit, dum vīxit, bene," Ter., Hec., 461; they leave indeed this proise for themselves, "He lived well while he lived" (all the time). Tiberius Gracchus tam diū laudābitur dum memoria rērum Rōmānārum manēbit, C.. Off., 11. 12, 43; Tiberius Gracchus shall be praised so long as the memory of Roman history remains (shall remain). Fuit haec gēns fortis dum Lycūrgī lēgēs vigēbant, C., Tuse., 1. 42, 101; this nation was brave so long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force. Dōnec grātus eram tibī, Persārum viguī rēge beātior, H., O., 111. 9, 1; while I was pleasing in your sight, I throve more blessed than Persia's king. Quoad potuit, restitit, Caes., B.G., IV. 12, 5; as long as he could, he withstood.

# Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

(Rēgulus dīxit) quam diā iāre iārandō hostium tenērētur nōn esse sē senātorem, C., Off., III. 27, 100; [Regulus said] that as long as he was bound by his oath to the enemy he was not a senator. (Quamdiā teneor nōn sum senātor.)

Subjunctive by Attraction.

Faciam ut mei memineris dum vitam vivās, Pl., Pers., 494 (333, 2).

Notes.—1. Dum.—In the Past Sphere we have the Pf. (Aor.), Hist. Pr., and Imperfect. Of these the Hist. Pr. is found first in Sallust (C., 36, 1), and the Impf., while occurring at all periods, is rare. The Pf. is not in Caesar. Dum in the Present Sphere is rare; the Pure Pr. has been observed in Pl., B., 737: mane dum scribit, which looks much like parataxis, and occasionally in Cicero and later; the Pure Pf. is cited only from Terence (And., 556, 597), and is only apparent. Several examples of the Future Sphere are cited, Pl., B., 225, non metuo mihi dum hoc valobit pectus; Ter., Heaut., 107; C., Rosc.Am., 32, 991; V., A., 1. 607, etc.

**Donec** is not found in the sense "so long as," until Laure., v. 178; then H., O., I. 9, 16; III, 9, 1. Also Ov., Tr., I. 9, 5. Livy uses it occasionally, but Tacitus affects it,

and employs Hist. Pf., Impf., and Fut. tenses.

Quoad (correlative with adeō) belongs especially to the classical poeòs, but is also found in prose. Compare C., Ph., III. 11, 28, etc. It is usually found in the Past Sphere; in the Present the adverbial force, "so far as," seems to preponderate; Pl., Asin., 296: quoad vīrēs valent. The Future tenses are more common.

Quamdiū (correlative with tamdiū) is found with this usage first in CICERO.

2. When the actions are coëxtensive, the tenses are generally the same in both members, but not always.

570. Partial Coextension .- Dum, while, while yet, dur-

ing, commonly takes the Present Indicative after all Tenses: so especially in narrative.

Cape hunc equum, dum tibă virium aliquid superest, L., XXII. 49, 7; take this horse, while you have yet some strength left. Dum haec Romae aguntur, consules ambo in Liguribus gerebant bellum, L., XXXIX. 1, 1; while these things were going on at Rome, both consuls were carrying on war in Liguria. Praetermissa eius rei occāsio est, dum in castellis recipiendis tempus teritur, L., XXXIII. 18, 20; the opportunity was allowed to slip by, while time was wasted in recovering miserable forts.

Dum in this sense often resists the change into Subjv. in  $\vec{0}$ , 0., especially in post-classical Latin. (655, R. 3.)

Notes.—1. Quamdiū and quoad are, by their composition, incapable of being used in this sense, and as donec was avoided, dum is the only temporal conjunction of limit that is loose enough in its formation to serve for partial coextension. The Pr. after it, formally an Hist. Pr., always connotes continuance, and the construction becomes practically a periphrasis for a missing Pr. participle.

2. The Pure Pr. of the Present Sphere is found occasionally, principally in early Latin. In this sense the relation is often causal, and the construction is parallel with

the Pr. participle, the lack of which in the passive it supplies.

Ardua dum metuunt (= metuentēs) āmittunt vēra viāī, Lucr., 1. 660 (372, N. 2). The causal relation is also often present with the other tenses.

Other tenses are extremely rare, as the Future; PL., Men., 214, dum coquëtur, interim pötābimus; the Impf., Nep., xxiii. 2, 4, quae dīvīna rēs dum conficiēbātur, quaesīvit ā mē.

4. Livy, xxxii. 24, 5, shows one case of the Plupf, as a shorthand to express the

maintenance of the result, dum averterat = dum aversos tenebat.

## 2. Contemporaneous in Limit.

(Until.)

571. Dum, donec, quoad, up to (the time) that, until, have the Present, Historical Present, Historical Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative.

Tityre, dum redeō, brevis est via, pāsce capellās, V., Ec., 9,23; Tityrus, while I am returning (= till I return)—the way is short—feed my kids. Epaminōndās ferrum in corpore ūsque eō retinuit, quoad renūntiātum est vīcisse Boeōtiōs, Cf. Nep., xv. 9,3; Epaminondas retained the iron in his body, until word was brought back that the Boeotians had conquered. Dōnec rediit Mārcellus, silentium fuit, I., xxiii. 31,9; until Marcellus returned, there was silence. Haud dēsinam dōnec perfēcerō hōc, Ter., Ph., 42c; I will not cease until I have (shall have) accomplished it. Exspectābō dum venit, Ter., Eun., 206; I will wait until he comes.

Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

Scipioni Silanoque donec revocati ab senatū forent prorogatum imperium

est, L., xxvii. 7, 17; Scipio and Silanus had their command extended until "they should have been recalled by the senate."

Notes.—1. With the Past Sphere the idea of limit precludes the employment of a tense of continuance, which would naturally involve the notion of Overlapping Action. The Impf. is, therefore, not found until the time of Tacttus (once with donec, II., 1.9). With the Present Sphere the tense must be iterative or historical. Otherwise the Pr. is used by anticipation for the Future.

- 2. The Fut. Indic. is found occasionally in early Latin, usually, however, the Present. In the classical times, and afterwards, the Subjv. takes its place. Thus CICERO uses the Subjv. regularly, after verba exspectandI, except in possibly four passages of the earlier Orations and Letters.
- 3. Donec is not uncommon in early Latin, but is very rare in Cicero, and never occurs in Caesar. On the other hand, Tacitus shows one hundred and thirty-eight cases of it.
- 4. **Dönicum** belongs to early Latin, but is not found in Terence; one case with the Subjv. is found in Nepos. **Dönique** is found in Lucrettus four times with the Indic., always before vowels; in Vitruvius once with Indic., three times with Subjv.; otherwise it is not cited.
- 5. Quoad, until, occurs once in Plautus, and with the Subjunctive. Otherwise it is found with both moods occasionally throughout the language.
- Livy introduces donec inversum like cum inversum (581). See xxi. 46, 6;
   xxxv. 50, 4, etc.
- **572.** Dum, donec, and quoad, until, take the Subjunctive when Suspense and Design are involved.

Verginius dum collēgam consuleret morātus (est), L., Iv. 21, 10; Verginius delayed until he could (long enough to) consult his colleague. At tantī tibi sit non indulgēre theātrīs, dum bene dē vacuo pectore cēdat amor, Ov., Rem.Am., 751; but let it be worth the cost to you (= deem it worth the cost) not to indulge in play-going, until love be fairly gone from (your) untenanted bosom.

Often with verba exspectandi, especially exspecto, I wait.

Rusticus exspectat dum defluat amnis, H., Ep., 1. 2, 42; the clown waits for the river to run off (dry).

REMARKS.--I. The Subjv. is sometimes used in narrative with dum, while, and donec, while, until, to express subordination. The principle is that of Partial Obliquity. There is often a Causal or Iterative sense (like cum, 584, R.).

Dum intentus in eum sē rēx tötus Everteret, alter ēlātam secūrim in caput dēiēcit, L., I. 40, 7; while the king, intent upon him, was turning quite away, the other raised his axe and planted it in his skull. (Āverteret from the point of view of alter = dum videt āvertentem.)

- 2. Verba exspectandi have also other constructions, as ut, si, quin, but not the Infinitive.
  - 573. Dum, modo, and dummodo, if only, provided only,

only, are used with the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, rarely the other tenses, in Conditional Wishes.

The negative is ne (dum ne = ne interim).

Öderint dum metuant, Accius (C., Off., i. 28, 97); let them hate sc long as they fear (provided that, if they will only fear). Quō lubeat nūbant, dum dōs nē fiat comes, Pl., Aul., 491; let them marry where (= whom) they please, if but the dowry do not go with them. Dummodō mōrāta rēctē veniat, dōtāta est satis, Pl., Aul., 239; provided only she come with a good character, she is endowed (= her dowry is) enough. In eō multa admīranda sunt: ēligere modo cūrae sit, Quint., x. i, 131; many things in him are to be admired; only you must be careful to choose. Cōpia plācandī sit modo parva tuī, Ov., Her., 20, 74 (428, R. 1).

Notes.—1. It has been noticed that Tacitus uses dummodo only in the Germania and Dialogus, otherwise dum.

2. Dummodo ne and modo ne are found first in Cicero. In post-Augustan Latin non is sometimes used for ne; Juv., vii. 222, dummodo non pereat.

### III. SUBSEQUENT ACTION.

Antequam and Priusquam with the Indicative.

574. Antequam and priusquam, before, take the Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, when the limit is stated as a fact. The Present is used in anticipation of the Future.

Remarks.—1. The elements ante, anteā, prius, and quam are often separated.

2. As prius (ante) -quam is negative in its signification (= necdum), the Indic is sometimes found where we should expect the Subjunctive.

Note.—Antequam is much rarer than priusquam, especially in early Latin, where it is cited only from Cato, Caelius, Terence (*Hec.*, 146, with Subjv. in  $\vec{0}$ . O.), and Varro. Cicero prefers it before a Pr. Indic., priusquam elsewhere.

575. The Present Indicative is used after positive sentences.

Antequam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca dīcam, C., Cat., IV. 10, 20; before I return to the subject, I will say a few things of myself. Omnia experiri certum est prius quam pereō, Ter., And., 311; I am determined to try everything before I perish. (Prius quam peream = sooner than perish, to keep from perishing.)

Notes.—1. The Pure Pf. Indic. is used of Iterative Action, and is rare. (567.) **Dociliora sunt ingenia priusquam obdūruērunt**, QUINT., I. 12, 9 (567). Instead of this, the Pr. Subjv. is more common in general statements. (567, N.) 2. Tacitus shows no example of the Pr. Indicative.

**576.** The Perfect (Aorist) and Future Perfect Indicative are used both after positive and after negative clauses, chiefly the latter.

Hēracliō, aliquantō ante quam est mortuus, omnia trādiderat, C., Verr., II. 18, 46; some time before he died he had handed over everything to Heraclius. Lēgātī nōn ante profectī quam impositōs in nāvēs mīlitēs vīdērunt, L., XXXIV. 12, 8; the envoys did not set out until they saw the soldiers on board. Neque dēfatīgābor ante quam illorum viās rationēsque et prō omnibus et contrā omnia disputandī percēperō, C., Or., III. 36, 145; I will not let myself grow weary before (until) I learn (shall have learned) their methods of disputing for and against everything.

# Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

Themistoclės [collègis suis] praedixit, ut në prius Lacedaemoniōrum lėgātōs dimitterent quam ipse esset remissus, NEP., II. 7, 3 (546, 2). (Nōn prius dimittėtis quam ego erō remissus.)

Remark.—After negative clauses containing a historical tense the Pf. is the rule and the connection is always close: non priusquam = dum. Violations of this rule are very rare; see 577, 2.

NOTES.—1. The Fut. is found occasionally in Plautus, but has disappeared by the time of Terence. The Fut. Pf. is never common, but is found at all periods. Tacitus avoids it, and so do other authors.

2. The Impf. is confined to Livy, who shows four examples, and to one case in late Latin. The Plupf. is found once in Cicero (Dom., 30, 78), where it may be Iterative, and once in early Latin. (Ter., Hec., 146).

# Antequam and Priusquam with the Subjunctive.

- 577. Antequam and priusquam are used with the Subjunctive when an ideal limit is given; when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or subordinate.
- 1. An ideal limit involves necessary antecedence, but not necessary subsequence. After positive sentences, the Subjunctive is the rule, especially in generic sentences and in narrative. (Compare cum, 585.) After Historical Tenses the Subjunctive is almost invariable when the action does not, or is not to, take place. The translation is often before, and the verbal in -ing (Greek  $\pi\rho\ell\nu$  with the Infinitive).

Ante vidēmus fulgērem quam sonum audiāmus, Sen., N.Q., II. 12, 6; we see the flush of lightning before hearing the sound (we may never hear it). But compare Luck., vi. 170. In omnibus negētis prius quam aggrediāre adhibenda est praeparātiō dīligēns, C., Off., I. 21, 73; in all affairs, before addressing yourself (to them), you must make use of careful preparation (Ideal Second Person). [Collem] celeriter priusquam ab

adversāriis sentiātur commūnit, CAES., B.C., I. 54, 4; he speedily fortified the hill before he was (too soon to be) perceived by the enemy (prius quam = prius quam ut). Hannibal omnia priusquam excēderet pūgnā (erat) expertus, L., XXX. 35, 4; Hannibal had tried everything before withdrawing from the fight (= to avoid withdrawing from the fight). Saepe māgna indolēs virtūtis priusquam reī pūblicae prōdesse potuisset exstincta est, C., Ph., v. 17, 47; often hath great native worth been extinguished before it could be of service to the State. Ducentīs annīs ante quam urbem Rōmam caperent in Ītaliam Gallī trānscendērunt, L., v. 33, 5; (it was) two hundred years before their taking Rome (that) the Gauls crossed into Italy (here the Subjv. gives the natural point of reference).

2. After an historical tense in the negative, the Subjunctive is exceptional. (576, R.)

Inde non prius egressus est quam (= ibi manebat dum) rex eum in fidem reciperet, Nep., II. 8, 4; he did not come out until the king should take him under his protection (he stayed to make the king take him under his protection). See Caes., B. G., vi. 37, 2; L., xiv. II, 3.

Notes.—1. The Pr. Subjv. is common, but is usually generic; the few cases of Final Subjv. are confined to early Latin. Very rarely the Hist. Pr. is found after a Hist. Present. See Caes., B. C., I. 22.

2. The Pf. occurs occasionally; it is usually in a final sense.

Non prius dimittunt quam ab his sit concessum, Caes., B. G., III. 18.

- 3. In Livy we find the Impf. Subjv. used not unfrequently, where the idea of suspense or design is very slight, much after the manner of **cum nondum** (as C., Ph., v. 1, 4).
- The Plupf. Subjv. is cited five times from CICERO and four times from LIVY. In these passages the completion rather than the continuance is in suspense.
- 5. Postrīdiēquam is found in Plautus, Cicero (Letters), and Suetonius with the Indicative. In Cicero, Ac., II. 3, 9, with the Subjunctive. Prīdiēquam is found in Plautus and Cicero with the Indicative; in Livy, Val. Max., and Suetonius with the Subjunctive. Both are very rare.
- 6. When the will is involved, potius quam is used in the same way as prius quam. Dēpūgnā potius quam serviās, C., Att. vii. 7, 7; fight it out rather than be a slave.

### IV. CONSTRUCTIONS OF CUM (QUOM),

# 578. Cum is a (locative) relative conjunction.

Note.—Originally locative (where), quom became temporal (when) like ubi. When time is not defined by a fixed date, it readily becomes circumstance, and this circumstance is interpreted as cause, condition, and the like. Compare the circumstantial relative itself. The first construction was with the Indicative as in any other merely relative clause, and this is the sole construction in earliest Latin. But, beginning with Terence, we can observe the drift ever increasing in Latin towards the expression of character by tendency (Subjv.) rather than by fact (Indic.), so that the relative of character takes more and more the Subjunctive, and cum follows the lead of ut and of the inflected relative pronoun.

# 579. There are two great uses of cum:

I. Temporal cum (when, then), with the Indicative.

II. Circumstantial cum (as, whereas), with the Subjunctive.

In the second usage the relation is still purely a matter of inference; but according to this inferential connection we distinguish:

- (a) Historical cum, as, giving the attendant circumstances, mainly temporal, under which an action took place.
- (b) Causal cum, as, whereas, since, indicating that the main action proceeded from the subordinate one.
- (c) Concessive cum, whereas, although, indicating that the main action was accomplished in spite of that of the subordinate clause.
- I. Cum ver appetit, milites ex hibernis movent, when spring approaches, soldiers move out of winter-quarters.
- II. (a) Cum ver appeteret, Hannibal ex hibernis movit, as spring was approaching (spring approaching), Hannibal moved out of winter-quarters.
- (b) Cum ver appetat, ex hibernis movendum est, as (since) spring is approaching, we must move out of winter-quarters.
- (c) Cum ver appeteret, tamen hostes ex hibernis non moverunt, whereas (although) spring was approaching, nevertheless the enemy did not move out of winter-quarters.

# 1. Temporal Cum.

**580.** Cum, when, is used with all the tenses of the Indicative to designate merely temporal relations.

In the Principal clause, a temporal adverb or temporal expression is frequently employed, such as tum, tune, then; nune, now; dies, day; tempus, time; iam, already; vix, scarcely, and the like.

Animus, nec cum adest nec cum discēdit, appāret, C., Cat.M., 22, 80; the soul is not visible, either when it is present, or when it departs. Stomachor cum aliōrum non mē dīgna in mē conferuntur, C., Planc., 14, 35; I get fretted when other people's jokes that are not worthy of me are foisted on me. [Sex librōs dē rē pūblicā] tum scrīpsimus cum gubernācula reī pūblicae tenēbāmus, C., Div., 11. 1, 3; I wrote the six books about the State at the time when I held the helm of the State. Recordāre tempus illud cum pater Cūriō maerēns iacēbat in lectō, C., Ph., 11. 18, 45; remember the time when Curio the father lay abed from grief. Longum illud tempus cum non erō magis mē movet quam hoc exiguum, C., Att., XII. 18, 1; that long time (to come), when I shall not exist, has more effect on me than this scant (present time). Iam dīlūcēscēbat cum sīgnum consul

dedit, L., xxxvi. 24, 6; by this time day was beginning to dawn, when the consul gave the signal. (See 581.)

Ideal Second Person with the Subjunctive:

Pater, hominum inmortālis est infāmia. Etiam tum vivit quom esse crēdās mortuam, Pl., Pers., 355; Father, immortal is the ill-fame of the world. It lives on even when you think that it is dead.

But the presence of a temporal adverb does not mean necessarily that the cum clause is merely temporal.

Remarks.—1. Fuit cum commonly follows the analogy of other characteristic relatives (631), and takes the Subjunctive:

Fuit tempus cum (= fuit cum) rūra colerent hominēs, VARRO, R.R., III. 1, 1; there was a time when all mankind tilled fields = were countrymen. The Indic. is rare.

2. Memini cum, I remember the time when, takes the Indic., but audire cum takes the Subjv. parallel with the participle:

Meminī cum mihī dēsipere vidēbāre, C., Fan, vII. 28, 1; I remember the time when you seemed to me to show the worst possible taste. Audīvī Mētrodōrum cum dē iīs ipsīs rēbus disputāret, C., Or., II. 90, 365; I have heard Metrodorus discuss(ing) these very matters.

3. Peculiar is the use of **cum** with Lapses of Time. Lapses of Time are treated as Designations of Time in Accusative or Ablative:

Multī annī sunt cum (= multōs annōs) in aere meō est, C., Fam., xv. 14, 1; (it is) many years (that) he has been (230) in my debt. Permultī annī iam erant cum inter patriciōs magistrātūs tribūnōsque nūlla certāmina fuerant, L., Ix. 33, 3; very many years had elapsed since there had been any struggles between the patrician magistrates and the tribunes. Nōndum centum et decem annī sunt cum (= ex quō = abhinc annōs) dē pecūnis repetundīs lāta lēx est, C., Off., II. 21, 75; it is not yet one hundred and ten years since the law concerning extortion was proposed.

Notes.—1. In Plautus cum with the Indic. may be explicative, causal, concessive, adversative. Explicative: salvos quom (that) advenīs, gaudeō, Most., 1128. Causal: salvos quom (since) peregrē advenīs, cēna dētur, B., 536. Concessive: [servī] quom (although) culpā carent, tamen malum metuont, Most., 859. Adversative: însānīre mē āiunt, ültrō quom (whereas) ipsī īnsāniunt, Men., 831.

The same holds true for Terence, except that the Subjv. is now making its appearance in cases where it can be neither potential, ideal, nor attracted, as Hec., 341: non

vīsam uxōrem Pamphilī, quom in proxumō hīc sit aegra?

Of course, this prevalence of the Indic does not exclude the attraction into the Subjv., nor does it exclude the regular potential use.

2. The explicative use dies out, except where it is akin to the conditional; but it always retains the Indicative. With Causal and Concessive-Adversative uses, the Subjv. is used more and more in place of the Indicative.

3. In early Latin we find quoniam and quando, used sometimes with the force of quom. In the case of quoniam several examples are cited from Plautus, in most of which, however, the causal conception lies very close at hand; the temporal force seems to have disappeared by the time of Terence, and only reappears in Gellius. The

temporal usage of quand $\delta$  is still the prevailing one in Plautus, over seventy instances having been collected. Of these the majority are in the Present and Future Spheres, in which the shift to the causal conception is very easy; many of them are also iterative. In Tepence the temporal usage of quand $\delta$  has disappeared unless possibly in one passage  $(Add., 2o\delta)$ , but sporadic cases are found later, even in Cicerio.

Quoniam hinc est profecturus peregrē thēnsaurum dēmonstrāvit mihi, PL., Trin., 149. Tum, quando lēgātos Tyrum mīsimus, C., Leg. Agr., 11. 16, 41.

**581.** Cum Inversum. When the two actions are independent, cum is sometimes used with the one which seems to be logically the principal clause, just as in English.

Iam non longius bīduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legionēs cognoscunt, Caes., B.G., vi. 7, 2; they were now distant not more than two days' march, when they learned that two legions were come.

Similar is the addition of an illustrative fact, often causal or adversative, by cum intereā (interim), quidem, tamen, etc., with the Indicative.

**582.** Explicative cum.—When the actions of the two clauses are coincident, cum is almost equivalent to its kindred relative quod, in that.

Āiācem, hunc quom vidēs, ipsum vidēs, Pl., Capt., 615; when you see him, you see Ajax himself. Cum tacent, clāmant, C., Cat., I. 8, 21; when (= in that) they are silent, they cry aloud. Dīxī omnia cum hominem nomināvī, Plin., Ep., Iv. 22, 4; I have said everything, in naming the man.

583. Conditional cum.—Cum with the Future, Future Perfect, or Universal Present, is often almost equivalent to s1, if, with which it is sometimes interchanged.

Cum posces, posce Latine, Juv., XI. 148; when (if) you (shall) ask (for anything), ask in Latin. Cum veniet contra, digito compesce labellum, Juv., I. 160; when (if) he meets you, padlock your lip with your finger.

584. Iterative cum.—Cum in the sense of quotiens, as often as, takes the Tenses of Iterative Action.

Solet cum sē pūrgat in mē conferre omnem culpam, C., Att., IX. 2 A, 1; he is accustomed, when he clears himself, to put off all the blame on me. [Ager] cum multos annos requiēvit ūberiorēs efferre frūgēs solet, C., Br., 4, 16 (567). Cum pālam ēius ānulī ad palmam converterat (Gǧgēs) ā nūllo vidēbātur, C., Off., III. 9, 38 (567).

REMARK.—The Subjv. is also found (567, N.):

Cum in iüs dücī dēbitōrem vīdissent, undique convolābant, L., 11. 27, 8; whenever they saw a debtor taken to court, they made it a rule to hurry together from all quarters.

### 2. Circumstantial Cum.

585. Historical cum.—Cum, when (as), is used in narrative with the Imperfect Subjunctive of contemporaneous action, with the Pluperfect Subjunctive of antecedent action, to characterize the temporal circumstances under which an action took place.

[Ågēsilāus] cum ex Aegyptō reverterētur dēcēssit, Nep., xvII. 8, 6; Agesilaus died as he was returning from Egypt. Zēnōnem cum Athēnīs essem audiēbam frequenter, C., N.D., I. 21, 59; when I was (being) at Athens, I heard Zeno (lecture) frequently. Athēniēnsēs cum statuerent ut nāvēs conscenderent, Cyrsilum quendam suādentem ut in urbe manērent, lapidibus obruērunt, C., Off., III. 11, 48 (546).

Cum Caesar Anconam occupāvisset, urbem reliquimus, C., Fam., xvi. 12, 2; when (as) Caesar had occupied Ancona (Caesar having occupied Ancona), I left the city. Attalus moritur altero et septuāgēsimo anno, cum quattuor et quadrāgintā annos rēgnāsset, L., xxxiii. 21, 1; Attalus died in his seventy-second year, having reigned forty-four years.

Remark.—The subordinate clause generally precedes. The circumstantiality often appears as causality, but sometimes the exact shade cannot be distinguished. Owing to this implicit character, cum with the Subjv. is a close equivalent to the participle, and often serves to supply its absence. Compare 611 with 631, 2.

Notes.—1. How closely allied the ideas of time and circumstance are, in these constructions, is seen from such examples as this:

Cum varicēs secābantur C. Mariō, dolēbat, C., Tusc., II. 15, 35 (time). Marius cum secārētur, ut suprā dīxī, vetuit, etc., C., Tusc., II. 22, 53 (circumstances). Cum ad tribum Polliam ventum est, (date) et praecō cunctārētur (circumstances) citāre ipsum cēnsōrem; Citā, inquit Nerō, M. Līvium, L., XXIX. 37, 8.

- 2. The use of Time When particles with the Pr. is necessarily limited to iterative or causal (adversative) relations. Hence there is no room for the circumstantial cum with the Subjy, except so far as it is causal-adversative. Fut, and Fut. Pf. are found chiefly in general or iterative relations.
- 3. By attraction similar to that with quod (541, N. 3) and other relatives, cum diceret, with an Inf., is found where diceret would be more naturally omitted or inserted as (ut dicebat); so cum adsentire se diceret for cum adsentiret, L., I. 54, 1. Similarly with cum causal: "saying, as he did," C., Mil., 5, 12.
- 586. Causal cum.—Cum, when, whereas, since, seeing that, with any tense of the Subjunctive, is used to denote the reason, and occasionally the motive, of an action (580, N. 1).

Quae cum ita sint, effectum est nihil esse malum quod turpe non sit, C., Fin., III. 8, 29; since these things are so, it is made out (proved) that nothing is bad that is not dishonorable. Cum [Athēnās] tamquam ad

mercăturam bonărum artium sis profectus, inānem redire turpissimum est, C., Off., III. 2, 6; as (since) you set out for Athens as if to market for accomplishments, it would be utterly disgraceful to return empty (handed). Dolō erat pūgnandum, cum pār nōn esset armis, Nep., XXIII. 10, 4; he had to fight by stratagem, as he (seeing that he) was not a match in arms.

REMARKS.—I. The characteristic nature of the Subjv. with cum comes out more clearly in the causal connection, owing to the parallel with utpote, quippe, and the relative (626, N.).

- 2. The primary tenses are more common, in this connection, but the historical tenses are abundant enough. With the latter the causal relation need never be emphasized.
- 587. Concessive and Adversative cum.—Causal cum, whereas, becomes Concessive cum, whereas, although, with the Subjunctive, when the cause is not sufficient; the relation is often adversative, and there is no limitation as to tense.

The temporal notion is still at work; whether the times are for or against an action is a matter outside of language (580, N. 1).

Nihil mē adiūvit cum posset, C., Att., IX. 13, 3; he gave me no assistance, although (at a time when) he had it in his power. Cum primī ōrdinēs hostium concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, CAES., B.G., VII. 62, 4; although the first ranks of the enemy had fallen (been cut to pieces), nevertheless the rest resisted most vigorously. Perīre artem putāmus nisi appāret, cum dēsinat ars esse, sī appāret, QUINT., IV. 2, 127; we think that (our) art is lost unless it shows, whereas it ceases to be art if it shows.

REMARKS.—1. To emphasize the adversative idea, tamen is often added in the principal clause.

- 2. Adversative cum non, whereas not, is often conveniently translated without; cum non Inferior fuisset, C., Off., 1. 32, 116; without being inferior.
- 588. Cum—tum. 1. When cum, when, tum, then, have the same verb, the verb is put in the Indicative. Cum—tum then has the force of both—and especially, and a strengthening adverb, such as māximē, praecipuē, is often added to the latter.

(Pausaniās) consilia cum patriae tum sibi inimīca capiebat, Nep., IV. 3, 3; Pausanias conceived plans that were hurtful both to his country and especially to himself.

2. When they have different verbs, the verb with cum is usually in the Indicative, but may be in the Subjunctive, especially when the actions of the two verbs are not contemporary; this Subjunctive often has a concessive force.

Sisennae historia] cum facile omnēs vincat superiores, tum indicat tamen quantum absit ā summō, C., Br., 64, 228; although the history of Sisenna easily surpasses all former histories, yet it shows how far it is from the highest (mark).

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

589. In Conditional Sentences the clause which contains the condition (supposed cause) is called the Prótasis, that which contains the consequence is called the Apódosis.

Logically, Protasis is Premiss; and Apodosis, Conclusion. Grammatically, the Apodosis is the Principal, the Protasis the Dependent, clause.

590. Sign of the Conditional.—The common conditional particle is sī, if.

Notes.-1. Si is a locative case, literally, so, in those circumstances (comp. si-c, so, and the English: "I would by combat make her good, so were I a man."-SHAKE-SPEARE). Hence, conditional clauses with sI may be regarded as adverbs in the Abl. case, and are often actually represented by the Abl. Absolute.

Sic is found as the correlative of si in the colloquial language, as: sic scribes aliquid, sī vacābis (C., Att., XII. 38, 2); sīc īgnovisse putāto mē tibi, sī cēnās hodiē mēcum (H., Ep., 1.7, 69). Instead of sīc, its equivalent tum occurs at all periods, being in the Augustan time restricted to formal uses. Igitur is also found as late as CICERO, who likewise uses ita. Other particles are post-classical.

2. The connection with the Causal Sentence is shown by st quidem, which in later Latin is almost = quoniam; see 595, R. 5.

3. The temporal particles cum and quando, when, and the locative ubi, are also used to indicate conditional relations in which the idea of Time or Space is involved.

# 591. Negative of sī.—The negative of sī is sī non or nisi.

- (a) With sī non, if not, the non negatives the single word; · hence an opposing positive is expected, either in a preceding condition, or in the conclusion. Therefore, si non is the rule:
  - I. When the positive of the same verb precedes.

Si fēceris, māgnam habēbō grātiam; sī non fēceris, ignoscam, C., Fam., v. 19; if you do it, I will be very grateful to you; if you do not, I will forgive (you).

2. When the Condition is concessive; in this case the principal clause often contains an adversative particle.

Sī mihī bonā rē pūblicā fruī non licuerit, at carēbo malā, C., Mil., 34, 93; if I shall not be allowed to enjoy good government, I shall at least be rid of bad.

- (b) With **nisi**, unless, the negative **ni** refers to the principal clause, which is thus denied, if the conditional clause is accepted; hence:
- 1. Nisi adds an exception or restriction to the leading statement. Compare the general use of nisi, except (R. 2).

Nisi molestumst, paucis percontărier (130, 6) volo ego ex tē, Pl., Rud., 120; if it is not disagreeable, I wish to ask you a few questions.

So the formulæ nisi fallor (nī fallor is found first in OVID), nisi mō omnia fallunt (C., Att., VIII. 7, 1), and the like.

2. Nisi is in favorite use after negatives.

Parvī (= nihili) sunt forīs arma nisi est consilium domī, C., Off., I. 22, 76 (411, R. 2). [Non] possem vivere nisi in litterīs viverem, C., Fam., IX. 26, 1; I could not live unless I lived in study. Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceās, C., Cat. M., 7, 21; memory wanes unless (except) you exercise it. (SI non exerceās, in case you fail to exercise it.)

So more often than si non, in asseverations. Peream nisi sollicitus sum, C., Fam., xv. 19, 4; may I die if I am not troubled.

REMARKS.-I. Sometimes the difference is unessential:

Nisi Cūriō fuisset, hodiō tē mūscae comēdissent, Cf. Quint., xi. 3, 129; if it had not been for Curio, the flies would have eaten you up this day. Sī nōn fuisset would be equally correct.

2. Nisi is often used after negative sentences or equivalents in the signification of but, except, besides, only:

Inspice quid portem; nihil hic nisi triste vidēbis, Ov., Tr., III. 1, 9; examine what I am bringing; you will see nothing here except (what is) sad. Falsus honor invat et mendāx infāmia terret, quem nisi mendōsum et medicandum? H., Ep., 1. 16, 39; "false honor charms and lying slander scares," whom but the faulty and the fit for physic?

So nisi sI, except in case, with a following verb; occasional in early Latin, more common later, but not in CAES. (B.G., I. 31, 14, is disputed), SALL., VERG., HOR. Nisi ut, except on condition that, is post-classical.

Necesse est Casilinenses se dedere Hannibali; nisi si malunt fame perire, C., Inv., II. 57, 171; the people of Casilinum must needs surrender to Hannibal; unless (except in case) they prefer to perish by hunger.

3. Nisi quod introduces an actual limitation—with the exception, that (525, 2, N. 2); so praeterquam quod; nisi ut (e. g. C., Imp., 23, 67).

Nihil acciderat [PolycratI] quod nollet nisi quod anulum quo delectăbătur in mari abiecerat, C., Fin., v. 30, 92; nothing had happened to Polycrates that he could not have wished, except that he had thrown into the sea a ring in which he took delight (= a favorite ring). Nihil peccat nisi quod nihil peccat, PLIN., Ep., IX. 26, 1; he makes no blunder except—that he makes no blunder ("faultily faultless").

4. Nisi forte (found very often in Cicero, very rarely earlier), unless, perhaps, nisi vērō (peculiar to Cicero), unless, indeed, with the Indic., either limit a previous statement, or make an ironical concession:

Nomo fero saltat sobrius nisi forte însanit, C., Mur., 6, 13; there is scarce any one that dances (when) sober, unless perhaps he is cracked. Plenum forum est eorum hominum, ... nisi vero paucos fuisse arbitramini, C., Sull., 9, 28; the forum is full of those men; unless, indeed, you think they were (but) few.

Notes .- 1. Nisi is sometimes strengthened by tamen, but, yet.

Nisi etiam hic opperiar tamen paulisper, P.L., Aul., 805; Cf. C., Att., v. 14, 3. Even without tamen it is adversative in colloquial Latin, especially after nescio.

2. NI is found mostly in early Latin and the poets, and in legal formulæ and colloquial phrases. It is rare in Cicero, and never used in Caesar.

Peream nī piscem putāvī esse, VARRO, R.R., III. 3, 9;  $m \approx y \ I \ die \ if \ I \ did \ not think it was a fish.$ 

3. Nisi forte is found occasionally with the Subjv. from Apuleius on.

**592.** Two Conditions excluding each the other.—When two conditions exclude each the other,  $s\bar{s}$  is used for the first;  $s\bar{s}n$ , if not (but if), for the second.

Sin is further strengthened by autem, vērō (rare), but; minus, less (not); secus (rare), otherwise; aliter, else.

Mercătūra, sī tenuis est, sordida putanda est; sīn māgna et cōpiōsa, nōn est admodum vituperanda, C., Off., I. 42, 151; mercantile business, if it is petty, is to be considered dirty (work); if (it is) not (petty, but) great and abundant (= conducted on a large scale), it is not to be found fault with much.

Remark.—If the verb or predicate is to be supplied from the context, sī minus, if less (not), sīn minus, sīn aliter, if otherwise, are commonly used, rarely sī nōn:

Ēdūc tēcum omnēs tuōs; sī minus, quam plūrimōs, C., Cat., 1. 5, 10; take out with you all your (followers); if not, as many as possible. Ödero sī peterō; sī nōn, invītus amābō, Ov., Am., III. II, 35 (242, R. 2).

Note.—Much less common are simple si, or si strengthened by non, nihil, nullus, minus, or by autem, vērō; or sed si, at si (Col.), si contrā (Hora, Plin.). Sin may also be followed by non, but commonly only when one or more words intervene.

Poma cruda si sunt, vix ovelluntur; si mātūra, docidunt, C., Cat.M., 19,71; if fruit is green it can hardly be plucked, if ripe it fulls (of itself).

**593.** Other Forms of the Protasis.—1. The Protasis may be expressed by a Relative.

Quī vidēret, urbem captam diceret, C., Verr., IV. 23, 52; whoso had seen it, had said that the city was taken. Mīrārētur quī tum cerneret, L., XXXIV. 9, 4 (258).

2. The Protasis may be contained in a Participle.

Sī latet ars, prodest; affert dēprēnsa pudorem, Ov., A.A., 11. 313; art, if concealed, does good; detected, it brings shame. Māximās virtūtēs iacēre omnēs necesse est voluptāte dominante, C., Fin., 11. 35, 117; all the greatest virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, if the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress. Nihil [potest] ēvenīre nisi causā antecēdente, C., Fat., 15, 34; nothing can happen, unless a cause precede.

3. The Protasis may be involved in a modifier.

Fēcērunt id servī Milōnis quod suōs quisque servōs in tālī rē facere voluisset, C., Mil., 10, 29; the servants of Milo did what each man would have wished his servants to do in such case (sī quid tāle accidisset). At bene nōn poterat sine pūrō pectore vīvī, Luck., v. 18; but there could be no good living without a clean heart (nisi pūrum pectus esset). Neque enim māteriam ipsam (cēnsēbant) cohaerēre potuisse sī nūllā vī continērētur, neque vim sine aliquā māteriā, C., Ac., 1. 6, 24.

4. The Protasis may be expressed by an Interrogative, or, what is more common, by an Imperative or equivalent.

Tristis es ? indignor quod sum tibi causa doloris, Ov., Tr., Iv. 3, 33 (542). Cēdit amor rēbus: rēs age, tūtus eris, Ov., Rem.Am., 144; love yields to business; be busy (if you plunge into business), you will be safe. Immūtā (verborum collocātionem), perierit tota rēs, C., Or., 70, 232 (244, R. 4).

## Classification of Conditional Sentences.

- **594.** Conditional sentences may be divided into three classes, according to the character of the Protasis:
  - I. Logical Conditional Sentences: sī, with the Indicative.
- II. Ideal Conditional Sentences: sī, chiefly with Present and Perfect Subjunctive.
- III. Unreal Conditional Sentences: sī, with Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

Notes.—1. In some grammars of Greek and Latin, conditional sentences, and sentences involving conditional relations, have been divided into particular and general. Whether a condition be particular or general depends simply on the character of the Apodosis. Any form of the Conditional Sentence may be general, if it implies a rule of action. The forms for Iterative action have been given (566, 567).

2. Conditional Sentences with the Subjunctive (Ideal and Unreal) are best understood by comparing the forms of the Ideal and Unreal wish which have the same mood and the same tenses. The Unreal wish of the Past is the Plupf., that of the Present is the Impf. Subjunctive. The Ideal wish is the Pr. and Pf. Subjunctive. The same temporal relations appear in the conditional.

### I, LOGICAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**595.** The Logical Conditional Sentence simply states the elements in question, according to the formula: if this is so, then that is so; if this is not so, then that is not so.

It may be compared with the Indicative Question.

The Protasis is in the Indicative: the Apodosis is generally in the Indicative; but in future relations any equivalent of the Future (Subjunctive, Imperative) may be used.

PROTASIS.

Sī id crēdis,

If you believe that,

Sī id crēdēbās, If you believed that,

Sī id crēdidistī,

If you (have) believed that,

Sī id crēdēs,

If you (shall) believe that,

Sī id crēdiderīs,

If you (shall have) believe(d) that,

Sī quid crēdidistī,

If you have believed anything (= when you believe anything),

Sī quid crēdiderās,

If you had believed anything (= when you believed anything),

Apodosis.

erras

you are going wrong.

errābās,

you were going wrong.

errāstī,

you went (have gone) wrong.

errābis,

you will (be) go(ing) wrong (234, R.).

errāveris,

you will have gone (will go) wrong.

you go wrong. Comp. 569. errābās,

you went wrong.

Si spīritum dūcit, vīvit, C., Inv., I. 46, 86; if he is drawing (his) breath (breathing) he is living. Parvī sunt forīs arma nisi est cōnsilium domī, C., Off., I. 22, 76 (411, R. 2). Sī occīdī, rēctō fēcī; sed nōn occīdī, Quint., Iv. 5, 13; if I killed him, I did right; but I did not kill him. [Nātūram] sī sequēmur ducem, numquam aberrābimus, C., Off., I. 28, 100; if we (shall) follow nature (as our) guide, we shall never go astray. [Improbōs] sī meus cōnsulātus sustulerit, multa saecula prŏpāgārit reī pūblicae, C., Cat., II. 5, 11; if my consulship shall have done away with the destructives, it will have added many ages to the life of the State. Sī pēs condoluit, sī dēns, ferre nōn possumus, C., Tusc., II. 22, 52 (567). Stomachābātur senex, sī quid asperius dīxeram, C., N.D., I. 33, 93 (567). Vīvam, sī vīvet; sī cadet illa, cadam, Prop., II. (III.) 28 (25), 42 (8); let me live, if she lives; if she falls, let me fall. Nunc sī forte potes, sed nōn potes, optima cōniūnx, fīnītīs gaudē tot mihi morte malīs, Ov., Tr., III. 3, 55;

now, if haply you can, but you cannot, noble wife, rejoice that so many evils have been finished for me by death. Flectere sī nequeō superōs, Acheronta movēbō, V., A., VII. 312; if I can't bend the gods above, I'll rouse (all) hell below. Sī tot exempla virtūtis nōn movent, nihil umquam movēbit; sī tanta clādēs vīlem vītam nōn fēcit, nūlla faciet, L., XXII. 60, 14; if so many examples of valor stir you not, nothing will ever do it; if so great a disaster has not made life cheap, none (ever) will. Dēsinēs timēre, sī spērāre dēsierīs, SEN., E. M., I. 5, 7; you will cease to fear, if you (shall have) cease(d) to hope. Peream male, sī nōn optimum erat, H., S., II. I, 6; may I die the death if it was not best. Sī volēbās participārī, auferrēs (= auferre dēbēbās) dīmidium domum, PL., Truc., 748; if you wished to share in it, you should have taken the half home. Respīrārō sī tē vīderō, C., Att., II. 24, 5; I shall breathe again, if I shall have seen you.

REMARKS.—I. After a verb of Saying or Thinking (Tratio Obliqua), the <u>Protasis</u> must be put in the <u>Subjv.</u>, according to the rule.

(Sī id crēdis, errās.) Dīcō, tē, sī id crēdās, errāre.

Dixī, tē, sī id crēderēs, errāre.

(Sī id crēdēs, errābis.) Dīcō, tē, sī id crēdās, errātūrum esse.

Dixi, tē, sī id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.

(Sī id crēdidistī, errāstī.) Dīcō, tē, sī id crēdiderīs, errāsse.
Dīxī, tē, sī id crēdidissēs, errāsse.

For examples, see Örātiö Obliqua, 657.

2. The Subjv. is used by Attraction:

[Arāneolae] rēte texunt ut sī quid inhaeserit cōnficiant, C., N.D., 11. 48, 123 (567). (Sī quid inhaesit cōnficiunt.)

3. The Ideal Second Person takes the Subjv. in connection with the Universal Present:

(Senectūs) plēna est voluptātis sī illā sciās ūtī, Sen., E.M., 12, 4; old age is full of pleasure if you know (if one knows) how to enjoy it.

Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceās, C., Cat.M., 7, 21 (591, b. 2).

4. Sive—sive (seu—seu) almost invariably takes the Logical form. (496, 2.) The Subjv. is occasionally used by Attraction or with the Ideal Second Person.

Seu vicit, ferociter instat victis; seu victus est, instaurat cum victoribus certamen, L., XXVII. 14, 1; if he vanquishes (567), he presses the vanquished furiously; if he is vanquished, he renews the struggle with the vanquishers.

5. Siquidem, as giving the basis for a conclusion, often approaches the causal sense (590, N. 2). In this case the Apodosis precedes.

Molesta vēritās, sĭquidem ex eā nāscitur odium, C., Lael., 24, 89; truth is burdensome, if indeed (since) hatred arises from it.

6. Si modo, if only, serves to limit the preceding statement.

Ā deō tantum rationem habēmus, sī modo habēmus, C., N.D., III. 28, 71; all that we have from God is (bare) reason, if only we have it.

Sī vērō when thus used is ironical (C., Ph., viii. 8, 24). Sī tamen seems to be post-classical.

Notes.—1. Phraseological are sī quaeris (quaerimus) in a sense approaching that of profectō (C., Off., III. 20, 80; Tusc., III. 29, 73): Sī dīs placet, if the gods will, often ironical (Cf. Ter., Eur., 919; C., Fīn., II. 10, 31). Sī forte, peradventure (C., Or., III. 12, 47; Mil., 38, 104).

2. It will be observed that the tense involved depends in each member upon the sense. But for this very reason certain combinations would be uncommon. Thus Pr.—Impf. and Fut.—Pr. are rare; Pr.—Fut. is more common in ante-classical and post-classical Latin than Fut.—Fut., the Pres. being used by anticipation. CICERO prefers Fut.—Fut. CICERO also uses frequently Fut. Pf.—Fut. Pf., which is also found elsewhere, but rarely. Pf.—Fut. is found first in CICERO, and is never common; also Impf.—Impf. Plupf.—Impf. is mostly found in ante-classical and post-classical Latin. The Pf., by anticipation for Fut. Pf., is not unfrequent in early Latin. So C., Fum., XII. 6, 2: (Brūtus) sī conservātus erit, vīcimus (237); Cf. Sen., Ben., III. 62, 145. Also the Pr. by anticipation for the Fut. (228): Pl., Poen., 671: Rēx sum, sī ego illum ad mē adlexerō.

#### II. IDEAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

596. The Ideal Conditional Sentence represents the matter as still in suspense. The supposition is more or less fanciful, and no real test is to be applied. There is often a wish for or against. The point of view is usually the Present.

1. The Protasis is put in the Present Subjunctive for continued action, and in the Perfect Subjunctive for completion or attainment.

The Apodosis is in the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The Imperative and Future Indicative or equivalents are often found. The Universal Present is frequently used, especially in combination with the Ideal Second Person (595, R. 3; 663, 2).

On the difference between Subjunctive and Future, see 257.

PROTASIS.

Sī id crēdās,

If you should (were to) believe that,

Sī id crēdās,

If you should (were to) believe that,

Si id crēdideris,

 If you should (prove to) have believed that (Perfect; Action Past or Future),
 If you should (come to) believe that (Aor.;

Action Future),

Si id crēdideris,

If you (should have) believe(d) that,

APODOSIS.

name Zan

you would be going wrong.

errāveris.

you would go wrong.

errēs,

you would be going wrong.

you would be going wrong. errāveris (rare),

you would (have) go(ne) wrong.

Si vicinus tuus equum meliorem habeat quam tuus est, tuumne equum mālīs an illīus? C., Inv., I. 31, 52; if your neighbor (were to) have a better horse than yours is, would you prefer your horse or his? Si gladium quis apud të sana mente deposuerit, repetat însaniens, reddere peccātum sit, officium non reddere, C., Off., III. 25, 95; if a man in sound mind were to deposit (to have deposited) a sword with you, (and) reclaim it (when) mad, it would be wrong to return it, right not to return it. Hanc viam sī asperam esse negem, mentiar, C., Sest., 46, 100; if I should say that this way is not rough, I should lie. Si nunc me suspendam meam operam lüserim, et meis inimicis voluptātem creāverim, Pl., Cas., 424; should I hang myself now, I should (thereby) (have) fool(ed) my work away, and give(n) to my enemies a charming treat. Ciceroni nemo ducentos nunc dederit nummos nisi fulserit anulus ingens, Juv., vii. 139; no one would give Cicero nowadays two hundred two-pences unless a huge ring glittered (on his hand). Sī quis furioso praecepta det, erit ipso quem monēbit, īnsānior, Sen., E.M., 94, 17; if one should give advice to a madman, he will be more out of his mind than the very man whom he advises. Si valeant homines, ars tua, Phoebe, iacet, Ov., Tr., IV. 3, 78; should men keep well, your art, Phoebus, is naught. Ōtia sī tollās. periëre Cupidinis arcūs, Ov., Rem. Am., 139 (204, N. 6). (Senectūs) est plēna voluptātis, sī illā sciās ūtī, Sen., E.M., 12, 4 (595, R. 3). Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceās, C., Cat. M., 7, 21 (591, b. 2). Nūlla est excūsātiō peccātī, sī amīcī causā peccāverīs, C., Lael., 11, 37; it is no excuse for a sin to have sinned for the sake of a friend.

2. The Point of View may be the Past. In that case the Protasis is found in the Imperfect, very rarely the Pluperfect Subjunctive, and the Apodosis has corresponding forms. This usage, however, is rare, inasmuch as it coincides in form with the Unreal Condition, from which it is distinguishable only by a careful study of the context. When found with indefinite persons, the construction is the Potential of the Past.

The idea of Partial Obliquity frequently enters, in which case sī may often be translated, in case that.

Quod üsü nön veniebat de eö si quis legem constitueret nön tam prohibère videretur quam admonère, C., Tull., 4, 9; if one should make a law about that which was not customary, he would seem not so much to prevent as to warn. (Present: si quis constituat, videatur.) Si Alfenus tum iüdicium accipere vellet, denique omnia quae postulares facere voluisset, quid ageres? C., Quinct., 26, 83; in case Alfenus was willing then to undertake the trial, and should have been willing afterwards to do all that you required, what were you to do? (See the whole passage—Present:

sī nunc velit, ... voluerit, agās.) Sī tribūnī mē triumphāre prohibērent, Fūrium et Aemilium tēstēs citātūrus fuī, L., XXXVIII. 47; should the tribunes prevent me from triumphing, I was going to summon Furius and Aemilius as witnesses. Quid faceret? sī vīvere vellet, Sēiānus rogandus erat, Sen., Cons. Marc., 22, 6; what was he to do? if he wished to live Sejanus was (the man) to be asked. See Tac., Ann., III. 13. Erat Quīnctius, sī cēderēs, plācābilis, L., XXXVI. 32, 5; Quinctius was, if you yielded to him, (sure to be) placable. (Est sī cēdās.) Sī lūxuriae temperāret, avāritiam non timērēs, Tac., H., II. 62; if he were to control his love of pleasure, you should not have feared avarice. (Sī temperet, non timeās.) Cūr igitur et Camillus dolēret, sī haec ... ēventūra putāret? et ego doleam sī...putem? C., Tusc., I. 37, 90. (Present: doleat sī putet.)

Remarks.—1. The Ideal is not controlled by impossibility or improbability, and the lively fancy of the Roman often employs the Ideal where we should expect the Unreal. (Comp. 256, N. 2.) This is more common in early Latin.

Tū sī hīc sīs, aliter sentiās, Ter., And., 310; if you were I (put yourself in my place), you would think differently. Haec sī tēcum patria loquātur, nonne impetrāre dēbeat? C., Cat., I. 8, 19; if your country should (were to) speak thus with you, ought she not to get (what she wants)? So C., Fin., IV. 22, 61.

- 2. Sometimes the conception shifts in the course of a long sentence: Si reviviscant et tēcum loquantur—quid tālibus viris respondērēs? C., Fin., IV. 22, 61: if they should come to life again, and speak with you—what answer would you make to such men?
- 3. When non possum is followed by nisi (sī non), the Protasis has the Ideal of the Past, after the past tense, and may have the ideal of the Present after a primary tense.

Neque mūnītiōnēs Caesaris prohibēre poterat, nisi proeliō dēcertāre vellet, CAES., B. C., 111. 44. See Madvig on C., Fin., 111. 21, 70.

- 4. In comparing Ideal and Unreal Conditionals, exclude future verbs such as **posse**, **velle**, *etc*. The future sense of such Unreal Conditionals comes from the auxiliary.
- 5. In **Ōrātiō Oblīqua** the difference between Ideal and Logical Future is necessarily effaced, so far as the mood is concerned. (656.)

#### III. UNREAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

597. The Unreal Conditional sentence is used of that which is Unfulfilled or Impossible, and is expressed by the Imperfect Subjunctive for continued action—generally, in opposition to the Present; and by the Pluperfect Subjunctive—uniformly in opposition to the Past.

The notion of Impossibility comes from the irreversible character of the Past Tense. Compare the Periphrastic Conjug. Perfect and Imperfect. Any action that is decided is considered Past (compare C., Off., II. 21, 75). (See 277, 3, N.)

PROTASIS.

Sī id crēderēs. errārēs, If you believed (were believing) that, [you

do not,] Sī id crēdidissēs.

If you had believed that, [you did not,]

APODOSIS.

you would be going wrong. errāvissēs,

you would have gone wrong.

Sapientia non expeteretur, sī nihil efficeret, C., Fin., I. 13, 42; wisdom would not be sought after, if it did no practical good. Caederem tē, nisi irascerer, Sen., Ira, I. 15, 3; I should flog you, if I were not getting angry. . Sī ibi tē esse scīssem, ad tē ipse vēnissem, C., Fin., I. 8; if I had known you were there, I should have come to you myself. Hectora quis nosset, fēlix sī Troia fuisset? Ov., Tr., IV. 3, 75; who would know (of) Hector, if Troy had been happy? Nisi ante Roma profectus esses, nunc eam certe relinqueres, C., Fam., vii. ii, 1; if you had not departed from Rome before, you would certainly leave it now. Ego nisi peperissem, Roma non oppūgnārētur; nisi fīlium habērem, lībera in līberā patriā mortua essem, L., 11. 40, 8; had I not become a mother, Rome would not be besieged; had I not a son, I should have died a free woman in a free land.

REMARKS.—I. The Impf. Subjv. is sometimes used in opposition to continuance from a point in the Past into the Present. This is necessarily the case when the Protasis is in the Impf., and the Apodosis in the Plupf., except when the Impf. denotes opposition to a general statement, which holds good both for Past and for Present:

Non tam facile opēs Carthaginis tantae concidissent, nisi Sicilia classibus nostris pateret, Cf. C., Verr., II. 1, 3; the great resources of Carthage (Carthage with her great resources) would not have fallen so readily, if Sicily had not been (as it still continues to be) open to our fleets. Si pudorem habērēs, ültimam mihi pēnsionem remīsissēs, Sen., E.M., 29, 10; if you had (= you had not, as you have not) any delicacy, you would have let me off from the last payment. Memoriam ipsam cum voce perdidissemus, sī tam in nostrā potestāte esset oblīvīscī quam tacēre, TAC., Agr., 2, 4; we should have lost memory itself, together with utterance, if it were as much in our power to forget as to keep silent.

The Impf. in both members, referring to the Past, always admits of another explanation than that of the Unreal; thus we have a case of Representation (654, N.) in

Protogenes si Ialysum illum suum caeno oblitum videret; magnum, credo, acciperet dolorem, C., Att., II. 21, 4; if Protogenes could see that famous Ialysus of his besmeared with mud, he would feel a mighty pang. PL., Aul., 742.

2. In Unreal Conditions, after a negative Protasis, the Apodosis is sometimes expressed by the Impf. Indic., when the action is represented as interrupted (233); by the Plupf. and Hist. Pf., when the conclusion is confidently anticipated (254, R. 3).

Lābēbar longius, nisi mē retinuissem, C., Leg., 1. 19, 52 (254, R. 3).

This usage after a positive is cited first in the post-Augustan writers. Cases like C., Verr., v. 42, 129; L., XXII. 28, 13, do not belong here.

Omnīnō supervacua erat doctrīna, sī nātūra sufficeret, QUINT., II. 8, 8 (254, R. 3). Perāctum erat bellum, sī Pompēium Brundisiī opprimere potuisset, Flor., II. 13, 19; the war was (had been) finished, if he had been able to crush Pompey at Brundusium.

The Impf. Indic, is sometimes found in the Protasis:

Ipsam tibī epistolam mīsissem, nisi (v.l., sed) tam subitō frātris puer proficīscēbātur, C., Att., vIII. 1, 2; I should have sent you the letter itself, if my brother's servant was not starting so suddenly.

3. (a) The Indicative is the regular construction in the Apodosis with verbs which signify Possibility or Power, Obligation or Necessity—so with the active and passive Periphrastic—vix, paene, scarcely, hardly, and the like. In many cases it is difficult to distinguish this usage from that of the Ideal (596, 2).

Consul esse qui potui, nisi eum vitae cursum tenuissem? C., Rep., 1. 6, 10; how could I have been consul, if I had not kept that course of life? Antôni gladios potuit contemnere, si sic omnia dixisset, Juv., x. 123; he might have despised Antony's swords, if he had thus said all (that he did say). Émendātūrus, si licuisset, eram, Ov., Tr., 1. 7, 40; I should have removed the faults, if I had been free (to do it). Pons iter paene hostibus dedit (paene dedit = dabat = datūrus erat), ni ūnus vir fuisset, L., 11. 10, 2; the bridge well nigh gave a passage to the enemy, had it not been for one man.

(b) With the Indic. the Possibility and the rest are stated absolutely; when the Subjv. is used the Possibility and the rest are conditioned as in any other Unreal sentence.

Compare quid facere potuissem, nisi tum consul fuissem, with consul esse qui potui, nisi eum vitae cursum tenuissem, C., Rep., I. 6, 10. Qui si fuisset meliore fortuna, fortasse austerior et gravior esse potuisset, C., Pis., 29, 71.

- 4. In **Ōrātiō Oblīqua** the Protasis is unchanged; the Apodosis is formed by the Periphrastic Pr. and Pf. Inf. (149), for the Active, **futūrum** (fore) ut, futūrum fuisse ut for passive and Supineless verbs.
  - A. Dīcō (dīxī), tē, sī id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.
  - B. Dīcō (dīxī), tē, sī id crēdidissēs, errātūrum fuisse.
  - A. Dīcō (dīxī), sī id crēderēs, fore ut dēciperēris.
  - B. Dīcō (dīxī), sī id crēdidissēs, futūrum fuisse ut dēciperēris.

A is very rare; A, theoretical. For the long form, B, the simple

Perfect Infinitive is found. Examples, see 659, N. In B, fuisse is omitted occasionally in later Latin; Tac., Ann., 1, 33, etc.

5. (a) When the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional is made to depend on a sentence which requires the Subjv., the Plupf. is turned into the Periphrastic Pf. Subjv.; the Impf. form is unchanged.

Non dubito,
I do not doubt,
Non dubitabam,
I did not doubt.

quin, sī id crēderēs, errārēs, that, if you believed that, you would be going wrong.

quin, sī id crēdidissēs, errātūrus fuerīs, that, if you had believed that, you would have gone wrong.

Honestum täle est ut, vel sī īgnōrārent id hominēs, esset laudābile, Cf. C., Fin., 11. 15, 49; virtue is a thing to deserve praise, even if men did not know it. Ea rēs tantum tumultum āc fugam praebuit ut nisi castra Pūnica extrā urbem fuissent, effūsūra sē omnis pavida multitūdō fuerit, L., XXVI. 10, 7; that matter caused so much tumult and flight (= so wild a panic), that had not the Punic camp been outside the city the whole frightened multitude would have poured forth. Nec dubium erat quīn, sī tam paucī simul obire omnia possent, terga datūrī hostēs fuerint, L., IV. 38, 5; there was no doubt that, if it had been possible for so small a number to manage everything at the same time, the enemy would have turned their backs. Dīc quidnam factūrus fuerīs, sī eō tempore cēnsor fuissēs ? I., IX. 33, 7; tell (me) what you would have done, if you had been censor at that time? See C., Pis., 7, 14.

(b) The Periphrastic Plupf. Subjv. occurs rarely, and then only in the Dependent Interrogative. The only examples cited are from Livy.

Subībat cēgitātiē animum, quēnam modē telerābilis futūra Etrūria fuisset sī quid in Samniē adversī ēvēnisset, L., x. 45, 3.

(c) Potui (254, R. I) commonly becomes potuerin, and ful with the Periphrastic passive in -dus becomes fuerin, after all tenses.

Haud dubium fuit quin, nisi ea mora intervēnisset, castra eō diē Pūnica capi potuerint, L., XXIV. 42, 3; there was no doubt that, had not that delay interfered, the Punic camp could have been taken on that day. Quae (rēs) suā sponte nefāria est ut etiamsī lēx non esset, māgnopere vitanda fuerit, C., Verr., I. 42, 108.

(d) The passive Conditional is unchanged:

Id ille sī repudiāsset, dubitātis quīn eī vīs esset allāta? C., Sest., 29, 62; if he had rejected that, do you doubt that force would have been brought (to bear) on him?

The active form is rarely unchanged (L., II. 33, 9). In the absence of the Periphrastic tense the Inf. with potuerim is often a sufficient substitute; see L., XXXII. 28, 6.

NOTE.—In PLAUTUS and TERENCE, absque with the Abl. and esset (foret) is found a few times instead of nisi (sī nōn) with Nom., and esset (fuisset) in the sense if it were not (had not been) for.

Nam absque të esset, hodië numquam ad sõlem occasum viverem, Pl., Men., 1022. Cf. Liv., 11. 10, 2 (R. 3, above).

#### INCOMPLETE CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**598.** Omission of the Conditional Sign.—Occasionally the members of a Conditional sentence are put side by side without a Conditional sign.

An ille mihǐ (351) līber, cuī mulier imperat? pōscit, dandum est; vocat, veniendum est; ēicit, abeundum; minātur, extimēscendum, C., Parad., 5, 2; or is he free (tell) me, to whom a woman gives orders? she asks, he must give; she calls, he must come; she turns out (of door), he must go; she threatens, he must be frightened. Ūnum cōgnōrǐs, omnīs nōrǐs, Ter., Ph., 265; you know one, you know all. Dedissēs huīc animō pār corpus, fēcisset quod optābat, Plin., Ep., 1. 12, 8; had you given him a body that was a match for his spirit, he would have accomplished what he desired.

**599.** Omission of the Verb of the Protasis.—When the verb of the Protasis is omitted, either the precise form or the general idea of the verb is to be supplied from the Apodosis.

Sī quisquam (= sī quisquam fuit), Catō sapiēns fuit, Cf. C., Lael., 2, 9; if any one was wise, Cato was. Ēdūc tēcum omnēs tuōs; sī minus, quam plūrimōs, C., Cat., I. 5, 10 (592, R.).

- **600.** Total Omission of the Protasis.—1. The Protasis is often contained in a participle or involved in the context; for examples see 593, 2 and 3.
- 2. The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes mechanically explained by the omission of an indefinite Protasis (257, N. 2).

Nimiō plūs quam velim [Volscōrum] ingenia sunt mōbilia, L., II. 37, 4; the dispositions of the Volscians are (too) much more unstable than I should like. Tuam mihī darī vellem ēloquentiam, C., N.D., II. 59, 147; I could wish to have your eloquence given me. Tam fēlīx essēs quam fōrmōsissima vellem, Ov., Am., I. 8, 27 (302). (Utinam essēs!)

**601.** Omission and Involution of the Apodosis.—The Apodosis is omitted in Wishes (261), and implied after verbs and phrases denoting Trial (460, 2). It is often involved in **Ōrātiō Oblīqua**, and sometimes consists in the general notion of Result, Ascertainment, or the like.

Si vērum excutiās, faciēs non uxor amātur, Juv., vi. 143; if you were to get out the truth (you would find that) it is the face, not the wife, that

is loved. (Ingurtha) timebat iram (= ne irasceretur) senatus, ni paruisset legatis, S., Iug, 25, 7; Jugurtha was afraid of the anger of the senate (that the senate would get angry) in case he did not (should not have) obey(ed) the legates.

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF COMPARISON.

602. The Apodosis is omitted in comparisons with ut sī, velut sī, āc sī, quam sī (rare), tamquam sī, quasi, or simply velut and tamquam, as if.

The verb is to be supplied from the Protasis, as is common in correlative sentences. The Mood is the Subjunctive.

The tenses follow the rule of sequence, rather than the ordinary use of the conditional. In English, the translation implies the unreality of the comparison.

Noli timere quasi [= quam timeas sī] assem elephanto des, Quint., vi. 3, 59; don't be afraid, as if you were giving a penny to an elephant. Parvī prīmo ortū sīc iacent tamquam [= iaceant si] omnīno sine animo sint, C., Fin., v. 15, 42; babies, when first born, lie (there), as if they had no mind at all. Hīc est obstandum, mīlitēs, velut sī ante Rōmāna moenia pūgnēmus, L., XXI. 41, 15; here (is where) we must oppose them, soldiers, as if we were fighting before the walls of Rome (velut obstēmus, sī p gnēmus, as we would oppose them, if we were to fight). Mē iuvat, v ipse in parte laboris ac periculi fuerim, ad finem belli Pūnici pervēnisse, XXXI. 1; I am delighted to have reached the end of the Punic war, as it I had shared in the toil and danger (of it). Tantus patres metus cepit velut sī iam ad portās hostis esset, L., XXI. 16, 2; a great fear took hold of the senators, as if the enemy were already at their gates. Dēlēta (est) Ausonum gens perinde ac sī internecīvo bello certasset, L., IX. 25, 9; the Ausonian race was blotted out, just as if it had engaged in an internecine war (war to the knife).

REMARKS.—I. Occasionally the sequence is violated out of regard to the Conditional:

Massiliënsës in eö honore audīmus apud [Romānos] esse āc sī medium umbilīcum Graeciae incolerent, L., XXXVII. 54, 21; we hear that the people of Marseilles are in as high honor with the Romans as if they inhabited the mid-navel (= the heart) of Greece. Eius negotium sīc velim suscipiās, ut sī esset rēs mea, C., Fam., II. 14, 1; I wish you would undertake his business just as if it were my affair.

2. The principal clause often contains correlatives, as: ita, sīc, perinde, proinde, similiter, non (haud) secus, etc.

Notes. -1. Tamquam and quasi are also used in direct comparison with the Indic-

ative. Here the verbs with both clauses are apt to be the same, in which case the verb with quasi or tamquam is usually omitted in model prose.

Quasi poma ex arboribus, crūda sī sunt, vix ēvelluntur, sīc vītam adulēscentibus vīs aufert, C., Cat.M., 19, 71.

2. Quasi is used to soften or apologize for a single word (= ut ita dīcam).

Mors est quaedam quasi migrātiō commūtātiōque vītae, (f. C., Tusc., 1. 12, 27; death is as it were a shifting of life's quarters.

3. As in the ordinary Conditional sentence, so in the Comparative sentence, the Protasis may be expressed by a participle:

Galli laeti ut explorātā victōriā ad castra Rōmānōrum pergunt, (f. Caes., B.G., III. 18,8; the Gauls in their joy, as if (their) victory had been fully ascertained, proceeded to the camp of the Romans. Antiochus sēcūrus dē bellō Rōmānō erat tamquam nōn trānsitūris in Asiam Rōmānīs, L., xxxvi. 41,1; Antiochus was as unconcerned about the war with Rome as if the Romans did not intend to cross over into Asia Minor.

4. In Celsus, Quintilian, Juvenal, Pliny Min., and especially in Tacitus and Suetonius, we find tamquam used almost like quod (541), to indicate an assumed reason, in imitation of the similar Greek use of \(\omega\)s with the participle, and occasionally where we might have expected the Acc. and Infinitive.

Prīdem invīsus tamquam plūs quam cīvīlia agitāret, Tac., Ann., 1. 12, 6; long misliked as (in Tiberius' judgment) plotting high treason. Sūspectus tamquam ipse suās incenderit aedēs, Juv., III. 222; suspected of having (as if he had) set his own house on fire. Vulgī opiniō est tamquam (comētēs) mūtātiōnem rēgnī portendat, Tac. Ann., XIV. 22, 1; it is the popular belief that a comet portends a change in the kingdom.

Other particles, quasi, sīcut, and ut, occur much more rarely and are cited mainly

from TACITUS (quasi only in the Annals). Compare Suet., Tit., 5.

5. Ut sI is rare in early Latin, not being found at all in PLAUTUS. It is found but once in LIVY, but frequently in Cicero and later Latin. Velut sI is found first in Caesar. Velut for velut sI is found first in LIVY. Ac sI is equivalent to quasi only in late Latin.

# CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.

603. Concessive Sentences are introduced by:

- The Conditional particles, etsī, etiamsī, tametsī (tamenetsī).
  - 2. The generic relative, quamquam.
  - 3. The compounds, quamvis, quantumvis.
  - 4. The verb licet.
  - 5. The Final particles, ut (nē).
  - 6. Cum (quom).

These all answer generally to the notion although.

Note.—Etsī (et + sī), even if; etiamsī, even now if; tametsī, yet even if; quamquam (quam + quam), to what extent soever; quamvīs, to what extent you choose; quantumvīs, to what amount you choose; licet, it is left free (perhaps intrans. of linquō, I leave).

604. Etsi, etiamsi, and tametsi, take the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the general principles which regulate

the use of sī, if. The Indicative is more common, especially with etsī.

Dē futūrīs rēbus etsī semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum coniectūrā possīs accēdere, C.. Fam., vi. 4, 1; although it is always difficult to tell about the future, nevertheless you can sometimes come near it by guessing. [Hamilcar] etsī flagrābat bellandī cupiditāte, tamen pācī serviundum putāvit, Nep., xxii. 1, 3; although Hamilcar was on fire with the desire of war, nevertheless he thought that he ought to subserve (to work for) peace. Inops ille etiamsī referre grātiam non potest, habēre certē potest, C., Off., 11. 20, 69; the needy man (spoken of), if he cannot return a favor, can at least feel it. Mē vēra prō grātīs loquī, etsī meum ingenium non monēret, necessitās cōgit, L., 111. 68, 9; even if my disposition did not bid me, necessity compels me to speak what is true instead of what is palatable.

REMARKS.—I. SI itself is often concessive (591, 2), and the addition of et, etiam, and tamen serves merely to fix the idea.

- 2. Etiamsi is used oftener with the Subjv. than with the Indic., and seems to be found only in conditional sentences. On the other hand, etsi is also used like quamquam (605, R. 2), in the sense "and yet;" virtutem si unam āmiserīs—etsi āmitti non potest virtus, C., Tusc., II. 14, 32; so too, but rarely, tametsi. Etsi is a favorite word with Cicero, but does not occur in Quintilian nor in Sallust, the latter of whom prefers tametsi. Tametsi is not found in the Augustan poets nor in Tacitus, and belongs especially to familiar speech.
  - 3. Tamen is often correlative even with tametsi.
- 605. Quamquam, to what extent soever, falls under the head of generic relatives (254, R. 4), and, in the best authors, is construed with the Indicative.

Medici quamquam intellegunt saepe, tamen numquam aegris dicunt, illö morbö eös esse moritürös, C., Div., II. 25, 54; although physicians often know, nevertheless they never tell their patients that they will die of that (particular) disease.

REMARKS.—I. The Potential Subjv. (257, N. 3) is sometimes found with quamquam: Quamquam exercitum quī in Volscīs erat māllet, nihil recūsāvit, L., vi. 9, 6; although he might well have preferred the army which was in the Volscian country, nevertheless he made no objection.

So especially with the Ideal Second Person.

- 2. Quamquam is often used like etsī, but more frequently, at the beginning of sentences, in the same way as the English, and yet, although, however, in order to limit the whole preceding sentence.
- The Indic., with etsi and quamquam, is, of course, liable to attraction into the Subjv. in Orātio Obliqua (508).

Note.—The Subjv. with quamquam (not due to attraction) is first cited from Cicero (perhaps *Tusc.*, v. 30, 85), Nepos (xxv. 13, 6), after which, following the development in all generic sentences in Latin, it becomes more and more common; thus, in post-Augustan Latin, Juvenal uses it exclusively, and Pliny Min. and Tacitus regularly.

**606.** Quamvis follows the analogy of volō, *I will*, with which it is compounded, and takes the Subjunctive (usually the principal tenses).

Quantumvis and quamlibet (as conjunctions) belong to poetry and silver prose.

Quamvis sint sub aquā, sub aquā maledicere temptant, Ov., M., vi. 376; although they be under the water, under the water they try to revile. Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tū candidus essēs, V., Ec., ii. 16; although he was black, although you were fair. [Vitia mentis], quamvis exigua sint, in māius excēdunt, Sen., E.M., 85, 12; mental ailments (= passens), no matter how slight they be, go on increasing. Quamvis sīs molestus numquam tē esse cōnfitēbor malum, C., Tusc., II. 25, 61; although you be troublesome, I shall never confess that you are an evil.

Notes.—1. The Indic. with quamvis is cited in prose first from C., Rab.Post., 2, 4; Nep., 1. 2, 3 (except in fragments of Varro and Vatinius); in poetry it appears first in Lucretius. Then it grows, so that in the post-Augustan period it is used just like quamquam with the Indic., though the Subjv. is also common:

Quamvîs ingeniö non valet, arte valet, Ov., Am., I. 15, 14; although he does not

tell by genius, he does tell by art.

2. The verb of quamvis is sometimes inflected: Quam volet Epicurus iocetur, tamen numquam mē movēbit, C., N.D., II. 17, 46.

607. Licet retains its verbal nature, and, according to the Sequence of Tenses, takes only the Present and Perfect Subjunctive:

Licet irrideat sī qui vult, C., Parad., I. I, 8; let any one laugh who will. Ardeat ipsa licet, tormentis gaudet amantis, Juv., vi. 209; though she herself is aglow, she rejoices in the tortures of her lover. Sim licet extremum, sicut sum, missus in orbem, Ov., Tr., Iv. 9, 9; although I be sent, as I have been, to the end of the world.

Notes.-1. Exceptions are extremely rare: Juv., xIII. 56.

 Quamvis is sometimes combined with licet, as: quamvis licet insectemur istos-metuo no soli philosophi sint, C., Tusc., IV. 24, 53.

3. Occasionally licet is inflected; e. g., H., Epod., 15, 19; S., II. 1, 59. From the time of Apuleius licet is construed with the Indicative.

608. Ut and ne are also used concessively for the sake of argument; this is common in CICERO, who often attaches to it sane; the basis of this is the Imperative Subjunctive.

Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas, Ov., Pont., III. 4, 79;

granted that strength be lacking, nevertheless you must praise (my) good will. No sit summum malum dolor, malum certo est, C., Tusc., II. 5, 14; granted that pain be not the chief evil, an evil it certainly is.

REMARKS.—1. Ut non can be used on the principle of the Specific Negative: Hic dies ultimus est; ut non sit, prope ab ultimo est, Sen., E.M., 15, 12; this is your last day; granted that it be not, it is near the last.

- 2. Examples with past tenses are rare: C., Mil., 17, 46; L., XXXVIII. 46, 3, etc.
  - 3. On ita-ut, see 262; on ut-ita, see 482, 4.
- **609.** Concessive Sentence represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.—The Concessive sentence may be represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.

[Risus] interdum ita repente ërumpit, ut eum cupientës tenëre nequeāmus, Cf. C., Or., 11. 58, 235; laughter between whiles (occasionally) breaks out so suddenly that we cannot keep it down, although we desire to do so. Multörum të oculi et aurës non sentientem cüstödient, C., Cat., 1. 2, 6; (of) many (the) eyes and ears will keep guard over you, though you perceive it not (without your perceiving it). Quis Aristidem non mortuum diligit? C., Fin., v. 22, 62; who does not love Aristides, (though) dead?

Notes.—1. Quamquam, quamvis, and etsi are often combined with the participle. This, however, is rare in classical Latin, but becomes more common-later.

(Caesar), quamquam obsidione Massiliae retardante, brevī tamen omnia subēgit, Suet., Iul., 34.

2. With adjectives and adverbs this is much more common, so especially with quamvis, which is used with a positive as a circumlocution for the superlative. With the superlative quamvis is rare.

Etsī non inīquum, certē trīste senātūs consultum, L., xxv. 6,2. Cum omnia per populum geruntur, quamvīs iūstum atque moderātum tamen ipsa aequābilitās est inīqua, C., Rep., 1. 27, 43.

## RELATIVE SENTENCES.

610. The Latin language uses the relative construction far more than the English: so in the beginning of sentences, and in combination with Conjunctions and other Relatives.

Remarks.—I. The awkwardness, or impossibility, of a literal translation may generally be relieved by the substitution of a demonstrative with an appropriate conjunction, or the employment of an abstract noun:

Quae cum ita sint, now since these things are so (Ciceronian formula). Futura modo exspectant; quae quia certa esse non possunt, conficientur et angore et metu, C., Fin., 1. 18, 60; they only look forward to the future; and because that cannot be certain, they wear themselves out

with distress and fear. [Epicūrus] non satis politus iis artibus quās quī tenent, ērudītī appellantur, C., Fin., 1. 7, 26; Epicurus is not sufficiently polished by those accomplishments, from the possession of which people are called cultivated.

2. Notice especially quod in combination with sī and its compounds ubi, quia, quoniam, ut (poetic and post-class.), utinam, nē, utinam nē, quī (rare), in which quod means and as for that, and is sometimes translated by and, but, therefore, whereas, sometimes not at all.

Quod nī fuissem incōgitāns ita eum exspectārem ut pār fuit, Ter., Ph., 155; whereas, had I not been heedless, I should be awaiting him in proper mood.

Notes.—1. The use of the Relative to connect two independent clauses instead of a demonstrative, is very rare in Plautus, more common in Terence, but fully developed only in the classical period.

2. The Relative is the fertile source of many of the introductory particles of the compound sentence (quom, quia, quoniam, compounds of quam, ut, ubi, etc.), and is therefore treated last on account of the multiplicity of its uses.

611. Relative sentences are introduced by the Relative pronouns in all their forms: adjective, substantive, and adverbial. (See Tables 109 foll.)

Remarks.—1. The Relative adverbs of Place, and their correlatives, may be used instead of a preposition with a Relative. Unde, whence, is frequently used of persons, but the others rarely; occasional examples are cited for ubi and quō, the others less frequently:  $ibi = in \ e\bar{o}$ , etc.;  $ubi = in \ qu\bar{o}$ , etc.;  $inde = ex \ e\bar{o}$ , etc.;  $unde = ex \ qu\bar{o}$ , etc.;  $e\bar{o} = in \ eum$ , etc.;  $qu\bar{o} = in \ quem$ , etc.

Potest fierī ut is, unde tē audīsse dīcis, īrātus dīxerit, C., Or., 11. 70, 285; it may be that he, from whom you say you heard (it), said it in anger. Quō (= quibus) lubeat nūbant, dum dōs nō fīat comes, PL., Aul., 491 (573).

2. The Relative is not to be confounded with the Dependent Interrogative sentence (467, R. 2).

Quae probat populus ego nesciō, Sen., E.M., 29, 10; the things that the people approves, I do not know (quid probet, what it is the people approves). Et quid ego tō velim, et tū quod quaeris, sciēs, Ter., And., 536; you shall know both what (it is) I want of you, and what (the thing which) you are asking (= the answer to your question).

- 612. Position of Relatives.—The Relative and Relative forms are put at the beginning of sentences and clauses. The preposition, however, generally, though not invariably, precedes its Relative (413).
  - 613. Antecedent.—The word to which the Relative refers

is called the Antecedent, because it precedes in thought even when it does not in expression.

Remark.—The close connection between Relative and Antecedent is shown by the frequent use of one preposition in common (414, R. I).

#### CONCORD.

614. The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person.

Is minimō eget mortālis, qui minimum cupit, Syrus, 286 (Fr.) (308). Uxor contenta est quae bona est ūnō virō, Pl., Merc., 812; a wife who is good is contented with one husband. Malum est cōnsilium quod mūtārī nōn potest, Syrus, 362 (Fr.); bad is the plan that cannot (let itself) be changed. Hōc illīs nārrō quī mē nōn intellegunt, Phaedr., 3, 128; I tell this tale for those who understand me not. Ego quī tē cōnfīrmō, ipse mē nōn possum, C., Fam., xiv. 4, 5; I who reassure you, cannot reassure myself.

REMARKS.—I. The Relative agrees with the Person of the true Antecedent, even when a predicate intervenes; exceptions are very rare:

Tū es is, quI (mē) summīs laudibus ad caelum extulistī, C., Fam., xv. 4, 11; you are he that has(t) praised me to the skies.

The Latin rule is the English exception: Acts, xxi. 38; Luke, xvi. 15.

- 2. When the Relative refers to a sentence, id quod, that which, is commonly used (parenthetically). So also quae ros, or simple quod, and, if reference is made to a single substantive, is qui or some similar form.
- Sī ā võbīs id quod nõn spērō dēserar, tamen animō nõn dēficiam, C., Rosc.Am., 4, 10; if I should be deserted by you (which I do not expect), nevertheless I should not become faint-hearted. Nec audiendus [Theophrastī] audītor, Stratō, is quī physicus appellātur, C., N.D., 1. 13, 35.
  - 3. The gender and number of the Relative may be determined:
- (a) By the sense, and not by the form; that is, a collective noun may be followed by a Plural Relative, a neuter numeral by a masculine Relative, a possessive pronoun by a Relative in the person indicated by the possessive, etc.

Caesa sunt ad sex milia qui Pydnam perfügerant, L., XLIV. 42, 7; there were slain up to six thousand who had fled to Pydna. Equitatum omnem praemittit, qui videant, CAES., B.G., I. 15; he sent all the cavalry ahead, who should see (that they might see, to see).

(b) By the predicate or the apposition, and not by the antecedent; so especially when the Relative is combined with the copula or with a copulative verb.

Thebae, quod Boeotiae caput est, L., XLII. 44, 3; Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia. Flümen Scaldis, quod influit in Mosam, CAES., B.G.,

VI. 33, 3; the river Scheldt, which empties into the Maas. Iüsta glõria, qui est früctus virtütis, C., Pis., 24, 57; real glory, which is the fruit of virtue.

Exceptions are not unfrequent, especially when the predicative substantive in the Relative clause is a foreign word or a proper name.

Stellae quās Graecī comētās vocant, C., N.D., 11. 5, 14; the stars which the Greeks call comets. Est genus quoddam hominum quod Helōtae vocātur, Nep., IV. 3, 6; there is a certain class of men called Helots.

4. The pronominal apposition may be taken up into the Relative and disappear:

Tēstārum suffrāgiis quod illī ostracismum vocant, Nep., v. 3, 1; by potsherd votes—(a thing) which they call "ostracism."

5. When the Relative refers to the combined antecedents of different gender, the strongest gender is preferred, according to 286:

Grandës nätü mätrës et parvi liberi, quorum utrumque aetas misericordiam vestram requirit, C., Verr., v. 49, 129; aged matrons and infant children, whose age on either hand demands your compassion. Ōtium atque divitiae, quae prima mortālēs putant, S., C., 36, 4; leisure and money, which mortals reckon as the prime things.

Or, the nearest gender may be preferred:

Eae früges atque früctüs quös terra gignit, C., N.D., II. 14, 37; those fruits of field and tree which earth bears.

6. Combined Persons follow the rule, 287.

Note.—A noteworthy peculiarity is found in early Latin, where a generic Relative sentence with quI is made the subject of an abstract substantive with est, and represented by a demonstrative in agreement with that substantive.

Istaec virtus est, quando usust, qui malum fert fortiter, Pl., Asin., 323; that's manhood who (if one) bears evil bravely, when there's need.

The parallel Greek construction suggests Greek influence.

615. Repetition of the Antecedent.—The Antecedent of the Relative is not seldom repeated in the Relative clause, with the Relative as its attributive.

(Caesar) intellexit diem instäre, quo die frümentum militibus metiri oporteret, Caes., B.G., I. 16, 5; Caesar saw that the day was at hand, on which day it behooved to measure corn (corn was to be measured out) to the soldiers.

Note.—This usage belongs to the formal style of government and law. Caesar is very fond of it, especially with the word dies. It is occasional in Plautus and Terence, and not uncommon in Cicero; but after Cicero it fades out, being found but rarely in Livy, and only here and there later.

616. Incorporation of the Antecedent.—1. The Antecedent substantive is often incorporated into the Relative

clause; sometimes there is a demonstrative antecedent, sometimes not.

In quem primum ēgressi sunt locum Trōia vocātur, L., 1. 1, 3; the first place they landed at was called Troy. Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hāc sē exerceat, [C.], Tusc., 1. 18, 41; what trade each man is master of, (in) that let him practise (himself), that let him ply.

Notes.—I. Incorporation, while much less frequent than Repetition, is still not unfrequently met with in Livy; after Livy it decays. No examples are cited from Sallust with a demonstrative antecedent, and but one from Caesar. No example is cited from Caesar without a demonstrative antecedent.

2. Instead of a principal clause, followed by a consecutive clause, the structure is sometimes reversed. What would have been the dependent clause becomes the principal clause, and an incorporated explanatory Relative takes the place of the demonstrative. This is confined to certain substantives, and is found a number of times in Cicero, but rarely elsewhere (Sall., Hor., Livy, Ovid, Sen., Tac., Pliny Min.).

Quā enim prūdentiā es, nihil tē fugiet (= eā prūdentiā es, ut nihil tē fugiat), C., Fam., XI. 13, 1. Velīs tantummodo; quae tua virtūs (est), expūg-

nābis, H., S., I. 9, 54.

2. An appositional substantive, from which a Relative clause depends, is regularly incorporated into the Relative clause.

[Amānus] Syriam ā Ciliciā dīvidit, quī mons erat hostium plēnus, C., Att., v. 20, 3; Syria is divided from Cilicia by Amanus, a mountain which was full of enemies = the enemy.

NOTE.—This usage is found first in Cicero. The normal English position is found first in Livy, but it becomes more common in later Latin.

Prīscus, vir cūius providentiam in rē pūblicā ante experta cīvitās erat, L., IV. 46, 10.

3. Adjectives, especially superlatives, are sometimes transferred from the substantive in the principal clause and made to agree with the Relative in the Relative clause.

[Themistocles] de servis suis quem habuit fidelissimum ad regem misit, NEP., II. 4, 3; Themistocles sent the most faithful slave he had to the king. Nemini credo, qui large blandust dives pauperi, Pl., Aul., 196; I trust no rich man who is lavishly kind to a poor man.

617. Attraction of the Relative.—The Accusative of the Relative is occasionally attracted into the Ablative of the antecedent, rarely into any other case.

Hõc confirmamus illö auguriö quō diximus, C., Att., x. 8, 7; we confirm this by the augury which we mentioned.

Notes.—1. This attraction takes place chiefly when the verb of the Relative clause must be supplied from the principal sentence; that is, with auxiliary verbs like velle, solēre, iubēre; and after verbs of Saying and the like.

It is rare in early Latin. but common from CICERO on.

Quibus poterat sauciis ductis sēcum ad urbem pergit, L., IV. 39, 9; having taken with him all the wounded he could, he proceeded to the city.

2. Inverted Attraction.—So-called Inverted Attraction is found only in poetry, and then usually in the Acc., which may be considered as an object of thought or feeling.

This Acc. stands usually for a Nom., sometimes, but only in Comedy, for the Gen. Dat. or Abl. A strange usage is the Nom. where the Acc. would be expected. This may be nominativus pendens, a form of anacoluthon (697), and is found only in early Latin.

Urbem quam statuō, vestra est, V., A., I. 573; (as for) the city which I am rearing, (it) is yours. Istum quem quaeris, ego sum, Pl., Curc., 419; (as for) that man whom you are looking for, I am he. Ille quī mandāvit eum exturbāstī ex aedibus? Pl., Trin., 137. ("He that hath ears to hear, let him hear.")

618. Correlative Use of the Relative.—The usual Correlative of qui is is, more rarely hic, ille.

Is minimō eget mortālis, quī minimum cupit, Syrus, 286 (Fr.) (308). Hīc sapiēns, de quō loquor, C., Ac., II. 33, 105 (305, 3). Illa diēs veniet, mea quā lūgubria pōnam, Ov., Tr., IV. 2, 73 (307, 4).

619. Absorption of the Correlative.—The Correlative, is, is often absorbed, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative. This is a kind of Incorporation.

Postume, non bene olet, qui bene semper olet, Mart., II. 12, 4; Postumus, (he) smells not sweet, who always smells sweet. Quem arma non fregerant vitia vicerunt, Curt., vi. 2, 1; (him) whom arms had not crushed did vices overcome. Quem di diligunt adulescens moritur, Pl., B., 816; (he) whom the gods love dies young. Xerxes praemium proposuit qui [= ei qui] invenisset novam voluptatem, C., Tusc., v. 7, 20; Xerxes offered a reward to him who should invent a new pleasure. Miseranda vita qui [= eōrum qui] sē metui quam amārī mālunt, Nep., x. 9, 5; pitiable is the life of those who would prefer being feared to being loved. Discite sānārī per quem [= per eum, per quem] didicistis amāre, Ov., Rem.Am., 43 (401).

Difficult and rare are cases like :

Nunc redeō ad quae (for ad ea quae) mihi mandās, C., Att., v. 11, 6.

**620.** Position of the Correlative clause.—The Relative clause naturally follows its Correlative, but it often precedes; incorporation also is common.

Male sē rēs habet cum quod virtūte effici dēbet id temptātur pecūniā, C., Off., 11. 6, 22; it is a bad state of affairs when what ought to be accomplished by worth, is attempted by money. Quod vidēs accidere pueris hōo nōbis quoque māiusculis pueris ēvenit, Sen., E.M., 24, 13; what you see befall children (this) happens to us also, children of a larger growth. Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hāc sē exerceat, [C.], Tusc., 1. 18, 41 (616, 1).

The Correlative absorbed:

Quod non dedit fortuna, non ēripit, Sen., E.M., 59, 18; what fortune has not given (does not give), she does not take away. Per quās nos petitis saepe fugātis opēs, Ov., A.A., III. 132; the means you take to win us often scare us off.

**621.** Indefinite Antecedent.—The Indefinite Antecedent is generally omitted.

Elige cui dicas: tu mihi sola places, Ov., A.A., 1. 42; choose some one to whom you may say: You alone please me.

Remark.—Such sentences are sometimes hardly to be distinguished from the Interrogative: [Conon] non quaesivit ubi ipse tütö viveret, Nep., IX. 2, 1; Conon did not seek a place to live in safely himself, might be either Relative or Deliberative (265).

### TENSES IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**622.** Future and Future Perfect.—The Future and Future Perfect are used with greater exactness than in current English (242, 244).

Sit liber, dominus qui volet esse meus, Mart., 11. 32, 8; he must be free who wishes (shall wish) to be my master. Qui prior strinxerit ferrum, ēius victoria erit, Liv. (244, r. 2).

**623.** Iterative Action.—Relative sentences follow the laws laid down for Iterative action (566, 567).

# I. Contemporaneous action:

Öre trahit quodcumque potest, atque addit acervō, H., S., I. I., 34; drags with its mouth whatever it can, and adds to the treasure (heap). Quācumque incēdēbat āgmen, lēgātī occurrēbant, L., XXXIV. 16, 6; in whatever direction the column advanced, ambassadors came to meet them.

# II. Prior action:

[Terra] numquam sine ūsūrā reddit, quod accēpit, C., Cat. M., 15, 51; the earth never returns without interest what it has received (receives). Quod non dedit fortūna, non ēripit, Sen., E. M., 59, 18 (620). Non cēnat quotiēns nēmo vocāvit eum, Mart., v. 47, 2; he does not dine as often as (when) no one has invited (invites) him. Haerēbant in memoriā quaecumque audierat et vīderat [Themistoclēs], C., Ae., II. 1, 2 (567). Sequentur tē quōcumque pervēneršs vitia, Sen., E. M., 28, 1; vices will follow you whithersoever you go. Quī timēre dēsierint, ōdisse incipient, Tac., Agr., 32 (567).

REMARK. -On the Subjv. in Iterative Sentences, see 567, N.

### MOODS IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**624.** The Relative clause, as such—that is, as the representative of an adjective—takes the Indicative mood.

Uxor quae bona est, Pl., Merc., 812; a wife who is good (a good wife).

REMARK.—The Relative in this use often serves as a circumlocution for a substantive, with this difference: that the substantive expresses a permanent relation; the Relative clause, a transient relation: if qui docent = those who teach = the teachers (inasmuch as they are exercising the functions). On the Relative with Subjv. after an adj. clause, see 438, R.

625. Indefinite and Generic Relatives.—I. Quicumque, quisquis, and the like, being essentially Iterative Relatives, take the Indicative according to the principles of Iterative action (254, R. 4). So also simple Relatives when similarly used.

Quacumque incedebat agmen, legati occurrebant, Liv., xxxiv. 16, 6 (623).

REMARK. - According to 567, N., the Subjv. is used:

(1) In Ōrātiō Obliqua (Total or Partial):

Mārtī Gallī quae bellō cēperint (Pf. Subjv.) dēvovent (= sē datūrōs vovent), Cf. Caes., B. G., vi. 17, 3; the Gauls devote (promise to give) to Mars whatever they (shall) take in war (ō. R., Quae cēperīmus, dabimus).

(2) By Attraction of Mood (Complementary Clauses):

Quis eum diligat quem metuat? C., Lael., 15, 53 (629).

(3) In the Ideal Second Person:

Bonus sēgnior fit ubi neglegās, S., Iug., 31, 28 (566).

(4) By the spread of the Subjv. in post-classical Latin:

Quī ünum ēius ördinis offendisset omnēs adversös habēbat, L., xxxııı. 46, 1 (567).

2.  $\mathbf{Qu\bar{i}} = \mathbf{s\bar{i}} \mathbf{quis}$ , if any, has the Indicative when the Condition is Logical.

[Terra] numquam sine ūsūrā reddit, quod accēpit, C., Cat.M., 15, 51 (623). (Sī quid accēpit.) Quī morī didicit, servīre dēdidicit, Sen., E.M., 26, 10 (423).

Remark.—When the Condition is Ideal, the Subjv. is necessary (596). In post-classical Latin the Subjv. is the rule with all conditionals.

626. Explanatory Relative.—Qui, with the Indicative (= is enim, for he), often approaches quod, in that.

Habeō senectūtī māgnam grātiam, quae mihi sermonis aviditātem

auxit, C., Cat.M., 14, 46; I am very thankful to old age, which (for it, in that it) has increased me (= in me) the appetite for talk.

Remark.—Qui with the Subjv. gives a ground, = cum is (586); qui with the Indic., a fact; and in many passages the causal sense seems to be inevitable:

Insanit hic quidem, qui ipse male dicit sibi, Pl., Men., 309; cracked is this man, who calls (= for calling) down curses on himself. Erraverim fortasse qui më aliquid putavi, Plin., Ep., t. 23, 2; I may have erred in thinking myself to be something.

Notes.—1. This causal sense is heightened by ut, utpote, as; quippe, namely. Ut qui is rere in early Latin, Caesar, and Cicero, and is not found at all in Terence and Sallust. Livy, however, is fond of it. The mood is everywhere the Subjunctive. Utpote is found only here and there in Latin, and not at all in Terence Caesar, Livy; but once in Plautus. The mood is the Subjv. until late Latin. Quippe qui is the most common of the three, but does not occur in Caesar. In early Latin the mood is the Indic. (except Pl., Pers., 699); also in Sallust. Cicero uses the Subjv.; Livy uses both moods; later the Subjv. is the rule until the time of Applebius.

2. Simple Explanatory quI has the Indic. most commonly in early Latin, and in general develops on the same line that cum follows.

627. The Subjunctive is employed in Relative clauses when it would be used in a simple sentence.

Potential: Habeō quae velim, C., Fin., 1. 8, 28; I have what I should like.

OPTATIVE: Quod faustum sit, regem create, L., I. 17, 10; blessing be on your choice, make ye a king.

Remarks.—r. Especially to be noted is the Subjv. in restrictive phrases. Here the Relative often takes quidem, sometimes modo.

The early Latin shows only quod sciam (as if dum aliquid sciam), so far as I may be permitted to know something about it (= quantum sciō, as far as I know, for all I know), which is used throughout the language, and quod quidem veniat in mentem (PL.,  $E_P$ , 638). Cicero, however, shows a great variety. Quantum sciam is found first in Quintilian.

Omnium örātörum quōs quidem cōgnōverim acūtissimum iūdicō Sertōrium, C., Br., 48, 180; of all orators, so far as I know them, I consider Sertorius the most acute. Nūllum örnātum quī modo nōn obscūret subtrahendum putō, Quint., v. 14, 33; I think no ornament is to be withdrawn, provided that it do not cause obscurity.

2. Restrictions involving esse, posse, attinet, are regularly in the Indicative. Cicero and Caesar, however, show a very few cases of the Subjv., especially with possis.

Prodidisti et to et illam, quod quidem in to fuit, Ter., Ad., 692; you have betrayed both her and yourself, so far as in you lay. Ego quod ad mo attinet, iūdico, vici, C., Verr., II. 1. 8, 21; I, judges, so far as pertains to me, have conquered.

**628.** The Subjunctive is used in Relative clauses which form a part of the utterance or the view of another than the narrator, or of the narrator himself when indirectly quoted (539, R.). So especially in **Ōrātiō Oblīqua** and Final Sentences.

Rēctē Graecī praecipiunt, non temptanda quae efficī non possint, Quint., IV. 5, 17; right are the Greeks in teaching that those things are not to be attempted which cannot be accomplished. Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelės ait, bestiolas quasdam nasci quae ūnum diem vivant, C., Tusc., I. 39, 94 (650). Virtūs facit ut eos dīligāmus in quibus ipsa inesse videātur, C., Off., I. 17, 56; virtue makes us love those in whom she seems to reside. Postulatur ab hominibus ut ab ils se abstineant maxime vitils, in quibus alterum reprehenderint, C., Verr., III. 2, 4; it is demanded of men that they refrain from those faults most of all as to which they have blamed another. Senātus cēnsuit utī quīcumque Galliam provinciam obtineret, Haeduos defenderet, CAES., B.G., I. 35; the senate decreed that whoever obtained Gaul as his province should defend the Haedui. Paetus omnēs libros quos frāter suus relīquisset mihī donāvit, C., Att., II. I, 12; (this is Paetus' statement; otherwise: quos frater ēius (521) reliquit; compare C., Att., 1. 20, 7). Xerxës praemium proposuit qui [= ei qui] invēnisset novam voluptātem, C., Tusc., v. 7, 20 (619).

REMARK. - Even in Orātio Obliqua the Indic. is retained:

(a) In explanations of the narrator:

Nüntiātur Afrāniō māgnōs commeātūs quī iter habēbant ad Caesarem ad flümen cōnstitisse, Caes., B.C., I. 51, 1; it is (was) announced to Afranus that large supplies of provisions (which were on their way to Caesar) had halted at the river.

In the historians this sometimes occurs where the Relative clause is an integral part of the sentence, especially in the Impf. and Pluperfect; partly for clearness, partly for liveliness. For shifting Indic. and Subjv., see L., xxvi. i.

(b) In mere circumlocutions:

Quis neget haec omnia quae vidēmus deōrum potestāte administrārī? Cf. C., Cat., III. 9, 21; who would deny that this whole visible world is managed by the power of the gods? Prōvidendum est nō quae dīcuntur ab eō quī dīcit dissentiant, QUINT., III. 8, 48; we must see to it that the speech be not out of keeping with the speaker.

629. Relative sentences which depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive (Attraction of Mood).

Pigrī est ingeniī contentum esse iīs quae sint ab aliīs inventa, QUINT., X.

2, 4; it is the mark of a slow genius to be content with what has been found out by others. Quis aut eum diligat quem metuat aut eum ā quō sē metuī putet? C., Lael., 15. 53; who could love a man whom he fears, or by whom he deems himself feared? Nam quod emās possīs iūre vocāre tuum, MART., 11. 20, 2; for what you buy you may rightly call your own. Ab aliō exspectēs alterī quod fēcerīs, Syrus, 2 (Fr.) (319). In virtūte sunt multī ascēnsūs, ut is glōriā māximē excellat, quī virtūte plūrimum praestet, C., Planc., 25, 60 (552). Sī sōlōs eōs dīcerēs miserōs quibus moriendum esset, nēminem eōrum quī vīverent exciperēs; moriendum est enim omnibus, C., Tusc., 1. 5, 9; if you called only those wretched who had (have) to die, you would except none who lived (live); for all have to die.

REMARK .- The Indic. is used :

(a) In mere circumlocutions; so, often in Consecutive Sentences:

Necesse est facere sümptum qui quaerit lucrum,  $P_{L.}$ , As., 218 (535). Efficitur ab ōrātōre, ut il qui audiunt ita adficiantur ut ōrātor velit, Cf. C., Br., 49, 185; it is brought about by the orator that those who hear him (= his auditors) are affected as he wishes (them to be).

(b) Of individual facts:

Et quod vides perisse perditum dücās, Cat., VIII. 2; and what you see (definite thing, definite person) is lost for aye, for aye deem lost. (Quod videās, anybody, anything.)

**630.** Relative Sentences of Design.—Optative Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Design, when  $qu\bar{i} = ut$  is.

Sunt multī quī ēripiunt aliis quod aliīs largiantur, C., Of., I. 14, 43; many are they who snatch from some to lavish on others. [Senex] serit arborēs, quae alterī saeclō prōsint, Caecilius (C., Tusc., I. 14, 31) (545). Semper habē Pyladēn aliquem quī cūret Orestem, Ov., Rem.Am., 589 (545). [Māgnēsiam Themistoclī Artaxerxēs] urbem dōnārat, quae eī pānem praebēret, Nep., II. 10, 3 (545).

Notes.—1. The basis of this construction is the characteristic Subjv., and the conception seems Potential rather than Optative; but in many cases the characteristic force is no longer felt.

2. After mittere there are a few cases where the Impf. Indic. is used with much the same force as the Impf. Subjv., but the purpose is merely inferential from the continuance in the tense. See 233. So (in the following sentence) investīgābant = investīgātūrī erant.

Inmittebantur illī canēs, quī invēstīgābant omnia, C., Verr., IV. 21, 47.

3. By attraction similar to that with quod (541, N. 3) and quom (585, N. 3), the Relative is sometimes found with an Inf. and diceret, where the Subjy. of the verb in the Inf., or the Indic. with a parenthetical ut dixit, is to be expected.

Lītterās quās mē sibī mīsisse dīceret (= mīsisset, or mīserat, ut dīxit) recitāvit, C., Ph., m. 4, 7.

631. Relative Sentences of Tendency.—Potential Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Tendency, when qui = ut is.

The notion is generally that of Character and Adaptation, and we distinguish four varieties:

1. With a definite antecedent, when the character is emphasized; regularly after idoneus, suitable; aptus, fit; dignus, worthy; indignus, unworthy; after is, talis, eiusmodī, tam, tantus, and the like; after unus and solus.

Est innocentia adfectiō tālis animī, quae noceat nēminī, C., Tusc., III. 8, 16; harmlessness (innocence) is that state of mind that does harm to no one (is innocuous to any one). Ille ego sim cūius laniet furiōsa capillōs, Ov., A.A., II. 451; may I be the man whose hair she tears in her seasons of frenzy. Sōlus es, C. Caesar, cūius in victōriā ceciderit nēmō, C., Dei., 12, 34; thou art the only one, Caesar, in whose victory no one has fallen. Quem mea Calliopē laeserit ūnus egō, Ov., Tr., II. 568; I am the only one that my Calliope (= my Muse) has hurt. (Acadēmicī) mentem sōlam cēnsēbant idōneam cuī crēderētur, C., Ac., I. 8, 30; the Academics held that the mind alone was fit to be believed (trustworthy).

REMARKS.—I. Ut is not unfrequently found instead of qui after the correlatives.

- 2. Idōneus, dignus, etc., take also ut, and the Infinitive (552, R. 2).
- 2. With an indefinite antecedent; so especially after negatives of all kinds, and their equivalents, and in combinations of multī, quīdam, aliī, nōnnūllī, etc., with est, sunt, exsistit, etc.

Est qui, sunt qui, there is, there are some who; nemõ est qui, there is none to; nihil est quod, there is nothing; habeð quod, I have to; reperiuntur qui, persons are found who (to) . . .; quis est qui? who is there who (to) . . .? est cūr, there is reason for, etc. So, also, fuit cum, there was a time when (580, R. I).

Sunt qui discessum animi à corpore putent esse mortem, C., Tusc., 1.9, 18; there are some who (to) think that death is the departure of the soul from the body. Fuit qui suädéret appellationem mensis Augusti in Septembrem tränsferendam, Suet., Aug., 100; there was a man who urged (=: to urge) that the name of the month (of) August should be transferred to September. Multi fuërunt qui tranquillitatem expetentes à negotiis publics se removerint, C., Off., 1. 20, 69; there have been many who, in the search for quiet, have withdrawn themselves from public engagements. Omnino nemo üllius rei fuit emptor cui défuerit hic venditor, C., Ph., 11. 38, 97 (317, 1). Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuam mali, Pl., Capt., 741; after death there is no ill in death for me to dread. Nec mea qui digitis lümina condat erit, Ov., Her., 10, 120; and there will be no one to close mine eyes with his fingers. Miserrimus est

qui quom esse cupit quod edit (172, N.) non habet, P.L., Capt., 463% he is a poor wretch who, when he wants to eat, has not anything to eat (non habet quid edat would mean does not know what to eat). Quotus est quisque qui somnis pareat, C., Div., 11. 60, 125; (how many men in the world), the fewest men in the world obey dreams.

REMARKS.—I. The Indic. may be used in the statements of definite facts, and not of general characteristics:

Multi sunt qui ēripiant, Multi sunt qui ēripiunt,

There are many to snatch away. Many are they who snatch away.

Of course this happens only after affirmative sentences. The poets use the Indic, more freely than prose writers:

Sunt-quī (= quīdam) quod sentiunt non audent (so Mss.) dicere, C., Off., I. 24, 84; some dare not say what they think. Sunt-quibus ingrātē timida indulgentia servit, Ov., A.A., II. 435; to some trembling indulgence plays the slave all thanklessly. Sunt quī (indefinite) non habeant, est-quī (definite) non cūrat habēre, H., Ep., II. 2, 182.

- 2. When a definite predicate is negatived, the Indic. may stand on account of the definite statement, the Subjv. on account of the negative:
  - A. Nihil bonum est quod non eum qui id possidet meliorem facit; or,
  - B. Nihil bonum est quod non eum qui id possideat meliorem faciat.
  - A. Nothing that does not make its owner better is good.
  - B. There is nothing good that does not make its owner better.
  - 3. After comparatives with quam as an object clause.

Maiora in defectione deliquerant, quam quibus ignosci posset, L., XXVI. 12, 6; (in that revolt) they had been guilty of greater crimes than could be forgiven (had sinned past forgiveness). Non longius hostes aberant, quam quo telum adici posset, CAES. B.G., II. 21, 3; the enemy were not more than a javelin's throw distant.

Remarks.—I. Classical Latin prefers ut after comparatives.

- 2. Instead of quam ut, quam is not unfrequently found alone, especially after potius, but also after amplius, celerius, etc.; in which case the construction resembles that of antequam.
- 4. Parallel with a descriptive adjective with which it is connected by et or sed.

Exierant (duo) adulēscentēs et Drūsī māximē familiārēs, et in quibus māgnam spem māiōrēs collocārent, C., Or., 1. 7, 25; two young men had come out (who were) intimates of Drusus and in whom their elders were putting great hopes.

632. Quin in Sentences of Character.—After negative clauses, usually with a demonstrative tam, ita, etc., quin is

often used (556) where we might expect qui non, and sometimes where we should expect quae non, or quod non.

Sunt certa vitia quae nëmë est quin effugere cupiat, C., Or., 111. 11, 41; there are certain faults which there is no one but (= everybody) desires to escape. Nil tam difficile est quin quaerendë invëstigäri possiet (= possit), Ter., Heaut., 675 (552).

Remark.—That quin was felt not as qui non, but rather as ut non, is shown by the fact that the demonstrative may be expressed:

Non cum quoquam arma contuli quin is mihi succubuerit, Nep., xvIII. II, 5; I have never measured swords with any one that he has not (but he has) succumbed to me.

633. Relative in a Causal Sense.—When qui = cum is, as he, the Subjunctive is employed. (See 586, R. 1.)

The particles ut, utpote, quippe, as, are often used in conjunction with the Relative; for their range, see 626, N. 1.

(Caninius) fuit mīrificā vigilantiā quī suō tōtō cōnsulātū somnum nōn viderit, C., Fam., vii. 30, 1; Caninius has shown marvellous watchfulness, not to have seen (= taken a wink of) sleep in his whole consulship. Ō fortūnāte adulēscēns, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēneršs! C., Arch., 10, 24; lucky youth! to have found a crier (= trunpeter) of your valor (in) Homer! Māior glōria in Scīpiōne, Quīnctiī recentior ut quī cō annō triumphāsset, L., XXXV. 10, 5; Scipio's glory was greater, Quinctius' was fresher, as (was to be expected in) a man who (inasmuch as he) had triumphed in that year.

REMARK.—On the use of the Indic. after quippe, etc., see 626, n. 1. On the sequence of tenses, see 513, n. 3.

**634.** Relative in a Concessive or Adversative Sense.—Qui is sometimes used as equivalent to cum is in a Concessive or Adversative Sense.

Ego qui leviter Graecas litteras attigissem, tamen cum vēnissem Athēnas complūrēs ibi dies sum commoratus, C., Or., 1. 18, 82; although I had dabbled but slightly in Greek, nevertheless, having come to Athens, I stayed there several days.

Note.—The Indic. is the rule for this construction in early Latin (580, N. 1).

**635.** Relative and Infinitive.—The Accusative and Infinitive may be used in Örātiō Oblīqua after a Relative, when the Relative is to be resolved into a Coördinating Conjunction and the Demonstrative.

(Philosophī cēnsent) ūnum quemque nostrum mundī esse partem, ex quō illud nātūrā cēnsequī ut commūnem ūtilitātem nostrae antepēnāmus, C.,

Fin., III. 19, 64; philosophers hold that every one of us is a part of the universe, and that the natural consequence of this is for us to prefer the common welfare to our own.

Notes. -1. This usage is not cited earlier than CICERO, and seems to be found principally there, with sporadic examples from other authors.

2. Occasional examples are also found of the Inf. after etsi (Livy), quamquam (TAC.), in the sense and yet; cum interim (LIVY), quia (SEN.), nisi (TAC.), sī non (LIVY); and after quem admodum, ut (CIC., LIVY, TAC.), in comparative sentences.

636. Combination of Relative Sentences.—Relative Sentences are combined by means of Copulative Conjunctions only when they are actually coordinate.

When the second Relative would stand in the same case as the first, it is commonly omitted (a).

When it would stand in a different case (b), the Demonstrative is often substituted (c); or, if the case be the Nominative (d) or Accusative (e), the Relative may be omitted altogether.

(a) Dumnorix qui principatum obtinebat ac plebi acceptus erat (CAES., B.G.,

Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and (who) was acceptable to the commons;

- (b) Dumnorix qui principatum obtinebat cuique plebs favebat, Dumnoris, who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons favored:
- (c) Dumnorix qui principatum obtinebat eique plebs favebat. Dumnoria, who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons favored;
- (d) Dumnorix quem plebs diligebat et principatum obtinebat,
- Dumnorix, whom the commons loved, and (who) held the chieftaincy: (e) Dumnorix qui principatum obtinebat et plebs diligebat, Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and (whom) the commons loved.

Examples: (a) CAES., B. G., IV. 34, 4; (b) C., Lael., 23, 87; Tusc., I. 30, 72; (c) C., Br., 74, 258; Tusc., v. 13, 38; (e) C., Off., H. 6, 21; L., X. 29, 3; (d) S., Iug., 101, 5; Ter., Ad., 85.

Notes.-1. The insertion of a demonstrative is almost confined to early Latin, LUCRETIUS, and CICERO. CAESAR and SALLUST have no examples, and LIVY very few. On the other hand, the use of a relative by zeugma (690) in connection with two or more verbs governing different cases is found at all periods.

2. (a) The Relative is not combined with adversative or illative conjunctions (but who, who therefore) except at the beginning of a sentence, when it represents a following demonstrative or anticipates it (620).

Qui fortis est, idem fidens est; qui autem fidens est, is non extimescit C., Tusc., III. 7, 14; he who is brave is confident, but he who is confident is not afraid.

(b) Sed quī, quī tamen, can be used in antithesis to adjectives.

Sophron mimorum quidem scriptor sed quem Plato probavit, Quint., I. 10, 17; Sophron, a writer of mimes, 'tis true, but (one) that Plato approved.

(c) Qui tamen may be added to explain a foregoing statement.

Causam tibī exposuimus Ephesī, quam tū tamen cōram facilius cōgnōscēs, C., Fam., XIII. 55, 1.

3. Two or more Relative clauses may be connected with the same antecedent when the one serves to complete the idea of the principal clause, the other to modify it:

Illa vīs quae invēstīgat occulta, quae inventiō dīcitur, C., Tusc., 1. 25, 61; the faculty that tracks out hidden things, which is called (the faculty of) research.

4. The Relative is often repeated by anaphora (682) for stylistic reasons. Compare C., Tusc., 1. 25, 62; Planc., 33, 81; L., XXIII. 14, 3.

**637.** Relative Sentence represented by a Participle.—The Relative sentence is sometimes represented by a Participle, but generally the Participle expresses a closer connection than the mere explanatory Relative.

Omněs aliud agentěs, aliud simulantěs perfidi (sunt), C., Off., III. 14, 60; all who are driving at one thing and pretending another are treacherous. [Pisistratus] Homěri librös cönfüsös antež sic disposuisse dicitur ut nunc habēmus, C., Or., III. 34, 137; Pisistratus is said to have arranged the books of Homer, which were (whereas they were) in confusion before, as we have them now.

## COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.

- **638.** A peculiar phase of the Relative sentence is the Comparative, which is introduced in English by as or than, in Latin by a great variety of relative forms:
  - (a) By correlatives; (b) by atque or āc; (c) by quam.
- **639.** Moods in Comparative Sentences.—The mood of the Dependent clause is the Indicative, unless the Subjunctive is required by the laws of oblique relation, or by the conditional idea (602).

REMARK.—On potius quam with the Subjv., see below, 644, R. 3.

**640.** The dependent clause often borrows its verb from the leading clause. Compare 602.

Ignorātio futūrorum malorum ūtilior est quam scientia, C., Div., II. 9, 23 (296). Servī moribus īsdem erant quibus dominus, Cf. C., Verr., III. 25, 62; the servants had the same character as the master.

641. When the dependent clause (or standard of comparison) borrows its verb from the leading clause, the dependent clause is treated as a part of the leading clause; and if the first or leading clause stands in the Accusative with the Infinitive, the second or dependent clause must have the Accusative likewise.

Ita sentio Latinam linguam locuplotiorem esse quam Graecam, C., Fin., 1. 3, 10; it is my opinion that the Latin language is richer than the

Greek. Ego Gāium Caesarem non eadem de re publica sentīre quae me scio, C., Pis., 32, 79; I know that Gaius Caesar has not the same political views that I (have).

## I. Correlative Comparative Sentences.

- **642.** Correlative Sentences of Comparison are introduced by Adjective and Adverbial Correlatives:
  - 1. Adjective correlatives:

tot, totidem	quot,	(so) as many
tantus .	quantus,	(so) as great
tālis	quālis,	such as.
īdem	quī,	the same

# 2. Adverbial correlatives:

Quot hominēs, tot sententiae, (as) many men, (so) many minds, Ter., Ph., 454. Frümentum tantī fuit quantī iste aestimāvit, C., Verr., III. 84, 194; corn was worth as much as he valued it. Plērīque habēre amīcum tālem volunt, quālēs ipsī esse non possunt, C., Lael., 22, 82; most people wish to have a friend of a character such as they themselves cannot possess. Cimōn incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suus, Nep., v. 3, 1 (310). Nihil est tam populāre quam bonitās, C., Lig., 12, 37; nothing is so winning as kindness. Sīc dē ambitione quōmodo dē amīcā queruntur, Sen., E. M., 22, 10; they complain of ambition as they do of a sweetheart. Tamdiū requiēscō quamdiū ad tē scrībō, C., Att., Ix. 4, 1; I rest as long as I am writing to you. Optō ut ita cuīque ēveniat, ut dē rē pūblicā quisque mereātur, C., Ph., II. 46, 119; I wish each one's fortune to be such as he deserves of the state.

# 3. The Correlative is sometimes omitted.

Homő, non quam isti sunt, glöriösus, L., XXXV. 49, 7; a man, not (so) vainglorious as they are. Disces quamdiū volēs, C., Off., I. 1, 2; you shall learn (as long) as you wish.

Remarks.—1. Instead of idem qui, idem ut is sometimes found.

Disputātionem exponimus eisdem fere verbīs ut āctum disputātumque

est, C., Tusc. II. 3, 9; we are setting forth the discussion in very much the same words in which it was actually carried on.

On idem with atque, ac, et, see 643; on idem with Dat., see 359, N. 6; on idem with cum, see 310, R. 2.

2. (a) The more—the more, may be translated by quō (quisque)—eō, and the like, with the comparatives; but usually by ut (quisque), quam—ita, tam, etc., with the superlative, especially when the subj. is indefinite.

Tanto brevius omne quanto felicius tempus, PLINY, Ep., VIII. 14, 10; time is the shorter, the happier it is. Quam citissime conficies, tam māxime expediet, Cato, Agr., 64, 2; the quicker the better. Ut quisque sibi plūrimum confidit, ita māxime excellit, C., Lael., 9, 30; the more a man trusts himself, the more he excels.

- (b) When the predicate is the same, one member often coalesces with the other: Optimum quidque rārissimum est, C., Fin., II. 25, 81 (318, 2), = ut quidque optimum est, ita rārissimum.
- 3. Ut—ita is often used adversatively (482, 4). On ita—ut, in asseverations, see 262.
- 4. Ut and pro eō ut are frequently used in a limiting or causal sense, so far as, inasmuch as; prō eō ut temporum difficultās tulit (C., Verr., III. 54, 126), so far as the hard times permitted; ut tum rēs erant, as things were then; ut temporibus illīs (C., Verr., III. 54, 125), for those times; ut erat fariōsus (C., Rosc. Am., 12, 33), stark mad as he was; ut Siculī (C., Tusc., I. 8, 15), as (is, was, to be expected of) Sicilians.

Vir ut inter Aetölös fācundus, L., xxxII. 33, 9; a man of eloquence for an Aetolian. Ut sunt hūmāna, nihil est perpetuom datum, Pl., Cist., 194; as the world wags, nothing is given for good and all.

5. On quam, quantus, and the Superlative, see 303.

Notice in this connection quam qui, ut qui, and the like, with the Superlative (usually māximē):

Tam sum amicus rei pūblicae quam qui māximē (= est), C., Fam., v. 2, 6; I am as devoted a friend to the state as he who is most (= as any man). Proelium, ut quod māximē umquam, commissum est, L., vii. 33, 5. Domus celebrātur ita, ut cum māximē, C., Q.F., ii. 4, 6.

6. The Correlative forms do not always correspond exactly. Subeunda dimicătio totions, quot coniurati superessent, L., II. 13, 2.

# II. Comparative Sentences with ATQUE (AC).

643. Adjectives and Adverbs of Likeness and Unlikeness may take atque or āc.

Virtūs eadem in homine āc deō est, C., Leg., I. 8, 25; virtue is the same in man as in god. Date operam nē similī ūtāmur fortūnā atque ūsī sumus, Ter., Ph., 30; do your endeavor that we have not (ill)-luck like that we had before. Dissimulātiō est cum alia dīcuntur āc sentiās, C.,

Or., II. 67, 269; dissimulation is when other things are said than what you mean (something is said other than what you mean). Similiter (602, R. 2) facis āc sī mē rogēs cūr tē duōbus contuear oculis, et nōn alterō cōnīveam, C., N.D., III. 3, 8; you are acting (like) as if you were to ask me why I am looking at you with two eyes, and not blinking with one. Nōn dīxī secus āc sentiēbam, C., Or., II. 6, 24; I did not speak otherwise than I thought.

Notes.—1. The expression is commonly explained by an ellipsis: Aliter dixi atque [aliter] sentiobam, I spoke one way and yet I was thinking another way.

So we find: Timeō nē aliud crēdam atque aliud nūntiēs, Ter., Hec., 844; I

fear that I believe one thing, and you are telling another.

2. Instead of atque, et is sometimes used; this is not common, but the greater proportion of cases occurs in the classical period: Solet enim aliud sentire et loqui, C., Fam., VIII. 1, 3; for he has a way of thinking one thing and saying another.

3. These words are principally: aequos, par, pariter, idem, iuxta (from the classical period on), perinde, proinde, pro eō; alius, aliter, secus (usually with a negative), contra, contrarius, similis, dissimilis, simul; and rarely item, talis, totidem, proximē, and a few others. Plautus uses thus some words which involve a similar meaning, as (dō)mūtāre (M.G., 1130). Compare also M.G., 763; B., 725.

4. Alius and secus have quam occasionally at all periods. On the other hand, non alius and other negative combinations seldom have atque, commonly quam or nisi. After negative forms of alius Cicero has regularly nisi, occasionally practer.

Philosophia quid est aliud (= nihil est aliud) nisi donum deorum ? C., Tusc., 1. 26, 64; philosophy—what else is it but the gift of the gods?

## III. Comparative Sentences with QUAM.

644. Comparative Sentences with quam follow the comparative degree or comparative expressions.

The Verb of the dependent clause is commonly to be supplied from the leading clause, according to 640.

In Comparative Sentences quam takes the same case after it as before it.

Melior tūtiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria, L., xxx. 30, 19 (307, R. 1). Potius amīeum quam dictum perdidī, Quint., vi. 3, 20: I preferred to lose my friend rather than my joke. Velim existimēs nēminem cuīquam cāriōrem umquam fuisse quam tē mihī, C., Fam., 1. 9, 24 (546, R. 1).

REMARKS.—I. When the second member is a subj, and the first member an oblique case, the second member must be put in the Nom., with the proper form of the verb esse, unless the oblique case be an Accusative:

Vicinus tuus equum meliörem habet quam tuus est, Cf. C., Inv., 1. 31, 52 (596). Ego hominem callidiörem vidi nēminem quam Phormiönem, Ter., Ph., 591; I have seen no shrewder man than Phormio (= quam Phormiö est). Tibĭ, multō māiōrī quam Āfricānus fuit, mē nōn multō minōrem quam Laelium adiūnctum esse patere, Cf. C., Fam., v. 7, 3.

- On quam pro, and quam qui, see 298. On the double comparative, see 299.
- 3. (a) When two clauses are compared by **potius**, rather, **prius**, before, **citius**, quicker, sooner, the second clause is put in the Pr. or Impf. Subjy. (512), with or (in Cicero regularly) without **ut**,

Dēpūgnā potius quam serviās, C., Att., VII. 7, 7 (577, N. 6). (Dixērunt) sē mīliēns moritūrōs potius quam ut tantum dēdecoris admittī patiantur, II., IV. 2, 8; they said that they would rather die a thousand times than (to) suffer such a disgrace to slip in. Moritūrōs sē affīrmābant citius quam in aliēnōs mōrēs verterentur, II., XXIV. 3, 12; they declared that they had rather die, than let themselves be changed to foreign ways.

(b) If the leading clause is in the Inf., the dependent clause may be in the Inf. likewise, and this is the regular construction in classical Latin when the Inf. follows a verb of Will and Desire; CICERO uses the Inf. regularly, CAESAR generally, though examples of the simple Subjv. are not uncommon in both; LIVY is very fond of the Subjv., especially with ut, which is cited first from him.

Se ab omnibus desertos potius quam abs te defensos esse mālunt, C., Div. in Caec., 6, 21; they prefer to be deserted by all rather than defended by you.

Notes.—1. Instead of tam-quam, so—as, the Roman prefers the combinations non minus quam—non magis quam (by Litotes).

(a) Non minus quam means no less than = quite as much:

Patria hominibus non minus quam liberi cara esse debet, (Cf. C.,) Fam., iv. 5,2; country ought to be no less dear to men than children (= quite as dear as).

The meaning as little as is cited only from Ter., Hec., 647: non tibi illud factum minus placet quam mihi, where not less than = quite as much as = as little as.

(b) Non magis quam means quite as little, or quite as much :

Animus non magis est sānus quam corpus,  $\mathit{Of.C.}$ ,  $\mathit{Tusc.}$ ,  $\mathit{III.5}$ ,  $\mathit{10}$ ;  $\mathit{the mind}$  is no more sound than the body = as little sound as the body. (Or it might mean: The mind is no more sound than the body = the body is quite as sound as the mind.)

So with other comparatives.

Fabius non in armis praestantior fuit quam in togā, Cf. C., Cat.M., 4, 11; Fabius was not more distinguished in war than in peace (no less distinguished in peace than in war, quite as distinguished in peace as in war).

2. After a negative comparative, atque is occasionally found for quam in Plautus, Terence, Catullus, Vergil; much more often in Horace (nine times in the Satires, twice in the Epodes), who uses it also after a positive.

Non Apollinis magis vērum atque hoc responsumst, Ter., And., 698. IIII non minus āc tibī pectore ūritur intimo flamma, Cat., Lxi. 176. (f. H., S., II. 7, 96.

## THE ABRIDGED SENTENCE.

645. The compound sentence may be reduced to a simple sentence, by substituting an Infinitive or a Participle for the dependent clause.

#### THE INFINITIVE AND INFINITIVE FORMS.

**646.** The practical uses of the Infinitive and its kindred forms, as equivalents of dependent clauses, have already been considered:

Infinitive after Verbs of Creation: 423.

Gerund and Gerundive: 425-433.

Supine: 434-436.

Infinitive in Object Sentences: 526-531.

Infinitive in Complementary Final Sentences: 532.

Infinitive in Relative Sentences: 635.

Note.—Under the head of the Abridged Sentence will be treated the Historical Infinitive and Orātio Obliqua; the Historical Infinitive, because it is a compendious Imperfect: Orātio Obliqua, because it foreshortens, if it does not actually abridge, and effaces the finer distinctions of Orātio Rēcta.

#### HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.

647. The Infinitive of the Present is sometimes used by the historians to give a rapid sequence of events, with the subject in the Nominative; generally, several Infinitives in succession.

(Verres) minitari Diodoro, vociferari palam, lacrimas interdum vix tenere, C., Verr., IV. 18, 39; Verres threatened (was for threatening) Diodorus, bawled out before everybody, sometimes could hardly restrain his tears.

Notes.—1. The ancient assumption of an ellipsis of coepit, began (Quint., ix. 3, 58), serves to show the conception, although it does not explain the construction, which has not yet received a convincing explanation. A curious parallel is de with Infinitive in French. The Final Infinitive (to be) for, may help the conception, as it sometimes does the translation. It takes the place of the Imperfect, is used chiefly in rapid passages, and gives the outline of the thought, and not the details; it has regularly the sequence of a Past tense.

2. The Historical Infinitive is sometimes found after cum, ubi, etc. See S., Iug., 98, 2; L., III. 37, 6; TAC., Ann., II. 4, 4; II., III. 31; Ann., III. 26, 2. No examples are cited from Cicero and Caesar; this usage is characteristic of Tacitus.

# ÓRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA.

648. The thoughts of the narrator, or the exact words of a person, as reported by the narrator, are called **Ōrātiō Rēcta**, or Direct Discourse.

Indirect Discourse, or Örätiö Obliqua, reports not the exact words spoken, but the general impression produced.

REMARKS .- I. Under the general head of Oratio Obliqua are em-

braced also those clauses which imply Indirect Quotation (Partial Obliquity). See 508.

2. Inquam, quoth I, is used in citing the Örātiō Rēcta; āiō, I say, generally in Örātiō Oblīqua. Inquam never precedes the Örātiō Oblīqua, but is always parenthetic; āiō may or may not be parenthetic. Ōrātiō Rēcta may also be cited by a parenthetic "ut ait," "ut āiunt," rarely ait, (as) he says, (as) they say. The subject of inquit often precedes the quotation, but when it is mentioned in the parenthesis it is almost always put after the verb.

Tum Cotta: rūmōribus mēcum, inquit, pūgnās, C., N.D., III. 5, 13 (484). Aliquot somnia vēra, inquit Ennius, C., Div., II. 62, 127; "some dreams are true," quoth Ennius.

3. The lacking forms of inquam are supplied by forms of dicere.

649. Ōrātiō Oblīqua differs from Ōrātiō Rēcta, partly in the use of the Moods and Tenses, partly in the use of the pronouns.

Notes.—1. It must be remembered that as a rule the Roman thought immediately in  $\tilde{\mathbf{0}}$ ,  $\mathbf{0}$ ,, and did not think first in  $\tilde{\mathbf{0}}$ ,  $\mathbf{R}$ , and then transfer to  $\tilde{\mathbf{0}}$ ,  $\mathbf{0}$ ,; also that  $\tilde{\mathbf{0}}$ ,  $\mathbf{0}$ , is necessarily less accurate in its conception than  $\tilde{\mathbf{0}}$ ,  $\mathbf{R}$ ,, and hence it is not always possible to construct the  $\tilde{\mathbf{0}}$ ,  $\mathbf{R}$ , from the  $\tilde{\mathbf{0}}$ ,  $\mathbf{0}$ , with perfect certainty. What is ideal to the speaker may become unreal to the narrator, from his knowledge of the result, and hence, when accuracy is aimed at, the narrator takes the point of view of the speaker, and in the last resort passes over to  $\tilde{\mathbf{0}}$ . Recta.

2. O. Obliqua often comes in without any formal notice, and the governing verb has

often to be supplied from the context, sometimes from a preceding negative.

(Rēgulus) sententiam nē dīceret recūsāvit; (saying that) quam diū iūre iūrandō hostium tenērētur, nōn esse sē senātōrem, C., Off., III. 27, 100.

(Îdem Rēgulus) reddî captīvos negāvit esse ūtile; (saying that) illos enim

adulescentes esse, se iam confectum senectute, 16.

Sometimes, after a long stretch of \(\bar{0}\). Obliqua, the writer suddenly shifts to the \(\bar{0}\). R\(\bar{e}\)cta. Examples: C., Tusc., 11. 25, 61; L., 11. 7, 9, etc.

# Moods in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

650. In Ōrātiō Obliqua the principal clauses (except Interrogatives and Imperatives) are put in the *Infinitive*, the subordinate clauses in the Subjunctive.

Örātiö Rēcta: Apud Hypanim fluvium, inquit Aristotelēs, Örātiö Oblīqua: Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait

O. B.: besticlae quaedam nascuntur,

Ö. O.: bēstiolās quāsdam nāscī, Ö. R.: quae ünum diem vīvunt,

Ö. O.: quae unum diem vivant, C., Tusc., 1. 39, 94.

0. R. On the river Bog, says Aristotle, little creatures are born, that live (but)

0. 0.—Aristotle says that on the river Boy, one day.

Socrates dicere solebat:

Ö. R. Omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt ēloquentēs,

Ö. O. Omnës in eo quod scirent satis esse eloquentes, C., Or., 1. 14, 63.

0. R. Socrates used to say: "All men are eloquent enough in what they understand."

0. 0. Socrates used to say that all men were eloquent enough in what they under-

REMARK.—When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Indic., the Inf. is used according to the rule for Verbs of Saying and Thinking. When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Subjv., as in the Ideal and Unreal Conditions, special rules are necessary (656).

Otherwise, Subjv. in O. R. continues to be Subjv. in O. O.

Note.—In Caesar, B.C., III. 73, 6, where a principal clause is apparently put in the Subjv., instead of **detrimentum in bonum verteret**, read (fore ut) . . . **verteret**, with Vossius, Dübner, Perrin, Hoffmann. Nep., II. 7, 6, is disputed.

**651.** Interrogative sentences are put in the Subjunctive, according to 467; inasmuch as the verb of Saying involves the verb of Asking.

Ariovistus respondit sẽ prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum: quid sibǐ vellet cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret, CAES., B.G., I. 44, 7; Ariovistus replied that he had come to Gaul before the Roman people; what did he (Caesar) mean by coming into his possessions? (Quid tibǐ vīs?)

Remarks.—I. Indicative Rhetorical Questions (464), being substantially statements, are transferred from the Indic. of  $\bar{\mathbf{0}}$ . R. to the Acc. and Inf. of  $\bar{\mathbf{0}}$ . O. when they are in the First and Third Persons. The Second Person goes into the Subjunctive.

Ö. R. Num possum? Can I?

[No.] 0. 0. Num posse?

CAES., B.G., I. 14; Could he?

Quid est turpius? What is baser? [Nothing.] Quid esse turpius?

CAES., B.G., v. 28, 6; What was baser?

Quō sē repulsōs ab Rōmānīs itūrōs? L., XXXIV. II, 6; whither should they go, if repelled by the Romans? (Quō ibimus?) Cuī nōn appārēre ab eō quī prior arma intulisset iniūriam ortam (esse)? L., XXXII. IO, 6; to whom is it not evident that the wrong began with him, who had been the first to wage war? (Guī nōn appāret?)

Examples are not found in early Latin, are rare in classical period, but are especially common in Livy.

Si bonum dücerent, quid pro noxio damnassent? L., XXVII. 34, 13; if they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty? (Si bonum dücitis, quid pro noxio damnastis?)

The Question in the Second Person often veils an Imperative. Here from Lavy on the Subjv. is the rule.

Nec cëssabant Sabini instare rogitantës quid tererent tempus, L., III. 61, 13. (Ö. R., Quid teritis?)

Exceptions are rare; Subjv. with Third Person, CAES., B.C., I. 32, 3; Inf. with Second Person, L., vi. 39, 10.

2. In Subjv. Rhetorical Questions the Subjv. is either retained or transferred to the Infinitive. The Deliberative Subjv. is always retained.

Quis sibĭ persuādēret sine certā rē Ambiorigem ad ēiusmodī cōnsilium dēscendisse? Caes., B.G., v. 29, 5; who could persuade himself that Ambiorix had proceeded to an extreme measure like that, without (having made) a sure thing (of it)? (Quis sibĭ persuādeat?)

The Inf. form would be the Future: quem sibi persussurum? (659), and is not to be distinguished from the Fut. Indicative.

652. Imperative sentences are put in the Subjunctive, sometimes with, usually without, ut; the Negative is, of course, nē (never ut nē).

Redditur responsum: nondum tempus pugnae esse; castrīs sō tenērent, L., II. 45, 8; there was returned for answer, that it was not yet time to fight, that they must keep within the camp. (ō. R., castrīs vōs tenēte.) (Vercingetorīx) cohortātus est: nē perturbārentur incommodo, CAES., B.G., VII. 29, 1; Vercingetorix comforted them (by saying) that they must not allow themselves to be disconcerted by the disaster. (ō. R., nolīte perturbārī.)

REMARKS.—I. Ut can be used according to 546, after verbs of Will and Desire and their equivalents.

Pythia respondit ut moenibus ligneis se münirent, NEP., II. 2, 6; the Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood.

2. Verbs of Will and Desire, being also verba dicendi, frequently have an ut clause followed by an Acc. with the Inf., the second clause adding a statement to the request.

Ubil õrābant ut sibǐ auxilium ferret ; ad auxilium spemque reliqu<br/>I temporis satis futūrum, Caes.,  $B.\,G.$ , Iv. 16, 5.

## Tenses in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

653. The Tenses of the Infinitive follow the laws already laid down (530):

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

Remark.—The Impf. Indic., as expressing prior continuance, becomes the Pf. Inf. in **0**. **0**., and hence loses its note of continuance.

654. The Tenses of the Subjunctive follow the laws of

sequence (510). The choice is regulated by the point of view of the Reporter, or the point of view of the Speaker.

Note.—By assuming the point of view of the speaker, greater liveliness as well as greater accuracy is imparted to the discourse. This form is technically called **Repraesentātiō**. In Conditional Sentences **Repraesentātiō** often serves to prevent ambiguity. The point of view not unfrequently shifts from reporter to speaker, sometimes in the same sentence; this has the effect of giving additional emphasis to the primary verb, and is therefore common in commands and in favorable alternatives.

### Point of View of the Reporter:

Lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: sibǐ mīrum vidērī quid in suā Galliā quam bellō vīcisset, Caesarī negōtiī esset, Caesa, B.G., I. 34, 4; to the embassy Ariovistus replied, that it seemed strange to him (he wondered) what business Caesar had in his Gaul, which he had conquered in war.

### Point of View of the Speaker:

[Lēgātīs Helvētiōrum] Caesar respondit: cōnsuēsse deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdere, Caes., B.G., I. 14, 5; to the envoys of the Helvetians Cuesar replied, that the gods were (are) wont, that men might (may) suffer the more severely from change in their fortunes, to grant occasional increase of prosperity to those whom they wished (wish) to punish for their crime. (A long passage is L., XXVIII. 32.)

### Point of View shifted:

Ad hace Mārcius respondit: Sī quid ab senātū petere vellent, ab armīs discēdant, S., C., 34, 1; thereto Marcius replied: If they wished to ask anything of the senate, they must lay down their arms.

Proinde aut cederent (undesired alternative) animo atque virtute genti per eos dies totiens ab so victae, aut itineris finem sperent (desired alternative) campum interiacentem Tiberi ec moenibus Romanis, L., XXI. 30, 11; therefore they should either yield in spirit and courage to a nation which during those days they had so often conquered, or they must hope as the end of their march the plain that lies between the Tiber and the walls of Rome.

655. Object, Causal, Temporal, and Relative Clauses follow the general laws for Subordinate Clauses in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

For examples of Object Clauses, see 525; for Causal, see 541; for Temporal, see 561-564, 569-577; for Relative, see 628.

Remarks.—I. Coordinate Relative Clauses are put in the Acc. and Infinitive (635).

- 2. Relative Clauses are put in the Indicative: (a) In mere circumlocutions. (b) In explanations of the narrator (628, R.).
- 3. Dum, with the Indic., is often retained as a mere circumlocution: Dīc, hospes, Spartae nos tē hīc vīdisse iacentīs, dum sānctīs patriae lēgibus obsequimur, C., Tusc., 1. 42, 101; tell Sparta, stranger, that thou hast seen us lying here obeying (in obedience to) our country's hallowed laws.

So also sometimes cum; see C., Lael., 3, 12.

# 656. Conditional Sentences in Ōrātiō Oblīqua, Total and Partial.

- r. The Protasis follows the rule for subordinate clauses (650).
- 2. The Indicative Apodosis follows the rule, but Present, Imperfect, and Perfect Subjunctive are turned into the Future Infinitive or its periphrases.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive is transferred to the Perfect Infinitive of the Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

Passive and Supineless Verbs take the circumlocution with futurum fuisse ut . . . . 248, N. 3.

Remark.—Posse needs no Fut. (248, R.), and potuisse no Periphrastic Pf. Inf., so that these forms are often used to lighten the construction.

- 3. Identical Forms.—In the transfer of Conditions to **0**. **0**., the difference between many forms disappears. For instance,
  - I. 1. Sī id crēdis, errābis.
    - 2. Sī id crēdēs, errābis. Dīcō tē, sī id crēdās, errātūrum esse.

3. Sī id crēdās, errēs.

11. 1. Sī id crēdis, errābis.
 2. Sī id crēdēs, errābis.

rrābis. Dīxī tē, sī id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.

Sī id crēdās, errēs.
 Sī id crēderēs, errārēs.

1 Sī id crādiderīs errāhis

III. 1. Sī id crēdiderīs, errābis.

Sī id crēdiderīs, errēs.
 Sī id crēdiderīs, errāverīs.

Dīxītē, sī id crēdidissēs, erfātūrum esse.

4. Sī id crēdidissēs, errārēs,

Notes .- 1. In No. I. the difference is not vital, though exactness is lost.

2. (a) In No. II. the ambiguity lies practically between 2 and 3; inasmuch as Repraesentātiō is usually employed for the Logical Condition, and the Periphrastic Pf. Inf. is employed in the Unreal, wherever it is possible. The difference between an Unfulfilled Present and an Unfulfilled Past would naturally vanish to the narrator, to whom both are Past.

Ariovistus respondit: sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad illum ventūrum fuisse: sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre, Caes., B. G., I.

34.2; Ariovistus answered, that if he had wanted anything of Caesar he would have come to him; if he (Caesar) wanted anything of him, he ought to come to him (Ariovistus). Õ. R.: sī quid mihī ā Caesare opus esset, ego ad illum vēnissem; sī quid ille mē vult, illum ad mē venīre oportet.

Fatentur se virtūtis causa, nisi ea voluptātem faceret, ne manum quidem versūros fuisse, C, Fin., v. 31, 93; they confess that for virtue's own sake, if it did not cause pleasure, they would not even turn a hand. O.R.; nisi ea voluptātem

faceret në manum quidem verterëmus.

(b) Occasionally in the Logical Condition the Fut. Indic. is changed to the Fut. Periphrastic Subjv., thus: sī adsēnsūrus esset, etiam opinātūrum is an 0.0.

quotation for sī...adsentiētur, opinābitur in C, Ac., II. 21, 67.

3. No. III, like No. II., is used chiefly of the future. But in 3 the periphrases with fore (futurum esse) are commonly employed for the active and the Pf. participle, with fore for the passive. In 4 the same fading out of the difference between Unfulfilled Present and Past occurs as in II.

### 657. Logical Conditions in Orātio Obliqua.

- 1. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet quemadmodum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī, Caes., B.G., I. 36, 2; to this Ariovistus made answer: If he did not prescribe to the Roman people how to exercise their right, he ought not to be hindered by the Roman people in the exercise of his right. (Ō. R.: sī ego nōn praescrībō, nōn oportet mē impedīrī.)
- 2. Sī bonum dücerent, quid pro noxio damnāssent? Sī noxium comperissent, quid alterum (consulātum) crēderent? L, xxvii. 34, 13; if they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty; if, on the other hand, they had found him guilty, why did they intrust him with a second consulship? (O. R.: sī—dūcitis, quid camnāstis? sī—comperistis, quid crēditis?)
- 3. Titurius clāmitābat, suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtam; sī nihil esset (Ō. R.: sī nihil erit) dūrius, nūllō periculō ad proximam legionem perventūrōs (Ō. R.: perveniētis); sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs consentiret (Ō. R.: sī consentit) ūnam esse (Ō. R.: est) in celeritāte positam salūtem, (ʿAES., B.G., v. 29, 6; Titurius kept crying out that his resolution was safe in either case: if there were (should be) no especial pressure, they would get to the next legion without danger; if all Gaul was in league with the Germans, their only safety lay in speed.
- 4. Eum omnium labōrum finem fore existimābant sī hostem Hibērō interclūdere potuissent, Caes., B.C., I. 68, 3; they thought that would be the end of all (their) toils, if they could cut off the enemy from the Ebro. (Ö. R.: is labōrum fīnis erit (or fuerit) sī hostem interclūdere potuerīmus.
- 5. [Hī] Iugurthae non mediocrem animum pollicitando accendebant si Micipsa rex occidisset, fore uti solus imperi Numidiae potīrētur, S., Iug., 8, 1; these persons kindled no little courage in Jugurtha('s heart) by promising over and over that if King Micipsa fell, he alone should possess the rule over Numidia. (Ö. R.: sī Micipsa occiderit, tū solus imperī potiēris.)

- 6. [Fidēs data est] sī Iugurtham vīvom aut necātum sibī trādidisset fore ut illī senātus inpūnitātem et sua omnia concēderet, S., Iug., 61, 5; his word was pledged that if he delivered to him Jugurtha, alive or dead, the senate would grant him impunity, and all that was his. (Ō. R.: sī mihī trādiderīs, tibī senātus tua omnia concēdet.)
- 7. Non multo ante urbem captam exaudita vox est . . . futurum esse, nisi provisum esset, ut Roma caperetur, C., Div., 1. 45, 101; not long before the taking of the city, a voice was heard (saying), that unless precautions were adopted, Rome would be taken. (ō. R.: nisi provisum erit, Roma capietur.)
- Ariovistus respondit sī quid ille sē velit illum ad sē venīre oportēre, CAES., B. G., I. 34, 2 (656, 3, N. 2).
- 9. Ariovistus respondit nisi dēcēdat [Caesar] sēsē illum prō hoste habitūrum; quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum, Caes., B.G., 1. 44, 12; Ariovistus replied, that unless Caesar withdrew, he should regard him as an enemy, and in case he killed him, he would do a favor to many men of the highest position among the Roman people. (Ō. R.: nisi dēcēdēs tē prō hoste habēbō..., sī tē interfēcerō grātum fēcerō; 244, R. 4.)

REMARK.—Posse is used as has been stated (656, 2, R.).

Negārunt dirimī bellum posse nisi Messēniīs Achaeī Pylum redderent, I.., XXVII. 30, 13; they said that the war could not be stopped unless the Achaeans restored Pylos to the Messenians. (Ö. R.: bellum dirimī non potest (poterit) nisi Pylum reddent.)

Docent, sī turris concidisset, non posse mīlitēs continērī quin spē praedae in urbem irrumperent, Caes., B.C., 11. 12, 4; they show that if the tower fell, the soldiers could not be kept from bursting into the city in the hope of booty. (O. R.: sī conciderit, non possunt (poterunt) continērī.)

### 658. Ideal Conditions in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

- 1. Ait sō sī ūrātur "Quam hōc suāve" dictūrum, C., Fin., II. 27, 88; he declares that if he were to be burnt he would say, "How sweet this is." (Ō. R.: sī ūrar, dīcam, same form as Logical.)
- 2. Voluptātem sī ipsa prō sē loquātur concēssūram arbitror Dīgnitātī, C., Fin., III. I, 1; I think that if Pleasure were to speak for herself, she would yield (the palm) to Virtue. The context shows that the condition is Ideal, not Logical. Sī loquātur, concēdat. Compare 596, R. I.

### 659. Unreal Conditions in Oratio Obliqua.

I. Titurius clāmitābat Eburōnēs, sī [Caesar] adesset, ad castra ventūrōs [nōn] esse, CAEs., B.G., v. 29, 2; Titurius kept crying out that if Caesar were there, the Eburones would not be coming to the camp. (Ö. R.: sī Caesar adesset, Eburōnēs non venīrent.) On the rareness of

this form, see 597, R. 4; and even this passage has been emended into ventūrōs sēsē (for esse).

- 2. [Appārēbat] sī diūtius vīxisset, Hamilcare duce Poenōs arma Ītaliae inlātūrōs fuisse, L., xxi. 2, 2; it was evident that if he had lived longer, the Punics would have carried their arms into Italy under Hamilcar's conduct.
- 3. Nisi eð ipső tempore núntil de Caesaris victöria essent allati existimabant plerique futurum fuisse ut (oppidum) amitteretur, Caes., B.C., III. 101, 3; had not news of Caesar's victory been brought at that very time, most persons thought the city would have been lost. (Ö. R.: nisi núntil allati essent, oppidum amissum esset.)

NOTE.—As the Plupf, Indic. is sometimes used (rhetorically) for the Subjv. (254, R. 3), so the ordinary Pf. Inf. is sometimes employed instead of the Periphrastic:

Nemō mihī persuādēbit multōs praestantēs virōs tanta esse cōnātōs (= cōnātūrōs fuisse) nisi animō cernerent (597, R. 1) posteritātem ad sē pertinēre, C., Cat. M., 23, 82; no one will persuade me that (so) many eminent men had made such mighty endeavors, had they not seen with their minds' (eye) that posterity belonged to them. Agrīcola solēbat nārrāre sē prīmā in iuventā studium philosophiae ācrius hausisse (Ō. R.: hauserat), nī prūdentia mātris coercuisset, Cf. Tac., Agr., 4,5; Agrīcola used to relate that in his earliest youth he would have drunk in more eagerly the study of philosophy, had not his mother's prudence restrained him.

So with potuisse:

(Pompēium) plērīque existimant sī ācrius Insequī voluisset bellum eō diē potuisse fīnīre, Caes., B. C., 111. 51, 3; most people think that if Pompey had (but) determined to follow up more energetically, he could have finished the war on that day. (Ö. R.: sī voluisset, potuit, 597, R. 3.) Namque illā multitūdine sī sāna mēns esset (597, R. 1) Graeciae, supplicium Persās dare potuisse, Nep., XVII. 5, 2; for with that number, if Greece had had (had been in her) sound mind, the Persians might have paid the penalty (due). (Ö. R.: sī sāna mēns esset Graeciae, supplicium Persae dare potuērunt.)

### Pronouns in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

- 660. 1. The Reflexive is used according to the principles laid down in 520 ff.
  - 2. The person addressed is usually ille; less often is.

Ariovistus respondit nisi dēcēdat [Caesar] sēsē illum prō hoste habitūrum: quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum, CAES., B.G., 1. 44, 12 (657, 9).

Of course, this does not exclude the ordinary demonstrative use.

3. Hic and iste are commonly changed into ille or is, nunc is changed into tum and tune, except when already contrasted with tune, when it is retained (S., Iug., 109, 3; 111, 1).

Diodōrus [respondit] illud argentum sē paucīs illīs diēbus mīsisse Lilybaeum, C., Verr., IV. 18, 39 (393, R. 4).

- 4. Nos is used when the narrator's party is referred to; compare CAES., B. G., I. 44, below.
- 5. **Ipse** seems to be used sometimes in  $\bar{\mathbf{0}}$ . **0**. with reference to the principal subject, as contrasted with the person addressed. Usually, however, **ipse** would have occurred in the  $\bar{\mathbf{0}}$ . **R**. as well.

Ariovistus respondit: Sī ipse populō Rōmānō non praescrīberet, quemadmodum suō iūre ūterētur, non oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedirī, Caes., B.G., i. 36, 2 (657).

661. Specimens of the conversion of Ōrātiō Oblīqua into Ōrātiō Rēcta.

#### Orātio Obliqua.

Örātiö Rēcta.

I. Ariovistus respondit :

Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē non suā sponte sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; non sine māgnā spē māgnīsque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sedes habere in Gallia ab ipsīs concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere iure belli, quod victores victis imponere consuerint. Non sēsē Gallīs sed Gallos sibī bellum intulisse; omnes Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse et contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs copiās ā sē ūno proelio pulsās āc superātās esse. Sī iterum experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse decertare; si pace uti velint, iniquum esse de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad id tempus pependerint. Amīcitiam populī Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse oportere idque sē eā spē petīsse. Sī per populum Romanum stipendium remittātur et dēditīciī subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese recūsātūrum populī Romānī amīcitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitūdinem Germanorum in Galliam traducat, id se sui müniendi, non Galliae impūgnandae causā facere; ēius reī tēstimōniō esse quod nisi rogātus non vēnerit et quod bellum non intulerit sed defenderit.

CAES., B.G., 1. 44.

Trānsiī Rhēnum non meā sponte sed rogātus et arcessītus ā Gallīs; non sine māgnā spē māgnīsque praemiis domum propinguosque relīquī; sēdēs habeo in Gallia ab ipsīs concēssās, obsidēs ipsorum voluntāte datos; stīpendium capio iūre bellī, quod victorēs victīs imponere consuerunt. Non ego Gallīs sed Gallī mihī bellum intulērunt; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad mē oppūgnandum vēnērunt et contrā mē castra habuērunt; eae omnës copiae a me uno proelio pulsae āc superātae sunt. Šī iterum experīrī volunt, iterum parātus sum decertare, si pace uti volunt, iniquum est de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad hoc tempus pepend*erunt*. Amīcitiam populī Romani mihi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse oportet idque ea spē petiī. Sī per populum Romanum stipendium remittetur et deditīciī subtrahentur, non minus libenter recūsābō populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetiī. Quod multitūdinem Germānorum in Galliam trādūcam,\* id meī mūniendī, non Galliae impūgnandae causā faciō; ēius reī tēstimonio est quod nisi rogātus non vēnī et quod bellum non intuli sed defendi.

<sup>\*</sup> Allusion to the preceding speech, otherwise traduco.

### Örātiö Oblīqua.

2. Hīs Caesar ita respondit:

Eō sibi minus dubitātionis darī quod eas res quas legati Helvetii commemorāssent memoriā tenēret atque eo gravius ferre quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent; quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibī conscius fuisset non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eō dēceptum quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quārē timēret neque sine causā timendum putaret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eo invito iter per provinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent memoriam dēponere posse? Quod suā victoriā tam īnsolenter gloriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne tulisse iniūriās admīrārentur eōdem pertinere. Consuesse enim deos immortālēs quo gravius hominēs ex commūtātione rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere corum ulcīsci velint, hīs secundiores interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ab iīs sibī dentur, uti ea quae polliceantur factūros intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriis quās ipsīs sociisque eorum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum its pācem esse factūrum.

CAES., B.G., I. 14.

#### Ōrātiō Rēcta.

Hoc mihi minus dubitātionis datur quod eas res quas vos, legati Helvētii, commemorāstis, memoriā teneo atque hoc gravius fero quo minus meritō populī Romānī accidērunt; quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibī conscius fuisset, non fuit difficile cavere: sed eo deceptus quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēbat quare timeret neque sine causa timendum putābat. Quod sī veteris contumeliae oblivisci volo, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod mē invīto iter per provinciam per vim temptāstis, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Aliobrogas vexãstis, memoriam deponere possum? Quod vestrā victōriā tam īnsolenter gloriamini, quodque tam diū vos impūne tulisse iniūriās admīrāmini pertinet. Consueverunt enim dī immortālēs quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātione rērum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcīscī volunt, his secundiores interdum res et diūturniorem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum haec ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vobīs mihī dabuntur, utī ea, quae pollicēminī, factūros intellegam et sī Aeduis de iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eorum intulistis, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, ego vobiscum pācem faciam.

3. Sulla rēgī patefēcit:

Quod polliceātur, senātum et populum Romānum, quoniam amplius armīs valuissent, non in grātiam habitūrās; faciundum aliquid, quod illorum magis quam suā rētulisse vidērētur; id ideo in promptū esse, quoniam Iugurthae copiam habēret, quem sī Romānīs trādidisset, fore ut illī plūrimum dēbērētur; amīcitiam, foedus, Numidiae partem, quam nune peteret, tune ūltro adventūram.

S., Iug., 111.

Quod pollicēris, senātus et populus Rōmānus quoniam amplius armīs valuērunt, nōn in grātiam habēbunt; faciundum aliquid, quod illōrum magis quam tuā rētulisse videātur; id ideō in prōmptū est, quoniam Iugurthae cōpiam habēs, quem sī Rōmānīs trādideris tibī plūrimum dēbēbitur; amīcitia, foedus, Numidiae pars, quam nunc petis, tunc ūltrō adveniet.

### Örātiö Obliqua.

Ōrātiō Rēcta.

4. Athēnienses deploraverunt vāstātionem populātionemque miserābilem agrorum. Neque sē id queri quod hostilia ab hoste passi forent; esse enim quaedam belli iūra quae ut facere ita patī sit fās. Sata exūrī, dīruī tēcta, praedās hominum pecorumque agī misera magis quam indigna patienti esse; vērum enim vēro id sē querī, quod is, qui Romanos alienigenas et barbaros vocet, adeo omnia simul divīna hūmānaque iūra polluerit ut priore populatione cum Infernis diis, secunda cum superis bellum nefārium gesserit. Omnia sepulcra monumentaque diruta esse in fīnibus suīs, omnium nūdātās mānēs, nūllīus ossa terrā tegī. Qualem terram Atticam fecerit, exornātam quondam opulentamque, tālem eum sī liceat Aetoliam Graeciamque omnem factūrum. Urbis quoque suae similem deformitātem futūram fuisse, nisi Romānī subvēnissent.

Non id querimur quod hostilia ab hoste passī sumus. Sunt enim quaedam belli iūra quae ut facere ita patī est fās. Sata exūrī, dīruī. tēcta, praedās hominum pecorumque agi misera magis quam indigna patienti sunt; vērum enim vēro id querimur quod is, qui Romanos alienigenās et barbaros vocat, adeo omnia simul divina hūmānaque iūra polluit ut priore populātione cum infernis diis, secunda cum superis bellum nefārium gesserit. Omnia sepulcra monumentaque diruta sunt in finibus nostrīs, omnium nūdātī mānēs, nūllīus ossa terrā teguntur. Qualem terram Atticam fēcit, exornātam quondam opulentamque, tālem is, sī licēbit (or: liceat) Aetoliam Graeciamque omnem faciet (or: faciat). Urbis quoque nostrae similis deformitas fuisset, nisi Romani subvenissent.

L., XXXI. 30.

### INVOLVED ÖRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA. ATTRACTION OF MOOD.

662. Orātio Oblīqua proper depends on some verb of Thinking or Saying, expressed or understood. In a more general sense the term 0. Obliqua is used of all complementary clauses that belong to ideal relations. The principle is the same in both sets of sentences, for in the one, as in the other, the Infinitive takes its dependencies in the Subjunctive, on account of the close relation between the Ideal mood and the Substantive Idea of the verb. Hence the favorite combination of the Infinitive and the Ideal Second person:

Difficile est amicitiam manere si a virtute defeceris, C., Lael., 11, 37; it is hard for friendship to abide if you (one) have fallen away from virtue. Proprium hūmānī ingeniī est odisse quem laeseris, TAC., Agr., 42, 4: it is (peculiar to) human nature to hate whom you have injured. (But ödistī quem laesistī.)

The so-called attraction of mood, by which clauses originally Indicative become Subjunctive in dependence on Subjunctives, is another phase of the same general principle.

663. 1. All clauses which depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive (Subjunctive by Attraction).

Recordatione nostrae amicitiae sic fruor ut beate vixisse videar quia cum Scipione vixerim, C., Lael., 4, 15: I enjoy the remembrance of our friendship so much that I seem to have lived happily because I lived with Scipio. Vereor në dum minuere velim laborem augeam, C., Leg., I, 4, 12; I fear lest while I am wishing to lessen the toil I may increase it (dum minuere volo, augeo). Isto bono ūtare dum adsit, cum absit, ne requiras, C., Cat. M., 10, 33 (263, 2, a). Quārē fiebat ut omnium oculos quotiescumque in publicum prodisset ad se converteret, NEP., VII. 3, 5 (567; quotiescumque prodierat convertebat). Nescire quid antequam natus sis acciderit, id est semper esse puerum, C., Or., 34, 120; not to know what happened before you were born, (that) is to be always a boy. Fraus fidem in parvis sibi praestruit ut cum operae pretium sit, cum mercēde māgnā fallat, L., XXVIII. 42, 7; fraud lays itself a foundation of credit in small things in order that when it is worth while it may make a great profit by cheating. [Araneolae] rete texunt ut sī quid inhaeserit conficiant, C., N.D., H. 48, 123 (567; sī quid inhaesit conficiunt). Abeunti sī quid poposcerit concedere moris, TAC., G., 21, 4; to the departing (quest) it is customary to grant anything that he asks (sī quid poposcit concedunt).

Notes.—1. **Dum** not unfrequently resists the Attraction both in prose and poetry: **Tantum në noceās dum vīs prodesse vidēto**, Ov., Tr., i. i., 101 (548). 2. On the retention of the Indic. in Relative clauses, see 628, R.

- 2. Partial Obliquity.—(a) From this it is easy to see how the Subjunctive came to be used in a Generic or Iterative sense after Tenses of Continuance. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative may all involve the Notion of Habit, Will, Inclination, Endeavor, and the complementary clauses would follow the sense rather than the form. For examples, see 567, N.
- (b) So also is explained the use of the Subjunctive in Causal Sentences, and especially in Conditional Sentences, where the Apodosis is embodied in the leading verb.

(Iugurtha) timēbat īram senātūs (= nē frāscerētur senātus) nī pāruisset lēgātīs, S., Iug., 25, 7 (601). [Ubiīs] auxilium suum (= sē auxiliātūrum) pollicitus est, sī ab Suēbīs premerentur, CAES., B.G., IV. 19, 1. Praetor aedem (= sē aedificātūrum) Diovī vōvit sī eō diē hostīs fūdisset, L., XXXI. 21, 12.

The idea of 0. 0. is shown in the tense:

Sī per Metellum licitum esset mātrēs veniēbant (= ventūrae erant), C., Verr., v. 49, 129. [Dictātor] ad hostem dūcit nūllō locō nisi necessitās cogeret fortūnae sē commissūrus, L., XXII. 12, 2 (438, N.).

### PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES.

664. Participles are used in Latin even more extensively than in English, to express a great variety of subordinate relations, such as Time and Circumstance, Cause and Occasion, Condition and Concession. The classification cannot always be exact, as one kind blends with another.

Remarks.—1. It is sometimes convenient to translate a Participial Sentence by a coördinate clause, but the Participle itself is never coördinate, and such clauses are never equivalents. (410, R. 2.)

Mānlius Gallum caesum torque spoliāvit, L., vi. 42, 5; Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his neckchain (after slaying the Gaul stripped him of his neckchain, having slain, etc.). (Miltiadēs) capitis absolūtus, pecūniā multātus est, Nep., i. 7, 6; Miltiades (though) acquitted of a capital charge, was mulcted in (a sum of) money (was acquitted, but mulcted).

2. A common translation of the Participle is an abstract substantive; see 325, R. 3; 437, N. 2.

Nec terra mūtāta mūtāvit mōrēs, L., XXXVII. 54, 18; nor hath the change of land changed the character. Teucer Ulixēn reum facit Āiācis occīsī, QUINT., IV. 2, 13; Teucer indicts Ulysses for the murder of Ajax. Inter haec parāta atque dēcrēta, S., C., 43, 3.

3. On the Participle after verbs of Perception and Representation, see 536.

### 665. Participles may represent Time When.

Alexander moriens anulum suum dederat Perdiccae, Nep., xvIII. 2, 1; Alexander (when he was) dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas. Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsis expulsus Corinthi pueros docebat, C., Tuse., III. 12, 27; Dionysius the tyrant, (after he had been) exiled from Syracuse (after his exile from Syracuse), taught (a) boys' (school) at Corinth.

### Ablative Absolute.

(Solon et Pisistratus) Servio Tullio regnante viguerunt, C., Br., 10, 39; Solon and Pisistratus flourished when Servius Tullius was king (in the reign of Servius Tullius). Sole orto Volsci se circumvallatos viderunt, Cf. L., IV. 9, 13; when the sun was risen (after sunrise), the Volscians saw that they were surrounded by lines of intrenchment.

Notes.-1. On the Abl. Abs. of the simple Participle, see 410, N. 4.

2. Suetonius uses the Abl. Abs. as well as the simple Participle with ante (prius) quam: (Tiberius) excēssum Augustī non prius palam fēcit quam Agrippā iuvene interēmptō, Tib., 22; see also Iul., 58.

### 666. Participles may represent Cause Why.

Arēopagītae damnāvērunt puerum coturnīcum oculos ēruentem, Cf. Quint., v. 9, 13; the court of Mars' Hill condemned a boy for plucking out (because he plucked out) the eyes of quails. Athēniēnsēs Alcibiadem corruptum ā rēge Persārum capere noluisse Cymēn arguēbant, Cf. Nep., VII. 7, 2; the Athenians charged Alcibiades with having been unwilling to take Cyme (because he had been) bribed by the King of Persia.

#### Ablative Absolute.

(Rōmāni veterēs) rēgnāri omnēs volēbant libertātis dulcēdine nōndum expertā, L., 1. 17, 3; the old Romans all wished to have a king over them (because they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.

Note.—An apparent cause is given by ut, as, velut, as, for instance, tamquam, (so) as, quasi, as if, see 602, n. 3.

In this usage Cicero and Caesar are very careful, employing only quasi, ut.
Livy introduces tamquam, utpote, velut, and the tendency grows until it reaches
its culmination in Tacirus.

### 667. Participles may represent Condition and Concession.

Si latet ars prodest, affert deprensa pudorem, Ov., A.A., II. 313 (593, 2). [Risus] interdum ita repente erumpit ut eum cupientes tenere nequeamus, Cf. C., Or., II. 58, 235 (609). (Miltiades) capitis absolūtus, pecūniā multātus est, Nep., I. 7, 6 (664, R. I).

### Ablative Absolute.

Māximās virtūtēs iacēre omnēs necesse est voluptāte dominante, C., Fin., II. 35, 117 (593, 2).

Note.—On the combination of quamquam, quamvis, and etsi with the Participle, see  $699, \, \text{N.}\, 1$ ; nisi also is not uncommon; tamen is sometimes added in the principal clause.

### 668. Participles may represent Relative Clauses (637).

Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs, perfidī (sunt), C., Off., 111. 14, 60 (637). [Pīsistratus] Homērī librēs cēnfūsēs anteā sīc disposuisse dīcitur ut nunc habēmus, C., Or., 111. 34, 137 (637).

REMARK.—So-called, qui dicitur, vocātur, quem vocant; above-mentioned, quem anteā, suprā dīximus.

**669.** Future Participle (Active).—The Future Participle is a verbal adjective, denoting Capability and Tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with sum, I am, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations.

Peculiar is the free use of it in Sentences of Design, and especially

noticeable the compactness gained by the employment of it in Conditional Relations.

- 670. In later Latin, the Future Participle (active) is used to represent subordinate relations (438, N.):
  - 1. Time When.

(Tiberius) trāiectūrus (= cum trāiectūrus esset) Rhēnum commeātum non trānsmīsit, Suet., Tib., 18; when Tiberius was about to cross the Rhine, he did not send over the provisions.

### 2. Cause Why.

Dērīdiculō fuit senex foedissimae adūlātiōnis tantum Infāmiā ūsūrus, Tac., Ann., 111. 57, 3; a butt of ridicule was the old man, as infamy was the only gain he would make by his foul fawning. Antiochus sēcūrus dē bellō Rōmānō erat tamquam non trānsitūrīs in Asiam Rōmānīs, L., XXXVI. 41, 1 (602, N. 3).

3. Purpose (usually after a verb of Motion).

(Maroboduus) mīsit lēgātōs ad Tiberium ōrātūrōs auxilia, Tac., Ann. 11. 46 (438, N.). Cōnsul Lārīsam est profectus, ibi dē summā bellī cōnsultātūrus, L., XXXVI. 14, 5.

NOTE.—The Pr. Participle is sometimes used in a similar sense, but the Purpose is only an inference :

Lēgātī vēnērunt nūntiantēs Asiae quoque cīvitātēs sollicitārī, L., XXXI. 2, 1; envoys came with the announcement that the states of Asia also were tampered with.

- 4. Condition and Concession.
- (1) Protasis.

Déditūrīs sē Hannibalī fuisse accersendum Rōmānōrum praesidium ? L., XXIII. 44, 2; if they had been ready to surrender to Hannibal, would they have had to send for a Roman garrison? (= sī dēditūrī fuissent, ō. R.: sī dēditūrī fuērunt.)

(2) Apodosis.

Quatiunt arma, ruptūrī imperium nī dūcantur, Tac., H., 111. 19, 3; they clash their arms, ready to break orders, if they be not led forward. Librum mīsī exigentī tibī, missūrus etsī nōn exēgissēs, Plin., Ep., 111. 13, 1; I have sent you the book, as you exacted it, although I should have sent it even if you had not exacted it.

#### ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

671. The Latin language allows greater freedom in the arrangement of words than the English. This freedom is, of course, due to its greater wealth of inflections.

Two elements enter into the composition of a Latin Sentence, governing to some extent its arrangement: Grammar and Rhetoric.

- 672. 1. Grammatical arrangement has for its object clearness. It shows the ideas in the order of development in the mind of the speaker. By Grammatical arrangement the sentence grows under the view.
- 2. Rhetorical arrangement has for its objects Emphasis and Rhythm. It presents a sentence already developed in such a way that the attention is directed to certain parts of it especially.
  - (a) Emphasis is produced:
    - 1. By reversing the ordinary position.
    - 2. By approximation of similars or opposites.
    - 3. By separation.

In all sentences Beginning and End are emphatic points. In long sentences the Means as well as the Extremes are the points of emphasis.

- (b) Rhythm.—Much depends on the rhythmical order of words, for which the treatises of the ancients are to be consulted. Especially avoided are poetic rhythms. So, for example, the Dactyl and Spondee, or close of an Hexameter at the end of a period.
- 673. Two further principles seem to underlie the arrangement of Latin sentences: (a) that of the ascending construction; (b) that of the descending construction. In the ascending construction, which is more common, the principal word is placed last, and the subordinate ones, in the order of their importance, precede. In the descending construction the reverse is the process. The descending construction is regular in definitions.
- 674. Rule I.—The most simple arrangement of a sentence is as follows:
  - 1. The Subject and its Modifiers.
  - 2. The Predicate and its Modifiers.
- 1. Dionysius tyrannus, Syrācūsis expulsus, 2. Corinthi pueros docēbat, C., Tusc., III. 12, 27~(665).

Rhetorical positions:

Potentēs sequitur invidia, QUINT., IV. 1, 14 (477, N. 4). Nobis non satis-

facit ipse Dēmosthenēs, Cf. C., Or., 29, 104 (552, R. 1). Discriptus (erat) populus cēnsū, ōrdinibus, aetātibus, C., Leg., III. 19, 44 (397). Intrā moenia sunt hostēs, S., C., 52, 35 (477).

Remark.—The modifiers of the predicate stand in the order of their importance. The following arrangement is common:

Place, Time, Cause, or Means.
 Indirect Object.
 Adverb.
 Verb.

Note.—The postponement of the subject is rare and always for definite reasons in the classical period; later it becomes a mannerism, especially in the elder PLINY; to a less degree in Nepos and LIVY.

675. Rule II.—Interrogative Sentences begin with the interrogative, subordinate clauses with the leading particle or relative.

Quis eum díligat quem metuat? C., Lael., 15, 53 (629). Postquam Caesar pervēnit obsidēs popōscit, Caes., B.G., 1. 27, 3 (561). Si spīritum dūcit vīvit, C., Inv., 1. 46, 86 (595). Quí timēre dēsierint ōdisse incipient, Tac., Agr., 32 (567).

Rhetorical position:

[Nātūram] sī sequēmur ducem, numquam aberrābimus, C., Off., 1. 28, 100 (595). Dē futūrīs rēbus etsī semper difficile est dīcere, tamen interdum coniectūrā possīs accēdere, C., Fam., vi. 4, 1 (604). [Catō] mīrārī sē āiēbat quod non rīdēret haruspex, haruspicem cum vīdisset, C., Div., II. 24, 51 (567).

676. RULE III.—An Adjective usually precedes, but often follows, the word to which it belongs; a dependent Genitive usually follows the governing word; so too does a word in Apposition.

Saepe māgna indolēs virtūtis priusquam reī pūblicae prodesse potuisset exstincta est, C., Ph., v. 17, 47 (577). Sēnsum oculorum praecipit animus, Quint., vi. 2, 6 (540).

Rhetorical position:

[Īsocratēs] queritur plūs honōris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus darī, QUINT., IHI. 8, 9 (542, R.). [Ager], cum multōs annōs quiēvit, ūberiōrēs efferre frūgēs solet, C., Br., 4, 16 (567). Verēmur nē parum hīc liber mellis et absinthiī multum habēre videātur, QUINT., IHI. 1, 5 (550).

Remarks.—1. The demonstrative pronouns regularly precede; the possessives regularly follow.

Verēmur nē hīc liber absinthiī multum habēre videātur, QUINT., III. 1, 5 (550). Torquātus fīlium suum necārī iūssit, S., C., 52, 30 (540).

Rhetorical position:

Recordare tempus illud, cum pater Cūriō maerēns iacēbat în lectō, C., Ph., II. 18, 45 (580). Ōsculātur tigrim suus cūstōs, Sen., E.M., 85, 41 (309, 2).

- 2. Ordinals regularly follow, Cardinals regularly precede the substantive.
- 3. Many expressions have become fixed formulae: so titles, proper names, and the like; see 288.

Facinus est vincire civem Romanum, C., Verr., v. 66, 170 (535).

- 4. The titles rex, imperator, etc., frequently precede the proper name with which they are in apposition.
- 5. New modifiers of either element may be inserted, prefixed, or added:

Catōnem vidī in bibliothēcā sedentem multīs circumfūsum Stōicōrum libris, C., Fin., 111. 2, 7 (536). Saepe māgna indolēs virtūtis priusquam reī pūblicae prōdesse potuisset exstincta est, C., Ph., v. 17, 47 (577). At vidēte hominis intolerābilem audāciam, C., Dom., 44, 115 (488). (Aristīdēs) interfuit pūgnae nāvālī apud Salamīna, Nep., 111. 2, 1.

Notes.—1. The tendency in Latin was to reverse the Indo-Germanic rule by which an attributive adjective and a dependent Genitive preceded the governing word. But in early Latin the adjective still holds its place more often before its substantive, while the Genitive has already succumbed for the most part to the tendency. In the classical period the adjective is more often used after its substantive. But neither position can be strictly called rhetorical. The same is true of the possessive pronoun.

2. The original force of a following adjective or Genitive was restrictive or appositional, while, when it preceded, it formed a close compound with its substantive; thus, bonus homo, a good man (one idea); homo bonus, a man (one idea) who is good (another idea). In classical Latin this distinction is no longer inevitable, though it is often essential.

677. Rule IV.—Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb (before it when it ends a sentence), and immediately before their adjective or adverb.

Zenonem cum Athènis essem audiëbam frequenter . . . , C. , N.D., 1. 21, 59 (585). Caedi discipulos minimė velim, Quint., 1. 3, 13 (257). Vix culquam persuādėbātur Graeciā omni cessūros (Romānos), L. , XXXIII. 32, 3 (546, R. 1). [Risus] interdum ita repente ērumpit ut eum cupientės tenere nequeāmus, C. , Or., 11. 58, 235 (609).

Rhetorical positions:

[ $\bar{I}$ ram] bene Ennius initium dixit insāniae, C., Tusc., IV. 23, 52 (440). Saepe māgna indolēs virtūtis priusquam reī pūblicae prodesse potuisset exstincta est, C., Ph., v. 17, 47 (577).

REMARKS .- I. Fere, paene, prope, usually follow:

Nēmō ferē saltat sobrius nisi forte Insanit, C., Mur., 6, 13 (591, R. 4).

2. Negatives always precede, see 448.

NOTE.—The separation of adverbs from their adjectives is rare, except in the case of tam and quam, which PLAUTUS, TERENCE, CICERO, and later authors often separate, e.g., by a preposition: tam ab tenul exitio. Hyperbaton with other adverbs is rare.

678. Rule V.—Prepositions regularly precede their case (413).

 $\bar{\mathbf{A}}$  rēctā cōnscientiā trāversum unguem non oportet discēdere, C., Att., XIII. 20, 4 (328, 1).

REMARKS.—I. On versus, tenus, and the postposition of cum in combination with the personal pronouns and the relative, see 413, R. I.

2. Monosyllabic prepositions are not unfrequently put between the adjective and substantive: māgnā cum cūrā. See 413, R. 2.

Less frequently they are placed between the Gen. and substantive; except when the relative is employed.

- 3. Dissyllabic prepositions are sometimes put after their case (Anastrophé), especially after a relative or demonstrative: most frequently contra, inter, propter. So also adverbs. See 413, R. 1.
- 4. The preposition may be separated from its case by a Gen. or an adverb (413, R. 3): ad Appi Claudi senectütem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset, C., Cat. M., 6, 16 (553, 4).
- 5. Monosyllabic prepositions, such as cum, ex, dē, post, sometimes append the enclitics -que, -ve, -ne, as, exque is, and from them. Usually, however, the enclitics join the dependent substantive: in patriamque rediit, and returned to his country. See 413, N. 3.

On the position of per, see 413, N. 2.

### 679. Rule VI.—Particles vary.

Enim commonly takes the second, seldom the third place; nam and namque are regularly prepositive. See 498, N. 1.

Ergō in the syllogism precedes, elsewhere follows; igitur is commonly second or third; itaque regularly first. See 502, N. 2; 500, R.

Tamen is first, but may follow an emphatic word. See 490.

Etiam usually precedes, quoque always follows. See 478, 479.

Quidem and demum (at length) follow the word to which they belong.

680. RULE VII.—A word that belongs to more than one word regularly stands before them all, or after them all, sometimes after the first (291).

Ariovistus respondit multīs sēsē nobilibus prīncipibusque populi Romānī grātum esse factūrum, Caes., B.G., i. 44, 12 (657, 9). [Īsocratēs] queritur plūs honoris corporum quam animorum virtūtibus darī, Quint., 111. 8, 9 (542, R.). Longum est mūlorum persequi ūtilitātēs et asinorum, C., N.D., 11. 64, 159 (254, R. 1).

681. Rule VIII.—Words of kindred or opposite meaning are often put side by side for the sake of complement or contrast.

Manus manum lavat, one hand washes the other. [Catō] mīrārī sē āiēbat quod nōn rīdēret haruspex, haruspicem cum vīdisset, C., Div., II. 24, 51 (567). Ēmit morte immortālitātem, QUINT., IX. 3, 71 (404).

682. Rule IX.—Contrasted Pairs.—When pairs are contrasted, the second is put in the same order as the first, but often in inverse order. The employment of the same order is called Anaphora (repetition). The inverse order is called Chiasmus, or crosswise position, and gives alternate stress. The principle is of wide application, not merely in the simple sentence but also in the period.

Same order (Anaphora).

Fortūna (1) vestra (2) facit ut Irae (1) meae (2) temperem, L., XXXVI. 35, 3 (553, 1). Mālō tē sapiēns (1) hostis (2) metuat quam stultī (1) cīvēs (2) laudent, L., XXII. 39, 20 (546, R. 2).

Inverse order (Chiasmus).

Ante vidēmus (1) fulgōrem (2) quam sonum (2) audiāmus (1), Sen., N. Q., II. 12, 6 (577). Parvī sunt forīs (1) arma (2) nisi est cōnsilium (2) domī (1), C., Q.f., I. 22, 76 (411, R. 2).

Remark.—Chiasmus is from the Greek letter X (chi):

I. Foris
2. consilium X 2. arma
1. domi.

683. Poetical Peculiarities.—In the poets we find many varieties of arrangement of substantive and adjective, designed to draw especial attention to the idea or to color the verse. These occur chiefly in the Hexameter and Pentameter, but to a lesser degree also in other measures. Thus the substantive and adjective are put either at the end of each hemistich, or at the beginning of each hemistich, or one is at the end of the first and the other at the beginning of the second.

Cerberus et  $n\bar{u}ll\bar{u}s$  hodië petat improbus  $umbr\bar{u}s$  | et iaceat  $tacit\bar{u}$  lapsa caténa  $ser\bar{u}$ , Prop., iv. (v.) ii, 25.  $P\bar{u}nice\bar{v}$  stābis sūrās ēvineta  $cothurn\bar{v}$ , V., Ec., 7, 32. Mē similem  $vestr\bar{i}s$   $m\bar{v}ribus$  esse putās? Prop., ii. (iii.) 29 (27), 32.

#### ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

684. A period is a compound sentence with one or more subordinate clauses, in which sentence the meaning is kept suspended to the close.

- 685. Latin periods may be divided into two classes:
- r. Responsive or Apodotic, in which a Protasis has an Apodosis.
- 2. Intercalary or Enthetic, in which the various items are inserted in their proper place between Subject and Predicate.

Ut saepe hominės aegrī morbō gravī, cum aestū febrīque iactantur, sī aquam gelidam bibērunt, prīmō relevārī videntur, deinde multō gravius vehementiusque afflictantur: sīc hīc morbus, quī est in rē pūblicā, relevātus istīus poenā, vehementius, reliquīs vīvīs, ingravēscet, C., Cat., I. 13, 31 (Apodotic).

Catuvolcus, rēx dīmidiae partis Eburōnum, quī ūnā cum Ambiorige consilium inierat, aetāte iam confectus, cum laborem aut bellī aut fugae ferre non posset, omnibus precibus dētēstātus Ambiorigem, quī ēius consiliī auctor fuisset, taxo, cūius māgna in Galliā Germāniāque copia est, sē exanimāvit, Caes., B.G., vi. 31, 5 (Enthetic).

**686.** Nägelsbach's careful study of the subject has led to the following results. The simplest period is composed of one subordinate (a) and one principal (A) clause; the principal varieties are: (1) a:A, where the principal clause follows the subordinate; (2) A (a) A, where the subordinate clause is inserted within the principal clause; (3)  $A \mid a$ , where the principal clause precedes the subordinate clause; (4) a (A) a, where the principal clause is inserted within the subordinate clause. When two subordinate clauses (a, b), independent of each other, are used, the forms are: (5)  $a:A \mid b$ ; (6) a:A (b) a; (7) A (a)  $A \mid b$ ; (8) A (a) A (b) A; (9) a:(b:A). If the dependent clauses are of different degree ( $\alpha$ , a, A), that is, one depending upon the other, some fifteen additional forms are allowable.

Some examples are:

 $a\left(A\right)a$ : illörum vidēs quam niteat ōrātiō, C., Fin., IV. 3, 5. a:(b:A): cũr nölint, etiamsĩ taceant, satis dIcunt, C., Div. in Caec., 6, 21.  $\alpha:a:A:$  quid agātur, cum aperuerō, facile erit statuere, C., Ph., V. 2, 6.  $a:A\mid\alpha:$  illud quid sit, scīre cupiō, quod iacis obscūrē, C., Att., II. 7, 4.  $a\mid\alpha(A)a:$  nōs utī exspectārēmus sē, relīquit quī rogāret, Varro, R.R., I. 2, 32.  $A\mid\alpha(a)a:$  mandō tibǐ plānē, tōtum ut videās cūius modī sit, C., Att., I. 12, 2.

**687.** Periods are also divided into Historical and Oratorical. The former are, as a rule, simple. The most common form is a:A, *i.e.*, where a subordinate clause is followed by a leading clause: **Id ubi dixisset hastam in hostium fines emittebat**, L., I. 42, 13. Another common period, developed and much liked by Livy; and later by Tacitus, was a:a:A, consisting of (1) a participial clause: (2) a clause introduced by a conjunction; (3) the principal clause. *Cf.* Tac., *Ann.*,

II. 69, 3, detentus ubi . . . accept plebem proturbat. Mistorians, having much occasion for description, are also prone to use the descending period, i.e., the form in which the principal clause precedes. So especially Nepos. Livy likes also to use two independent subordinate clauses asyndetically.

The Oratorical periods are much more diverse and complicated, owing to the greater variety of effects at which they aim. We find, however, the ascending structure, where the emphasis is continually ascending until it culminates at the end, more common.

See an excellent example in C., Imp., 5, 11:

Võs eum rēgem inultum esse patiēminī quī lēgātum populī Rōmānī cōnsulārem vinculīs āc verberibus atque omnī suppliciō EXCRUCIĀTUM NECĀVIT?

#### FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC.

688. Ellipsis is the omission of some integral part of the thought, such as the substantive of the adjective (204, N. 1), the copula of the predicate (209), the verb of the adverb.

Unde domo? V., A., VIII. 114 (391, R. 2).

Remark.—When the ellipsis is indefinite, do not attempt to supply it. The figure is still much abused by commentators in the explanation of grammatical phenomena.

**689.** Brachylogy (breviloquentia) is a failure to repeat an element which is often to be supplied in a more or less modified form.

Tam fēlīx essēs quam fōrmōsissima (=es) vellem, Ov., Am., 1. 8, 27 (302).

**690.** Zeugma or Syllēpsis is a junction of two words under the same regimen, or with the same modifier, although the common factor strictly applies but to one.

Manus ac supplices voces ad Tiberium tendens, Tac., Ann., II. 29, 2; stretching out hands and (uttering) suppliant cries to Tiberius.

- 691. Aposiopēsis is a rhetorical breaking off before the close of the sentence, as in the famous Vergilian Quōs ego.....
  - 692. Pleonasm is the use of superfluous words.
- 693. Enallage is a shift from one form to another: vos ō Calliopē precor, V., A., IX. 525.

Hypallage is an interchange in the relations of words: dare classibus austros, V., A., III. 61.

- 694. Oxymoron is the use of words apparently contradictory of each other: cum tacent clamant, C., Cat., 1. 8, 21 (582).
- 695. Synecdoché is the use of the part for the whole, or the reverse: tēctum for domum, puppis for nāvis, mucrō for gladius, etc.
- 696. Hypérbaton, Trajection, is a violent displacement of words. Lydia die per omnes te deos oro, H., O., 1. 8, 1 (413, N. 2).
- **697.** Anacolūthon, or *want of sequence*, occurs when the scheme of a sentence is changed in its course.
- **698.** Hendiadys ( $\mathcal{E}_{\nu}$  διὰ δυοῖν) consists in giving an analysis instead of a complex, in putting two substantives connected by a copulative conjunction, instead of one substantive and an adjective or attributive genitive.

Vulgus et multitūdō, the common herd. Via et ratiō (C., Verr., 1. 16, 47), scientific method. Vi et armīs, by force of arms.

So two verbs may be translated by an adverb and a verb: fundifugārique, to be utterly routed.

699. Constructio Praegnans. So-called constructio praegnans is nothing but an extended application of the accusative of the Inner Object (Object Effected). The result is involved, not distinctly stated.

Exitium inritat, Cf. Tac., Ann., XIII. 1, 1; he provokes destruction (ad exitium inritat).

.700. Lītotēs, or Understatement, is the use of an expression by which more is meant than meets the ear. This is especially common with the Negative.

Non indecoro pulvere sordidi, H., O., II. I, 22 (449, R. 2).

#### PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX.

- 1. The Verb agrees with its subject in number and person (211).
- 2. The Adjective agrees with its subject in gender, number, and case (211).
- 3. The common Predicate of two or more subjects is put in the Plural (285); when the genders are different, it takes the strongest gender or the nearest (286); when the persons are different, it takes the first in preference to the second, the second in preference to the third (287).
- 4. The common Attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest, rarely with the most important (290).
  - 5. The Predicate substantive agrees with its subject in case (211).
- 6. The Appositive agrees with its subject in case; if possible, also in number and person (321).
- 7. The Relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person (614).
- 8. Disproportion is indicated by the comparative with quam pro, quam ut, quam qui (298).
- 9. In comparing two qualities, use either magis quam with the positive, or a double comparative (299).
- 10. Superlatives denoting order and sequence are often used partitively and then usually precede their substantive (291, R. 2).
- 11. The Genitive forms mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, are used mainly as objective genitives; nostrum and vestrum as partitive (304, 2).
- 12. The Reflexive is used regularly when reference is made to the grammatical subject; frequently when reference is made to the actual subject (309).
- 13. The Reflexive is used of the principal subject, when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject; hence, in Infinitive clauses, or Indirect Questions, in Sentences of Design, and in Ōrātiō Oblīqua (521).
- 14. The Possessive Pronoun is used instead of the Possessive or Subjective Genitive in the First and Second Persons (362, 364).
- 15. The Appositive to a possessive pronoun is in the Genitive (321, R. 2).
- 16. With words of Inclination and Disinclination, Knowledge and Ignorance, Order and Position, Time and Season, the adjective is usually employed for the adverb (325, R. 6).
- 17. The Indicative, not the Subjunctive, is used in expressions of Possibility, Power, Obligation, and Necessity (254, R. I).

- 18. The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present or Perfect Subjunctive (257); the Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive (258).
- 19. The Optative Subjunctive may be used to express a Wish (260), an Asseveration (262), a Command (263), or a Concession (264).
- 20. The First Imperative looks forward to immediate, the Second to contingent, fulfilment (268).
- 21. The Negative of the Imperative is regularly noli with the Infinitive; sometimes no with the Perfect Subjunctive (270, R. 2), or cave with the Subjunctive (271) is also used.
- 22. The Infinitive, with or without a subject, may be treated as a neuter subject (422), object (423), or predicate (424).
- 23. The Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Resolve, Continuance, End, etc. (423).
- 24. The Accusative and Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Will and Desire (532).
- 25. The Accusative and Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Emotion (533).
  - 26. The Accusative and Infinitive is used in Exclamation (534).
- 27. After verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, the Present Infinitive expresses action contemporary with that of the governing verb, the Perfect, action prior to it, the Future, action future to it (530).
- 28. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives that require a complement (428).
- 29. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used mainly in post-classical Latin after words of Fitness and Function; also after words of Capacity and Adaptation, and to express Design (429).
- 30. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after verbs of Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving, etc., to indicate Design (430).
- 31. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used to denote Means and Cause, rarely Manner (431).
- 32. The Supine in -um is used chiefly after verbs of Motion to express Design (435).
- 33. The Supine in -ū is used chiefly with adjectives to indicate Respect (436).
- 34. The Present Participle denotes continuance, the Perfect, completion, at the time of the leading verb (282).
- 35. The Future Participle is used in post-Ciceronian Latin to express Design (438, N.).

- 36. The Participle is used after verbs of Perception and Representation to express the actual condition of the object (536).
- 37. The Perfect Participle passive is used after verbs of Causation and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfilment (537).
  - 38. The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative (203).
- 39. Verbs of Seeming, Becoming, with the passive of verbs of Making, Choosing, Showing, Thinking, and Calling, take two Nominatives, one of the subject, one of the predicate (206).
- 40. With passive verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, the Accusative subject of the Infinitive becomes the Nominative subject of the leading verb (528).
- 41. The Appositional Genitive is used after vox, nomen, verbum, res, etc. (361, 1).
- 42. The Epexegetical Genitive (or Genitive of Explanation) is used after genus, vitium, culpa, etc. (361, 2).
- 43. The Possessive Genitive is used of the Third Person to denote possession (362).
- 44. The Subjective Genitive is used of the subject of the action indicated by the substantive (363, 1); the Objective Genitive of the object of that action (363, 2).
- 45. Essential or permanent qualities are put in the Genitive, always with an adjective (365); external and transient qualities in the Ablative, always with an adjective (400). See No. 82.
- 46. The Genitives of Quality and Possession may be used as predicates (366).
- 47. The Partitive Genitive stands for the whole to which a part belongs (367).
- 48. Adjectives of Fulness and Want, of Knowledge and Ignorance, of Desire and Disgust, of Participation and Power, may take the Genitive (374). Also some present participles used as adjectives, and in later Latin some verbals in -āx (375).
- 49. Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting take usually the Genitive (376); but sometimes the Accusative, especially of things (376, R.).
- 50. Impersonal verbs of Emotion take the Accusative of the Person Who Feels, and the Genitive of the Exciting Cause (371).
- 51. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting, take the Genitive of the Charge (378).
- 52. Verbs of Rating and Buying take the Genitive of the General, the Ablative of the Particular Value (379, 404). See No. 87.

- 53. Interest and Refert take the Genitive of the Person, rarely of the Thing concerned (381).
  - 54. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative (345).
- 55. Verbs of Advantage and Disadvantage, Bidding and Forbidding, Pleasure and Displeasure, Yielding and Resisting, take the Dative (346).
- 56. Many intransitive verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub, and super may take a Dative; transitive verbs also an Accusative besides (347). See No. 66.
- 57. Verbs of Giving and Putting take a Dative and Accusative, or an Accusative and Ablative (348).
  - 58. The Dative is used with esse to denote possession (349).
  - 59. The Dative is used of the Person Interested in the action (350).
  - 60. The Ethical Dative is used of the personal pronouns only (351).
- 61. The Dative of Reference is used of the Person to whom a statement is referred (352).
- 62. The Dative of Agent is used with the Perfect passive, the Gerund, and the Gerundive (354).
- 63. The Dative may denote the Object For Which in combination with the Person To Whom (355).
- 64. Adjectives of Friendliness, Fulness, Likeness, Nearness, with their opposites, take the Dative (359).
  - 65. Active transitive verbs take the Accusative case (330).
- 66. Many intransitive verbs, mostly those of Motion, compounded with ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, per, praeter, sub, subter, super, and trans, take the Accusative; transitive verbs thus compounded may have two Accusatives (331). See No. 56.
- 67. Intransitive verbs may take an Accusative of similar form or meaning (333, 2).
- The Accusative may express Extent in Degree, Space, or Time (334-6).
- 69. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Accusative of Place Whither; so also domus and rūs (337). See No. 74 and 92.
- 70. Verbs meaning to Inquire, Require, Teach, and Conceal, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, one of the Thing (339).
- Verbs of Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, and Showing, take two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing (340).
  - 72. The subject of the Infinitive is regularly in the Accusative (420).
  - 73. The Accusative may be used in Exclamations (343).
  - 74. Place Where is denoted by the Ablative, usually with in (385);

Place Whence by the Ablative, usually with ex, dē, or ab (390). Names of Towns and Small Islands omit the prepositions (386, 391). See No. 69 and 92.

- 75. Attendance is denoted by the Ablative with cum (392).
- 76. Time When or Within Which is denoted by the Ablative (393).
- 77. Origin or Descent is denoted by the Ablative with or without ex and dē (395).
  - 78. Material is denoted by the Ablative with ex (396).
  - 79. The Point of View or Respect is denoted by the Ablative (397).
  - 80. Comparatives without quam are followed by the Ablative (398).
- Manner is denoted by the Ablative regularly with an adjective or cum (399).
- 82. External and transient qualities are denoted by the Ablative, always with an adjective (400); essential and permanent qualities by the Genitive, always with an adjective (365). See No. 45.
- 83. Cause, Means, and Instrument, are denoted by the Ablative (401, 408).
  - 84. The Agent is denoted by the Ablative with a (ab) (401).
  - 85. The Standard of Measurement is denoted by the Ablative (402).
  - 86. Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative (403).
- 87. Definite Price is put in the Ablative (404); General Price in the Genitive (379). See No. 52.
- 88. Verbs of Depriving and Filling, of Plenty and Want, take the Ablative (405).
  - 89. The Ablative is used with opus and usus (406).
  - 90. Utor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor take the Ablative (407).
- 91. The Ablative, combined with a participle, serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence: Ablative Absolute (409).
- 92. Names of Towns and Small Islands of the First and Second Declensions are put in the Locative of the Place Where (411). See No. 69 and 74.
  - 93. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs (439).
  - 94. A question for information merely is introduced by -ne (454).
- 95. A question that expects the answer yes is introduced by nonne (455).
- 96. A question that expects the answer no is introduced by num (456).
  - 97. The Deliberative Question is in the Subjunctive (265).
  - 98. The Indirect Question is in the Subjunctive (467).

- 99. Sequence of Tenses. Principal tenses are ordinarily followed by Principal tenses, Historical by Historical (509).
- 100. After a Future or Future Perfect, the Future relation is expressed by the Present, the Future Perfect by the Perfect Subjunctive (514). After other tenses the Future relation is expressed by the Active Periphrastic Present and Imperfect Subjunctive (515).
- 101. In  $\overline{\text{O}}$ rātiō Oblīqua all subordinate tenses follow the general law of sequence (516).
- 102. Quod, the fact that, in that, is used with the Indicative to introduce explanatory clauses after Verbs of Adding and Dropping, Doing and Happening, and demonstratives (525).
- 103. Quod, quia, quoniam, and quando take the Indicative in Direct Discourse, the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, to express Cause (540, 541).
- 104. Quod is used after verbs of Emotion with the Indicative in Direct, the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, to give the Ground (542).
- 105. Final Sentences have the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive with  ${\bf ut}$  or  ${\bf n\bar{e}}$  (545).
- 106. Complementary Final Clauses are used after verbs of Will and Desire (546).
- 107. Positive verbs of Preventing, Refusing, Forbidding, and Bewaring, may take ne with the Subjunctive (548).
- 108. Verbs of Preventing and Refusing may take quominus with the Subjunctive (549). See No. 112.
- 109. Verbs of Fear are followed by  $n\bar{e}$  or ut ( $n\bar{e}$   $n\bar{o}n$ ) and all tenses of the Subjunctive (550).
- 110. Consecutive Sentences have the Subjunctive with ut and ut non (552).
- 111. Verbs of Effecting have the Subjunctive with ut and ne, or ut non (553).
- 112. Negatived or Questioned verbs of Preventing, Hindering, etc., of Doubt and Uncertainty, may be followed by the Subjunctive with quin (555). See No. 108.
- 113. A Consecutive Clause with **ut** is often used to give the contents or character of a preceding substantive, adjective, or pronoun (557).
- 114. Ut, ut primum, cum, cum primum, ubi, ubi primum, simulāc, simul atque, and postquam take the Perfect Indicative, in the sense of as soon as; but the Imperfect of Overlapping Action, and the Pluperfect when a definite interval is given (561, 562, 563).
- 115. When two actions are repeated contemporaneously, both are put in the Indicative in tenses of continuance (566).

- 116. When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect, the subsequent in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation (567).
- 117. Dum, donec, quoad, quamdiu, so long as, while, take the Indicative of all tenses (569).
- 118. Dum, while, while yet, takes the Present Indicative after all tenses (570).
- 119. Dum, dönec, quoad, until, take the Present, Historical Present, Historical Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative (571).
- 120. Dum, donec, quoad, until, take the Subjunctive when Suspense or Design is involved (572).
- 121. Dum, modő, and dummodő, if only, provided only, take the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive in Conditional Wishes (573).
- 122. Antequam and priusquam take the Indicative Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect when the limit is stated as a fact; the Subjunctive when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or subordinate (574, 577).
- 123. Temporal cum, when, is used with all tenses of the Indicative to designate merely temporal relations (580).
- 124. Historical cum, when, is used with the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive to give the temporal circumstances under which an action took place (585).
- 125. Causal and Concessive cum, when, whereas, although, are used with all tenses of the Subjunctive (586, 587).
- 126. The Logical Condition has usually some form of the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis (595).
- 127. The Ideal Condition has usually the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, less often the Imperfect or Pluperfect, in both clauses (596).
- 128. The Unreal Condition has the Imperfect Subjunctive of opposition to present, the Pluperfect of opposition to past fact (597).
- 129. Ut sī, āc sī, quasi, quam sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut, and velut sī, introduce a comparison in the Subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence (602).
- 130. Concessive clauses may be introduced by etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, with the Indicative or Subjunctive (604); by quamquam, with the Indicative (605); by quamvis, with the Subjunctive (606).
- 131. Indefinite and generic relatives usually have the Indicative (625); so explanatory qui, when equivalent to quod (626).
  - 132. The Subjunctive is used in Relative Clauses that form a part

of the utterance of another; so in  $\bar{\text{O}}$ rātiō Oblīqua and Final Clauses (628).

- 133. Relative sentences that depend on Infinitives or Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive by Attraction (629).
- 134. Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Design when qui = ut (final) is (630).
- 135. Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Tendency when quī = ut (consecutive) is; so after dīgnus, indīgnus, idōneus, aptus, etc.; after an indefinite antecedent; after comparatives with quam (631).
- 136. Comparative sentences after words of Likeness and Unlikeness may be introduced by atque or āc (643).
- 137. Comparative sentences after comparatives are introduced by quam (644).
- 138. In Ōrātiō Oblīqua, Principal Clauses are put in the Infinitive, except Interrogatives and Imperatives, which are put in the Subjunctive; Subordinate clauses are put in the Subjunctive (650, 651, 652).

## PROSODY.

### 701. Prosody treats of Quantity and Versification.

REMARKS.—I. Prosody originally meant Accent. Latin Accent is regulated by Quantity, and as classical Latin versification is also quantitative, Prosody is loosely used of both quantity and versification.

2. In the earliest Latin the Accent was not regulated by Quantity, but was on the initial syllable (15, N.). This often resulted in

(a) The disappearance of the vowel (8, 2) in the antepenult or pro-antepenult; this occurs especially in Greek words, but also in some common Latin words: Poludeuces, Poldeuces, Pollüces, Pollüc; balineion, balineum, balneum, bath; māximus, greatest, for magisimos; optumus, best, for opitumus, etc.

(b) The shortening of a long penult (8). This was still going on in the time of PLAUTUS, and occurs here and there in the poets: anchora, anchor, from ankūra; so

pēiero, I swear falsely, for periūro; chorea, dance, from choreia, etc.

(c) The weakening (8) of the antepenult, sometimes also of the penult, both in Greek words and Latin: Massilia from Massalia; beni- and mali- for bene and male in composition; -hibeō for habeō in composition; and a few others, as -cidō for caedō in composition, etc.

### QUANTITY.

702. Rule I.—A syllable is said to be long by nature when it contains a long vowel or diphthong: ō, vae, lēgēs, saevae.

REMARKS.—I. (a) A vowel before -gm, -gn, -nf, -ns is long by nature; (b) a vowel before -nt, -nd is short by nature.

#### EXCEPTIONS:

(a) Egnātius, Theognis, and some Greek words in -egma, as phlegma,

phlegm; but pēgma.

- (b) Contio (for coventio), assembly; iontaculum, iontatio, breakfast; nuntius, messenger; quintus, fifth; and Greek substantives in -us, -untis, -on, -ontis; Charondas, Epaminondas; also nundinae (noven-d-), market day; nondum, not yet; prendo, I seize; quindecim, fifteen; vendo, I sell; undecim, eleven; vindomia, vintage.
- Inchoative verbs have vowel before -sc long by nature; disco, I learn.
- 3. Noteworthy are the following: quartus, fourth; quinque, five, and its derivatives; viginti, twenty; mille, thousand, and its derivatives.

4. In verbs the quantity of the Present Stem is generally retained throughout before two consonants (except -ns).

Except dico, I say; Supine, dictum; duco, I lead; Supine, ductum; and their derivatives, like dictio, etc.

- 5. Noteworthy are the following: ago, I drive, ēgī, āctum; emo, I buy, ēmī, ēmptum; frangō, I break, frēgī, frāctum; fungor, I perform, fūnctus; iubeō, I order, iūssī, iūssum; iungō, I join, iūnxī, iūnctum; lego, I read, lēgī, lēctum; pangō, I fix, pāctum; rego, I govern, rēxī, rēctum; sanciō, I sanction, sānxī, sānctum, sāncītum; struo, I pile up, strūxī, strūctum; tangō, I touch, tāctum; tego, I cover, tēxī, tēctum; traho, I draw, trāxī, trāctum; ungō, I anoint, ūnxī, ūnctum; vincō, I conquer, vīcī, victum; rumpō, I break, rūpī, ruptum.
- 6. In verbs, a vowel resulting from syncope is long before ss, st (131). Also, perhaps, i before s and t in syncopated Pf. forms of ire and petere.

Note.—On the method of distinguishing long vowels on inscriptions, see 12, 1, N.

703. Rule II —A syllable is said to be long by position (12, 2) when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant: ars, collum, castra.

Remarks.—1. The consonants may be divided between two words: per mare, in terris; but when all the consonants are in the second word, the preceding short syllable commonly remains short, except in the Thesis (729) of a verse, when it is lengthened: praemia scribae.

2. Every vowel sound followed by i consonant (j) is long (except in the compounds of iugum, yoke). This is due sometimes to natural length of the vowel, sometimes to compensation: Gāius from Gāvius, pēierō for periūrō; but bĭiugus, two-horse.

Note.—In compounds of **incere**, to throw, the i is often omitted, and the preceding vowel lengthened by compensation; so **conicere**; a short vowel with the i omitted is not found until Oyio's time.

 Final s, preceded by a short vowel, is dropped before a consonant in the older poetry; often too in Lucretius (Apocope).

În somnis vidit priu(s) quam sam (=eam) discere cóepit.—Enn., A., 225.

Note.—In comic poetry, a short final syllable in s blends with est, and sometimes with es: opust (= opus est); simili's (= similis es).

704. RULE III.—A syllable ending in a short vowel before a mute, followed by 1 or r, is common (13): tene-brae, darkness. In early Latin it is regularly short, so, too, when the mute and liquid begin a word.

Remarks.—1. The syllable must end in a short vowel: nāvǐ-fragus, ship-wrecking; mellǐ-fluus, flowing with honey; but in ab-rumpō the a is long by position.

2. In Greek words m and n are included under this rule: Tě-cmēssa, Cỹ-cnus.

Exception.—Derivative substantives in ābrum, ācrum, ātrum from verbs; as flābra, blasts. Zmarāgdos, Mart., v. 11,1, cannot be paralleled.

705. Rule IV.—Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is long (14): saevos, eruel; conclūdō, I shut up (from claudō); ināquos, unfair (from aequos); cōgō, I drive together (from coigo = con + ago).

EXCEPTION.—Prace in composition is shortened before a vowel until the time of Statius; prac-ūstus, burnt at the point (V.,  $\Lambda$ ., vii. 524).

706. Rule V.—One simple vowel before another vowel-sound, or h, makes a short syllable: deus, God; puer, boy; nihil, nothing.

#### EXCEPTIONS:

- I. ā in the old Gen. of the First Declension : aurāī.
- 2. ē in -ēi of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes: diēi, but fiděi (63, N. I).
  - 3. a and e before i in proper names in -ius: Gai, Pompēi.
- 4. i in the Gen. form -Ius (76, R. 2). Alterius is often shortened, perhaps even in prose: ūnius, ūllius, nūllius, tōtius, are found in poetry. In alius the i is never shortened (alius for alius).
  - 5. i in fīō is long, except before er: fīō, but fieret and fieri.
  - 6. ĕheu, Dĭāna, ŏhē, dîus (= dīvus).
  - 7. Many Greek words : āēr, Menelāus, mūsēum, Mēdēa.
- 8. In early Latin many words retain the original length of the vowel: āis, rēī; all forms of fīō; clūō; fūī and its forms; plūit, lūit, adnūi, etc. Most of the shortened forms also occur, and are more common.

### Quantity of Final Syllables.

#### A. POLYSYLLABLES.

- 707. Rule VI.—In words of more than one syllable, final a, e, and y are short; i, o, and u are long.
  - 1. a is short: terră, earth; donă, gifts; capită, heads.

#### EXCEPTIONS:

- 1. Abl. of the First Declension: terrā.
- 2. Voc. of words in as (Aenēa), and Greek Nom. in a (Electra).
- 3. Impv. of First Conjugation : amā.

- Most uninflected words: trīgintā, iūxtā, but ită, quiă, čiā. With pută, for instance, compare cave below.
  - 2. e is short.

#### EXCEPTIONS:

- 1. Abl. of the Fifth Declension : die.
- 2. Impv. of Second Conjugation: mone (but see Note).
- 3. Most adverbs of Second Declension: rēctē; but benē, malē, infernē (Lucr.), māxumē (Plaut.), probē (Plaut.), supernē (Lucr., Hor.), temerē (Plaut., Ter.).
  - 4. Greek words in ē (η): Tempē, melē.
- 5. Que is thought to be not unfrequently long in the Thesis of early Saturnians; so in the hexameter of the classical period if a second que follows in the Arsis.

Note.—Observe that in Plautus and Terence any dissyllabic Iambic impv. may have the last & shortened; principally cave, habe, iube, mane, mone, move, tace, tene, vale, vide. See 716. Later poets also shorten sometimes when the penult is long; salve (Mart.).

- 3.  $\mathbf{y}$  is always short, except in contracted forms: mis $\mathbf{y}$  (Dative mis $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{misyi}$ ).
  - 4. i is long: dominī, vīgintī, audī.

#### EXCEPTIONS:

- 1. Greek Dat. si: Troasi.
- Greek Nom., as sināpi; Voc., as Pari; Dat. Sing. (rarely), as Minōidi.
  - 3, quasĭ, nisĭ, cŭĭ (when a dissyllable).
  - 4. i is common in mihĭ, tibĭ, sibĭ, ibĭ, ubĭ.

Observe the compounds: ibidem, ibique, ubique, ubinam, ubivis, ubicunque, nēcubi, utinam, utique, sīcuti; (but uti).

5. o is long: bono, tūto.

#### EXCEPTIONS:

- 1. Common in homő; in the Augustan times in leő and many proper names; as Scipiő; in the post-Augustan times in many common substantives: virgő. Nēmő is found first in OVID, mentið in HORACE.
- 2. Frequently short in Iambic words in early Latin, especially in verbs, many of which remained common in the Augustan times, as volö, vetö, sciö, petö, putö, etc.; so less often nesciö, dēsinö, obsecrö, dīxerö, öderö. From Seneca on, the Gerund may be shortened: amandö.
- 3. o is usually short in modo, cito, octo, ego, flico, immo, duo, ambo (post-classical); and in many other words in later poetry.
  - 6. u is always long: cornū, frūctū, audītū.

708. Rule VII.—All final syllables that end in a simple consenant other than s are short.

#### EXCEPTIONS:

- 1. allec, lien, and many Greek substantives.
- 2. The adverbs and oblique cases of illic, illüc, istic, istüc, can hardly be considered exceptions, as -c is for -ce, and is merely enclitic.
  - 3. Compounds of par: dispar, impar.
  - 4. iit, petiit, and their compounds.
- 5. Final -at, -et, -it, were originally long, and as such often occur in early Latin, and occasionally before a pause in the classical poets.
- 709. Rule VIII.—Of final syllables in s: as, es, os, are long; is, us, ys, short.
  - 1. as is long: Aenēās, servās, amās.

#### EXCEPTIONS:

- 1. Greek substantives in as, adis: Arcas, Arcadis.
- 2. Greek Acc. Pl., Third Declension: hērōas, Arcadas.
- 3. anas, anatis.
- 2. es is long : rēgēs, diēs, monēs.

#### EXCEPTIONS:

- Nom. and Voc. Sing., Third Declension, when the Gen. has ĕtis,
   ĭtis, ĭdis: segĕs, mīlĕs, obsĕs; but abiĕs, ariĕs, pariĕs.
  - 2. Compounds of es, be (long syllable in Plautus): ades, potes.
  - 3. penes (Preposition).
- Greek words in ĕs (ες): Nom. Pl., as Arcadĕs; Voc., as Dēmosthenĕs; Neuter, as cacoēthĕs.
  - 5. Iambic verbal forms in Second Person Sing. in early Latin.
  - 3. os is long: deos, nepos.

#### EXCEPTIONS:

- I. Compos, impos, exos; and as the Nom. ending in the Second Decleration.
  - 2. Greek words in ös (05): melös.
  - 4. is is short : canis, legis.

#### EXCEPTIONS:

- 1. Dat. and Abl. Plural: terris, bonis.
- 2. Acc. Pl. of the Third Declension: omnīs = omnēs.
- 3. In the Nom. of sundry Proper Names, increasing long in the Genitive: QuirIs, QuirItis.
- 4. Second Person Sing. Pr. Indic. active, Fourth Conjugation: audis.

- In the verbal forms from vis, sis, fis, and velis: no-lis, ma-lis, ad-sis, cale-fis.
- 6. In the Second Person Sing. Fut. Pf. Indic. and Pf. Subjv., is is common: videris.
  - 7. Pulvīs, cinīs, sanguīs, occasionally in early Latin.

5. us is short : servus, currus.

EXCEPTIONS:

- 1. Gen. Sing., Nom. and Acc. Pl., Fourth Declension: currus.
- 2. Nom. Third Declension, when the Gen. has a long  ${\tt u}: {\tt virt\bar{u}s}, {\tt virt\bar{u}tis}; {\tt inc\bar{u}s}, {\tt inc\bar{u}dis}; {\tt tell\bar{u}s}, {\tt tell\bar{u}ris}.$
- 3. In Greek words with  $\bar{\mathbf{u}}$  ( $ov_{5}$ ): tripūs, Sapphūs; but **0edipūs** and polypūs.
- 4. Occasionally the Dat. and Abl. Pl. of the Third Declension, the First Person Pl. active of verbs, seem to be long in early Latin.
  - 6. ys is short : chlamys.

#### B. MONOSYLLABLES.

710. Rule IX.—All monosyllables that end in a vowel are long: ā, dā, mē, dē, hī, sī, ō, dō, tū.

Except the enclitics: -que, -ve, -ne, -ce, -te, -pse, pte.

711. Rule X.—Declined or conjugated monosyllables that end in a consonant follow the rules given: dās, flēs, scīs, dăt, flēt, ĭs, ĭd, quĭs, hīs, quīs, quōs.

hic, this one, is often shortened; die and due have the quantity of their verbs; es, be, is short in classical Latin, long in early Latin.

712. Rule XI.—Monosyllabic Nominatives of substantives and adjectives are long when they end in a consonant, even if the stem-syllable be short: ōs, mōs, vēr, sōl, fūr, plūs; lār (lāris), pēs (pĕdis), bōs (bŏvis), pār (pāris).

EXCEPTIONS:

vir and lac, os (ossis), mel;

Also cor, vas (vadis), fel. Also quot, tot.

713. Rule XII.—Monosyllabic particles that end in a consonant are short: ăn, cis, in, nec, per, ter.

Excepting en and non and quin;

And also crās and cūr and sīn;

Also the Adverbs in c: hīc, hūc, hāc, sīc; and āc (atque).

### Quantity of Stem-Syllables.

714. RULE XIII.—The quantity of stem-syllables, when not determined by the general rules, is fixed by the usage of the poets (long or short by authority).

Remarks.—1. The changes of quantity in the formation of tensestems have been set forth in the conjugation of the verb (153, 2).

2. The occasional differences in the quantity of the stem-syllables which spring from the same radical can only be explained by reference to the history of each word, and cannot be given here. Some examples are:

păciscor,	pāx, pācis.	sědeő,	sēdēs,
măcer,	mācerō.	fīdēs,	fīdō (feido).
lĕgo,	lēx, lēgis.	dux, dŭcis,	dūcō (doucō).
rĕgo,	rēx, rēgis.	vŏcō,	vox.
tĕgo,	tēgula.	lŭcerna,	lūceō (louceō).
ācer,	ăcerbus.	suspicor,	suspīciō.
mõlēs,	mŏlestus.	mŏveō,	mõbilis (= movbilis).

### Quantity in Compounds.

715. Rule XIV.—Compounds generally keep the quantity of their constituent parts: (cēdō) ante-cēdō, dē-cēdō, prō-cēdō; (cadō), occīdō; (cadō), occīdō.

REMARKS.—I. Of the inseparable prefixes, di, sē, and vē are long, rē short: dīdūcō, sēdūcō, vēcors, rēdūcō; di, in dĭsertus, is shortened for dis, and in dirimo, dĭr stands for dis.

- Në is short, except in nëdum, nëmö (ne-hemö), nëquam, nëquiquam, nëquitia, nëve.
- 3. Rě comes from red, which in the forms redd, recc, repp, rell, rett, occurs principally in poetry before many consonantal verb forms; but this doubling varies at different periods, and is found throughout only in reddō. Rē by compensation for the loss of the d is found, occasionally, principally in Perfect stems and in daetylic poetry, especially in rēicere, rēligiō (also relligiō and religiō), rēdūcō (once in Plaut.).
- 4. Prō is shortened before vowels, and in many words before consonants, especially before f: proavos, prohibeō, proinde, profugio, profugus, profundus, profiteor, profarī, profanus, proficiscor, procella, proul, pronepōs. The older language shortens less frequently than the later. In Greek words pro  $(\pi\rho\phi)$  is generally short: prophēta; but prologus.
  - 5. The second part of the compound is sometimes shortened : dēiero,

(from iūrō), cognitus, agnītus (from notus). Notice the quantity in the compounds of -dicus: fatidicus, vēridicus (dicō), and innūba, pronūba (nūbō).

6. Mechanical rules, more minute than those given above, might be multiplied indefinitely, but they are all open to so many exceptions as to be of little practical value. A correct pronunciation of Latin cannot be acquired except by constant practice, under the direction of a competent teacher, or by a diligent study of the Latin poets, and consequently of Latin versification.

### Peculiarities of Quantity in Early Latin.

- **716.** The *Iambic* (734) *Law*. Any combination of short and long, having an accent on the short, or immediately preceding or following an accented syllable, may be scanned as a Pyrrhic. This applies to
  - (a) Iambic words, especially imperatives, as: rogo, vide, mane;
- (b) Words beginning with an Iambus, when the second syllable is long by position, and the third syllable is accented, as: seněctūtem, volüntātis;
- (c) Two monosyllables closely connected, or a monosyllable closely connected with a following long initial syllable, as: quis hic est, ut öccēpi. The monosyllable may have become so by elision.
  - (d) Trochaic words following a short accented syllable, as : quid istuc.
- (e) Cretic words, but more often in anapaestic measure, or at the beginning of a hemistich, as venerant.

Notes.—1. Before quidem a monosyllable is shortened: tu quidem.

- 2. A combination like voluptas mea is looked upon as a single word.
- 3. Authorities are not agreed as to the shortening: in polysyllabic words, when the second syllable is long by nature and the third syllable accented; in trisyllables which have become Iambic by elision; in Cretics at Trochaic and Iambic close; in polysyllables like simillumae.
- 717. Personal pronouns and similar words of common occurrence forming Trochees (734) may shorten the initial syllable when followed by a long syllable or its equivalent, even in the oblique cases: ille mē, ómnium mē, unde tíbí.
- Notes.—1. The words involved are ille, illic, iste, istic, ipse, ecquis, omnis, nempe, inde, unde, quippe, immo, and a few others that are disputed, such as some dissyllabic imperatives like mitte, redde, and monosyllables followed by -que, -ne, -ve, and the like.
- Nempe, inde, unde, quippe, ille, iste, may perhaps suffer syncope and be scanned as monosyllables.
- 3. Nempe never forms a whole foot. Proin, dein, exin are used only before consonants: proinde only before vowels; deinde usually before vowels, rarely before consonants.
- Trochees also come under the operation of the *Iambic Law* when they follow a short accented syllable.

#### FIGURES OF PROSODY.

- 718. Poetry often preserves the older forms of language, and perpetuates peculiarities of pronunciation, both of which are too frequently set down to poetic license.
- 719. 1. Elision.—When one word ends with a vowel and another begins with a vowel, or h, the first vowel is elided. Elision is not a total omission, but rather a hurried half-pronunciation, similar to grace notes in music.

# $f{\bar{0}}$ fēlix $f{\bar{u}n(a)}$ ant $f{(e)}$ aliās Priamēla virg $f{\bar{o}}$ .—VERG.

2. Ecthlipsis.—In like manner m final (a faint nasal sound) is elided with its short vowel before a vowel or h.

u u e e Monstr(um), horrend(um), inform(e) ingens cui lümen ademptum.—Verg.

EXCEPTION.—After a vowel or m final, the word est, is, drops its e and joins the preceding syllable (Aphaeresis).

SI rixast ubi tū pulsās ego vāpulö tantum.—Juv. Aeternās quoniam poenās in morte timendumst.—Lucr.

720. Hiatus.—Hiatus is the meeting of two vowels in separate syllables, which meeting produces an almost continuous opening (yawning) of the vocal tube. In the body of a word this hiatus, or yawning, is avoided sometimes by contraction, often by shortening the first vowel (13).

Remarks.—I. The Hiatus is sometimes allowed: a, in the Thesis (729), chiefly when the first vowel is long; b, in an Arsis (729), or resolved Thesis, when a long vowel is shortened (Semi-hiatus); e, before a pause, chiefly in the principal Caesura (750); d, in early Latin, in the principal Caesura, before a change of speakers, and occasionally elsewhere.

- (a) Stant et iūniperī (h) et castaneae (h) hīrsūtae.—Verg.
- (b) Crēdimus? an quǐ (h) amant ipsī sibi somnia fingunt?—Verg.
- (c) Promissam eripui genero. (h) Arma impia sumpsi.—Verg.
- (d) A. Abī. B. Quid abeam ? A. St! abī (h). B. Abeam (h) ? A. Abī.— PLAUT.
  - 2. Monosyllabic interjections are not elided.
  - 3. On the elision of e in -ne? see 456, R. 2.
- 721. Diastolé.—Many final syllables, which were originally long, are restored to their rights by the weight of the Thesis.

Uxör, heus uxor, quamquam tū īrāta's mihī.—Plaut. Dummodō mōrāta rēctē veniat dōtātast satis.—Plaut. Perrūpīt Acheronta Herculeus labor.—Hor.

Sometimes, however, Diastolé arises from the necessities of the verse (as in proper names), or is owing to a pause (Punctuation).

Nec quas Prīamidēs in aquosīs vallibus Īdae.—Ov. Dēsine plūra puēr—et quod nunc înstat agāmus.—Verg. Pectoribūs inhiāns spīrantia consulit exta.—Verg.

NOTE.—The extent to which diastolé is allowable is a matter of dispute, especially in early Latin.

On quē, see 707, 2, Ex. 5.

722. Systolé.—Long syllables which had begun to shorten in prose, are shortened (Systolé).

Obstupuī stetĕruntque comae võx faucibus haesit.—Verg. Ē terrā māgn(um) alterĕus spectāre labōrem.—Lucr. Ūnĕus ad certam fōrmam primōrdia rērum.—Lucr. Nūllĕus addictus iūrāre in verba magistrī.—Hor.

Note.—The short penult of the Pf. in steterunt, dederunt, was probably original (DEDRO in inscriptions). See 181, 4, b, 5 and 6.

723. Hardening.—The vowels i and u assert their half-consonant nature (Hardening): abiëtë (ăbiëtë), genvă (gĕnŭä), tenvĭă (tĕnŭĭă).

Flüviörum rēx Ēridanus campōsque per omnēs.—Verc. Nam quae tēnvia sunt hiscendīst nūlla potestās.—Lucr.

724. Dialysis.—The consonants i and v assert their half-vowel nature: dissolvo (dissolvo), Gāžus (Gāius, from Gāvius).

Adulterētur et columba mīluō.—Hor.
Stāmina non ūllī dissoluenda deō.—Tib.

**725.** Syncopé.—Short vowels are dropped between consonants, as often in prose: calfaciō for calefaciō.

Templörum positor templörum säncte repostor.—Ov. Quiddam mägnum addēns ünum mē surpite (= surripite) mortī.—Hor.

**726.** *Tmēsis.*—Compound words are separated into their parts.

Quō mē cunque (= quōcumque mē) rapit tempestās dēferor hospes.—

NOTE.—The earlier poets carry Tmesis much further, in unwise emulation of the Greek. Celebrated is: Saxō cere comminuit brum,—Ennius.

727. Synizēsis.—Vowels are connected by a slur, as often in the living language: dēinde, dēinceps.

Quid faciam roger anne rogem ? quid deinde rogābō ?—()v. So even when h intervenes, as dehinc:

Eurum ad sē Zephyrumque vocat, dehinc tālia fātur.—VERG.

Remark.—Synizēsis (settling together) is also called Synaeresis (taking together), as opposed to Diaeresis (5); but Synaeresis properly means contraction, as in cōgō (for coagō), and nēmō (for nehemō). Synaloepha is a general term embracing all methods of avoiding Hiatus.

Note.—1. Synizesis is very common in early Latin, especially in pronominal forms: mf (mihi), meus, and its forms, dissyllabic forms like eo, eum, etc.

728. Synapheia.—A line ends in a short vowel, which is elided before the initial vowel of a following line, or a word is divided between two lines, i. e., the two lines are joined together.

Sors exitūra et nos in aeteru(um)

Exilium impositūra cumbae.—Hor., O., II. 3, 27.

Gallicum Rhēn(um), horribile aequor, ūltimosque Britannos.—Cat., II. II.

#### VERSIFICATION.

729. Rhythm.—Rhythm means harmonious movement. In language, Rhythm is marked by the stress of voice (Accent). The accented part is called the Thesis; \* the unaccented, the Arsis. The Rhythmical Accent is called the Ictus (blow, beat).

Remark.—Besides the dominant Ictus, there is a subordinate or secondary Ictus, just as there is a dominant and a secondary Accent in words.

730. Metre.—Rhythm, when represented in language, is embodied in Metre (Measure). A Metre is a system of syllables standing in a determined order.

<sup>\*</sup> Thesis and Arsis are Greek terms, meaning the putting down and the raising of the foot in marching. The Roman Grammarians, misunderstanding the Greek, applied the terms to the lowering and raising of the voice, and thus reversed the significations. Modern scholars up to recent times followed the Roman habit, but at present the tendency is to use the terms in their original signification, as above.

**731.** Unit of Measure.—The Unit of Measure is the short syllable,  $(\sim)$ , and is called Mora, Tempus (Time).

The value in music is  $\int = \frac{1}{8}$ .

The long (-) is the double of the short.

The value in music is  $= \frac{1}{4}$ .

Remark.—An irrational syllable is one which is not an exact multiple of the standard unit. Feet containing such quantities are called irrational.

732. Resolution and Contraction.—In some verses, two short syllables may be used instead of a long (Resolution), or a long instead of two short (Contraction).

733. Feet.—As elements of musical strains, Metres are called Bars. As elements of verses, they are called Feet.

As musical strains are composed of equal bars, so verses are composed of equal feet, marked as in music, thus | .

Remark.—Theoretically, the number of metres is unrestricted; practically, only those metres are important that serve to embody the principal rhythms.

734. Names of the Feet.—The feet in use are the following:

	Feet of Thre	e Times.	
Trochee,	-0	lēgĭt.	15
Iambus,	<b>U</b> —	lĕgunt.	51
Tribrach,	000	lěgĭtě.	111
	Feet of Four	Times.	
Dactyl,	-00	lēgimūs.	1.77
Anapaest,	- U	lĕgĕrent.	771
Spondee,		lēgī.	11
Proceleus maticus,	0000	relegitur.	лл

	Feet of Five	Times.		
Cretic,		lēgěrint.	151	
First Paeon,	-000	lēgērītīs.	155	
Fourth Pacon,	000-	lĕgĭmĭnī.	7353	
Bacchīus,	·	lĕgēbant.	5 1 1	
Antibacchīus,		lēgistīs.	115	
Feet of Six Times.				
Ionicus a maiore,		collēgimus.	111	
Ionicus a minore,	00	rělěgēbant.	JIII	
Choriambus,	-00-	colligërant.	171	
Ditrochee,	-0-0	colliguntăr.	1212	
Diiambus,	U-U-	lĕgāmĭnī.	1111	

REMARKS.—I. Other feet are put down in Latin Grammars, but they do not occur in Latin verse, if in any, such as:

Pyrrhic,	UU	lĕgĭt.	Antispast,	UU	lĕgēbārĭs.
First Epitrite,	·	rělēgērunt.	Dispondee,		sēlēgērunt.
Second Epitrite,		ēlīgēbant.	Second Pacon,	0-00	lĕgentĭbŭs.
Third Epitrite,		sēlēgĕrint.	Third Pacon,	00-0	lĕgĭtōtĕ.
Fourth Epitrite,		collēgistīs.	Molossus,		lēgērunt.

#### 2. For Irrational Feet see 743 and 744.

- 735. Ascending and Descending Rhythms.—Rhythms are divided into ascending and descending. If the Thesis follows, the Rhythm is called ascending; if it precedes, descending. So the Trochee has a descending, the Iambus an ascending, rhythm.
- 736. Names of Rhythms.—Rhythms are commonly called after their principal metrical representative. So the Trochaic Rhythm, the Anapaestic Rhythm, the Iambic Rhythm, the Dactylic Rhythm, the Ionic Rhythm.
  - 737. Classes of Rhythms.—In Latin, the musical element

of versification is subordinate, and the principles of Greek rhythm have but a limited application.

The Greek classes are based on the relation of Thesis to Arsis.

- I. Equal Class, in which the Thesis is equal to the Arsis (γένος ἴσον). This may be called the Dactylico-Anapaestic class.
- II. Unequal Class, in which the Thesis is double of the Arsis ( $\gamma \epsilon \nu o \delta \delta i \pi \lambda \alpha \delta \iota o \nu$ ). This may be called the Trochaico-Iambic class.
- III. Quinquepartite or Paeonian Class (Five-eighths class), of which the Cretic and Bacchīus are the chief representatives (γ έν ος ἡμιόλιον).
- 738. Rhythmical Series.—A Rhythmical Series is an uninterrupted succession of rhythmical feet, and takes its name from the number of feet that compose it.

Dipody = two feet. Pentapody = five feet.

Tripody = three feet. Hexapody = six feet.

Tetrapody = four feet.

REMARKS.—I. The Dipody is the ordinary unit of measure (-meter) in Trochaic, lambic, and Anapaestic verse. In these rhythms a monometer contains two feet, a dimeter four, a trimeter six, a tetrameter eight.

- 2. The single foot is the ordinary unit of measure (-meter) in Dactylic verse. Thus, a verse of one Dactyl is called a Monometer; of two, a Dimeter; of three, a Trimeter; of four, a Tetrameter; of five, a Pentameter; of six, a Hexameter.
- 3. There are limits to the extension of series. Four feet (in Greek, five) is the limit of the Daetylic and Anapaestic, six of the Trochaic and Iambic series. All beyond these are compounds.
- 739. The Anacrustic Scheme.—Ancient Metric discussed the colon, whether in Ascending or Descending Rhythm, according to the feet of which it was composed. Most modern critics, since the time of Bentley, regard the first Arsis in an ascending rhythm as taking the place of an upward beat in music (called by Hermann Anacrūsis; i.e., rpward stroke, signal-beat), whereby all rhythms become descending.

In this way the Iambus is regarded as an Anacrustic Trochee, the Anapaest as an Anacrustic Daetyl, the Ionicus a minore as an Anacrustic Ionicus a maiore. The sign of the Anacrusis is:

740. Equality of the Feet.—Every rhythmical series is composed of equal parts. To restore this equality, when it is violated by language, there are four methods:

I. Syllaba Anceps.

3. Protraction.

2. Catalēxis.

4. Correption.

- 741. Syllaba Anceps.—The final syllable of an independent series or verse may be short or long indifferently. It may be short when the metre demands a long; long when the metre demands a short. Such a syllable is called a Syllaba Anceps.
- 742. Catalexis and Pause.—A complete series is called Acatalectic; an incomplete series is called Catalectic. A series or verse is said to be Catalectic in syllabam, in dissyllabum, in trisyllabum, according to the number of syllables in the catalectic foot.

∠ ∪ ∪ | ∠ ∪ ∪ | ∠ Trimeter dactylicus catalēcticus in syllabam. ∠ ∪ ∪ | ∠ ∪ ∪ | ∠ ∪ Trimeter dactylicus catalēcticus in dissyllabum.

The time is made up by Pause.

The omission of one mora is marked  $\wedge$ ; of two  $\overline{\wedge}$ 

743. Protraction and Syncopé.—Protraction  $(\tau \circ \nu n)$  consists in drawing out a long syllable beyond its normal quantity. It occurs in the body of a verse, and serves to make up for the omission of one or more Arses, which omission is called Syncopé.

$$-=3=$$
 (triseme long);  $-=4=$  (tetraseme long).

- 744. Correption.—Correption is the shortening of a syllable to suit the measure.
- 1. So a long syllable sometimes takes the place of a short, and is marked >; similarly, two short syllables often seem to take the place of one, and may be marked  $\sim$ .
- 2. When a Dactyl is used as a substitute for a Trochee, the approximate value is often  $1\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} + 1 = 3 = 1$ ; which may be indicated by  $\sim$  (cyclic Dactyl).

The following line illustrates all the points mentioned:

(a) Irrational trochee (irrational long). (b) Cyclic dactyl. (c) Syncopé and Protraction (triseme long). (d) Syllaba anceps. (e) Catalëxis.

Remark.—Under this head, notice the frequent use of the irrational long in Anaerusis.

745. Verse.—A Simple Rhythm is one that consists of a simple series; a Compound Rhythm is one that consists of two or more series.

A Verse is a simple or compound rhythmical series, which forms a distinct and separate unit. The end of a verse is marked

- 1. By closing with a full word. Two verses cannot divide a word between them, except very rarely by Synapheia (728).
  - 2. By the Syllaba Anceps, which can stand unconditionally.
- 3. By the Hiatus, *i. e.*, the verse may end with a vowel, though the next verse begin with one. Occasionally such verses are joined by Synapheia (V., A., I. 332-3, 448-9; II. 745-6).
- 746. Methods of Combining Verses.—The same verse may be repeated throughout without recurring groups (Stichic Composition); such as the Septenarius and Octonarius, the Trochaic Septenarius, the Heroic Hexameter, the Iambic Senarius (Trimeter). Or the same verse or different verses may be grouped in pairs (distichs), triplets (tristichs), fours (tetrastichs). Beyond these simple stanzas Latin versification seldom ventured.

Larger groups of series are called Systems.

Larger groups of verses are called Strophes, a name sometimes attached to the Horatian stanzas.

- 747. Cantica and Diverbia.—In the Drama there is a broad division between that part of the play which was simply spoken, and is called Diverbium, comprising the scenes in the Iambic Senarius, and that part which was either sung or recited to a musical accompaniment called Canticum. The Canticum is subdivided into: (1) Those scenes which were merely recited to the accompaniment of the flute, and were written in Trochaic and Iambic Septenarii and Iambic Octonarii; and (2) those parts which were written in varying measures (mutatis modis cantica) and sung. The latter division is also called "Cantica in the narrow sense," and may be divided into monologues, dialogues, etc. The greatest variety of measures is found in the monologues.
  - 748. Union of Language with Rhythm. When embodied

in language, rhythm has to deal with rhythmical groups already in existence. Every full word is a rhythmical group with its accent, is a metrical group with its long or short syllables, is a word-foot. Ictus sometimes conflicts with accent; the unity of the verse-foot breaks up the unity of the word-foot.

749. Conflict of Ictus and Accent.—In ordinary Latin verse, at least according to modern pronunciation, the Ictus overrides the Accent; this conflict seems, however, to have been avoided in the second half of the Dactylic Hexameter, and the Ictus made to coincide with the Accent.

Note.—The extent to which this conflict was felt by the Romans themselves is a matter of uncertainty, but it seems likely that the dominant accent of a word was not so sharp as in modern pronunciation, and consequently the conflict would not be serious.

**750.** Conflict of Word-foot and Verse-foot.—The conflict of word-foot and verse-foot gives rise to Caesura. Caesura means an incision produced by the end of a word in the middle of a verse-foot, and is marked †.

This incision serves as a pause, partly to rest the voice for a more vigorous effort, partly to prevent monotony by distributing the masses of the verse.

REMARKS.—I. So in the Heroic Hexameter the great Caesura falls before the middle of the verse, to give the voice strength for the first Arsis of the second half.

It does not occur at the middle, as in that case the verse would become monotonous.

- 2. In many treatises any incision in a verse is called a Caesura.
- 751. Varieties of Caesura. Caesurae have different names to show their position in the verse, as follows:

Sēmiternāria, after the third half foot, i.e., in the second foot. Sēmiquīnāria, after the fifth half foot, i.e., in the third foot. Sēmiseptēnāria, after the seventh half foot, i.e., in the fourth foot. Sēminovēnāria, after the ninth half foot, i.e., in the fifth foot.

REMARK.—These Caesurae are frequently called after their Greek names, thus: trihemimeral, penthemimeral, hepthemimeral, etc.

752. Masculine and Feminine Caesurae.—In trisyllabic metres, when the end of the word within the verse-foot falls on a Thesis, it is called a Masculine Caesura; when on an Arsis, a Feminine Caesura.

 $\overline{\mathbf{U}}$ na sa | I $\overline{\mathbf{u}}$ s  $\stackrel{d}{+}$  vi | ct $\overline{\mathbf{u}}$ s  $\stackrel{b}{+}$  n $\overline{\mathbf{u}}$ l | lam  $\stackrel{c}{+}$  sp $\overline{\mathbf{e}}$  | r $\overline{\mathbf{a}}$ re  $\stackrel{d}{+}$  sa | l $\overline{\mathbf{u}}$ tem. a, b, c, are Masculine Caesurae ; d, a Feminine Caesura.

Especially noteworthy is the Feminine Caesura of the third foot in the Hexameter, called the Third Trochee (783, R. 2).

**753.** Diaeresis.—When verse-foot and word-foot coincide, Diaeresis arises, marked  $\|$ 

Îte domum saturae † venit | Hesperus | îte capellae.—Verg.

Remarks.—I. Diaeresis, like Caesura, serves to distribute the masses of the verse and prevent monotony. What is Caesura in an ascending rhythm becomes Diaeresis as soon as the rhythm is treated anacrustically.

Suīs | et i | psa † Rō | ma vī | ribus || ruit. Iambie Trimeter. Su : īs et || ipsa || Rōma || vīri | bus † ru | it. Troch. Trimeter Catal., with Anacrusis.

- 2. Diaeresis at the end of the fourth foot of a Hexameter is called Bucolic Caesura, and has a special effect (783, R. 3).
- **754.** Recitation.—When the word-foot runs over into the next verse-foot, a more energetic recitation is required, in order to preserve the sense, and hence the multiplication of Caesurae lends vigor to the verse.

Remark.—The ordinary mode of scanning, or singing out the elements of a verse, without reference to signification, cannot be too strongly condemned, as,

Unasa, lusvic, tisnul, lamspe, raresa, lutem!

### Numerus Italicus.

755. The oldest remains of Italian poetry are found in some fragments of ritualistic and sacred songs, and seem to have had no regard to quantity. No definite theory can be formed of this so-called Numerus Ītalicus in which they were composed, but they seem to have been in series of four Theses, usually united in pairs or triplets, but sometimes separate. An example is the prayer to Mars, from Cato, Agr., 141.

Márs páter tế précor | quáesốque úti síðs | vólóns própítiús Míhí dómő | fámiliaéque nóstraé, etc.

#### Saturnian Verse.

- 756. The Saturnian verse is an old Italian rhythm which occurs in the earlier monuments of Latin literature. It divides itself into two parts, with three Theses in each; but the exact metrical composition has been a matter of much dispute, the remains not being sufficient to admit of any dogmatism. The two principal theories are:
- The Quantitative Theory.—The Saturnian is a six-foot verse with Anacrusis, and a Caesura after the third Arsis, or more rarely after the third Thesis.

Dabúnt malúm Metélli | Naévió poétae. Cornéliús Lūcíus | Scípió Barbátus. Quorus fórma vírtūtéi | parísumá fúit. Eðrúm sectám sequóntur | múltī mórtálēs.

NOTES.—1. The Thesis is formed by a long or two shorts; the Arsis by a short, a long, or two shorts (not immediately before the Caesura). The Arsis may be wholly suppressed, most often the second Arsis of the second hemistich. Short syllables under the Ictus may be scanned long. Hiatus occurs everywhere, but usually in Caesura.

2. This theory is held by many scholars, but with various modifications. Thus, some do not accept the lengthening of the short syllables, others would scan by protraction four feet in each half verse, etc.

#### Dabúnt malúm Metéllí | Naéviō poétae, etc.

2. The Accentual Theory.—The Saturnian verse falls into two halves, the first of which has three Theses, the second usually three, sometimes two, in which case there is usually Anacrusis in the second hemistich. Quantity is not considered.

Dábunt málum Metélli | Naéviő poétae. Quốius főrma virtútei | parísuma fúit.

Notes.—1. Two accented syllables are regularly divided by a single unaccented syllable, except that between the second and third there are always two. Hiatus allowed only at Caesura.

2. A modification of this theory would scan

#### Dábunt málum Métellí | Naévió poétaé.

- 3. Very recently a modification of the Accentual Theory has been proposed, which has much in its favor:
- (a) The accent must fall on the beginning of each line, though it may be a secondary accent; the first hemistich has three, the second has but two Theses.
- (b) The first hemistich has normally seven syllables, the second six; but an extra short syllable may be admitted where it would be wholly or partially suppressed in current pronunciation.
- (c) After the first two feet there is an alternation between words accented on the first and those accented on the second syllable.
- (d) A final short vowel is elided, otherwise semi-hiatus is the rule; but there may be full Hiatus at the Caesura.

Dábunt málum Metélli | Naéviō poétae. Prím(a) incédit Céreris | Prosérpina púer.

### lambic Rhythms.

757. The Iambic Rhythm is an ascending rhythm, in which the Thesis is double of the Arsis. It is represented

By the Iambus :  $\bigcirc \angle$ ; By the Tribrach :  $\bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$ ; By the Spondee :  $-\angle$ ;

By the Dactyl:  $- \circ \circ$ ;

By the Anapaest:  $0 \cup 2$ ; and By the Proceleus maticus:  $0 \cup 20$ .

Remark.—The Spondee, Dactyl, Anapaest, and Proceleus are all irrational, and are consequently marked on the schemes thus: >-, >-, >-,  $\cdots$ ,  $\cdots$ ,  $\cdots$ ; see 744.

758. Iambic Octonārius (Tetrameter Acatalectic).

Iūss(I) ádparārI prándium | amf-

c(a) exspectat mé, sciō, PL.,

Men., 599.

Hīc fīnis est iámbe salvē † víndi-

cis doctór malī, Servius. > 4 0 - 0 4 0 - > 4 0 - > 4 0 -

Anacrustic Scheme:

$$\frac{1}{2}:\tau_{(>)}^{(>)}|-\frac{1}{2}|\tau_{(>)}^{(>)}|-\frac{1}{2}|\tau_{(>)}^{(>)}|-\frac{1}{2}|\tau_{(>)}|-\frac{1}{2}$$

NOTE.—This verse is predominantly a comic verse, occurring most frequently in TERENCE, who shows five hundred lines, while Plautus shows but three hundred. The substitutions are the same as in the Senarius (761, n. 1). There are two varieties:

(a) That which is divided into two equal halves by Diæresis at the end of the fourth foot. In this case the fourth foot as well as the eighth has all the privileges of the final foot of the Senarius (Hiatus, Syllaba Anceps), and conforms also to its rules, so that the line is practically a distich of two Quaternarii; but Hiatus after the fourth foot is denied for Terrace.

(b) That which is divided into two unequal halves by a Cæsura after the fifth Arsis. Here the rules of the final foot apply only to the eighth, and the fourth may be a Spondee. The principle which governs the choice of words after the sēmiquināria in the Senarius applies here after the dividing Cæsura. The Hiatus comes under the general rules. From the earliest period there is a tendency to keep the even feet pure. This variety is preferred by Terence to the former. Examples of the two forms are:

 $ar{\mathbf{0}}$  Trōia,  $ar{\mathbf{0}}$  patria,  $ar{\mathbf{0}}$  Pergamum,  $\|\ ar{\mathbf{0}}$  Priame, periistī senex, Plaut. Is porrō m( $ar{\mathbf{0}}$ ) autem verberāt  $\|$  incursat pūgnīs calcibus, Plaut. Facil( $ar{\mathbf{0}}$ ) omnēs quom valēmus rēcta  $\|\ \mathbf{c}$ ōnsilia aegrōtīs damus, Ter.

759. Iambic Septēnārius (Tetrameter Catalectic).

Remítte palliúm mihī | meúm quod

involásti, Cat.

Anacrustic Scheme:

Notes.—1. This verse is confined principally to Plautus and Terence; it is to be regarded as a compound of Dimeter + Dimeter Catalectic; hence regular Discresis after the fourth foot, which is treated as a final foot. The same rules, in regard to he various word-feet allowable, apply here as in the case of the Senarius (761, N. 6). Substitutions are allowable in every foot except in the fourth, when followed by a Discresis.

With Syllaba Anceps:

SI abdüxerıs celabitur | itidem ut celata adhuc est, Plaut. With Histus:

Sed sī tibi vīgintī minae | argentī proferuntur, Plaut.

2. Exceptionally in Plautus, more often in Terence, the line is cut by Cæsura after the fifth Arsis. In this case the fourth foot has no exceptional laws except that if the seventh foot is not pure the fourth should be, though this is not absolutely necessary.

760. The Iambic Sēnārius (a Stichic measure). This is an imitation of the Iambic Trimeter of the Greeks, but differs from it in that it is a line of six separate feet and not of three dipodies. In the early Latin there is no distinction between the odd and even feet, such as prevails in the Greek Trimeter, but the same substitutions were allowable in the one as in the other. This distinction is regained in Horace and Seneca, who follow the Greek treatment closely, and with whom the line may be with some degree of justice called the Iambic Trimeter, but it is very doubtful whether the Roman felt the Iambic Trimeter as did the Greek. In both Senarius and Trimeter the last foot is always pure.

761. The Early Use (Sēnārius).

Any substitution is allowed in any foot except the last.

Quamvis sermönēs possunt longī

téxier, PL, Trin., 797.  $> \angle \mid > - \mid > \angle \mid > - | > \angle | > - | > - | > \angle | > - | > \angle | > - | > | > - | > \angle | > - | > - | > \angle | > - | > | > - | > | > |$ 

Qui scire possis + aut ingenium

nőscere, Ter., And., 53.

S(I) uxốris † propter amốrem†nō-

lit dűcere, Ter., And., 155.  $> \angle |> -| \cup \angle |> -|> \angle |\cup -$  Dī fórtūnābunt†vőstra cōnsili(a).

Íta volō, PL., Trin., 576.  $> \angle |> -|> \angle |\cup -|\cup \cup \cup \cup \cup -$ El r(el) óperam dare të † fúerat ali-

quant(ō) aéquius, PL., Trin.,

11g. > 40 | >00 | > 40 | 000 | > 2 | 0-

Notes.—1. In the Iambic measure two shorts at the end of a polysyllabic word cannot stand in either Thesis or Arsis; hence such feet as **genéra**, **mā** | **tería**, would not be allowable. But a Dactyl is sometimes found in the first foot (Ter., Eur., 349). The two shorts of a Thesis cannot be divided between two words, when the second word is a polysyllable with the accent on the second syllable; hence **fingit amorem** is

faulty. The two shorts of an Arsis should not be divided between two words if the first short ends a word; but there are sundry exceptions; especially the case where two words are closely connected, as, for instance, a preposition and its case; propter amorem.

- The most frequent Casura is the sēmiquīnāria. Next comes the sēmiseptēnāria, which is usually accompanied by the sēmiternāria or by Diæresis after second foot. Examples above.
- 3. Elision is more frequent in the Iambic Senarius than in the Daetylic Hexameter, and occurs especially before the first and fifth Theses; also not unfrequently in the fourth foot. The proportion of elision varies between Terence (four elisions in every three verses) and Horace (one in five stichic verses, and one in seven in distichs).
- 4. Semi-hiatus (720), also called *Graccānicus* or *Lēgitimus*, is very common both in Thesis and Arsis; Hiatus is also admitted at a change of speaker; whether it is admissible before proper names, foreign words, and in the principal Cæsura, is still a matter of dispute.
- 5. If the line is divided by the sēmiquēnāria Cæsura, and the fifth foot is formed by a single word, the second half of the third foot, together with the fourth, may be formed by a single word only when that is a Cretic or a Fourth Pæon; as, filius bonān fidē (Pt..., Most., 670). Thus dēpinxtī verbīs probē would not be allowable for verbīs dēpinxtī probē (Pt..., Poen., 1114).
- 6. To close the line with two Iambic feet was not allowable, except as follows: (1) When the line ends with a word of four syllables or more. (2) When the line ends with a Cretic word. (3) When the line ends with an Iambic word preceded by an anapaest or Fourth Pæon. (4) When a change of person precedes the sixth foot. (5) When elision occurs in the fifth or sixth foot.

# 762. The Later Use (Trimeter).

Suís et ipsa † Róma vīribús ruit 🔾 🗸 🔾 — | 🔾 🗸 🔾 — | 🔾 🗸 🔾 — Heu mé per urbem + nám pudet > 4 0 - 1 > 4 0 - 1 > 4 0 tantî malî Dērípere lūnam † võcibus possím > 000-1> 40-1> 40meis Infámis Helenae + Cástor offensus > 2000 | > 20 - 1 > 20 -Optát quietem Pélopis infidí pater  $> \bot \cup - |> \lor \cup \cup - |> \bot \cup -$ Alítibus atque + cánibus homicī->000-10000001>20d(am) Héctorem Vectábor humeristunc eg(o) ini-> 4 0001> 4 0001>40micís eques Pavidúmque lepor em et + ádve-U:-U|->|-U|->|-U|-A Anacrustic Scheme:

Notes.—1. The Iambic Trimeter, when kept pure, has a rapid aggressive movement. Hence, it is thus used in lampoons and invectives. It admits the Spondee in the odd places (first, third, fifth foot); the Tribrach in any but the last, though in Horace it is excluded from the fifth foot; the Dactyl in the first and third. The Anapaest is rare. The Proceleusmaticus occurs only in Seneca and Terentianus. When carefully handled, the closing part of the verse is kept light, so as to preserve the character. The

fifth foot is pure in CATULLUS, but is almost always a Spondee in Seneca and Petronius.

Diæresis at the middle of the verse is avoided. Short particles, which adhere closely to the following word, do not constitute exceptions.

Laboriosa nec cohors Ulixei, Hor.

Adulterētur et columba mīluō, Hor.

In like manner explain-

Refertque tanta grex amicus übera, Hor.

- The Cæsura is usually the sēmiquīnāria, but the sēmiseptēnāria is found also, but either with the sēmiquīnāria or with Diæresis after the second foot.
- 4. The Sēnārius pūrus, composed wholly of Iambi, is found first in Catullus (iv. and XXIX.); also in Horace (Epod., XVI.), Vergil (Cat., 3, 4, 8), and the Priāpēa.
- 5. Of course, in the Anacrustic Scheme, the Cæsura of the ordinary scheme becomes Diæresis.

  Le: vis cre | pante | lympha | dēsi | lit pe | de.

763. Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.

Meấ renidet ín domô lacúnar

Rēgúmque puerīs néc satelles Órci, Hor.

Anacrustic Scheme: 

∴ ∠ ∪ □ ∪ ∠ ∪ □ ∪ ∠ □ □ ∠ □ □ △ □ ⟨ with

Syncopé).

Notes.—This occurs in Horace (O., 1.4; H.18). No resolutions are found except in the second line quoted, where **pueris** may be dissyllabic (27), and the Spondee alone is used for the Iambus, mainly in the third foot. The Cæsura is always  $\varepsilon \tilde{e}miquin \tilde{a}ria$ .

764. Trimeter Iambicus Claudus (Chōliambus); Scazon (= Hobbler) Hippōnactēus.

Misér Catulle désinās inéptíre, Cat. U Z U — U Z U — U Z

Domin's parantur ista; serviúnt vóbis, MART.  $\sim 20 - 20 - 22 - 20$ 

Anacrustic Scheme:  $\gtrsim : \angle \cup |-\rangle |\angle \cup |-\cup |\angle |\angle \rangle$ . Tro-

chaic Trimeter with Anacrusis, Syncopé, and Protraction.

Notes.—1. In the Choliambus the rhythm is reversed at the close, by putting a Trochee or Spondee in the sixth foot. The lighter the first part of the verse, the greater the surprise. It is intended to express comic anger, resentment, disappointment.

2. This metre, introduced into Rome by Mattius, was used frequently by Catullus and Martial. Persius also has it in his Prologue.

- 3. The Dactyl is occasional in the first and third feet, the Tribrach occurs very rarely in the first, more often in the third and fourth, frequently in the second. The Spondee is found in the first and third feet; the Anapaest only in the first.
- The Cæsura is usually sēmiquīnāriu, sometimes sēmiseptēnāria, which is regularly supported by Diæresis after the second foot.

765. Iambic Quaternārius (Dimeter).

Inársit aestučsius  $\circ \checkmark \circ - \circ \checkmark \circ -$ 

Imbrés nivēsque cómparat > ∠ ∪ − ∪ ∠ ∪ −

Vidére properantés domum 🔾 🗸 🔾 🔾 🔾 🗕

Ast égo vicissim rfsero, Hor. > 000 - > 20 -

Anacrustic Scheme :

Note.—This verse is constructed according to the principles which govern the Senarius and Octonarius. It is rare in systems until the time of Seneca, and is usually employed as a Clausula in connection with Octonarii and Septenarii (Plautus, Terence), Senarii (Horace), or Dactylic Hexameter (Horace).

766. Iambic Ternārius (Dimeter Catalectic).

Id répperf i(am) exémplum  $> \angle \cup -> \angle - \text{ or } > : \angle \cup \angle > \angle - \land$ 

Note.—This verse is found mainly in Plautus and Terence, and used as a Clausula to Bacchic Tetrameters (Plautus), Iambic Septenarii (Plautus); but twice in Terence (And., 485; Hec., 731). It is found in systems first in Petronius.

767. The *Iambic Tripody Catalectic* and the *Dipody Acatalectic* are found here and there.

Inops amátor, Trin., 256.

Bonu(s) sit bonis, B., 660.

# Trochaic Rhythms.

768. The Trochaic Rhythm is a descending rhythm, in which the Thesis is double of the Arsis. It is represented,

By the Trochee:  $\angle \circ$ ;

By the Tribrach : ٥٥٠;

By the Spondee :  $\angle -$ ;

By the Anapaest :  $\psi \circ -$ ;

By the Dactyl:  $\angle \circ \circ$ .

By the Proceleusmaticus: 4000.

Remark.—The Spondee, Anapaest, Dactyl, and Proceleus maticus are all irrational and are accordingly measured ->,  $\cdots>$ ,  $\sim \circ$  or  $-\infty$ ,  $\cdots \circ$ ; see 744.

769. Trochaic Octonārius (Tetrameter Acatalectic).

Párce iam camoéna vātī | párce iam sacró furōrī.—Servius.

Dáte viam qua fúgere liceat, | fácite, totae pláteae pateant, Pl., Aul., 407.

Note.—This verse belongs to the cantica of early Comedy. It is properly a compound of two Quaternarii. Hence Hiatus and Syllaba Anceps are admitted in the Diercesis. A fourth or sixth Thesis, formed by the last syllable of a word forming or ending in a Spondee or Anapaest, was avoided, as was also a monosyllabic close. The Substitutions were allowed in all feet except the eighth, where the Tribrach is rare,

770. Trochaic Septēnārius (Tetrameter Catalectic).

Crás amet qui númqu(am) amāvit  $\|$  quíqu(e) amāvit crás amet.—PERVIG. VEN.

Tứ m( $\delta$ ) amoris mági' qu(am) honoris  $\parallel$  sérvāvistī grátiā.—Ennius. Vápulār(e) ego tế vehementer  $\parallel$  iúbeō: nō mē térritēs.—Plaut.

Notes.—1. This is usually divided by a Diæresis after the fourth Arsis into two halves, with the license of a closing verse before the Diæresis; this is often supported by Diæresis after the second foot. Not unfrequently the line is divided by Cæsura after the fourth Thesis, which may in this case be Anceps or have Hiatus, though not in Terence; but other critics refuse to admit such a division, and prefer Diæresis after the fifth foot. The substitutions are allowable in any foot except the seventh, which is regularly kept pure, though occasionally in early Latin a Tribrach or a Dactyl occurs even here. But the Dactyl is rare in the fourth foot.

- 2. The rule for the words allowable after the sēmiquināria Cæsura in the Senarius (761, N. 5) apply here after the Diæresis, with the necessary modifications; that is, the second hemistich cannot be formed by a word occupying the fifth and the Thesis of the sixth foot, followed by a word occupying the two succeeding half feet, unless the first word is a Cretic or a Fourth Pæon.
- 3. In regard to the close the same rules apply as in the case of the Iambic Senarius (761, n. 6); in regard to the fourth and sixth Theses the rules are the same as for the Octonarius (769, n.).
- 4. The strict Septenarius of the later poets keeps the odd feet pure, and rigidly observes th. Diæresis.

#### 771. Trochaic Tetrameter Claudus.

Húnc Cerēs, cibí ministra, frúgibus suís pórcet, VARRO.

20-020-020-0220

NOTE.—This verse is found only in the Menippean Satires of VARRO, and is formed, like the Iambic Senarius Claudus, by reversing the last two quantities.

772. Trochaic Quaternārius with Anacrūsis.

Sī fráctus illābátur orbis, Hor.  $: \angle \circ | -- | \angle \circ | -\overline{ } |$ 

Note.—This occurs only in the Alcaic Strophe of Horace.

773. Trochaic Ternārius (Dimeter Catalectic).

Réspice vērō Théspriō, Pl., Ep., 3.  $40->20-\land$ Nốn ebur nequ(e) aúreum, Hor.  $20-020-\land$ 

NOTE.—An uncommon measure, confined mainly to early poetry and to Horace; it is used as a Clausula between Tetrameters (Plautus) and Iambic Senarii Catalectic (Horace), or in series. The third foot was kept pure; also the others in the strict measure.

774. The Trochaic Tripody Acatalectic (Ithyphallic).

Qu(om) usus est ut pudeat, Plaut.,  $\angle \circ -> \circ \circ \circ$ 

Note.—This is rare, and appears only in early Latin and as a Clausula, usually with Cretics. Substitutions were allowable in every foot.

775. Trochaic Tripody Catalectic.

Éheu, qu(am) égo malís | pérdidí modís,

PL., Ps., 259.

Note.—This is found occasionally in early Latin; usually two at a time, otherwise as a Clausula. When the first word is a Cretic the line may end in two Iambi.

776. Trochaic Dipody (Monometer).

Nímis inépta's, Pl., Rud., 681. 4002

Note.—This is found occasionally as a Clausula with Cretic Tetrameters.

### Anapaestic Rhythms.

777. The Anapaestic Rhythm is an ascending rhythm, in which the Thesis is to the Arsis as 2 to 2. It is represented,

By the Anapaest:  $\circ \circ \bot$ ;

By the Spondee: - 4;

By the Dactyl: - ₺;

By the Proceleusmaticus: 0000.

Notes.—1. The Anapaestic measure is not uncommon in the Cantica of Plautus; but it is the metre most subject to license of all the early metres. Notice especially the operation of the Iambic Law (716, 717); the common occurrence of Synizesis, of Diastolé, and less often of Syncopé, etc.

Strict Anapaestic lines after the model of the Greek are found only in VARRO, SENECA, and later authors.

778. Anapaestic Octonārius (Tetrameter Acatalectic), and Anapaestic Septēnārius (Tetrameter Catalectic).

Hostíbŭs victīs, cīvíbŭs salvīs || rē plá- - - - - - - - - - - || cidā, pācibūs pérfectīs, Pers., 753. - - - - - - - - - - - - - - || Septúmăs ess(e) aedīs ā portā + || ub(i) - - - - - - - - - - - ||

eptúmăs ess(e) aedīs ā portā  $\dagger$  || ub(i)  $- \lor \lor - - - \lor - -$  || ill(e) hábitat lēnō quoí iūssit, Ps., 597.

Ait illam miseram, crúciār(i) et lacru- o o z - o o - o o - o

Notes.—1. These have regularly the Diæresis after the fourth foot, dividing the line into Quaternarii. Before the Diæresis, the licenses of a closing foot (Hiatus and Syllaba Anceps) are occasionally found.

2. In the Septenarius the seventh Thesis may be resolved, but the resolution of the eighth in the Octonarius is avoided.

779. Anapaestic Trimeter Catalectic.

Perspício nihilī meām vos grātiam fácere,

PL., Curc., 155.

Note.—This verse is very rare, and is denied by some critics; it has the same treatment as the Septenarius.

# 780. Anapaestic Quaternārius (Dimeter Acatalectic).

Veniént annis   saecúla sēris	UU L &U
Quibus Oceanus   vincúla rērum	00 2 00 60
Laxét et ingens   pateát tellüs	- 60 0 0 7
Tēthýsque novōs dētégat orbēs	- 200 00
Nec sit terris   ültima Thüle,—Sen. Trag.	

Note.—This verse avoids resolution of the fourth Thesis: Syllaba Anceps and Hiatus are rare.

# 781. Anapaestic Dimeter Catalectic (Paroemiac).

Volucér pede corpore púlcher	00200-0020
Linguá catus óre canórus	- 200-0020
Vērúm memoráre magís quam	- 400-0020
Fünctúm laudāre decébit.—Auson.	- 4

Notes. -1. This verse is not common except as the close of a system of Anapaestic Acatalectic Dimeters. It allows in early Latin resolution of the third Thesis.

2. Latin Anapaests, as found in later writers, are mere metrical imitations of the Greek Anapaests, and do not correspond to their original in contents. The Greek Anapaest was an anacrustic dactylic measure or march (in 1 time). Hence the use of Pause to bring out the four bars.

Paroemiacus: Anacrustic Scheme.

00:-00|-00|--|-Volucer pede corpore pulcher Dimeter Acatalectic: Anacrustic Scheme.

Quibus Oceanus vincula rērum 00:-00 | -- | 00- | -The Arses of the last feet are supplied by the Anacrusis of the following verse.

# 782. Anapaestic Dipody (Monometer Acatalectic).

Omné parätúmst, Pl., Men., 365

Note.—This verse is found in anapaestic systems between Anapaestic Dimeters.

### Dactylic Rhythms.

783. The Dactylic Rhythm is a descending rhythm, in which the Thesis is equal to the Arsis (2 = 2).

The Dactylic Rhythm is represented by the Dactyl: -- . Often, also, by the Spondee:  $\angle$ -.

784. Dactylic (Heroic) Hexameter.—The Heroic Hexameter is composed of two Dactylic tripodies, the second of which ends in a Spondee. Spondees may be substituted for the Dactyl in the first four feet; in the fifth foot, only when a special effect is to be produced. Such verses are called Spondaic. The longest Hexameter contains five Dactyls and one Spondee (or Trochee)-in all, seventeen syllables; the shortest in use, five Spondees and one Dactyl-in all, thirteen syllables. This variety in the length of the verse, combined with the great number of cæsural pauses, gives the Hexameter peculiar advantages for continuous composition.

(-)

	Scheme: "00   200   200   "00   200   2	_
2.	Ut fugiunt aquilās † timidissima    turba columbae, Ov. At tuba terribilī † sonitū † procul    aere canōrō, Verg. Quadrupedante putrem † sonitū   quatit    ungula campum, Verg.	Five Dactyls.
5.	Cum mediō celerēs † revolant   ex aequore mergī, Verg. Vāstius īnsurgēns † decimae   ruit    impetus undae, Ov. Et reboat raucum † regiō † cita    barbara    bombum, Lucr.	Four Dactyls.
8.	Mūta metū terram † genibus † summissa petēbat, Lucr. Inter cunctantēs † cecidit † moribunda ministrēs, Vere. Nē turbāta volent † rapidīs † lūdibria ventīs, Vere.	Three Dactyls.
	Versaqu(e) in obnīxōs † urgentur    cornua vāstō, Verg. Prōcēssit longē † flammantia    moenia mundī, Lucr.	Two Dactyls.
	Portam vī multā † conversō   cardine torquet. Verso: Tēct(um) august(um) ingēns † centum sublime columnīs. Verso.	One Dactyl.
14.	Olli respondit † Rēx Albāi Longāi, Ennius.	No Dactyl.
16.	Aut lövös ocreās † lentō † dūcunt argentō. Verg. Sunt apud Infernōs † tot mīlia förmōsārum, Prop. Ācriaeque Alpēs † et nūbifer ! Appennīnus, Ov.	Spondaic Verses.
	Procubuit viridi-   $qu(e)$ in litore   $e\bar{o}$ nspicitur— $s\bar{u}s$ , $Verg$ . Parturiunt montes + $n\bar{a}sc\bar{e}tur$   $r\bar{d}iculus$ — $m\bar{u}s$ , $Hor.$	Monosyllabic ending.
20.	10 + 6 = 16 8 Näscere, praeque diem+veniëns age, Lücifer, almum. Vers.	
21.	Īnsīgnem pietāte † virum † tot adīre labōrēs, Vers.	Third Trochee and Semisept.
22.	Et nigrae violae † sunt   et vaccīnia   nigra. Verg.	} Split in half.
23.	Sparsis   hastis   longis   campus   splendet et horret. En.	} Shivered.
	Quamvīs sint sub aquā sub aquā maledīcere tentant. Ov.	a - sound.
	Mē m(ē) adsum qui fēc(I) in mē convertite ferrum, Verg.	} e - sound.
26.	Discissõs nūdõs laniābant dentibus artūs, Verg.	}s - sound.
	Notes 1. The two reigning ictuses are the first and fourth, and the	e pauses are so

Notes.—1. The two reigning ictuses are the first and fourth, and the pauses are so arranged as to give special prominence to them—the first by the pause at the end of the preceding verse, the fourth by pauses within the verse, both before and after the Thesis.

2. The principal Cæsura is the sēmiquīnāria or penthemimeral, i. e., after the Thesis of the third foot, or Masculine Cæsura of the third foot; the next is the sēmiseptēnāria or hepthemimeral, after the Thesis of the fourth foot; but usually supplemented by the sēmiternāria in the Thesis of the second or by one after the second Trochee; then the Feminine Cæsura of the third foot, the so-called Third Trochee, which is less used among the Romans than among the Greeks. As Latin poetry is largely rhetorical, and the Cæsura is of more importance for recitation than for singing, the Roman poets are very exact in the observance of these pauses.

In verses with several Cæsuræ, the sēmiseptēnāria outranks the sēmiquīnāria, if it precedes a period, and the latter does not, or if it is perfect and the latter is imperfect (i.e., formed by tmesis or by elision); it also as a masculine Cæsura outranks the Third Trochee as a feminine. In other cases there may be doubt as to the principal Cæsura.

The Diæresis which is most carefully avoided is the one after the third foot, especially if that foot ends in a Spondee, and the verse is thereby split in half.

Examples are found occasionally, and if the regular Cæsura precedes, the verse is not positively faulty.

Hīs lacrimīs vītam + damus | - et miserēscimus ūltro.-Verg.

It is abominable when no other Cæsura proper is combined with it.

Poeni | pervortentes | omnia | circumcursant.—Pseudo-Ennius (Merula).

On the other hand the Diæresis at the end of the fourth foot divides the verse into proportionate parts (sixteen and eight morae, or two to one), and gives a graceful trochaic movement to the hexameter. This is called the Bucolic Cæsura, and while common in Greek, is not so in Latin even in bucolic poetry. JUVENAL, however, is fond of it, showing one in every fifteen verses.

Ite domum saturae | venit Hesperus | Ite capellae.-VERG.

- Verses without Cæsura are very rare; a few are found in Ennius (see No. 23) and Lucilius. Horace uses one designedly in A.P., 263.
- 5. Elision is found most often in Vergil (one case in every two verses) and least often in Lucan (leaving out Ennius and Claudian). Catullus, Juvenal, Horace, Ovid stand about midway between these two extremes. It is very rare in the Thesis of the first foot, and is found oftenest in the following order: the Thesis of the second foot, the Arsis of the fourth, the Arsis of the first, the Thesis of the third.
- 6. Simple Hiatus is very rare in lines composed wholly of Latin words, except at the principal Cæsura; it is found after a final short syllable (excluding -m) but twice (V., Ec., II. 53; A., I. 405); after a long monosyllable (omitting Interjections o and s) but once (V., A., IV. 235). But before the principal Cæsura, or if the line contains a Greek word, examples are not very uncommon. Vergil has altogether about forty cases; Horace shows two cases (S., I. 1, 108; Epod., 13, 3); Catullus two in the Hexameter of the Elegiac Distich (66, 11; 107, 1); Properties one (III. 7, 49).
- 7. Of Semi-hiatus Vergil shows some ten examples at the close of the Dactyl, but all of Greek words except A., III. 211; Ec., 3, 79; there are occasional examples clsewhere, as in Propertius, Horace, etc. There are also several examples of Semi-hiatus after a monosyllable in the first short of the Dactyl, as: Cat., xcvii. 1; V., A., vi. 507; Hor., S., I. 9, 38. Hiatus after num occurs in Hor., S., II. 2, 28.
- 8. Vergil is fond of Diastolé, showing fifty-seven cases, all except three (A., III. 464, 702; XII. 648) of syllables ending in a consonant; Horace, in Satires and Epistles, has eleven, once only of a vowel (S., II. 3, 22); Catullus, three; Properties, three; Tibullus, four; Martial (in the Distich), two; Vergil also lengthens que sixteen times, but only when que is repeated in the verse, and before two consonants or a double consonant (except A., III. 91); Ovid exercises no such care.
- 9. A short syllable formed by a final short vowel remains short before two consonants, of which the second is not a liquid (mainly sc, sp, st), especially in the fifth foot, less often in the first. Lucilius, Lucretius, and Ennius have numerous examples of this; Versil but one case (A., xi. 309), except before z; Horace has eight cases in the Satires; Propertius six; Thullus two cases, one before smaragdos.
- 10. A Hexameter should close (a) with a dissyllable preceded by a polysyllable of at least three syllables, or (b) with a trisyllable preceded by a word of at least two syllables. The preposition is proclitic to its case. Exceptions to this rule are common in early Latin, but decrease later. Thus Ennius shows fourteen per cent. of exceptional lines. In later times artistic reasons sometimes caused the employment even of a monosyllable at the end (see exs. 18, 19).
  - 11. Spondaic lines are exceptional in Ennius and Lucretius, more common in

CATULLUS, rare in VERGIL, OVID, HORACE, never in TIBULLUS. The stricter poets required that in this case the fourth foot should be a Dactyl, and then the two last feet were usually a single word. Entirely Spondaic lines are found in Ennius (three cases, as Ann., 1. 66, M.) and Cat. (116, 3).

12. Ennius shows three peculiar cases of the resolution of the Thesis in the Dactyl,

Ann., 267; Sat., 53 and 59.

13. Hypermetrical verses running into the next by Synapheia are rare; e.g., Lucr., v. 846; CAT., 64, 298; 115, 5. Vergil has twenty cases, usually involving que or ve, but twice -m (A., vii. 160; G., I., 295); three other cases are doubtful. Horace has two cases (in the Satires), Ovid three, Valerius Flaccus one. Horace has also four cases of two verses united by thesis of a compound word.

14. Pure dactylic lines are rare; the most usual forms of the first four feet of the stichic measure are these: does, 15 per cent.; ddss, 11.8 per cent.; ddss, 11 per cent.; ddss, 10 per cent. The most uncommon are sddd, 12 per cent.; ddss, 12 per cent. The proportion of Spondee to Dactyl in the first four feet varies from 65.8 per cent. of Spondee in Catullus to 45.2 per cent. in Ovid. The following statements are from Drobisch: (a) Excepting Ennius, Cicero, and Silius Italicus, Latin poets have more Dactyls than Spondees in the first foot. (b) Excepting Lucretius, more Spondees in the second. (c) Excepting Valerius Flaccus, more Spondees in the third. (d) Without exception, more Spondees in the fourth.

15. Much of the beauty of the Hexameter depends on the selection and arrangement of the words, considered as metrical elements. The examples given above have been chosen with especial reference to the picturesque effect of the verse. Monosyllables at the end of the Hexameter denote surprise; anapaestic words, rapid movement, and the like.

Again, the Hexameter may be lowered to a conversational tone by large masses of Spondees, and free handling of the Cæsura. Compare the Hexameters of Horace in the Odes with those in the Satires.

# 785. Elegiac Pentameter (Catalectic Trimeter repeated).

The Elegiac Pentameter consists of two Catalectic Trimeters or Penthemimers, the first of which admits Spondees, the second does not. There is a fixed Diæresis in the middle of the verse, as marked above, which is commonly supplemented by the semiternaria Cæsura. The Pentameter derives its name from the old measurement:  $-\circ\circ$ ,  $-\circ\circ$ ,  $-\circ$ ,  $-\circ\circ$ , and the name is a convenient one, because the verse consists of  $2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2}$  Dactyls. The Elegiac Distich is used in sentimental, amatory, epigrammatic poetry.

The musical measurement of the Pentameter is as follows:

This shows why neither Syllaba Anceps nor Hiatus is allowed at the Diæresis, and explains the preference for length by nature at that point.

The Elegiac Pentameter occurs only as a Clausula to the Heroic Hexameter, with which it forms the Elegiac Distich. Consequently the sense should not run into the following Hexameter (exceptions rare):

Saep(e) ego tentāvī cūrās dēpellere vīnō
At dolor in lacrimās || verterat omne merum, Tib.
Ingenium quondam fuerat pretiōsius aurō
At nunc barbariēs || grandis habēre nihil, Ov.
Pār erat inferior versus: rīsisse Cupīdō
Dīcitur atque ūnum || surripuisse pedem, Ov.
Saep(e) ego cum dominae dulcēs ā līmine dūrō
Āgnōscō vōcēs || haec negat esse domi, Tib.

Notes.—1. In the first two feet of the Pentameter, which alone can suffer variation, the forms are as follows: Ds. 46 per cent.; Dd. 24.5 per cent.; ss. 16 per cent.; sd. 13.5 per cent. Catullus, however, has ss. 34.5 per cent.

2. Elision is rare, especially in the second hemistich. When it occurs it is generally in the first Arsis or second Thesis, and usually affects a short vowel or -m. Catullus shows the greatest proportion of examples, Ovid the smallest. Except in Catullus and Lygdamus there are fewer cases of Elision in the Pentameter than in the Hexameter.

3. Elision and Diastolé in the Diæresis are rare. Catullus especially, and Propertius occasionally, have Elision. Propertius and Martial show each two cases of Diastolé (Prop., II. 3, 8; II. 24, 4; Mart., IX. 101, 4; XIV. 77, 2).

4. A final short vowel before two consonants, one of which is a liquid or s, is lengthened twice in Tibullus, and remains short once in Propertius (Tib., 1.5, 28; 1.6, 34; Prop., IV. 4, 48).

5. Dialysis occurs in compounds of solvo and volvo; as, Cat., 66, 74; Tib., 1.7, 2, etc.

6. In the strict handling of the Pentameter by OVID, the rule was that it should close with a dissyllable. So in his Amores, OVID shows no example of any other ending; and in his Tristia the proportion is one in one hundred and forty lines. In earlier times, however, there was no especial avoidance of polysyllabic endings, though more are found in Catullus than in any other author. Peculiar is Properties, who, while almost equalling Catullus in his disregard of the law of the dissyllable ending in the first book, equals the Tristia of Ovid in the observance of it in his fourth. With dissyllabic ending the prevailing forms of the second Hemistich are — U, — U, and — U, U — U, but Tibullus and Ovid, and in less degree Catullus, employ quite often — U — U, U — and —, U —, U — U, U —.

# 786. Dactylic Tetrameter Acat. (metrum Alcmānium).

This verse occurs mainly in combination with an *Ithyphallic* to form the *Greater Architochian* verse; occasionally in stichic composition in Seneca; also in Ter., And., 625.

787. Dactylic Tetrameter Cat. in Dissyllabum (Archilochium).

 Note.—This line, which only occurs in the Alemanian System, may also be looked upon as an Acatalectic Tetrameter with a spondaic close.

788. Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic in Syllabam (Lesser Archilochian).

Púlvis et úmbra sumús, Hor.

LUULUUL

Note.—This line occurs mainly in the first three Architochian Strophes.

789. Dactylic Dimeter Catalectic in Dissyllabum (Adonic).

Térruit úrbem, Hor.

1001<u>0</u>

Note.—Though generally measured thus, this verse is properly logacedic, and will recur under that head (792). It occurs mainly in the *Supphic* stanza, and at the close of series of Sapphic Hendecasyllabics in Seneca.

# Logacedic Rhythms.

790. The Logacedic Rhythm is a peculiar form of the Trochaic rhythm, in which the Arsis has a stronger secondary ictus than the ordinary Trochee.

Instead of the Trochee, the cyclic Dactyl or the irrational Trochee may be employed. This cyclic Dactyl is represented in morae by  $1\frac{1}{5}$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$ , 1; in music, by  $\mathbf{1} = \frac{3}{16}$ ,  $\frac{1}{16}$ ,  $\frac{1}{8}$ .

When Dactyls are employed, the Trochee preceding is called a Basis, or Tread, commonly marked  $\times$ . If the basis is double, the second is almost always irrational in Latin poetry. Instead of the Trochee, an Iambus is sometimes prefixed. Anacrusis and Syncopé are also found.

Remarks.—1. Logaædic comes from λόγος, prose, and ἀοιδή, song, perhaps because the rhythms seem to vary as in prose.

2. Dactyls are usually, but not necessarily, employed.

### No Dactyl.

791. Alcaic Enneasyllabic.

Sí frāctus illābātur orbis, Hor.

S: 202>2020

Note.—The Anacrusis should be long. Horace shows no exceptions in the fourth book and very few in the first three. The regular Cæsura is the sēmiquēmāria.

One Dactyl.

792. Adonic.

Térruit úrbem, Hor.

201201

Note.—Elision is not allowed in this verse. As far as its formation is concerned, it should consist either of a dissyllable + a trisyllable, or the reverse. Proclitics and enclitics go with their principals,

793. Aristophanic (Choriambic).

Lýdia díc per ómnés, Hor.

Note.—This verse occurs mainly in the lesser Sapphic Strophe of Horace.

### One Dactyl, with Basis.

794. Pherecratean.

Nígris aéquora véntis, Hor.

Note.—This verse occurs in the fourth Asclepiadean Strophe of Horace; also in Catullus (XVII.) and the *Priāpēa*. No Elision is allowed by Horace, and there is no regular Cæsura.

795. Glyconic.

Émírábitur ínsoléns, Hor.

Note.—This occurs in the second, third, and fourth Asclēpiadēan strophes of Horace; also in Catullus (xvii.) and the Priāpēa. There is generally the sēmilernāria Cæsura; occasionally instead of it a Second Trochee. Elision of long syllables is very rare in Horace; Elision of a short before the long of the Dactyl more often. Horace also shows occasional liberties, such as Diastolé (O., III. 24, 5), Dialysis (O., I. 23, 4), and lines ending with monosyllables (O., I. 3, 19; I. 19, 13; IV. 1, 33).

796. Phalaecean (Hendecasyllabic).

Pásser mórtuus ést meaé puéllae. 
Äridá modo púmic(e) éxpolítum 

Tuaé Lésbia sínt satís supérque. Cat. 

C

Notes.—1. This verse, introduced into Latin by Laevius, was used very often by Catullus, Martial, Pliny Minor, Petronius, and Statius, as well as in the *Priāpēa* and elsewhere.

2. In Greek the Basis was not unfrequently an Iambus. So, too, in Catullus, but the tendency in Latin was to make it a Spondee; thus, in the Priāpēa, Petronius, and Martial it is always so, while Statius has but one case of a Trochee, and Ausonius but one of an Iambus.

3. The principal Cæsura is the sēmiquēnāria; but CATULLUS uses also almost as frequently Diæresis after the second foot. Occasionally there is a Diæresis after the third foot, supplemented by a Second Trochee Cæsura.

. 4. Elision is very common in CATULLUS; in the Priāpēa, MARTIAL, and later it is very rare, if we exclude Aphæresis from consideration. Hardening (723) is occasional, and CATULLUS shows a few cases of Semi-hiatus. A monosyllabic ending is very rare, with the exception of eg and est.

5. Catullus, in 55, apparently shows a mixture of regular Phalaeceans and spurious Phalaeceans in which the Dactyl is supplanted by a Spondee. The poem is still under discussion.

### One Dactyl, with Double Basis.

797. Sapphic (Hendecasyllabic).

Notes.—1. In the Greek measure, often retained in Catullus, the Dactyl is measured  $\neg \cup \cup$ ; in Horace, owing to a strong Cæsura after the long it is regularly  $- \cup \cup$ .

Further, CATULLUS, like the Greeks, employed occasionally a Trochee in the second foot; HORACE made it a rule to employ only a Spondee there.

- 2. The regular Cæsura in Latin is the simiquināria; but the Third Trochee (784, N. 2) is found not unfrequently in Catullus and Horace, but not later. The usage of Horace is peculiar in this respect: In the first and second books there are seven cases in two hundred and eighty-five verses; in the third none at all; in the fourth twenty-two in one hundred and five verses; in the Carmen Sæculare nineteen in fifty-seven verses.
- 3. Elision is very common in Catullus, but occurs in Horace only in about one verse in ten. Later usage tends to restrict Elision. Licenses are extremely rare in the classical period. So Horace shows one example of Diastolé  $(O.,\,\pi.6,14)$ . Monosyllabic endings are not common, but the word is usually attached closely with what procedes. The last syllable is regularly long.
- Seneca shows some peculiarities: occasionally a Dactyl in the second foot, or a Spondee in the third; occasionally also Dialysis.

#### One Dactyl with Double Basis and Anacrusis.

798. Alcaic (Greater) Hendecasyllabic.

Vidés ut áltā  $\|$  stét nive cándidúm  $>: \angle \cup | \angle > | \angle \cup | \angle \cup | \angle \cup | \angle \wedge$  Sōrácte néc iam  $\|$  sústineánt onús, Hor.

Notes.—1. The second Basis is always a Spondee; the few exceptions having been emended. The Anacrusis is regularly long; Horace shows no exception in the fourth book and very few in the first three. The last syllable may be long or short.

- 2. The regular Cæsura is a Diæresis after the second foot; Horace shows but two exceptions in six hundred and thirty-four verses (O., 1.37, 14; v.14, 17). A few others show imperfect Cæsuræ, as O., 1.16, 21; 1.37, 5; 11.17, 21.
  - 3. In regard to Elision, the facts are the same as in the case of the Sapphic.
- 4. Licenses are not common: Diastolé occurs in H., O., III. 5, 17; Hardening (723) occurs in H., O., III. 4, 41; III. 6, 6. Thesis is not unfrequent in forms of quicumque (H., O., I. 9, 14; I. 16, 2; I. 27, 14).

#### Two Dactyls.

799. Alcaic (Lesser) or Decasyllabic.

Vértere funeribus triumphos, Hor.

むいしいしていして

Note.—The Cæsura is regularly the semiternāria, occasionally the Second Trochee. Elision occurs a little less often in this measure than in the Hendecasyllabic. The last syllable is usually long. Diastolé occurs in H., O., II. 13, 16.

In all these, the Dactyl has a diminished value. More questionable is the logacedic character of the Greater Archilochian:

800. Archilochian (Greater) = Dactylic Tetrameter and Trochaic Tripody.

Sólvitur ácris hiéms grātá vice | véris ét Favéni, Hor.

If measured logacedically, the two shorts of the Dactyl must be reduced in value to one ( $\omega = \omega$ ), and the logacedic scheme is

Logaœdic tetrapody + Logaœdic tetrapody with Syncopé.

Note.—Diæresis is always found after the fourth foot, which is always Dactylic. The principal Cæsura is the sēmiquīnāria. In the third foot a Spondee is preferred, whereas the Greek model has more often the Dactyl.

**801.** Choriambic Rhythms.—When a logacedic series is syncopated, apparent choriambi arise. What is  $| \sim | = |$  seems to be  $| \sim | \sim |$ . Genuine choriambi do not exist in Latin, except, perhaps, in the single line PL., Men., 110.

### 802. Asclepiadean (Lesser).

This verse is formed by a Catalectic Pherecratean followed by a Catalectic Aristophanic.

NOTES.—1. There should be Diæresis, complete or incomplete (i.e., weakened by Elision), between the two halves. Only two exceptions are cited (H., O., II. 12, 25; IV. 8, 17). The Cæsura is regularly the sēmiternāria in Horace, less often the Second Trochee.

2. Elision occurs about as often as in the Elegiac Pentameter. It occurs most often in the first Dactyl and in the stichic measure. The final syllable may be short or long; but a monosyllable is rare. Licenses are likewise rare, as Diastolé (H., O., I. 3, 36).

### 803. Asclēpiadēan (Greater).

Núllam Váre sacrá | víte priús | séveris árborem, Hor.

NOTE.—This verse differs from the preceding by having a Catalectic Adonic (792) inserted between the two halves. Diæresis always separates the parts in Horace. The rules of Elision are the same as in the preceding verse.

### 804. Sapphic (Greater).

Tế deốs ōrố Sybarin | cấr properás amándō, Hor.

Note.—This verse differs from the lesser Sapphic by the insertion of a catalectic Adonic. It is found only in Horace (O., 1. 8). Diæresis always occurs after the fourth foot, and there is also a \$\tilde{e}miquin\tilde{a}ria\$ Caesura.

805. Priāpēan (Glyconic + Pherecratēan).

Hűnc lücúm tibi dédicó  $\parallel$  cónsecróque Priápe, Cat.  $\times$ 

Note.—Diæresis always follows the Glyconic, but neither Hiatus nor Syllaba Anceps is allowable. The verse occurs in Cat. 17 and Priap. 85.

### Cretic and Bacchic Rhythms.

806. These passionate rhythms are found not unfrequently in Plautus and occasionally elsewhere. They both belong to the Quinquepartite or Five-Eighths class.

The distribution of the Creticus is 3 + 2 morae.

The metrical value of the Creticus is - - - (Amphimacer).

For it may be substituted the First Pæon,  $-\circ\circ$ , or the Fourth Pæon,  $\circ\circ\circ$ .

Note.—Double resolution in the same foot is not allowable, and there is rarely more than one resolution in a verse. Instead of the middle short an irrational long is sometimes found.

Note.—Resolution is not allowed at the end nor in the second foot immediately before a Casura. The Arsis immediately preceding (i.e., of the second and fourth foot) is regularly pure.

808. Tetrameter Catalectic.  $\angle \cup \angle |\angle \cup \angle |\angle \cup \angle |\angle \cup \angle |\angle \cup |$ Dá mi(hi) hốc mới meúm sí m(ē) amấs s(i)aúdēs, Pl., Trin., 244.

Note.—The existence of such lines is disputed, but the balance of authority seems to be in favor of recognizing them.

809. Dimeter Acatalectic.

Nősce sált(em) húnc quis ést, Pl., Ps., 262.

Note.—This verse is found usually at the close of a Cretic system, or with Trochaic Septenarii. It follows the same rules as the Tetrameter, that is, the last long is not resolved and the second Arsis is kept pure.

810. Acatalectic Cretic Trimeters are rare and not always certain. Compare Pl., Trin., 267, 269, 271; Ps., 1119; Most., 338; Catalectic Trimeters and Dimeters are even more uncertain. Compare Pl., Trin., 275; Truc., 121.

For the long two shorts are sometimes substituted. On the other hand, an irrational long may be used for the short, and occasionally two shorts are also thus used.

#### 812. Bacchic Tetrameter.

Note.—In this verse there is usually a Cæsura after either the second or third Iambus; rarely Diæresis after the second Bacchius. The Arsis is kept pure in the second and fourth feet if the following long closes a word. Not more than one dissyllabic Arsis is allowable. Usually there is only one resolved Thesis, very rarely two, never more than three.

#### 813. Dimeter Acatalectic.

Ad áetát(em) agúndám, Pl., Trin., 232.

Note.—This is rare except at the close of a Bacchic series, to form the transition to another rhythm.

814. Bacchie Hexameter occurs in nine lines in a monologue in Pl., Am., 633-642. Hypermetric combination into systems is found in Pl., Men., 571 ff, and Varro, Sat., p. 195 (r.).

### Ionic Rhythm.

**815.** The Ionic Rhythm is represented by Ionicus  $\bar{a}$  māiore --- For the Ionicus  $\bar{a}$  māiore may be substituted the Ditrochaeus ---. This is called Anáclasis (breaking-up).

The verse is commonly anacrustic, so that it begins with the thesis  $\circ \circ :--$ . Such verses are called Iōnicīā minōre.

The second long has a strong secondary ictus.

In the early Latin, beginning with Ennius, the verse was used with much license. Resolution of the long syllables was common as well as the use of irrational long, and the contraction of two short syllables into a long. Horace alone shows the pure Ionic.

The Ionicus is an excited measure, and serves to express the frenzy of distress as well as the madness of triumph.

### 816. Tetrameter Catalectic Ionic a māiore (Sotadean).

This measure, introduced by Ennius, was used with great freedom by the earlier poets; but a stricter handling is found in later Latin poets, as Petronius, Martial, etc.

Nám quam varia sínt genera poématōrum, Baébī,  $\angle - \cup \cup \cup | \angle \cup \cup \cup | \angle \cup - > | \angle \wedge$  Quámque longē díscinct(a) ali(a) áb aliīs, sīc nősce.—Accius.  $\angle \cup - > | \angle - \cup \cup | \cup \cup - > | \angle \wedge$ 

Later Latin:

The most common scheme is the pure Ionic with Anaclasis, especially in the third foot. Irrational longs are not used, and there is rarely more than one resolution, as:

**817.** A combination of the *Ionic à maiòre* into systems is found in Laevius, who has a system of ten followed by a system of nine. Some traces of similar arrangement have been observed in the *Satires* of Varro.

#### 818. Tetrameter Catalectic Ionic ā minore (Galliambic).

This verse was introduced by Varro in his *Menippēan Satires*, and appears also in Catullus, 63, and in some fragments of Maecenas.

In CATULLUS the two short syllables may be contracted (ten times in the first foot, six times in the third), and the long may be resolved, but not twice in the same Dimeter (except 63), and very rarely in the first foot of the second Dimeter (once in 91), but almost regularly in the penultimate long. Diæresis between the two Dimeters is regular. Anaclasis is found in the majority of the lines; regularly in the first Dimeter (except 18, 54, 75).

The frequent resolutions and conversions give this verse a peculiarly wild character.

Ordinary Scheme: Without Anaclasis: 002-002-002 With Anaclasis: ひひとひーひとーひひとひーひと。 Anacrustic Scheme: Without Anaclasis: UU: Z-UU | Z-tUU | Z-UU | With Anaclasis: 00:20-0 | 2-too | 20-0 | 20-1 Et ear(um) omni(a) adfrem furibúnda latibulá 004-004-00400004 Quō nos decet citatis celerare tripūdifs -20-02-00200002 Itaqu(e) út domum Cybébēs tetigére lassulaé 0040-04-0040-04

Super álta vectus Áttis celerí rate

mariá

0020-02-0020002

Iam iám dolet quod égi iam iám-

que paenitét.—CAT.

-20-02--20-02

819, Dimeter Catalectic Ionic à minore (Anacreontic).

This verse is found first in Laevius, then in Seneca, Petronius, and later. Anaclasis is regular in the first foot. The long syllable may be resolved, or the two shorts at the beginning may be contracted. The verse may end in a Syllaba Anceps.

Vener(em) ígitur álm(um) adórāns Seu fémin(a) ísve más est It(a) ut álba Nóctilúcast. Note.—Owing to the similarity of the verse to the Iambic Quaternarius Catalectic it is also called the *Hemiambic*.

### Compound Verses.

820. Iambelegus (Iambic Dimeter and Dactylic Trimeter Cat.).

This verse occurs only in the second Archilochian Strophe of Horace, and is often seanned as two verses:

Tū vína Tórquātố mové | cổnsule préssa meố.—Hor.

821. Elegiambus (Dactylic Trimeter Cat. and Iambic Dimeter).

This verse occurs only in the third Archilochian Strophe of Horace, and is often scanned as two verses:

Désinet imparibus | certare submotus pudor. - Hor.

822. Versus Reiziānus (Iambic Dimeter and Anapaestic Tripody Catalectic).

Redĭ, quố fugis nunc? ténĕ tenē. | Quid stólidē clāmās?

Qui(a) ad tris viros i(am) ego déferam  $\parallel$  Nomén tuom. Qu(am) obrem ? PL., Aul., 415.

Note.—From the time of Reiz, after whom this verse has been named, it has been the subject of a great deal of discussion. In regard to the first part of the verse there

is considerable unanimity, in regard to the second opinions differ. Some regard it as an Iambic Dimeter Catalectic Syncopated ( $\cup \angle \cup \cup \angle \cup \cup$ ); others as an Iambic Tripody Catalectic ( $\cup \angle \cup \cup - \wedge$ ). Spengel regards it as a Hypercatalectic Anapaestic Monometer, and he has been followed with a variation in the nomenclature in the above scheme. Leo regards it as Logaædic. The most recent view (Klotz) regards it as sometimes Logaædic, and sometimes Anapaestic.

- **823.** I. Plautus shows several verses compounded of a Cretic Dimeter and a Catalectic Trochaic Tripody. These verses are usually, but not always, separated by Diæresis. Examples: *Ps.*, 1285, 1287.
- 2. Some authorities consider verses like Pl., Most., 693, Rud., 209, compounded of a Cretic Dimeter and a Clausula. Others regard them as Catalectic Cretic Tetrameters.

#### The Cantica of Early Latin.

824. The construction of the Cantica (in the narrow sense) of PLAUTUS and TERENCE is still a matter of dispute. Three opinions have been advanced. One looks at them as antistrophic, following the scheme A.B.B.; others hold that the scheme is A.B.A. The third view is that with some exceptions the Cantica are irregular compositions, without a fixed principle of responsion.

In Terence, Trochaic Octonarii are always followed by Trochaic Septenarii, and very frequently the Trochaic Septenarii are followed by Iambic Octonarii. In Plautus there are long series of Cretic and Bacchic verses, and sometimes these alternate, without, however, any regular scheme, with other verses.

A Bacchie Trochaic Canticum is found in PL., Merc., 335-363, as follows: I. 2 Bacc. Tetram.; II. 4 Anap. Dim.; III. 1 Troch. Octon.; IV. 13 Bacc. Tetram.; V. 1 Troch. Octon.; VI. 2 Bacc. Tetram.; VII. 1 Troch. Octon.; VIII. 2 Bacc. Tetram.; IX. 2 Troch. Octon.

A Trochaic Iambic Canticum is Ter., Ph., 153-163. A. 153-157: 2 Troch. Octon.; 1 Troch. Sept.; 1 Iamb. Octon. B. 158-163; 1 Troch. Octon.; 2 Troch. Sept.; 3 Iamb. Octon.; 1 Iamb. Quater. (Clausula).

#### The Cantica of Later Latin.

- **825.** I. The Cantica of Seneca are composed mostly in Anapaestic Dimeters, closed frequently, though not necessarily, by a Monometer. A Dactyl is common in the first and third feet. The Spondee is likewise very common, a favorite close being  $-\psi \angle$ . The Diæresis between the Dimeters is regular. Examples: *Herc. Fur.*, 125–203. In Ag., 310–407, Dimeters and Monometers alternate.
- 2. Iambic Dimeters, occasionally alternating with Trimeters, but usually stichic, are found occasionally; as Med., 771-786.

3. Peculiar to Seneca is the use of a large variety of Logaœdic measures in his Cantica. So we find not unfrequently the following in stichic repetition: Lesser Asclepiadēans, Glyconics, Sapphic Hendecasyllabics, Adonics, and other imitations of Horatian measures; but there are few traces of antistrophic arrangement.

#### Lyric Metres of Horace.

- 826. In the schemes that follow, the Roman numerals refer to periods, the Arabic to the number of feet or bars, the dots indicate the end of a line.
- I. Asclēpiadēan Strophe No. 1. Lesser Asclepiadean Verse (802 repeated in tetrastichs.

O., I. 1; III. 30; IV. 8.

II. Asclēpiadēan Strophe No. 2. Glyconics (795) and Lesser Asclepiadean (802) alternating, and so forming tetrastichs.

O., 1. 3, 13, 19, 36; III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; IV. 1, 3.

III. Asclēpiadēan Strophe No. 3. Three Lesser Asclepiadean Verses (802) followed by a Glyconic (795).

O., 1. 6, 15, 24, 33; II. 12; III. 10, 16; IV. 5, 12.

IV. Asclēpiadēan Strophe No. 4. Two Lesser Asclepiadean Verses (802), a Pherecratean (794), and a Glyconic (795).

I. 
$$\stackrel{\times}{-}>$$
 |  $\stackrel{\sim}{-}\circ$  |  $\stackrel{\smile}{-}$  |  $\stackrel{\sim}{-}\circ$  |  $\stackrel{\smile}{-}\circ$  |  $\stackrel$ 

O., I. 5, 14, 21, 23; III. 7, 13; IV. 13.

V. Asclepiadean Strophe No. 5. Greater Asclepiadean (803), repeated in fours.

O., I. 11, 18; IV. 10.

VI. Sapphic Strophe. Three Lesser Sapphics (797), and an Adonic (792), which is merely a Clausula. In the Sapphic Horace regularly breaks the Dactyl.

0., 1. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38; 11. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; 111. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; IV. 2, 6, 11; Carmen Saeculāre.

Note.—In Greek the third and fourth verses run together to form a single verse. In Latin this is rare; one case is found in Catullus, 11, 11, and three in Horace, O., 1. 2, 19; 25, 11; II. 16, 7; but the occurrence of Hiatus between the two lines in Horace (O., I. 2, 47; 12, 7; 12, 31; 22, 15, 4c.) may be considered as indicating that the verses were conceived as separate. Elision and Hiatus are also occasionally found in the lines. Elision, second and third: Cat., 11, 22; H., O., II. 2, 18; 16, 34; IV. 2, 22; third and fourth: Cat., 11, 19; H., O., IV. 2, 23; C.S., 47. Hiatus, first and second: H., O., I. 2, 41; 12, 25; II. 16, 5; III. 11, 29; 27, 33; second and third: H., O., I. 2, 6; 12, 5; 18; 30, 6; II. 2, 6; 4, 6; III. 11, 50; 27, 10.

VII. Lesser Sapphie Strophe. Aristophanic (793), and Greater Sapphic (804). Two pairs are combined into a tetrastich.

VIII. Aleaic Strophe. Two Aleaic verses of eleven syllables (798), a Trochaic Quaternarius with Anacrusis (772), and one Aleaic verse of ten (799).

O., I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; II. I, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; III. I, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; IV. 4, 9, 15, 17.

Note.—Elision between the verses is much more rare than in the Sapphic strophe; it occurs but twice: O., II. 3, 27; III. 29, 35. Hiatus, on the other hand, is very common.

IX. Archilochian Strophe No. 1. A Dactylic Hexameter (784), and a Lesser Archilochian (788), two pairs to a tetrastich.

O., IV. 7.

X. Archilochian Strophe No. 2. A Dactylic Hexameter (784), and an Iambelegus (820).

XI. Archilochian Strophe No. 3. An Iambic Trimeter (762), followed by an Elegiambus (821).

Epod., 11.

XII. Archilochian Strophe No. 4. A Greater Archilochian (800), and a Trimeter Iambic Catalectic (763). Two pairs combined to form a tetrastich.

O., I. 4.

This verse may be considered as Logacedic, thus (800):

XIII. Alemanian Strophe. A Dactylic Hexameter (784), followed by a Catalectic Dactylic Tetrameter (787).

O., 1. 7, 28; Epod., 12.

Note.—The Tetrameter may be considered acatalectic with a Spondee in the fourth place (787, N.).

XIV. Iambie Trimeter repeated (762).

Epod., 17.

XV. Iambic Strophe. Iambic Trimeter (762), and Dimeter (765).

Epod., 1-10.

XVI. Pythiambic Strophe No. 1. A Dactylic Hexameter (784), or Versus Pythius, and an Iambic Dimeter (765).

Epod., 14, 15.

XVII. Pythiambic Strophe No. 2. A Dactylic Hexameter (784), and an Iambic Trimeter (760).

Epod., 16.

XVIII. Trochaic Strophe. A Catalectic Trochaic Dimeter (772), and a Catalectic Iambic Trimeter (763). Two pairs make a tetrastich.

O., n. 18.

XIX. The Ionic System is found once in Horace; it consists of ten Ionici a minore feet, variously arranged by metrists. Some regard the system as composed of ten Tetrameters followed by a Dimeter. Others, with more probability, divide into two Dimeters followed by two Trimeters. The scheme may be made a maiore by Anacrusis.

Ionicus ā minore scheme:

Miserārum (e)st neque amōrī dare lūdum neque dulcī mala vinō laver(e) aut exanimārī metuentēs patruae verbera linguae

Ionicus à maiore scheme :

O., III. 12.

# 827. INDEX OF HORATIAN ODES AND METRES.

Book. ODE.	METRE.	BOOK. ODE.	METRE.	BOOK. ODE.	METRE.
I. 1	· · · · · i.	II. 1		III. 18	
2		2		19	
3	ii.	3		20	
4		4		21	
5		5		22	
6		6		23	
7	xiii.	7	viii.	24	
8	vii.	8		25	
9	viii.	9	viii.	26	
10	vi.	10		27	
11	v.	11	viii.	28	ii.
12	vi.	12		29	viii.
13		13	viii.	30	i.
14		14	viii.		
15		15	viii.	IV. 1	ii.
16		16	vi.	2	
17		17		3	
18		18		4	
19		19	viii.	5	iii.
20		20	viii.	6	vi.
21				7	ix.
22		III. 1	viii.	8	i.
23	iv.	2	viii.	9	
24		3		10	
25		4		11	
26		5		12	
27		6		13	iv.
28		7		14	
29		8		15	
30		9		Carmen Saecu	
31		10		Epod. 1-10.	
32		11		11	
33		12			xiii.
34		13	iv.	13	
35		14			xvi.
36		15			xvi.
37		16			xvii.
38		17			xiv.
00		2			

3

## APPENDIX.

### ROMAN CALENDAR.

The names of the Roman months were originally adjectives. The substantive mēnsis, month, may or may not be expressed: (mēnsis) Iānuārius, Februārius, and so on. Before Augustus, the months July and August were called, not Iūlius and Augustus, but Quintīlis and Sextīlis.

The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (Kalendao), Nones (Nonae), and Ides (Īdūs), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives: Kalendae Iānuāriae, Nonae Februāriae, Īdūs Mārtiae. The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July, and October the Nones and Ides are two days later. Or thus:

In March, July, October, May, The Ides are on the fifteenth day, The Nones the seventh; but all besides Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

In counting backward ("come next Calends, next Nones, next Ides") the Romans used for "the day before" prīdiē with the Acc.: prīdiē Kalendās Iānuāriās, Dec. 31; prīdiē Nonās Iān. = Jan. 4; prīdiē Īdūs Iān. = Jan. 12.

The longer intervals are expressed by ante diem tertium, quartum, etc., before the Accusative, so that ante diem tertium Kal. Ian. means "two days before the Calends of January;" ante diem quartum, or a. d. iv., or iv. Kal. Ian., "three days before," and so on. This remarkable combination is treated as one word, so that it can be used with the prepositions ex and in: ex ante diem iii. Nonas Iunias usque ad pridië Kal. Septembrës, from June 3 to August 31; differre aliquid in ante diem xv. Kal. Nov., to postpone a matter to the 18th of October.

LEAP YEAR.—In leap year the intercalary day was counted between a. d. vi. Kal. Mārt. and a. d. vii. Kal. Mārt. It was called a. d. bis sextum Kal. Mārt., so that a. d. vii. Kal. Mārt. corresponded to our February 23, just as in the ordinary year.

## To turn Roman Dates into English.

For Nones and Ides.—I. Add one to the date of the Nones and Ides, and subtract the given number.

492

For Calends.—II. Add two to the days of the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

EXAMPLES: a. d. viii.  $\bar{I}$ d,  $\bar{I}$ an, (13+1-8)=Jan. 6; a. d. iv. Non. Apr. (5+1-4)=A pr. 2; a. d. xiv. Kal. Oct. (30+2-14)=S ept. 18.

Year.—To obtain the year B.C., subtract the given date from 754 (753 B.C. being the assumed date of the founding of Rome, anno urbis conditae). To obtain the year A.D., subtract 753.

Thus: Cicero was born 648, a. u. c. = 106 B.c. Augustus died 767, a. u. c. = 14 A.D.

Note.—Before the reform of the Calendar by Julius Cæsar in B.C. 46, the year consisted of 355 days, divided into twelve months, of which March, May, Quintitis (July), and October had 31 days, February 28, the remainder 29. To rectify the Calendar, every second year, at the discretion of the Pontifices, a month of varying length, called mēnsis intercalāris, was inserted after the 23d of February.

### ROMAN SYSTEMS OF MEASUREMENT.

LONG MEASURE.				SQUARE MEASURE.					
4	1	digitī	-	I palmus.	100	pedēs,	1-	ı scrīpulum.	
4	4	palmī	=	1 pēs (11.65 in.).		quadrātī	5	- 1 soripulum,	
- (	5	palmi, )	_	1 cubitus.	36	scripula	=	t clima.	
1	1 1/2	pedēs \		i cuordas.	4	climata	-	ı āctus.	
:	21/2	pedēs	=	1 gradus.	2	āctūs	=	ı iügerum (acre).	
2	2	gradūs, )	_	I passus.					
!		pedēs 5	_	1 passus.		The iuge	rur	n contains 28,800	
12	5	passus	=	I stadium.		sq. ft.	Ro	om.;	
8	8	stadia	=	ı mille passuum	Eng. acre $= 43,560$ sq. ft.				
(mile).									
				(mne).					
		DRY		ASURE.		Liqu	ID :	Measure.	
1	1 ½	Dry cyathī			I ½	Lıqu:		Measure. 1 acētābulum.	
	1 ½ 2		=	ASURE.	~	cyathī	=		
:	-	cyathī	=	ASURE.  1 acētābulum.	2	cyathī acētābula	=	ı acētābulum.	
:	2	cyathī acētābula	= =	ASURE.  1 acētābulum. 1 quārtārius.	2 2	cyathī acētābula quārtāriī	=======================================	1 acētābulum. 1 quārtārius.	
:	2	cyathī acētābula quārtāriī hēmīnae	= = =	ASURE.  I acētābulum. I quārtārius. I hēmīna.	2 2 2	cyathī acētābula quārtāriī	= = =	1 acētābulum, 1 quārtārius, 1 hēmīna,	
:	2 2 2	cyathī acētābula quārtāriī hēmīnae		ASURE.  I acētābulum. I quārtārius. I hēmīna. I sextārius.	2 2 2 6	cyathī acētābula quārtāriī hēmīnae	= = = =	i acētābulum, i quārtārius, i hēmīna, i sextārius (pint), i congius.	
:	2 2 8	cyathī acētābula quārtāriī hēmīnae sextāriī		ASURE.  I acētābulum. I quārtārius. I hēmīna. I sextārius. I sēmodius.	2 2 2 6	cyathī acētābula quārtāriī hēmīnae sextāriī	= = = = =	i acētābulum, i quārtārius, i hēmīna, i sextārius (pint), i congius.	
:	2 2 8	cyathī acētābula quārtāriī hēmīnae sextāriī		ASURE.  I acētābulum. I quārtārius. I hēmīna. I sextārius. I sēmodius.	2 2 2 6 4 2	cyathī acētābula quārtāriī hēmīnae sextāriī congiī	= = = = = =	I acētābulum. I quārtārius. I hēmīna. I sextārius (pint). I congius. I ūrna. I amphora.	

#### ROMAN WEIGHTS.

3	siliquae	-	I obolus.	2	sicilici	=	I	sēmūncia.
2	oboli	_	r scripulum.	2	sēmūnciae	=	I	ūncia.
2	scripula	=	I drachma.	12	ūnciae	===	I	libra (pound).
2	drachmae	-	r sicilieus.					

Notes.—1. The multiples of the **uncia** were sescuncia (1½), sextans (2), quadrans (3), triens (4), quincunx (5), semis (6), septunx (7), bes (8), dodrans (9), dextans (10), deunx (11).

2. The **libra** was also called **ās** (see below), which latter is taken as the unit in all measures, and the foregoing divisions applied to it. Hence, by substituting **ās** for **iūgerum**, we have **deūnx** as  $\frac{11}{12}$  of a **iūgerum**, **dextāns** as  $\frac{19}{12}$ , etc.

#### ROMAN MONEY.

The unit was originally the as (which was about a pound of copper), with its fractional divisions. This gradually depreciated, until, after the second Punic war, the unit had become a sēstertius, which was nominally  $2\frac{1}{2}$  assēs.

2 quinārii = 1 dēnārius.

Note.—Sēstertium (which may be a fossilized Gen. Pl. = sēstertiōrum) was modified by distributives (rarely by cardinals), thus: bīna sēstertia, 2000 sesterces. But in multiples of a million (deciēns centēna mīlia sēstertium, i. e., sēstertiōrum), centēna mīlia was regularly omitted, and sēstertium declined as a neuter singular. HS stands as well for sēstertius as sēstertium; and the meaning is regulated by the form of the numeral; thus HS vīgintī (XX) = 20 sēstertiī; HS vīcēna  $(\overline{XX}) = 20$  sēstertia, i.e., 20,000 sēstertiī.

#### ROMAN NAMES.

The Roman usually had three names; a nomen, indicating the gons, a cognomen, indicating the familia in the gons, and the praenomen, indicating the individual in the familia.

The nomina all end in ius. The cognomina have various forms, in accordance with their derivation. For example: Q. Mūcius Scaevola (from scaevos, left hand).

The praenomina are as follows, with their abbreviations:

Aulus,	A.	Lūcius,	L.	Quintus,	Q.
Appius,	App.	Mārcus,	M.	Servius,	Ser.
Gāius,	C.	Mānius,	M'.	Sextus,	Sex.
Gnaeus,	Cn.	Māmercus,	Mam.	Spurius,	Sp.
Decimus,	D.	Numerius,	Num.	Titus,	T.
Kaesō,	K.	Pūblius.	P.	Tiberius,	Ti., Tib.

Notes.—1. Adoption from one gens into another was indicated by the termination -ianus. From the fourth century A.D. a second cognomen was also called an agnomen.

2. Daughters had no peculiar **praenomina**, but were called by the name of the **gons** in which they were born. If there were two, they were distinguished as **māior** and **minor**; if more than two, by the numerals **tertia**, **quārta**, *etc*.

### INDEX OF VERBS.

[The References are to the Sections.]

ag-gredior, -gredī, -gressus, 165. Ab-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1. ab-igō (AGO), ere, -ēgi, -āctum, 160, 1. ab-iciō (IACIŌ), ere, -iēcī, -iectum, 160, 3. ab-luō, ere, -luī, -lūtum, 162. ab-nuō, ere, -nuī (-nuitūrus), 162. ab-oleo, ēre, ēvī, itum, 137, b. ab-olēsco, -ere, -olēvī, -olitum, 140. ab-ripiō (RAPIŌ), -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, 146. abs-condō (pō), ere, -dī (-didī), ditum, 151, 1. ab-sistō, -ere, -stitī, 154, 1. ab-sum, -esse, ab-fuī, ā-fuī, 117. ac-cendo, -ere, -cendo, -censum, 160, 2. ac-cidō (capō), ere, -cidī, 165, a. ac-cipio (CAPIO), ere, -cepi, -ceptum, 160, 3. ac-colō (colō), ere, -coluī, -cultum, 152, 3. ac-cumbo, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, 144. ac-curro, ere, ac-curro, -cursum, 155, 134, 111. aceo, ere, acui, to be sour. acēscō, ere, acuī, to get sour. ac-quirō (QUAERŌ), ere, -quisivi, -quisitum, 137, c. acuō, ere, acuī, acūtum, 162. ad-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1. ad-imō (EMO), ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, 160, I. ad-ipiscor, ī, ad-eptus sum, 165. ad-iuvō, āre, -iūvī, -iūtum, 158. ad-olēsco, ere, -olēvī, -ultum, 140. ad-orior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, 166. ad-seīscō, ere, -scivī, -scītum, 140. ad-sistō, ere, -stitī, 154, 1. ad-spicio, ere, -spexi, -spectum, 150, I. ad-sto, -stare, -stiti, 151, 2, ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fuī (af-fuī), 117. ad-vesperāscō, ere, āvī, 140. aegrēsco, ere, to fall sick. af-fero, -ferre, at-tuli, al-latum,

af-flige, ere, -flixi, -flictum, 147, 2.

a-gnőscő, ere, a-gnőví, a-gnitum (agnotūrus), 140. ago, ere, ēgī, āctum, 160, 1. āiō, 175, I. albeo, ere, to be white. algeō, ēre, alsī, 147, 1. al-liciō, ere, -lexī, -lectum, 150, 1. al-luö, ere, -luī. -lūtum, 162. alō, ere, aluī, al(1)tum, 142, 3. amb-igo (AGO), ere, 172, 1. amb-iō (Eō), ire, īvī (iī), ītum, 169, 2, R. I. amiciō, īre, (amicuī, amictum, 142, 4, 161. amplector, i, amplexus, 165. angō, ere, anxī, 149, b. an-nuō, ere, annuī (annūtum), 162. ante-cello, ere, 154. ante-stō, -stāre, -stetī, 151, 2. a-perio, -īre, aperuī, apertum, 142, 4. apīscor, ī, aptus sum, 165. ap-petō, ere, īvī, ītum, 147, c. ap-plico, are, -plicui, -plicitum, (-plicavi,-plicatum), 152, 2. ap-pono, ere, -posui, -positum, 139, A. arceō, ēre, arcuī { arctus, artus (adj.). arcessō (accersō), ere, arcessīvī, -itum, 137, e. ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsum, 147, I. ārēscō, ere, āruī, to become dry. arguō, ere, arguī, (argūtum.) (arguitūrus.) 162. ar-ripio (RAPIO), ere, ui, -reptum, 146. a scendō (scando), ere, ī, scēnsum, 160, 2 ā-spiciö, ere, ā-spexī, ā-spectum, 150, I. as-sentior, īrī, assēnsus sum, 166. as-sideō (sedeō), ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, 159. as-suēsco, ere, -suēvī, -suētum, 140. at-tendo, ere, -tendo, -tentum, 155, at-texo, ere, -texui, -textum, 152,3. at-tineo (TENEO), ere, ui, -tentum, 135, I. a.

at-tingō (TANGŌ), ere, attigī, attāctum, 155.

at-tollo, ere, to raise up. audeō, ēre, ausus sum, 167. audiō, īre, īvī, ītum. See 127. au-fero, -ferre, abstulī, ablātum, 171.

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum, 147, 1. ayē, 175, 4.

Balbūtiō, īre, to stutter. batuō, ere, uī, 162. bibō, ere, bibī, (bibitum), 154, 2.

Cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum, 153. caecūtiō, īre, to be blind. caedo, ere, cecidi, caesum, 153. calefacio, ere, -feci, -factum, 160, 3; 173, N. 2. calēsco, ere, caluī, to get warm. calleo, ere, ui, to be skilled. calveo, ere, to be bald. candeo, ere, ui, to shine. caneo, ere, to be gray. cano, ere, cecini, cantum, 153. capesso, ere, īvī, ītum, 137, c. capiō, ere, cēpī, captum, 126;

160, 3. carpō, ere, carpsī, carptum, 147, 2. caveo, ēre, cāvī, cautum, 159. cedo, 175, 6.

cēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum, 147, 2. cēnātus, 167, n. 1.

cēnseō, ēre, uī, cēnsum, 135, 1.a. cernō, ere, crēvī, (crētum), 139. cieō į ciere, cīvī, citum, 137, b. ciō (cīre, cingō, ere, cinxī, cinctum, 149, b. circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, 151, 1.

circum-sisto, ere, steti, 154, 1. eircum-stō, stāre, stetī, 151, 2. claudo, ere, clausi, clausum, 147, 2. ciepō, ere, clepsī, cleptum, 147, 2.

co-alēsco, ere, -aluī, (-alitum), 140, 145.

co-arguō, ere, uī, 162. co-emō, ere, -ēmī, -ēm(p)tum, 160, I.

coepī, coepisse, 175, 5, a.

co-gnosco, ere, -gnovi, -gnitum, 140.

cō-gō (AGO), ere, co-ēgī, co-āctum, 160, I.

col-līdō (LAEDŌ), ere, -līsī, līsum, 147, 2.

col-ligō (LEGŌ), ere, -lēgī, -lectum, 160, I.

col-lūceō, ēre, -lūxī, 157, 1.

colō, ere, coluī, cultum, 142, 3. com-būrō, ere, -ūssī, -ūstum, 147,2. com-edō, ere, -ēdī, -ēsum (ēstum), 172.

comitătus, 167, N. 1.

comminiscor, i, commentus sum, 165.

com-moveo, ēre, -movī, -motum, 159.

co-mo (emo), ere, compsi, comptum, 147, 2.

com-parco, ere, -parsi, -parsum, 153. com-pello, ere, com-puli, -pulsum, 155.

com-perio (PARIO), Tre, com-peri, com-per-tum, 161, 166.

compesco, ere, ul, 145.

com-pingo, ere, -pēgī, -pāctum, 160, 2.

com-plector, ī, com-plexus, 165. com-pleo, ere, evi, etum, 147. com-primo (PREMO), ere, -pressī,

-pressum, 147, 2. com-pungo, ere, -punxi, -punctum,

con-cidō (cadō), ere, -cidī, 153, a. con-cido (CAEDO), ere, -cidi, -cisum, 153, a.

con-cinō (canō), ere, -cinuī, 142, 3. concitus (CIEO), 137, b.

con-clūdō (CLAUDŌ), ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, 147, 2.

con-cumbo, ere, -cubui, -cubitum, 144.

con-cupisco, ere, -cupivi, cupitum, 140.

con-cutiō (QUATIŌ), ere, -cussī, -cussum, 147, 2.

con-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1. con-dormisco, -ere, -ivi, itum, 140.

con-fercio (farcio), ire (fersi), fertum, 150, 2.

con-fero, -ferre, -tuli, collatum,

con-ficio (facio), ere, -feci, -fectum, 160, 3.

con-fiteor (fateor), eri, -fessus, 164.

con-fligō, ere, -flixī, -flictum, 147, 2.

con-fringo (frango), ere, -fregi, -fractum, 160, 2.

con-gruō, ere, congruī, 162.

con-iciō (IACIŌ), ere, -iēcī, -iectum, 160, 3.

coniūrātus, 167, n. 1.

co-nīveō, ēre, connixī, (connīvī), 147, 1.

con-quirō (QUAERŌ), ere, -quisīvī, -quisītum, 137, c.

con-sero, ere, -serui, -sertum, 152, 3.

con-sero, ere, -sevi, -situm, 138. con-sideratus, 167, n. 1.

con-sido, ere, consedi, -sessum, 160, 1.

con-sisto, ere, -stiti, -stitum, 154,1. con-spergo, ere, -spersi, -spersum,

con-spicio, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 150, r.

con-stituo (statuo), ere, uī, -stitutum, 162.

con-sto, -stare, -stitī, (constatūrus), 151, 2.

rus), 101, 2. con-suēsco, ere, -suēvī, suētum, 140; 175, 5.

consulo, ere, consului, -sultum, 142, 3.

con-temnō, ere, -tem(p)sī, -tem(p)-tum, 149, c.

con-tendō, ere, -tendī, -tentum, 155.

con-texō, ere,-texuī,-textum,152,3. con-tineō (teneō), ēre, uī, -tentum, 135, i. a.

con-tingō (TANGŌ), ere, contigī, contāctum, 155.

convalēscō, ere, -valuī, -valitum, 145.

145. coquō, ere, coxī, coctum, 147, 2, 168, 1.

cor-ripiō (RAPIŌ), ere, -ripuī, -reptum, 146.

cor-ruō, ere, corruī, 162.

crēbrēscō, ere, crēbruī, to get frequent.

crē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1. crepō, āre, crepuī, crepitum, 142, 2. crēscō, ere, crēvī, crētum, 140. cubō, āre, cubuī, cubitum, 142, 2. cūdō, ere, cūdī, cūsum, 160, r. cupiō, ere, cupīvī, cupītum, 141. currō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, 155.

Dē-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -crētum, 139. dē-cerpō (carpō), ere, sī, tum, 147,

dē-dō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum, 151, 1.

dē-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, 160,

dēfetīscor, ī, to be worn out.

dē-gō (AGO), ere, 160, 1. dēleō. See Paradigm, 123, 124.

dē-libuō, uēre, uī, ūtum, 162.
dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 160, r.
dē-mō (emo), ere, dēmpsī, dēmptum, 147, 2.

dēpellō, ere, dēpulī, dēpulsum, 155. dē-primō (ркемō), ere, -pressī,

pressum, 147, 2. depső, ere, depsui, depstum, 142, 3.

dē-scendō (scandō), ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, 160, 2. dē-serō, ere, -seruī, -sertum, 142, 3.

dē-siliō (saliō), fre, ui, 142, 4.

dē-sinō, ere, dēsīvī, dēsitum, 139.

dē-sipiō (sapiō), -ere, 141.

dē-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, 154, r. dē-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 150, r.

dē-suēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum, 140. dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, 117.

dē-tendō, ere, -tendī, -tentum, 155. dē-tineō (TENEŌ), ēre, -uī, -tentum, 135. I. a.

dē-vertor, -ī, 167.

dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum, 147, 2. dif-ferō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum, 171.

dī-gnōscō (xōscō), ere, -gnōvī, 140. dī-ligō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, 147, 2. dī-micō, āre, āvī, ātum, 142, 2.

dī-rigō, ere, -rēxī, -rēetum, 147, 2. dīr-imō (EMO), ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, 160, 1.

dīseō, ere, didicī, 156.

dis-crepō, āre, -crepuī (āvī), 142, 2. dis-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum,

dis-pēscō, ere, -pēscuī, to divide, 145.

dis-sideō (SEDEŌ), ēre, -sēdī, 159.

dī-stinguō, ere, -stinxī, -stinctum, 149, b.
dī-stō, -stāre, 151, 2.
dītēscō, ere, to grow rich.
dīvidō, ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, 147, 2.
dō, dare, dedī, datum, 151, 1.
doceō, ēre, docuī, doctum, 135, 1, a.
domō, āre, uī, itum, 142, 2.
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, 147, 2
dulcēscō, ere, to grow sueet.
dūrēscō, ere, dūruī, to grow hard.

dūrēscō, ere, dūruī, to grow hard.

Edō, ere, ēdī, ēsum, 160, r. 172.

ē-dō (pō), ēdere, edidī, ēditum,
151, r.

ē-dormīscō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, 140.

ef-ferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, 171.

egeō, ēre, eguī, to want.

ē-liciō, ere, -licuī, -licitum, 150, r.

ē-licjō (LEGŌ), ere, -lēgī, -lēctum,
160, r.

ē-mieō, āre, uī (ātūrus), 142, 2.

ēmineō, ēre, uī, to stand out.

emo, ere, ēmī, ēmptum, 160, r.

ēmungō, ēre, ēmunxī, ēmunetum,
149, b.

ē-neoō, āre

ē-necō, āre, (ēnecāu), ēnectum, 142, 2.
eō, īre, īvī, itum, 169, 2.
ē-vādō, ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum, 147, 2.
ē-vānēscō, ere, ēvānuī, 145.

ē-vānēscō, ere, ēvānuī, 145. ex-ārdēscō, ere, exārsī, exārsum, 147, i. ex-cellō, ere, uī (excelsus), 144.

excitus, 137. ex-clūdō (claudō), ere, -sī, -sum,

147, 2. ex-currō, ere, ex(cu)currī, -cursum, 155.

ex-imō, ere, ēmī, -ēmptum, 160, r. ex-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, -oletum, 140. ex-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, 155. expergīscor, ī, experrēctus sum, 165.

ex-perior, īrī, -pertus sum, 166. ex-pleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum, 124, 137, b.

ex-plico, āre, uī (āvī), itum (ātum), 142.

ex-plōdō (PLAUDō), ere, -sī, -sum, 147, 2.

exsecrātus, 167, n. 2. ex-stinguō, ere, -stinxī, -stinctum, 149, b. ex-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, 154, 1. ex-stō, āre (exstātūrus), 151, 2. ex-tendō, ere, dī, -sum (-tum), 155. ex-tollō, ere, 155. ex-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, 162.

Facesso, ere, īvī (-ī), ītum, 137, c. faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, 160, 3. fallō, ere, fefellī, falsum, 155. farciō, īre, farsī, fartum, 150, 2. fārī, 175, 3. fateor, erī, fassus sum, 164. fatīscō, ere, to fall apart. fatīscor, ī (fessus, adj.). faveō, ere, fāvi, fautum, 159. ferio, ire, to strike. fero, ferre, tuli, latum, 171. ferveo, ēre, fervī (ferbuī), 159. fīdo, ere, fisus sum, 167 fīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxum, 147, 2. findo, ere, fido, fissum, 160, 3. fingō, ere, finxī, fictum, 149, a. fiō, fierī, factus sum. 173 flecto, ere, flexi, flexum, 148. fleo, ēre, ēvī, ētum, 137, b. fligo, ere, flixī, flictum, 147, 2. floreo, ere, ui, to bloom fluo, ere, fluxi (fluxus, adj.), 147,2. fodio, ere, fodi, fossum, 160, 3. forem, 116. foveo, ēre, fovī, fotum, 159. frango, ere, frēgī, frāctum, 160, 2. fremō, ere, ui, 142, 3. frendō (eo), ere (ui), frēsum, frēs-

sum, 144. fricō, āre, uī, frictum (ātum), 142,

frīgeō, ēre (frīxī), 147, 1. frīgō, ere, frīxī, frīctum, 147, 2. frondeō, ēre, uī, to be leafy. fruor, ī, frūctus (fruitus) sum. 165, fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitum, 160, 3. fulciō, īre, fulsī, fultum, 150, 2. fulgeō, ēre, fūdi, fūsum, 160, 2. fundō, ere, fūdi, fūsum, 160, 2. fungor, ī, fūnctus sum, 165, (furō, def.), furere, to rave.

Ganniō, īre, to yelp.
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum, 167.
gemō, ere, uī, 142. 3.
gerō, ere, gessī, gestum, 147, 2.
gīgnō, ere, genuī, genitum, 143.
glīscō, ere, to swell.
gradior, ī, gressus sum, 165.

Haereō, ēre, haesī, (haesum), 147, 1. hauriō, īre, hausī, haustum (hausūrus, haustūrus), 150, 2. havē, 175, 4.

hīscō, ere, to yawn.

horreo, ere, ui, to stand on end hortor, ari, atus sum, 128.

Iaceō, ēre, iacuī, to lie. iaciō, ere, iēci, iactum, 160, 3. icō, ere, iēī, ictum, 160, 1. i-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnōtum, 140.

il-liciō, ere, -lexī, -lectum, 150, r. il-līdō (LAEDŌ), ere, -līsī, -līsum, 147, 2.

imbuō, ere, uī, ūtum, 162.

imitātus, 167, n. 2. immineō, ēre, to overhang. im-pingō (pangō), ere, pēgī, pāctum, 160, 2. in-calēscō, ere, -caluī, 145.

in-cendō, ere, -cendī, -cēnsum, 160, 2.

incessō, ere, īvī (ī), 137, c. in-cidō (cadō), ere, -cidī, -cāsum, 152.

in-cīdō (caedō), ere, -cīdī, cīsum, 153.

in-cipiō (capiō), ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 160, 3.

in-crepō, āre, uī, itum, 142, 2. in-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, 144.

in-cutiō (QUATIŌ), ere, -cussī, -cussum, 147, 2.

ind-igeō (EGEŌ), ēre, uī, to want. ind-ipIscor, ī, indeptus sum, 165. in-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1. indulgeō, ēre, indulsī (indultum),

147, 1.
in-duō, ere, duī, -dūtum, 162.
ineptiō, īre, to be silly.
īn-flīgō, ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, 147, 2.
ingemīscō, ere, ingemuī, 145.
ingruō, ere, uī. See congruo, 162.
in-nōtēsco, ere, nōtuī, 145.

in-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, 140. inquam, 175, 2.

în-sideo (sedeo), ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, 159.

īn-sistō, ere, -stitī, 154, r. īn-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 150. r. inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, 160, 3; 173, N. 2.

īn-stō, āre,-stitī (instātūrus),151,2. īn-sum, -esse, -fuī, 117.

intel-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, 147, 2. inter-imō (EMŌ), ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, 160, 1.

inter-pungō, ere, -punxī, -punctum, 155.

inter-stō, āre, -stetī, 151, 2. inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, 117. inveterāscō, ere, -āvī, 140. in-vādō, ere, invāsī, -vāsum,147, 2. īrāscor, ī, īrātus sum, to get angry. iubeō, ēre, iūssī, iūssum, 147, 1. iungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctum, 149, b. iūrātus, 167, n. 1.

iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtum (iuvātūrus),

158.

Lābor, ī, lāpsus sum, 165. lacessō, ere, lacessīvī, -ītum, 137, c. laciō, 150.

laedo, ere, laesī, laesum, 147, 2. lambo, ere, ī, 160, 2. langueō, ēre, ī, to be languid.

largueo, ere, 1, to be tanguta. largior, irī, itus sum, 166. lateō, ēre, uī, to lie hid. lavō, āre (ere), lāvī, lautum, lō-

tum, lavātum, 158. lego, ere, lēgī. lēctum, 160, r. libet libāra libuit (libitum est) i

libet, libēre, libuit (libitum est), it pleases.

liceor, ērī, itus sum, 164. licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), it is permitted.

lingō, ere, linxī, linctum, 149, b. linō, ere, lēvī (līvī), litum, 139. linquō, ere, līquī, 160, 2, liqueō, ēre, licuī, to be clear. līveō, ēre, to be livid.

loquor, ī, locūtus sum, 128, 2; 165. lūceō, ēre, lūxī, 147, 1. lūdō, ere, lūsī, lūsum, 147, 2. lūgeō, ēre, lūxī, 147, 1.

luō, ere, luī, { lūtum, to wash, luitum, to atone for, 162.

Maereō, ēre, to grieve. mālō, mālle, māluī, 142, 3; 174. mandō, ere, mandī, mānsum 160, 2.

maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum, 147, 1. mānsuēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum, 140.

medeor, ērī, to heal. memini, 175, 5, b. mentior, īrī, ītus, 128, 2; 166. mereor, ērī, meritus sum, 164. mergō, ere, mersī, mersum, 147, 2. metior, īrī, mēnsus sum, 166. metō, ere, messuī (rare), messum,

142, 3. metuo, ere, ui, 162. micō, āre, uī, 142, 2.

mingō, ere, minxī, mictum, 149, a. minuō, ere, minuī, minūtum, 162. mīsceō, ēre, uī, mīxtum (mīstum). misereor, ērī, miseritus (misertus) sum, 164.

mittō, ere, mīsī, missum, 147, 2. molo, ere, molui, molitum, 142, 3. moneo, ere, ui, itum, 131.

mordeo, ere, momordi, morsum, 152.

morior, morī, mortuus sum (moritūrus), 165.

moveo, ēre, movī, motum, 159. mulceo, ēre, mulsī, mulsum, 147,

mulgeō, ēre, mulsī, mulsum (ctum), 157, 1.

mungo, ere, munxi, munctum, 160.

Nanciscor, i, nactus (nanctus), 165. nāscor, ī, nātus sum (nāscitūrus), 165.

neco, are, avī, atum, 142, 2. nectō, ere, nexī (nexuī), nexum,

148. neg-lego, ere, -lexi, -lectum, 147, 2. necopinātus, 167, N. 2. neo, nēre, nēvī, nētum, 137, b.

nequeo, ire, 170. ningō, ere, ninxī, 149, b. niteo, ere, ui, to shine. nitor, ī, nīxus (nīsus) sum, 165. nōlo, nōlle, nōlui, 142, 3; 174. noceo, ēre, uī (nocitūrus), to be hurtful.

nosco, ere, novi, notum, 140; 175,

notesco, ere, notui, 145. nūbō, ere, nūpsī, nūptum, 147, 2.

Ob-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, I. ob-dormīscō, ere, -dormīvī, -dormītum, 140.

oblīvīscor, ī, oblītus sum, 165,

ob-sideō (sedeō), ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, 159.

ob-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, 154, r. obs-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, -olētum, 140.

ob-stō, stāre, stitī (obstātūrus), 151, 2,

obtineo (teneo), ere, -tinui, -tentum, 135, I, a.

oc-cido (cado), ere, -cido, -casum. 153.

oc-cīdō (CAEDŌ), ere, -cīdī, -cīsum,

oc-cinō (canō), ere, -cinuī, 142, 3; 153.

oc-cipiō (CAPIŌ), ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 160, 3.

occulo, ere, occului, occultum, 142, 3.

odi, def., 175, 5, a.

of-fendō, ere,-fendī,-fēnsum, 160, 2. of-fero, -ferre, obtuli, oblatum,

oleō, ēre, uī, to smell.

operio, ire, operui, opertum, 142, 4. opinātus, 167, n. 2.

opperior, īrī, oppertus (or ītus), 166.

ordior, īrī, orsus sum, 166. orior, īrī, ortus sum (oritūrus), 166.

os-tendō, ere, -tendī, -tēnsum (-tentus), 155.

Paciscor, I, pactus sum, 165, 167,

palleo, -ëre, -ui, to be pale. pandō, ere, pandī, passum (pān-

sum), 160, 2. pangō, ere { pepigī, 155, } pāc-panxī, 149, b, } tum.

parco, ere, peperci (parsi), parsūrus, 153.

pario, ere, peperī, partum (paritūrus), 157.

partior, īrī, ītus, 166.

pāscō, ere, pāvī, pāstum, 140. pate-facio, ere, -fēcī, -factum, 173, N. 2.

pateo, ere, ui, to be open. patior, ī, passus sum, 165.

paveo, ēre, pāvī, 159. pecto, ere, pexi, pexum, 148.

pel-licio, -licere, (licui), -lexī. -lectum,

150, I.

pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsum, 155. pendeō, ēre, pependī, 152. pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsum, 155. per-cellō, ere, perculī, perculsum, 144.

percēnseō (censeō), ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum, 135, I, a.

percitus (CIEŌ), 137.

per-dō, ere, -dıdī, -ditum, 169, 2, R. I; 151, I.

per-eō, īre, periī, itum, 169, 2, R. I. per-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, 160, 3. per-fringō, ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, 160, 2.

pergō (REGO), ere, perrēxī, perrēctum, 147, 2.

per-petior (PATIOR), i, perpessus sum, 165.

per-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 150, r.

per-stō, -stāre, -stitī, 151, 2. per-tineō (reneō), ēre, uī, 135, I, a. pessum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, 151. I.

petō, ere, īvī (iī), ītum, 137, c. piget, pigēre, piguit, pigitum est, it irks.

pingō, ere, pinxi, pietum, 149, a. pīnsō, ere, uī (ī), pīnsitum (pīstum, pīnsum), 142, 3.

plangō, ere, planxī, planctum, 149, b.

plaudō, ere, plausī, plausum, 147, 2. plectō, ere, (plexī), plexum, 148. plector, ī, to be punished. -pleō, 137, b.

plico, are, uī (avī), itum (atum), 142, 2.

pluö, ere, pluit, 162.
polleö, ēre, to be potent.
polliceor, ērī, itus sum, 164.
pönö, ere, posuī, positum, 139.
pöscō, ere, popöscī, 156.
pos-sideō (sedeō), ere, -sēdī, -sessum, 159.
pos-sum, posse, potuī, 119.
potior, īrī, ītus sum, 166.
pötō, āre, āvī, pōtum, pōtātum,

136, 4, c. pōtus, 167, n. 1. prae-cellō, ere, -celluī, 144. prac-cinō, ere, -cinuī, 142, 3. prae-currō, ere, -cucurrī, -cursum, 155.

prae-sideō (sedeō), ēre, -sēdī, 159. prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, 117.

prae-stō, -stāre, -stitī (-stātūrus), 151, 2.

prandeō, ēre, prandī, prānsum, 159. prehendō, ere, prehendī, prehēn-

sum, 160, 2.
premō, ere, pressī, pressum, 147, 2.

premo, ere, pressī, pressum, 147, 2. prod-igo (Ago), ere, -ēgī, 160, 1. pro-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1. pro-ficiscor, I, profectus sum, 165. pro-fiteor (fateor), ērī, -fessus sum, 164.

promo (emo), ere, prompsi, promptum, 147, 2

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, 118. prō-tendō (TENDŌ), ere, -tendī, -tentum, tēnsum, 155.

psallō, ere, ī, 160, 2.

pudet, ere, puduit, puditum est, it shames.

puerāscō, ere, to become a boy. pungō, ere, pupugī, punctum, 155. pūnior, īrī, ītus sum, 166.

Quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, 137, c.

quaesō, 175, 6.

raw again.

quatio, ere, (quassi), quassum, 147, 2.

queō, quīre, 170. queror, querī, questus sum, 167. quiēscō, ere, quiēvī, quiētum, 140.

Rādo, ere, rāsī, rāsum, 147, 2. rapiō, ere, rapuī, raptum, 146. rauciō, īre, rausī, rausum, 150, 2. re-cēnseō (censeō), ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum (recēnsītum), 135, 1, a. re-cidō, ere, reccidī, recāsum, 153. reerūdēseō, ere, -crūduī, to get

re-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, 144. red-arguō, ere, -arguī, 162. red-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, r. red-igō (AGO), ere, -ēgī, -actum, 160, r.

red-imō, -ēre, 160, 1. re-fellō (fallō), ere, refellī, 155. re-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, 171. rego, ere, rēxī, rēctum, 147, 2. re-linquō, ere, -līquī, -lictum,

160, 2. reminiscor, I, to recollect.

renideo, ere, to glitter. reor, rērī, ratus sum, 164. re-pello, ere, reppuli, pulsum, 155. re-perio, ire, repperi, repertum, 157, 161. rēpo, ere, rēpsī, rēptum, 147, 2. re-sipīsco, ere, -sipīvī (sipuī), 140. re-sistō, ere, -stiti, -stitum, 154, 1. re-spondeo, ere, -spondi, -sponsum, 152. re-stō, stāre, -stitī, 151, 2. re-stinguo, ere, -stinxi, -stinctum, 149, b. re-tineo (TENEO), ere, ui, -tentum, 135, I, a. re-vertor, ī, revertī, reversum, 160, 1; 167. re-vivisco, ere, vixi, vietum, to revive. rīdeō, ēre, rīsī, rīsum, 147, 1. rigeo, ere, ui, to be stiff. rodo, ere, rosi, rosum, 147, 2. rubeō, ēre, ui, to be red. rudo, ere, rudivi, itum, 137, c.

Saepiō, īre, saepsī, saeptum, 150, 2. saliō, īre, (saliī,) saltum, 142, 4. sallö, ere, (sallī), salsum, 160, 2. salvē, def., 175, 4. sanctum, 150,2. sanciō, īre, sānxī, (sancītum) sapiō, ere (sapīvī), sapuī, 141. sarciō, īre, sarsī, sartum, 150, 2.

rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum, 160, 2. ruō, ere, ruī, rutum (ruitūrus), 162.

scabo, ere, scabi, to scratch, 160, 1. ere, scalpsī, scalptum, scaipō, 147, 2. scando, ere, scandi, scansum,

satis-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 151. I.

160, 2. scateo, ere, to gush forth. seindō, ere, seidī, seissum, 160, 3. seisco, ere, scivi, scitum, 140.

scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, 147,

sculpō, ere, sculpsī, sculptum, 147, 2.

seco, are, secui, secatūrus, 142, 2. sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, 159. sēligō (LEGO), ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 160, 1.

sentio, īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, 150, 2.

sepelio, īre, īvī, sepultum, 137, a. sequor, i, secutus sum, 165. serö, ere, 142, 3. sero, ere, sēvī, satum, 138. serpo, ere, serpsi, serptum, 147, 2. sido, ere, sidi, 160, i. sileo, ēre, uī, to be silent. sino, ere, sivi, situm, 139. sisto, ere, (stiti), statum, 154, r. sitio, ire, ivi, to thirst. soleō, ēre, solitus sum, 167. solvo, ere, solvi, solūtum, 160, 1. sono, are, sonui, sonitum, sonatūrus, 142, 2. sorbeō, ēre (sorp sī), sorbuī, 142, 1. sordeō, ēre, ui, to be dirty. sortior, īrī, sortītus sum, 166. spargō, ere, sparsī, sparsum, 147, spernő, ere, spreví, spretum, 139. -spicio, 150, 1. splendeo, ere, ui, to shine. spondeo, ere, spopondi, sponsum, 152.spuō, ere, spuī, spūtum, 162.

squaleo, ere, to be rough, foul. statuō, ere, statuī, statūtum, 162. sternō, ere, strāvī, strātum, 139. sternuō, ere, sternuī, 162. sterto, ere, stertui, 142, 3. -stinguō, ere, 149, b. stō, stāre, stetī, stātum, 151, 2. strepo, ere, strepui, strepitum, 142, 3.

strīdeō, ēre (ere), strīdī, 159. stringo, ere, strinxi, strictum, 149. a.

struō, ere, strūxī, strūctum, 147, 2. studeō, ēre, uī, to be zealous. stupeō, ēre, uī, to be astounded. suādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum, 147, 1. sub-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1. sub-igo (Ago), ere, -ēgī, -āctum, 160, I.

suc-cēdō (cēdō), ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, 147.

suc-cendo, ere. -cendo, -censum, 160, 2.

suc censeo, ere, ui, -censum, 135,

suc-curro, ere, -curri, -cursum, 155. suēsco, ere, suēvī, suētum, 140. suf-fero, -ferre, sus-tinui, 171, N. 2. suf-ficiō (faciō), ere, -fēcī, -fectum, 160, 3.

suf-fodio, ere, -födī, -fossum, 160, 3.

sug-gerō, ere, -gessī, -gestum, 147,

sūgō, ere, sūxī, sūctum, 147, 2. sum, esse, fui, 116.

sumo (emo), ere, sumpsi, sump-

tum, 147, 2. suo, ere, sui, sūtum, 162. superbiō, īre, to be haughty. super-stō, -stāre, -stetī, 151, 2. super-sum, -esse, -fuī, 117.

sup-pono, ere, -posui, -positum, 139, A.

surgo (REGO), ere, surrexi, surrectum, 147, 2.

surripio, ere, uī (surpuī), -reptum, 146.

Taedet, pertaesum est, it tires. tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctum, 155. tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctum, 147, 2. temnō, ere, 149, c.

tendo, ere, tetendo, tensum (-tum),

155. teneō, ēre, tenuī, (tentum), 135, 1, a. tergeo, ere, tersi, tersum, 147, 1. terō, ere, trīvī, trītum, 137, c. texō, ere, texuī, textum, 142, 3. timeo, ere, ui, to fear.  $ting(u)\bar{o}$ , ere,  $tinx\bar{\imath}$ , tinetum, 149, b. tollo, ere (sustuli, sublatum), 155. tondeō, ēre, totondī, tonsum, 152. tonō, āre, uī, 142, 2. torpeo, ere, ui, to be torpid. torqueō, ēre, torsī, tortum, 147, 1. torreō, ēre, torruī, tōstum, 135,1,a. trā-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1. traho, ere, trāxī, trāctum, 147, 2.

tremō, ere, uī, to tremble. tribuō, ere, uī, tribūtum, 162.

trūdō, ere, trūsī, trūsum, 147, 2.

tueor, ērī (tuitus) tūtātus sum, 164. tumeō, ēre, uī, to swell. tundō, ere, tutudī, tūnsum, tū-

sum, 155. turgeō, ēre, tursī, 147, 1.

Ulcīscor, ī, ultus sum, 165. ungō, ere, ūnxī, ūnctum 149, b. urgeō, ēre, ursī, 147, 1. ūrō, ere, ūssī, ūstum, 147, 2. ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, 165.

Vādō, ere, 147, 2. valē, 175, 4. vehō, ere, vexī, vectum, 147,2; 165. vello, ere, velli (vulsi), vulsum,

160, 2, vēn-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1;

169, 2, R. I. vēn-eō, īre, īvī (iī), 169, 2, R. I. veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, 16!.

vēnum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, 151, 1.

vereor, ērī, veritus sum, 164. verrō, ere, verrī, versum, 160, 1. vertō, ere, vertī, versum, 160, 1. vescor, ī, 165.

vesperāsco, ere, avī, 140. vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitum, 142, 2. video, ēre, vidī, visum, 159. vieō, ēre, ētum, to plait. See

137, b. vigeo, ere, uī, to flourish. vinciō, īre, vinxī, vinctum, 150, 2. vincō, ere, vīcī, victum, 160, 2. vīsō, ere, vīsī, 160, r. vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctum, 147, 2. volō, velle, voluī, 142, 3; 174. volvō, ere, volvī, volūtum, 160, r.

vomō, ere, vomuī, vomitum, 142, 3 voveč, ere, vovi, votum, 159.

## GENERAL INDEX.

ABBREVIATIONS.—Abl., ablative; Abs., absolute; Acc., accusative; act., active; adj., adjective; adv., adverb; attrib., attributive, attribution; app., appositive, apposition; Comp., comparison, comparative; constr., construction; cop., copula, copulative; cpd., compound, compounded; Dat., dative; decl., declension; def., definite; dem., demoustrative; fem., feminine; Fut., future; Fut. Pf., future perfect; Gen., genitive; Ger., gerund, gerundive; Impf., imperfect; Impv., imperative; indef., indefinite; Indic., indicative; Inf., infinitive; interrog., interrogative; Loc., locative; masc.. masculine; neg., negative; neut., neuter; Nom., nominative; obj., object; Part., partitive; part., participle; pass., passive; Pl., plural; poss., possessive, possession; pred., predicate; prep., preposition; pron., pronoun; rel., relative; Sg., singular; subj., subject; Subjv., subjunctive; subst., substantive; Sup., supine; vb., verb; Voc., vocative.

A-Sound of, 3; weakening of, 8,1; length of final, 707,1. See ab.

ab (a)—In composition, 9,4: varies with a as prep., 9,4; syntax of as prep. 417,1: position of, 413, k.1; Dat. after vbs cpd. with, 347, k.5; gives Point of Reference, 335, N.; with Abl. takes place of second Acc., 339, N.2; with Abl. of Separation, 390; with Abl. of Point of View, 2b.2, N.6; with Towns, 391, k.1; with Abl. of Origin, 395; with Abl. of Respect, 397, N.1; with Abl. of Agent, 401; to express Cause, 408, N.3; with Abl. Ger., 433.

abdicare—with sp and Abl., 390, N.3. abesse—with Acc. of Extent, or a and Abl., 335, R.2; with Dat., 349, R.4; with Abl. of Measure, 403, N.1; of Place, 390, N.3; tantum abest ut,—ut, 552, R.1. abhinc—with Acc., 336, R.3.

abhorrēre—with Abl. of Place, 390, N.3. ability—adjs. of, with Inf., 423, N.1,c.

abire—with Abl. of Place, 390, N.3.
ABLATIVE—defined, 23,6: 1st decl. Sg. in ād, Pl. in ābs, 29, N.4; Pl. in ābus, 29, R.4; 2d decl. Sg. in ōd, 33, N.3; Pl. in 6īs, 33, N.5; 3d decl. Sg. in ōī, 1, e, 37,4; mute stems with 1, 54; sporadic cases in 1, 54, N.2; vowel stems in 1, 57, R.2; adjs. used as substs. in 1, 57, R.2; adjs. used as substs. in 1, 57, R.2, N.; 4th decl. in ubus, 61, R.1; adjs. in d, 75, N.3; Pl. in 1s (for 1s) and ābus, 75, N.6; adjs. of three endings in e, 79, R.1; adjs. and parts. in 1 and e, 82; adjs. in e and 1,

83; Comp. of part., 89, R.1; forms advs., 91,2.

With act. vb. cannot be subj. of pass... 217, R.1; with vbs. involving comparison, 296, N.1; prepositional uses fustead. ib. N.3; with pro of Disproportion, 298; for inner obj., 333, 2, N.4: with a besse and dīstāre, 335, R.2; of Point of Reference, ib. N.; with Acc. after vbs. of Giving and Putting, 348; with preps instead of Part. Gen., 372, R 2. Scheme of Syntax, 384; of Place where, 385, of Towns, 386; of Place whence, 390; with vbs of Abstaining, 390,2, with Adjs., 390 3, of Towns, 391; preps. with Towns, ib B.1; of Attendance, 392, of Time, 393; preps., 394; of Origin, 395, preps., ib. N.2; of Material, 396; of Respect, 397; with words of Emineuce, 2b. N 2, with Comp., 398, 296, and RR 1,2; of Manner, 399; of Quality, 400, and R.1; with cum of tunnatural productions, 1b. N.2; of Instrument, 401; of Agent, 314, and R.2, 401 and RR 1,2; with special vbs., 401, NN 1 7; of Standard, 402, of Difference, 403, of Price, 404, with vbs. of Plenty and Want 405, with opus and usus. 406: with utor, fruor, etc., 407, of Cause, 403 and NN 2 6; of Ger., 431; of Ger. with preps., 433; of Sup., 436.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE—concord with two subjs., 285, N.3; syntax of, 409.10; with Interrog., 469, N.; of part., 665, N.2. abrumpere—with Abl. of Place, 390, N.3, absiste—with Inf. for Impv., 271,2,N.2. absolvere—with Abl. of Place, 390, N.3. absonus—with Abl., 359, N.2. Absorption of Correlative—619. absque—417,2; with Subjv., 597, N. abstaining—vbs. of, with Abl., 390,2. abstinere—with Abl. of Place, 390, N.3. abstract—relations expressed by Indic., 254, R.1; substs. become concrete in Pl., 204.N.5; formation of, 181, 2, b.

abundantia-84.

abundare-with Gen., 383,1, N.2.

abundē-very, 439, N.3.

abūtī-with Abl., 407 and N.2,a.

āc—see atque; āc sī with Subjv. of Comparison, 602; āc sī = quasi, ib. N.5. accēdere—with Dat., etc., 347, R.2; with quod, 525; with ut, 553,4.

accent—in early Latin, 701, R.2; in music, 729; conflict with Ictus, 749.

accentuation-15; effect of enclitics, ib. R.1; in cpds., ib. R.2; in Voc., ib. R.3; early, ib. N.

accidit—with Dat., 346,R.2; sequence after, 513,R.2; with ut, 553,3. accipere—with Inf., 527,R.1.

accommodatus—with Dat. Ger., 429, N.1. accumbere—with Dat., etc., 347, R.2.

ACCUSATIVE—definition, 23,4. 3d decl. 36; in im, 37,3; 54.N.1; in ēis, 38,3; of vowel stems, 57,R.1 and 5; Pl. in īs and ēs, 57, R.5; in Greek substs., 66, NN. 3 and 4; of adjs. of three endings in īs, ēīs, 79,N.2; in īs, 83,N.1; of Comp. in īs, ēīs, 89,R.2; forms advs., 91,1.

Becomes subj. of pass., 216; syntax of, 328-343; general view, 328, 329; direct obj., 330; with vbs. of Emotion, ib.R. and N.2; 333,1,N.1; with verbal substs., 330, N.3; with adjs. in undus, ib.N.4; with cpd. vbs., 331. Inner obj., 332, 333; neut. pron and adj., 333,1; Cognate, ib.2; Abl. instead, ib.2, N.4; with vbs of Taste and Smell, ib.2, N.5; extension of Cognate idea, ib.2.nn.2 and 6. Double Acc., 333. 1; of Extent, 334-336; in Degree, 334, in Space, 335, in Time, 336; with abesse and distare, 355, R.2; with abhine, 336, R.3; with natus, ib.R.4; with adjs., ib. N.1; of Extent as subj. of pass., ib. N.3; of Local Object, 337; prep. with Large Towns, ib. RR.1 and 2; domum and in domum, ib. R.3; force of ad, ib. R.4;

with usque, ib. N.4; with verbal substs., ib. N.5; of Respect, 338; with vbs. of Clothing, etc., and passives, ib. N.2: Greek Acc. or Abl. instead, ib. N.1. Double Acc., 339-342; with vbs. of Inquiring, etc., 339; special vbs., ib. RR., NN.; pass. form, ib. N.4; with vbs. of Naming, Making, etc., 340; pass. form, ib. R.1; End by ad or Dat., ib. R.2; one Acc. is cognate, 341 and N.2; one Acc. forms a phrase, 342; as a general objective case, 343; with Interjections, ib. 1: Acc. and Inf., ib. 2; and Dat. with vbs. of Giving and Putting, 348; with preps. for Part. Gen., 372, R.2; for Abl. of Standard, 403, N.2; subj. of Inf., 203, R.1; 420; after impersonal Ger., 427, N.2; of Ger., 430; of Ger. with preps., 432; of Sup., 435; with Inf. as object clause. 526-535; with Inf. as subj., 535; with Inf. after vbs. of Emotion, 542, R.; with Inf. in rel. clause, 635; with Inf. in dependent comparative clause, 641.

accusing -vbs. of, with Gen., 378; with other constr., ib. RR.2 and 5.

acquiescere-with Abl., 401, N.6.

acquitting-vbs. of, with Gen., 378; with other constr., ib. RR.2 and 3.

action, activity—suffixes for, 181,2; 182,1. active voice—112,2; 213; Inf. as pass., 532,N.2; of something caused to be done, 219; periphrastic, 247.

ad—in composition, 9,4; vbs. cpd. with, take Acc., 331; with Towns and Countries, 337, RR.1 and 4; with Acc. of End after vbs. of Taking, etc., 340, R.2; with Acc. for Dat., 345, R.2; vbs. cpd. with, take Dat., 347; in the neighborhood of, 386, R.2; hence, 403, N.4,e; position of, 413, R.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416,1; with Acc. Ger., 429,2; 428, R.2; 432 and R.: after vbs. of Hindering, 432, R.; with Ger. for Abl. Sup., 436, N.3; ad id quod, 525,2, N.2.

adaequē—with Abl., 296, N.1; 398, N.2. adaptation—words of, with Dat. Ger.,

addere—with operam and Dat. Ger., 429, 1; with quod, 525,1,N.1; with ut, 553,4. adding—vbs. of, with quod, £25,1; list of, ib. N.1: with ut, ib. N.5; 553,4.

adductus—with Abl. of Cause, 408, N.2. adeo-with ut, 552.

adesse-with Dat., etc., 347, R.2.

adfatim-very, 439, N.3. adferre—with ut, 553,1. adhearēscere—with Dat., etc., 347, R.2. adhortārī—with ut, 546, N.1. adhāc—strengthens Comp., 301; as yet, still, 478, N.1. adieere—with quod, 525,1, N.1.

adicere—with quod, 525,1,N 1. adigere—with ut, 553,1. adipisci—with ut, 553,1. adire—with Acc. or ad, 331,R.3. adiuvāre—with ut, 553,1.

ADJECTIVE—16,2; and subst., tb. R.1,N.1; decl. of, 17, defined, 72; 1st and 2d decl., 73; Gen. and Voc., 73; stems in ro, 74; with Nom. wanting, 74,R.2; Pronominal, 76; 3d decl., 77; two endings, 76; stems in ri, 78,2; in āli and āri, 78.R.; one ending, 80; case peculiarities, 83; abundantia, 84; varying decl., 84,2; defective and indeclinable, 85; comparison of, 86; correlative, 109; formation of, 182.

As subst., 204, NN.1-4; agreement of pred., 211; exceptions, ib. RR.; attrib. agrees in Gender, 286; neut. with fem., ib. 3; concord of, 289; with two subjs., 290; position, 290 N 2, 291; meaning varies with position, ib. R.1; 676; superlatives of Order and Sequence, 291,1,R.2; numerals, 292-295; comparatives, 296-301; superlatives, 302, 303; of Inclination, Knowledge, etc., in pred., 325, R.6; verbal with Acc., 330, N 3; neut. in Cognate Acc., 333,1; of Extent in Degree, 334 and R.1; or Time, 336, N.1; with Gen. of Quality, 365, R.2; of 3d decl. as pred., 366, R.2; with Abl. of Separation, 390,3; with Abl. of Attendance, 392, R 1; with Abl. of Quality, 400; in Abl. Abs., 410, NN. 4,5; with Inf., 421, N.1,c; with Inf. for Gen. of Ger., 428, N.3; with Abl. Ger., 431, N.1; with Abl. Sup., 436, N.2; neut. with ut, 553, 4, and R.2.

adligāre—with sē and Gen., 378, R.1. admīrārī—with Inf., 533, R.1. admodum—very, 439, N.3; with quam

and Indic., 467, N.; yes, 471,1. admonere—with two Aces., 341, N.2; with ut, 546, N.1.

Adonic—measure, 789, 792.

adoriri—with Inf., 423,2.n.2.

adorning—vbs. of, with Abl., 401,n.1.

adstringere—with sā and Gen., 378,n.1.

adulēscēns—437 n.1.

advantage—vbs. of, with Dat., 346.

ADVERB—defined, 16,5, and n.3; discussion of, 91, 92: from Acc., 91,1; from Abl., ib. 2; from Loc., ib. 3; uncertain, ib. 4; by terminations, 92,1-5; syntactical and miscellaneous, 92,6; comparison of, 93; numeral, 98: pron., 110: with Dat., 359, N.7, with Part. Gen., 372, N.3: general use of, 439; position of, 440; for rel. with prep., 611, n.1: position of, 677.

adversārī-with Dat., 346, R.2.

adversative—sentences, 483-491; particles, 483; cum, 580, NN.1 and 2, 587; qui, 634.

adversus—gives obj. toward which, 359, n.2; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 2. advertere—animum, with Acc., 342. ae—pronunciation of, 4 and n.; weakening of, 3,1.

aedes—omitted, with Gen., 362, R.3. aequalis—with Gen. or Dat., 359, R.1. aequare—with Dat. or Acc., 346. N.3.

aequm—with est instead of sit, 254, s.1; aequē with Abl., 296, s.1; aequē after Comp., 398, s.1; with atque, 643, s.3; aequē—aequē, 482,3.

aes-decl. of, 47,6.

aestimāre—with Gen., 379; with Abl., 380 n.1; with Abl. and ex, 402, n.2.

aetās—in Abl. of Time, 393, R.5; id aetātis, 336, N 2.

aeternum -as adv , 336,N 1

afficere—with Abl. of Means, 401, N.3. affinis—with Dat. or Acc, 359, R.1; with Gen., 374, N.2

affirmare-with Inf, 527.R.2.

age—with Pl, 211, N.2; with Impv., 269; age vērō, 487, N.3; id ago, with ut, 546, N 1.

agency-suffixes for, 181,1

agent—in Abl. with ab, 214, 401: in Abl, 214, R.2; in Dat., 215, 354, 355; and Instrument, 401, R.1.

aggredi-with Inf., 423,2, N.2.

āiō—175,1; supplied from negō, 447, R. introduces Ō.R., 648, R.2; with Inf., 52', R.2.

alaris—and alarius, 84,2. Alcaic—measure, 791, 799. Alcmanian—measure, 786. ali—forms indef. prons., 111.1.

aliënus—poss. of alius, 108; with Gen. or Dat. 359, R.1 and N.2.

aliquando-aliquando, 482, N.1. aliquantum—with ante, 403, N.4. aliquis and aliqui-107; with Pl. vrb., 211, N.2; syntax of, 314; with numerals, 314, R.2, i; for quis and qui, 107, N.1, and 315, N.1; with two negs., 315, N.1; per aliquem stare, with ne, quominus, 548.N.1.

alius-decl. of, 76, 108; reciprocal alius alium, 221, R.1; with Abl., 319; for alter, cēterī, ib. N.1; besides, ib. N.2; alia as Acc. of Respect, 338,2; aliter with Abl. of Measure, 403 N.3; alius atque alius, 477, N.9; alias-alias, 482, 1; tum-aliās, aliās-plērumque, interdum-alias, ib. N.2; alio-alio, alibi-alibi, ib. 2; aliter-aliter, ib. 3; aliter strengthens sin, 592; followed by quam, nisi, praeter, 643, N.4; with atque, 643, N.3.

allec-decl. of, 68.12.

alphabet-1. Sounds of letters, ib. RR. 1-3; names of letters, ib. N.

alter-decl. of, 76, 108; for secundus, 96,5; alter alterum, reciprocal, 221, R. 1; and alius, 319.

alteruter-decl. of, 76, 108.

altitudo-with Acc. of Extent, 335.R.1. altus -with Acc. of Extent, 335, R.1.

amare-122; amaho, with Impv., 269;

amans, 437, N.1; with Gen., 375, N.2. amb-in composition, 9,4.

ambire-conj. of, 169,2, R.1.

amb5-decl. of., 73, R., 95, 108; and uterque, 292.

amicus-with Gen. or Dat., 359, R.1. amplius-with quam omitted, 296, R.4. an -in disjunctive questions, 457.1; in phrases, ib. 2; strengthened by ne. ib. 1, N.2; as a simple interrog. particle, ib. 1, N 3; in second part of a disjunctive question, 458; anne, ib.; and aut. ib. N.4; annon and necne, 459; for num or ne in indirect question, 460,1,N.1; or 497.

anacoluthon -- 697.

Anacreontic-measure, 819.

anacrusis-and anacrustic scheme, 739 anapaestic-foot, 734; rhythm, 736; varieties of, 777-782: substitutes for, 777.

anaphora-485, N.2; 636, N.4: 682.

angi-with Acc. and Inf., 533, R.1.

angiportus-decl. of, 68 5.

animadvertere-with Inf., 527, R.1. animals-as instruments or agents, 214,

3.2.

animus-with ut, 546, N.2; animum advertere, with Acc., 342: animī as Loc., 374, N.7; in animo esse, with Inf. 422, N.5.

Anio-decl. of, 41.4.

annuere-with Dat., etc., 347,R.2.

ante-in composition, 9,4; vbs. cpd, will take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; with Abl. of Standard or Acc. of Extent, 403, N.4: position of, 413, R.1 and N.3; as adv., 415; as prep., 416,3; with Acc. Ger., 432 and N.1; with part., 437, N.2.

anteāquam-see antequam.

antecedent - action, 561-567 : definite, 613; repetition of, 615; incorporation of, 616; indefinite, 621; def. or indef. with Indic. or Subjv., 631,1, and 2,

antecedere-with Dat., etc., 347, R.2. antecellere - with Dat., etc., 347, R.2; with Abl. of Respect, 397, N.2.

anteire-with Dat., etc., 347,R.2.

antepenult-11.

antequam-with Indic., 574-576; with Pr., 575; with Pf. and Fut. Pf., 576; with Subjv., 577.

anterior-87.8.

aphaeresis-719,2,Ex.

аросоре-- 703. к. 3.

aorist-forms on so, sim, 131,4,b.; definition, 224; Pure Pf. as Aor., 236, N.; Hist. Pf., 239; Plupf, 241, N.1; Pf. as Potential of Past, 258 N 2.

apodosis-539; omission of, 601; in comparative sentences, 602; in Indic. in Unreal Conditions, 597, R.3; after vrb. requiring Subjv., ib.R 5.

aposiopesis-691.

apparēre-as cop. vb., 206, N.1; with Nom. and Inf., 528, N.2; with ut, 553,4, appellare-with two Accs., 340; with two

Noms., 206.

appointing-vbs. of, with Dat. of Ger., 429, 2.

apposition-320; concord in, 321; exceptions, ib. RB., NN.; Partitive, 322, 323; Restrictive, 322; Distributive, 323; whole and part, ib. N.2; to sentence, 324; predicate, 325; Gen. of, 361; to names of Towns, 386.R.1; to Loc., 411, R.3; pron. incorporated, 614, R.4; subst. incorporated, 616,2.

appropinguare-with Dat., 346, R.2. aptus-constr., 552, R.2; with qui, 631.1. apud-416.4.

arbitrāri-with Iuf., 527,R.2.

arbitrātū-as Abl. of Cause, 408, N.1.

arbor decl. of, 45,N.

arcere-with Abl. of Separation, 390,2, N.2. Archilochian-measure, 788, 800.

arcus-decl. of, 68,5.

ārdēre-with Int., 423,2,N.2; ārdēns, to express cause, 408.N.2.

ardor-with ut, 546, N.2.

arguere-with Gen., 378,R.1; with Inf., 528, N.1.

Aristophanic-measure, 793.

arrangement-of words, 671-683; clauses, 684-687; grammatical or rhetorical, 672; ascending and descending, 673; of simple sentences, 674; of interrog. sentences, 675; of adj. and Gen., 676; of a lvs., 677; of preps., 678; of particles, 679 : of attributes, 680 ; of opposites, 681; of pairs, 682; anaphoric and chiastic, 682; poetical, 683; periods, 685; historical and oratorical, 687.

arridere-with Dat., etc., 347, R.2.

artisan-suffixes for, 181.3.

ās-decl. of, 48,R.

Asclepiadean-measure, 802, 803.

asking-vbs. of, with two Accs., 339 and R.1, N.1; with Inf. or ut, 546 and R.3.

aspergere-with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348, R.1.

aspicere-with Inf., 527,R.1; aspectū, 436.N.1.

aspirates-6,2,B.

assentīrī-with Dat., 346, R.2; 347, R.2.

assequi-with ut, 553,1.

-assere-as Inf. ending, 131,4,b.4.

asseverations-in Subjv., 262; in Fut. Indic., ib. N.; with nisi, 591, b.2.

assidere-with Dat., etc., 347,R.2.

assimilations-of vowels, 8.4: of consonants, 9,1,2,3; of preps., 9,4; of Voc., 211, R.3.

assuēfacere-with Abl. or Dat., 401, N.2; with Inf., 423,2, N.2.

assuescere -with Abl. or Dat., 401, N.2; with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

astu-in Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.

asyndeton - after demonstrative, 307, R.4; in coordination, 473, N., 474, N., 483, N., 492, N.

at-use of, 488 and NN.; ast, 488, N.1.

atque-for quam, 296, N.4; syntax of, 477 and notes; adds a third member, 481, N.; with adjs. of Likeness, etc., 643; for quam after neg. Comp., 644, N.

atqui-489; atquin, ib. N.1.

attendance - Abl. of, 392; with cum, ib. R 1; instrumental, ib. R.2.

attinet-with Inf., 422, N.4; restrictions with, 627, R. 2.

attraction - in Gender, 211, R.5; in mood, 508,4, 629; of vb. of Saying into Subjv., 541, N.3, 585, N.3, 630, N.3; of Rel., 617; inverse, 617, N.2; of mood in general, 662, 663.

attributive-288; concord of adj., 289; with two or more substs., 290: position of, 291; superlatives of Order and Sequence, 291,1,R.2; pred., 325; various peculiarities of, ib. RR.; omitted with cognate Acc., 333,2, N.1; with Abl. of Time, 393, R.5; omitted with Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1; with Inf., 421, N.2; with part., 437, R.

au-pronunciation of, 4; weakening of, 8,1.

auctorem -esse, with Dat., 346, N.5; with Inf., 527,R.2; with ut, 546,N.1.

auctoritas-with ut, 546, N.1; auctoritate as Abl. of Cause, 408, N.1.

audere-with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

audire-like Gr. akovew, 206, N.2; audiens, with Dat., 346.N.5; with cum and Subjv., 580,R 2; with Inf. and part., 527,R.1, and N.1; with rel. and Indic., 467,N.; audītū, 436,N.1.

auscultare-with Dat., 346, R.2.

aut-distinguished from an. 458.N.4; use of, 493 and notes; aut-aut with Pl., 235, N.1: subdivides a neg., 445.

autem-position of, 413, N.3, 484 R.; syntax of, 484; in lively questions, ib. N.1; strengthens sed. 485.N.3, 592.

auxiliari-with Dat., 346,R.2.

auxiliāris-and auxiliārius, 84,2.

auxiliary-vbs. with Inf., 280,1,b. avere-with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

aversus-with Dat., 359, R.5.

Baccar-68,12.

Bacchic-foot, 734; measures, 811-814.

balneum-68,3.

becoming-vbs. of, with two Noms., 206. beginning-vbs. of, with Inf., 423, and N.2. believing-vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf., 526 and 527; with Nom., 528.

hellare-with Dat., 346, N.6.

bellum—in Abl. of Time, 394,R; belli as Loc., 411,R.2.

belonging—suffixes for, 182,5. benevolus—compared, 87,4. beseeching—vbs. of, with ut, 546. bewaring—vbs. of, with ne, 548. bibere—with dare, 421,N.1,b.

bidding -vbs. of, with Dat., 346.

biiugus-and biiugis, 84,1. bimātris-85,1.

bīnī - for duo, 346,R.2.

blandiri-with Dat., 346, R.2.

boards-with Dat. Ger., 429,1.

bonus-comparison, 90; cui bonō, 356, R.1; bene, as adv. of Degree, 439,N.2, and 3.

books-omit in with Abl., 387.

bos-decl. of, 52,7.

brachylogy-689.

breathings-6,2,A.

buying-vbs. of, with Gen. or Abl., 379, 380.

C-sound of, 1,R.1; name of, 1,N. cadere—with Abl. of Separation, 390,2,N. 2.

cæsura—defined, 750; varieties, 751; masc. and fem., 752; bucolie, 753,R.2; in Iamb. Sen., 758,N.2; in Iam. Trim. Cat., 761,N.; in Iam. Trim. Claud., 762, N.4; in Iam. Oct., 763,N.b.; in Iam. Sept., 764,N.2; in Troch. Sept., 770,N.2; in Dac. Hex., 784,N.2: in alcaic, 791, 798, 799,N.1; in Glyconic, 795; in Phalaccean, 796,N.3; in Sapphic, 797,N.2, 804; in Archilochian, 800,N.; in Asclepiadean, 802,N.1.

calling—vbs. of, with two Accs., 340; with two Noms., 206.

calx-decl. of, 70,D.

campi-as Loc., 411,R.2.

cantica—defined, 747; in early Latin, 824; in later Latin, 825.

capability—adjs. of, with Inf., 421, N.1,c.
capacity—adjs. of, with Dat. Ger., 429,2;
suffixes for, 182,2.

capi-with Gen. of Charge, 378, R.1.

capital-decl. of, 78,R.

caput—decl. of, 53.8; est with Inf., 422, N.2.

cardinal numbers—94; Gen. Pl. of, 95, R.2; collective Sg. of, ib.; duo and ambō, 292; with singuli, 295: for Distributive, 295.N.; position of, 676,R.2. carēre—with Abl., 405; with Gen., 383,1, N.2.

carō—decl. of, 41,4; gender of, 43,1. Carthāginī—as Loc., 411,B.1.

carus-with Abl. of Price, 404, N.2.

cases—defined, 23; strong and weak,
 recti and obliqui, 24; case-forms, 25;
 endings, 25,2.

cassis-decl. of, 68,12.

cāsū as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.

catalexis 742.

causa—with Gen., 373; with poss. pron., ib. R.2; with Gen. Ger., 428.R.2; causa, in phrases with ut, 546,N.2; causam vincere, 333,2,R.

CAUSAL SENTENCES—coördinate, 498; particles, 498; syntax of subordinate, 538-542; general division, 538, 539; with quod, etc., and Indic., 540; with quod, etc., and Subjv., 541; with quia, ib. n.1; rejected reason, ib. n.2; with quandōque, ib. n.5; with vbs. of Emotion, 542; sī for quod, ib. n.1; with cum, 580, n.1 and 2, 586; with tamquam, etc., 541. n.4. 602. n.4; relative, 634; clauses in O.O., 655.

causation—vbs. of, with part., 537; with ut, 553,1; pass. with ut, ib. 3.

causative verbs-formation of, 191,4.

cause—Abl. of, 408; various expressions for, ib. nn.; preventing, ib. n.4; external, ib. n.6; represented by part. 666, 670.2.

cavēre—with Subjv. for Impv., 271,2; with Dat., 346, N.2; constructions with, 548, NN. 1 and 3.

ce—appended to iste, 104,3, N.2; to ille, ib. N.3.

cedere—with Dat., 346,R.2; with Abl. of Separation, 390,2,N.2.

cedo-defective, 175,6.

cēlāre—with two Accs., or dē, 339 and R. 1 and 3, N.1.

celer-comparison of, 87,1, and N.

cēnsēre—with Inf., 527,R.2; with ut, 546, N.1; cēnseō, yes, 471,2.

centimanus-defective, 85,2.

cernere-with Inf., 527, R.1.

certare—with Dat., 346, N.6; rem certare, 333, 2, R.

certus—strengthens quidam, 313.8.3; with Gen., 374.8.9; certe, certo, yes. 471,1; certe, strengthens at, 488.8.2; certius (quam), with Inf., 422,8.3; certum est, with Inf., 423,2,N.2; certiorem facere, with Inf., 527,R.2.

cessare-with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

(cēterus)—Nom. masc. wanting, 74.R.2, 85.1: use of cēterum, 491: cētera used partitively, 291,R.2; alius instead, 319, N.1: as Acc. of Respect, 338.2.

charge—in Gen. with Judicial verbs, 378; with nomine, ib. R.2; in Abl., ib. R.3.

chiasmus-682 and R.

chocsing -vbs. of, with two Noms., 208; with two Accs., 340; End with Dat. or ad, ib. R.2; vbs. of, with Final Dat., 356.N.2.

choriambic—feet, 734; rhythms, 801. cingi-with Acc., 338, N. 2.

circa —position of, 413, R.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416,5; with Acc. Ger., 432 and N.1.

circiter-as prep., 416,6.

circum—in composition, 9.4; vbs. cpd. with, take Acc., 331; never repeated, ib. n.2; as adv., 415; as prep., 416.5.

circumdare—with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348, R.1.

circumfundere—with Acc. and Dat, or Acc. and Abl., 348, R.1.

circumspice—with direct question, 467,

circumstantial cum-585 588.

cis-as prep., 416,7.

citerior-87,2 and 7.

citius quam-constr. after, 644, R.3.

citrā-as adv., 415; as prep., 416,7.

cīvitās—concord of, in pred., 211, n.6.

clam—as adv., 415; as prep., 416,8.

clanculum—as prep., 416,8.

clivus—decl. of, 67,2.

clothing—vbs. of, with Acc. of Respect, 338 N.2; with Abl. of Means, 401.N.1. cluere—with Nom. and Inf., 528.N.1.

coepi-175,5,a, and N.; with Inf., 423, N.3.

cogere—with Inf., 423,2,N.2; with ut, 553, 2; conclude, with Inf., 546,R.1, 553,2,N. cogitare—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

cogitatio—in phrases with ut, 557, z.
Cognate Accusative—333,2; similar

phrases, ib. n.: with second Acc., 341; with prohibere, inbere, ib. n.2. cognatus—with Gen. or Dat., 359, n.1.

cognitio—in phrases with ut, 557, B. cognomen esse—with Dat., 349, B.5.

cognoscere—with Inf., 527, R.1; cognitū as Sup., 436, N.1.

coincidence-constr. with, 513, N.3.

coire-with Dat., 346, N.6.

colligere-with Inf., 527, R.2.

collocare—with in and Abl., 385, E.1; with in and Acc., ib. N.2.

colus-decl. of, 61, N.5.

comitari-with Dat., 346, N.2.

comitiis—as Abl. of Time, 393, R.5.

commiserārī—with Acc., 377, N.2.

committere—with Acc. Ger., 430, N.1; with ut, 548 N.1.

commovere—with ut, 553,2; commotus, to express cause, 408, N.2.

commune—as subst., 211, R.4; in phrases with ut, 557, R.; communis, with Gen. or Dat., 359, R.1.

comparative—in ior, 86; in entior, 87.4,5; lacking, 87,9; with quam or Abl., 296 and RR.; omission of quam, ib. R. 4; age with nātus, ib. R.5; with opinione, ib. R.6; of Disproportion, 298, omission of ut after quam, ib. R.2; restriction of, 300; strengthened, 301; doubled, ib.; with Part, Gen., 372 and R.2; with Abl. of Respect, 398 and R.; with Abl. of Measure, 403, N.1; with Abl. Ger., 431, N.2; with quam qui, 631, 3.

COMPARATIVE SENTENCES—638-644; division of, 638; moods in, 639; vb. omitted in, 640; in dependent clauses, 641; correlatives in, 642; the more—the more, ib. R.2; with atque, 643; with quam, 644.

comparison—of adjectives, 86; peculiarities, 87: by magis and māximē, ib.6; by plūs and plūrimum, ib. 6.N.2: defective, 87,2.7,9. of participles, 68,89; of advs., 93; irregular, 90; standard of, omitted, 287; of qualities, 299; conditional sentences of, 602.

compelling-vbs. of, with ut, 553,2.

compensatory lengthening-9,6,a.

comperce—with Inf. for Impv., 271,2,8.2 comperire—with Gen., 378, B.1; with Inf., 527, B.1.

compēsce—with Inf. for Impv., 271,2, N.2.

complere-with Gen., 383,1.

complexus—as a Present, 282.w.

compos-with Gen., 374, N.3.

composition—of words, 193-200; divisions, 193; of substs., 194-198; of vbs., 199, 209. compounds-attrib., 197,1; dependent, ib. 2; poss., 198; quantity in, 715.

con-see cum.

conari-with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

conatus-defective, 68,5.

concedere—used personally in pass., 217, N.2; with Dat., 346, R.2; with Inf., 423,2, N.2; 532, N.1; with Acc. Ger., 430, N.1; with ut, 548, N.1.

conceiving-vbs. of, with obj. clause, 523. concessive-Subjv., 264: cum, 580, NN.1

and 2, 587; qui, 634; part. 609,667,670,4. CONCESSIVE SENTENCES-603-609; with etsi, etc., 604; with quamquam, 605; with quamvis, etc., 606; with licet, 607; with ut, 608; representatives of,

concludere-with Inf., 527, R.2.

concord-210; pred. with subj., 211; violations of, ib. RR.1-6, MN.1-3; of subj. and pred. multiplied, 285-287; of app., 321; neut. for persons, 323, N.2; of rel., 614.

concupiens-with Gen., 375, N.2. concurrere-with Dat., 346, N.6.

condecet-with Inf., 422, N.4.

condemning-vbs. of, with Gen., 378; with other constrs., ib. R.2; with Abl., ib. R. 3; enforced destination, ib. R.4.

condicio-in phrases with ut, 546, N.2. condition-suffixes for, 181,8; indicated by a question, 453, N.3; represented by part., 687,670,4.

conditional cum-583.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES-589-602; division of, 589; sign, 590; negatives, 591; two excluding, 592; equivalents of Protasis, 593; classification of, 594. LOGICAL, 595; in O.O., ib. R.1; with Subjv., ib. RR. 2,3; sīve-sīve, ib.R.4: sīguidem, ib R. 5; sī modo, ib.n.6; phrases, ib.n.1; range of tenses, ib. N.2. IDEAL, 596; for unreal, ib.R.1; shift to unreal, ib.R.2; after non possum, 16 R.3; in O.O., 16. R.5. UNREAL, 597; Impf. of Past, ib. R.1; Indic. in Apodosis, 1b. RR 2,3; in OO., ib. R.4: after a vb. requiring Subjv., ib. R. 5: absque, ib.n.1. Incomplete, 598-601; omission of sign, 598; of vb. of Prot., 599; of Prot., 600; of Apod., 601; of Com-PARISON, 602; in O.O. general consideration, 656; Logical, 657; Ideal, 658; Unreal, 659; Pf. Inf. and potuisse, ib. N. conducit-with Dat., 346, R.2; with Gen.,

379; with Acc. Ger., 430, N.1.

confici-with Inf., 533, R.1; with tu. 553,3.

confidere-with Dat., 346, R.2 and N.2; with Abl., 401, N.6; with Iuf., 527, R.2.

confirmare with Inf., 527, R.2. congruere-with Dat., etc., 347,R.2.

conjugation-defined, 17; systems of, 120: first. 122; second, 123; irregular second, 124; third, 125; third in io, 126; fourth, 127; deponents, 128: periphrastic, 129; notes on; 130,131; change in, 136.

conjunction-defined, 16.7, and R.3. conjungere-with Dat. or cum, 359, N.3. CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES-exceptional sequence in, 513; syntax of, 551-558; general division, 551; Pure, 552; tantum abest ut, ib. R.1; with dignus, etc., ib. R.2; with idea of Design, ib. R.3; ut non, without, ib. p.4; Complementary, 553; vbs. of Effecting, 553; vbs. of Causation, ib. 1; of Compelling, etc., ib. 2; Happening, etc., ib. 3; impersonals, ib.4; vbs. of Hindering, 554-556; quin with vbs. of Preventing, 555,1; with vbs. of Doubt, ib. 2; quin = ut non, 556; non dubito quin, ib. RR.1,2; Explanatory ut, 557; Exclamatory question, 558; rel. sentences, 631; with def, antecedent, ib. 1; with indef. antecedent, ib. 2; with Comp., ib. 3; with adj., ib. 4; with quin, 632; Indic. for Subjv., ib. 2, RR. 1,2.

consentaneum-with Inf., 422, N.3. consentire-with Dat., etc., 347, R.2. consequi-and consequens, with ut, 553,

1 and 4. considere-with in and Abl., 385, R.1. consilium-in Abl. of Cause, 408, N.1; in phrases, with Inf., 422, N.2, and 428, N.2; with dare and ut, 546, NN.1 and 2.

consistere-with Abl. of Material, 396,

consonants-6; double, ib.3; sounds of, 7; phonetic variations in, 9; combinations of, 10, R.1.

consors-with Gen., 374, N.2.

conspicari-with Inf., 527, R.1.

conspicere-with Inf., 527,R.1.

constare-with Dat., etc., 347, R.2; with Gen., 379; with Abl. of Material, 396, N. 1; with Nom. and Inf., 528, N.2.

constituere-with in and Abl., 385, R.1; with Inf., 423, 2, N.2; with ut, 546, N.1.

constructio-ad sensum, 211.R.1,N.3; praegnans, 699.

consuescere - with Inf., 423,2, N.2; consuētus, with Inf., 421, N.1,c.

consuetudo-in Abl. of Manner, 399.N 1; in phrases, with Inf., 422, N.2, or ut, 557,

consulere-with two Accs , 339 and N 1; with Dat., 346, R.2 and N.2; boni consulere, 380, N.2.

contemporaneous action-538-573; in Extent, 569,570; in Limit, 571-573.

contendere -with Dat., 346, N.6; with Inf , 423, 2, N. 2; with ut, 546, N. 1.

contineri-with Abl of Material, 396, N 1; contentus, with Abl., 491, N.6.

contingit-with ut, 553,3; contigit, with Dat., 346, R.2; sequence after, 513, N.2; attraction of pred. after, 535, R.3. continuance-vbs. of, with Inf., 423, and

N 2. contrā-position of, 413, R.1; as adv., 415;

as prep., 416,9; with atque, 643, N.3. contracting-vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.

contraction-of shorts, 732. contrārius-with Gen. or Dat., 359, R.1;

with atque, 643, N.3.

contrasts-with hīc-ille, 307, RR.1.2; with ipse, 311, R.1; with aliquis, 314; alter-alter, etc., 323.

convenire-Indic. for Subjv., 254, R.1; with Dat., 346, N.2, 347, R.2.

convicting-vbs. of, with Gen., 378; other constr., ib. R.2.

coordination-defined, 472; without conjunction, 472, R.; syntax of, 473-503; copulative, 474-482; adversative, 483-491; disjunctive, 492-497; causal and illative, 498-503.

conia-with Inf., 428, N.2.

copula-with pred., 205; itself a pred., ib. N.; omitted, 209; agrees with pred., 211, R.1, EX.C.

copulative-vbs., 206; with Nom. and Inf., ib. R.3. Particles, 474; omitted, ib. N., 481. Sentences, 474-482; use of neg. to connect, 480.

cor-decl. of, 53,8; cordI est, with Inf., 422, N.5.

coram-as adv., 415; as prep., 417,3. cornus-decl. of, 68,5.

corpus-decl. of, 48.

correlatives-109-111; pronominal adjs., 109; advs., 110; cpds., 111; coordinating particles, as tum-tum, aliās-aliās, etc., 482; of Rel., 618; absorption of, 619, 621; position of, 620; in comparative sentences, 642; omitted, 642,3.

correption-744.

cos - defective, 70,D.

countries-in Acc., with prep., 337, R.1; without, ib. N 1; in Abl., 391, N.

crassitudo -with Acc. of Extent, 335,R.1. crassus-with Acc. of Extent, 335, R.1.

crāstinī-as Loc., 411, N.1.

creare-with two Accs., 340; with two Noms., 206.

creation-vbs. of, with Inf., 280,1,b.

credere-personal in pass., 217, N.1; with Dat., 346, R.2; with Inf., 527, R.2; crēditur, with Inf., 528, R.2.

cretic-foot, 734; substitutions for, 806; rhythms, 806-810.

cruciari-with Inf., 533,R.1.

cūius-as poss. pron., 106, N.4.

culpa-with Epexegetical Gen., 361,2.

cum-and quom, 7; in composition, 9,4; with subst. to form cpd subj., 285, N.2; vbs. cpd. with take Acc., or Dat., 331, 347; with Abl. of Attendance, 392, and R.1; to indicate Time, 394, N.2; with Abl. of Manner, 399; with unnatural productions, 400, R.2: position of, 413, R.1; with Abl. Ger., 433; as prep., 417,4; with eo . and quod, 525,2,N.2; (primum), as soon as, 561-563; Causal, 564, N.2; with Iterative action, 566, 567; with Subjy., 1b. N.; derivation of, 578; general view of, 579; Temporal, 580; fuit cum. ib. R.1; memini cum, ib. R.2; with Lapses of Time, ib. R.3; in early Latin, ib. N.1: Inverse, 581; Explicative, 582; Conditional, 583, 590, N.3; Iterative, 584; with Subjv., ib. R.; Circumstantial, 585-598; Historical, 585; Causal, 586; Concessive and Adversative, 587: cum non = without, ib. R.2; cum-tum, 588; mood, ib; 2; cum interim, with Inf., 635, N.2; with Indic. retained in O.O., 655 R.3.

-cumque-makes general relatives. 111.2. cuncta-Acc. of Respect, 338,2; may omit in with Abl. of Place, 388.

cunetari-with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

cupere-with Pf. Inf., 280, 2.e, N.; with Dat., 346, R.2: cupientī est, 353. N.2; with Inf., 423,2, N.2; 538, N.4; cupiens, with Gen., 375, N.2.

cupiditas-with ut, 546, N.2.

cupidus-with Gen., 374, N.5.

cupressus-decl. of, 68,5.

cūra-with ut, 546, N.2; cūrae est, with Inf., 422, N.5.

cūrāre—with I::f., 423,2,N.2; with Acc. Ger., 430,N,1; with part., 537,N 2; with ut, 546,N.1; cūrā ut for Impv., 271,1, and 2,N.2.

curriculo -as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.

Dactylic—foot, 734; substitutions, 783; rhythm, 736; rhythms, 783-789.

damnās-indeclinable, 85,C.

daps-defective, 70,D.

dare—Pf. dedrot, 131.6; Pr. danunt, 133, rv., N.2; with ad or Dat., 345, R.2; with Final Dat., 356, R.2; operam, with Dat. Ger., 429, N.1; or ut, 546, N.1; with Acc. Ger., 430, N.1; nūptum, etc., 435, N.1; with Pf. part., 537, N.2; permit, with ut, 553, 2.

DATIVE-defined, 23,3; 1st decl. in al. a. ābus, ās, ēis, 29, NN. 3,4; 3d decl. in ēi, e, 37,2; 4th decl. in ubus, ueī, ū, 61,R., and N.2; 5th decl., uncommon, 63.R.1; in &, I, ib. N.2; in Greek substs., 66, N.2; in adjs. in al, a, abus, is (for iis), 75, NN. 2,6; in i of pron. adjs., 76,2; with act. vb. unchanged in pass., 217, 346, R.1; gives End with vbs. of Taking, etc., 340,R.2; with ei and vae, 343,1,N.2; of Indirect Obj., 344; with trans. vbs., 345; with vbs. of Taking Away, ib, R.1; and pro, ib. R.2; with intrans. vbs., 346; with cpd. vbs., 347; with vbs. cpd. with de, ex, ab, ib. R.5; and Acc. with vbs. of Giving and Putting, 348; of Possessor, 349; of Personal Interest, 350; Ethical, 351; of Reference, 352, 353; with participles, 353; of Agent, 215, 354; Double, 356; with substs., 357; Local, 358; with adjs., 359; with cpds. of dī. dis. 390,2, N.5; of Ger., 429.

dē—with Abl. for second Acc., 339,NN.2,3; vbs. cpd. with take Dat., 347,R.5; with Abl. of Separation, 390,1, and 2; to indicate Time, 394,N.2; with Abl. of Origin, 395,and N.2; with Abl. of Respect, 397, N.1; with Abl. of Cause, 408,N.3; position of, 413,R.1; as prep., 416.5; with Abl. Ger., 433; with part., 437,N.2; dē eō quod, 525,2,N.2.

death—deponent vb. of as act. in Abl. Abs., 410.N.1.

dēbēre—Indic. for Subjv., 254, R.1; Impf. as tense of Disappointment, ib. R.2;

with Pf. Inf., 280,2,b, and N.3; with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

decere—with Pf. Inf, 280,2,b,R.1; with
Dat, 345,N.3; with Abl. of Respect,
397 N.2

decernere—with Inf, 423,2,N.2, and 546, R.1; with ut, 546,N 1.

declension—defined, 17; varieties of, 27; rules for, 28; 1st, 29, 30, 2d, 31-33; stems in -ro and -ero, 32; 3d, 35-60; stems of, 35; formation of Nom. Sg., 36; liquid stems, 39-46; sibilant, 47-49; mute, 50-55; vowel, 56-59; 4th, 61, 62; 5th. 63, 64; vary between 5th and 3d, 63, R.2; of Greek substs., 65; adjs. of 1st and 2d, 73; of pron. adjs., 76; parts., 80.

decorus-with Abl., 397, N.2.

decreeing-vbs. of, with Dat. Ger., 429,2.

dedecet—with Inf., 422, N.4. deesse—with Dat., 349.R.4.

deferre-with Gen. of Charge, 378, R.1.

dēfessus-with Inf., 421, N.1,c.

deficere—with Acc., 346, N.3.

defigere—with in and Abl., 385, R.1. degree—advs. of, modify other advs., 459,

dēicere—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.

dēlectārī—with Acc., 346, N.3.

deliberative questions—265; Subjv. in O.O., 651, R.2.

dēlīberātum est-with Inf., 423,2, N.2.

delicium—decl. of, 68,3.

dēligere—with two Accs., 340; with two Noms., 206.

demanding-vbs. of, with ut, 546.

dēmergere—with in and Abl., 385, R.1. dēmīrārī—with Inf., 533, R.1.

dēmonstrāre—with Inf., 527, B. 2.

demonstratives—104: attracted in Gender, 211,R.5, and N.3; syntax of, 305-307: hic, 305: iste, 306: ille, 307: hic—ille, ib. RR.1,2; advs. similarly used, ib. R 3; strengthened by quidem, ib. R 4; reflexive of, 521,R.5; followed by quod, 525,2; continue a rel. clause, 638 N.1; position of, 676.R.1.

dēmovēre—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.

denominative-179,2, and N.; Pf. of vbs.,

134,v.; formation of vbs., 192. dense growths—suffixes for, 181,11.

dentals-6,1; suffixes with, 186. denellere—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.

deponent—113; conjugation, 128; list of, 163-166; semi-, 167; how used, 220.

deprecari-with ne. 548, N.1.

deprehendi-with Gen. of Charge, 378,

depriving-vbs. of, with Abl., 405, N. derivative words-179,2.

descent-suffixes for, 182,11.

desiderare-with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

desiderative verbs-formation of, 191,3. desinere-with Inf., 423,2,NN.2,3.

desire-adjs. of, with Gen., 374; vbs. of, with Inf., 281,c.; 423,2,NN.2,4; sequence after, 515.R.3; with Acc. and Inf., 532; with ut, ib. N.1-4; with part., 537, N.1; with complementary Final clause, 546.

desistere-with Abl., 390,2, N.3.

desperare-with Dat., 346, R.2; with Inf., 527, R.2.

determinative pronouns-103; syntax of,

dēterrēre-with Inf., 423,2,N.2; with nē. 548, N.1; with quominus, 549, N.1.

deturbare-with Abl., 390,2,N,3.

deus-decl. of, 33, R.6.

dexter-decl. of, 74,R.1; Comp. of, 87,1, R.1; ib. 2 and 7,

diæresis-5, 753.

dialysis-724.

diastolé-721.

dica-defective, 70,D.

dicere-with two Noms. in pass., 206; omission of, 209, N.5; dixerat as Aor., 241, N.1; dicat, dixerit aliquis, 257.2; with Acc. and Inf., 527,R.1; with Nom. and Inf., 528, and N.1; dicitur and dictum est, ib. R 2; not confined to 3d person, ib. N.4; with ut, 546, N.1; dic. with Indic. question, 467, N.: dictū, in Sup., 436.N.

[dicio]-defective, 70, D.

diē -as Loc., 91,3; as Abl. of Time, 393, R.5; diū, by day, 91.2.f.

difference-measure of, 403; vbs. of, with Abl., ib. N.1.

differre-with Dat., 346, N.6.

difficile-comparison of, 87,3; with est for Subjv., 254 R.1; with Inf., 421.N.1,c. difficulty-adjs. of, with Abl. Sup., 436, N. 2. diffidere-with Dat., 346, R.2, and N.2; not Abl., 401, N.6.

dignāri-with Abl. of Respect, 397, N.2. dignus-with Gen., 374, N.10; with Abl. of Respect, 397, N.2; constr. after, 552, R.2; qui or ut, with Subjv., 631,1, and B.2.

diluvium - heteroclite, 68,6.

diminutive-suffixes for, 181,12, 182,12; vbs., 192,2.

diphthongs-4 and N.; length of, 14; quantity of, 705.

dis-in composition, 9,4.

disagreement-vbs. of, with Dat., 346, N.G. discere-pass. of docere, 339, N.4; with

Inf., 527, R.1.

discrepare—with Dat., 346, N.6.

discruciārī-with Inf., 533,R 1.

disgust-adjs. of, with Gen., 374.

disinclination-adj. of, for advs., 325, R.6. disjunctive-particles, 492; sentences,

492-497; particles omitted, 492, N.; questions, 452; forms of, 458; indirect, 460,2. displeasure-vbs. of, with Dat., 346; adjs.

of, with Abl. Sup., 436, N.2. displicere-with Dat., 346,R.2; displi-

cet, with Inf., 422, N.4. disproportion-by quam pro, qui, ut, etc., 298; by positive, with preps. ib. R.; omission of ut after quam, ib. N.2. dispudet-with Gen., 377, N.1; with Inf.,

422, N.4.

dissentire-with Dat., 346, N.6.

dissimilation-of Consonants, 9.5.

dissimilis-Comp. of, 87,3.

dissimulare-with Inf., 527, R.2. distaedet-with Gen., 377, N.1.

distare-with Acc., or a and Abl., 335, R. 2; with Dat., 346, N.6; with Abl. ot Measure, 403, N.1.

distributives-97; with plūrālia tantum, ib. R.3; for cardinals, ib. N.1, 295, N.; syntax of, 295; in apposition, 323. diverbium-747.

dives-Comp. of, 87.10.

divinam rem facere-with Abl. of Means, 401, N.4.

docere-with two Accs., or de, 339, and R. 1; with ab, ib. R.2; doctus, ib. R.2, and N.4; discere as pass., ib. N.4; constr. after, 423, N.6.

doing-vbs. of, take obj. clause, 523, and 525,1, and N.4.

dolere-with Inf., 533,R.1; dolet, with Dat., 346, N.1; with Dat. and Inf., 533, R.1.

dolo-as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.

domus-decl., 61, R. 2, 68, 5; Acc. as Limit of Motion, 337; Abl. of Separation, 390, 2; domī, 411, s.2; with Gen. of poss. pron., 411, R.4.

donare—with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348.R.1.

donec—derivation, 568 and R.; of complete coextension, with Indic., 569; until, with Indic., 571; inverse, ib. N.6; with Subjv., 572; to express subordination, ib. R.

dönicum—568; range of, 571, N.4. dönique—range of, 571, N.4.

doubt-vbs. of, with quin, 555,2. dropping-vbs. of, with quod clause, 525,

1; with ut, ib. N.4.

dubitāre—an, 457,2; with Inf., 423,2,N.
2; non dubitō, with quin, 555,2,R.1;
with Interrog., ib. R.2; with Inf., ib.
R.3, and N.

dubium-with an and Subjv., 457,2.

dücere—with pred. Nom. or phrase, 206, R.1; with Final Dat., 356, R.2; with Gen. of Price, 379; pēnsī dücere, 380,1,N.2; deem, with Acc. and Inf., 527,R.2; lead, with ut, 553,2.

dum—enclitic, with Impv., 269; with Pr. Indic., 229, R.; force of, 568, R.; of complete coextension, 569; of partial coextension, 570: until, with Indic., 571; with Subjv., 572; to express subordination, ib. R.; provided that, 573; with modo, ib.; with Pr. for participle, 570, NN.1 and 2; causal, ib.; retained, with Indic. in O.O., 655, R. 3, 663, I.N.1.

dummodo-provided that, 573.

duo-decl. of, 73, R., 95, and ambō, uterque, 292.

duritia-heteroclite, 68,2.

duty-vbs. of, with Inf., 423 and N.2.

E-sound of, 3; weakening of, 8,1; length of final, 707,2; E and ex in comp., 9,4. ease—adjs. of, with Abl. Sup., 436, N.2.

ebur-decl. of, 44,5.

ēcastor—strengthens atque, 477, N.2. ecce—with Acc. and Nom., 343,1,N.2.

ecquis-106 and N.5.

ecthlipsis—719,2.

edere—conjugation of. 172, N.
Edicere—with Inf., 527, R.2; with ut, 546, N.1.

ēdūcere-with Abl., 390,2.N.3.

effecting—vbs. of, have Final Sequence, 543, R.1, and N.2; constr. of, 553.

efferre-with Abl., 390, 2, N.3.

efficere—with Subjv. and ut, 553,1 and 3; with Inf., 527, R.2, 553,2,N.

egēnus - Comp. of, 87,5; with Gen. or Abl., 405, N.3.

egēre—with Gen. or Acc., 383,1, 405, N.2. ego—decl. of, 100; Gen. Pl., nostrum.

nostri, 100, R.2, 304,2 and 3; poss. pron. instead, ib. 2, N.2; nos in O.O. 660,4.

egredi-with Abl., 390,2.N.3.

ēgregiē-adv. of Degree, 439, N.2.

ei-with Dat. in exclamations, 343,1,N.2.

ēicere-with Abl., 390,2,N.3.

ēlābī—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.

Elegiambus-821.

elision—719,1; in Iam. Sen., 759, s. 3; in Dac. Hex., 784, s. 5; in Pent., 786, s. 2; in Sapphic, 797, s. 3; in Asclepiadean, 802, s. 2.

ellipsis-688; see Omission.

em-with Acc. of Exclamation, 343,1, N.2.

emere—with Gen., 379; bene emere, 380, 2,R.

eminence-words of, with Abl., 397, N.2.

ēmittere-with Abl., 390,2,N.3.

emotion—vbs. of, with Acc., 330,R. and N. 2, 333,1. N.1; vbs. of, with Abl. of Cause, 408; with Acc. and Inf., 533; in Nom. of Part., 536,N.2; Causal sentences after, 542 and R.; perplexing, with indirect question or gI, 542,N.1.

emphasis—in arrangement, 672,2,a.

ēn-in exclamations, 343,1, N.2.

enallage-693.

enclitics—effect of, on pronunciation, 15, n.1.

endeavor-vbs. of, with ut, 546,1.

ending-vbs. of, with Inf., 423,2 and N.2.

endings-of cases, 26,2, 27.

endowing-vbs. of, with Abl. of Means, 401, N.1.

enim—position of. 413, N.3, 484, R., 498, N.1;
yes for, 471, R.; strengthens sed, 485, N.
3, 498; asseverative, 498, N.2; combinations of. tb. N.6; after quia, tb. N.7.

enimvēro—strengtheus sed, 485, N.3.

ēnītī-with Inf., 423, 2.N.2.

enumerations—in Abl. without in, 387.

epanorthosis-484, R 1.

epenthesis—of vowels, 8,3; of consonants, 9,7.

epicene substantives-21,3.

epulum-heteroclite, 68,3.

ergā—use of, 416,10; with Acc. Ger., 432, N.1.

ergō -with Gen., 373; as adv., 389, N.1; with Gen. Ger., 428, R.2; usage of, 502 and N.1; position of, ib. N.2; combinations of, ib. N.3.

eripere-with Abl., 390,2,N.3.

erudire—with Abl. or de, 339, R.2 and N. 3; with in or Abl., 401, N.1.

esse-conjugation of, 116; early forms, ib. NN.; cpds., 117; as copula,205; esse pro, in numero, etc., 206, R.1; omitted, 209 and NN., 280,2.a,R.2 and c; with Fut. part, to form periphrastic, 247; cpd. tenses with fui, etc., 1b. R.1; forem for essem, ib. N.1, 250, N.2, 251, N.2; with Pr. part., 247, N.2; futurum esse ut, 248: other forms, ib. NN.; in eō est ut, 249; with Pf. part., 250; variations, 1b. RR., NN.; with Ger., 251.1; with Final Dat., 356, R.2; with Double Dat., ib. R.3; with Gen., 379; with in and Acc., 385, N.3; with Abl., 401, N.7; with Gen. Ger., 428, R. 2: with Dat. Ger., 429,1; futurus as adj., 437,N.; esse quod, 525,1,N.2; est, it is the case, with ut, 553,3; fuit cum, with Subjv., 580, R.1; restrictions with, 627, R.2; sunt quī, with Subjv., 631,2.

esseda-heteroclite, 68,1.

et—in numerals, 96,4. 97,4: et—et, with Pl., 285,N.; usage of, 475; = et tamen, ib. N.1; for etiam, ib. N.2, 482,5.N.2; omitted, 481,2,N. and 3; with adjs. of Likeness and Unlikeness. 643,N.2.

etenim-use of, 498 and NN.

Ethical Dative-351.

etiam—strengthens comparative, 301; syntax of, 478 and NN: yes, 471.1; and quoque, 479 R. and N1; with tum, 478, N1: after sed, vērum, 482,5. and N.1. etiamsi—603 and N.: syntax of, 604 and

etiamsi-603 and N.; syntax of, 604 and RR.

etsi-603; with Indic. or Subjv., 604: and yet, ib. R.2; with part., 609, N.1, 667, N.; with adj. or adv., ib. N.2; with Inf., 635, N.2.

ēvādere-with two Noms., 203.

evenit-with Dat., 346, R.2; with ut, 553.3.

event-suffixes for, 181,2.

ëvertere-with Abl., 390,2,N.3.

ex—in comp., 9,4; vbs. cpd. with take Dat., 347, R.5; with Abl. of Separation, 390,1 and 2; with Towns, 391, R.1; with Abl. of Origin, 395 and N.2; with Abl. of Material, 396; with Abl. of Respect, 397, N.I.; with Abl. of Measure, 402 R.2; with Abl. of Cause, 408, N.3, 413, R 1; use as prep., 417,6; with Abl. Ger., 433; ex eō quod. 525,2.N.2.

exadversus-use of, 416,2.

excedere-with Abl., 390,2,N.3.

excellere—with Dat., 347, R.4: with Abi. of Respect, 357, N.2: with Abl. of Measure, 403, N 1.

excepto-with quod, 525,2,N.2.

exclamations—in Acc., 343,1; in Gen., 383,3; in Acc. and Inf., 534; exclamatory questions, 558.

excludere-with Abl., 390,2, N.3.

excluding-vbs. of, with Abl., 390.2.

exemplum—in phrases with ut, 546, N.2. exigere—with ordinal, 294; with two Accs., 339 and N.1.

exire-with Abl., 390,2,N.3.

existimare—with Gen., 379; with ex and Abl., 402, R.2; with Nom. and Inf., 528, N 1; with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.2.

exlex-defective, 85,2.

exorare-with ut, 553,2.

exordiri-with Inf., 423,2, N.2.

expedit-with Dat., 346, R.2.

expellere—with Abl., 390.2, N.3.

expers-with Gen., 374, N.2; with Abl., 390,3, N.1.

expetere—with Pf. Inf. pass., 280.2.c.n. explere—with Gen., 383,1,n.2; explenunt, 133,1v.n.2.

explicative cum-580, NN.1,2, 582.

exponere-with in and Acc., 385, N. 2.

exposcere-with two Accs., 339 and N.1.

exprimere-with ut, 553,1.

expugnare-with ut, 553,1;

exsequias-with fre, 333,2,R.

exsistere—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.

exsolvere -with Abl., 390,2,N.3.

exspectare-constr. of, 572.

exspectātione -as Abl. of Respect, 398, N.1.

exspes-defective, 85,2.

extent—in Degree, 334; in Space, 335; in Time, 336; Acc. of, as subj. of pass., 336, N.3.

exterior-Comp. of, 87,2 and 7.

extorquere-with ut, 553,1.

extra—as adv., 415; as prep., 416,11.

extrēmum—Comp. of, 87,2; with masc. subj., 211,R.4; with ut, 553,4.

exturbare - with Abl., 390,2, N.3.

exui-with Acc. of Respect, 338, N.2; with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348, R.1.

facere-early Pf., feced, 131,6; omission of, 209, N.5; mīrum factum, 209, N.2; fac (ut) for Impv., 271,1; ludos and second Acc., 342; with pred. Gen., 366, R.1; nihil reliqui, 369, R.2; quod facere possum, 372, N.3; with reum and Gen., 378.R.1; with Gen. of Price, 379; boni, ib. 1. N.2; (sacrum) facere, with Abl., 401.NN.4,7; finem facere, with Dat. Ger., 429, N.1; represent, with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.2; with Pf. part., 537, N 2; with consecutive clause, 553,1; with Inf., 553,2.N.; facere (faxo) ut as periphrasis, ib. 1; non possum (facere) quin, 556; Sup. of, 436, N.

facilis-comparison of, 87,3; with Inf., 421, N, 1, c.

facinus-with est and Inf., 422, N.2.

faex-decl. of, 52,7, 70,C.

fagus-heteroclite, 68,5. falsus-without Comp., 87,9; with ut.

553,4. fama-with est and Inf., 527.R,2.

fames-heteroclite, 68,8.

fāri-conj. of, 175,3, and N.

fas-70,B.; with Inf., 422, N.2, 428, N.2; with Abl. Sup., 436, N.2.

fastening-vbs. of, with ex, ab, de, 385,

fāstīdiōsus-with Gen., 374, N.5.

fateri-with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.2.

fatum-with est and Inf., 422, N.2, and 428.N.2.

faux -- decl. of, 52,7.

favere-with Dat., 346.R.2.

fear-sequence after vbs. of, 515,R.3; clauses of, and Final Clauses, 543, R.3; syntax of clause of, 550; Inf. or Indirect question after, ib. NN.4,5.

femur-decl. of, 44.5, 68,12.

fere-position of, 677, R.1.

ferire-with foedus, 333,2,R.

ferox-with est and Inf., 533, R.1.

ferre-conj. of, 171; legem with ut,

546, N.1; in phrases with ut, 553.1

fēstīnāre-with Inf., 423,2, N.2. ficus -heteroclite, 68,5.

fidem-habere with Dat., 346, N. 5.

fidere-with Dat., 346, B.2 and N.2; with Abl., 401, N.6.

fieri-conjugation of, 173 and NN. : with two Noms., 208, 304, R.1; with Gen. of Price, 379; with ex or dē, 396, N.2; = tobe sacrificed, with Abl., 401.NN.5,7; with ut, 553,3; fierī potis est ut, ib. N.

figure-Whole and Part, 323, N.2; Figures of Syntax and Rhetoric, 688-700; of Prosody, 718 728.

fīlia-decl. of, 29, R.4.

filling-vbs. of, with Abl., 405.

filum-heterogeneous, 67,2,b.

FINAL SENTENCES - with Interrogative particle, 470; general view, 543, 544; Pure, 545; ut nē, or ut non, ib. BR 1,2; Complementary, 546-549; with vbs. of Will and Desire, 546; Inf. instead, ib. R.1; with vbs. of Hindering, 547-549; Subjv. without ut, ib. R.2; ut ne, ib. R,3; with Substantives, ib. N.2; Inf. instead, ib. N.3; ne with vbs. of Preventing, 548; quominus, 549; with vbs. of Fear, 550; eight circumlocutions for, 544.R.2; sequence in, 512.

final syllables-quantity of, 711-713. fine-in Gen. or Abl., 378, R.3.

fine(i)—as prep., 417,7.

fitness-adjs. of, with Dat., 359; with Dat. Ger., 429.

flagitare-with Abl. or a, 339, R.1, and N.1; with ut, 546, NN.1,3.

flagitium hominis-369, N.1, 361, N.3.

flamen-defective, 70, D.

flocci-as Gen. of Price, 380,1.

fluere-with Abl. of Means, 401, N.5.

flumen-with Gen. of App., 361, N.1. foedus-with ferire, 333,2,n.; in phrases with ut, 546, N.2.

following-vbs. of, with ut, 553,3.

foot—in Metre, 733; names of, 734; equality of, 740; conflict of Word and Verse, 750.

forās—91,1,d.

forbidding-vbs. of, with Dat., 346; with nē, 548.

forgetting-vbs. of, with Gen. or Acc., 376 and R.2.

FORMATION OF WORDS-176-200; simple words, 179-192; primitives and derivatives, 179; suffixes, 180; formation of substs., 181; of adjs., 182; with suffixes, 183. Suffixes in detail-vowels, 184; gutturals, 185; dentals, 186; labials, 187; s, 188; liquids, 189; formation of vbs., 190; verbālia, 191;

frequentatives or intensives, ib. 1; inchoatives, ib. 2; desideratives, ib. 3; causatives, ib. 4; meditatives, ib. 5; dēnōminātīva, 192; cpd. words, 193-200; substs., 191-198; vbs., 199, 200; see compounds.

formidare—with Inf., 423,2, N.2, and 533, R.1.

forsitan—457,2,N. forte nisi—591,R.4, and N.3.

fortiter—very, 439, N.3. forum—defective, 70, D.

fraude—as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.

fremere—with Acc. and Inf., 533, R.1. frequens—in pred. attribution, 325, R.6;

with Abl., 405, N.3. frequentative verbs—formation of, 191,1.

fretum-heteroclite, 68,5.

frētus—with Abl., 401, N.G.

friendliness-adjs. of, with Dat., 359. frugi-85,C.; Comp. of, 90.

frui—with Abl., 407, and N.2,b; personal Ger., 427, N.5.

frünisci-with Abl., 407, N. 2, b.

[frux] -defective, 70,D.

fugere—with Inf. for Impv., 271,2,N.2; fugit me, with Pr. Inf., 281,2,N.

fugitāns-with Gen., 375, N.2.

fulmentum—heteroclite, 68,3. fulness—suffixes for, 182,10.

fulness-adjs. of, with Gen., 374; vbs. of, with Gen., 383,1.

function—suffixes for, 181,9; in Dat. Ger., 429.

fungi-with Abl., 406 and N.2,c; personal Ger., 427, N.5.

füstis-heteroclite, 68,5.

FUTURE—112,3; formation of, 114,115; early forms, 130,3; part in ūrum for fem., 211,N.1; definition of, 223; usage of, 243; of volo and possum, 1b. B.2; as gnomic, 1b. N.1; in Impv. senso, 243; periphrasticact., 247; Indic. for Deliberative Subjv., 254,N.2; part. act., 283; part. as subst., 437,N.1; part. as an adj., 438,N.; representation of in O. O., 514, 515; periphrastic in Unreal Cond., 1b. R.1; Inf., 530; in rel. sentences, 622; syntax of part., 669, 670.

FUTURE PERFECT—112,3: formation of, 114,115: in sō, 131,4,b.1; defined, 223; syntax of, 244; as Fut., ib. R.1; with nōlō, volō, possum, etc., ib. R.3; in both clauses, ib. R.4; independent use

of, ib. n.1; periphrastic, with habe6, ib. n.2; as Impv., 245; Representation of, in Ö. O., 514,515; Pf. and Plupf. periphrastic in Unreal Condition, 515,n.1; in rel. sentences, 622,

Galliambic Verse-818.

gaudēre—with sī, 542, n.1; gāvīsus as Pr., 282, n.

gender—19; common, 21,1; epicene, ib. 3; substantīva mobilia, ib. 2; of 1st Decl., 30; of 2d Decl., 34; of 3d Decl., 39, 43,46,49,55,58; of 4th Decl., 62; of 5th Decl., 64; concord in, 286; neut. Pl. with feminines, ib. 3.

GENITIVE—defined, 23,2; of 1st Decl. in \$\bar{a}\$\$, \$\bar{a}\$\$I, um, 29, RR.NN.; of 2d Decl. in \$\bar{1}\$\$ (from stems in io), in um, in \$\bar{e}\$\$I, 33, RR.NN.; of 3d Decl. in us, es, 37,1; in um, ium, 38,2.54,57,R.3; of 4th Decl. in \$\bar{e}\$\$, \$\bar{e}\$\$, \$\bar{u}\$\$, um, 61,N.1; of 5th Decl. in \$\bar{e}\$\$, \$\bar{e}\$\$\$I, um, 61,N.1; of 5th Decl. in \$\bar{e}\$\$\$, \$\bar{e}\$\$\$I, um, 61,N.1; of farek substs. in \$\bar{o}\$\$, \$\bar{e}\$\$I, es, 63,N.1; of Greek substs. in \$\bar{o}\$\$, \$\bar{e}\$\$\$I, aes, es, um, 75,NN.; of pron. adjs. in \$\bar{u}\$\$\$\$Ius, 76,1: of adjs. of three endings in um, ium, 79,R.2, 82, 83,N.2; of Comp. of part., 89,R.2; of Cardinals, \$\bar{e}\$\$\$\$\$\$5,R.2; of Distributives, 97,R.1.

not subj. of pass., 217, n.1; with mille. 293 and N.; with Comp. for Abl., 296, N.2; meī, etc., as objective, 304,2; nostrum as Part., ib.3; poss. pron. for Gen., 304,2,N. 2; in app. to poss. pron., 321, R.2; Part. Gen. for Part. App., 323, R.; with nomen est, 349, R.6; general view, 360; translated by abstract subst., ib. R.2; Adnominal, Appositive, 361; Epexegetical, 361; Possessive, 362; flagitium hominis, 361, N.1; Family, 362, N.1; Chorographic, ib. N.2; Subjective and Objective, 363; two with one subst , ib R 2 . 1st and 3d persons as possessive, 361; of Quality. 365; as Pred , 366, with facere, ib. R.1; auctoris, ib; generis, 368 R.; with prepositional subst., 373. with adjs, 374 and NN; with participles and verbals, 375; with vbs. of Memory, 376; with vbs. of Emotion, 377; with Judicial vbs., 378; with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 379,380; with interest and refert, 381; with vbs. of Fulness, 383,1; with vbs. of Separation, ib. 2; in Exclamations, ib. 3; pred. with Inf., 422, N.5; Ger., 428; with esse, causa, etc., ib. R.

2; Ger. with Pl. subst., *ib.* n.1; Ger. with vb., *ib.* n.4; position of, **676** and nn.1 2.

genus-decl. of, 48; id genus, 336, N.2; with Epexegetical Gen.. 361, 2.

gerens- with Gen., 375, N.2.

GERUND and GERUNDIVE—112,5; formation of, 115,3; early forms, 130,8; Agent of, in Dat., 215,2; with esse to form periphrasis, 251; force of Gerundive, ib. n.1; syntax of, 425-433; and Inf., 425; and vb., 426; Gerundive for Gerund, 427; impersonal Gerundive, ib.n.2; from intrans. vbs., ib. n.4; Gen. of, 428; Inf. instead, ib. n.2; depending on vb., ib. n.4; Dat. instead, ib. n.5; Dat. of, 429; Acc. of, 430; Abl. of, 431; paralleled by part., ib. n.3; Acc. of, with preps., 432; with ad after vbs. of Hindering, ib.n.1; Abl. of, with preps., 433.

gestire—with Inf., 423,2,N.2, 533,R.1. gignere—(genitus), with Abl. of Origin, 395.N.1.

giving—vbs. of, with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348; with Inf., 423, N.1.b.; with Acc. Ger., 430.

glöriari -with Acc. and Inf., 527,R.2. glöriösum-with est and Inf., 422, N.3. Glyconic verse-795.

gracilis-Comp. of, 87,3.

grātiā—with Gen., 373; with poss. pron.,
ib. n.2; with Gen. Ger., 428, n.2; grātiĭs, as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.

grātificārī—with Dat., 346,R.2. grātulārī—with Dat., 346,R.2.

gravari-with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

Greek substantives—decl. of, 65; Greek Acc., 338.

growth—vbs. of, in Abl. Abs., 410, N.1.
guttural—vowels, 2,1; consonants, 6,1;
suffixes with, 185.

habōre—with two Noms. in pass., 206; with Pf. part. to denote Maintenance of the Result, 238,241,N.2, 244,N.2; first Impv. wanting, 267,R.; with two Accs., 340,R.1; with prō, locō, numerō, and a second Acc., ib.; with Final Dat. 356, R.2; with Gen. of Price, 370; pēnsī habēre, ib. 1,N.2; with in and Acc., 335,N.3; with Acc. Ger., 430,N.1; habeō dīcendum, ib. N.2; be able, with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

habit-vbs. of, with Inf., 423 and N.2.

haerere-with Dat., 346, N. 6.

hanging—vbs. of, with ex, ab, dē, 335, n.2. happening—sequence after vbs. of, 513. n.2; vbs. of, with quod clause, 525,1; ut instead, ib. n.5; vbs. of, with consecutive clause, 553.3.

hardening-in a verse, 723.

haud-441 and 443, with NN.; scio an, 457.2.

(h)avēre-175,4.

helluari-with Abl., 407, N. 2,e.

hendiadys-698.

heteroclites-68.

heterogeneous substantives-67.

heterologa-69.c.

hiatus—defined, 720; in Iam. Oct., 763, N.; in Anap. Oct., 778, N.1; in Dact. Hex., 784, NN.6,7; in Sapplic, 726, N.

hīc—104, 1 and NN.; syntax of, 305; contemptuous character of, 306,N.; and ille, 307,RR.1,2; strengthened by quidem, ib. R.4: two forms of, refer to different substs.; ib. N.3: hīc—illīc, hinc—hinc, hinc—inde, hinc—illīne, illinc—hinc, inde—hinc, 482,2: hōc with ut, 557,R: hūius, in Gen. of Price, 380,1; with Abl. of Time, 393,R.4; in Ö.O., 660,3; hinc as coördinating conjunction, 503.

hiems—decl. of, 40; in Abl. of Time, 393, R.5.

hindering—sequence after vbs. of, 543, R.2 and N.2; vbs. of, with nē, 548; with quīn, 554-556; and vbs. of Preventing, 555; and vbs. of Doubt, ib. 2.

Historical cum-585 and NN.

HISTORICAL INFINITIVE—parallel with Impf., 254, R.; syntax of, 647; conjunctions with, ib, N.2.

HISTORICAL PERFECT—224; force of, 239; and Pure Pf., 235; and Impf., 231, 240; for Plupf., 239, N.; as Potential of Past, 258, N.2.

HISTORICAL PRESENT—224 and 229; with dum, 229, N., 570.

historical tenses-225.

hodiernus-in pred. Attrib., 325, R.6.

homo-in early Latin, 42, N.

honor-and honos, 45, N.

hope—constr. of, vbs. of, 423, N.5; sequence after, vbs. of, 515, R.3; vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.4.

HORACE-Lyric Metres of, 826.

horrere-with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

horrescere-with Inf., 423, 2, N.2.

hortāri—with Iuf., 423,2.N.2; with ut, 546.N.1; hortātus, as Pr., 282,N.; hortātū, as Abl. of Cause, 408,N.1.

humilis-Comp. of, 87.3.

humus -in Abi. of Separation, 390, 2, N. 4; humi, as Loc., 411, R 2.

hypallagé-693.

hypotaxis-472.

I—and J., 1, R.2; sound of, 3; weakening of, 8,1; effect of, on preceding vowel, 12, R.2; I-class of vb. stems, 133, vI.; length of final, 707,4.

iam—with Pr. Indic., 230; iam diū, iam prīdem, ib.; with Impf. Indic., 234; iam—iam, 482.1, and N.1; iam vērō, 487.N.3; iam dūdum, with Impv., 269. Iambelegus verse—820.

Iambie--law, 716, 717; foot, 734; rhythm, 736; rhythms, 757-767.

ictus-conflict of, with Accent, 749.

IDEAL CONDITION—from present point of view, 596,1; from past point of view, ib. 2; = Unreal, ib. B.1: shift to Unreal, ib. B.2; after non possum, ib. B.3; in O. O., ib. B.5, 658.

Idem—decl. of, 103,2, and NN; syntax of, 310: with que, et, atque, ib. R.1; the same as, with qui, ut, atque, cum, or Dat., 310,R.3, 359,N.6, 642,R.1; not used with is, 310,R.3; in pred. attrib., 325,R.2.

idoneus - constrs. with, 552, B.2; with qui and Subjv., 631,1.

iecur-decl. of, 44,5, 68,12.

iēiūnus-with Gen., 374, N.1.

igitur—position of, 484.n.; usage of, 501; with erg 5, 502.n.3; correl. of s1, 590, n.1. ignorance—adjs. of, in pred. app., 325, n. 6; with Gen., 374.

ignorare—with Inf., 527,R 1.

ILLATIVE SENTENCES-499, 500.

ille decl. of, 104,3, and NN.; forms from ollo, ib. N.1: Syntax of, 307; and hic, ib. RR.1.2; et ille, ib. R.2; strengthened by quidem, ib. R.4: repeats a subst., ib. N.2: two forms with different antecedents, ib. N.3; refers to oblique case of is, ib. N.4; with Abl. of Time, 393, R.4; illinc—hinc, hinc—illinc,

hīc-illīc, 482,2: illud with ut, 557,R.: in Ō. O., 660,2.

illūdere—with Dat., e.c., 347, R.2. illūstris—with Abl. of Respect, 397, N.2.

imbēcillus—and imbēcillis, 84.1. imber—decl. of, 44.2, 45.R.1.

imberbis and imberbus, 84,2.

immane-with quantum and Indic.,

immēnsum - with quantum and Indic.,

immo-use of 471,c; scansion of 717,N.1.
immolāro-with Abl. of Means, 401,N.4.
immunis-with Abl. of Sep., 390,3,N.1.
immedimento-with esse and no 548

impedimentō-with esse and nē, 548, N.1. impedire-with Inf., 423,2,N.2; with nē.

548, N.1; with quominus, 549, N.1. impellere—with ut, 553.2; impulsus,

impulsu, of Cause, 408, NN. 1 and 2.

impendio-very, 439, N.3.

impendere—with Dat., etc., 347, B.2.

impēnsē—very, 439.n.3.

imperare—with Dat., 346, R.2; with Inf., 423,2, N.2, 532, N.1; with ut, 546, N.1.

IMPERATIVE—112,4; early forms, 130,5; Subjv. for, 263; answers deliberative question, 265, N.; usage, 266-275; First and Second, 267; strengthening words, 269; negative of, 270; pronouns with, 267, N.; concord with, 211, N.2; periphrases of, 271: representatives of, 272: of Past, 272,3; tenses of, 278; for Protasis, 593,4; in Subjv. with Ö. O., 652 and R.1.

IMPERFECT — 112,3: early forms, 130,2; force of, 223, 231: and Hist. Pf., 232; of Endeavor, Disappointment, and Resistance to Pressure, 233; a tense of Evolution, ib. N.1; overlapping, ib. N.2 562: of Awakening, ib. N.3; with iam, etc., 234; of opposition to Present, 254, R.2; in Apodosis of Action begun, ib. R.3, 597, R.2; as Potential of Past, 258: in Wish, 260; with vellem, ib. R.; Subjv. as Concessive, 264: Subjv. as Impv. of Past, 272,3; tense relations of Subjv., 277: in Sequence, 510, R.; in Coincidence, 513, N.3; Subjv. as Principal Tense, 517.

impersonal verbs—208.1 and 2; divine Agt. expressed, ib. 1, N.; vbs. of Saying, elc., 208.2, N.2, 528; in Ger. constr., 427, N.4; with ut, 553,4, impertire—with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348, R.1; laborem, with Dat. Ger., 429,1.

impetrare—with ut, 553.1.
implere—with Gen., 383.1.
implere—with ut only, 546.n.3.
imponere—with in and Acc., 385,n.2.
impos—with Gen., 374,n.3.
imprimere—with in and Abl., 385,n.1.
imprüdens—in pred. attrib., 325,n.6.
impulsū—as Abl. of Cause, 408,n.1.
in—in composition, 9.4; vbs. epd. with

make Acc. or Dat., 331,347; with Countries and Towns. 337, R. 1; with Acc. for Dat., 345, R. 2; with app. to Towns, 386, R. 1; with books, 387; throughout, 388, R.; with recipere, 339; with Abl. of Time, 394, R. and N. 2; with Abl. of Cause, 408, N. 3; position of, 413, R. 1; as prep., 418, 1; with Abc. Ger., 432, and N. 1; with Abl. Ger., 433 and N. 1; with part., 437, N. 2; in eō quod, 525, 2. N. 2.

inānis—with Gen., 374, N.1. incēdere—with Dat., etc., 347, R.2. incendi—with īrā and Inf., 533, R.1; incēnsus, of Moving Cause, 408, N.2. incertum—with an and Subjv., 457, 2.

inchoative verbs - 133, v., 191, 2. incidere—with Dat., etc., 347, R.2. incidere—with in and Abl., 385, R.1. incipere—with Inf., 423, 2, v. 2; with Or-

dinal, 294, N.
incitātus—of Moving Cause, 408, N.2.

inclination—suffixes for, 182,2.
inclination—adjs. of, in pred. attr., 325, R.
6; vbs. of, with Inf., 423 and N.2.
inclūdere—with in and Abl., 385, R. 1.
incommodāre—with Dat., 346, N 1.

incorporation—of antecedent, 616; quā prūdentiā es, 616,1, n.2; of correlative, 619

incredibile — with Inf., 422, N.3; with quantum and Indic., 467, N. increpare — charge, with Gen., 378, R.1.

increpitare—charge, with Gen., 378, R.1. incubare—with Dat., etc., 347, R.2. incumbere—with Dat., etc., 347, R.2.

[indago]—defective, 70, D.
inde—as coordinating conj., 503; in con-

trest with hinc, 482.2.
indecorus—and indecoris, 84.1.
indefinite pronouns—107; syntax of, 313319; antdom 313; aliquis 314; anis

319 : quidam, 313 : aliquis, 314 : quis, 315 : quispiam, 316 : quisquam and

ullus, 317; quisque, 318; alter and alius, 319; rel. with Indic., 254,R.4, 625.

indicative—112,4; early forms of. 130,1-4; meaning of. 254; in Apodosis, 254,R.3; with indef. rel., ib. R.4; Pr. for Deliberative Subjv., ib. R.2; tense relations of. 276; neg. of. 257; in questions. 463, 464; after nesciō quis, etc., 467,R.1; in Relative Sentences, ib. R.2; in Temporal Sentences, 560,1; to express Design, 630,N.2.

indigere—with Gen., 383,1, 405, N.2. indignari—with Inf., 533,R.1; with si, 542,N.1.

indignus—with Gen, 374, N.10; with qui, ut, or Inf, 552, R.2; with qui and Subjv., 631, 1 and R.1.

indigus—with Abl. or Gen., 405, N.3. induere—with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348, R1; indui, with Acc. of Respect, 338, N.2.

indulgēre—with Dat., 346,R.2 and N.2. inermis—and inermus, 84,2. inesse—with Dat., etc., 347,R.2.

Inferior-87,2; with Dat, 296, N.3. INFINITIVE-112.5; formation of, 115.3; early forms, 130,6; aor. in -xe, etc., 131,4,b,4; Fut. in assere, ib.; act. for pass., 213, R., c.; usage of, 279; assubst., 280; after debeo, ib. 2,b,n.3; after decuit, oportuit, ib. 2,b,R.1 and 2; as representative of Indic., 281; after memini, etc., ib. 2, N.; syntax of, 419-424; with Acc. as subj., 420; as subst., 421; traces of Locative nature, ib. N.1; as subj., 422; as obj., 423; ut instead, ib. N.4; as pred. with esse, 425; with preps., ib. N.; Fut. pass., 435, N.4; sequence after, 518; Acc. and Inf. after vbs. of Saying and Thinking, 527; part. instead, ib. N.1; tenses after these vbs., 529-531; after posse, velle, ib. N.3; after sperare, ib. N.4; with vbs. of Will and Desire, 532; with vbs. of Emotion, 533; ut instead, 532, NN. 3,4; in Exclamations, 534; and quod, ib.R.1; Acc. and Inf. as subj., 535; Acc. and Inf. after vbs. of Emotion, 542; with vbs. of Will and Desire, 546, N.3; with vbs. of Fear, 550, N.5; with dignus, etc., 552, R.2; Acc. and Inf. in Relative Sentences, 635; after potius, etc., 644, R.3, 646; in O. O., 650. See Hist. Inf.

Infinitum—with est instead of sit, 254, R.1; with quantum and Indic., 467,N. Infitias—70,A.; Ire, 333,2,R.

inflection -17.

infra—with Abl. of Measure, 403, N.1; as
adv., 415; as prep., 416,12.

infrēnus—and infrēnis, 84,1.

ingrātiīs—as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.

ingenii—as Loc., with adjs., 374, N.7.

ingredi-with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

inhaerere-with Dat., etc., 347, R.2.

inhiāre—with Dat., etc., 347.R.2.

inicere manum—with Acc., 342. iniuria—as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.

innatus-with Dat., 347, R.2.

Inner Object—Acc. of, 328, 330, 332; Abl. instead, 333,2,N.4; after vbs. of Taste and Smell, ib. 2,N.5.

inops—with Gen., 374, N.1; with Abl., 405, N.3.

inquam—175,2; inquit, impersonal, 208, 2,N.2; in citing Ö. R.. 648, R.2; lacking forms supplied by dicere, ib. R.3.

inquiring - vbs. of, with two Accs., 339, and R.1,NN.1 and 2.

Inscribere—with in and Abl., 385,R.1. Insculpere—with in and Abl., 385,R.1. Inservire—with Dat., 347,R.2.

Insignis—with Abl. of Respect, 397, N.2; Insigniter as adv. of Degree, 439, N.2.

Insidiari-with Dat., 346 R.2.

insinuare—with Dat., 347, R.2. insistere—with Dat., 347, R.2.

Insistere—with Dat., 347, n. 2. Instar—70, B; with Gen., 373.

Instare—with Dat., 347, R.2; with Inf., 423, 2, N.2.

instruere-with de, 339, N. 3.

instrument—suffixes for, 181.6; in Abl., 214, 401; with ab, 214, R.2; Abl. of contrasted with Abl. of Attendance, 392, R.2.

INSTRUMENTAL -- case, 23, N.

insuetus—with Gen., 374, N.4. integrum—with Inf., 422, N.3.

intellegere—with Inf., 527,R.1; intel-

lectū as Sup., 436, N. intendere—with Inf., 423,2, N.2; inten-

tus, with Abl., etc., 359.N.5.

intensive verbs—formation of, 191,1. inter—with reflexive to express recip-

nter—with renexive to express reciprocal action, 221; vbs. cpd. with, take Acc. or Dat..331.347; to designate Time, 394, N.2; position of, 413, R.1; as prep., 416,13; with Acc. Ger., 432 and N.1; with part., 437, N.2.

intercalāris—and intercalārius, 84,2. intercēdere—with Dat., 347,R.2; with nē, 548,N.1; with quīn, 555,1.

intercludere—with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348, n.1; with Abl., 390,2, n.3; with nē, 548, n.1; with quin, 555,1.

intercurrere—with Dat., 347, R.2. interdicere—with Abl., 390, 2, N.3; with

nē, 548,N.1; with quin, 555,1. interdum—coördinates with alias, 4 2,

1, N.1.

interesse—with Dat., 347,n.2; interest, with Gen. and Abl., 381; with Non., ib. N.3; constr. of Object of Concern, 382,1 and 2; constr. of Thing Involved, ib. 3; with ut, 553,4.

Interest-Dat. of Personal, 350.

interior-87,2 and 8.

interjection-16, R.2; no syntax, 201, R.1.

intermittere—with Inf., 423,2, N.2.

internecio-defective, 70, B.

interpellare—with ne, 548, N.1.

interponere—with no, 548, N.1.

interrogare—with two Accs., or de, 339, R. 1 and N.1; with Indic., 467, N.

interrogative pronouns — 106; distinguished from rel., 467, R.2; with part., 469; in Final Sentence, 470; doubling of, *ib*. R.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES — 450 - 470; simple and cpd., 452; particles in, 454-457; moods in, 462-467; Indic., 463,464; Subjv., 465,466; after vb. of Wonder, 542,N.1; after vb. of Fear, 550,N.4; for Protasis. 593,4: in O. O., 651 and RR.

intervenire-with Dat., 347, R.2.

intrā—to designate Time, 394, N.2; position of, 413, R.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416.14.

intransitive verbs—used impersonally, 208,2; used transitively, 213, n.b; construed as pass., 214, n.1; with neut, subj. in pass., 217; with personal Ger., 217, n.2; with Pf. part. pass. used actively, 220, n.1; Gerund of, used impersonally, 251, 2.

inūsitātum-with ut, 553,4.

invadere-with Dat., 347, R. 2.

inveniri—with Nom. and Inf., 528, N.1; inventū in Sup., 436, N.

inverse-donec, 571, N.6; cum, 581; attraction of rel., 617, N.2.

invicem—to indicate reciprocality, 221, R.2.

invidere—with personal pass., 217,N.1;
with Dat., 346,R.2 and N.2; with Inf.,
533,R.1.

invidus-constr. of, 359, N.5.

invītus—in pred. app., 325,R.6; invītō est, 353,N.2.

ioculo-as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.

iocus-heterogeneous, 67,2.

ionic-foot, 734; rhythm, 736; rhythms, 815-819; substitutions for, 815.

ipse—decl. of. 103,3 and N.: ipsus, ib.N.2; syntax of, 311; et ipse, ib. 1,n.2; emphasizes reflexive, ib. 2; used indeclinably, ib. 2,N.; in O. O., 660,5.

irā-of Moving Cause, 408, N.2; incendor
irā with Inf., 533, R.1.

īrāscī-with Dat., 346, R.2.

ire-169,2; omission of, 209,N.5; with
Dat., 358,N.2; with Sup., 435,N.1; with
Infitias, etc., 333,2,R.

is—decl. of, 103,1 and N.; strengthened by quīdam, 307, R.4; taken up by ille, ib. N.4; two forms with different ante-cedent, ib. N.3; syntax of. 303; = tālis, ib. R.1; with et, atque, que, ib. R.2; for reflexive, 309, N.1; id temporis, aetātis, 336, N.2; eō as coördinating conj., 503; ideō, ideircō, ib.; with quī and Subjv., 631,1; with ut, ib. R.1, 557, R.; in ō. O., 660, 2.

islands—in Local Acc., 337; with in, ib. n.1 and n.3; prep. omitted with Large Islands, ib. n.1.

iste-decl. of, 104, II. and NN.; syntax of, 306; contemptuous character of, ib. N.; strengthened by quidem, 307, R.4; in  $\overline{O}$ . O., 660, 3.

ita-with ut, 482,4; correlative of sī, 590, N.1; yes, 471, a,1.

Italicus Numerus -756.

itaque—usage of, 500; position of, ib. R.; with ergo, 502, N.3.

iter-decl. of, 44,5.

iterative action—566, 567; Subjv. in, 4b.
N.; with cum, 584; in Relative Sentences, 623.

Ithyphallic-verse, 774.

iubere—with two Accs., 341,N.2; with Acc. and Dat., 346,N.3; constr. after, 423,N.6; with Acc. and Inf., 528 and N.1; with Inf., 423,2.N.2, 532,NN.1,2; with Subjv., 546,R.2; iūssū, defective, 68,5; iūssū as Abl. of Cause, 408,N.1.

iddicare - with Inf., 423.2, N.2.

[iuger]-decl. of, 68,7.

iunctus-with Dat., etc., 359, N.3.

iūs—with Inf., 422.N.2, 428,N.2; with respondere, 333,2 R.; in phrases with ut, 546.N.2; iūre, 399,N.1; iūre in Abi. of Respect. 397.

iūstō—as Abl. of Respect, 398, n.1. iųvāre—with Acc., 346, n.3.

iuvenis-Comp. of, 87,9.

iūxtā—as adv , 415; as prep., 416,15.

Judgment-vbs. of, with Abl. of Standard, 402.

K—sounds of, 1,R.1; name of, ib. N. knowledge — adjs. of, in pred. attrib., 325, R.6; adjs. of, with Gen., 374.

Labials-6,1; suffixes with, 187.

laborem-with impertire and Dat. Ger., 429,1.

laborare-with Inf., 423,2,N.2; with ut, 546,N.1.

lac-decl. of, 53,8.; 68,12.

laedere-with Acc., 346, N.3.

laetari-with Acc. and Inf., 533, R.1.

lāmentārī—with Acc. and Inf., 533, R.1. largīrī—with ut, 553,2.

later-defective, 70,D.

latitudine—with Acc. of Extent, 335, B.1.

latus-with Acc. of Extent, 335,R.1.

laurus-heteroclite, 68,5.

leaving-vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.

lectus-heteroclite, 68.5.

length—by nature, 12.1, and R.; by position, ib. 2; representation of long vowels, ib. N.

lengthening-compensatory, 9,6,a.

letters—tenses in, 252; advs. in, ib.; dated from a place, 391. R.3.

letting-ves. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.

levare—with Abl., 390,2.N.2.

lex-in phrases with ut, 546, NN.1 and 2; lege, 397 and N.1, 399, N.1.

liberalis—with Gen., 374 n.1.

liberare—with Abl., 390,2, N.2.

-libet—added to rels., 111.3: exact use of libuerit, 244.R.3; libens, in pred. attrib., 325.R.6; with Dat., 346 R.2.

licere—exact use of Fut. Pf., 244, R 3; with Dat., 346, R.2; with Gen., 379; licet, although, 603-607; with quamvis, ib. M. 2; with Indic., ib. N.3.

likeness-suffixes for, 182,4.

likeness-adjs. of, with Dat., 349; with atque(ac), 643.

linguals-6,1,N.

linter-decl. of, 44,2, 45,R.1.

liquids—6,2,A; 3d Decl. stems in, 39-46; suffixes with, 189.

litare-with Abl. of Means, 401, N.4.

litterae—in phrases with ut, 546, N.2. living—vbs. of, with Abl., 401, N.1.

Local Dative - 358.

locality-suffixes for, 181,5, 182.9.

locare—with Gen., 379; with in and Abl., 386,R.1; with Acc. Gen., 430.

LOCATIVE—23.N.; of 1st Decl., 29,R.2; of 2d Decl., 33,RR.3,5; 3d Decl., 37,5; forms advs., 91,3; syntax of, 411; in 3d Decl., ib. R.1; other Locs., ib. R.2; app. to, in Abl., ib. R 3; domī, with poss. pron., ib. R 4.

locus -67,2; in loco habere, 340,R.1; Abl. without in, 385,N.1.

logacedic rhythms -790-805.

LOGICAL CONDITION—595; with Subjv. by Attraction, ib. R.2; with Ideal 2d Person, ib. R.3; sive—sive, ib. R.4: si quidem, ib. R.5; si modo, vērō, tamen, ib. R.6; tenses in, ib. R.2; in Ō. O., 657, 595, R.1.

longinquus - Comp. of, 87,9.

longitudine-with Acc. of Extent, 335,

longum—with est for Subjv., 254.R1; long strengthens Comp. or Superlalative, 301, 303; with Acc., 335.R.1.

loqui-with Acc. and Inf., 527,R.2; with Indic. question, 467,N.

lubīdō—in phrases with Inf., 422, n.2. lūdōs facere—with Acc , 342.

lugere-with Inf., 533, B.1.

lux-70,D; in Abl. of Time, 393,R.5.

M-final omitted, 27,N.

macte-85,C, 325,R.1.

maerere-with Inf., 533,R.1.

magnificus-Comp. of, 87,4.

māgnitūdine—with Acc. of Extent, 335,

māgnus — comparison of, 90; constr. with māior, 296.m.5; magis, in comparison of Qualities, 299; māgnī, as Gen. of Price, 380,1; māius, with Inf., 422.m.3; māximī, as Gen. of Price, 380, 1; non magis quam, 644.m.1. making -- vbs. of, with two Noms., 206; with two Accs., 340.

maledicere -with Dat., 346, R.2.

maledicus - Comp. of, 87,4.

malle - conj. of, 174 and N.3; malueram, could have preferred, 254,N.1; malim, mallem, as Potential, 257.2, 258,N.1; in Unreal Wish, 261,R.; with Abl., 296, N.1; with Abl., of Measure, 403 N.1; with Inf. or ut, 423,2,N.2,538 and N.3,546,N.1.

malus—comparison of, 90; male as neg., 439, N. 2.

mānāre—with Abl. of Means, 401, N.5. mandāre—with ut, 546, N.1.

manēre—as copulative vb., 206, n.1; with Abl, 401, n 6.

mānī-as Loc., 411, N.1.

manifestus—with Gen., 374, N.2; with Inf, 421, N.1, c.

Manner-Abl. of, 399 and NN.

manus inicere-with Acc., 342.

mare—in Abl. without in, 385, N.1.

margarīta—heteroclite, 68,1. māteria—heteroclite, 68,2.

Material—Abl. of, 396; indicated by adj.,

ib.; suffixes for, 182,4.

mātūrāre-with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

mātūrus—Comp. of, 87,1,n.2.

mātūtīnus—in pred. Attr., 325, R.6. Means—Abl. of, 401, and RB, NN.; suffixes for, 181,6.

measure-vbs. of, take Abl , 402.

Measure—Abl. of, 402; of Difference, 403; Abl. of, with vbs. involving Difference, ib. n.1; with ante and post, ib. n.4.

mederi-with Dat., 346, R 2 and N.4.

medioximus-87,9,N.

meditārī—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

meditative verbs-formation, 191,5.

medium-suffixes for, 182,6.

medius—in pred. attrib., 325, n.6; used partitively, 291, n.2; Abl. used without in, 388.

meminI—175,5,b; First Impv. wauting, 267,n.; with Pr. Inf., 281,2,N.; with Acc., 376,n.2; with Inf., 423,2,N.2, 527,R.2; with cum and Indic., 580,R.2.

memorātū-as Abl. Sup., 436, N.

memoriā teneō-with Pr. Inf., 281,2,N.

mendum-heteroclite, 68,3.

mens—in phrases with ut, 557.n.; in mentem venire, with Gen., 376, s.3; in mentem venire, with Inf., 422, n.5. meritus—Comp. of, 87,9; merito as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.

-met-added to personal pron., 102, N.2; to ipse, 103,3, N.5.

metaplasts-68.

metathesis—of consonants, 9,8.

metre-730; unit of, 731.

metuere—with Dat., 346, N.2; with ut, nē, or Inf., 550 and N.1; with Inf., 423, 2.N.2.

metus-with Inf., 550, N.5.

meus-73,R.; 76; Voc. of, 100,R.1; early forms of, ib.N.2; synizes is in, ib.N.3, 727, N.; mea mihĭ, 309,N.2; meī with Gen. Ger., 428,R.1; with ut, 557,R.

middle voice — 212, R., 218; with Acc. of Respect, 338, N.2.

mīlitia—in Abl. of Time, 393, R 5; in Loc., 411, R, 2.

mille—a subst. in Pl., 95,R.3; inscriptional forms of, ib R.4; milia, with masc. vb., 211,R.1,Ex.6; use of, in Sg. and Pl., 293; as subst. with Part Gen., 293,N.; milia for distributive, 295,N.

mināri, minitāri—with Dat., 346,R.2; with Inf., 527,R.2.

minor—quam omitted with, 296, R.4; with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 380,1; minōris, minimī, as Geu. of Price, ib.; minus, no. 471, b.1: minimē, no. ib.; sīn minus, 592; sī minus, ib R.; nōn minus quam, 644, N.1.

mīrārī—with Inf., 423,2,N.2, 533,R.1; with quod, 542; with sī, ib. N.1.

mirum—with factum and ni, quantum, quin, 209. N. 2, 467. N.: with quod, 542; with si, 542. N.1. with ni, ib. N.2; with Inf. 422. N.3; with quam and Indic., 467. N.; with ut, 553.4.

mīscēre—sē, with Dat., 346,N.6; with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348,R 1. miscrārī—with Acc., 377,N.2.

miserere—with Gen., 377, N.1; miseret, with Gen., 377; misereor, with Gen., ib.; miseresco, with Gen., ib. N.1.

mittere—mitte, with Inf. for Impv., 271,2:N.2; with Inf., 422,N.3; with quod, 525,1:N.1; followed by Impf. Indic. to give Design. 630,N.2; missū, of Moving Cause, 408,N.1.

mixed class of Verbs-133, vii.

moderārī—with Dat., 346, R.2 and R.2. modo—strengthens Impv., 269; modo modo, 482,1; contrasted with tum, vicissim, 482,1.N.2: non modo—sed etiam, 482,5: non modo non, sed ne-quidem, ib. R.1: provided only, 573: modo ne, ib. N.2.

möliri-with Inf., 423,2, N.2.

monere—with Gen. or Acc., 376 and R.1; with Inf, 423,2,N.2; with ut, 546,N.1.

mood -112.4, 253; Indic., 254; Subjv.. 255, 265; Impv., 266-275; Inf., 279-281; attraction of.508.4; in Temporal Clauses, 560: in Relative Sentences, 624-635; in Comparative Sentences, 639; in O.O., 650-652.

morārī - with nē, 548, N. 1.

mörigeräri-with Dat., 348, R.2.

mos-(moris) with Inf., 422, NN.2 and 5; with ut, 557, R.; moribus, 399, N.1.

motion—vb. of, with Inf, 421, N 1, a; vb. of, with Sup., 435; vb. of, with Fut. part., 438, N; vb. of, with quod, 525,1, N. G; end of, conceived as Rest, 412, R. 1

movere—syncope in Pf., 131.3; with Abl. of Separation, 390.N 1; with ut, 553,2: motus, of Moving Cause, 408.N.2. Mulciper—heteroclite, 68.4.

multare-with Abl , 378, R 3.

multitude — substs. of, with Pl., 211,R 1, Ex.a.

multitūdō - with Pl. vb., 211.R.1.Ex.a. multum - for Abl. of Measure, 403.N.2; very, 439.N 3; multō with Comp., 301; with Superl, 303.

münus-with Inf., 422, N.2; with ut, 546, N.2.

mūtāre-with Abl., 404, N.1.

mutes-6,2,B.

mūtuō—of reciprocal action, 221, n.2. myrtus—heteroclite, 68,5.

Nam - usage of, 498 and nn.; position of, ib., n.1; asseverative, ib. n.2; yes for 471.8.

naming-vbs of, with two Accs., 340. namque-498; position of, ib. N.1.

nārrāre-with Inf., 527, R. 2

in Abl. Sup., 436, N.

nasals - 6,2.A.; nasal class of vbs , 133.IV. nāscī - with two Noms., 206; nātus, constr. of, 296,R.5; with Acc., 336,R.4; with Abl. of Origin, 395,NN.1,3; nātū

nātūra-in phrases with ut, 557.R.

naucum — defective, 70, B.; naucī, as Gen. of Price, 380,1.

ne-neg. of Opt. Subjv , 260; of Impv.,

270; continued by neque, 260; by neve, 270, 444,2; with Pf. Subjv.. 270, R.2; syntax of, 441, 444; = non, 444.1, N.2; ne-quidem, ib. 1, N.2, 445, 448.N.2, 432,5 and R.1; in Final Sentences, 543, 4; ut nē, 545.R.1; quō nē, ib.; parenthetical, ib. R.3; after vbs. of Hindering, 548; after vbs. of Fear, 550; nō nōn, ib. N.1; with dum, 573; as Concessive, 608.

ne—added to hic, 104.1.N.3; to iste, ib.
2.N.3; to ille, 103.3.N.4; as interrogative, 454; asseverative, ib. N.2; added to interrogatives, ib. N.3; = nonne, ib.
N.5: added to num, 456.N.; strengthens an, 457.1.N.2; to introduce double questions, 458; neone or annon, 459; to introduce second member of an indirect question, 460 2.

nearness-adjs of, with Dat., 359.

nec = non, 442, N.3; see neque.

necessarium-with ut, 553,4.

necesse—85,C.; with estinstead of Subjv., 254 m.1; with Inf., 538; with ut omitted, 538 m.2, 553,4,m.1; with pred. attracted, 538.m.3; with ut, 553,4; with habeo and Inf., 423,2,N.2.

necessity-adjs. of, with Inf., 421, N.1, c; expressed by Indic., 254, R.1, 255, R.

nēdum-482,5,R.2.

nefās-70.B.; with Inf., 428, N.2; with Abl. Sup., 436, N.2; with Inf., 422, N.2.

negāre—use of, 444,1,n.2; continued by neque—neque, 445,n.; = dīcō nōn, 447; with Inf., 527,n.2.

negative-of Potential, 257; of Opt., 260; of Impv., 270; non with Opt., 260; non with Impv., 270 ml; noll with Inf., 270, ml; noll with Inf., 270, ml; advs., 441-449; non, 442; haud, 443; nec = non, 442, ml; noll with subdivision of, 445; combinations, 446; resolution of, ib. ml; positive supplied from, 447, ml; position of, 447, 449; two, 449; nec non for et, ib. ml; in Copulative Sentences, 420; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543, 4.

negotium—in phrases with ut, 546.N.2; with Inf., 422, N.5.

nēmō—decl. of, 70 D.; and nūllus, 108; with Pl. vb., 211, R.1, Ex.a; with Impv. Subjv., 270, S.; and quisquam, 317,2; as adj., ib; et nēmō, ib. 2, N.1; strengthened by ūnus; = nēquis, 446, N.3.

nequam-85,C.; comparison of, 90.

neque—with Opt. Subjv. for nē, 260; adds Impv. 270,N.; neque—neque with Pl., 285,N.1; subdivides a general neg., or negō, 445 and N.1; nec nōn, 449,R.3; for et nōn, 430 and R.1; for nec tamen, ib. R.3; for nē—quidem, ib. N.1; compared with nec, ib. N.2; for nōn, ib. N. 4; for nēve, 543,N.3.

nequire—conj. of, 170,b; nequinont, 133,iv.n.2; with Inf., 423,2,n.2.

Nērio-decl. of, 41,4.

nesciō—an, 457.2; quis, 467,n.1; quōmodo, ib. N.; with Inf., 423,2,n.2, 527,n.1. neu, nēve—444.2; adds Final Clause, 543,4; neque instead, ib. n.3.

neuter—decl. of, 76, 108; neutiquam, 442, N. 2.

neuter—adj. with masc. subj., 211,R.4; demonstrative when subst. is expected, ib. N.3; Sg. sums up Pl., ib.; Pl. pred. to two fems., 286,3; in app. to persons, 321,N.2; pron. and adj. in Cognate Acc., 233,1, 341,N.2; pron. and adj. with Part. Gen., 369; pron. and adj. not attracted to Ger., 427,N.3.

nēve-see neu.

ni-with mirum, 209, N.2; range of, 591, N.2.

nihil—for nullus, 108; with Impv. Subjv., 2.0.x.; neg. of quisquam, 317, 2: no. 471,5.1; nihili as Gen. of Price, 380.1; for non. 442.x.2.

nihilominus-490, R.

nimis-with quam and Indic., 467,N.

nimium—with quantum, 209, N. 2, 467, N.; very, 433, N. 3; nimiō as Abl. of Standard, 403, N. 3.

nisi—with quod, 525,2 N.2, 591,b,R.3; with ut, 557,N.2, 591,b,R.4; and sī non, 591,b; but. except, ib. R.2; sī, ib.; nisi forte, vērō, ib. R.4; nisi tamen, ib. N.1; in asseverations. 591,b,2; with Inf., 635, N.2; with participle, 667,N.

nītī—with Abl., 401, n.6; with Inf., 423,2, n.2; with ut, 546, n.1.

nix-decl. of, 52,7.

no-how translated, 478,b and c.

nocere-with Dat., 346.

nölle—conj. of, 174; exact use of nöluerit, 244,R.3; nölim, nöllem, as Potential, 257.2, 258; not in Unreal Wish, 261, R.; nölf, with Iuf. for Impv., 270,N.2, 271,2; nölim, with Subjv. for Impv., 271,2,N.2; with Pf. Inf. pass., 280,2,c.N.; nölöns, in pred. app., 325,R.6; with Inf., 423,2,N.2; with ut, 546,N.1; with Inf. or ut, 538 and N.3.

nomen — with esse and Dat., 349.R.5; with Appositional Gen., 361,1; with Gen. of Charge, 378, R.2.

nominari-with two Nems., 206.

NOMINATIVE—defined. 23.1; of 1st Decl., 29 and N.1; of 2d Decl., 31,33,N.4; of 3d Decl., 36.1 and 2. 38.1, 57.R.4: of Greek substantives. 66,N.4; of adjs., 75.N.4, 79, N.1; of Participles, 89.R.2; for Voc., 201, R.2; syntax of, 203; two Noms., 206; with Inf. after copulative vb., ib. R.3; for Voc. in app., 321.N.1; with 5 and 6n, or ecce, 343.1.N.1; with Inf. by attraction, 527.N.2; after pass. vbs. of Saying and Thinking, 523; nominativus pendēns, 627,N.2.

non-neg. of Potential, 257; neg. of Wish, 260; with Impv., 270,n.1; syntax of, 441, 442; with ullus for nullus, 446,N.2; non possum non, 449,n.1; nee non = et, ib. n.3; no, 471,b.1; non modo-sed etiam, 482,5 and n.1; non modo-sed ne-quidem, ib. n.1; for ne, 573,N.2.

nonne—syntax of, 455; with indirect question, 460,1,8.2; with rhetorical question, 464,8.

nönnüllus-108.

noscere—syncope in Pf., 131.3; novī, 175,5,d.

nostri-with Gen. Ger., 428, R.1.

noun—defined, 16; inflection of, 17; and pronoun, 16, N.2.

nourishing-vbs. of, with Abl., 401, N.1.

novus—Comp. of, 87.9; with Inf., 422, N. 3; with ut, 553,4.

nox-decl. of, 53,8; with Abl. of Time, 393.R.5.

nübere-with Dat., 346, R.2 and N.4.

nudus-with Gen., 374, N,8.

nüllus—decl. of, 76,90; and nēmö, 108; with Impv. Subjv., 270, N; and üllus, 317,2; for non, ib. N.2.

num-456; with ne and nam, ib. N.; in indirect questions, 460, 1, a; in rhetorical questions, 464, B.

number—Sg. and Pl., 22: Dual, ib. R. and 112,1; concord of, 285 and NN.; violation of Concord in app., 321, R.1; substs. of, with Gen., 368; definite numbers in Abl. of Time, 393, R.2. numerals—cardinals, 94: ordinals, 95 and 294: cpd., 96: omission of centēna mīlia, ib. 6; insertion of et, ib. 5; fractions, ib. 7; signs, 96,ii.; distributives. 97 and 295; multiplicatives, 97; proportionals, 97; advs., 98: duo, ambō, uterque, 292: mīlle, 293: singulī, 295: distributives for cardinals, ib. N.; aliquis with. 314, B. 2; quisque with. 318, 2; with Part. Gen., 370.

numerō-as adv., 399, N.1; (in) numerō habēre, 340 R 1

nunc-strengthens etiam, 478, N.1; nunc-nunc, 482,1 and N.1.

nuntiare-with Inf., 527, R.2; with Nom. and Inf., 528, N.1.

nüperum-defective, 85 1.

O-sound of, 3; weakening of, 8,1; as interjection, 201, R.2, 343, N.1; ō sī in Wishes, 261; length of final, 707,5.

ob—in composition, 9,4; vbs. cpd. with, take Acc. or Dat., 331,347; to give the Cause, 408, N.3; as prep., 416,16; with Acc. Ger., 428, R 2, 432 and N.1.

obesse-with Dat., 346, R.2, 347, R.2; with Inf., 422, N.4.

obicere-with Acc. Ger , 430, N.1.

object—direct, becomes subj. of pass., 216; indirect retained in pass., 217; direct, 330; inner, 330,332,333; outer, 338; indirect, 344; of Ger., 427,2; after Dat. Ger., 429,N.2; after Acc. Sup., 435, N.3; after Abl. Sup., 436.

OBJECT SENTENCES—523-537; with quod, 524,525; with Acc. and Inf., 526,527; with Nom. and Inf., 528; after vbs. of Will and Desire, 532; after vbs. of Emotion, 533; in exclamations. 534; as subj., 535; in part., 536, 537; in O. O., 655.

Objective Genitive-363: of pers. pron., 364, N. 2.

obligare-with se and Gen. of Charge, 378, R.1.

obligation—expressed by Indic., 254.R.1, 255.R.

oboedfre-with Dat., 346,R.2.

obrepere-with Dat., 347,R.2.

obsaturare-with Gen., 383,1.N.2.

obsecro-strengthens Impv., 269; without Inf., 546, N.3; with ut, 546, N.1.

obsequi-with Dat., 346,R.2.

obsistere—with Dat., 347.R.2; with ne, 548,N.1; with quin, 555,1.

obstare-with Dat., 347, R.2; with ne. 548, N.1; with quin, 555,1.

obstrepere-with Dat., 347,R.2.

obtemperare-with Dat., 346,R.2.

obtestor-with Inf., 546, N.3.

obtingere-with Dat., 347,R.2.

obtrectare-with Dat., 346, R.2 and N.2. obvenire-with Dat., 347, R.2.

obversārī-with Dat., 347,R.2.

occurrere - with Dat., 347, R.2.

occursare - with Dat., 347, R.2.

ōcior-87,7.

odi-conjugation of, 175,5,c; odio esse as pass. of, ib. N.

office-suffixes for, 181,10

officere-with Dat., 346, R.2.

officium - in phrases with Inf., 422, N. 2; with ut, 546, N.2.

olle-for ille, 104,3,N.1.

omission-of vowels, 8,2,701,R2,a: of consonants, 9,6; of subj., 207; of copula, 209; of other vbs., ab. N 5. of esse in Pf. Inf. pass., 280,2 a,R.2 and c: of conjunction, 474, N., 481, 483, N., 492, N.; of non, 482,5,R 1; of vb. of Saying, 545 R 3; of vb. with sin, 592.R; of sī 598; of vb. of Protasis, 599; of Protasis, 600; of Apodosis, 601; of vb. after quasi and tamquam, 602,N 1; of vb. of comparative clause, 640.

omittere-with quod, 525.1 N.1; with Inf., 423,2,N.2; omitte, with Inf. for Impv., 271.2, N.2.

omitting-vbs. of, with quod, 555,1; vbs. of, with Inf., 423,2.

omnino-yes, 471, a, 1.

omnis-in Abl., without in, 388; omnia, as Acc. of Respect, 338,2.

onus-with Inf., 422,N.2.

onustus-with Gen., 374, N.1; with Abl., 405.N.3.

operam-in phrases with Dat. Ger., 429, 1 and n.1; with Inf., 422, n.5; with ut. 546 NN.1 and 2.

opinio-in phrases with Inf., 527,R.2; with ut, 557, R.; opinione as Abl. of Respect, 398.N.1.

opitulari-with Dat., 346.R.2.

oportet-Indic. for Subjv., 254.R.1; with Pf. part. pass., 280.2,b,R.2; with Inf. or Subjv., 635, R.2; with ut, 553,4.R.1.

oppido-very, 439, N.3; with quantum, 467 N.

oppidum-has pred. adj. in agreement,

211, R.6; requires prep., 337, R.1.; with Epexegetical Gen., 336, N.1; in app. to Town in Abl., 356, R 1, 391, R.1; in app. to Loc., 411, R.3.

ops -defective, 70,D.

optare-with Inf., 423,2, N.2; with ut, ib. N.4,546, N.1; optātō, as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE - 260-265; in Wishes, 280; particles with, 261; in Asseverations, 262; as Impv., 263; as concessive, 264; in Deliberative Questions, 265.

optimum -with Inf , 422, N 3.

opus - with Abl., 406; with Gen., ib. N 3; with Nom., ib. N.4; with part., 437, N 2; with Inf., 422, N 2; with ut, 557, R.; with Nom. and Inf , 528, N.2.

orare -with two Accs., 339 and N 1; with Inf., 546, N.3; with ut. 1b. N.1.

ORATIO OBLIQUA-508,2. partial, ib 3, ib.4; sequence in, 516; in Relative Sentences, 625, R., 628, R., 629, R., 648, 649; comes in without notice. 649 N 2; shift to, ib. N.3. moods in, 650-652; interrogative in. 651; Impv. in, 653; tenses in, 653-655; in Causal Sentences, 655; Conditional Sentences in, 656-659; Logical, 595 R 1, 657; Ideal. 596, R.5 658; Unreal 597, R 4, 659; pronouns in, 660; by Attraction. 508,4,662; partial. 503,3 663; Representation, 654 and N.

orbus-with Abl., 405, N.3.

order-adjs. of, in pred. attrib., 325, R 6. ordinals-94; early forms, 95, N.5; alter for secundus, 96.5; in dates, 234; for cardinals, ib. and 336, B. 1; with quisque, ib. N., 318, 2; position of, 676, R.2.

ordine-as Abl. of Manner, 399. N.1.

Origin-Abl. of, 395; preps. with Abl. of, ib. NN.2 and 3; suffixes of, 182,7.

orīrī-166,169,1: ortus, with Abl. of Origin, 395, N 1.

oriundus - with Abl. of Origin, 395, N.1. os-bone, decl. of, 48.R.; mouth, defective, 70.D.

ostendere-with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.2.

ostrea -heteroclite, 68.1. overlapping action-562,571, N.1.

oxymoron -694.

Paene-with Indic. in Apod. of Unreal Condition, 597, R.3. position of, 677, R 1. paenitet-with Gen., 377; with neut.

subj., ib. R.2; with Inf., 422, N.4; with quod, 542.

palam-as prep., 417,8.

palatals-vowels, 2; consonants, 6,1,N.

palumbes-heteroclite, 68,7.

pānis-heteroclite, 68,12.

pār—with est instead of Subjv., 254, R.1; with Gen. or Dat., 359, R.1; with Dat. Ger., 429, N.1.

parāre—with Inf., 423,2,N.2; parātus, with Inf., 421,N.1,c.

parataxis-472.

parcere—with Dat., 346,R.2; parce, with Inf. for Impv., 271,2,N.2.

parenthetical ut and ne-545, R.3.

pārēre—with Dat., 346, R.2.

pariter-pariter, 482,3.

pars—with Pl. vb., 211, R.1, Ex.a; in Abl. without in, 385, N.1; tuam partem, 334, R.2.

Part Affected-in Acc., 338.1.

partial obliquity-508,3, 663.

particeps-with Gen., 374, N.2.

participation-adjs. of, with Gen., 374.

PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES—664-670; to express Time, 665; Cause, 666; Condition and Concession, 667; relative clauses,

. 668; Future similarly used, 669,670. PARTICIPLE-decl. of, 80,82; Abl. of, 83; Nom. and Acc. Pl. of, ib. N.1; comparison of, 88,89; Abl. of Comp., ib. R.1; Nom. Pl. of, ib.R.2; Gen. Pl. of, ib. R.3; defined, 112,5; formation of, 115,3; early forms of, 130,7; Pf. pass., 135,I.; Fut. Act., 1b. II.; Pf. pass, of Deponents as act., 167, N 1; Pf. pass. of intrans. vbs. used as act., 220, N.1; Pf. with habed and tened 238; Fut, periphrastic, 247; Pr. periphrastic with esse, ib. N.2; Pf. with ful. 250; as alj., ib. N 2; as pred., 251, N.1; usage of Pr. and Pf., 282; usage of Fut. act., 283; concord with two subjs. in Abl. Abs., 285, N.3; Pr. with Gen., 375, contrasted with adj., ib. N.1; Comp. of, with Gen., ib. N.2; of Birth with Abl., 395; Pf. pass. with opus and usus, 406; in Abl. Abs., 409, 410, and NN.; Pf. pass. parallel with Ger., 426, N.2, 427, N.1; as subst., 437; Fut, as subst., ib. N.1; as adj., 438; Fut, as adj., ib, N.1; parallel with rel. and Subjv., ib. R.; with interrog., 469; sequence after, 518; after vbs. of Perception, etc., 527, N.1, 536; after vbs. of Causation, etc., 537; equiv. to cum, 585 n; for Prot., 593,2; for Prot. in Comparative Sentence, 602, N.3; Concessive, 609; for rel., 637.

particles—copulative, 474; adversative, 483; disjunctive, 492; causal, 498; illative, 499; position of, 679.

partitive apposition-322.

Partitive Genitive—367-372; with substs. of Quantity, etc., 368; with neut. Sg., 369; with numerals, 370; with pronouns, 371; with comparatives and superlatives 372; preps. instead, ib. R.2; with uterque; 371,R.1; extensions of, 372, NN.: contrasted with Gen. of Characteristic, 369,N.1.

parts of speech-16.

parvus—Comp. of, 90; in Gen. of Price, 380.1.

passive—voice, 112,2; vbs. with two Noms., 206; vb. agrees with pred., 211, n.1, Ex. b; defined, 214; Pf. with Dat. of Agent, 215,1; as reflexive, 218; of something endured, 219; periphrastic forms of, 248-251; with Acc. of Respect, 338, N.2; impersonal, 346, n.1.

pati—with ut, 553,2; with Inf., ib.n. patronymics—182,11.

paulo, paulum-with ante and post, 403.N.4,b.

pause-in Verse, 742.

pavere-constr. of, 550 and N.1.

pax-decl. of, 70,D; in Abl. of Time, 393, R.5, 394,R.1.

peculiaris—with Gen. or Dat., 359, n.1. pecus—heteroclite, 68,12.

pellere—with Abl. of Separation, 390.

pendere-with Gen., 379.

penes—position of, 413,R.1; use of, as
 prep., 416,17.

pentameter—clegiac, 785; Pf. Inf. in, 280, 2,b,n.2; position of words in, 683.

penult—11.

penus-heteroclite, 68,11.

per—vbs. cpd. with take Acc., 331; with Acc. of Extent, 335, 336; to express Time Within Which, ib. R.2, 393,R.1; here and there in, 385.R.3; for Abl. of Manner, 399,N.1; with Person Through Whom, 401; position of, 413,R.1, and N. 2; use as prep., 416,18.

perceiving-vbs. of, with Object Clause 523; with Acc. and Inf., 526, 527; with

Nom., 528; with part., 527, N.1, 536; Nom. after, 536, N.2.

percontari—with two Accs., 339 and N.1. perdius—defective, 85.2.

PERFECT-defined, 112,3: System, 114.2 and 3.6; formation of, 114, 115, 121,2; syncopated forms of, 131. 1-3; early forms of, 131,4; Stem, 134; part. pass., 135 I.; part. as subst., 167, N 1; pass. with Dat. of Agent, 215,1; part. used as act., 220, N.1; defined, 223; Historical, 225 ; Pure and Historical, 235 ; force of, 236; trans. by Eng. Pr., ib. R.; with Aor. force, 1b.; Gnomic, ib. N.; for Fut. Pf., 237: part. with habeo and teneo, 238; pass. with fui, 250; Subjv. as Potential, 257,2 and N.1; in wishes, 260; Subjv. as Impv, 263,2,b, 270.R.2; tense relations in Subjv , 277; Inf. as subj. or obj., 280,2; after decuit, ib. a. R.1; Emotional, ib.; after onortuit, ab. R 2; after velle, 280, 2,b and N.1; after posse, ib.; after debeo, ib. N.3; after vbs. of Will and Desire, 280.2,c; use of part, 282 and N.; part. as subj., 437, N.1, Sequence after, 511, RR. 3,4; Subjv. in Final Sentences. 512, N.1; in Consecutive Sentences. 513 and NN. : Inf., 530, Inf. in O.O., 659,N

perficere—with ut 553,1.
pergere—with Inf, 423.2.N 2.
perhibëre—as copulative vb, 206,
N.1; with Nom. and Inf., 528 and

period—Responsive and Apodotic, 685; forms distinguished by Nagelsbach, 686; Historical and Oratorical, 687.

periphrasis for Impv., 271: for Fut periphrasic, 515, R2; for Fut., 531 and N.1: for Apod. in Unreal Condition, 597.R.5.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION — 129: act, 247: pass., 251; with fuI, 247.R.1: with forem, ib. N.1; Pr. part. with esse, ib. N.2: with futurum esse ut, 248: with in eoest, 249; with posse, velle, 243, R.; Pf. part. with sum and fuI, 250 and R.1; with forem for essem, ib. N.2; with Ger., 251; Fut. act., 283.

perire—pass. of perdere, 169.2 r.1. peritus—with Gen., 374 n.4. permanēre—with two Noms, 203,n.1. permittere—used personally in pass., 217, N.2; with Inf., 423, 2, N.2, 532, N.1; 553, 2, N.; with ut, 553, 2.

permitting — vbs. of, with Consecutive Clause, 553,2.

pernox-defective, 85,2.

perperum -- defective, 85,1.

perpetuus — and perpes, 84,1; perpetuum, as adv. Acc., 336, N.1.

perguam-with Indic., 467, N.

persequens -with Gen., 375.N.2.

perseverare-with Inf., 423,2, N.2.

persons-in conjugation of vb., 112,1; concord of, 287; order of, 1b. R.

personal endings-114.

personal pronouns—304; omitted, ib. 1; Gen of, as objective, ib. 2 364, N. 2; poss. for, ib. 2, N. 2; Gen. of, as Partitive, ib. 3; for poss, ib. 3, N. 1; circumlocution for third personal pronoun, ib. 3, N. 2.

perspicere—with Acc. and Inf., 527,R.1. perstare—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

persuadēre—used personally in pass., 217, N.1; with Dat. 346, R.2, and NN.2,4; with Inf., 423.2, N.2, 527, R.2, 546, R.1; with 4t, 546, N.1.

pertaesum est-with Gen., 377.

pessum-defective, 70,A; with fre, 435,

petere—with ā and Abl., 339, R.1 and N.1; with Acc. Ger., 430, N.1; with Inf., 423, 2.N.2; with ut, 546, N 1.

Phalaeccau-verse, 796.

Pherecratean-verse, 794.

phonetic variations—in vowels, 8; in consonants, 9; in consonant stem-characteristic, 121.R.

piget—with Gen., 377; with subj., ib. R.2, pili—as Gen. of Price, 380,1.

pīnus-heteroclite, 68,5.

pius-Comp. of, 87,6,N.

place—where, in Abl., 385; with vbs. of Placing, ib. n.1; with Towns, 386: as Cause, Means, etc., 389; with Books, etc., 387; with tōtus, etc., 388; in Loc., 411; whence, in Abl., 390. 391; with Towns, 391; of origin, 395, N.2; whither, in Acc., 337.

placere—with Dat., 346, R.2; use of Fut. Pf., 244, R.3.

pleasure—vbs. of, with Dat., 343; adjs. of, with Abl. Sup., 436, N.2.

plebs-decl. of, 63, N.1, 68,8.

plenty-vbs. of, with Abl., 405; adjs. of, with Gen. or Abl., ib. N. 3.

plēnus—with Gen, 374.N.1: with Abl., 405.N.3.

pleonasm - 692.

pleraque—as Acc. of Respect, 338.2. pluere—with Abl. of Means, 401, N.5.

PLUFERFECT—112,3; formation of, 114, 115; Aor. forms of, 131,4,b,3; defined, 223; force of, 241; translated by Impf., ib. r.; used as Aor., ib. r.; periphrastic, with habeō, ib. r. 2; Subjv as Potential of Past, 258,r.2; in Wish. 260; with vellem, 231,r.; Subjv. as Concessive, ib. r.; Subjv. as Impv. of Past, 273.3; tense force in Subjv., 277; in

Apod. of Unreal Condition, 597, R.2. plural—of abstracts, 204, N.5; used for Sg., ib. NN.6,7; pred. with two subjs., 285; neut. pred. to two fems., 286,3.

Final Sentences, 512, N.1; to express

Resulting Condition, 563,1; Indic. in

plūs—quam omitted with, 296, R.4; plūris, with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 380,1: plūrimum, with quantum, 467, N.; plūrimī, as Gen. of Price, 380,1.

poēma-heteroclite, 68,7.

pollere-with Inf., 423.2, N.2.

polliceri-with Inf., 527, R.2, 531, N.4.

pollis -decl. of, 41,4.

pondo-defective, 70.A.

pone-usage of, 416,19.

ponere—with in and Abl., 388, R.1 and N. 2; suppose, with Inf., 527, R.2.

poscere--with two Accs., 339 and N 1; with a and Abl., ib. R.1; with Inf. or ut, 546, NN.1,3.

position—adjs. of, in pred. attrib., 325.r. 6; of advs., 440; of neg., 448 and NN.; of rel., 612; of correlative clause, 620; poetical peculiarities in, 683.

positive—degree lacking, 87,2.7.8, and 9; with prep. to express disproportion, 298, R.; in comparing qualities, 299; with quam after Comp., 299, N.2; with Part. Gen., 372, N.2; supplied from neg., 447, R.

posse—conj. of, 119; potis for posse, 209, N.2; use of Fut. and Fut. Pf. of, 242 R.2, 244, R.3; needs no periphrasis, 248, R.; Indic. for Subjv., 254, R.1; Impf. Indic. of Disappointment, ib. R.2; with Pf. Inf. act., 280, 2b, and N.1; with quam, etc., to strengthen superlative, 303; omitted, with quam, ib. R.1; with Inf., 423.2, N.2; non possum non, 449, R.1;

in simple questions, 453, N.1; for periphrastic, 513, R.3, 531, N.3 and 4; in Apod. of Unreal Condition, 597, R.5, c; restrictions with, 627, R.2; in Logical Condition, 657, R.; in Unreal Condition in  $\bar{\Omega}$ . O. 659, N.

Possession—Dat. of, 349; compared with Gen., ib. n.2; of qualities, ib. n.3; Gen. of, 362; in 1st and 2d person, ib. n.1; omission of governing word, ib. n.3.

possessive pronouns — 100-102, 106, N.4; usage of suus, 309,4 and NN; syntax of, 312; intense use of, 70 R.1; for Gen. of personal pron., 304,2 N.2; with Gen in app., 321, R.2; for 1st and 2d persons in Subjective Gen., 364; as pred., 366, R.3; with interest and refert, 381; with domi, 411, R4; position of, 676, R1.

possibility—in Indic. rather than Subjv., 254.R.1, 255.R.

post—vbs. cpd. with, take Dat., 347; with Abl. or Acc. of Measure, 403, N.4; position of, 403, N.4, b, 413, R.1; omission of, with rel., 403, N.4; as adv., 415; as prep, 416,20; with Pf. part. pass., 437, N.2.

posteāquam-see postquam.

posterum—defective, 74,n.2; Comp. of, 87.2 and 7.

postquam—with Hist. Pf. or Pr., 561; with Impf, 562; with Plupf, 563; range of tenses with, ib. nn.1-3; with Subjv., ib. n.4. Causal with Pr. and Pf., 564 and n.1; in Iterative action, 566.567.

postridiē quam-577, N.5.

postulare—with a and Abl., 339, n.1 and
n.1; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2, 546, n.3; with
ut, ib. n.3.

potens-with Gen., 374 N.3.

POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE—257-259; for Pr. and Fut., 257; for Past, 258; in questions, 259; for Indic., 257, N.3; not conditional, 257, N.2, 600,2; of Past coincides with Unreal of Present, 258, N.2.

potiri-with Abl., 407 and N.2,d; with personal Ger., 427, N.5.

potis, e -65,C; potior, 87,7; potius strengthens comparative, 301: potius quam, with Subjv. or Inf., 577,N.6. 631, 3,R 2, 644,R.3; see posse.

power—adjs. of, with Gen., 374; vbs. of, with Inf., 423 and N.2; sequence after vb. of, 546, R.3; in Indic. rather than Subjv., 254, R.1, 255, R.

prae—to express disproportion, 296, N.3; vbs. cpd. with take Dat., 347; gives Preventing Cause, 408, N.4; as adv., 415, as prep., 417,9; prae quod, 525,2, N.2.

praecellere-with Abl. of Respect, 397,

praccipere—with Inf, 423.2, n 2: with
ut, 546, n 1: used personally in pass,
217, n.2, pracceptum, with ut, 546, n 2.

praecipitare—with Abl., 390,2.n.3. praecipuum with ut, 557,R

praeesse—with Dat. Ger., 429,1. praeficere—with Dat. Ger., 429,1

praegestire—with Inf., 423,2,N 2. (in) praesentia—for the present, 394,R.

praesidēre—with Dat., 347, R.2. praestāre—with Dat., 347, R.2; with Abl.

of Respect, 397, N.2; with Abl. of Measure, 403, N.1; with ut, 553,1.

praestolari-with Dat., 346, N.2.

praeter—to express disproportion. 296, N.3; vbs. epd. with, take Acc., 331; position of, 413,N.3; use as prep., 416,21; with Pt. part. pass., 437,N.2; id quod, quam quod, quod, 525,2.N.2.

praeterire—with quod, 525,1,N.1.

precari—with ut, 546, N.1.
predicate—and copula, 205; with copulative vbs., 206; concord of, 211; violation of concord of, tb. RR.1-6, NN.1-3; in
Pl. with two subjs., 285; in Pl. with
neque—neque, ib. N.1; concord of, in
Gender, 283; in Person, 287; Attribution, 325; Apposition, ib. and R.6; with
Abl. Abs., 410, N.6; after Inf., 538.

prepositions—assimilation of in composition, 9,4: defined. 16,6; repeated with cpd. vbs., 331,RR.2,3; with Countries and Towns, 337,RR.1-4: with domum, ib. R.3: omitted with Countries and Towns, 337,NN 1-3; instead of D.t., 347,R1: omitted with vbs. and adjs. of Separation, 390,2 and 3; with Abl. of Origin, 395,NN.2,3; syntax of, 412-416; origin of, 412: position of, 413,673; repetition and omission of, 414; as advs., 415; with Acc., 416; with Abl., 417; with Acc. and Abl., 418; two with same case, 414, R.4; improper, 412,N.; with participles for abstract substantives, 437,N.2.

PRESENT—112,3; System, 114.8,a; rules for formation of, 121,1; notes on System, 130; formation of Stem, 133; de-

fined, 223; Historical, 224, 229; Specific or Universal, 227; Progressive, ib. N.1; of Endeavor, ib. N.2; of Resistance to Pressure, ib. N. 3; anticipates Fut., 228; with iam, etc., 230; contrasted with Pf. to give Effect in VER-GIL, ib. N.3; part. with esse, 247, N.2; Indic for Deliberative Subjv., 254, N.2; Subjv. as Potential, 287.2; Subjv. in Wishes, 260; Subjv. as Impv., 263, 270. R 2, Subjy as Concessive, 204; tense relations in Subjv , 277; Inf. as subj. or obj , 280, 1; Inf. after meminī, 281,2, N., part., 282; part. as subst., 437, N.1; Hist sequence after, 511 R.1; Inf. after vbs. of Saying and Thinking, 530; Inf. for Fut , 531, NN 3 and 4

preventing -vbs. of, with ne, quominus, or quin, 548, 549, 555,1.

previous condition—given by ex or ab, and Abl., 206, R.2, 396, N.2.

Priapean -verse, 805

Price-Gen. of. 379; Abl. of, 404.

pridiēquam —usage of, 577, n.5. primitive words —179, 1.

prīmēris - defective, 85,1.

primus—with quisque, 318, N,3; primō, primum, 325, R.7; in pred. attrib., 325, R.6; used partitively, 291; prior, 87,8.

principal parts—120. principal tenses—225.

priusquam—with Indic, 574, 576; with Pr., 575; with pure Pf., ib. n.1; with Pf. or Fut., 576; non priusquam = dum, ib. n.; with Subjv., 577; with ut or Inf., 644. B.3.

prō-to express disproportion, 293; with habēre, 340, R.1; with Nom. or Acc. in Exclamations, 343, 1. N.1; for, compared with Dat., 345, R.2; position of, 413, R.1; as prep., 417, 10; with Abl. Ger., 433; prō eō quod, 525, 2, N.2; prō eō ut, 642, R.4.

probare-with Inf, 527.R.2.

procreatus—with Abl. of Origin, 395, N.1. procul—with Abl. of Separation, 390,3, N. 2: as prep., 417,11.

prodesse—conj. of, 118; with Dat., 346,
 R 2; with Inf., 422.N.4.

prodigus-with Gen., 374, N.1.

profecto-strengthens atque, 477, N.2.

proficere-with ut, 553,1.

profundus—never with Acc., 335, R.1.

profusus-with Gen., 374, N. 1.

prognatus-with Abl. of Origin, 395,N 1. prohibere - with two Accs., 341, N.2; with Abl., 390,2, N.3; with Inf., 423.2, N.2; with ne, 548, and N.1; with quominus,

549, and N 1; with Inf., 532, N.1. 543, N.1. prohibiting-vbs. of, with Dat., 345.R.1. proinde-strengthens Impv., 269; as

coordinating conj., 503; and proin, ib. prolepsis-of subj. of leading clause, 468. promising-vbs. of, with Inf., 423, N.5, 527, R.4; 531, N.4.

promittere-with Pr. Inf., 527,R.2, 531.

PRONOUNS-defined, 16,3; compared with nouns, ib. N.2; decl. of, 17; Personal, 100-102; Determinative, 103; Demonstrative, 104; Relative, 105; Interrogative, 106; Indefinite, 107; Pronominal Adjectives, 108; Possessive, 100-102; omitted, 207; with Impv., 267,N.; syntax of, 304-319; Personal, 304; Demonstrative, 305-307; hīc, 305; iste, 306; ille, 307; Determinative is, 308; Reflexive, 309; Idem, 310; ipse, 311; Possessive, 312; Indefinite, 313-319; quidam, 313; aliquis, 314; quis, 315; quispiam, 316; quisquam and ūllus, 317; quisque, 318; alter and alius, 319; with Part. Gen., 371; in O. O., 660.

pronuntiare-used personally in pass., 217, N.2.

pronus-constr. of, 359, N. 5.

prope-as adv., 415; as prep., 416,22; position of, 678, R.1; propior and proximus, 87,8; with Acc. or ab, 359, N.1.

properare-with Inf., 423,2,N.2. propinare-with Acc. Ger., 430, N.1.

propinguus-Comp. of, 87,9.

proponere-with Acc. Ger., 430, N.1. propositum-est, with Inf., 423,2, N.2; with ut, 546, N.2.

proprius-with Gen. or Dat., 359,R.1; with ut, 557, R.

propter-compared with Abl. of Cause, 408, N.3; position of, 413, R.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416,23; with Acc. Ger., 432 and N.1.

propterea-503.

prosody-701-823.

prospicere -with Dat., 346,R.2; with Inf., 527, R.1; with ut, 546, N.1.

prostare-with Gen. of Price, 379.

protasis -- defined, 589; equivalents of,

593; omission of vb. of, 599; total omission of, 600.

protraction-743.

Gen., 374.N.4.

providere-with ut, 546, N.1.

providing-vbs. of, with Abl., 401, N.1.

providus-Comp. of, 87,5.

preximum-in phrases with ut, 557, R. prūdēns-in pred. attrib., 325, R.6; with

-pte -added to personal pronouns, 102.N.

pudet-with Gen., 377 and R.1; with subj., ib. R. 2.

puer-Voc. of, 33, N.2.

pugnare-with Dat., 346, N. 6; with ut. 546, N.1.

purpose-in Inf., 423, N.1; in Dat. Ger., 429,2; in Sup., 435; in Fut. part., 438, N.; sequence in clauses of, 512; reflexive in clauses of, 521; rel. clauses of, 630; see Final Sentences.

pūrus-with Abl. of Sep., 390,3, N.

putare-with Gen. of Price, 379; with two Noms. in pass., 206: (non) putaveram, 254, N.1; puta, ut puta, for example, 274; with Inf., 527, R.2.

putting-vbs. of, with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abi., 348.

Quā-quā, 482,3.

quaerere-with a, de, ex. 339, R.1; with Inf., 423,2, N.2; with Direct Question, 467.N.

quaeso-175,6; with Impv., 269; without Inf., 546, N.3.

qualis-in phrases instead of Comparative, 296, N.3.

Quality-possession of, 349, R.3; Gen. of, 365 and R.1; Gen. and Abl. of, ib. R.2, 400, R.1; Gen. of, as pred., 366; Abl. of, 400; personified quality as person, ib. R.2; Comparison of qualities, 299.

quam-after comparatives, 296 and R.1; omission of, ib. R.4; preps. instead, ib. N.3; atque instead, ib. N 4: with pro. ut, qui, to express disproportion, 298; with positive for comparative, 299, N.2; in comparison of qualities, 299; with potuit and superlative, 303; with qui and superlative, ib. n.2; magis, non aliter, quam ut, 557, N.2; quam sī, with Subjv. of Comparison, 602; with qui or ut after comparatives, 631,3; with quam qui and superlative, 642, R.5; after alius or secus, 643, N.4: with Comparative Sentences, 644; with potius, prius, etc., R.3.

quamdiu-568; with Indic., 569; range of, ib. N.1.

quamlibet-606.

quamquam—603 and N.; with Indic., 605; with Subjv., ib. RR.1,2, and N: and yet, ib. R.3; with part., 609,N.1, 667,N.; with Inf., 635,N.2.

quamvis-603 and N.; with Subjv., 606; with Indic., ib. N.1; inflection of vb. of, ib. N.2; with licet, 607, N.2; with part., 609, N.1, 667, N.; with adj. or adv., 609, N.2.

quando-with Causal Indic., 540; with Subjv., 541; early use, 538.N.4, 580.N.3; conditional use, 590,N.3.

quandoque—with causal clause, 541, N.5; quandoque—quandoque, 482,1, N.1.

quantity—rules for, 702-706; of final syllables, 707-713; of polysyllables, 707-709; of monosyllables, 710-713; of stem syllables, 714; of cpds., 715; in early Latin, 716, 717.

quantity-12: substs. of, with Gen., 368.

quantum—with mīrum, nimium, etc... 209, N.2, 467.N.; with māximus and potuit to strengthen superlative, 303; quantum quī, with superlative, th. R. 2; quantī, with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 380; with advs. and Indic., 467.N.

quantumvis-603 and N., 606.

quasi—with subst., 439, N.4; with Subjv. of Comparison, 602; with Indic., ib. N.1; to apologize, ib. N.2; to give an Assumed Reason, ib. N.4. 666. N.

quatenus—as a Causal particle, 538, n.5. quattuor—early forms of, 95, n.3.

que—added to rels., 111,2; syntax of, 476 and nn.; for quoque, 479, n.2; adds third member, 481, n.

quemadmodum-sic, 482,3,N.

queri-with Acc. and Inf., 533,R.1.

questions—with Potential Subjv., 259; deliberative, 265, 465; passionate equiv. to command, 273, 453, N.2; predicate and nominal, 451: rhetorical 265, 451, R.2, 464, 466; direct simple, 453-457; equiv. to Condition, 453, N.3; with ne, 454; with nonne, 455; with num, 456; with an, 457: direct disjunctive, 458; neg. of, 459; particles in indirect, 460; moods in, 462-467; Indic. in, 463, 464; Subjv. in, 465, 466; indirect, 467; genuine, 463; disconnected, 467, N.; exclamatory, 558.

qui interrogative--106 and R.

quirelative—105 and NN: with quam and Snbjv. to express disproportion, 298; after dignus, etc., 552,n.2; equiv. to si quis, 625,2; explicative, 626; strengthened by ut, utpote, quippe, ib. N.1; quod sciam, 627 R.1; equiv. to cum is, 626,R., 633, 634; equiv. to ut is, 630, 631; after comparatives with quam, 631.3; equiv. to adj., ib. 4; sed qui, qui tamen, 636,N.2; quō quisque, with comparative. 642,R.2; see quō and quā.

quia—after vbs. of Doing and Happening, 525.1.n 4; origin of and, correlatives with, 538, nn.1,2; with Causal Indic., 540; with Subjv., 541; after vbs. of Emotion, 542.n.; with Inf., 635, n.2.

quicumque-105 and N.5; with Indic., 254,4,625.

quīdam-107.2; syntax of, 313; with quasi, 319.82; strengthened by certus, ūnus, 313.8.3.

quidem—with demonstrative pron., 307, R 4; position of, 413, N.3. 679; yes, with sane, 471, a., 1.

quilibet-107 and N.

quin—with mīrum, 209.N.2; strengthens Impv., 269; non quin as Causal, 541,N.2; force of, 547; in Consecutive Sentences, 552,3; with vbs. of Preventing, 555,1; with vbs. of Doubt and Uncertainty, ib. 2; after non dubito, ib. 2. R.1; equiv. to ut non, 556; after vbs. of Saying, etc., 555,2; in Relative Sentences of Character, 632 and R.; facere non possum quin, 556.

quippe-498, N.8; with qui, 623, N.1.

quiqui-105 and N 4.

quire-conjugation of, 170,a; with Inf., 433,2,N.2.

quis indefinite—and qui, 107,1; for aliquis, ib. n. and n1; syntax of, 315; aliquis instead, ib. n.1; familiar usage of, 317,2,n.2.

quis interrogative—106; and quī, ib. n.; old forms of, ib. NN.1,2; quī in Wishes, 261; for uter, 300, N.

quisnam-106 and N.5.

quispiam -107,3, and N.1; syntax of, 316.

quisquam-107,3, and n.2; syntax of, 517; strengthened by ūnus, ib. 1, n.1; negative of, ib. 2; as adj., ib. 1, n.3.

quisque—107,5, and N.; quisquisinstead, 105, N.4; with Pl. vb., 211, R.1, Ex.a; with ordinal, 294, N., 318,2; syntax of, 318; with superlatives, ib. 2; with reflexives, ib. 3; attraction of, ib. N.2; suum quisque, ib. N.4; with quō and comparative, 642, R.2; ut quisque, with superlative, ib.

quisquis-105; as adj., ib. N.4; with Indic., 254,4, 625.

quivis-107,4 and N.

quō—as Causal conjunction, 54:.N.2; nōn quō in Final Clauses, 545,2; quōnē, ib. R.1; quō setius, 549.N.4.

quoad—force of, 568; of complete coex tension, 569; until, with Indic., 571: with Subjv., 572; until, with Subjv., ib. N.5.

quod-in Inner Obj., 333 1, N.1; introduces Object Sentences, 524; after vbs. of Adding and Dropping, 525,1: after demonstratives, ib. 2; and ut, ib. 1, N.5; quid est quod, ib. 1, N.2; after verba sentiendī, ib. N.7; after demonstratives, with preps., ib. 2, N.2; as to the fact that, with Subjv., ib. 2, N.3; with Subjv. in O. O., ib. 3; after vbs. of Motion, ib.1, N.6; gives Ground in Exclamations, 534. R.1; with Causal Sentence in Indic., 540; with Causal Sentence in Subjv., 541; after vbs. of Emotion, 541; with diceret, ib. N.3; non quod, ib. N.2; magis quod, 541, N.2; correlatives of, 538, N.1; and quia, ib. N.2: nisi quod, 591, R.3; quod sī, 610, R 2.

quom-see cum.

quōminus—force of, 547; with vbs. of Preventing, etc., 549; for nē, 548, N.2; and quīn, 549, N.3.

quomodo—with Direct Question, 467, N. quoniam—with Causal Indic., 540; with Subjv., 541; original force of, 538, N.3; carly usage of, 580, N.3.

quoque—syntax of, 479; and etiam, 479, n. and n.1; que instead, ib. n.2; with sed and vērum, 482,5 and n.1.

Rating-vbs. of, with Gen. and Abl., 379, 380.

ratio-in Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1; with ut, 546, N.2.

recens-with Abl., 390,3, N.1.

recipere - with Abl. or in, 389.

reciprocal relations—given by inter so. 221: by alter alterum, etc., ib. n.1; by invicem, mūtuō, etc., ib. n.2.

recitation of verses-754.

recordari-with Pr. Inf., 281,2,N.; with Acc., 376,R.2.

rectum-with Inf., 422, N.3.

recūsāre—with Inf., 423,2, N.2; with nē, 548, N.1; with quōminus, 549 and N.1; constr. with, 549, N.1.

red -in composition. 9,4, 715, R.3.

reddere-with Pf. part., 537,N 2; reddI and fieri, 206,N 1, 340,R.1.

reduplication—in Pr. stem, 133,II.; in Pf. stem, 134,III.; omitted in Pf of cpd. vbs., ib.

Reference-Dat. of, 352

refert—with Gen. and Abl., 381, 382. Nom. with, 381, N.3; origin of, ib. N.5; expression of Degree of Concern, 382, 1 and 2; expression of Thing Involved, ib. 3.

refertus-with Gen., 374, N.1.

reflexive—218; passive used for, 218; approaches depouent, 218, n.; pronouns, 309; is retained instead of reflexive, ib. N.1; strengthened, ib. N.2; suum quisque, 318, N.3; with ipse, 311, 2; with Acc. of Respect, 338, N.2: in subordinate clauses, 520-522; not in Consecutive Sentences, 521, n.1; refers to real subj., 309, 2, 521, n.2; free use of, ib. n.3; Indic. Relative Sentences, ib. n.4; ambiguity in, ib. N.3; demonstrative instead of, ib. n.1.N.3.

reformidare—with Inf., 423,2,n.2. refragari—with Dat., 346,n.2.

refraining-vbs. of, with quin, 555,1.

refusing—vbs. of, with nē, 548; with quominus, 549; with Inf., 548, n.2; with quin, 555,1.

Reiziānus Versus-822.

regio-in Abl. without in, 385, N.1. relation—suffixes for, 181,8.

relationship-suffixes for, 181,7.182,11.

relative pronouns—105; made indefinite, 111,1; or universal, ib. 2: in Inner Obj., 333,1,N.2; instead of app. with refert, 381,N.2; contrasted with interrogative, 467,R.2, 611,R.2; indefinite with Indic., 354,R.4; with Subjv., 567,N.; advs. instead, 611,R.1; continued by demonstrative, 636,N.1; repetition of, 615.

BELATIVE SENTENCES- 610-637; for Protasis, 593,1; general consideration of, 610; how introduced, 611; position of, 612: antecedent in, 613; concord in, 614 and RR.; id quod, etc., in app. to a sentence, ib. R.2; incorporation of app., ib. R.4; repetition of antecedent, 615; incorporation of antecedent, 616; attraction of, 617; correlative of, 618; absorption of correlative, 619; position of correlative, 620; indefinite antecedent, 621; tenses in, 622,623; in Iterative action, 623; moods in, 624-635; indefinite and generic relatives with Indic., 254, R.4, 625,1; or Subjv., ib. R.; conditional, 625,2; explanatory, 626; Subjy. in explanatory, 627; quod sciam, etc., ib. R.1; restrictions with esse, posse, attinet, ib. R.2; with Subjv. by Partial Obliquity, 628; with Subjv. by Attraction, 629; Final, 630; attraction of diceret, ib. N.3; Consecutive, 631; after definite autecedent, ib. 1; after indefinite antecedent, ib.2; after comparative, ib. 3; parallel to adj , ib. 4; with quin, 632; Causal, 633; Concessive and Adversative, 634; in Int , 635; combination of, 636; participle instead, 637, 668; in O. O., 655 and RR. relātū-as Sup., 436, N. relieving-vbs. of, with Abl , 390,2. relinquere-with Acc Ger., 430, N.1. religuum est-with ut, 553,4 reliquus-used partitively with Subst., 291, R.2; alius for, 319, N.1; reliqua, as Acc. of Respect, 338,2. remembering-vbs. of, with Gen., 376; with Acc., ib. R. 2. rēmex-defective, 70, D. reminding-vbs. of, with Gen., 376; with

Abl. or Acc., ib. RR.1,2.
removing—vbs. of, with Abl., 390,2.
rendering—vbs. of, with Inf., 421.N.1,b.
reperiri—with Nom. and Inf., 528,N.1.
repetition of relative, 615.
replētus—with Gen., 374,N.1.
repōnere—with in and Acc., 385,N.2.
repōscere—with two Accs., 339 and N.1,
representātio—654 and N., 656,N.1.

representation—vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf., 526, 527; with part., 527, N.1, 536. reprimere—with nē, 548, N.1.

repügnäre—with Dat., 346, R.2; with ne, 548, N.1.

requies-heteroclite, 68,8.

requiring-vbs. of, with two Accs., 339 and B.1, N.1; with ab, ib. N.2.

reri-part. of, with Pr. force, 282, N.

res—for neut., 204, N.4; construed like neut., 211, N.2; with Appositional Gen., 361,1; in phrases with Inf., 422, N.2; divinam rem facere, with Abt., 401, N. 4; rem certare, 333.2.R.

resistere—with Dat., 346, n.2; with ne, 543, n.1; with quin, 555, 1.

resisting-vbs. of, with Dat , 346.

resolution-of long syllable, 732.

resolving-vbs. of, with Inf. 423 and N 2; with ut, 546.

Respect - Acc. of, 338; with vbs. of Clothing, etc., ib. N. 2; Abl. of, 387; Abl. of, with comparatives, 398; Abl. of, with words of Eminence or Superiority, 397, N.2; preps. instead, ib. N.1.

respice—with Direct Question, 467, N. responde—with Direct Question, 467, N.; ius respondere, 333.2. R.

rest-conceived as end of Motion, 412, R 2.

restat-with ut, 553,4.

restrictions—in Relative Sentences, 627, RR. 1, 2.

result -for Sentences of, see Consecutive Sentences.

rētē-heteroclite, 68,12.

retinere-with ne, 548, N.1.

reus-with Gen., 374, N.2; 378, R.1.

ridere-with Acc. and Inf., 533, R.1.

rhotacism-47.

rhythm—in arrangement, 627,2.b; defined, 739; ascending or descending, 735; names of, 736; classes of, 737; rhythmical series, 738; union of language with, 748.

robur-decl. of, 44,5, 45, R.2.

rogāre —with two Accs., 339, and n.1; with Acc. Ger., 430, n.1; with ut, 546, n.1; with Direct Question, 467, n.; rogātū, of Moving Cause, 408, n.1.; with Inf. or ut, 546, n.3.

root-defined, 25,1,N., 177.

rudis-with Gen., 374, N.4.

rūs—as limit of Motion, 337; in Abl. of Separation, 390,2; rūrī in Loc., 411, s.2.

S-final omitted, 27,N., 703,R.3; suffixes with, 188.

sacer-with Gen. or Dat., 359, R.1; sacrum facere, with Abl., 401, N.4. sacramento-as Abl. of Manner, 399. sacrificar - with Abl., 401, N.4.

sacrificing-vbs. of, with Abl., 401, N.4. saepe-as attrib. to subst., 439, N.4. saltem-strengthens at, 488, N. 2. salūtāris-has no superlative, 87.9. salvēre-conjugation of, 175,4. sane-strengthens Impv., 269; very, 439. N.3; with concessive ne, 608; with

quam and Indic., 467, N.; yes, 471, a. sanguis-decl. of, 41,4. sapiens-as subst., 437, N 1.

sapientia-in phrases with Inf , 422, N.

2; with ut, 557, R. Sapphic-verse, 797, 804. satias-heteroclite, 68,8 and 12. satis-very, 439, N.3; attraction of pred.

after satius est, 535, R.3. saturare-with Gen., 383,1, N.2. Saturnian-verse, 755.

satus-with Abl. of Origin, 395, N.1. saying-vbs. of, with Object Clause, 523; vbs. of, with quod, 525,1,N.7; vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf., 526,527; ybs. of, with Nom. in pass., 528; vbs. of, attracted into Subjv. after quod, 541, N. 3; vbs. of, omitted, 545, R.3; vbs. of, with quin, 555,2.

scatere-with Gen., 383,1,N.2. scazon-verse, 764.

scientia-in phrases with ut, 557,R. scilicet-yes, 471,a,2.

scire-first Impv. wanting, 267, R.; sciens in pred. attrib., 325,R.6; quod sciam, quantum scio, 627, R.1; with Inf., 423,2, N.2, 527, R.1; followed by direct question, 467, N.; sciens, with Gen., 375, N.2; scitū as Sup., 436, N.

scribere-with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.2; with ut, 546, N,1.

season-adjs. of, in pred. attrib., 325, R. 6. secondary words-see Derivatives.

secundum-as prep., 416,24; alter for secundus.

secus -70,B; sequins, 87,8; strengthens

sin, 594; with quam, 643, N.4. sed—in composition, 9,4, 715, R.1.

sed-introduces contrast to demonstrative, 307, R.4; with etiam, quoque, after non modo, 482,5 and N.1; with ne-quidem, ib. R.1; omitted, ib. N.2;

with et, ib. N.2; syntax of, 485; repeat ed, ib. N.2; strengthened, ib. N.3. seeking-vbs. of, with Final Dat., 356. N. 2.

seeming-vbs. of, with two Noms., 206.

semi-deponents-167. semi-hiatus-720.R.1.

semi-vowels-6,2,A.

sempiternum-as adv. Acc., 336, N.1.

senātus-decl. of, 61, 68,5.

sending-vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430. senex-decl. of, 56,5; Comp. of, 87,9.

sentence-simple or cpd., 201; syntax of simple, 202, ff.; simplest form of, 202; simple expanded, 284,ff.; incomplete, 450-470; coordination of, 473; Copulative, 474-482; Adversative, 483-491; Disjunctive, 492-497; Causal and Illative, 498-503; Object, 523-537; Causal, 538-542; Final, 543-550; Consecutive, 551-558; Temporal, 559-588; Conditional, 589-602; Concessive, 603-609; Relative, 610-637; Abridged, 645-663; Participial, 664-670.

sententia in phrases with nt, 546, N. 2,

sentire-with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.2. Separation-Gen. of, 374, N.S., 383,2; Abl. of, 390.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES-509-519; rule and modifications, 509; general considerations, 510; shift from primary to secondary sequence, 511, R.2; in sentences of Design, 512; in sentences of Result, 513; in coincident sentences, ib. N.3; representation of Subjv. in, 514, 515; in O. O., 516; after other moods, 517; after Inf. or part., 518; original Subjvs. in, 519; derangement of, ib. R.; in Comparative Sentences, 602, R.1; after Hist. Pr., 511, R.1; after Pure Pf., ib. R.3, 513, R.1; after Hist. Pf., 511, R.4; after accidit, etc., ib. n 2; after vb. with future character, 515,R 3.

sequester-heteroclite, 68,4. sequitur-with ut, 553,3.

sertum-heteroclite, 68,3.

servire-with Dat., 346, R. 2. servus-omitted, 362, N.1.

shortening-of penult, 701, R.2,b; of vow-

els, 716, 717.

showing-vbs. of, with two Noms., 206; with two Accs., 340; with Acc. and Inf., 526, 527; with Nom. and Inf., 528.

si-with o in Wishes, 261 and N.1; with-

out  $\bar{0}$  in Wishes, ib n 1; sīs, sõdēs, sultis, with Impv., 269; in Indirect Question after vbs. of Trial, 460,1,b; in Iterative action, 566, 567; sign of Condition, 590 and n 1; sĭquidem, ib. n 2, 595, n 5; sī nōn and nisi 591; sīn 592; sī modo, tamen, vērō, 595, n 6; sī forte, ib. n 1, Concessive, 604, n 1; with Inf., 635, n 2.

sibilants—6,2,A; suffixes with, 188. sīc—coördinate with other particles, 482, 4,N.; correlative of sī, 590,N.1.

sicut—gives Assumed Reason, 602, N.4. significare—with Inf., 527, R.2. signum—in phrases with ut. 546 N.2.

silentio-as Abl. of Manner, 399, N 1. similis-compared, 87,3; with Gen. or Dat., 359, n.1 and N.4.

simul—as prep., 417,12; simul—simul, 482,1 and n.1; Temporal, with atque (\$\overline{a}c\$), as soon as, 561 563; Causal with Pr. and Pf., 564 and n.; with Fut. and Fut. Pf., 565 and n.

simulare -with Inf., 527, R.2.

sin-use of, 592; strengthened by minus, etc., ib. R

sine—position of, 413, n.1; as prep., 417, 13; with Abl. Ger., 433, n.2.

sinere-with Inf., 423.N.6, 553,2,N.; with ut, 532,N.1, 553,2.

singular—in collective sense for Pl., 204, N.8; Voc. with Pl. vb., 211, N.2; neut. sums up preceding Pl., ib. N.3; as a subj., combined with cum and another word, 285, N.2.

singulāre—in phrases with Inf., 422, N 3; in phrases with ut, 553,4.

singulus—with numerals, 295. siquidem—590, N 2, 595, R 5.

sinister-Comp. of, 87,1,R 1.

sīs-strengthens Impv., 269

sistī—as copulative vb., 206, N.1.

sive-use of, 496; sive-sive, ib. 2,595, R.4; or ib. N.1; and seu, ib. N.3. smell-vbs. of, with Inner Object, 333.2,

mell—vbs. of, with Inner Object, 333,2, N.5.

socer—and socerus, 32,1,N.

sodes—strengthens Impv., 269.

solere—with Inf., 423,2,N.2; solito, as Abl. of Respect, 398,N.1.

sollicitārī—with Acc. and Inf., 533, R.1. sōlus—decl. of., 76; in pred. attrib., 325, R.6; nōn sōlum sed, etc., 482,5, and R.1; with quī and Subjv., 631,1. solvere-with Abl., 390,2,N.2.

somniare—with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.1. sonants—6,2,B.

sortīto-as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.

Sotadean-verse, 816.

scund-vbs. of, with neut. Acc. of Inner Object, 333,2, N.6.

Specification-Gen. of, 361.

spectare - with ex and Abl., 402, R.2.

specus-heteroclite, 68,91

spērāre—with Inf., 527,R.2; with Pr. Inf., 531.N.4.

spēs — with est and Pr. Inf., 531,N.4; in phrases with Inf, 527,R.2; with ut, 546.N 2; in Abl. of Respect, 398,N.1. spinter—defective, 70,B.

sponte - defective, 70, A.

Standard—Abl. of, 402, 403; ex and Abl. instead of Abl., 402, R.2; Abl. of, with ante or post, 403, R.4; Acc. of Extent for Abl., ib. N. 3; of comparison omitted, 297.

stare—with Gen. of Price, 379; to abide by, with Abl., 401, N.6; to persist in, with Inf., 423,2 N.2.

statuere—with in and Abl., 385, R.1; with Inf., 423,2, N.2; with ut, 546, N.1.

status -in phrases with ut, 557.R.

stem—25,1. 132; Present, 114,3,a, 133; Perfect, 114,3,b, 134; Supine, 114,3,c, 135; Formation of Verb stem, 132-135; varies between Conjugations, 136; quantity of stem syllables, 714.

stem-characteristic-26, 120; euphonic changes in, 121,R.

stillare-with Abl., 401, N.5.

studere—with Dat, 346,R 2; with Dat.
Ger., 429,1 and N.1; with Inf., 423,2,N.
2; with ut, 546,N.1.

studiosus-with Gen., 374.N.5.

stultitia—in phrases with Inf., 422, N.2. suādēre—with Dat., 346, R.2, and N.2; with Inf., 423, 2, N.2; with ut. 546, N.1.

sub—in composition, 9.4; vbs. cpd. with, take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; with condicione, etc., 399, N.3; usage of, as prep., 418.2.

subesse-with Dat, 347,R.2; timorem, with Acc. and Inf., 533.R.1.

subject—201; in Nom., 203; in Acc. with Inf., ib. R.1; forms of, 204; omitted, 207; of impersonal vbs., 208,1,N. and 2,N.1; Multiplication of, 285,ff.; Qualification of, 288,ff.; prolepsis of subj. of dependent clause, 468; of Inf. omitted, 527, R.3, 532, R.2 and N.2; Acc. and Inf. as, 535; attraction of pred. after Acc. and Inf., ib. R.3.

Subjective—Genitive, 363, 364; poss. pron. instead, 364.

SUBJUNCTIVE -112,4; early forms of, 130,4; Aorist forms of Pf. and Plupf., 131,4,b, 2,3; Indic. for Deliberative, 254, N.2; with generic relatives, ib. n.6,625, R.; force of, 255; Indic. with vbs of Possibility, etc., ib.R.; Ideal and Unreal, 256,1; Potential and Opt., ib. 2 Potential of Pr. and Fut., 257-259; Potential for Indic., ib. N.3; Potential of Past, 258; Potential of Past with vellem, etc., ib. N.1; Opt., 260; negs. of Opt., ib., particles with Opt., 261; Impf. for Unreal wish, ib. N.2; in Asseverations, 262; as Impv., 263, 267, 270, R., 272; as concessive, 264 and N.; tense relations of, 277; with quam ut or quam qui to express disproportion, 298; in Deliberative or Rhetorical questions, 265, 465, 466; in Indirect questions, 467; after vb. with Fut. character, 515. B.3; Original in dependence, 519; with quod, as to the fact that, 525,2, N. 3; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543, 4; with ut for Inf., 557, N.1; in Temporal Clauses, 560, 2, 563. NN 4,5; in Iterative action, 567, N ; in Contemporaneous action, 572, 573; in Subsequent action, 577; with cum, 585, 588; in Relative Sentences, 627, 628; by Attraction, 509,4, 629; after potius, 644, R.3; in O. O., 650-652.

sublimis—in pred. attrib., 325, R.6. subolet—with Inf., 422, N.4.

subordination—defined, 472; syntax of Subordinate Clauses, 504,ff.; division of, 505-507; moods in, 508; Sequence of Tenses in, 509-519.

subsequent action—syntax of Sentences of, 574-577; with Indic., 574-576; with Subjv., 577.

substantives—defined, 16,1, and R.1,N.1; inflection of, 17; division of, 18; gender of, 19, 20; möbilia, 21,2; epicene, ib. 3; irregular. 67-71; heterogeneous, 67; heteroclites, 68; metaplasts, ib; defective, 69; singulāria tantum, ib. A: plūrālia tantum, ib. B; heterologa, ib. C; formation of, 180, 181;

without suffixes, 183; adjs. and parts. used as, 204,NN.; Pl. of abstracts, ib. NN.5,6; agreement of pred., 211 and RR.,NN.; with several adjs. in Sg., 290, R.2; common surname in Pl., 290, N.1; verbal with Acc., 330,N.3, 337,N.5; verbal with Dat., 356,N.3, 357, 358,N.2; in Abl. Abs., 410,N.5; with Dat. Ger., 428,N.5; with Inf. for Gen. Ger., ib, N. 4; in phrases with Final Sentence, 546, R.2; in phrases with Consecutive Sentence, 557 and R.

subter—vbs. cpd. with take Acc, 331; as adv., 415; as prep., 418.2. subvenire—with Dat., 347, R.2. succēdere—with Dat., 347, R.2. succumbere—with Dat., 347, R.2. succumbere—with Dat., 347, R.2. succurrere—with Dat., 347, R.2. succurrere—with Dat., 347, R.2. succurrere—with Abl. of Means, 401, N.5. sufferre—Pf. of, 171, N.2.

suffixes—180; primary and secondary, ib. n.1; of substantives, 181; of adjs., 182; forming diminutives, 181,12, 182,12; in detail, 184-189; with vowels, 184; with gutturals, 185; with deutals, 186; with labials, 187; with s, 188; with liquids, 189.

suffragari-with Dat., 346, R.2.

sui-decl. of, 102 and n.1; with -met, ib. n.2; with -pte, ib. n.3; circumlocution for Part. Gen., 304,3 n.2; usage of, 309, 520-522; complement of Inf., 309,3; is instead, ib. n.1; with suus, ib. n.2. sultis—strengthens Impv., 269.

sum-see esse.

summus—comparison of, 87,2; used partitively, 291, R.2.

supellex-decl. of, 44,5.

super—vbs. cpd. with, take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; as adv., 415; as prep., 418,4; with Acc. Ger., 432, N.1; with Abl. Ger., 433; id quod, quam quod, 525,2,N.2. superāre—with Abl. of Respect, 397,N.2.

superesse—with Dat., 347, R.2.

superior-87,2 and 7.

superiority—vbs. of, with Acc. of Respect, 397, N.2.

superlative—in issimus, 86; in rimus, 87,1; in limus, ib. 3; in entissimus, ib. 4 and 5; lacking, ib. 9; of parts., 89; of advs., 93; meaning of, varies with position, 291, R.2.302; strengthened. 303; with quam, quantum, qui, ib. R.2,642,

R.5; with quisque, 318,2; with Part. Gen., 372; with preps., ib. R.2; with ut, 642, R.2.

supersedere—with Abl., 390,2,n.3. superstes—with Gen. or Dat., 359,R 1.

SUPINE—112,5; system, 114,3,c; formation of, 115,3, 121,3; stem, 135; in Abl. of Sep., 390,3,N.3, 436,N.4; in Abl. of Respect, 397,1; with opus, 406,N.5; defined, 434; Acc. of, 435; Abl. of, 436.

suppetiae-defective, 70,B.

supplex—with Dat., 346, n.5. supplicare—with Dat., 346, n.2 and n.4.

supra—with quam after a comparative, 296, N.3; with Abl. of Measure, 403, N.1; as adv., 415; as prep, 416,25.

surds-6.2.B.

surname-common, in Pl., 290, N.1.

sūs-decl. of, 59.

suscensere-with Dat., 346, R.2.

suscipere-with Acc. Ger., 430, N.1.

sūspicārī-with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.2.

suspicere—with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.1. suspirare—with Acc. and Inf., 533, R.1.

sustinere-with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

suus (08)—102; syntax of, 309; emphatic, ib. 2; with prep. phrases, ib. 4; is instead, ib. N.1; suum quisque, ib. N.3; suō tempore, ib. 4; with Gen. Ger.,

suo tempore, ib. 4; with Gen. Ger., 428, R.1; in dependent clauses, 521; suom with ut, 557, R.

syllaba anceps-741.

syllables—division of, 10; names for, 11; open, 11, n.; close, ib.; length of, 12; common, 13; quantity of final, 707-713; of polysyllables, 707-709; of monosyllables, 710-713.

syllepsis-690.

synapheia-728.

syncope-725-743; in Pf. forms, 131, ff.

synecdoche-695.

synizesis-727.

syntax-defined, 201.

systole-722.

T—sound of, 7; t-class of vbs., 133,III.

tābes—heteroclite, 68,8.

tābō-defective, 70, A.

taedet—with Gen., 377; with pronoun as subj., 377, R.2.

taking—vbs. of, with two Accs., 340; End For Which given by Dat. or ad, ib. R.2; vbs. of Taking Away, with Dat., 347, R.5; with Acc. Ger., 430. tālāris—and tālārius, 84,2.

talis—with qui or ut and Subjv., 631,1 and R.1.

tam—with quam, quantum, qui, and superlative, 303, R, 2: with qui or ut and Subjv., 631,1 and R.1.

tamen — introduces contrast, 307,8.4; position of, 413,8.3; with sed, 485,8.3; syntax of, 499; with at, 488,8.2; emphasizes adversative relation, 587,8.1; with tamets1.604,8.3.

tametsi-form, 603 and N; usage, 604 and RR.

tamquam—with subst . 439, N 4; with Subjv. of Comparison. 602; with Indic., ib. N.1; to give an Assumed Reason, ib. N.4; with part., 666, N.: tamquam si, 602, N.4; coördinate with sic, 482, 3, N.

tanti-as Gen. of Price, 380,1.

tantidem-as Gen. of Price 380,1.

tantus—with quI or ut and Subjv. 631,1 and R.1; tantI, with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 380; tantI est, it is worth white, ib. R 1; tantum, with quam, quantum, quI, and superlative, 303,R.2; tantum, for Abl. of Measure. 413,N.2; non tantum sed, etc.. 482, 5; tantum quod, 525,2,N.2; tantum abest ut, 552,R.1.

taste—vbs. of, with Inner Obj., 333,2,N.5. teaching—vbs. of, with two Accs., 339 and NN.2.3.

temperare—with Dat., 346, R.2 and N.2; with nē, 548, N.1; temperans, with Gen., 375, N.2.

templum-omitted, 362, R. 3.

TEMPORAL SENTENCES—559 588: division of, 559; moods in, 560; Antecedent Action, 561-567; Iterative Action, 568, 567; Contemporaneous Action, 568-573; Subsequent Action, 574-577; with cum, 578-588; general view of, 579; Temporal cum, 580; cum inversum, 581; Explicative cum, 582; Conditional cum, 583; Iterative cum, 584; Circumstantial cum, 585 588; Historical cum, 585; Causal cum, 586; Concessive cum, 587; cum—tum, 588; in Ō. O., 655.

temptare-with Inf., 423,2, N.2.

tempus—with Inf. or Ger.; 428, N.2 tempore or in tempore, 394, R.; id temporis, 336, N.2; with Inf., 422, N.2; temperi, 411, N.1.

tendency-suffixes for, 182,3.

tendere manus-with Dat., 358, N.3.

tenere—with Pf. part. to denote Maintenance of Result, 238; memoriāteneō, with Pr. Inf., 281,2,N.; (sē) with nē, 548,N.1; with quōminus, 549; with quīn,555,1; with ut,553,1; tenerī, with Gen. of Charge, 378,R.1.

with Gen. of charge, 378, B. 1. tenses—112, 3; signs of, 114, 2; formation of, 114, 115, 121; syntax of, 222-252; definitions, 223; of continuance, attainment, or completion, 224; Pr., 227-230; Impf., 231-234; Pure Pf., 235-238; Hist. Pf., 239-240; Plupf., 241; Fut., 242, 243; Fut. Pf., 244, 245; periphrastic, 246-251; in Letters, 252; of Indic., 276; of Impv., 278; Sequence of, 509; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543, 3; in Relative Sentences, 622, 623; in O. O., 653-655; in Inf., 279, 653; of Subjv., 277, 654, 655; Representātiō, 654, N.

tenus—position of, 413,R.1; usage of, as prep., 417,14.

terminations of cases -27.

terra-in Abl. without in, 386, N.1; terrae as Loc., 411, R 2.

tertium-est with ut, 553,4.

testis est-with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.2.

thematic class of verbs-133, I.

thickness-how expressed, 335.R.1.

thinking—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206; with Object Sentence and quod, 523. 525,1, N.7; with Inf., 527; vbs. of, attracted into Subjv. after quod, 541, N.3; vbs. of, with quin, 555,2.

threat-vbs. of, with Inf., 423, N.5.

Tiburi-as Loc., 411, R.1.

time—adjs. of, in pred. attrib., 325, R.6; suffixes for, 182,8; when, in Abl., 393; how long, in Acc., 336; within volich, in Abl., 393; with per, 336, 393, R.1; with tōtus, ib. R.2; when = for which, ib. R.3; with hic, ille, ib. R.4; preps. for Abl., 394; lapses of, with cum, 580, R.3; given by part., 665, 670,1.

timere—constr. of, 550 and N.1; with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

timor-est, with Inf., 550, N.5; timorem subesse, with Inf., 533, R.1.

titles-position of, 676, R.4.

tmesis-726.

totus—deci. of, 76; in pred. attrib., 325, R.6; with Abl. of Place Where, 388; with Time How Long, 393, R.2. towns - with Acc., 337; in Abl. of Place Where, 386; in Abl. of Place Whence, 391; in Loc., 411; with preps., 337, N. 3. 391, R. 1; with appositives, 337, R. 2, 386, R. 1, 391, R. 1, 411, R. 3.

trāctātū-as Sup., 436,N.

trade-suffixes for, 181,4.

tradere—with Acc. Ger., 430, N.1; with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.2.

tradesman-suffixes for, 181,3.

training-vbs. of, with Abl., 401, N.1.

trajection-696.

trāns—in composition, 9,4; vbs. cpd. with take Acc., 331; as prep., 416,26.

transitive verb—defined, 213; used intraus., ib. R.a.

transposition-of consonants, 9,8.

tres-decl. of, 95.

trial—vbs. of, with sī, 460,1,b; with implied protasis, 601.

tribes-in Abl. of Origin, 395, N.2.

tribuere-with ut, 553,2.

tribūtum-heteroclite, 68,5.

tricorporis-defective, 85,1.

trini-97, R.3.

trītum-with Inf., 422, N.3.

trochee—shortened by Iambic Law, 717; trochaic foot, 734; rhythm, 736; rhythms, 768-776.

tū—decl. of, 101 and n.1; synizesis in, ib. n.4; with met and -pte, 102, nn.2, 3; vestrī and vestrum, 304, 2 and 3, 364, n.; poss. pron. for, 304, 2, n.2; tuī, vestrī, with Ger., 428, n.1.

tueri-with Acc. and Inf , 527, R.1.

tum—with subst., 439,N.4; with etiam, 478,N.1; as coördinating particle, 482,1 and N 1; tum—tum, 482,1 and N.1; cum—tum, 588; correlative of sI, 590, N.1.

tuus (0s)-101 and n 3; tuum with ut, 557, R; tui with Gen. Ger., 428, R.1.

U-length of Final-707,6.

ubi-as soon as, with Indic., 561-563; Causal, with Indic., 564, N.1 565 and N.1; with Iterative action, 566, 567; with Subjv, 567, N.; Conditional, 590, N.3.

üllus—decl. of, 76; and quisquam, 107, 3, N. 2, 108; syntax of, 317.

ūls-416,27.

ulterior-87,8; ultimus in pred. attrib., 325, R.6.

ultimate-defined, 11.

ültrā—with Abl. of Measure, 403, N.1; position of, 413, R.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416,27.

uncertainty—vbs. of, with quin, 555,2. understatement—definition of, 700.

undertaking-vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430. unimanus-defective, 85,2.

unlikeness—adjs. of, with atque (ac), 643.

UNREAL CONDITION—597; with Impf. of opposition to Past, ib. R. 1; with Indic. in Apod., ib. RR 2.3; in O. O., ib. R. 4, 659; Apod. in, after vb. requiring Subjv., 597, R. 5; with absque, ib. N.

unus—decl. of, 76, 95, N 1; Pl. with pluralia tantum, 95, R.1; as distributive,
97, R 3; with superlative, 303; with
quidam, 313, R.3; with quisquam, 317,
1, N.1; with nēmö, nūllus, 317, 2, N.3; in
pred. attrib., 325, R.6; with prep. for
Part. Gen., 372, R.2; with qui and
Subjv., 631.1.

ünusquisque-107,5.

urbs—with name of Town, requires prep., 337, R. 2, 386, R. 1, 391, R. 1, 411, R. 3; with Appositional Gen., 361, N. 1.

urgērī—with Gen. of Charge, 378.R.1. urging—vbs. of, with ut, 546.

usque-with Acc. of Motion Whither, 337, N.4; usage of, as prep., 416,28.

\textbf{usus} - with Abl., 406; with other constr.,
ib.n.5; as pred., ib.; with Pf. part., 406,
437,n.2; in phrases with ut, 557,R.;
\textbf{usu} venit, with ut, 553,3.

ut-in wishes, 261; with quam, to express disproportion, 298, 631,3,R 1; omitted, 298, R.2; with potuit, to strengthen superlative, 303; ut-ita, 482,4; after vbs. of Adding and Happening, 525,1,N.5; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543; ut non. ib. 4, 545, R.2, 552; parenthetical, ib. R 3; ut nē, 545, R.1, 546, R 3; after vbs. of Fear, 550 and N.1; to add restriction. 552.R.3; after vb. of Causation, 553.1; after vbs. of Compelling and Permitting, ib. 2; after vbs. of Happening, ib. 3; after impersonals, ib. 4; Explanatory, 557; Exclamatory, 558; with magis quam, 557, N 2; ut prīmum, as soon as, with Indic., 561-563; Causal, 564, N.; with Iterative sentences, 566. 567; nisi ut, 557, N.2, 591 R 3; with sī and Subjv., 602; with Subjv., to give an Assumed Reason, ib. N.4; Concessive, 608 and R.1; with qui, 626,R.1; after comparatives, 631,3,R.1; with quisque and superlative, 642,R.2; prō eō ut, as Causal, ib. R.4; ut qui, with superlative, ib. R.5; introduces ō. O. after vbs. of Will and Desire, 652,R.1; with part. to give Assumed Reason, 666,N.

ūter, bag-decl. of, 44,2, 45, R.1.

uter, which—decl. of, 76, 106; quis for, 300, N.; utrum as interrogative particle, 458; in Indirect Question, 460, 2, N. 3; utrum, whether or no, 459, N. 2.

uterlibet-108.

uterque—decl. of, 108; with Pl. vb., 211, R.1, Ex. a, 292, R.; to express reciprocal action, 221, R.1 and 2; force of, 292; with Part. Gen., 371, R.1.

uterum-heterogeneous, 32,1,N.

utervīs-108.

ūtI—with Abl., 407 and N.2,α; other constrs. of, ib. N.3; with personal Ger., 427, N.5.

utinam-in wishes, 261 and N. 1.

utpote-with qui, 626, N.1.

V—and u, 1.R.2; pronunciation of, 7.
vacāre—with Dat., 346, N.2; attraction of pred. after, 535, R.3.

vacuus-with Gen., 374, N.8.

vae-with Dat., 343,1.N.1.

valde-very, 439, N.3; with quam and Indic., 467, N.

valere-with Inf., 423,2,N.2; with ut, 553.1.

validus-with Abl. or Gen., 405, N.3.

vās-heteroclite, 68,7.

ve-usage of, 495; ve-ve, ib. N.2.

vehementer-very. 439, N. 3.

vel-with superlative, 303; usage of, 494; vel-vel, ib. 2; for example, ib. n.1; as well as, ib. n.3.

velle—conjugation of, 174; exact use of Fut. or Fut. Pf., 242, N.2 and R.3; has no periphrasis, 248, R., 531, N.3; velim, 257,2; vellem, as Potential, 258, N.1; vellem, as Uureal, 261, R.; with Subjv. for Impv., 270, N.2; with Pf. Inf. act., 280, 2.6, and N.1; with Pf. Inf. pass., 280, 2.6, N.; volēns in pred. attrib., 325, R.6; sibī velle, 351, N.2; volentī est., 353, N.2; with Inf. or ut, 532, and N.3, 546, R.1; with Inf., 423, 2, N.2; with ut, 546, N.1.

velut—with Subjv., 602; with part. to give Assumed Reason, 666, N.

velutsi-with Subjv., 602.

vēnālis-with Abl., 404, N.4.

vēndere-with Gen. of Price, 379; bene vēndere, 380,2,R.

venire—omitted, 209,N 5; venit mihi in mentem, with Gen., 376,R.3; with Sup., 435,N.1; ventūrus as adj., 438, N.; in sūspīcionem, with Nom. and Inf., 528,N.2; with Inf., 422,N 5; ūsū venit, with ut. 553.3.

vēnīre—pass. of vēndere, 169,2,R.1; with Gen. of Price, 379.

venter-decl. of, 44,2, 45,R.1.

verbals—defined, 179,1; pred. agreement of, 211; subst. with Acc., 330,N.3, 337, N.5; adj. with Acc., ib. N.4; in bils, with Dat., 355,N.; in āx, with Gen., 375; formation of rerbalia, 191.

verbs-defined, 16,4; conjugation of, 17; inflection of, 114; deponents, 113; personal endings, 114; regular, 120,ff.; classes of, 133; Stem or Thematic class, 133,I.; Reduplicated Class, ib. II.; T-class, ib. III.; Nasal class, ib. IV.; Inchoative class, ib. V.; i class, ib. VI.; mixed class, ib. VII.; list of, 137-162; Deponents, 163-166; Semi-deponents, 167; Irregular, 168-174; Defective, 175; formation of, 190-200: division of, 190; Verbalia, 191; Denominative, 192; composition of, 199, 200; Impersonal, 203; intrans, used personally, ib. 2; Concord of, 210, 211, 235-287; trans. and intrans., 213; trans. used as intrans., ib. R.a; intrans. used as trans., ib.

verbum—with Appositional Gen., 361,1; in phrases with ut, 546, N. 2.

verērI—constr. with, 550 and n.1; veritus as Pr., 232.n.; with Inf., 423,2,n.2, 533,n.1.

vērīsimile—in phrases with Inf., 422, N. 3; in phrases with ut, 553,4.

vērō—position of, 413, n.3; yes, 471, a,1; with atque, 477, n.2; with sed, 485, n.3; syntax of, 487; with nisi, 591, n.4; with sin, 592.

verse-745; methods of combining, 746; Italic, 755; Saturnian, 756; compound, 820, 823.

versification—729-823; anacrustic scheme of, 739.

versus—position of, 413, R.1; usage as prep., 416,29; rersus Italicus—755. vertere—with Final Dat., 356, R.2.

vērum—introduces contrast to demonstrative, 307, R.4; yes, 471.a,1; with etiam, 482,5 and N.1; syntax of, 486; with Inf, 422, N.3; with ut, 553,4.

very-translations of. 439, N.3.

vesci-with Abl., 407 and N.2,e; with personal Ger, 427, N.5.

vesper - decl. o., 68,10; in Abl. of Time, 393, 85; vesperi-37,5, 411, 81.

vester-101 and N.3.

vetāre—with Acc., 346, N.3; with Inf., 423, 2, NN.3 and 6, 532, N 1 and 2.

vetus—decl. of, 82,2; comp. of, 87,1,8.2. viā—as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.

vicissim—gives reciprocal relation, 221.
R.2; as coördinating particle, 482,1,
N.2.

vidēre—with Acc. and Inf., 527, n.2; with ut, 546, n 1; with nē, 548, n.1; with Direct Question, 467, n.; with two Noms. in pass., 206; vidērī, and vidētur, 528, n.2; vidē, with Subjv. for Impv., 271, n.2, 548, n.3; viderīs, as Impv., 245, n.

vilis-with Abl. of Price, 404.N.2.

vincere-with Abl. of Respect, 397, N.2; causam, 333,2.R.

violentus-and violens, 84,1.

vīrus-defective, 70, C.

vis-70,D; with Pl. vb., 211,R.1,Ex.a; vi, as Abl. of Manner, 399,N 1.

-vis-with relatives, 111,3.

vitium—with Epexegetical Gen., 361,2; with Inf., 422, N.2; vitio as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.

vivere-with Abl., 407, N.2,e.

[vix]-70,D; tuam vicem, 334,R.2.

vocative—defined, 23,5; in **i**, 33,R.2; in adjs. of 1st and 2d Decl., 73; no syntax of, 201,R.1; Nom. instead, *ib*. R.2; in app., *ib*. R.3; in pred., 211,R.3; Sg. with Pl. vb., *ib*. N.2; Nom. instead, 321, N.1; in pred. app., 325,R.1; with or pro, 343,1,8.1.

voice—112,2, 212; act., 213; pass., 214; middle, 212,N.

voluntās—in phrases with ut, 546, N.2; voluntāte as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1. volup—indeclinable, 85, C.

vomer-decl. of, 45, R.2.

vowels--2; sounds of, 3; phonetic varia-

tions in, 8; weakening of, ib. 1; omission of, ib. 2; epenthesis of, ib. 3; assimilation of, ib. 4; quantity of final, 707; suffixes with 184.

vox—with Appositional Gen., 361,1.

vox—with Appositional Gen., 361,1. vulgo—as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1. vultus—heteroclite, 68,5.

Want—vbs. of, with Abl, 405; adjs. of, with Gen. and Abl., ib. N.3.

warning-vbs. of, with ut. 546.

weakening of vowels—8,1, 701,R.2. weight—substs. of, with Gen., 369. will—vbs. of, with Inf., 280,2,c, 423,2,532;

sequence after vbs. of, 515, R.3; ut instead of Inf. after, 532, N.1-4; with Final

sentence, 546; with Inf. instead, ib. R.1; with simple Subjv., ib. R.2.

wishes—in Subjv., 260, 261; apodosis omitted with, 601.

without-translated by ut non, 552,R.4; quin, 556; cum non, 587,R.2.

wonder—constr. with vbs. of, 542.N.1. words—Formation of, 176-200.

Y-1, R.3; length of final, 707,3. yes—trans. of, 471,a and c. yielding—vbs. of, with Dat., 346.

Z—when introduced, 1, R.3; sound of, ib. N. zeugma -690.

### SYNTAX OF INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS.

The syntactical usage of individual authors is treated as follows:

Accius-358, N.1; 525, 1, N.1.

AFRANIUS-498, N.1.

APULEIUS—336.N.1; 365,N.; 406,N.3; 498, N.1; 591,N.3; 607,N.3; 626,N.1.

CAELIUS-574,N.

CAESAR-208.2, N.2; 209, N.5; 228. N.1; 239, N.; 250, N.1 and 2; 260; 280, 2, c, N.; 285, N.2; 286 3.N.; 311,1,R.2; 323,N.1; 324; 335, N.; 336, N.2; 337, N.1; 341, N.2; 349, R.5; 354.N.2; 356 N.2 and 3; 358,N.3; 359,N.1; 369, N.2; 372, N.2 and 3; 374, N.1 and 9; 375, N.2; 381, N.4; 386, N.; 391, N.; 395, N.2; 401, N.7; 407, N.2, d; 410, N.4; 413, R.1; 415; 416,2,3,8 15,16,19,22, and 24; 418,2; 422, N.2; 423, N.2 and 3; 427, N.2; 429, N.1; 432, N.1; 435, N.2; 436, N.1; 443, N.3; 458, N 1; 460,2, N.1 and 2; 467, N; 475, N.3; 476, N.5; 478, N.2; 480 N.2 and 3; 482.3; 482.5, R.2 and N.1; 496, N.1; 503; 512, N.1; 513, N.1 and 2; 525,2, N.3; 527, R.3; 528, N.1; 538, N.4; 541, N.1 and 3; 542, N.1; 545, R.1; 549, N.

1 and 2; 563, N.2 and 3; 567, N.; 569, N.1; 571, N.3; 591, R.2 and N.2; 602, N.5; 615, N.; 616.1, N.1; 626, N.1; 627, R.2; 636, N.1; 644,

R.3: 647, N.2; 650 N; 666.N.

B. Hisp.—407, N.2,d; 416,8. B. Afr.—407, N.2,d; 417,7.

Cato—285, N.2; 394, 3.N.1; 401, N.7; 407, N.2; 417.7; 418.4; 437, N.2; 477, N.5; 548, N.3; 574, N.

CATULLUS- 207,N.; 236,N.: 380; 417.3: 454, N.2; 455,N.; 458,N.1; 477,N.5; 480,N.3; 546,N.3; 567,N; 644,N.2.

CELSUS-- 602, N.4.

CICERO - 204, N.7; 206, N.1; 209, N.3 and 5; 211, R.4 and N.3, 214, R.2; 228, N.1; 239, N.; 242, R.3; 245, N.; 250, N.1 and 2; 252, N.; 254, R.6 and NN 1.2; 257, N.1; 261; 269; 271, 2.N 2; 280, 2.c, N.; 285, N.2; 293, N.; 298, N.1; 319, N.2; 323, N.1; 318, N.1; 319, N.2; 323, N.1; 324; 336, N.2; 337, N.1, 2, and 4; 341, N.2; 343, N.1; 346, N.1 and 2; 347, R.2; 343, N.1; 346, N.1 and 2; 347, R.2; 349,

R.5; 351, N.1; 352, N.; 354, N.2; 356, R.3 and N.3; 357; 358, N.3 and 5; 361, N.1; 362, N.1; 364, N.1; 369, N.2; 372, N.2 and 3; 374, N.1, 2,4, and 5; 375, N.2 and 3; 376, R. 1,2, and 3; 380,1, N.1 and 4; 383, N.1. 385, N.1: 386.N.: 390.2.N.2 and 3: 391.N.: 395. N.1 and 2; 396, N.1; 398, N.1; 403, N.4; 406, N.5; 407, N.2,d; 410, N.4; 411, R.1 and 2, and N.1; 413,R.1; 416.1,2,3,5,7.13,14,15, 16,19,24,25,28, and 29; 417,1,N.3 and 14; 418.4; 422, N.2, 3, and 5; 423, N.2 and 3; 427. N.2 and 5; 428. R.2 and N.1; 429, N.1; 432, N.1; 435, N.1; 436, N.1; 438, N.; 439, N. 2,3 and 4; 443, N.3; 453, N.1; 457,1, N 1 and 2, 2 and N.; 458, N.1; 459, N.1; 460,1, N.2; 467, N.; 476, N.5; 477, N.4 and 5; 478, N.2; 480, R.1 and N.3; 481, N.; 482, 1, N.1 and 2, 2, 3, and 5, R.2 and N.1; 484, N.1 and 2; 485, N.1 and 2; 486, N.; 488, N.1 and 2; 489, N.1; 491. N.; 493, N.1; 494, N.1; 495; 496, N.1; 497; 498, N.3, 4, 6 and 8; 501; 503; 511,R.4; 513,R.1 and NN.1,2; 525,1, N.1 and 4, 2, N.2 and 3; 527, R.1 and 3, and N.2; 528, N.1 and 2; 532, N.1 and 3; 533, R.1; 536, N.1; 538, N.4; 541, N.1, 2, 3 and 5; 542, R. and N.1; 543, N.3; 548, N.3; 549, N.1,2 and 4; 550, N.1,2 and 5; 553,1; 555, R.1; 563, N.2,3,4 and 5; 567, N.; 569, N.1; 571, N.2 and 3; 573, N.2; 574, N.; 576, N.1; 577, N.4 and 5; 580, N.3; 590, N.1; 591, R.4 and N.2; 602, N.5; 604, R.2; 605, N.; 606, N. 1: 608; 615, N.; 616, 1, N.2, and 2, N.; 617. N.1; 626, N.1; 627, R.1 and 2; 635, N.1 and 2; 636, N.1; 643, N.4; 644, R.3; 647, N.2;

666, N.; 677 N. COLUMELLA—592, N.

CORNIFICIUS—439, N.3; 500, R.; 549, N.4. CURTIUS—416, 16; 532, N.1.

DICTYS-545, R.1.

ENNIUS-411, R.2; 476, N.5.

FLORUS-467,N; 525,2,N.2. FRONTO-525,2,N.3.

GAIUS-525, 2, N.3. GELLIUS-580, N.3.

HIRTIUS-423, N.2: 532, N.1.

HORACE—211, R.1, Ex.a,N.; 271,2,N 2; 301; 346,N.2; 351,N.1; 416,5,17,19, and 21; 417.8; 418,4; 421,N.1,c; 422,N.4; 427.N.2; 439,N.3; 454,N.2; 457,N.2; 458,N.1

and 2; 460,2,n.3; 477,n.8; 480,n.1; 482, 3; 498,n.1; 500,n.; 525,1,n.1, 2,n.2; 533, n.1; 536,n.1; 538,n.5; 541,n.5; 563,n.3; 569,n.1; 591,n.2; 592,n.; 616,1,n.2; 644, n.2.

JUVENAL-602, N.4; 605, N.

LIVY-204, N.8; 209, N.3; 211, R.1, Ex.a, N.; 247, N.1; 249, N.; 250, N.1 and 2; 285, Ex. 3 and N 2; 293 N.; 311,1,R.2, 2,N.: 317,N. 1; 319 N.1; 323, N.1; 335, N.; 337, N.4; 338, N.1; 346, N.2; 347, R.2; 350,1, N.; 351, N.1; 353, N.2; 356, N.2; 359, N.1 and 4; 363,R.1; 366,R1; 371,N.; 372,N.1 and 4; 373, R 1; 374, N 2 and 3; 383, N.1; 385, N. 1; 390,2.N.3; 391,R 1 and N.; 395,N.1; 399, N.1 and 3; 401, N.2 and 6; 403, N.3; 406, N.3; 410, N 2,3, and 4; 411, R.1 and N.1; 413, N.1; 415: 416, 2, 7, 15, 16, 22, 23, 24, and 28; 417,1,8,10,11, and 14; 418,2, and 4; 423, N.2; 427, N.2; 429,2 and N.1; 430, N.1; 435, N.2; 436, N.1; 437, N.2; 438, N.; 439, N.3 and 4; 442, N.3; 443, N.4; 457,1,N.3; 458,N.1; 460,2,N.3; 467,N.; 477, N.4,5 and 9; 478, N.1 and 2; 480, N.3; 482,1, N.1,2 and 5, R.2 and N.1; 497; 498, N.1,3, and 8; 502, N.3; 503; 513, N.1 and 2; 525,1,N.1 and 7 and 2,N.2; 532,N.1; 536, N.1; 541, N. 2 and 5; 542, R and N.2; 543, N.3; 545, R.1; 549 N 1; 550, N.5; 555, 2, N.; 557, R. and N.2; 563, N.2, 3, and 5; 567, N.; 569, N.1; 570, N.4; 571, N.6; 576, N.2; 577, N.3,4, and 5; 597, R.5; 602, N.5; 615, N.; 616,1, N.1 and 2, and 2, N.; 626, N. 1; 635, N.2; 636, N.1; 644, R.3; 651, R.1; 666, N. ; 687.

Lucan-254, n.1; 458, n.1. Lucilius-383, 1, n.2; 496, n.1.

LUCRETIUS—372, N.2; 383.1, N.2; 405, N.3; 406, N.6; 422, N 4; 459, N.1; 480, N.2; 482, 1, N.1; 496, N.1; 500, R.; 525, 1, N.1; 533, R.1; 564, N.1; 571, N.4; 606, N.1; 636, N.1.

MARTIAL-280,2,b, N.1.

NAEVIUS-533, N.1.

Nepos—249,N.; 250,N.2; 356,R.3; 408,N.2, c; 416,10; 513,N.1; 536,N.1; 555,2,N.; 571,N.4; 605,N.; 606,N.1; 687.

OVID—270,N.; 280,2,b,N.1; 349,R.5; 364, N.1; 401,N.7; 411,R.2; 416,7; 417,7; 427, N.2; 494,N.3; 525,1,N.; 545,R.1; 616,N.2. PETRONIUS-207, N.; 525,1, N.1.

PLAUTUS—206,N.1; 211,R.1, Ex.a,N.; 270, N.1; 330,N.3; 336,N.1; 347,R.2; 357,N; 356,N.1; 361,N.1; 374,N.1,2,3, and 5; 375,N.3; 383,1,N.2, and 3; 398,N.2; 406, N.6; 407,N.2; 411,R.1; 415; 416,6,7,16, 19,21, and 24; 417,7; 418,4; 422,N.2; 439,N.3; 454,N.2; 455,N.; 467,N.; 476,N.3 and 5; 477,N.1 and 6; 478,N.2; 487,N.1; 494,N.1 and 6; 478,N.2; 487,N.1; 494,N.1 and 6; 496,N.1; 498,N.3; 502,N.3; 525,1,N.4 and 2,N.2; 533,R.1; 538,N.1 and 3; 541,N.1; 545,R.1; 546,N.3; 548,N.3; 569,N.2; 577,N.5; 580,N.1; 571,N.5; 576,N.1; 577,N.5; 580,N.1 and 3; 597,N.; 602,N.5; 610,N.1; 615,N.; 626,N.1; 643,N.3; 677,N.

PLINY MAIOR—381, N 3; 398, N 2; 460, 2, N 3; 467, N .; 482, 2; 498, 1, N .1; 592, N .

PLINY MINOR—209, N.5; 252, N.; 418,4; 460, 2, N.3; 538, N.5; 548, N.3; 602, N 4; 605, N; 616.1, N.2.

Pollio-410, N.3.

PROPERTIUS—406, N. 3; 421, N. 1, c; 457, 1, N. 2; 458, N. 1; 480, N. 2 and 3; 498, N. 1.

QUADRIGARIUS-407, N.2, b.

QUINTILIAN—359,N.5; 406,N 3; 512,N 1; 525.2,N.2; 538,N.5; 602,N.4; 604,R 2; 627,R.1.

SALLUST-207, N.; 208, 2, N.2; 247, N.1; 250, N.1: 280,2,c,N.: 285,N.2: 286,3,N.: 311,1, R.2; 323, N.1; 338, N.1; 347, R.2; 349, R.4; 353, N.2; 356, N.3; 359, N.1 and 5; 369, N. 2: 372.N.2 and 3: 374.N.1.3, and 8: 390. 3, N.1; 391, N.; 407, N.2, d; 410, N.1, 2 and 4; 416, 2, 4, 7, 16, 20 and 24; 417, 7; 418, 4; 423, N.2; 428, R.2; 435, N.2; 436, N.1; 437, N.2; 439, N.3; 460, 2, N.1; 467, N.; 475, N.3; 476, N.5: 478.N.2: 480.N 3: 482,3 and 5,R.2 and N.1; 488, N.2; 491, N.; 496, N.1; 501; 503; 512, N.1; 513, N.1; 525, 2, N 2, 532, N.1; 536, N.1; 538, N.1; 541, N. 2 and 3, 542, N 1; 545, R.1; 548, N.3; 563, N.2; 569, N.1; 591, R.2; 604, R.2; 616,1, N.1 and 2; 626, N.1; 636, N.1.

SENECA—374, N.3; 616,1, N.2; 635, N.2. SENECA RHETOR—445, N.

SUETONIUS — 349,R.5; 407,N.2,c; 416,22; 513,N.1; 542,R.; 546,N.3; 577 N.5; 602, N.4; 665,N.2.

TACITUS -208,2, N.2; 209, N.3; 211, R.1, Ex. a, N.; 254, N.1; 285, Ex.3 and N.2; 346, N.

3; 353,N.2; 354,N.2; 356,N.2; 359,N.5; 364, N.1; 372,N.2; 376,R.1; 390,3.N.1; 401,N.6 and 7; 407,N.2,a; 410,N.2 and 4; 411,N. 1; 416,10,16,23 and 24; 417,3 and 12; 423,N.3; 428,R.2 and N.4; 432,N.1; 437, N.2; 442, N.3; 443,N.4; 460,2,N.3; 475, N.1; 476,N.5; 477,N.4; 480,N.3; 482,2,3 and 5,N.1; 484,N.2; 493,N.2; 496,N.1; 497; 513,N.1; 525,1.N.7, and 2,N.2 and 3; 532,N.1; 538,N.5; 542,R. and N.1; 546, N.3; 563,N.2; 3 and 5; 567,N.; 569,N.1; 571,N.1 and 3; 573,N.1; 575,N.2; 576,N. 1; 602,N.4; 604,R.2; 605,N.; 616,1,N.2; 635,N.2; 647,N.2; 666,N.; 687.

TERENCE—211, B I, Ex. a, N; 271, N 2; 285, N.2; 337, N 4; 358, N.1; 361, N 1; 383, 1, N 2; 339, N.1; 407, N.2; 411, B 2; 415; 416, 1,6, and 28; 423, N 2; 428, B 2; 439, R 3; 454, N 2; 455, N, 1; 482 5 R 2; 487, N 1; 489, N, 1; 449, N, 1; 449, N, 1; 574, N, 1; 574, N, 1; 545, R 1; 549, N 2; 576, N 1; 575, N 1; 576, N 1; 576, N 1; 576, N 1; 576, N 1; 610, N 1; 615, N 1; 626, N 1; 644, N 2; 677, N

TIBULLUS — 455,N.: 457,1,N 2; 458,N.1: 498,N.1.

Valerius Maximus — 285, n.2; 432, n.1; 460, 2, n.3; 538, n.5; 577, n.5.

Varno—416,7,15, and 23; 422,N.4; 427,N. 2; 437,N.2; 449,R.3; 574,N.; 606,N.1. Vatinius—606,N.1.

Velleius-209, N.5; 285, N.2; 349, R.5; 391, N.: 460, 2.N.3; 513, N.2.

VERGIL — 211 R.1, Ex.a, N.; 230, N.2; 269; 276,2, N.2; 301; 336, N.1; 346, N.2; 374, N.3; 383,1, N.2 and 3; 390,2, N.4; 411, R. 2; 417, 3; 421, N.1, c; 422, N.4; 442, N.3; 443, N.1; 458, N.3; 477, N.5; 480, N.2; 482, 1, N.1 and 2; 485, N.3; 525, 1, N.1; 542, N.1; 546, N.3; 563, N.2; 591, R.2; 644, N.2. VITRUVIUS—353, N.1; 386, N.; 416, 5 and 25; 418, 3; 439, N.3; 536, N.1; 549, N.2; 571, N.4.

THE HISTORIANS—209, N.5; 211, R.1, Ex.b; 214, R.2; 363, R.1; 391, N.; 484, N.2; 485, N.1; 487, N.1; 491; 501, N.; 567, N.; 628, R. THE POETS—211, R.1, Ex.a, N. and R.4; 217, N.1 and 2; 230, N.2; 241, N.1; 261; 269; 270; 271, 2, N.2; 280, 2, 2 and N.2; 290, N.2; 295, N.; 296, N.1, 3, and 4; 321, N.1; 332, 2, N.2 and 3; 333, 2, N.6; 336, N.3; 337, N.

1 and 2; 338, N.1 and 2; 346, N.6; 350,1, N.; 351, N.1; 352, N.; 354, N.2; 358; 361, N.1; 362, N.1; 373, R.1; 374, N.1, 3, 6, 8, and 10; 375; 383,1,N.1; 385,N.1; 386,N.; 390, 3, N.1. and 2; 391, N; 394, 3, N.1; 396, N.1 and 3; 397, N.2; 401, N.4 and 6; 404, N.1; 407, N. 2,e; 413, R.1 and 3, and N.1; 416, 14, and 20; 417,5,12, and 24; 418,3 and 4; 421, N.1; 427, N.5; 428, N.2 and 3; 435, N 1; 436, N.1 and 3; 437, N 1; 439, N. 2; 440,R.; 446,N.2; 449,R.3; 454,N.3; 457,1, N.3; 460,2, N.2; 467, N.; 476, N.2,3, and 5; 477, N.4; 482,3; 488, N.1 and 2; 495, N.2; 496, N.1; 498, N.1 and 5; 502, N. 1; 525,1,N.7; 527,N.2; 532,N.1 and 6; 535, R.3; 536, N.2; 538, N.5; 546, R.2 and N.3; 552.R 2; 591,N.2; 604,R.2; 617,N. 2; 631,2,N.1; 683.

THE COMIC POETS—211,R 1,Ex.a,N.; 228, N.1; 242,N.2; 243, 244,N.1; 247,N.2; 263,2,N.; 267,N.; 269; 280,2,C.N.; 346,N.1; 351,N.1; 406,N.2; 416,4; 443,N.4; 453, N.1 and 2; 467,N.; 468,N.; 477,N.3; 553,1; 617,N.2.

LATER PROSE—211, R.1, Ex.a, N; 217, N.1 and 2; 221, R.2; 269; 361, N.1; 372, N.3; 374, N.1 and 3; 375; 386, N.; 390, 2, N.3; 404, N.1; 413, N.1; 415; 416, 20, 23, 25, and 27; 417, 6; 427, N.5; 428, N.1, 2, and 3; 449, R.3; 460, 1,a; 467, N.; 476, N.5; 477, N. 4; 528, R.2 and N.4; 535, R.3; 538, N.5; 546, R.2; 555, 2, N.; 569, N.1.

ANTECLASSICAL LATIN-211, N.1 and 2; 220, N.2; 221, R.2; 241, N.1; 248, N.1; 254, N.2; 257, N.1; 260; 261, N.2; 271,1, N 1 and 2, and 2, N.1 and 2; 272,3,N.; 280,2,a.R.2; 293, N.; 296, N.1; 301; 303; 309, N.2; 319, N.1; 330, N.2; 339, N.1; 341, N. 2; 346, N.2; 347.R.1; 350.1.N.; 373.R.1; 374.N.4; 375. N.2; 383,1, N.2; 385, N.2; 390,2, N 1; 390, N.3; 391,R.2 and N.; 395,N.2; 397,N.2; 399, N.1; 403, N.3; 407, N.2; 408, N.6; 410, N.1,4, and 5; 413,R.1; 416, 10, 12, 16, 23, 24, and 27; 417,2,9, and 10; 421, N.1; 422, N. 2 and 4; 423, N. 2 and 3; 427, N. 2; 428 N.1; 429 N.1; 430 N.1; 432 N.1; 433. N.2; 436, N.1 and 4; 437, N.2; 439, N.3; 442, N.3; 443, N.1 and 4; 444, 1, N.2; 454, N.1 and 5; 456, N.; 457, 1, N.1, 2, and 3, and 2, N.; 459, N.2; 475, N.1; 476, N.1, 2, and 5; 479, N.1; 480, N.1; 482, 1, N.1, and 5, N.1; 487, N.2; 488, N.1; 495, N.1; 498, N.5, 6, and 7; 500; 503; 513, N.1; 525, 1, N.2, 6, and 7, and 2, N.2, and 3; 527, R.3; 528, N.1; 536, N.1;

537, N.2; 541, N.5; 542, R. and N.2; 546; N.3; 549, N.4; 550, N.1 and 2; 553, 3, N.; 557, R.; 563, N.1, 2, and 5; 564, N.1; 571, N.2, 3, and 5; 574, N.; 576, N.1; 577, N.1; 580, N.3; 591, R.2 and N.2; 602, N.5; 614, N.; 617, N.1 and 2; 626, N.1 and 2; 627, R.1; 634, N.; 636, N.1; 651, R.1.

CLASSICAL LATIN-220, N.1; 241, N.1; 260; 263, 2, N.; 269; 270, N.; 282, N.; 285, Ex.3; 301; 303; 309, N.2; 318, N.2; 830, N.2; 339, N.1 and 4; 342; 343, N.1: 346, N.2: 347, R.1; 348, R.2; 356, R.2; 359, N.4; 363, N.; 374. N.1,2,3,4, 5, and 9; 381, N.1; 383,1; 385. R.1 and N.1,2, and 3; 390,2,N.1, and 2; 391, R.1; 393, R.5; 394, N.1; 398; 399, N.1; 401, N.2 and 6; 403, N.3 and 4; 407, N.2; 408, N.6; 410, N.1, 2,5 and 6; 413, R.3; 418, 9,12,16,23, and 29; 417,9 and 11; 421, N. 1 and 2; 422, N.4; 423, N.4; 429,1 and 2; 430, N 1; 432, N.1; 437, 1; 438, N.; 439, N.3; 442, N 3; 444,1, N.2; 449, R.3; 460,1, N.1, and 2, N.3; 467, N.; 475, N.2; 477, N.8; 479, N.1; 482,4,N; 494,N.2 and 8; 498,N.3 and 4; 500, R.; 501, N.; 502, N.1; 503; 511, R.1; 525,1, N.1; 528, R.2, and N.1; 532, N.1,3, and 4; 535, R.3; 537, N.2; 538, N. 2 and 3; 541, N.1 and 2; 545, R.1; 546, N.3; 549, N.1; 556; 571, N.2; 602, N.1; 610, N.1; 631, 3, R. 1; 643, N.3: 644, R.3; 651, R.1.

POST-CLASSICAL LATIN-211, R.2; 239, N.; 241, N.2; 247, N.1; 251, N.2; 254, R.6, and N.2; 257, N.1; 271, 2, N.2; 292, N.; 296, N. 1 and 2; 298, N.1; 299, N.2; 301; 309, N.2; 319,N.1; 330,N.4; 333,2,N.6; 337, N.1 and 2; 338, N.2; 339, N.1 and 3; 346, N.2; 349, R.5; 355, N.; 356, R.3; 362, N.1 and 2; 366, R.2; 374, N.2 and 3; 378,R.4; 380,1,N.2; 390,3,N.1; 391,N.; 393,R 5; 397,N.2; 398,N.1: 399,N.2; 403, N.4; 405, N.3; 407, N.2; 408, N.6; 410, N.1, 2,3, and 5; 411, R.1; 415; 416,7,10,12,14, 16,17,18, and 22; 417,7; 418,4; 422, N.2,4, and 5; 423, N.2 and 3; 431, N.1 and 3; 432, N.1; 433; 435, N.1; 436, N.1; 437, N.1; 438, N.; 439, N.2 and 3; 479, N.1 and 2; 480, N.1; 482,1, N.1 and 2, 3,4, N., and 5, N.1 and 2; 494, N.2; 498, N.1, 3,6, and 8; 503; 513, N.2; 525,1,N.7, and 2,N.2; 528, R.2; 532, N.1; 541, N.1; 543, N.3; 545, R.1; 546, N.3; 549, N.2; 553, 2, N. and 4, R.2; 557, N.2; 563, N.4 and 5; 573, N.2; 576, N. 2; 590, N.1; 595, R.6; 602, N.5; 605, N.; 606, N.1; 616, 2, N.; 625, 1, R. and 2, R.; 626, N.1; 669; 677,N.

# PARALLEL REFERENCES OF THE OLD AND NEW EDITIONS.

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
1-7	1-7	70	64	149, 150	129
8	10	71, 72	65	151	131
9	11	73	65, R. I and 2.	152	133
10	12,1 and 2	74	67, 68	153	134
11	13	75	69	154	135
12	14	76	70	155	121,R.
13	12,3	77	68	156	136
14	15	78	67	157-181	137-162
15	16	79	68	182	167
16	17	80	71	183	168
17	18	81	72	184	169,1
18	19	82	78	185	169,2, 170
19	20	83	82	186	171
20	21	84	80	187	172
21	23	85,1-3	82	188	173
22	24.2	85,4	83, N.1 and 2.	189	174
23	24,1	86	86	190	175
24	25	87	89	191	130, 131
25	26	88	87	192	201
26,1	26, R.	89	90	193	202
26,2	28	90	91	194	203
27	29	90,1	91,2,8	194,R.2	201,R.2
28	30	90,2	92,1	195	204
29	31, 33	90,3	91,2,0	196	205
30	34	90,4	91,1,0	197	206
31	81, 33	91	93	198	207
32	32,2,74	92	95	199	208
33, 34	73	93	94	200	209
35	76	94	96	201	210
36, 37	35	95	97	202	211
38, 39	36	96	98	203	212
40	39	97	99	204	213
41	40	98	100	205	214
42	41	99	101	206	215
43	42	100	102	207	216
44	43	101	103	208	217
45	44	102	104	209	218
45, R.	44, N.	103	105	210	219
46	44,2	104	106	211	220
47	46	105	107	212	221
48	47	106	109	213	222
49	48	107	110	214	223
50	49	108	111	215	224
51	50	109	112,1-4	216	225
52	51	110	112,5	217	226
53	52	111	114	218	227
54	52,6	112	116	219	228
54, R.	54	113	117	220	229
55	53, <b>1</b> -6	114	118	221	230
56	53,7 and 8	115	119	222	231
57	55	116-118	120	223	232
58, 59	56	119-122	122	224	233
60	57	123-126	123	225, 226	234
61	58	127,129,130		227	235
62	59	128	135,I.a	228	236
63-66	60	131-134	125	229	237
67	61	135~138	127	230	238
68	62	139, 140	126	231	239
69	63	141–148	128	232	240

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
233	241	301	314	367	368
234	242	302	314	368	370
235	243	303	316	369	371
236 237	244 245	304 305	317	370	372
238	246	306	318 319	371 372	369 373
239	247	307	292	373	374
240	248	308	293	374	375
241	249	309	294	375	376
242	250	310	295	376	377
243	251	311	296	377	378
244	252 253	312	297	378	379
245 246	254	313 314	298 299	379 380	380,1 380,2
247	255	315	300	381, 382	381, 382
248	256,1	316	302	383	384
249	256,2	317	303	384	385
250	257	318	320	385	387
251	259	319	321	386	388
252	258	320 321	322	387	389
252,R.1	257, N.2 and 3	322	323 349,R.5	388 389	390 405
253	* <sup>3</sup> 260	323	324 324	390	406
254	261	324	325	391	392
255	262	325	326	392	393
256	263	326	327	393	394
257 258	264 265	327 328	328 329	394	omitted
258 259	266	328	329 330	395, 396	395, 396
260	267	330	331	397, 398 399	397, 402 398
261	268.1	331	332, 333,2	400	403
262	268,2	331,R.2	333,1	401	399
263	270	331.R.2	334	402	400
264	271	331,R.4	333,2,N.4	403	401
265 266	272,1	332 333	338	404	404
266,R.3	272, <sub>2</sub> 272, <sub>3</sub>	334	339 340	405 406	407 408, N.7
267	263,2,a	335	335	407	408, N. 7
268	273	336	335.R.I	408	409
269	275	337	336	409	410
270	276	338	336,R.4	410	337
271	277	339 340	343	411	391
272 273	278 279	341	343,1 343,2	412 413	386, 411 412
274	280,1	342	omitted	414	413
275	280,2	343	344	415	413,R.2 and 3
276	281	343,R.2	350, т	416	414
277	281,1 and 2	344	345	416,R.	415
278	282	344, R.3	358	417	416
279 280	283 284	345 346	346 347	418 419	417 418
281	285	347	346, N.2	420	419
282	286	348	348	421	420
283	287	349	349	422	421
284	288	350	356	423	422
285	289	351	351	424	423
286 287	290	352 353	354	425 426	424 425
288	291,1 291,2	354	355 353	426	425 426
289	omitted	355	357	428	427
290	305	356	359	429	428
291	306	357	360,r	430	429
292	307	358	360,2	431	430
293 294	308	359	361	432	431
294	309 309,1 and 2	360 361	362 363	433 434	432 433
296	310	362	304,2; 364,N.2	434	434
297	311,1	363	364	436	435
298	311,2	364	365	437	436
	010	365	0.00	438	437
299 300	312 313	366	366 367	439	438

				Laun	2000000
OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
440	439	509	508	615 616	613 614
441	440	510-518	510-518 518	617	615
442	441 442	518,Ex. 519-549	519-549	618	616
443,1 443,2	443	550	554	618,R.	616, I, N.2
445,2	445	551	555	619	617
445	446	552	550	620	618
446	447	553	551	621	619
447	448	554	552	622	620
448	449	555	553	623 624	621 622
449	444,1	556 557	552 553,1	625	623
450 451	444,2 450	558	553,3 and 4	626	624
452	451	559	557	627	626
453	452, r	560	558	628	625,2
454	452,2	561	559	629	627
455	453	562	560	630	628
456	454	563	561	631	629
457	455	564 565	562 563, x	632 633	630 631, x
458	456	566	563,2	634	631,2
459 459,R.	457,1 457,2	567	564	635	632
460	458	568	566	636	633
461	459	569	567	637	634
462	460	570	568	638	635
463	461	571	569	639	636
464	462	572	570	640 641	637 638
465	463 464	573 574	571 572	642	639
466 467	465	575	573	643	640
468	466	576	574	644	641
469	467	577	575	645	642
470	468	578	576	646	643
471	469	579	577	647	644
472	470	580 581	578	648	645 646
473	471	581,R.	579 581	650	647
474 475	472 473	582	580	651	648
476	474	583	582	652	649
477	475	584	583	653	650
478	476	585	584	654	651
479	477	586	585	655	652
480	478	587 588	586 587	656 657	653 654
481 482	479 480	589	588	658	655
483	481	590	589	659	656
484	482	591	590	660	657
485	483	592	591	661	658
486	484	593	592	662	659
487	485	594	593	663	660
488	486	595 596	590, N.1 594	665	661 662
489 490	487 488 .	597	595	666	663,x
490	489	598	596.1	666, R. I	663,2
492	490	599	597	667	664
493	491	599,R.3	596,2; 597,R.3	668	665
494	492	600	598	669	666
495	493	601	599	670	667 668
496 497	494 495	602	600 601	671	669
497	495 496, 1	604	602	673	670
499	496,2	605	603	674	671
500	498	606	604	675	672
501	499	607	605	676	674
502	500	608	606	677	675
503	501	609	607	678	676
504	502 504	610 611	608 609	679 680	677 678
505 506	504 505	612	610	681	679
507	506	613	611	682	680
508	507	614	612	883	681

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
684	682	724	730	761	784
685	684	725	731	762	785
686	685	726	732	763	777, 780, 781
687	omitted	727	733	764	790-793
088-692	688-692	728	734	765	794-796
693	696	729	735, 739	766	797
694	697	730	736	767	798
695	698	731	737	768	799
696	699	732	738	769	800
697	700	733	740	770	801-805
698	701	734	741	771	806-814
699	702	735	742	772	815
700	703	736	743	773	823,19
701	704	737	744	774	818
702	705	738	745	775	820
703	706	739	746	776	821
704		740	748	777	756
704	707	741	749	778	826
	708	741	750	779	827
706	709	743		780	176
707	710		752	781	177
708	711	744	753	782	178
709	712	745	754		
710	713	746	768	783	179
711	714	747	774, 778, 772, 791	784	180
712	715	748	769	785, 786	184-189
713	718	749	770	787	191
714	719, 720	750, 751	757	788	192
715	721	752	.765	789	193
716	722	753	763	790	194, 195
717	723	754	760-762	791	194,N.
718	724	755	764	792	199
719	725	756	758	793, 794	200
720	726	757	759	795	196
721	727	758	783	796	197,2; 198
722	703,R.3	759	789	797	197, r
723	729	760	788, 787, 786		

# THE GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE LATIN SERIES

UNDER THE EDITORIAL SUPERVISION OF

### BASIL L. GILDERSLEEVE - AND GONZALEZ LODGE

PROFESSOR OF GREEK
IOHNS HOPKINS UNIVERSITY

PROFESSOR OF LATIN
TEACHERS COLLEGE, COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY

WITH THE COÖPERATION OF

### MOSES S. SLAUGHTER

AND

### THOMAS FITZ-HUGH

PROFESSOR OF LATIN

PROFESSOR OF LATIN

### THE PREPARATORY SERIES

- Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar. (School Edition.) By Professors GILDERSLEEVE and LODGE. vi+330 pages. Price 80 cents.
- A First Book in Latin, by CHARLES W. BAIN, late Head Master of the Sewanee Grammar School in the University of the South, Professor in South Carolina College, Cloth, 344 pages. Price 75 cents.
- Selections from Ovid, by JAMES N. ANDERSON, A.M., Ph.D., Instructor in Vanderbilt University. Cloth, 270 pages. Price \$1.00.
- Eleven Orations of Cicero, by ROBERT W. TUNSTALL, Professor of Latin in Jacob Tome Institute, Maryland. Cloth, xxxiv+585 pages. Price \$1.20.
- A Latin Exercise-Book, by J. EDMUND BARSS, Professor in the Hotchkiss School, Lakeville, Conn.
- Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War, by H. F. Towle, Professor in the Boys' High School, Brooklyn.
- Nepos, by Alexander L. Bondurant, Professor in the University of Mississippi.
- Sallust, Catilina, by D. A. Penick, Instructor in the University of Texas.
- Vergil's Aeneid, by Thomas Fitz-Hugh, Professor elect in the University of Virginia,

### THE COLLEGIATE SERIES

- Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar. (Third Edition, 1894.) Revised and enlarged. By Professors GILDERSLEEVE and LODGE. x+550 pages. Price \$1.20.
- Latin Composition, intended mainly for the first year in College, or for highest classes in secondary schools. By Professors GILDERSLEEVE and LODGE. Cloth. Price 75 cents. Key, price 60 cents.
- Exercises for Translation into Latin Prose, by J. Leverett Moore, Professor in Vassar College, and Beatrice Reynolds, Los Angeles. Cloth, 80 pages. Price 50 cents.

### THE COLLEGIATE SERIES (continued)

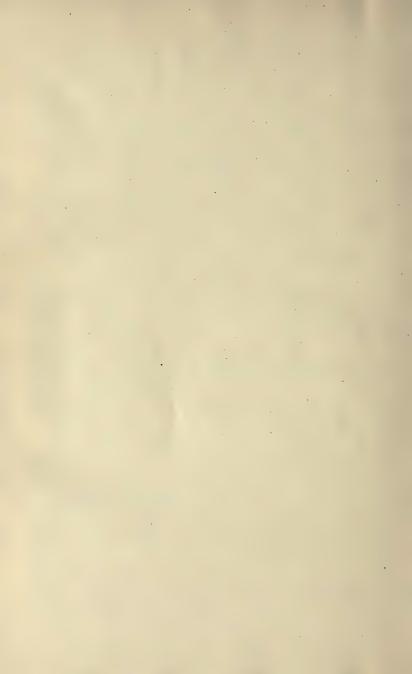
- Cicero, De Officiis, Book I., by F. E. ROCKWOOD, Professor in Bucknell University. Cloth, xxviii+155 pages. Price 90 cents.
- Cicero, the Second Philippic, by \*E. G. Sihler, Professor in New York University. Cloth, xxxvi+124 pages. Price 80 cents.
- Selections from the Elegiac Poets, by JESSE B. CARTER, Assistant Professor in Princeton University. Cloth, xlvii + 283 pages. Price \$1.40.
- Selections from the Latin Literature, by Kirby F. Smith, Associate Professor in Johns Hopkins University.
- Catullus, by Professor KIRBY F. SMITH.
- Cicero, De Amicitia and De Senectute, by Tom F. Kane, Professor in the University of Washington.
- Cicero, Tusculan Disputations, by Frank M. Johnson, Professor in the University of Nebraska.
- Cicero's Letters, by George H. Denny, Professor in Washington and Lee University.
- Horace, by Professor Moses S. Slaughter.
- Juvenal, by H. L. Wilson, Associate in Johns Hopkins University.
- Livy, Books XXI. and XXII., by Dr. EMORY B. LEASE, College of the City of New York.
- Lucan, by Dr. WILLARD K. CLEMENT, of the University of Chicago.
- Lucretius, by W. A. HEIDEL, Professor in Iowa College.
- Martial, by FRED. B. R. HELLEMS, Professor in the University of Colorado.
- Plautus, by Professor Lodge.
- Pliny's Letters, by WILLIS H. BOCOCK, Professor in the University of Georgia.
- Quintilian, Inst. Orat., Liber X., by Henry F. Linscott, Professor in the University of North Carolina.
- Seneca's Plays, by GORDON J. LAING, Instructor in the University of Chicago.
- Seneca, Moral Essays, by James H. Dillard, Professor in the Tulane University of Louisiana.
- Tacitus, Histories, by Wm. Hamilton Kirk, Professor in Rutgers College.
- Terence, by J. LEVERETT MOORE, Professor in Vassar College.

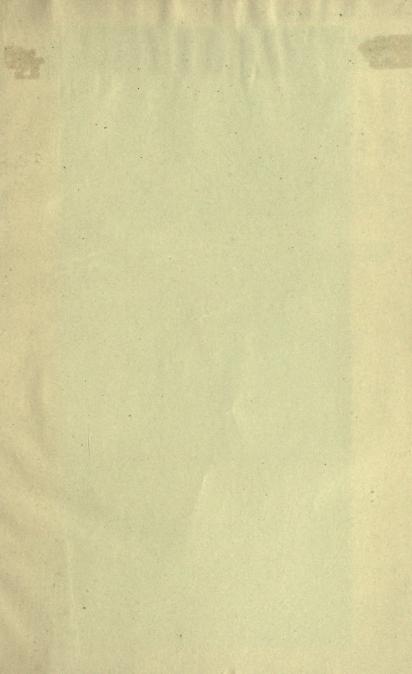
Correspondence invited.

## UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

43-47 East Tenth Street, New York







# RETURN EDUCATION-PSYCHOLOGY LIBRARY 10 → 2600 Tolman Hall 642-4209 LOAN PERIOD 1 2 SEMESTER 4 5 6 ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS 2 hour books must be repowed in person

2-hour books must be renewed in person Return to desk from which borrowed

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW				
REC'D JUL 2 9 '83	-1 PM			
	A TOP IN THE REAL PROPERTY.			

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, BERKELEY BERKELEY, CA 94720

FORM NO. DD10

General Library University of California Berkeley Ps

607453

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

